1,000 EXAMPLES

VLADIMIR BARSKY

A Modern Guide to CHECKMATING PATTERNS

Improve Your Ability to Spot Typical Mates

NEW IN CHESS

Contents

Title page

Explanation of symbols

Foreword

Chapter 1

The rook

Exercises 1-30

Exercises 31-60

Chapter 2

The queen

Exercises 61-90

Exercises 91-121

Chapter 3

The minor pieces and pawns

Exercises 122-165

Exercises 166-209

Chapter 4

Two rooks

Exercises 210-241

Exercises 242-273

Chapter 5

Rook and bishop

Exercises 274-305

Exercises 306-337

Exercises 338-368

Chapter 6

Rook and knight
Exercises 369-400
Exercises 401-432
Exercises 433-463

Chapter 7

Queen and bishop
Exercises 464-501
Exercises 502-539
Exercises 540-578

Chapter 8

Queen and knight
Exercises 579-618
Exercises 619-658

Chapter 9

Queen and rook
Exercises 659-694
Exercises 695-729
Exercises 730-765

Chapter 10

Three pieces
Exercises 766-808
Exercises 809-851

Vladimir Barsky

A Modern Guide to Checkmating Patterns

Improve Your Ability to Spot Typical Mates

New In Chess 2020

© 2020 New In Chess

Published by New In Chess, Alkmaar, The Netherlands
www.newinchess.com

All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording or otherwise, without the prior written permission from the publisher.

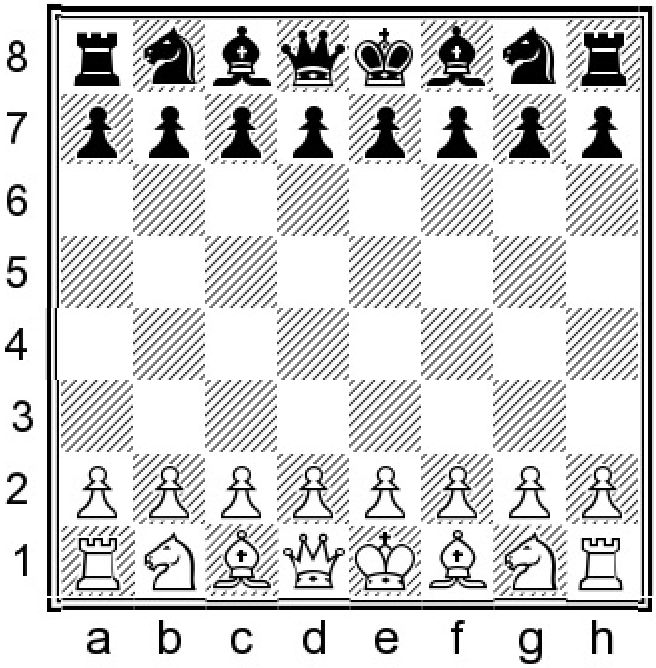
Cover design: Buro Blikgoed
Translation: Steve Giddins
Editing and typesetting: Frank Erwich
Proofreading and supervision: Peter Boel
Production: Anton Schermer

Have you found any errors in this book?
Please send your remarks to editors@newinchess.com. We will collect all relevant corrections on the Errata page of our website www.newinchess.com and implement them in a possible next edition.

ISBN: 978-90-5691-887-3

Explanation of Symbols

The chessboard with its coordinates:



♔ King

♕ Queen

♖ Rook

♗ Bishop

♘ Knight

⩲ White stands slightly better

⩱ Black stands slightly better

± White stands better

∓ Black stands better

+− White has a decisive advantage

−+ Black has a decisive advantage

= balanced position

! good move

!! excellent move

? bad move

?? blunder

!? interesting move

?! dubious move

Foreword
In the footsteps of *The Last Check*

This book is dedicated to the fond memory of Viktor Lvovich Khenkin.

The idea for this book first arose about ten years ago, when I edited Viktor Lvovich Khenkin's classic textbook *The Last Check*. I was surprised that his original methodology for finding mating combinations did not generally receive serious attention. Maybe this was because Viktor Lvovich's past training achievements had been forgotten? After all, he taught chess at the now rebuilt and renamed young pioneer stadium, and was trainer of the Moscow junior team, which was victorious in All-Union championships. In addition, Khenkin the theoretician was one of the founders of the Sozin Attack and wrote a whole chapter in Yuri Averbakh's famous five-volume endgame course.

In the great majority of books devoted to chess tactics, combinations are categorized by theme: double attack, deflection, attraction, overload, discovered attack, line-opening, etc. But how are you supposed to know, when sitting at the board with the clock ticking, what you should be looking for, whether a fork, a deflection, a line-opening, etc.? In practice, everything usually happens the other way round: first the player finds a combinational motif, using his experience and the associations thereof, and then works out how to effect it correctly. Only after the idea has been realized does the happy victor think about which tactical device he used.

Viktor Khenkin tried to make his method as close as possible to practical play. Here is an extract from Mikhail Tal's preface to *The Last Check*: 'When I examine a concrete position, I notice first of all its particular characteristic, the mutual piece placements, and their connections. And suddenly (in the majority of cases this happens intuitively) the outlines of some new position will flash up, tantalizing and attractive. It is not yet on the board, of course, but all the signs are that it could arise. Then the chase for the bird begins. Often, calculating the variations is a Sisyphean task. The position in the mind's eye is almost impossible to reach, even if the opponent enters into "cooperation" with you. Some piece is on the wrong square, some pawn gets in the way... but sometimes a tedious search of variations brings real results. Move by move, one approaches the desired final position, which one saw from afar. And if the circle of variations is closed, then... then you can start a combination.'

The remarkable trainer and Soviet Master of Sport, Viktor Lvovich Khenkin (1923-2010), proposed systematizing mating schemes or 'pictures' by reference to the piece or pawn which brought the mate to its conclusion. It turned out that there were not so many of these schemes – about a hundred basic ones – and only about 20-30 which occur in the great majority of mating combinations. These can be remembered even by an inexperienced player: 'it's not rocket science', as the popular saying runs.

Luck brought me a long acquaintance with Viktor Lvovich Khenkin. At the start of the millennium, he was the mentor and senior comrade of various young journalists: Oleg Pervakov, Maxim Notkin, Ilya Odessky, Andrey Paneyakh and the present author. We tried to learn from the Maestro all the best. A workaholic, he did not tolerate hack-work or routine stuff, and he perfectly mastered the literary Russian language. And the non-literary too: oh, how he cursed, when I wrote 'pieces of iron' instead of ‘piece of iron’ in one title he proposed! He constantly repeated to us: ‘Do not dismiss small things, trifles are the most important, they create an image!’ The children of Twitter and Instagram are unlikely to appreciate it, but how many hours we spent on coming up with a sharp headline even for articles of second-rate importance, not to mention really top-class ones. They were great hours of creative search!

I am proud of the fact that I wrote my first book, dedicated to the Frenchman François Philidor, in co-authorship with Viktor Lvovich. Then I helped re-issue *1000 Checkmate Combinations* as the special editor. In checking every example with the computer, I once again saw the integrity of Viktor Lvovich: only a very small number needing correcting and then, usually only cosmetically, tidying up illustrative variations. As every day went by, I came to like the book more and more and I resolved to write a follow-up, using games played in the 21st century. But the classification remains much the same as that used in the classic.

In the words of Viktor Lvovich: ‘Since all the pieces differ among themselves according to their range and rules of movement, each of them has its favorite “profession”. In this sense, chess can be compared with an ice hockey team, where each player has worked out shots on goal from different points of the ice rink. The same can be said about the distribution of roles in the joint attack on the king. Some pieces prefer a “passing” role, while others “hit the puck” by themselves.’

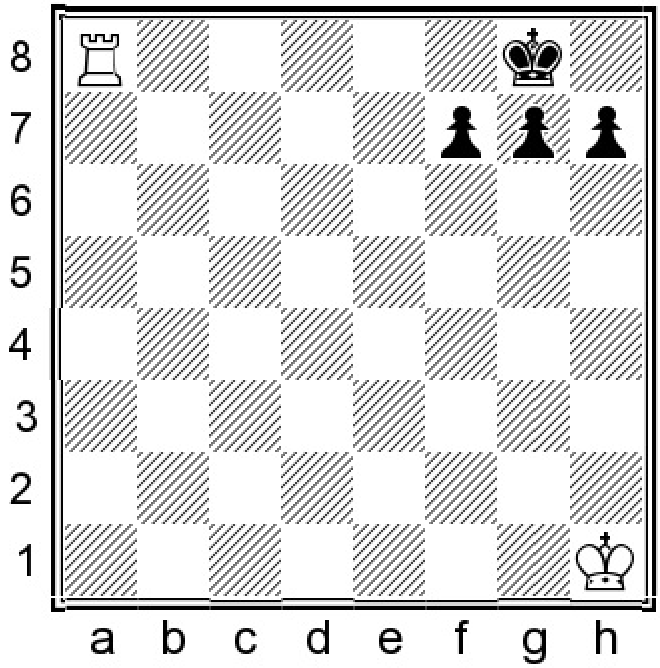
This book *A Modern Guide to Checkmating Patterns* is divided into ten chapters: first, we present schemes and examples with explanations, and then positions for independent solving. These number 851. A good source was the online magazine *Chess Today* (chief editor Alexander Baburin), where I worked from 2000-2008. At first, I had 1,000 or so examples, but some fell by the wayside. I have spent some ten years working on the book, on and off, and I should like to thank my former colleague Andrey Paneyakh for his great help, without which this manuscript would still be gathering (virtual) dust on the computer.

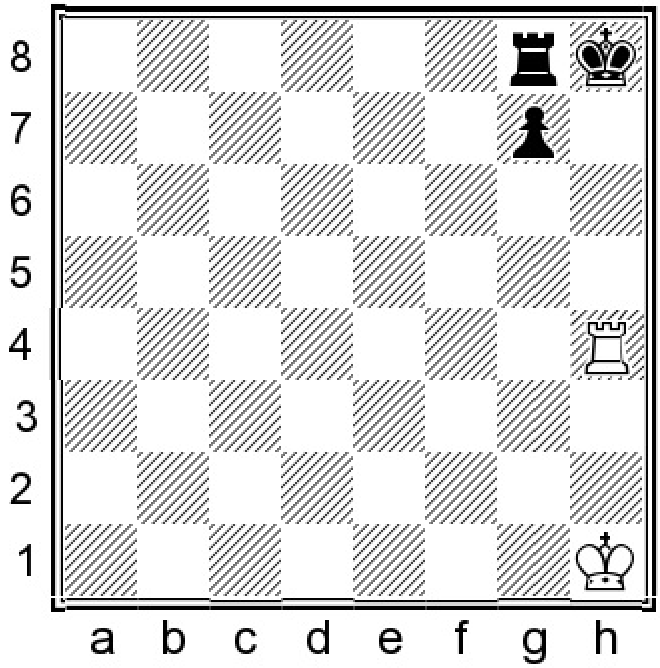
We will conclude this Foreword with a further quote from Mikhail Tal: ‘Of course, chess creativity is not limited to what is set out here. Each player creates further, according to his talent and imagination. But as for that which can be known, there is no need to reinvent the wheel.’

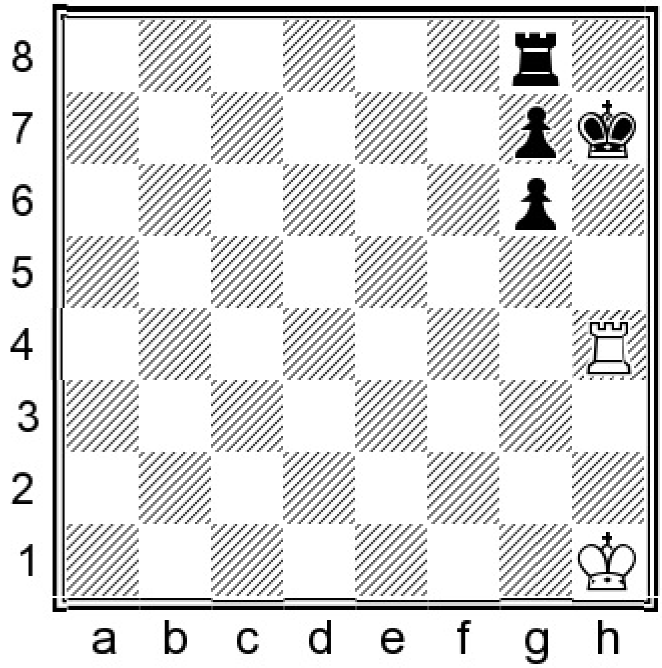
Vladimir Barsky
Moscow, April 2020

Chapter 1
The rook

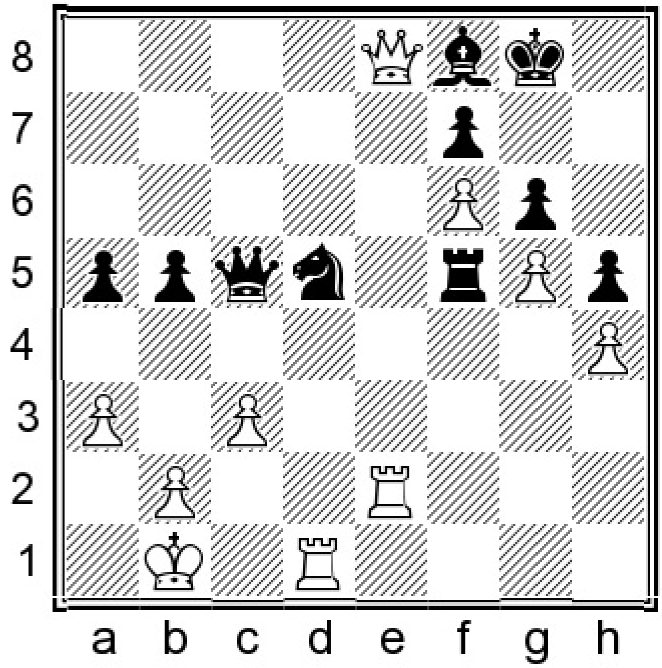
With very rare exceptions, a rook will give mate by itself only on the back rank, when the enemy king's escape is blocked by his own pawns (or sometimes pieces). Quite often, the rook will also employ the services of its own pawns in cutting off the king's escape. And, of course, the rook's own king can also contribute.


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h



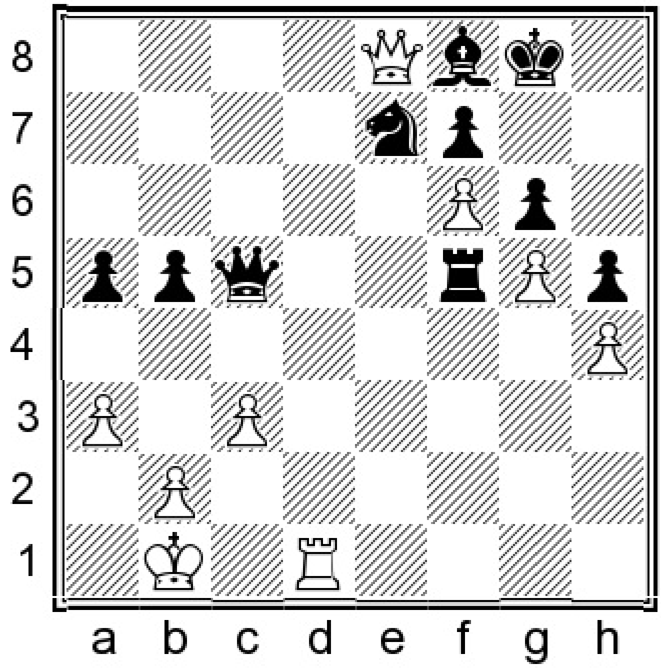
Manuel Apicella 2522
Laurent Giardelli 2392
Aix-les-Bains ch-FRA 2003 (4)



White to play

45.♖e7!

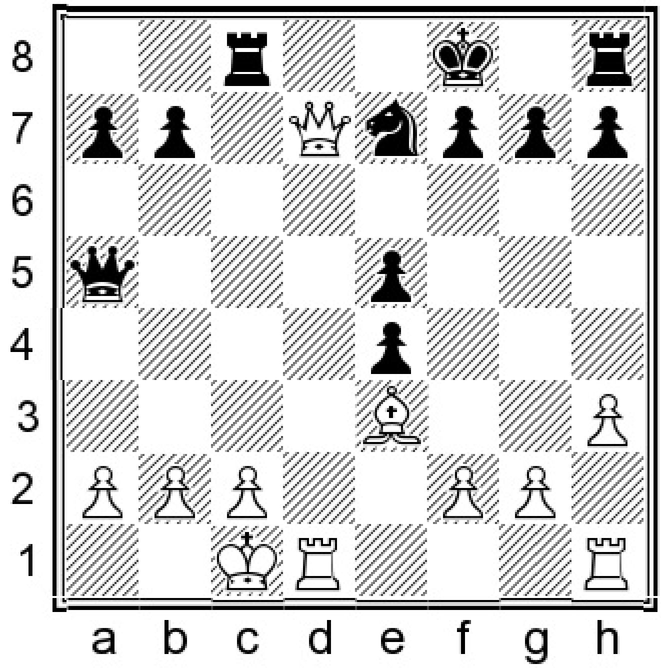
With one move White kills two birds: the knight is deflected from d5 and at the same time the a3-f8 diagonal is closed. Black resigned; the only way to meet the threat against f7 is 45...♘xe7 (45...♘xc3+ 46.bxc3 is a blow in the air),



analysis diagram

but then there follows the well-known idea 46.♕xf8+! ♔xf8 (46...♔h7 47.♕g7#) 47.♖d8#.

Lazaro Bruzon Batista 2669
Baadur Jobava 2637
Havana 2005 (10)



White to play

If the black queen didn't control d8, then White would win immediately with 18.♕d8+. Therefore, White plays a preparatory move:

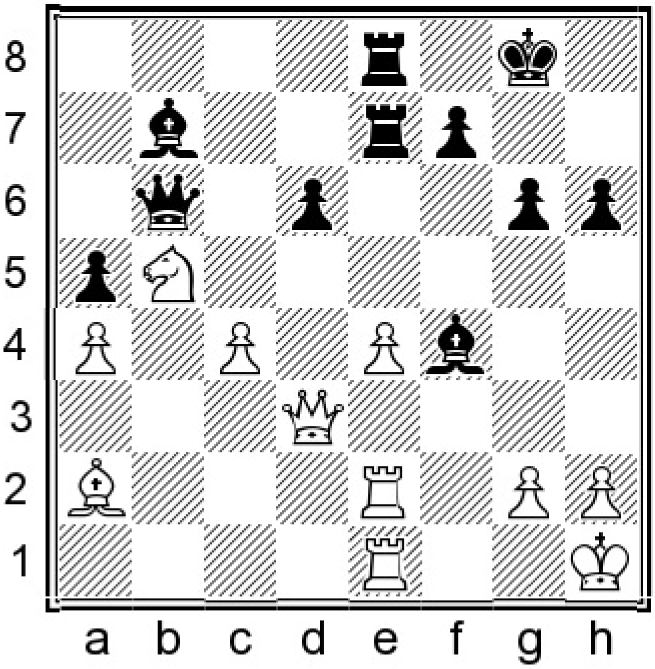
18.♗c5! ♖e8

There is no other way to defend the knight, whilst 18...♕xc5 allows the familiar 19.♕d8+.

19.♖d5

The queen has to leave the a5-d8 diagonal, after which 20.♕xe7+ decides. Black resigned.

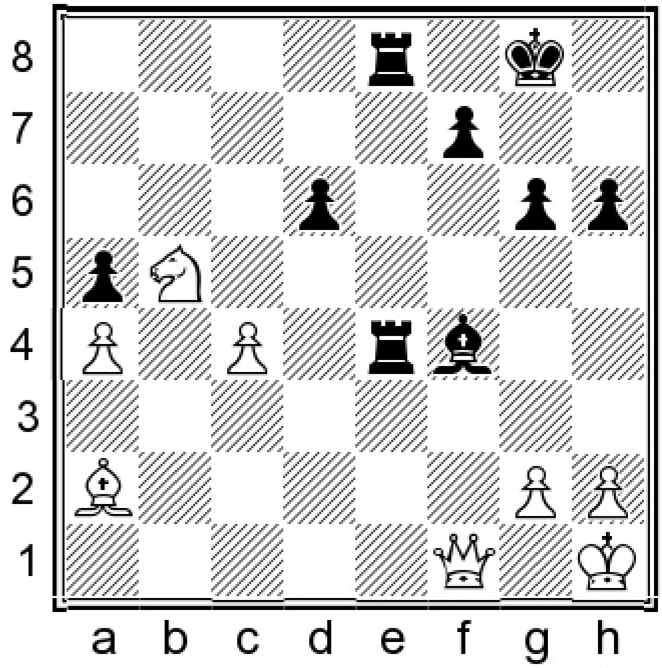
Vitaly Meribanov 2262
Vitaly Teterev 2539
Minsk ch-BLR (5)



Black to play

40...♗xe4! 41.♖xe4 ♕f2!

Now after 42.♖xe7, mate follows by 42...♕xe1+, whilst after 42.♖f1 ♕xf1+ 43.♕xf1 ♖xe4

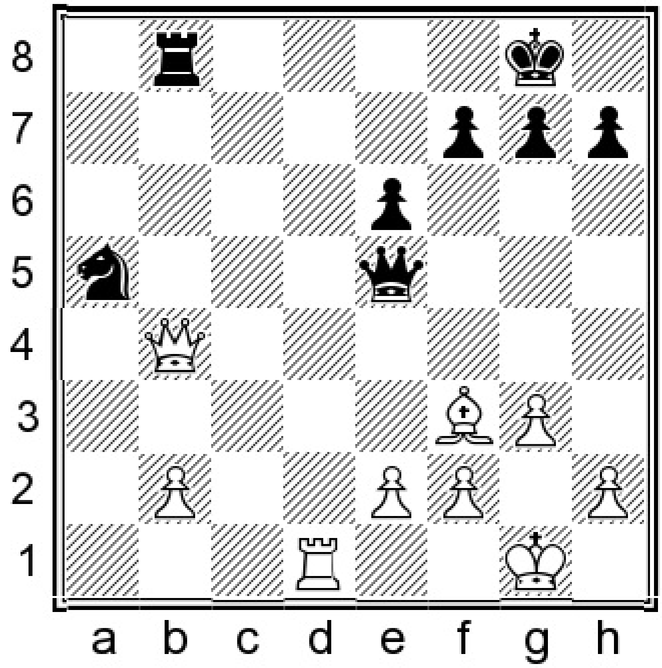


analysis diagram

White cannot prevent 44...♖e1 with decisive material gains, and therefore he resigned.

White decided the game very elegantly in the following GM example.

Aleksandr Lenderman 2598
Timur Gareev 2599
Mesa 2010 (4)

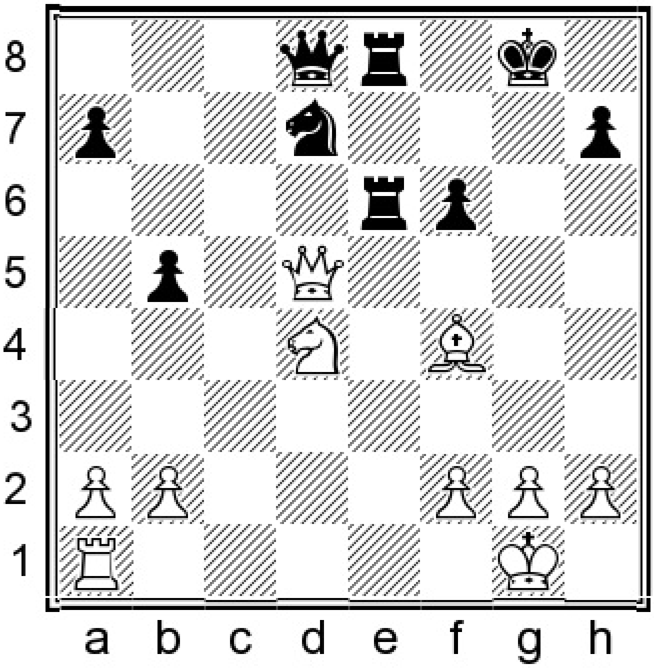


White to play

30.♖d6!!

Black resigned. The queen can't be taken because of mate, of course, whilst after 30...♖c8 31.♖a6 (the white king has a bolthole!) the knight cannot be saved. For example: 31...♘c4 32.♕xc4 ♖xc4 33.♖a8+.

Jakub Zebersky 2403
Oskar Vechorek 2305
Wroclaw 2010 (5)



Black to play

23...♘f8!! 24.♕xd8

24.♕b3 ♕xd4–+.

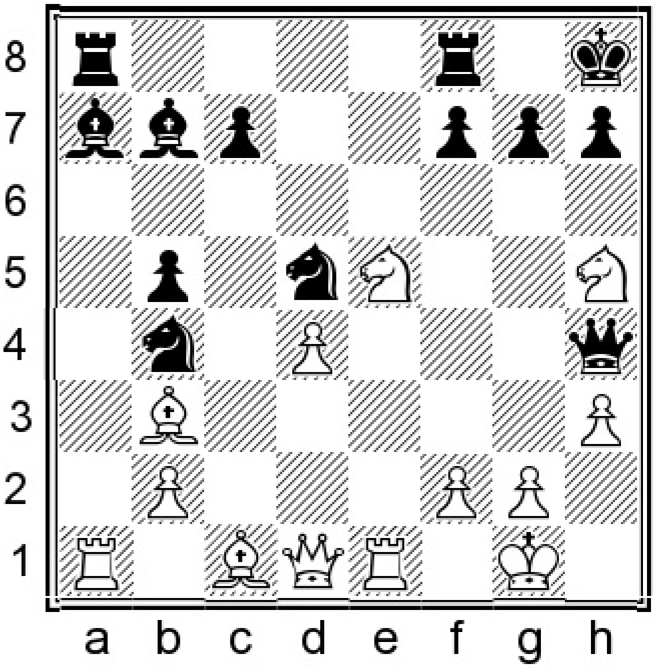
24...♖e1+

White resigned.

You ask why not 23...♘b6 ? But then after 24.♕xd8 the check on e1 fails, as White just takes the rook and the ♖e8 is pinned. That is why the move of the knight to f8 is the only one.

A beautiful combination decided the outcome of the following encounter.

Kaido Külaots 2592
Mikkel Antonsen 2471
Borup 2010 (2)



White to play

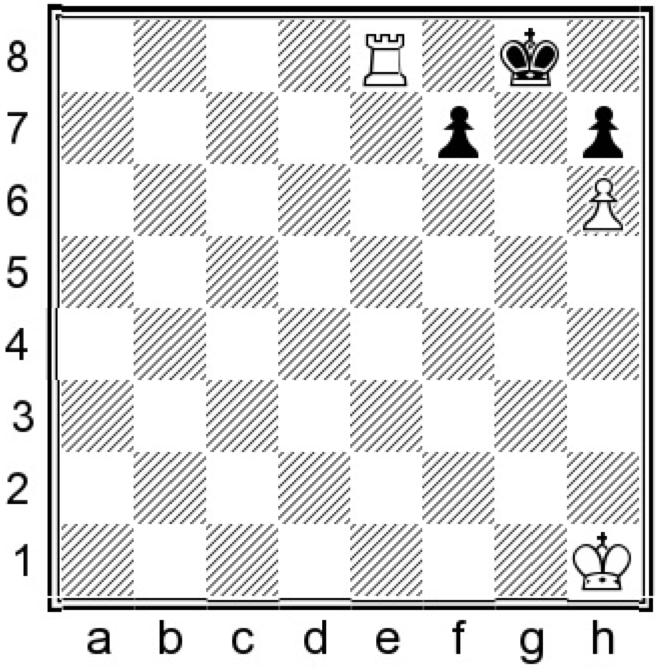
21.♖xa7!!

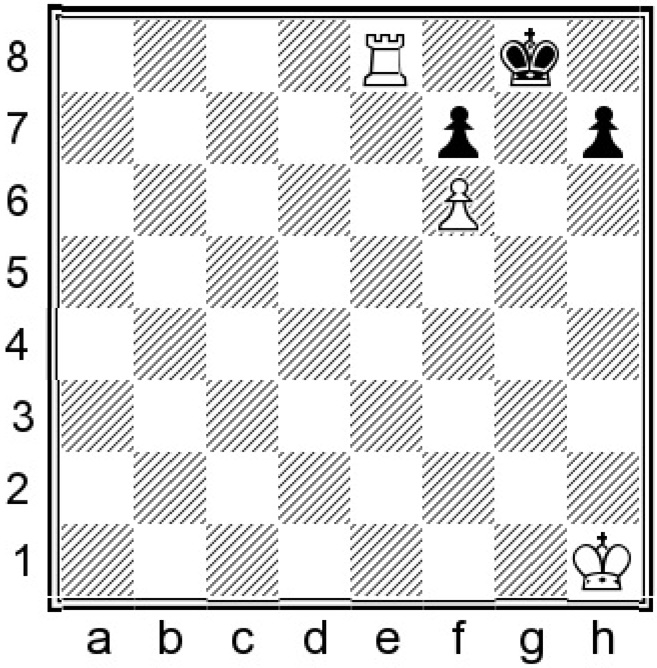
This sacrifice has a dual aim: firstly, to remove an attack from the pawn on d4, and secondly, as you will already have realized, to weaken the back rank. But how can we exploit this?

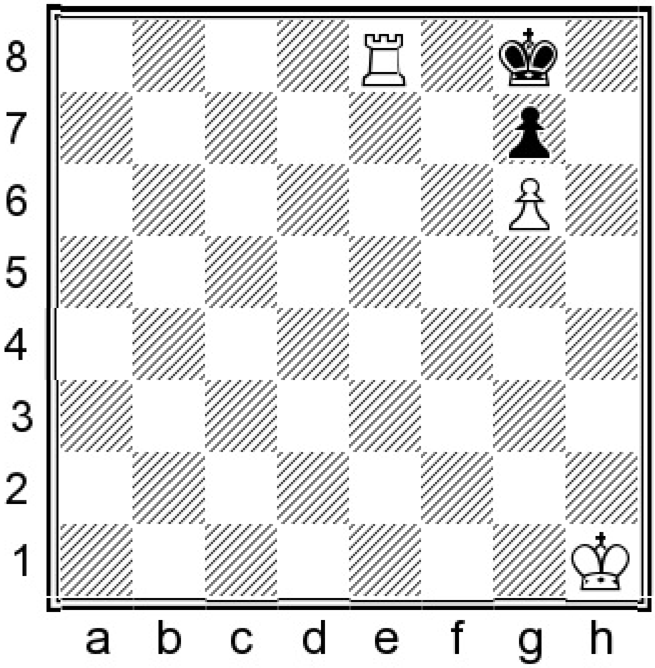
21...♖xa7 22.♗g5!

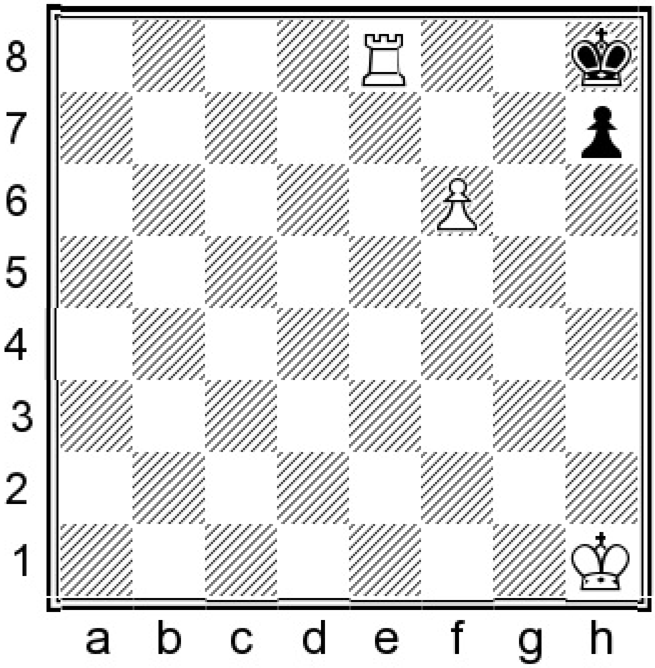
The point. It turns out that the queen lacks a retreat square and must capture the daring prelate, but then after 22...♕xg5 23.♘xf7+ the second rook has to quit the back rank or else Black loses the queen. But then Black is mated by 24.♖e8+. Black resigned.

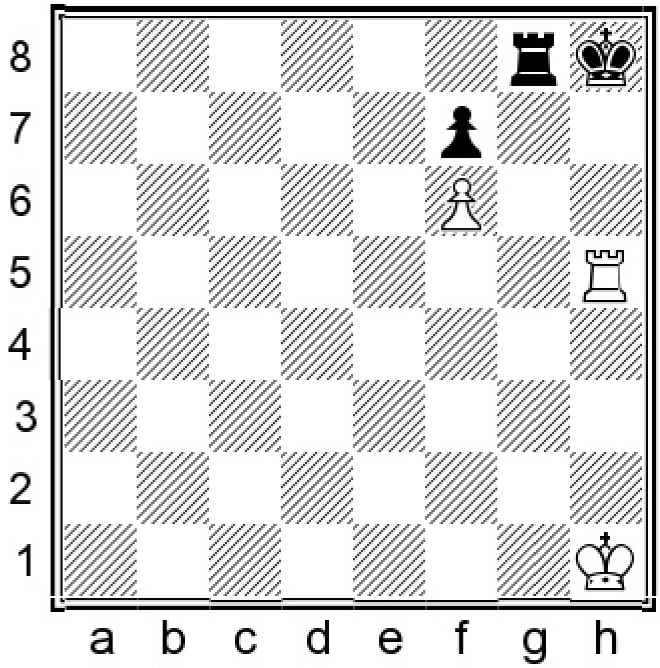
Often one of the rook's own pawns helps to establish the mate.

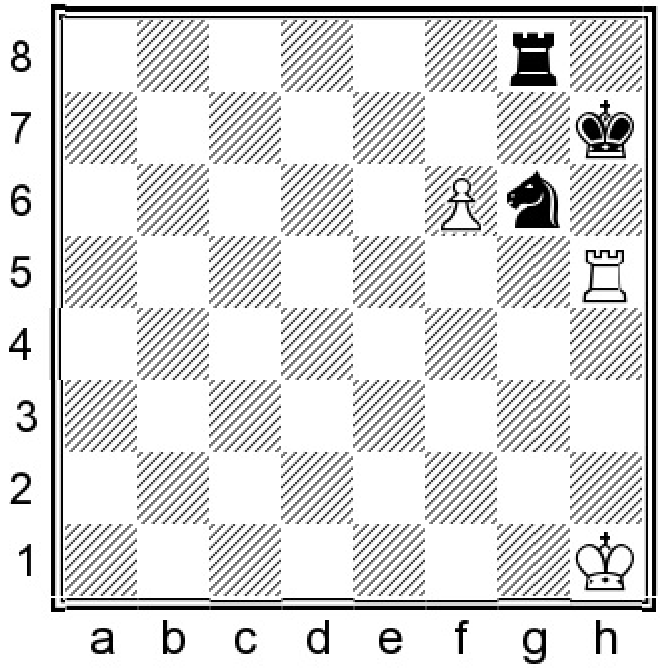

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h

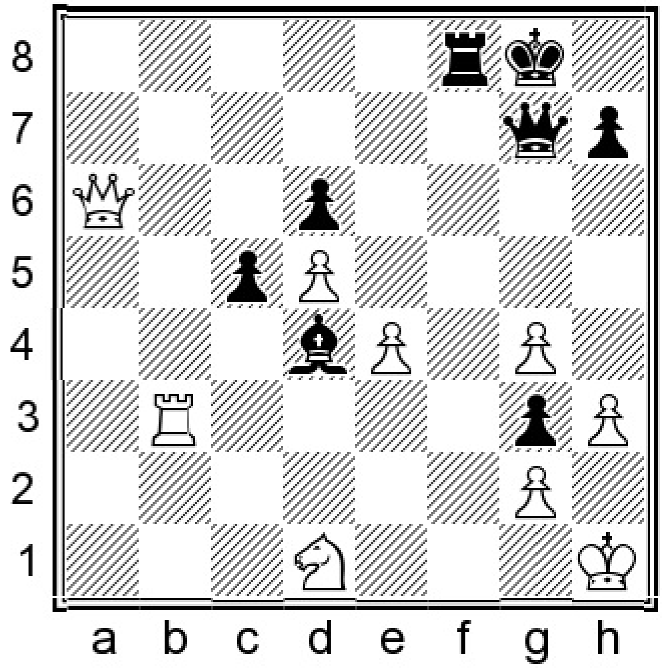

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h





In the following example, Black starts a direct hunt of the white queen, trying to deflect her from the key task of defending the f-square.

Razvan Iagar 2172
Pablo Glavina 2444
Zaragoza 2013 (3)



Black to play

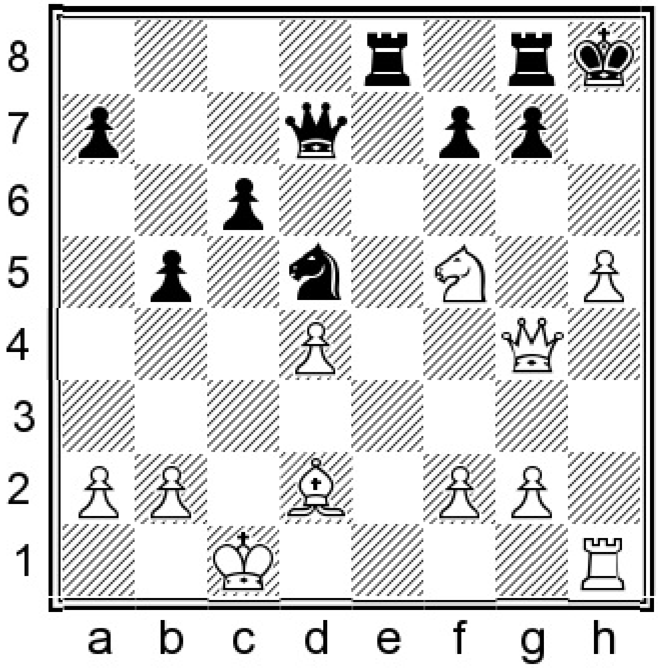
29...♕a7! 30.♕d3

On 30.♕e2, immediately decisive is 30...♕a2.

30...c4! 31.♕xc4 ♕a4!

The rook on b3 is lost and White resigned.

Miroslav Zufic 2444
Darko Doric 2495
Croatia tt 2013 (2)



White to play

31.♕g6!!

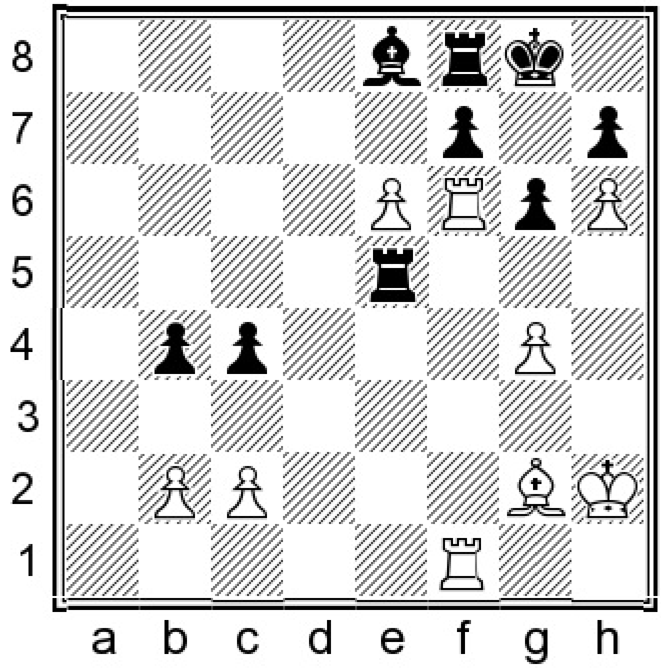
A brilliant decision. It is hard to believe that the only object of this move is to blockade the g7-pawn and then play h5-h6 (the immediate 31.h6 is met by 31...g6).

31.♛g6!!

Black resigned: on 31...♖e6, as almost any other black move, White wins immediately with 32.h6!.

The English GM Nigel Short brought off a striking combination in a seemingly solid position, in the following example.

Nigel Short 2633
Hannes Stefansson 2604
Reykjavik m 2002 (5)



White to play

36.♗d5! ♖xd5

Otherwise Black loses too many pawns.

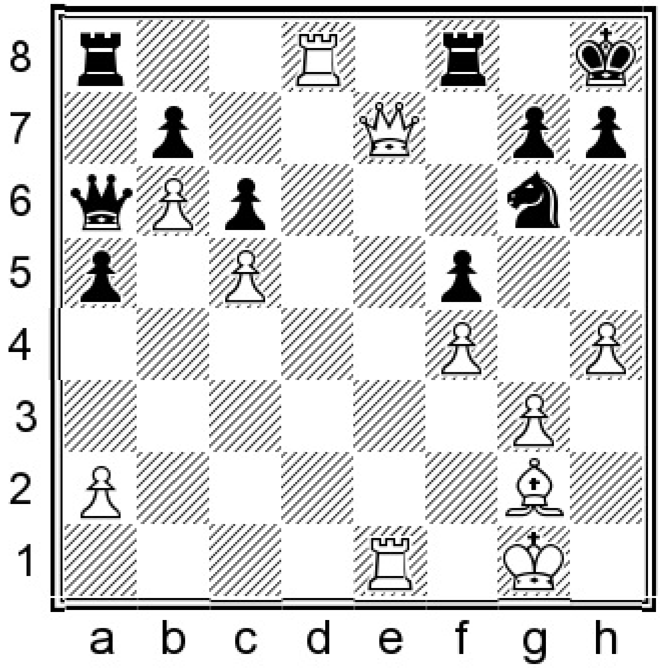
37.e7 ♖e5

So, White has just won the exchange for a pawn and faces a long battle? Far from it!

38.♖xg6+!!

And Black resigned, because he cannot stop a new white queen appearing: 38...hxg6 39.h7+, and the capture of the ♖f8 follows with decisive effect.

Artyom Timofeev 2646
Konstantin Landa 2600
Russia tt 2006 (3)



White to play

In this fragment, White spotted the unfortunate position of the enemy queen and carried out an elegant combination:

32.♖xf8+ ♖xf8

32...♘xf8 33.♗f1.

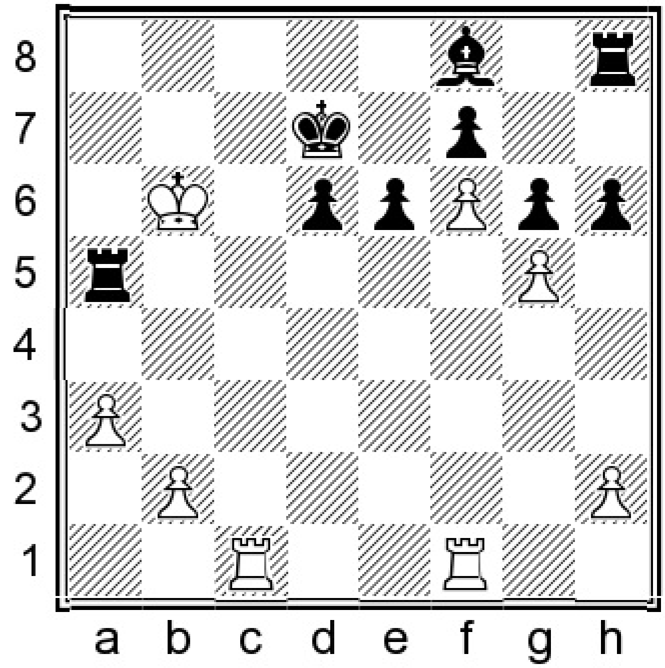
33.♕xf8+! ♘xf8 34.♖e8!

Taking a8 from the black queen with tempo – Black must meet the mate threat.

34...♔g8 35.♗f1 ♔f7 36.♖xf8+ ♔xf8 37.♗xa6

Black resigned.

Vladimir Kramnik 2807
Veselin Topalov 2743
Monaco blindfold 2003 (2)



White to play

36.♖c7+!

It is important to drive the king to the back rank. The battle would have been greatly prolonged after 36.♔xa5 hxg5 37.♔b6 e5.

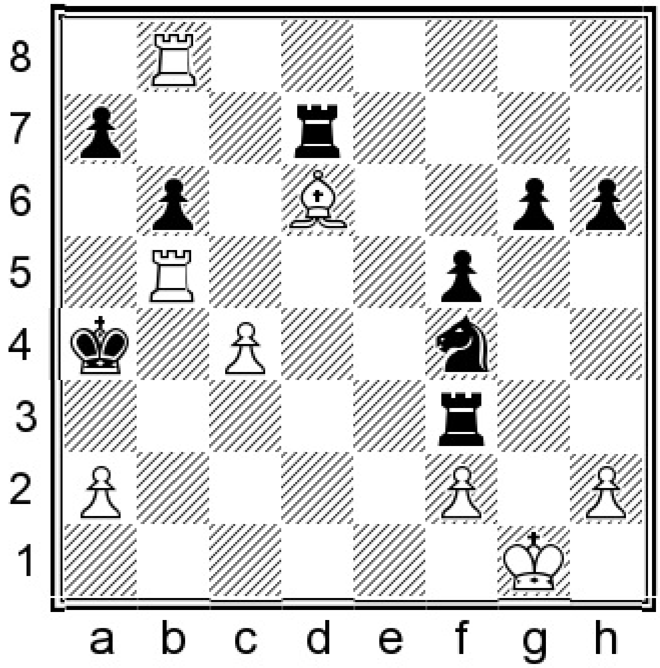
36.♖c7+! ♔d8 37.♖fc1! ♖c5

The desperate 37...♖a8 does not help because of 38.♔b7, and the rook has nowhere to go.

38.♖1xc5 dxc5 39.♔c6!

Black resigned, since after 39...hxg5 40.♖a7 he is mated. This famous game was played blindfolded!

Vladimir Barsky 2427
Evgenij Logunov 2203
Moscow 2004 (1)



White to play

White’s position looks critical, since the bishop cannot retreat because of mate on d1, whilst exchanging on f4 leads to the loss of the c4-pawn. But there is an expected tactical blow...

37.♖5xb6! a5

Mate results from 37...axb6 38.♖a8+.

38.♖b4+!

Black’s misfortunes continue – again he cannot take the rook because of 39.♖a8+.

38...♔a3 39.♖b3+

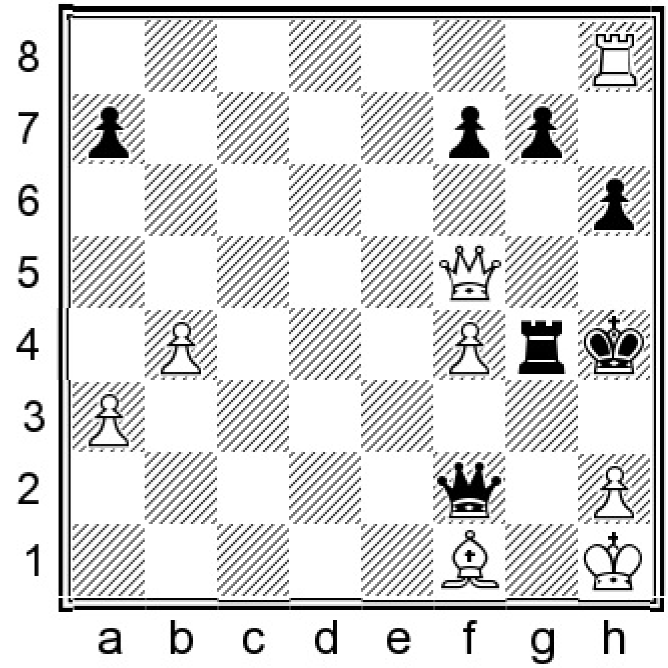
He could also win with 39.♖4b5+ ♔a4 40.♖a8 with mate in a few moves.

39...♔a4 40.♖xf3 ♖xd6 41.♖xf4 1-0

Black resigned.

And here is one more example of how unfortunately-placed the king can be on the edge of the board.

Viktor Laznicka 2681
Parimarjan Negi 2622
New Delhi 2011 (4)



White to play

51.♕f6+!! ♔h5

51...gxf6 52.♖xh6#.

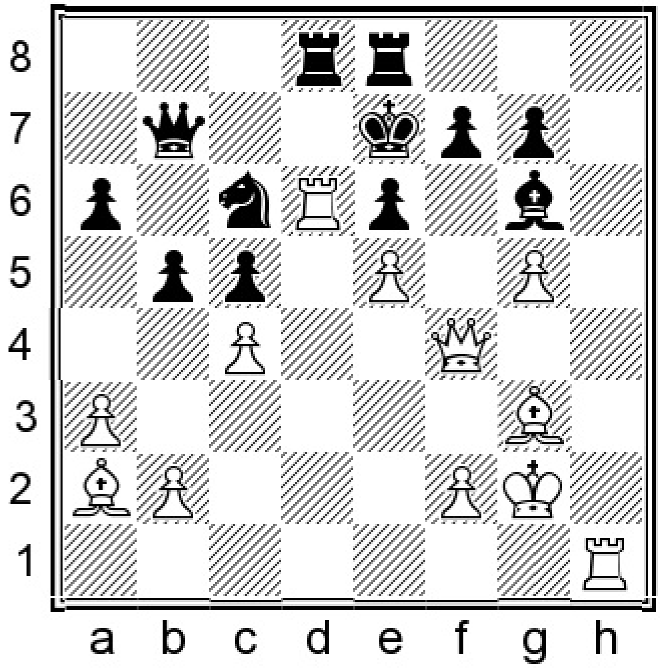
52.♕xf7+ ♔h4 53.♕e7+

Black resigned: after 53...♔h5 54.♕c5+ White exchanges queens and keeps an extra piece.

Show in Text Mode

Exercises

1

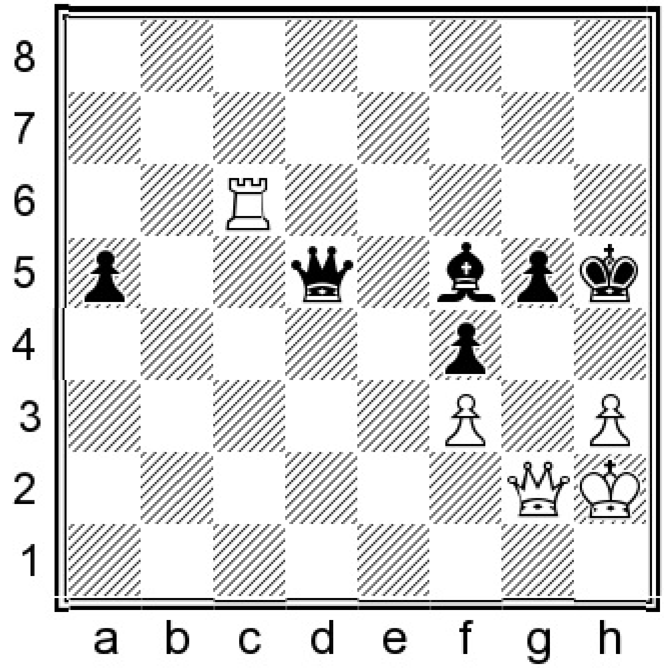

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h

White to play

Show/Hide Solution

1 **28.♕f6+!** Ledger-Bennet, England 4NCL 2001/02; Black resigned because of 28...gxf6 29.gxf6+ ♔f8 30.♖h8#.

2

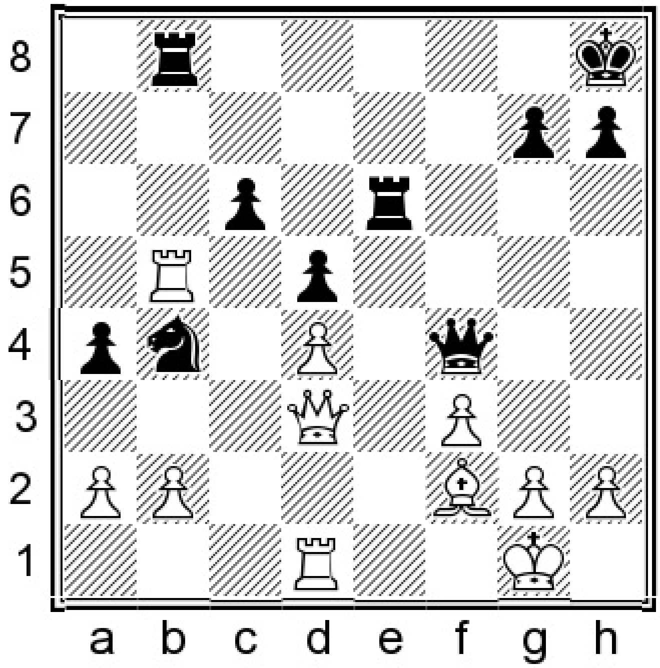

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

White to play

Show/Hide Solution

2 **61.♕g4+!** Kryvoruchko-Shirazi, Cappelle-la-Grande 2007; Black resigned, mate is inevitable: 61...♗xg4 62.hxg4+ ♔h4 63.♖h6#.

3

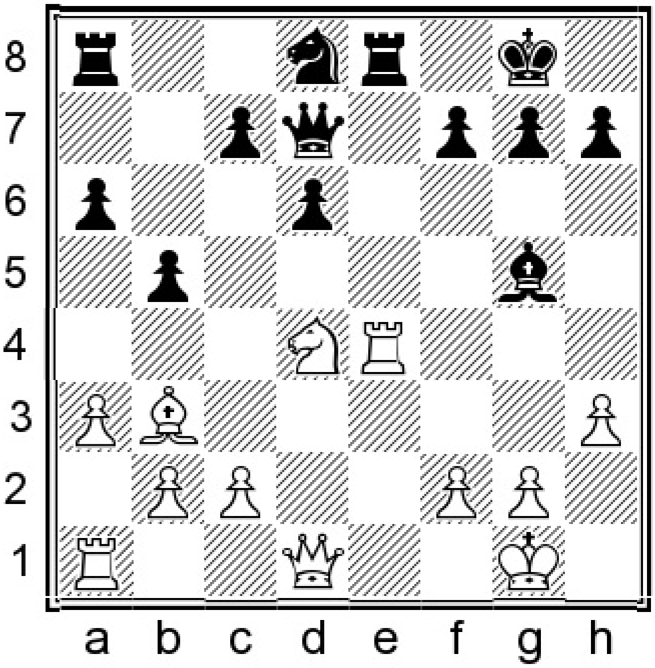


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

3 **27.♕f5!** 1-0 Carlsen-Fressinet, Cap d'Agde rapid 2006; 27...♕d6 28.♕xe6.

4

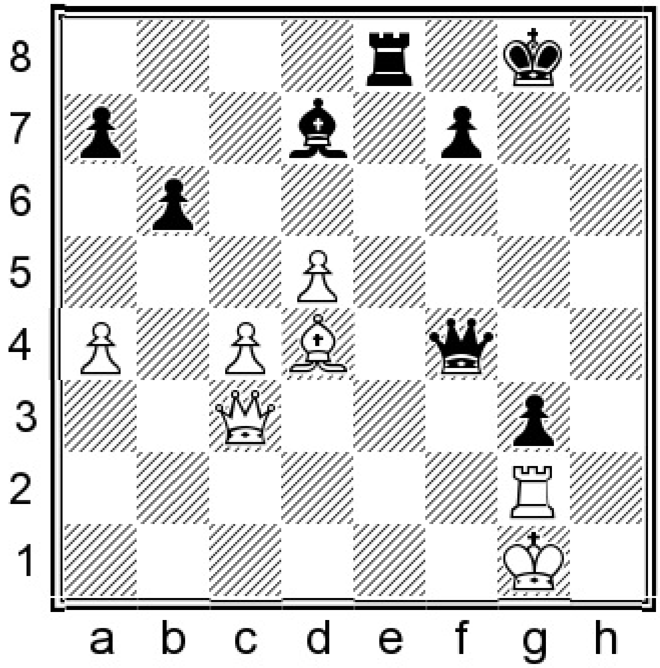


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

4 **17.♕g4!** Svidler-Almasi, Germany Bundesliga 2003/04; Black resigned, because after any reply not allowing immediate mate, he loses the ♗g5.

5

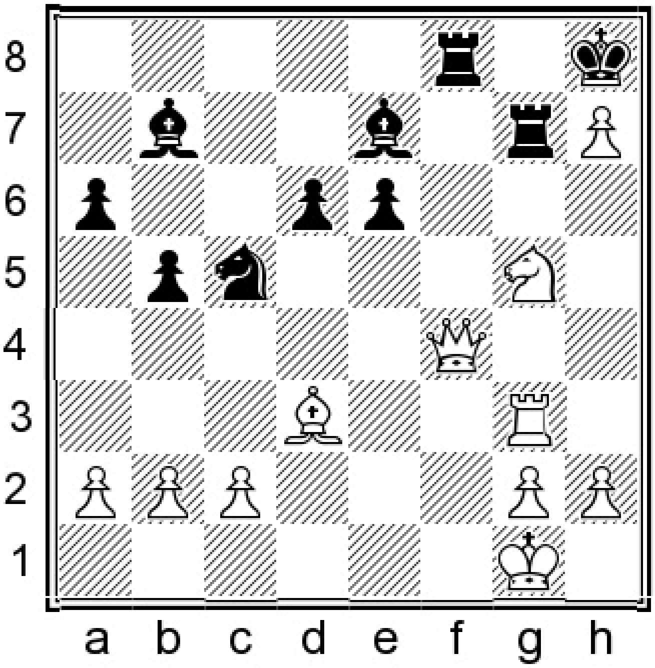


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

5 **36...♕xd4+!** 0-1 Chua-Izoria, USA tt 2007; 37.♕xd4 ♖e1#.

6

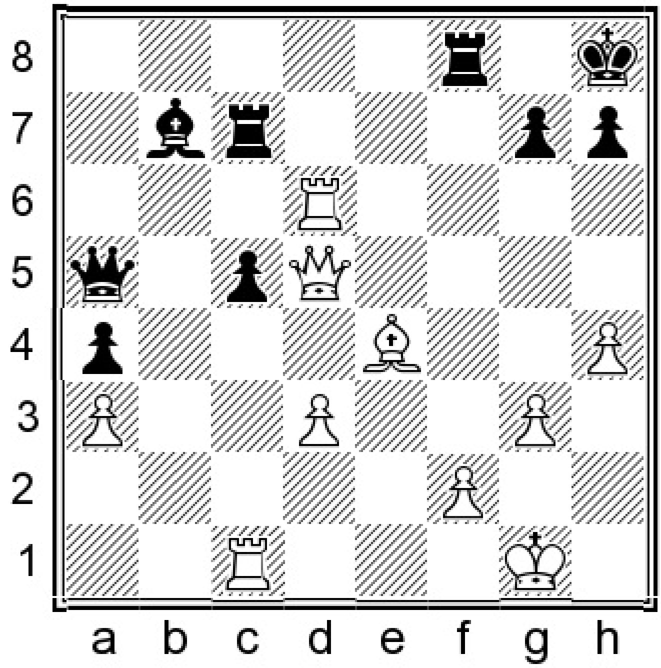


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

6 **30.♕xf8+! ♗xf8 31.♘f7+** 1-0 Kirton-Gentes, Winnipeg m 2000.

7

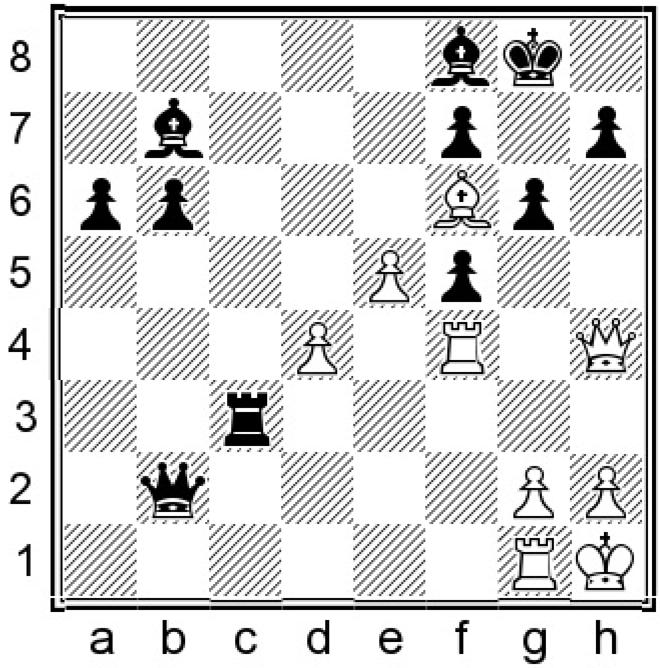


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

7 **27.♕f5!** 1-0 Vogt-Teschke, Germany Bundesliga 2006/07.

8

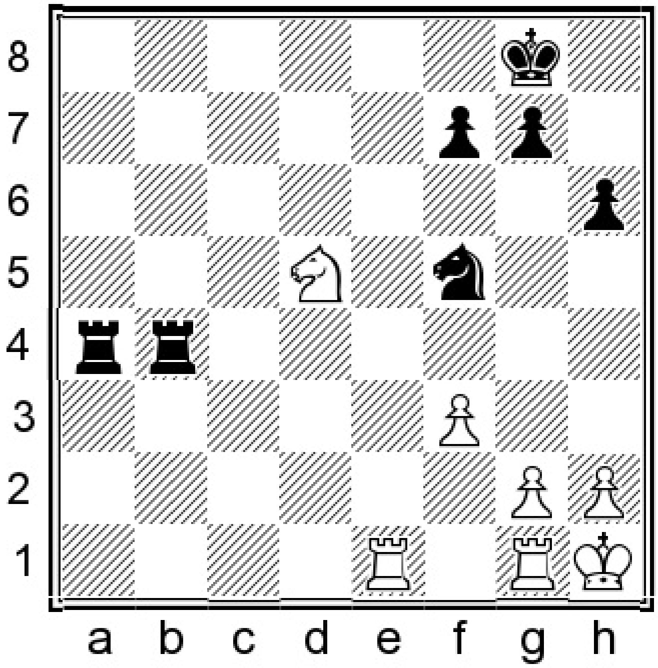


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

8 **31...♕xg2+ 32.♖xg2 ♖c1+** 0-1 Moen-E.Berg, Oslo, 2009.

9

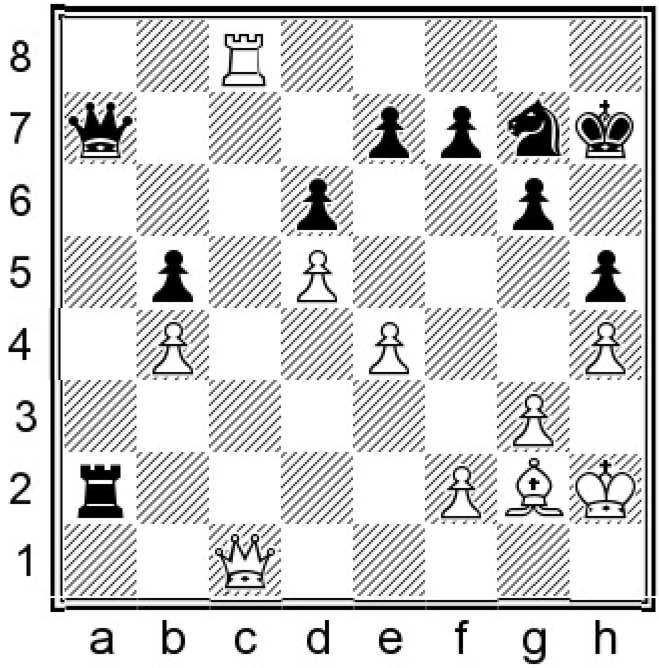

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h

Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

9 **29...♘g3+! 30.hxg3 ♖h4+! 31.gxh4 ♖xh4#** Kuling-Spoelman, Groningen 2008.

10

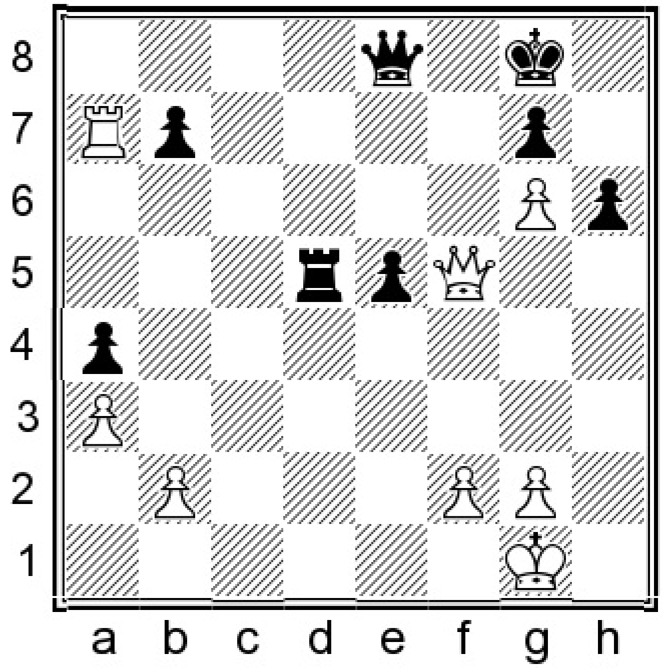


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

10 **45.♕h6+!** 1-0 Mirzoev-Gallego, Sitges 2012.

11

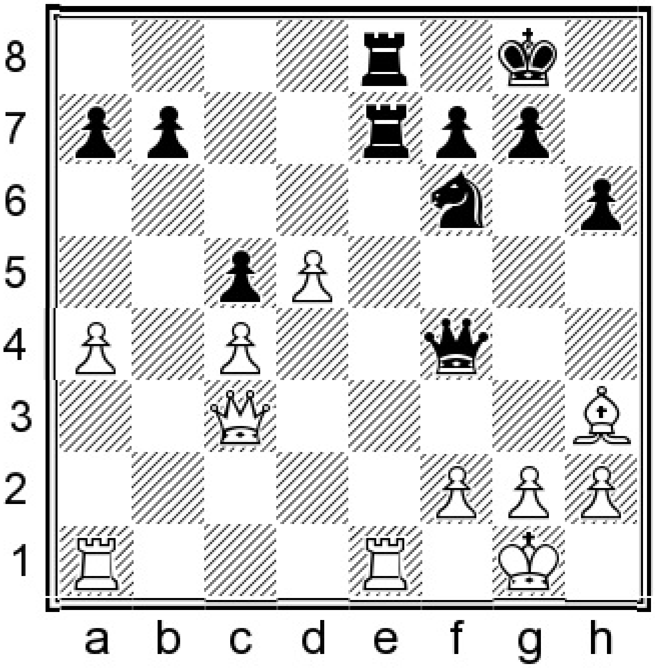


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

11 **48.♕e6+!** 1-0 Gunina-Bulmaga, Porto Carras Ech-tt W 2011.

12

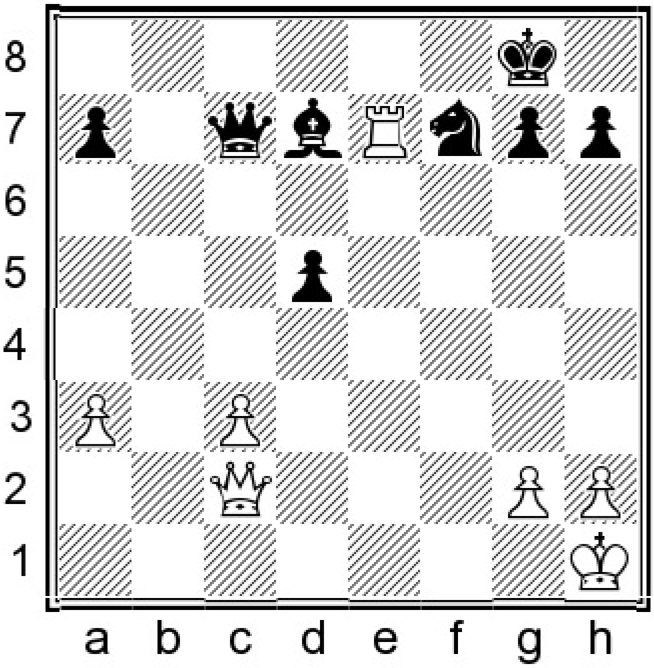


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

12 **24...♕d4!** 0-1 Alavi-Wang Rui, Jakarta tt 2011; 25.♕a5 b6.

13

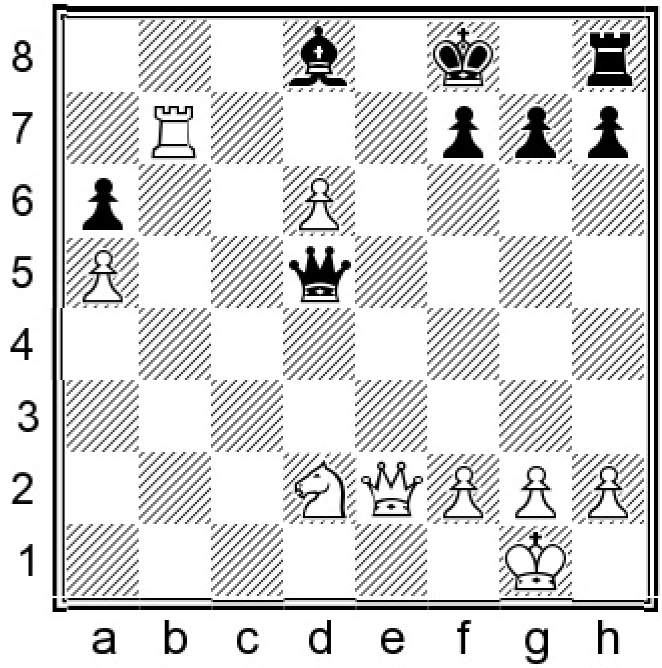


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

13 **29.♕f5!** 1-0 Spoelman-Krämer, Germany Bundesliga 2010/11; 29...♗xf5 30.♖e8#.

14

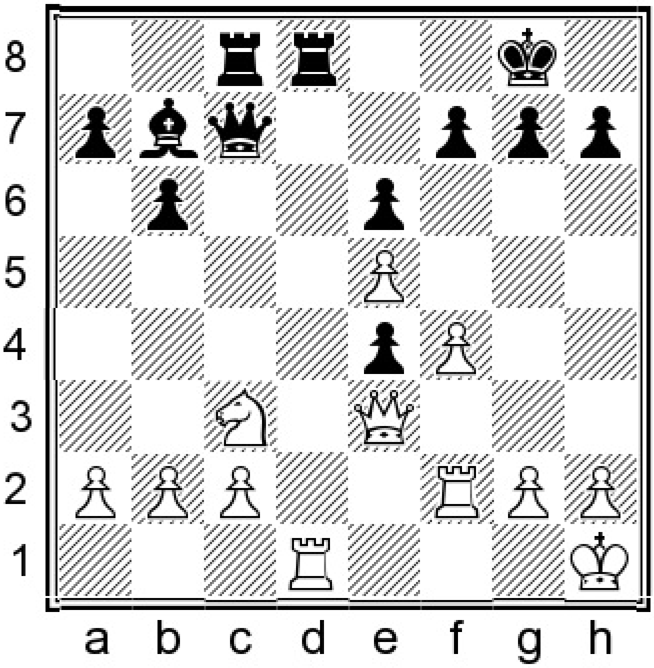


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

14 **29.♕e7+!** Tikkanen-Cramling, Falun ch-SWE 2012; Black resigned, seeing the mate after 29...♗xe7 30.♖b8+ ♗d8 31.♖xd8#.

15

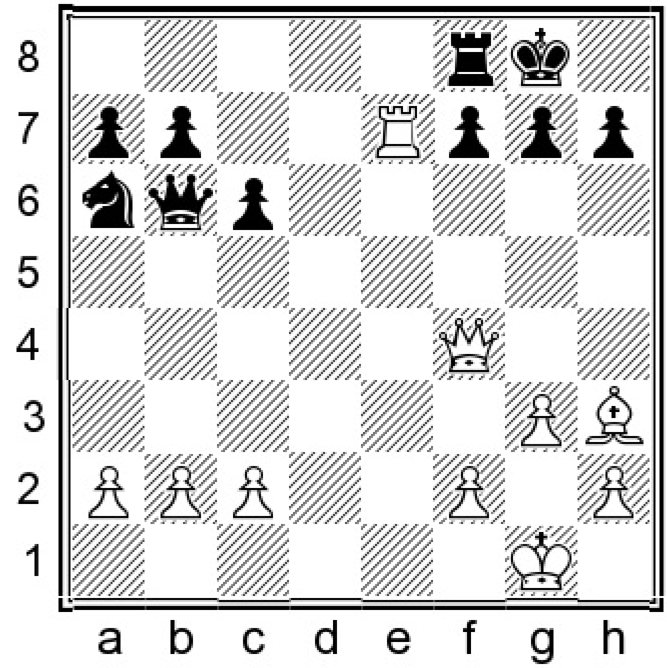


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

15 **20...♕xc3!** Oparin-Ioannic, Trieste 2012; White resigned. The exchange of rooks on d8 does not help, as d1 is undefended.

16

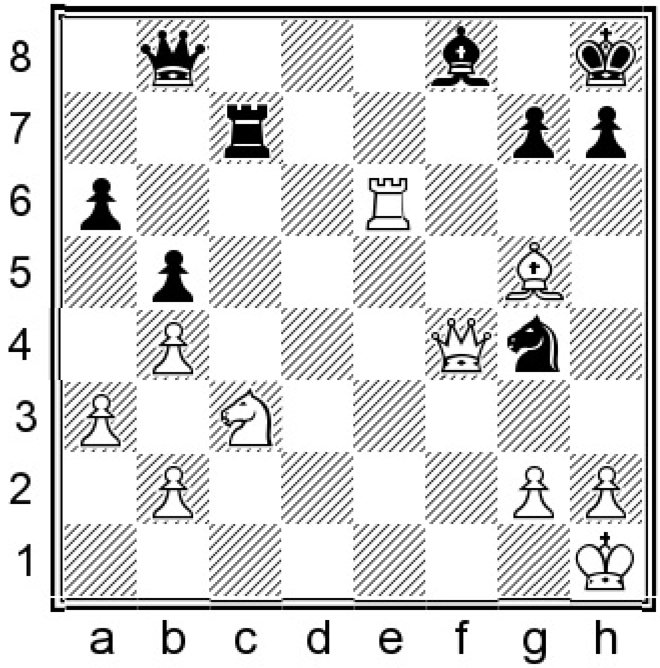

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h

White to play

Show/Hide Solution

16 **24.♕xf7+!** Giri-Picard, Bussum 2009; Black resigned, as he is mated by force: 24...♖xf7 25.♖e8+ ♖f8 26.♗e6+.

17

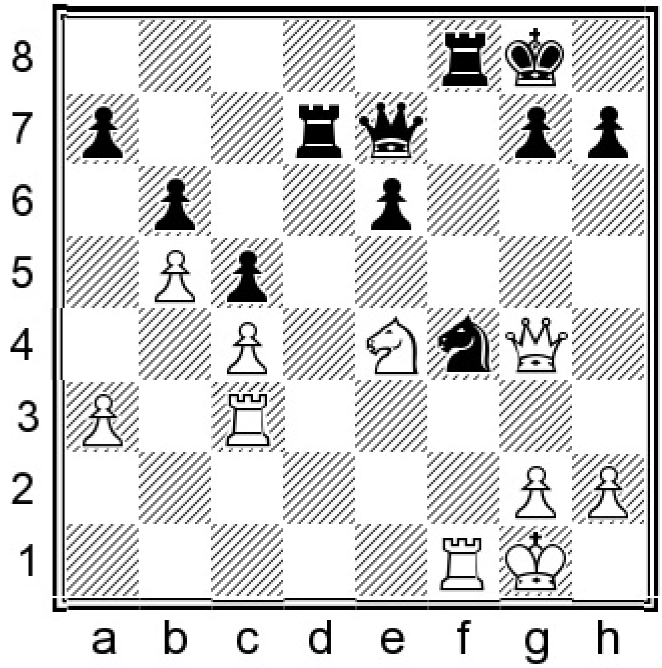


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

17 **27...♖f7!** 0-1 Ostos-Jimenez, Panama City 2013; 28.♕xb8 ♖f1# or 28.♕xf7 ♕xh2#.

18

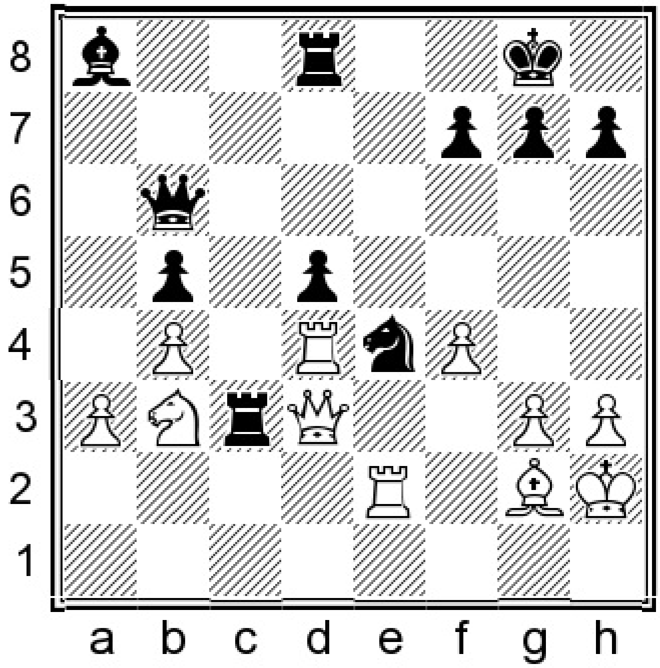


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

18 **23...♕h4! 24.h3** Necessary; the queen has no retreat, as she must defend e2. For example: 24.♕xh4 ♘e2+ 25.♔h1 ♖xf1#. But now White loses a rook: **24...♕xg4 25.hxg4 ♘e2+** 0-1 Faltico-Karas, Slovakia tt 2013/14.

19

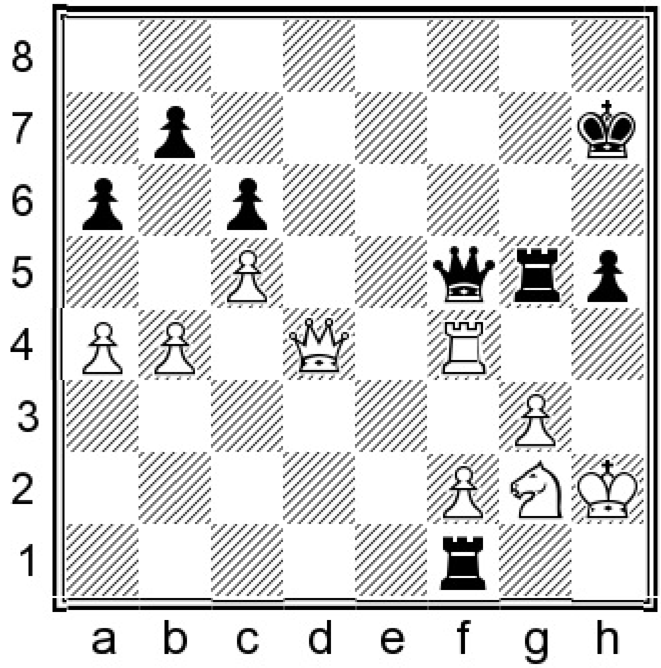


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

19 **40.♖dxe4!** Rücker-Reza, Krakow 2013; Black resigned, because after 40...dxe4 41.♕xc3 he loses a piece, whilst on 40...♖xd3 decisive is 41.♖e8+.

20

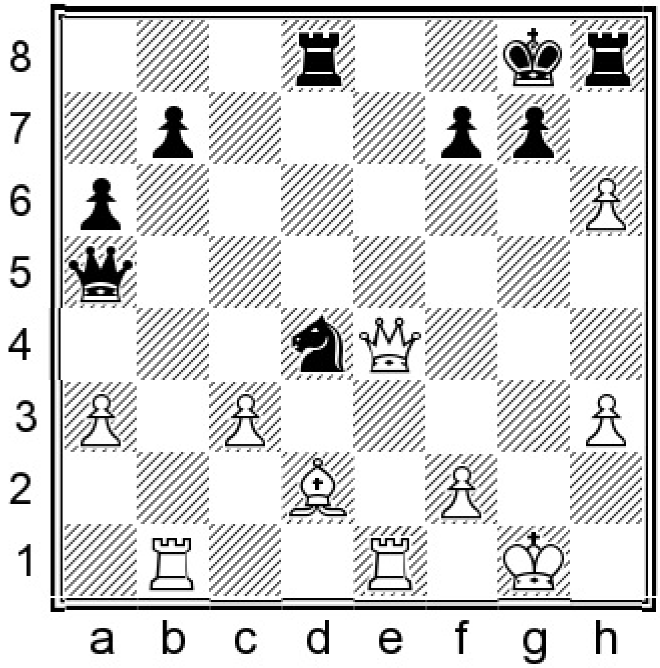


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

20 **48...♕h3+!** 0-1 Maletin-Bocharov, Khanty-Mansiysk rapid 2013.

21

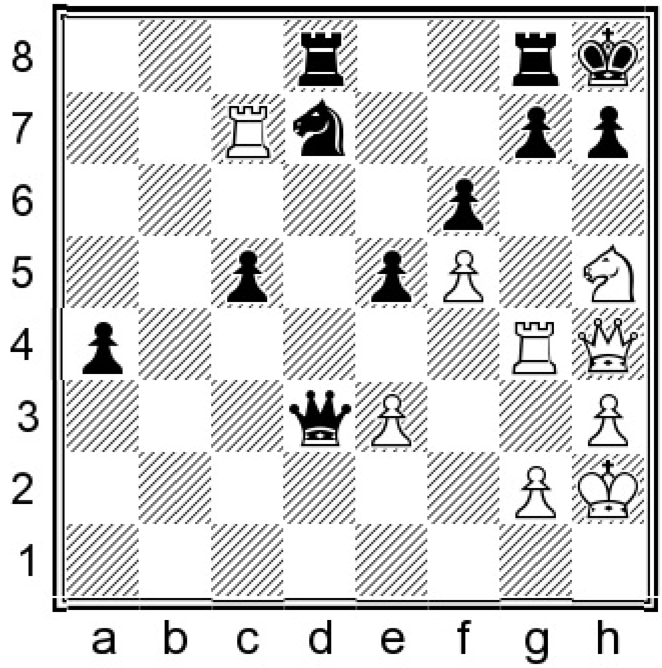


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

21 **22.h7+!** Enticing the rook to h7 and at the same time depriving the king of a bolthole. **22...♖xh7 23.♕e8+ ♖xe8 24.♖xe8#** Michalik-Löffler, Austria Bundesliga B 2012/13.

22

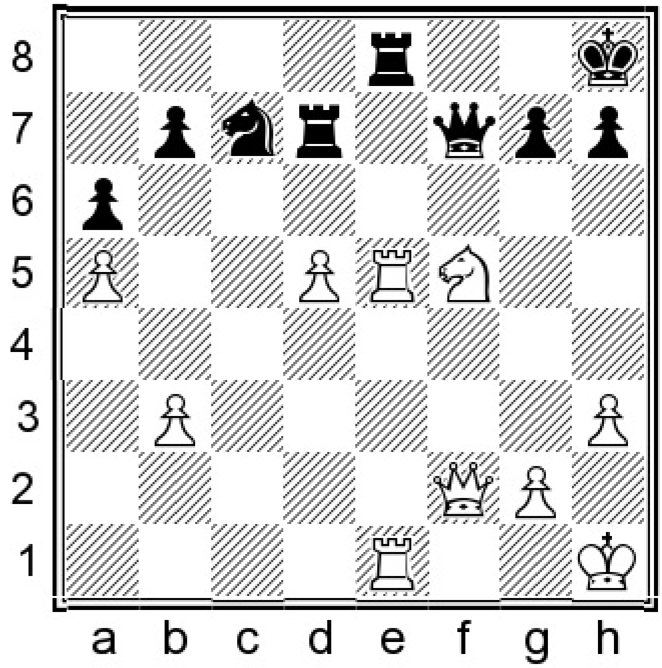


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

22 **31.♘f4! ♕xf5** Leads to loss of the queen, but nor is he saved by the capture 31...exf4 32.♕xh7+! ♔xh7 33.♖h4#. **32.♘g6+ ♕xg6 33.♖xg6 a3 34.♖a7 ♖a8 35.♖xd7** 1-0 Wang Hao-Roktim, Hyderabad Ach 2005.

23

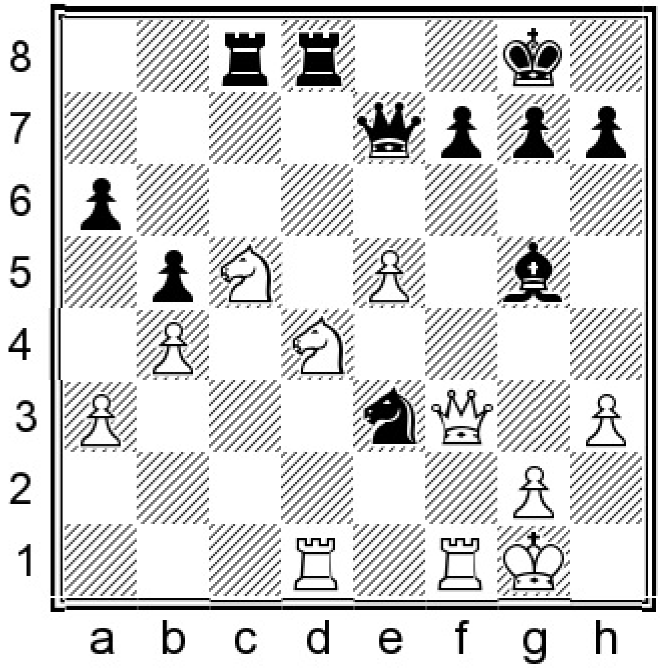


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

23 **42.♘d6!** 1-0. Karpov-Sveshnikov, Russia tt 2006); mate results from 42...♕xf2 43.♖xe8+, whilst after 42...♖xe5 43.♘xf7+ ♖xf7 44.♕xf7 ♖xe1+ 45.♔h2 Black must defend the back-rank mate, leaving his knight undefended.

24

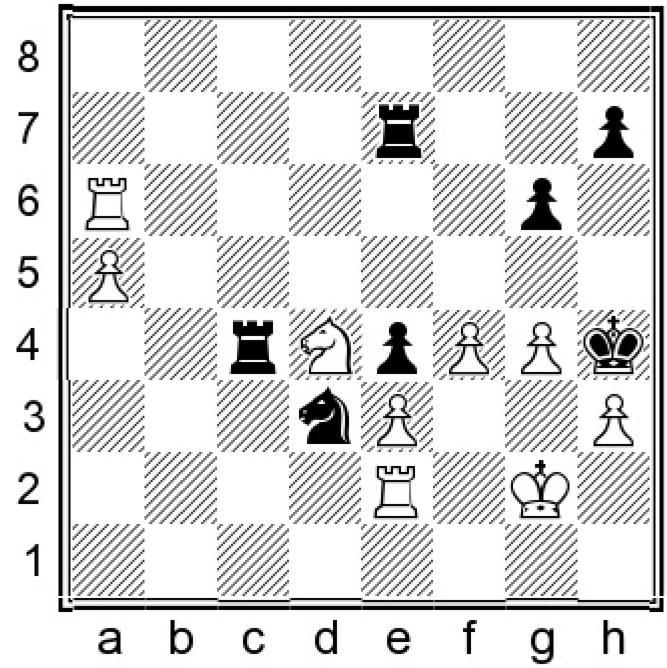


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

24 **33.♘c6! ♖xc6 34.♖xd8+ ♕xd8 35.♕xf7+** 1-0 Stefanova-Dunis, France tt 2006.

25

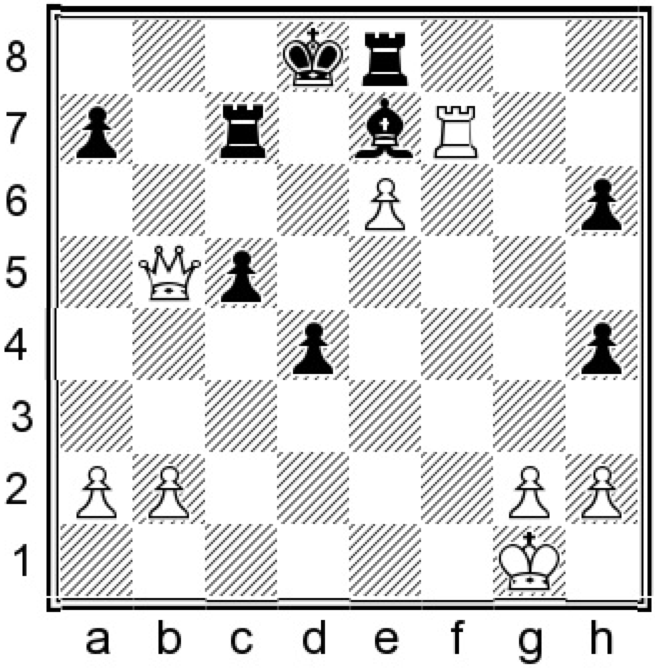


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

25 **46.♘f5+!** Xu Jun-Christiansen, Shanghai tt 2002; Black resigned because of 46...gxf5 47.♖h6#.

26

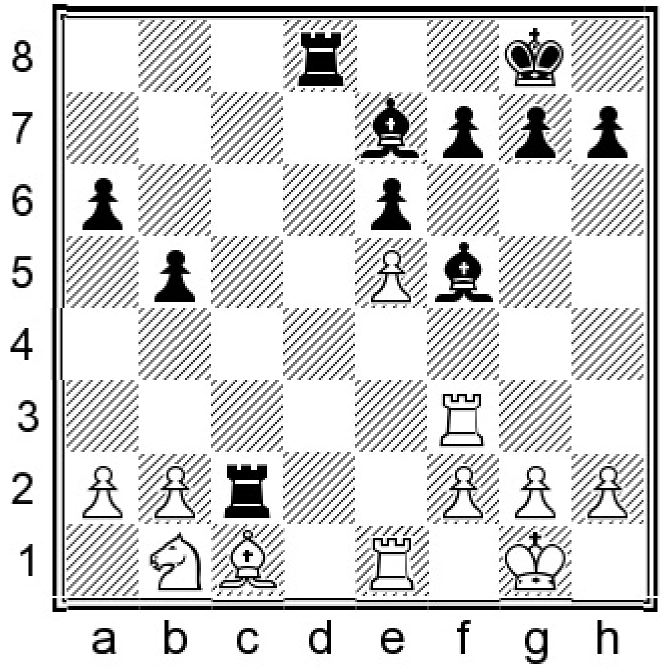


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

26 **32.♕b8+ ♖c8 33.♕d6+!** Krush-Stefanova, Krasnoturinsk W 2004; Black resigned, without waiting for the epaulette mate after 33...♗xd6 34.♖d7#. Of course, the prosaic 33.♕xa7 also wins without a problem, but the manoeuvre in the game is worth knowing and having in one’s armoury.

27

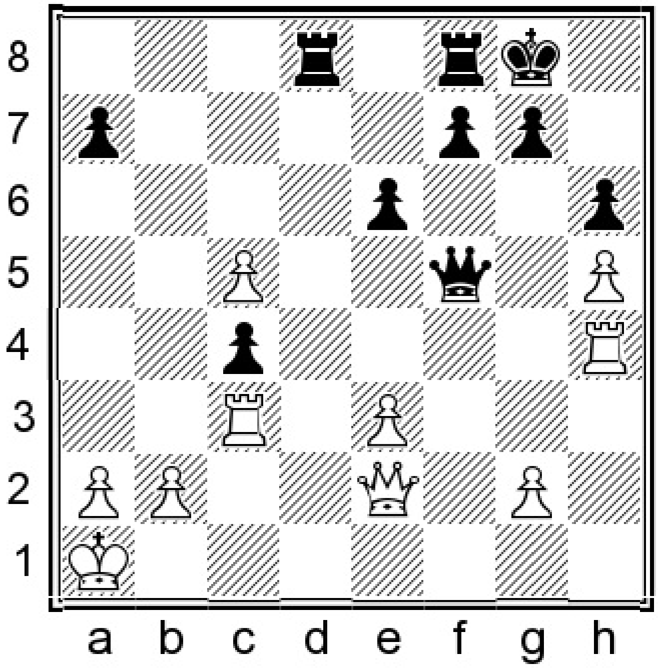

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h

Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

27 **25...♖e2!** Bishop-Brown, Cammeray 2013; White resigned: after the forced 26.♖f1 the ♘b1 is undefended.

28

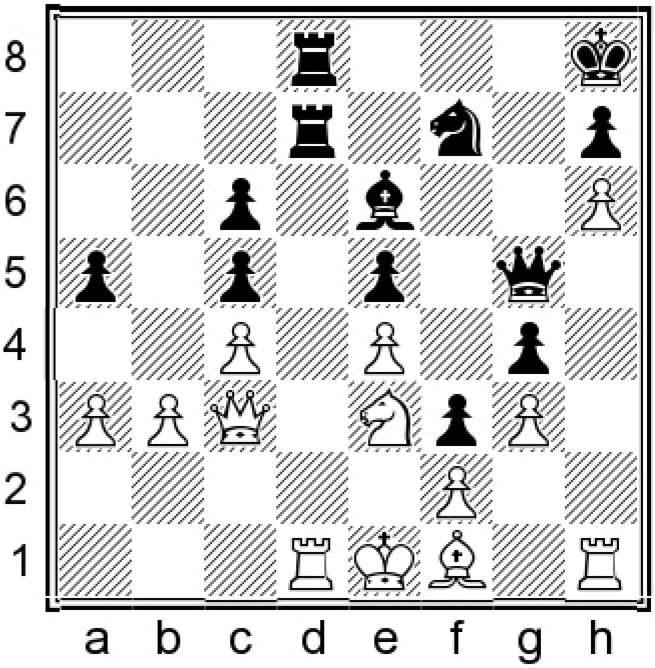


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

28 **25...♕f2!** 0-1 Stoma-Jobava, Warsaw Ech rapid 2011; a quick mate can be avoided only by 26.♕xc4, but then 26...♕xh4! wins.

29

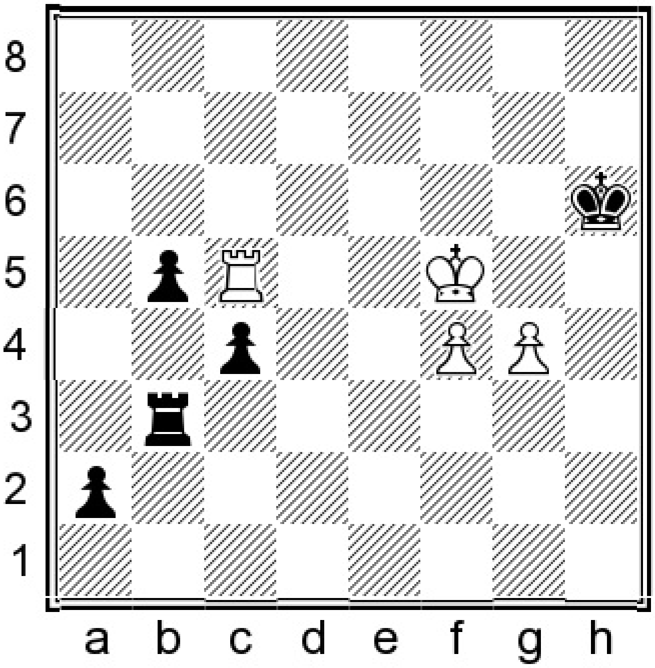

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h

Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

29 **33...♕xe3+!** Scalcione-Vocaturo, Cremona ch-ITA 2006; White resigned because of 34.fxe3 ♖xd1+ 35.♔f2 ♖8d2+ 36.♔g1 ♖g2#.

30


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

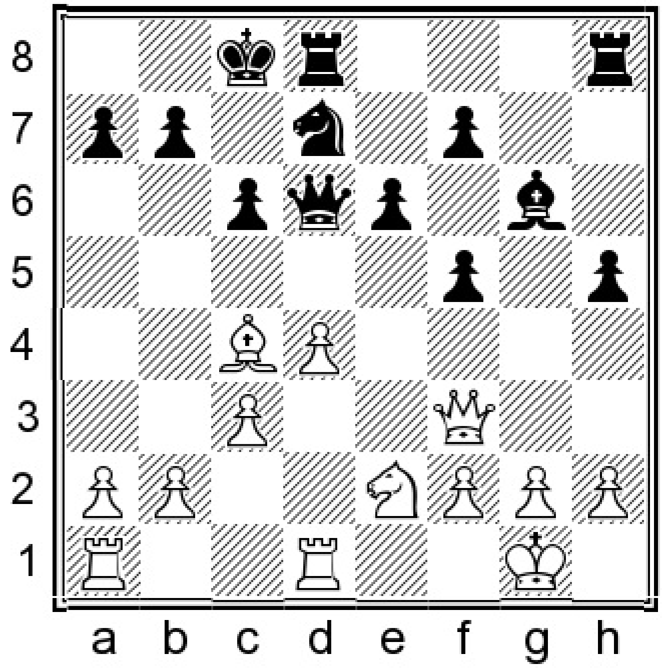
White to play

Show/Hide Solution

30 **51.♖c7!** Polyaninov-I.Popov, St Petersburg 2012; Black resigned: his king has fallen into a mating net and the threat of g4-g5+ is irresistible.

Show in Text Mode

31

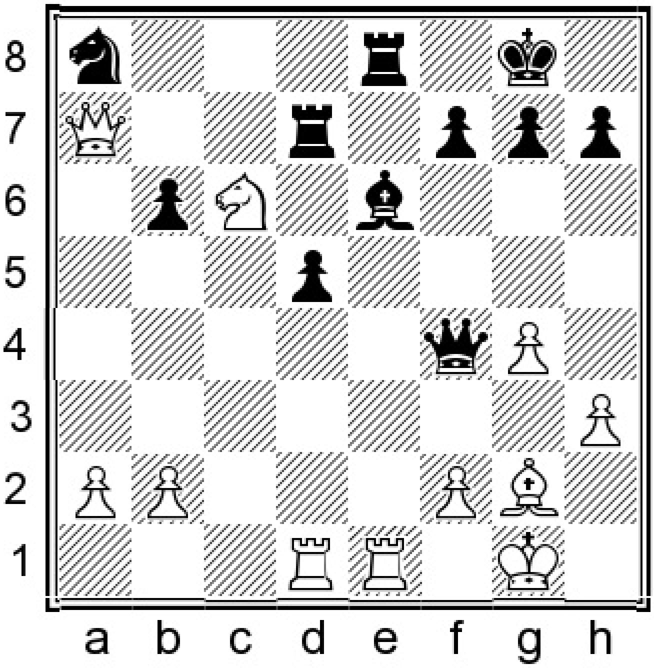


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

31 **16...♘e5!** Mikkelsen-K.Rasmussen, Denmark tt 2010/11; White resigned: either he is mated on the back rank or he loses the ♗c4.

32

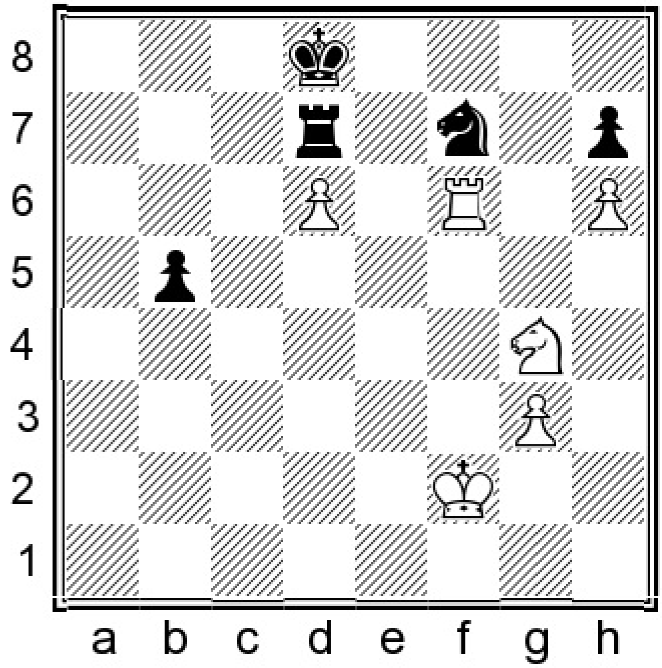


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

32 **26.♖xe6!** Perunovic-Khetkho, Istanbul ol 2012; Black resigned: he has to take the daring rook, but then after 27.♕xd7 White has an extra piece.

33

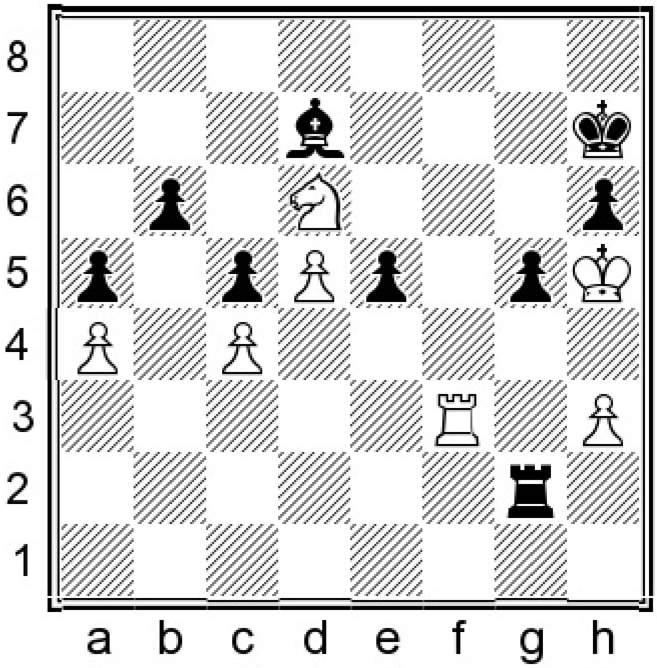


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

33 **67.♘e5!** 1-0 Delchev-Beliavsky, Plovdiv Ech-tt 2003; this nice double attack brings White a decisive material advantage, since the knight is immune because of mate on f8.

34

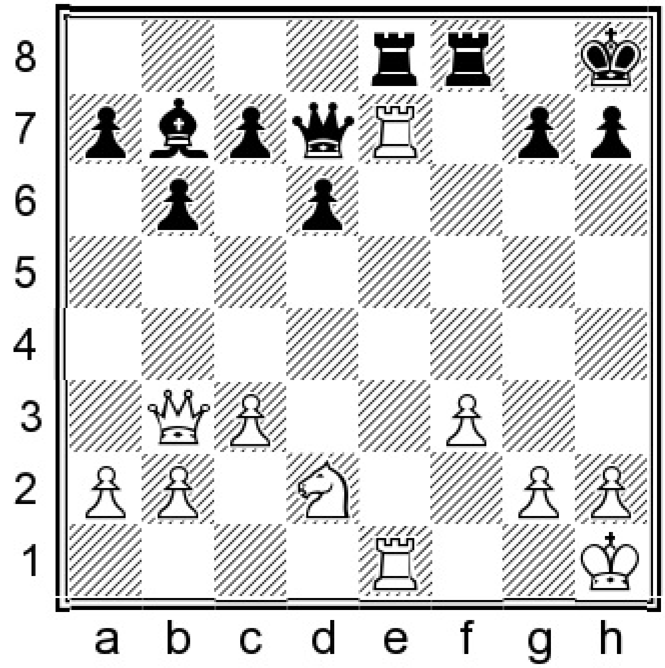

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h

Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

34 **46...♗g4+!** 0-1 Fekadu-Chandler Dresden ol 2008; 47.hxg4 ♖h2+.

35

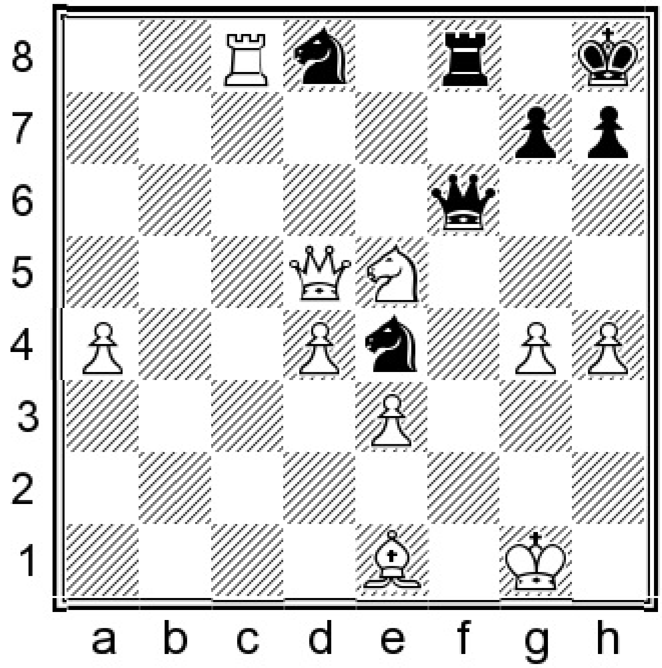


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

35 **23.♕f7!** A triple attack of sorts – on the queen, the ♖e8, and g7. Taking the white queen is impossible, of course, because of 24.♖xe8+. **23...♕xe7 24.♖xe7** 1-0 Sevillano-Peters, Los Angeles 2009.

36

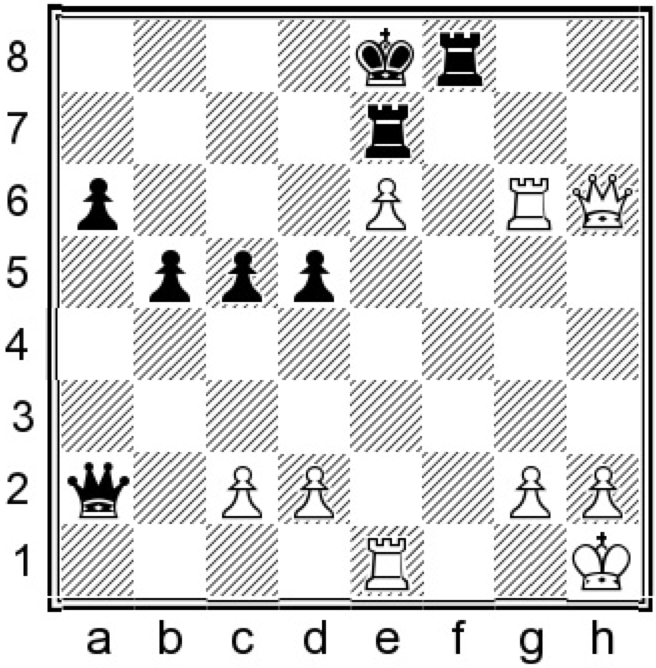


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

36 **37.♘f7+!** 1-0 Fressinet-Kosten, France tt 2008; the knight can be taken in three different ways, but none are any good (37...♕xf7 38.♕xf7; 37...♖xf7 38.♕xd8+; 37...♘xf7 38.♖xf8#).

37



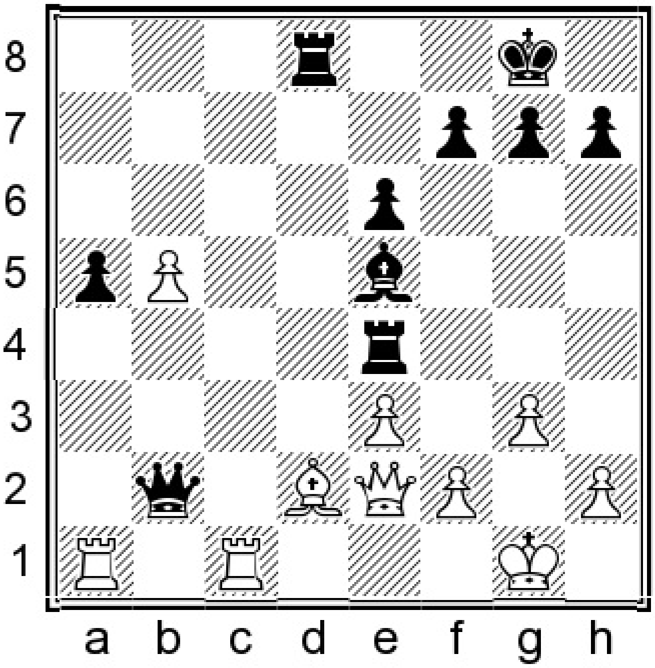
White to play

Show/Hide Solution

37 **25.♕xf8+!** Jones-Van Wely, London 2007; Black resigned because of 25...♔xf8 26.♖f1+ ♔e8 27.♖g8#.

Strictly, we should point out that 25.♖g7 also wins, but slightly more slowly.

38

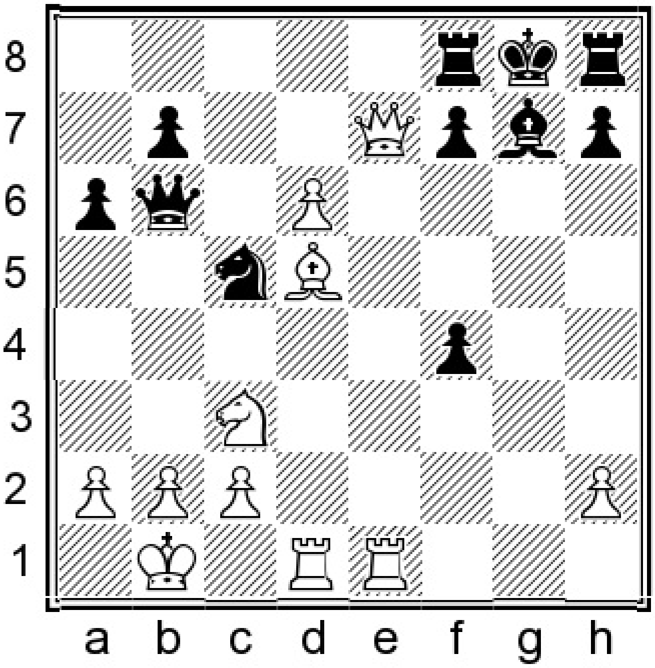


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

38 Black’s pieces are hovering threateningly over the enemy position, but the decisive factor is that lack of a bolthole for the black king... **25.♕d3!** Buhmann-Meier, Saarbrücken ch-GER 2009; Black resigned: he loses a rook.

39

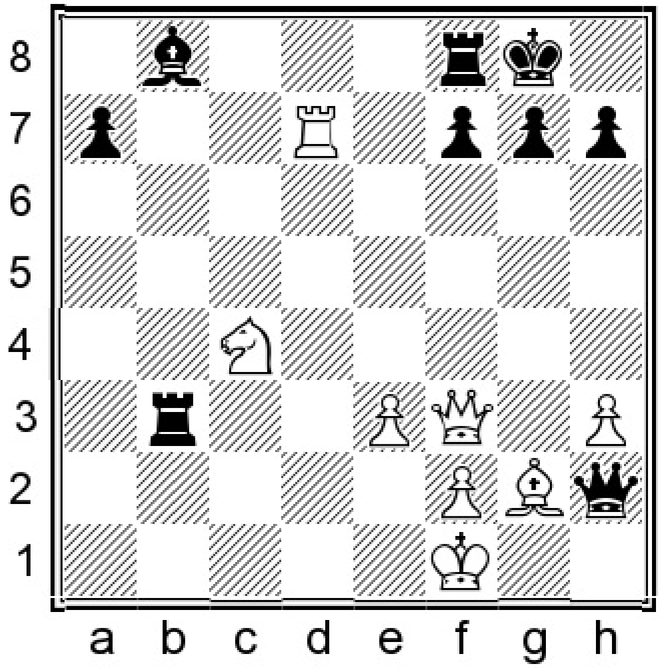


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

39 **34.♕xf7+!** Zhang Zhong-Wang Yaoyao, Jinan 2005; White wins by deflecting the bishop from the g-file with a queen sacrifice. Black resigned, in view of 34...♖xf7 35.♖e8+ ♗f8 36.♖g1#.

40

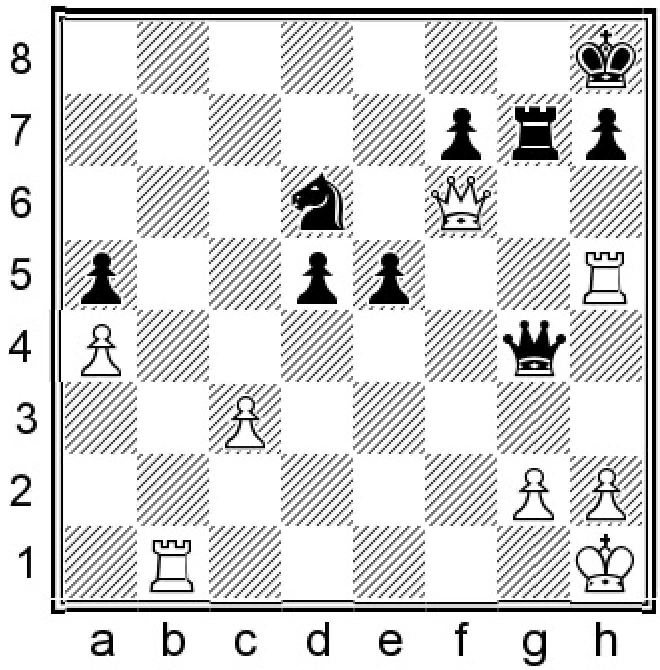


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

40 **30.♕xf7+! ♖xf7 31.♖d8+ ♖f8 32.♗d5+ ♔h8 33.♖xf8#** Fitzsimons-Griffiths, Dun Laoghaire 2010.

41

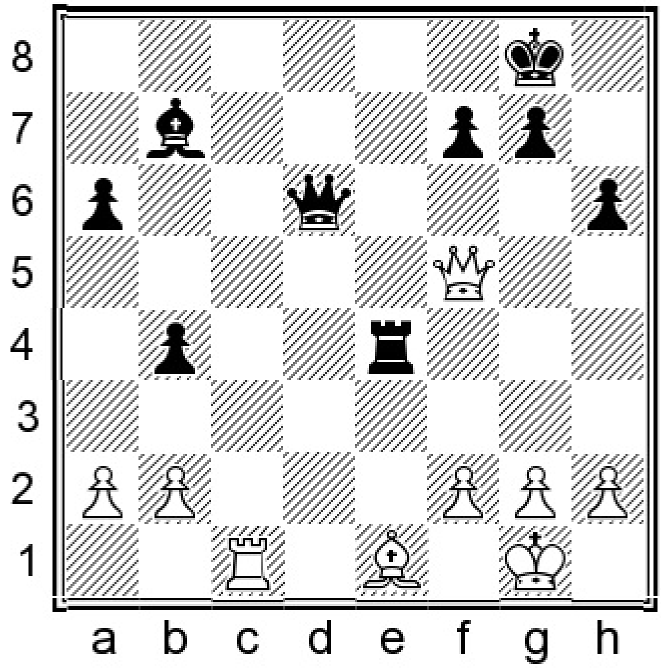


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

41 **35.♖g5!** Hanley-Smith, Port Erin 2005; liquidating the mate threat on g2, and threatening mate on g7. Black resigned. If he takes the rook, Black loses control of c8 and 36.♖b8+ decides.

42

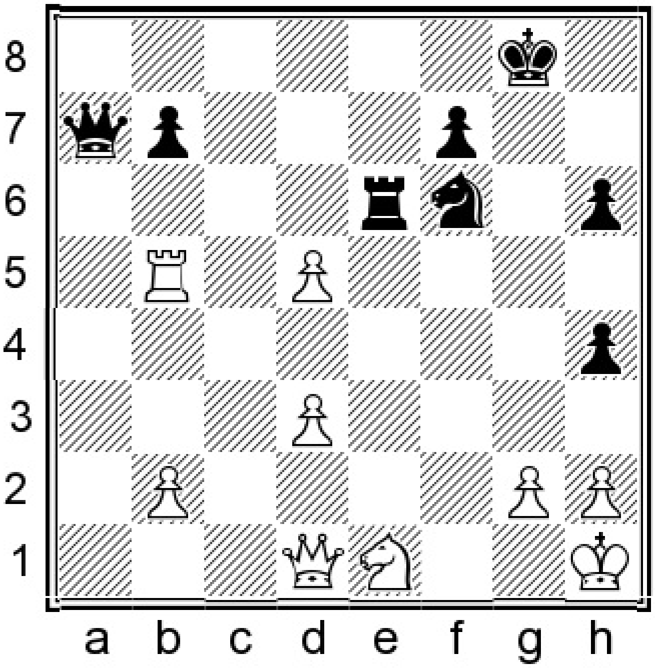


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

42 **29...♕c6!** 0-1 Rogers-Ris, Gibraltar 2007; the queen sets an ambush. Now after a retreat of the rook on the first rank, there is 30...♖xe1+ followed by mate on g2.

43



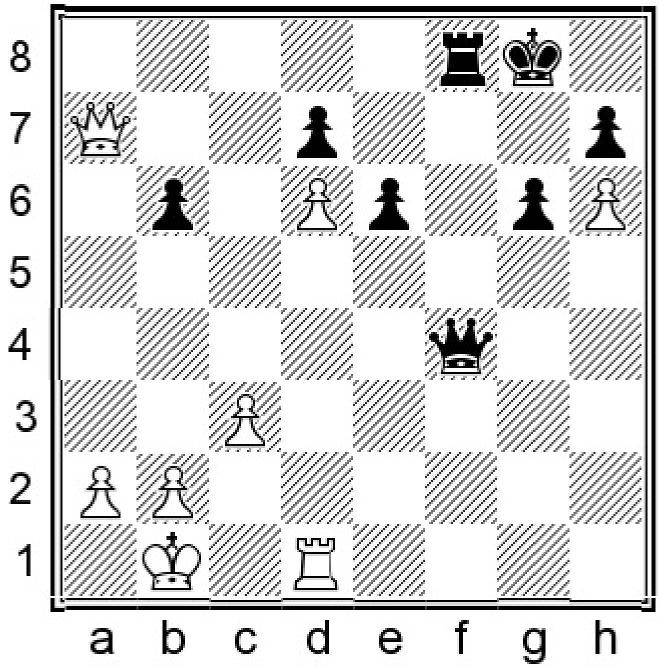
Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

43 **24...♕a4!** 0-1 Kozakov-Delorme, Sautron 2007; 25.b3 (25.♘c2 ♕xc2) 25...♖xe1+ 26.♕xe1 ♕xb5 leaves White a piece down.

Weaker is 24...♕f2 because of 25.♘f3.

44

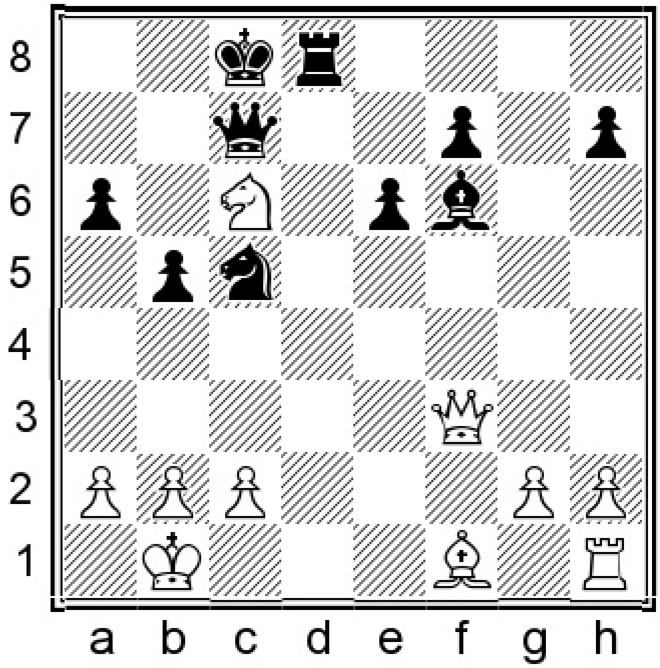


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

44 **34...♕e4+ 35.♔a1** He also loses after 35.♔c1 ♖f2 36.♖d2 ♕e1+. **35...♕d3!** Renteria-A.Horvath, Madrid 2012; White resigned: after any rook retreat, 36...♖f1 decides.

45

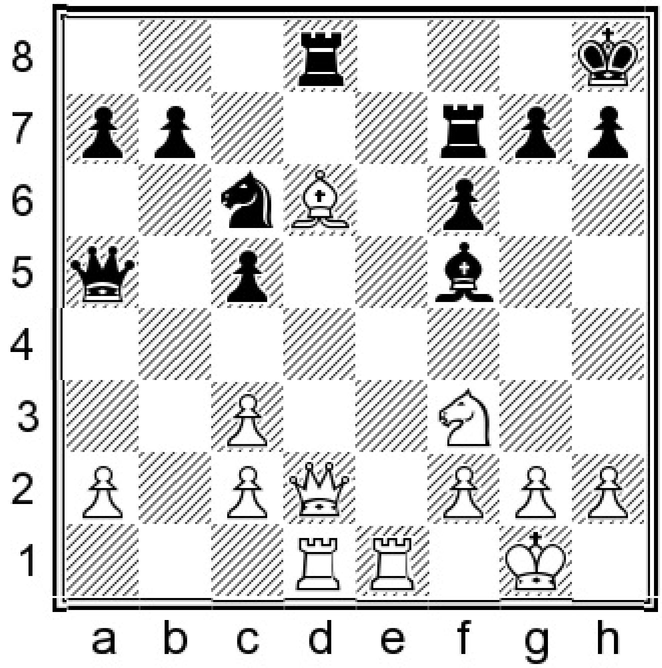


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

45 **21...♘e4!** V.Jones-Eames, Canterbury ch-GBR 2010; White resigned, because the knight cannot move in view of the threat 22...♘d2+ (for the same reason, he cannot attack the knight with 22.♗d3).

46

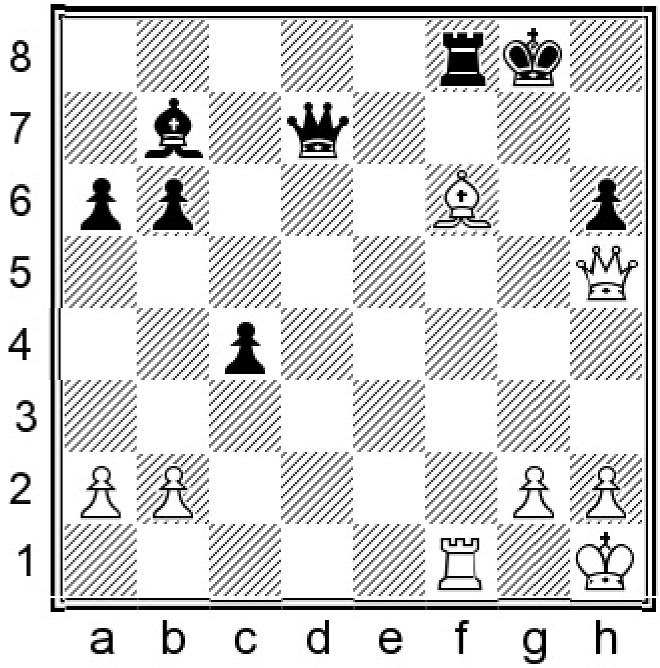


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

46 **21.♗c7! ♕xc7 22.♕xd8+** 1-0 Altnas-Myrberg, Lund 2010; mate follows from e8.

47

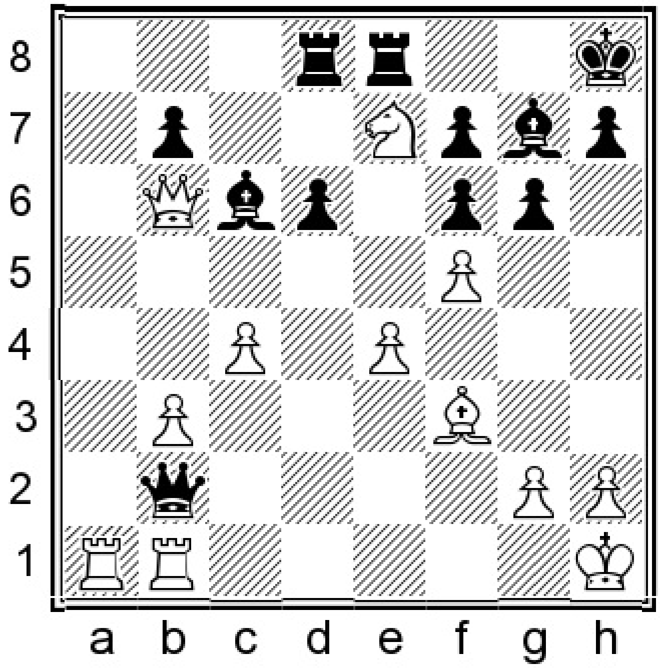


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

47 **34...♕g7!** 0-1 Kvisvik-E.David, Frederikstad 2010; the white queen has trouble finding a square where she can simultaneously defend the bishop and the g2-square. At first glance, this can be done with 35.♕f3, in turn offering a queen sacrifice, but after 35...♖xf6 the queen cannot continue to defend her king.

48

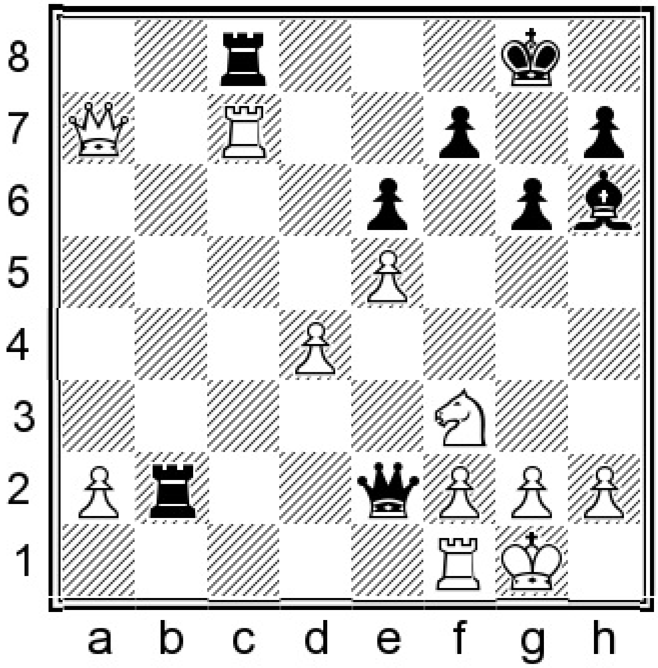


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

48 **28...♖a8!** 0-1 Adamson-Aripov, Las Vegas 2012; of course, White can defend the ill-fated rook with 29.♕g1, but then after the exchange of rooks on a1 and the capture of the knight, Black has an extra piece.

49

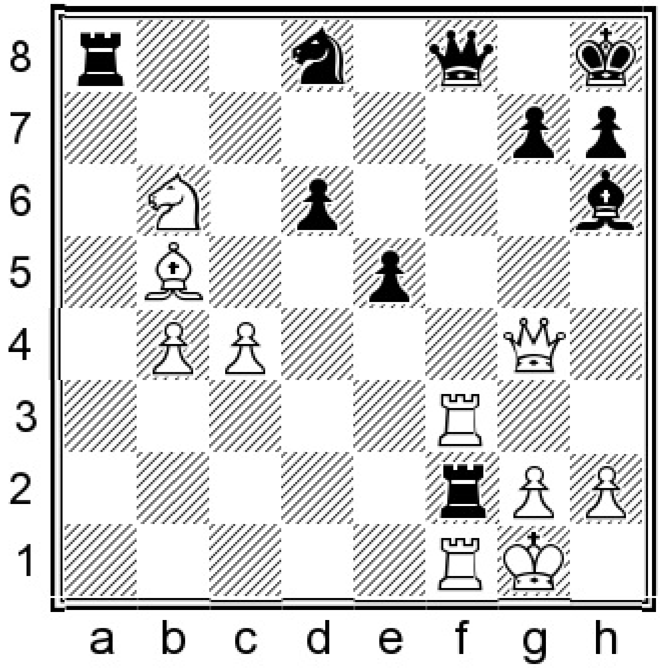

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h

Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

49 **24...♕xf2+! 25.♖xf2 ♖b1+** 0-1 Moiseenko-Jussupow, Warsaw Ech rapid 2010; on 26.♖f1 (nothing is changed by 26.♘e1) a win results from 26...♗e3+.

50

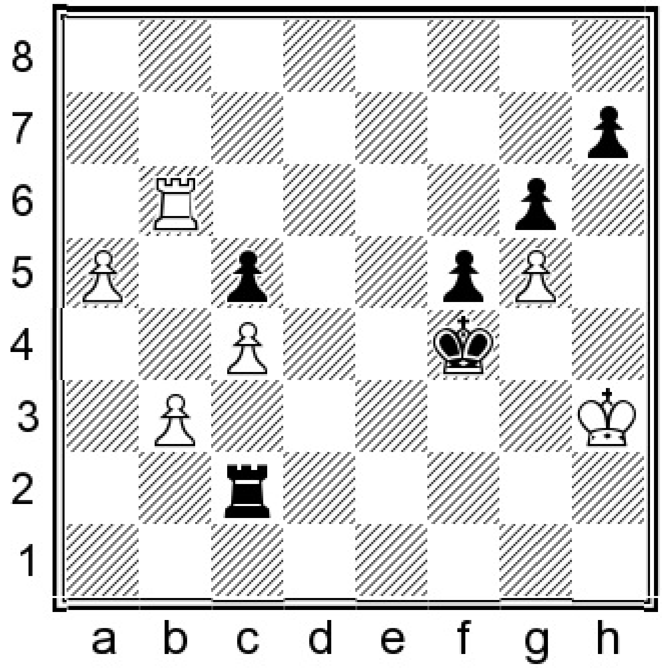


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

50 **28...♗e3!** 0-1 Tantsiura-Baklanova, Ukraine tt 2011; 29.♖3xf2 ♕xf2+!; 29.♖1xf2 ♖a1#.

51

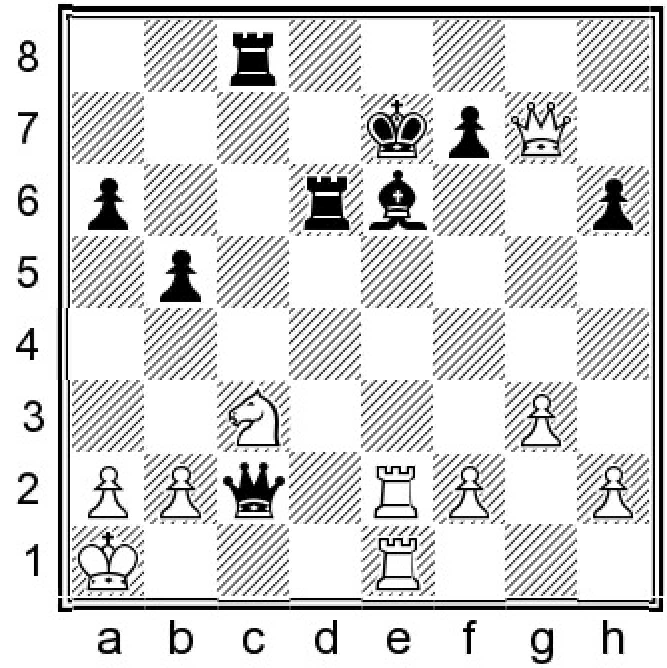


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

51 **54...h6!** Maiwald-Fisch, Germany Bundesliga 2004/05; White resigned because of 55.gxh6 (55.♖xg6 hxg5) 55...g5 56.h7 g4+ 57.♔h4 ♖h2#.

52

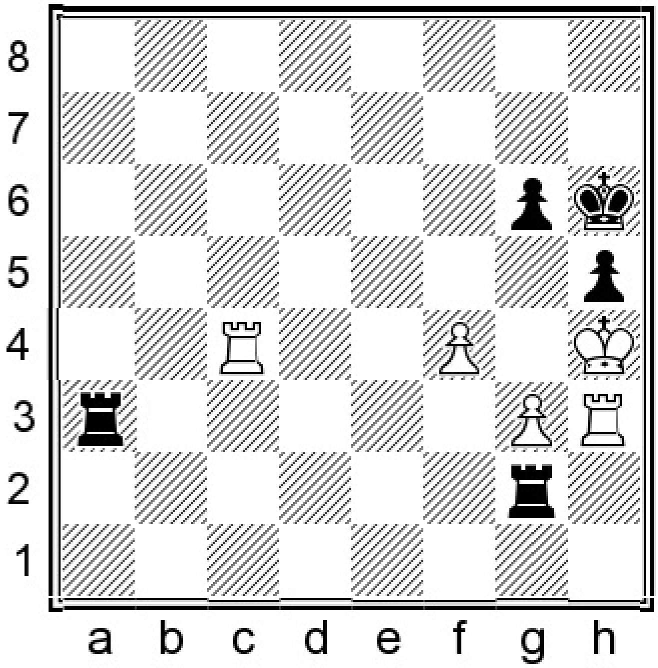

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

52 **30...♖d1+! 31.♖xd1 ♕xd1+! 32.♘b1** (32.♘xd1 ♖c1#) **32...♕xe2** Dzagnidze-Benderats, Kemer tt W 2007; a rook down, White resigned.

53

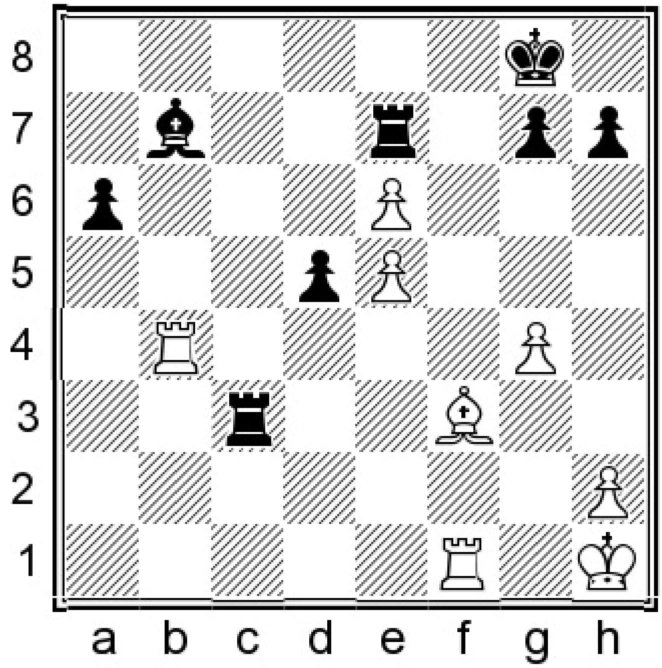


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

53 **45...♖f3!!** Zugzwang. Now any white move is fatal, for example: 46.♖b4 ♖xf4+! 47.♖xf4 g5# or 47.gxf4 ♖g4#. **46.♖c5** Ynojosa Aponte-Dgebuadze, La Massana 2012; and White resigned, without waiting for 46...♖xf4+.

54

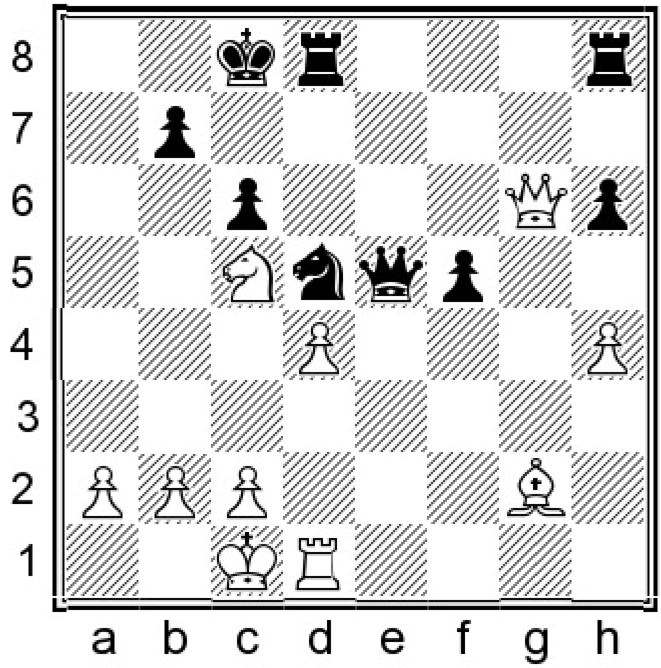


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

54 **28.♖xb7! ♖xb7 29.e7!** 1-0 H.Hunt-Yakovich, Stockholm 2001/02; this is the point of White's play. This zwischenzug forces immediate resignation: the pawn cannot be taken because of 30.♗xd5+, but the retreat 29...♖b8 also fails after 30.♗xd5+, when the king must go into the corner and a rook check on f8 decides.

55

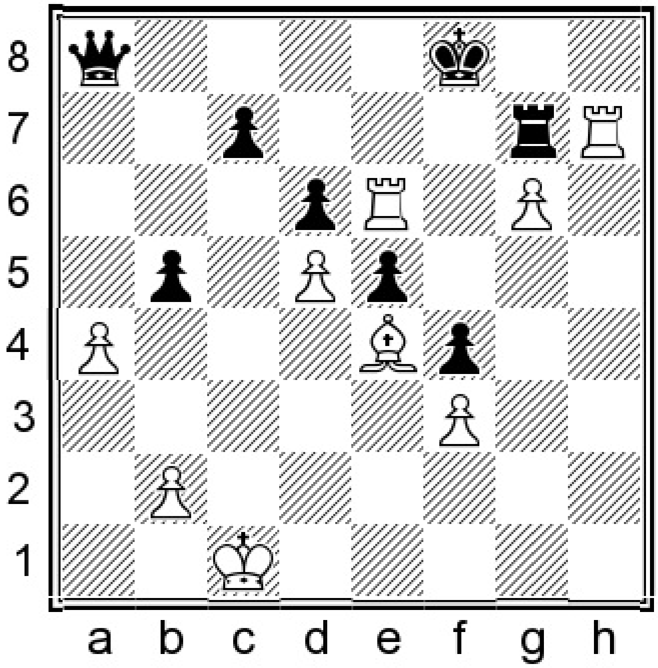


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

55 One’s first thought is to retreat the attacked queen; for example, by giving check. But, on closer examination, a more forcing decision is possible: **26...♘f4! 27.dxe5** On 27.♕f7 there is 27...♕xc5! with the same idea as in the game. **27...♘e2+** 0-1 Hou Yifan-Bu Xiangzhi, China tt 2012.

56

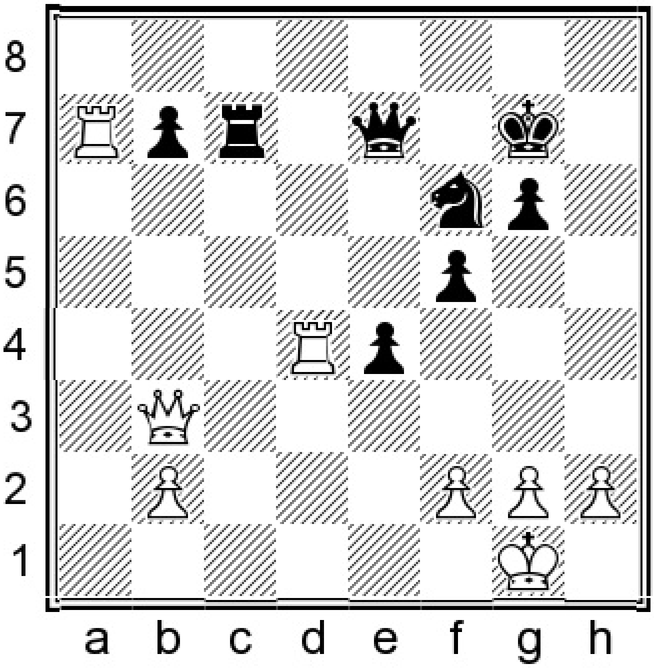

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h

White to play

Show/Hide Solution

56 **37.♖h8+ ♖g8 38.♖f6+ ♔g7 39.♖f7+!** 1-0 Rajlich-Ilincic, Budapest 2006; 39...♔xh8 40.♖h7#.

57

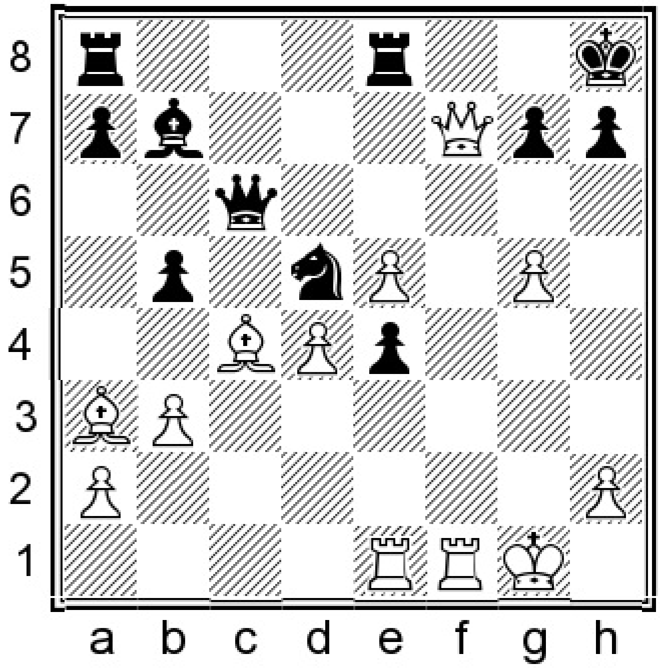


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

57 **36...♕b4!!** 0-1 Richter-E.Berg, Gothenburg 2011; on 37.♕d1 there is 37...♕xd4!.

58

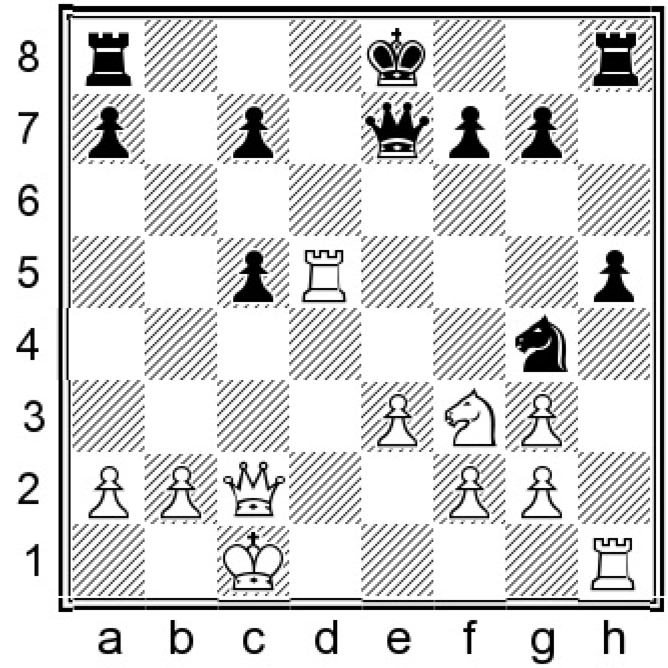


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

58 **24.♗xb5!** Sandipan-Danilenko, Paleochora 2011; this way, the queen is deflected from the 6th rank. Black resigned because of 24...♕xb5 25.♗f8!, and the queen cannot defend g7.

59

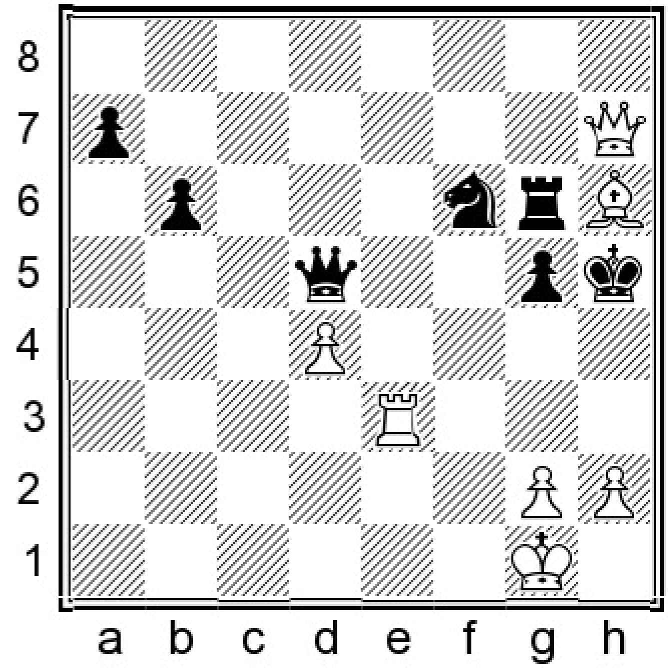


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

59 At first, it seems that White has only a small positional advantage, but suddenly... **17.♕a4+! ♔f8 18.♕xg4!** 1-0 Christensen-Skovgaard, Copenhagen 2006.

60



White to play

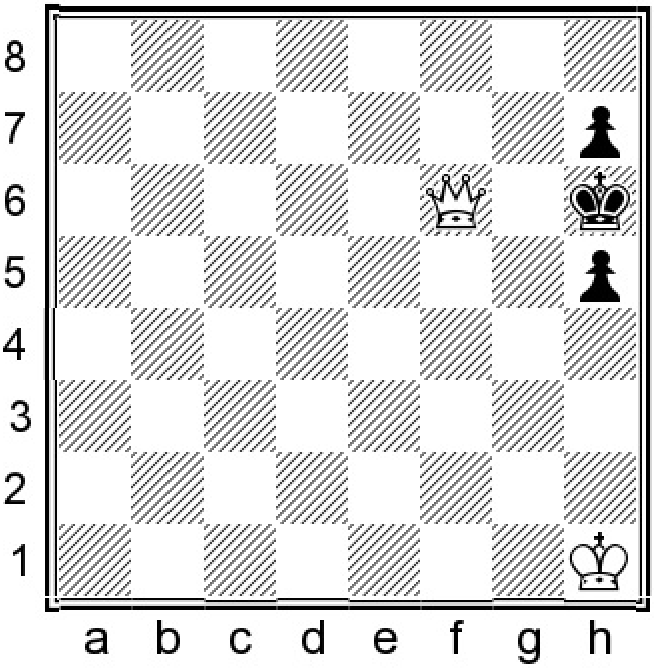
Show/Hide Solution

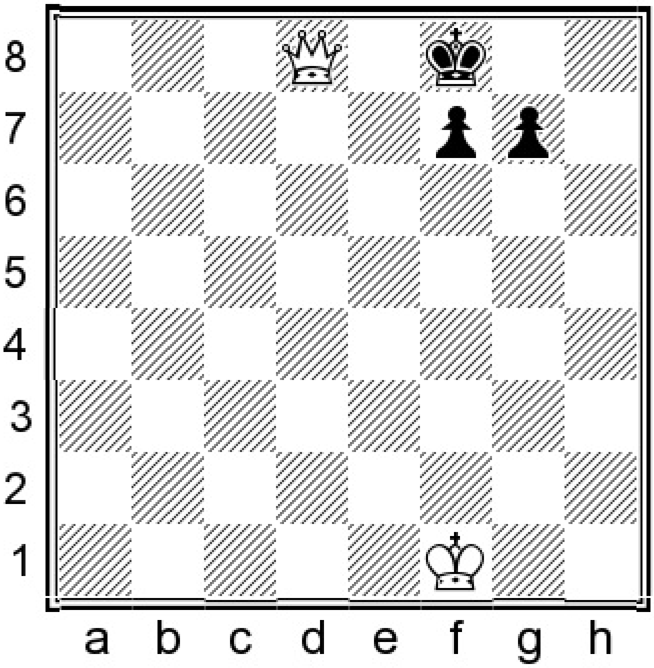
60 Nothing comes from 35.♖h3+ ♔g4 36.♕xg6 ♕xd4+ 37.♔f1 ♕d1+, and White cannot avoid perpetual.

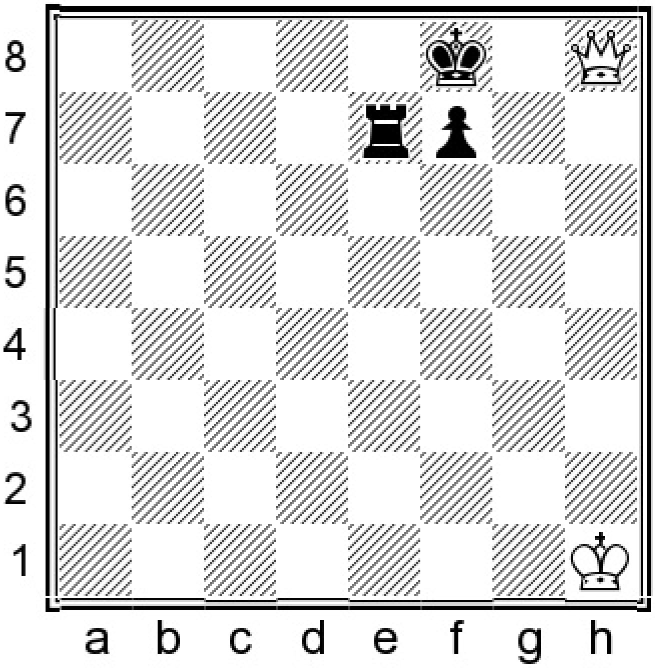
But there is **35.g4+! ♘xg4** (here it is harder to play on a rook down: 35...♔xg4 36.♕xg6, and the d4-pawn falls without check) **36.♖h3#** Olszewski-Van der Weide, Cappelle-la-Grande 2005.

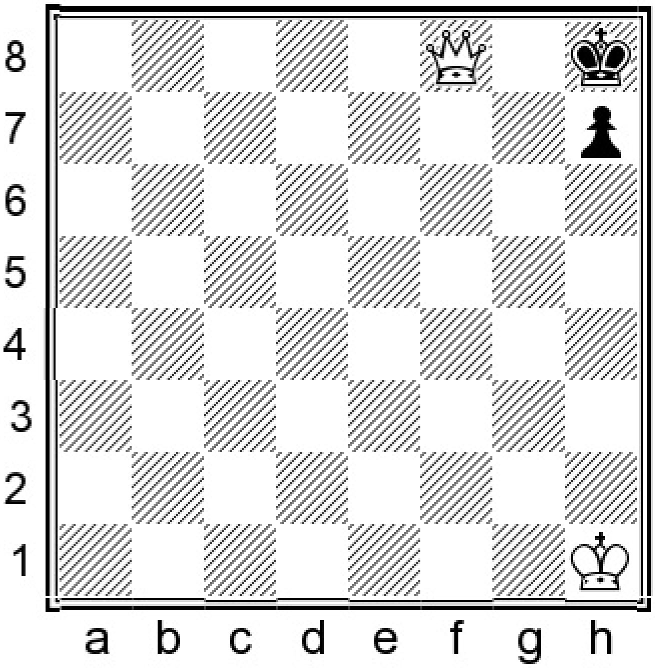
Chapter 2
The queen

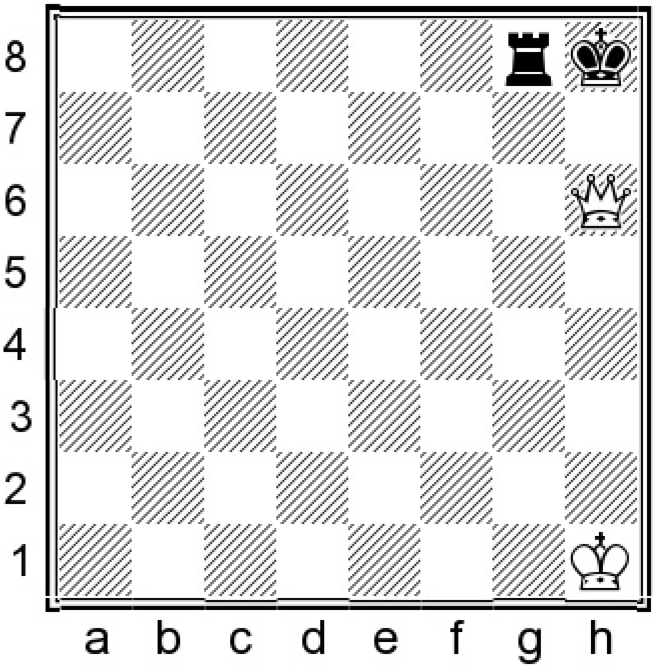
The strongest piece on the board can mate an enemy king both along lines and diagonals. When the king is blocked in by his own units, the queen can also checkmate without additional help.

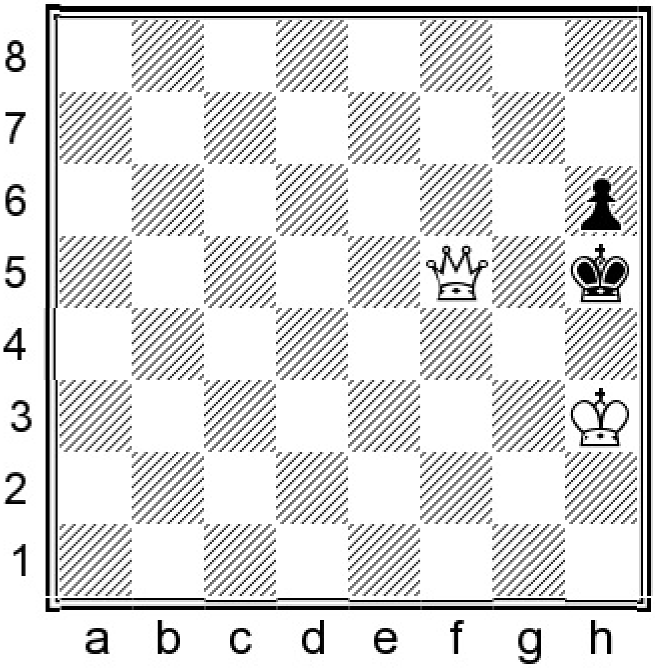




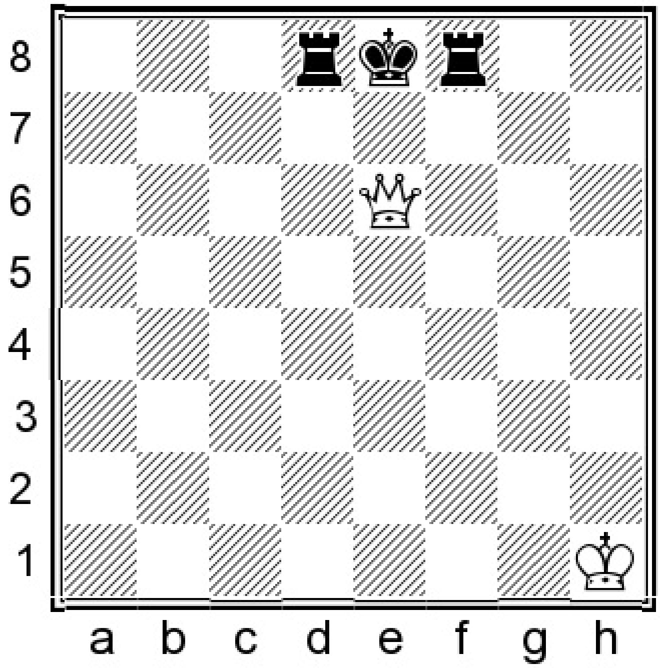

a b c d e f g h


a b c d e f g h

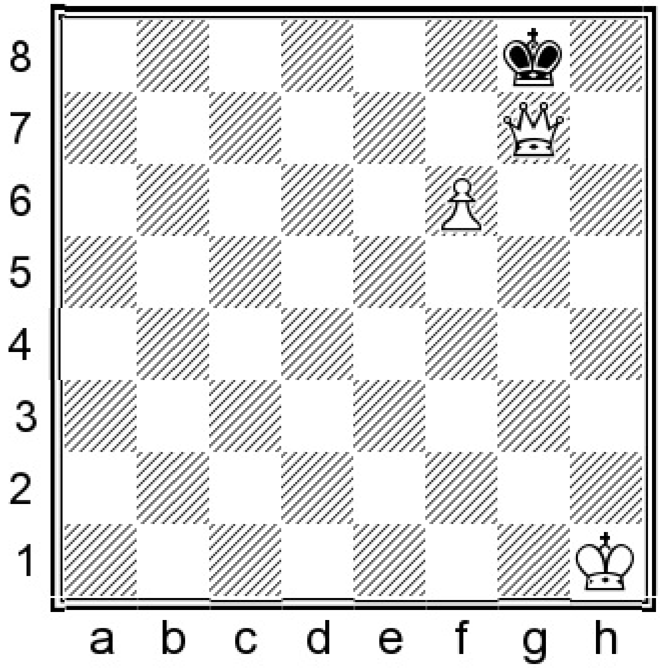


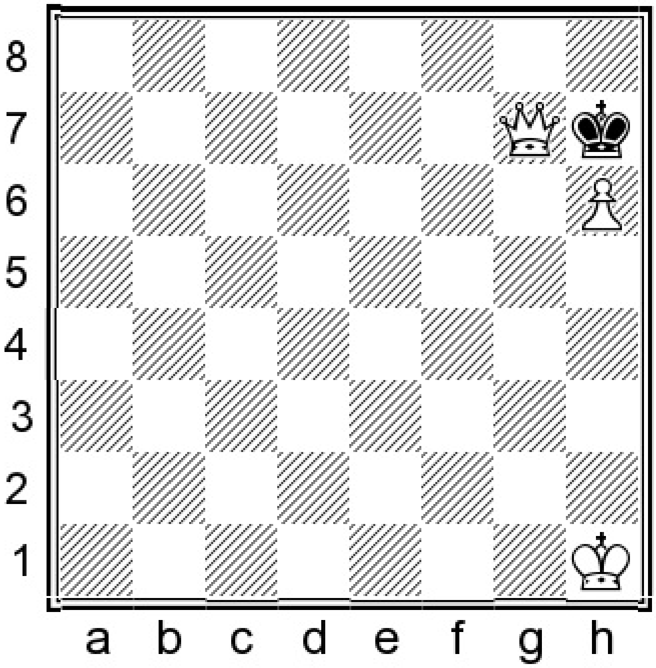


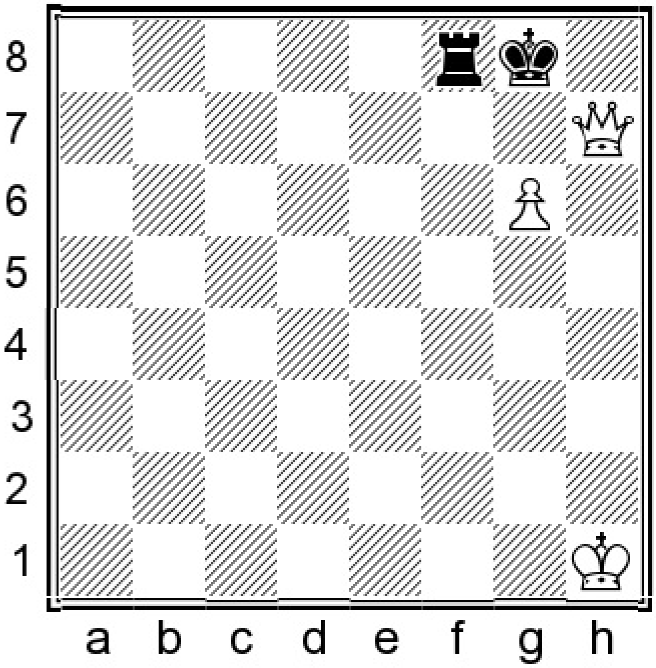
One such position is known as the ‘epaulette’ mate.

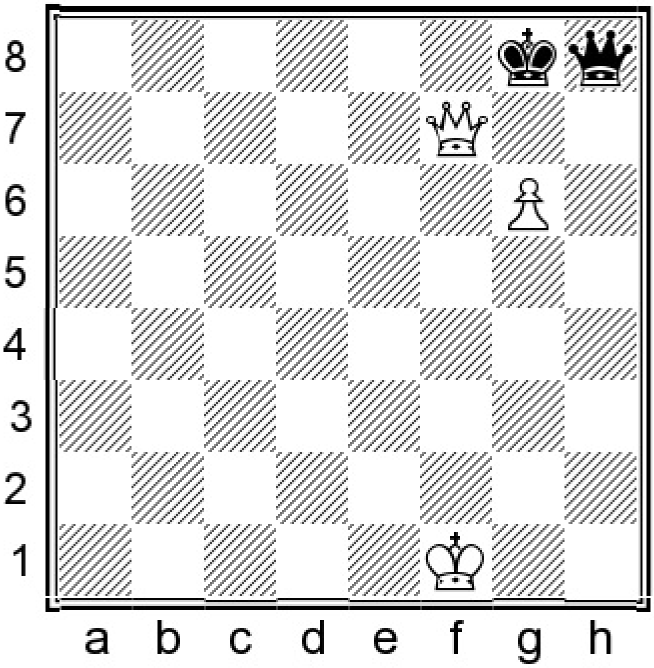


In practice, the queen most often mates with the help of a far-advanced pawn. If the attacking pawn gets to the squares f6, g6 or h6 (or f3/g3/h3, with colours reversed) the defender faces tough times.

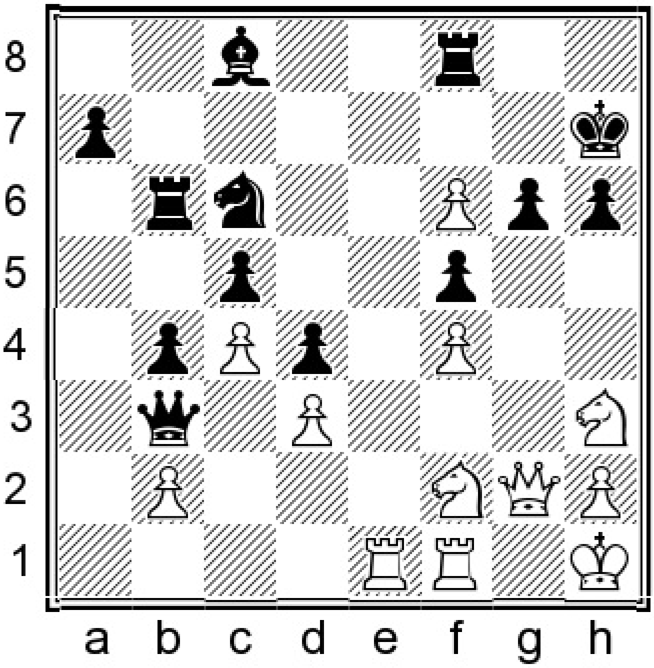



a b c d e f g h


a b c d e f g h



Peter Kruger 2085
Ibro Saric 2345
Yerevan Wch U20 2000 (2)



White to play

The black queen has rather carelessly allowed herself to be cut off far from the scene of the battle and can clearly not help defend her king, over which the storm-clouds are gathering. This theme is a principal one in many combinations and we will see it many times more. However, to achieve success, we need to work on the pawn shield around the black king:

26.♘g5+! ♔h8

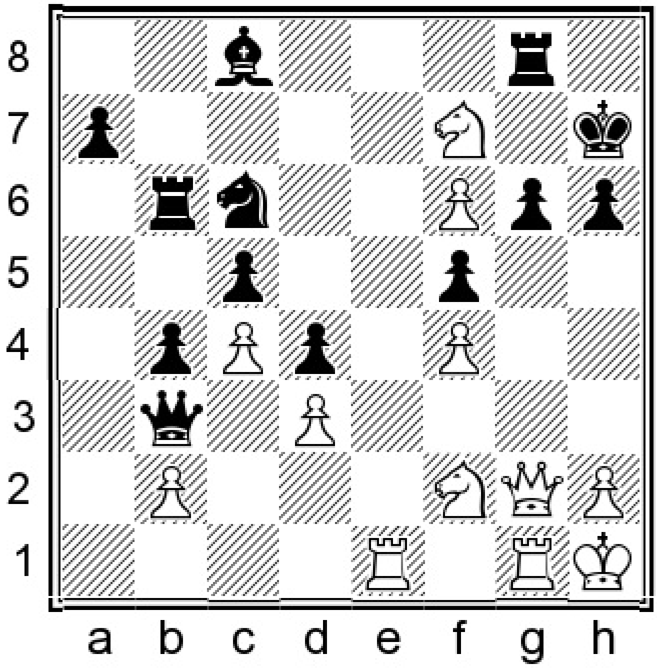
Sad necessity. He loses quickly after both 26...hxg5 27.♕h3+ ♔g8 28.♕h6 ♖b7 29.♕xg6+ ♔h8 30.♕h6+ ♔g8 31.♕xg5+ ♔h8 32.♕h6+ ♔g8 33.♖g1+, and 26...♔g8 27.♕d5+ ♔h8 28.♕f7! (the quickest and prettiest way to win) 28...♖xf7 29.♖e8+.

27.♘f7+! ♔h7

Again the impudent knight cannot be taken: 27...♖xf7 28.♕xg6, and the threat of 29.♖e8+ decides.

28.♖g1 ♖g8

Or 28...g5 29.♘xg5+ hxg5 30.♕xg5, and Black's entire army on the queenside can only watch the death of its king.

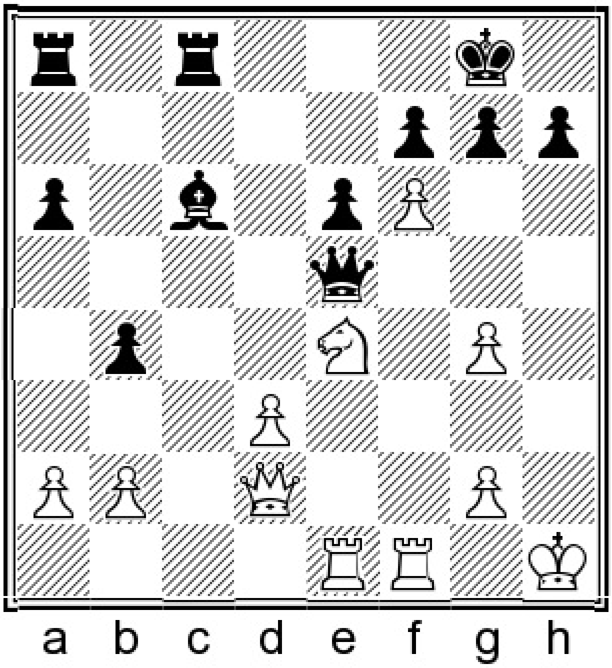


29.♘xh6!

The third and decisive knight sacrifice. Black resigned (29...♔xh6 30.♕h3#).

In the following two examples, the weaker side's queen is located in the centre, but still finds itself cut off by a rook sacrifice.

Merab Gagunashvili 2444
Evgeny Shaposhnikov 2519
Athens Wch U20 2001 (4)



White to play

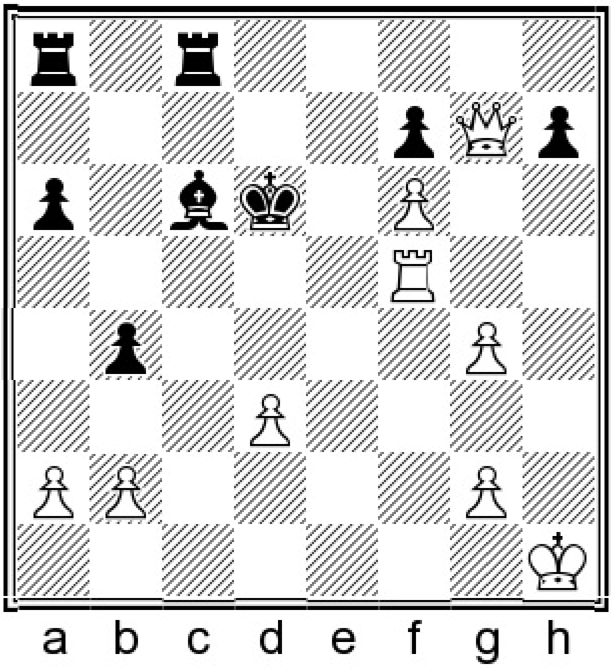
25.♖f5! exf5

Retreating the queen does not solve the problem, because from neither of the retreat squares does it cover f8.

26.♕g5 ♔f8

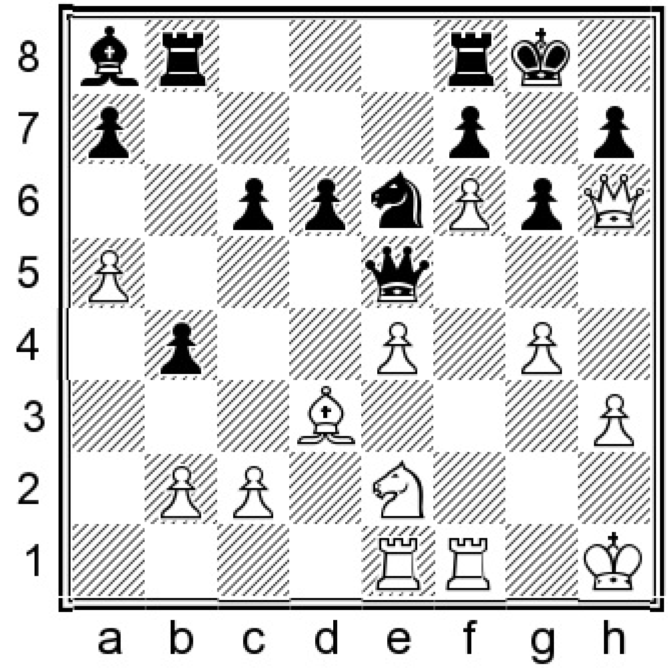
26...g6 27.♕h6.

27.♕xg7+ ♔e8 28.♘d6+ ♔d7 29.♖xe5 ♔xd6 30.♖xf5



And White achieved a decisive material advantage.

Dennis de Vreugt 2429
Mikhail Gurevich 2633
Amsterdam 2001 (3)



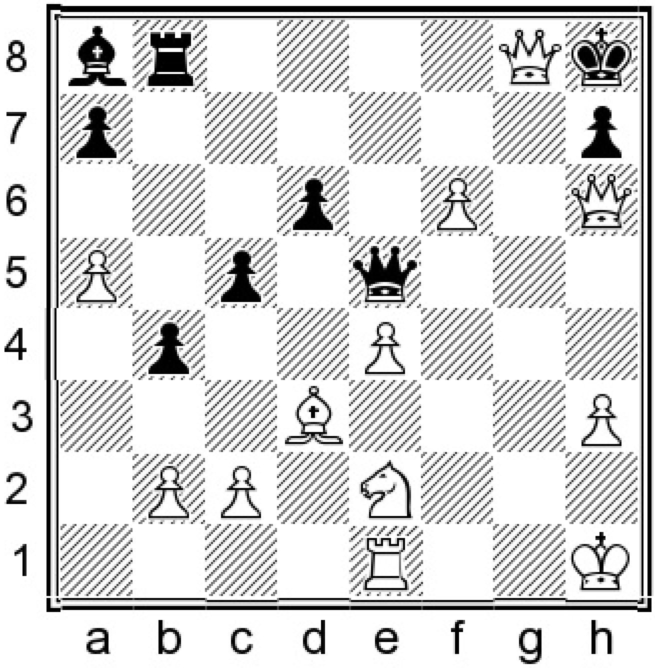
White to play

Of course, you have already seen the prelude to a decisive attack...

23.♖f5!! gxf5

Declining the sacrifice with 23...♛xb2 is no help, as after 24.♖h5! (the banal 24.♘f4 also wins) 24...gxh5 the disaster strikes from the other side: 25.e5 c5+ 26.♔g1, and mate is not far away.

24.gxf5 ♔h8 25.fxe6 ♖g8 26.exf7 c5 27.fxg8=♕+

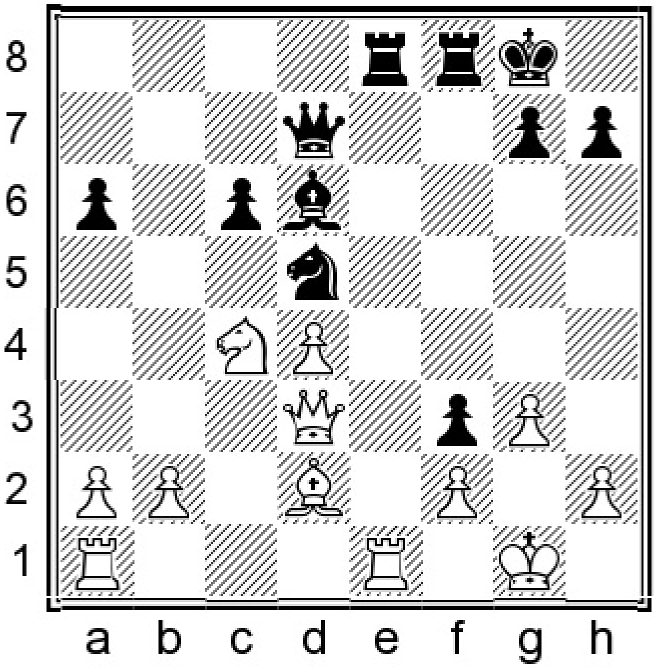


Quite a fantastic light-square career for the humble pawn from g4, don’t you agree?

27...♖xg8 28.♘f4

Black resigned.

Arkadij Naiditsch 2654
Jan Gustafsson 2588
Dresden Ech 2007 (8)



Black to play

23...♖e2!!

Interfering with the queen's control of f1 and creating the obvious threat 24...♕h3. At first glance, White has enough time to defend everything...

24.♖xe2 ♕h3 25.♘e3

Stronger was 25.♕xf3 ♖xf3 26.♘xd6, although after 26...♘f6! (with the threat of 27...♘g4) 27.♖ae1 h6 Black's advantage is close to decisive.

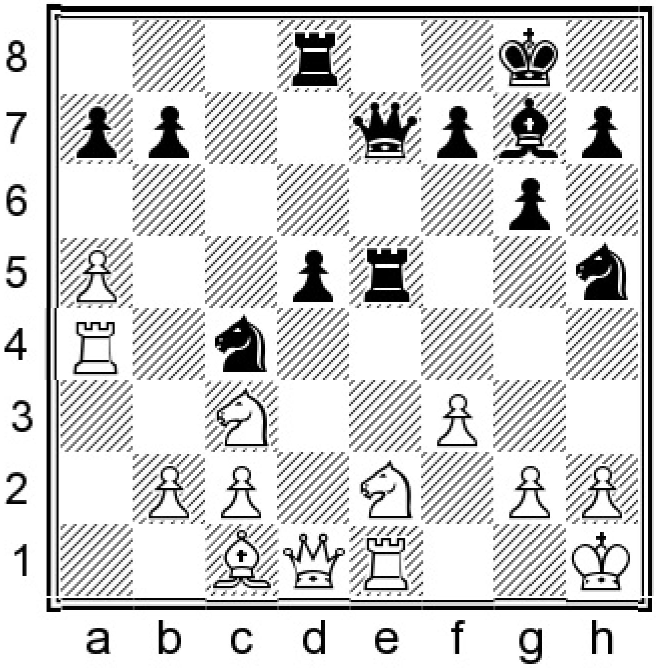
25...♖f4!!

A magnificent resource – now White is defenceless. Instead, 25...♖f6 is insufficient because of 26.♕e4!. Despite his large material advantage,

White cannot plug all the gaps in his defences and meet the threat of 26...♖h4!. White resigned.

If you are attacking on the kingside or defending against such an attack, then you should always bear in mind the idea of a knight jump into g6 (g3), as it can occur at the most unexpected moment...

Erasmus Gerigk 2335
Ralf Appel 2551
Germany Bundesliga 2009/10 (12)



Black to play

28...♘g3+! 29.hxg3

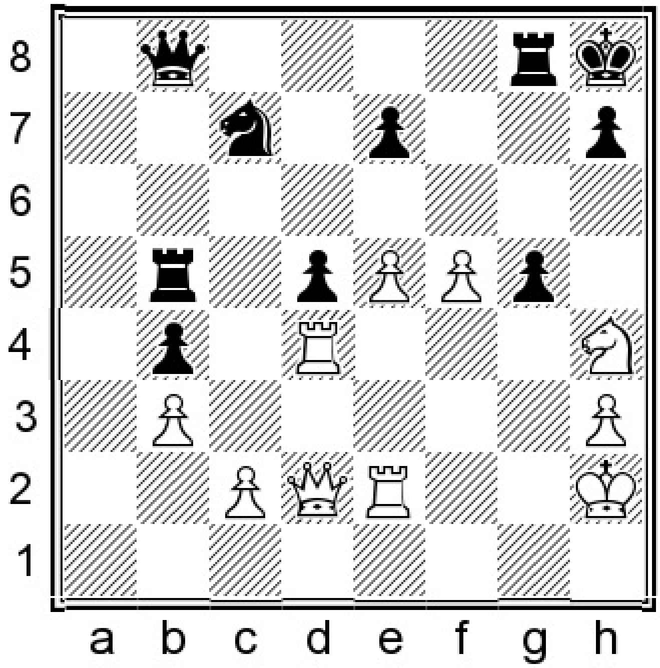
29.♘xg3 ♖xe1+ or 29.♔g1 ♕c5+.

29...♖h5+ 30.♔g1 ♕c5+ 31.♘d4 ♗xd4+

White resigned, in view of 32.♔f1 ♗xc3 33.bxc3 ♖h1+ 34.♔e2 ♖e8+.

Nor should it be assumed that such knight jumps are the prerogative of the black player only. Sometimes it is the white knight which makes such a leap!

Tatev Abrahamyan 2310
Sabina Foisor 2317
St Louis ch-USA W 2010 (7)



White to play

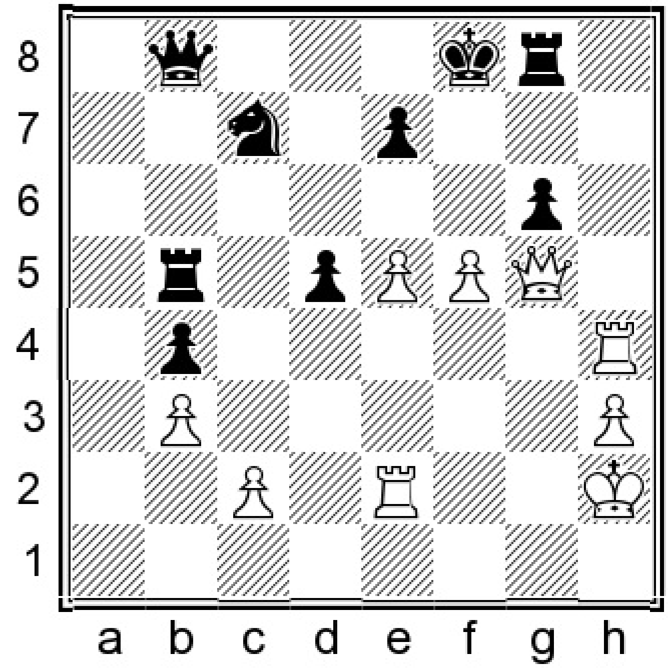
46.♘g6+! hxg6

After 46...♔g7 47.♘xe7 White's advantage is too great.

47.♖h4+! ♔g7

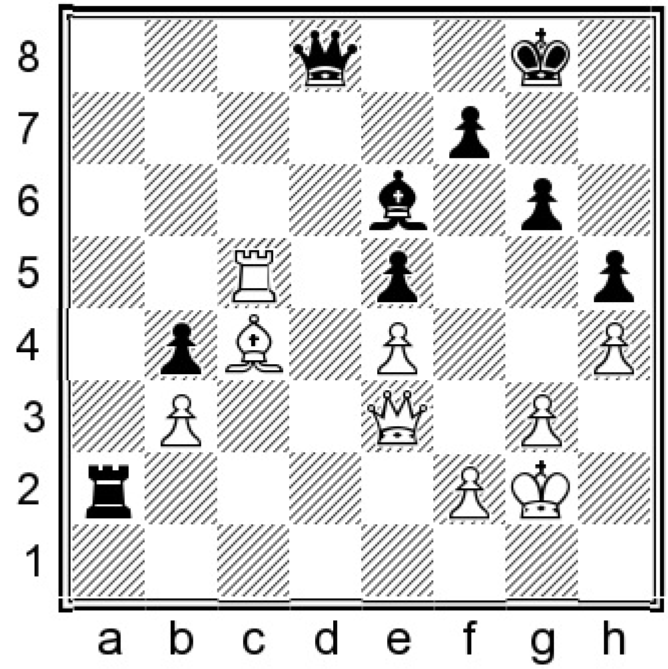
47...gxh4 48.♕h6#.

48.♕xg5 ♔f8



49.♖h7! ♕d8 50.f6 ♔e8 51.f7+ ♔d7 52.fxg8=♕ 1-0

Viswanathan Anand 2775
Michael Adams 2710
London 2012 (6)



Black to play

41...♕d1! 42.♕h6

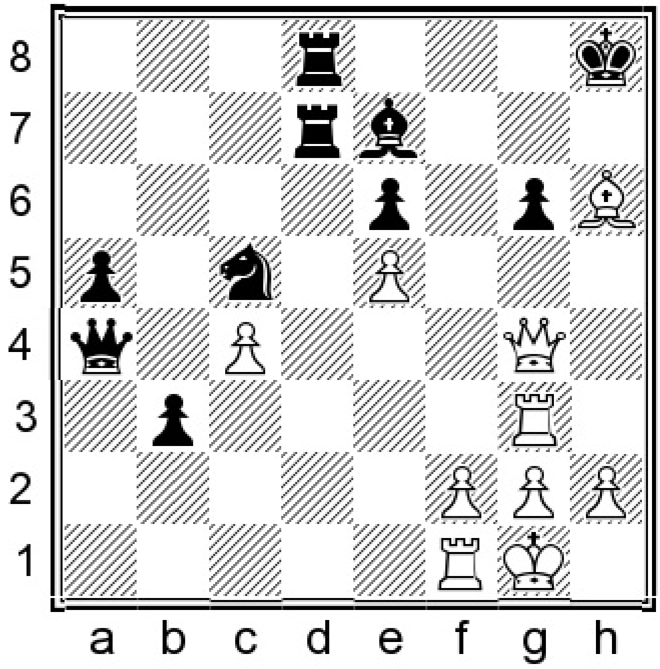
Or 42.♗xe6 ♖a1 43.♗xf7+ ♔g7!.

42...♗h3+!

White resigned.

But this modest sacrifice pales into insignificance alongside the fireworks in the next example:

Mikhail Gurevich 2611
Dusko Pavasovic 2595
Plovdiv playoff rapid 2008 (1)



Black to play

White has just played 34.♕e2-g4?, assuming that a well-deserved point is coming his way. He could have won simply with the straightforward 34.♖xg6,

as well as the computer's brutal 34.♗g7+!? ♔xg7 35.♕h5. Now, however, everything is turned on its head in magical fashion...

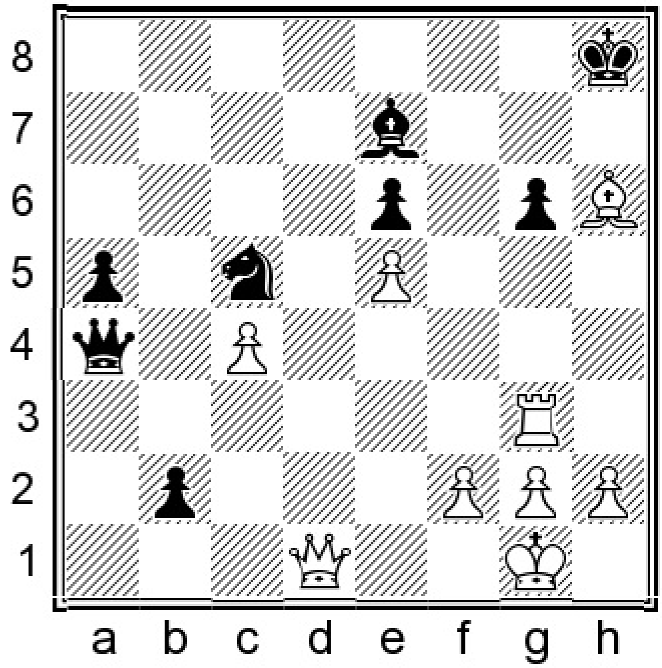
34...♖d1!!

The only way to win – all other moves lose.

35.♖xd1

35.♗g7+ ♔g8.

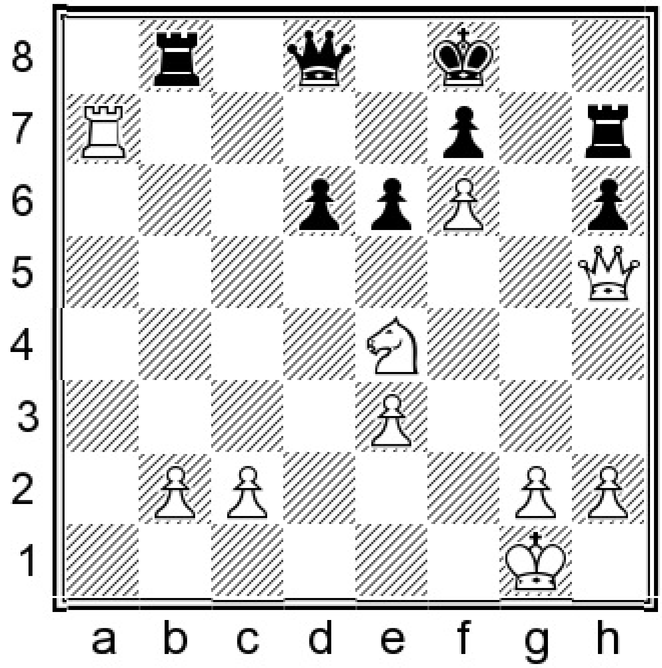
35...♖xd1+ 36.♕xd1 b2!



The successive sacrifices of rook and queen create a strong impression. White resigned: after any queen move, 37...♕a1 wins.

And here is an elegant combination to crown the white attack.

Joshua Friedel 2555
Migchiel de Jong 2373
Hoogeveen 2009 (4)



White to play

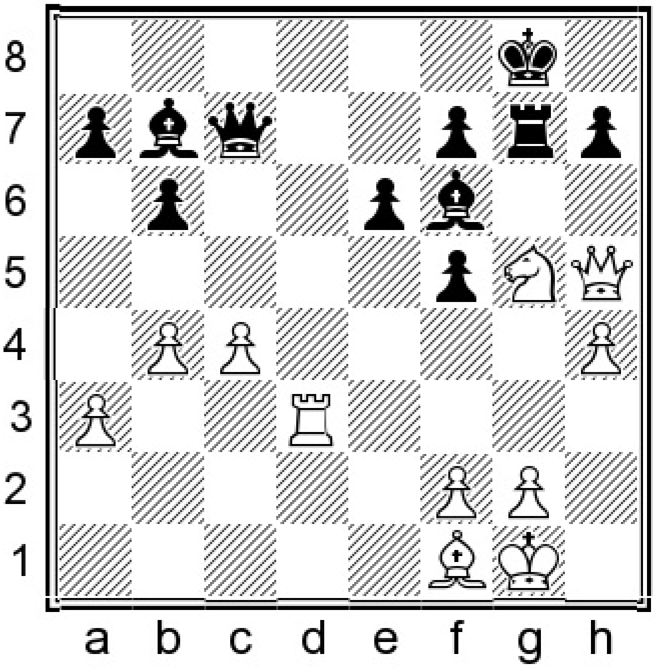
22.♘g5! hxg5

Now the tempting 23.♕xh7? ♕xf6 leads only to an unclear game. But after

23.♖xf7+!!

Black immediately laid down his weapons because of 23...♖xf7 24.♕h8#.

Li Shilong 2514
Wang Hao 2722
Xinghua ch-CHN 2010 (2)



White to play

32.♘xe6!

A double blow, an unpleasant surprise for Black. Taking the knight is impossible because of mate on e8.

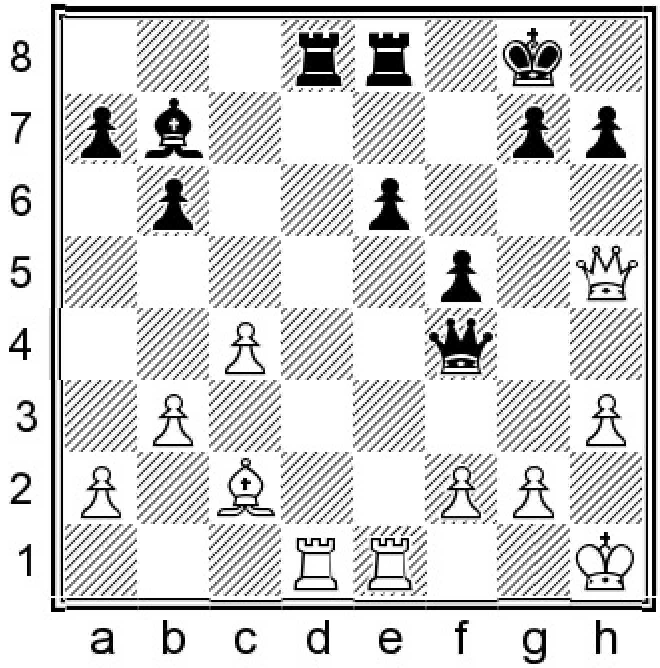
32...♗xg2

32...fxe6 33.♕e8#.

33.♘xg7 ♗xf1 34.♘e8!

The final double attack. The knight has done sterling work, Black resigned.

Elisabeth Pähtz 2474
Jolanta Zawadzka 2368
Antakya Wch W playoff rapid 2010 (1)



White to play

Black has just carelessly moved the attacked queen to f4, instead of the correct 23...♕f6.

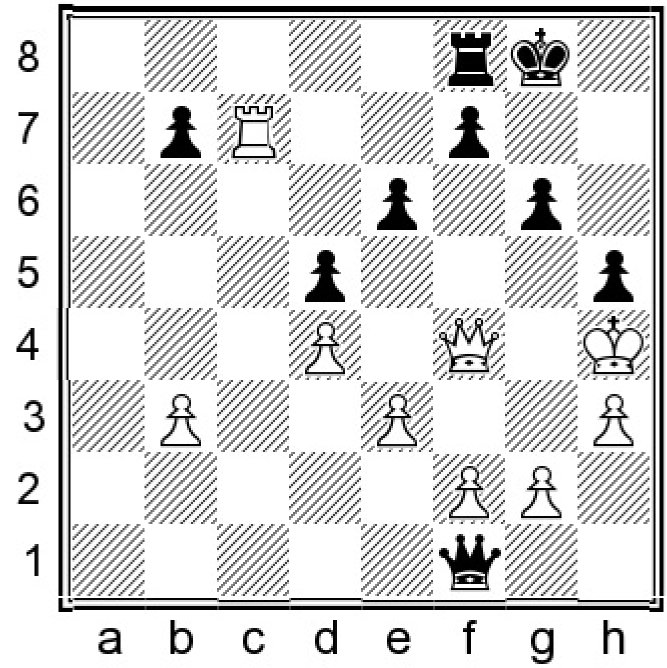
24.♖d7!

Again, a double attack is the order of the day. Black would like to defend the bishop, but the f7-square is more valuable. After the correct 23...♕f6 this rook jump would have brought White ‘only’ an extra pawn (a7).

24...♖f8 25.♖xb7 ♖d2 26.♗d1 ♖xf2 27.♗f3

And soon Black resigned.

Manuel Rivas Pastor 2461
Enrique Rodriguez Guerrero 2464
Lorca 2005 (6)



White to play

Here the mating net around the black king is built by its opposite number personally:

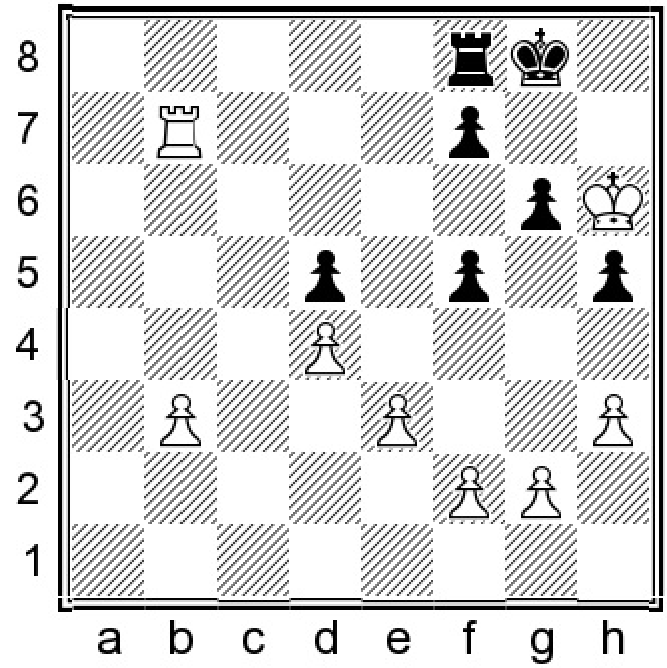
32.♔g5! h4

This loses quickly.

A) Equally cheerless is 32...♕xg2+ 33.♔h6 f6 34.♖g7+ ♔h8 35.♖f7!; or

B) 32...e5 33.♕f6 ♕a6 34.dxe5;

C) The most tenacious is 32...♕d3 (or 32...♕b1) 33.♔h6 ♕f5 34.♕xf5 exf5 35.♖xb7,



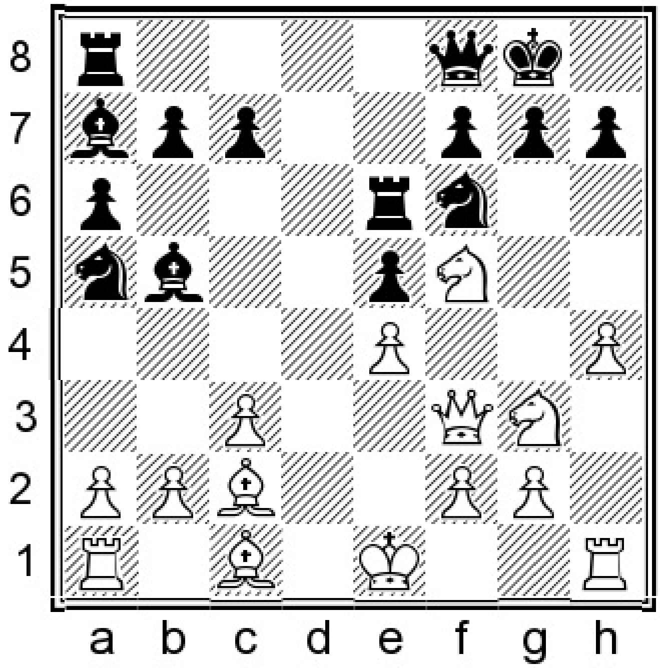
analysis diagram

which leads to a hopeless rook endgame for Black, in which White has a great positional advantage, in addition to an extra pawn. A sample variation: 35...♖c8 36.b4 ♔f8 37.b5 ♖c2 38.b6 ♖b2 39.♖b8+ ♔e7 40.b7 ♔f6 41.f4 h4 42.♔h7 ♖b1 43.♔g8 ♖b2 44.♔f8 ♖b1 45.♖d8 ♖xb7 46.♖d6#.

33.♔h6 ♕e2 34.f3 f6 35.♖g7+ ♔h8 36.♕c7

Black resigned.

John Emms 2502
Dave Ledger 2252
England 4NCL 2005/06 (9)



White to play

We have material equality, but the white forces are pointed menacingly at the enemy king, which gives the impression that White is material up. In such positions, there is often a combinative solution.

18.♘xg7! ♔xg7

Allowing the opponent to show his idea. However, the more tenacious 18...♕xg7 also fails to solve the problems: 19.♘f5 ♕g6 (or 19...♕g4? 20.♘h6+ or 19...♕f8 20.♗h6) 20.h5 ♘xh5 (what else?) 21.♖xh5 with an overwhelming advantage to White. For example: 21...f6 22.b4!? (shifting the centre of the action to the other flank, a device always worth remembering) 22...♘c4 23.♗b3!, and Black cannot avoid a2-a4, winning a piece.

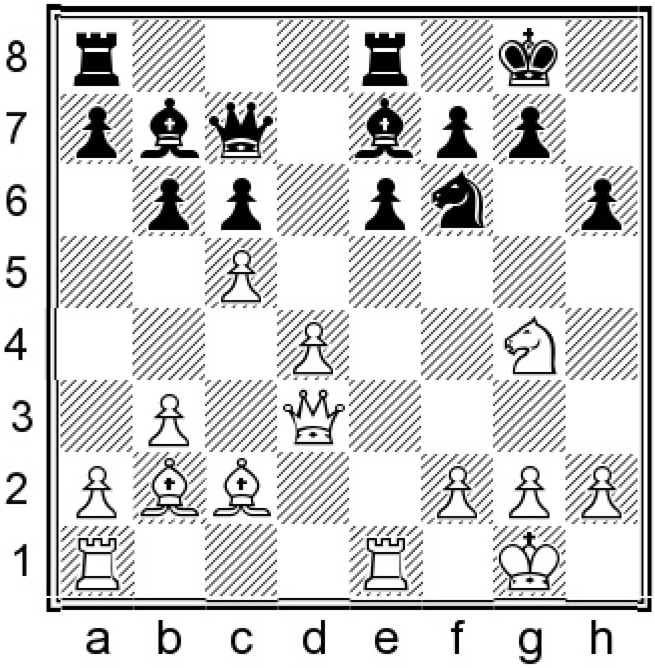
19.♗h6+!!

The point of White’s idea. Now Black has a miserable choice between mate or loss of the queen.

19...♔xh6 20.♘f5+ ♔g6 21.♕g3+ ♔h5 22.♕g5#

In the following example, White opens a key diagonal for the attack, with some unstereotyped actions.

Rune Djurhuus 2491
Oystein Sande 2295
Gausdal 2001 (3)



White to play

19.d5! cxd5

After 19...exd5 20.♘xf6+ the decisive factor is that the black king does not have the escape square e7.

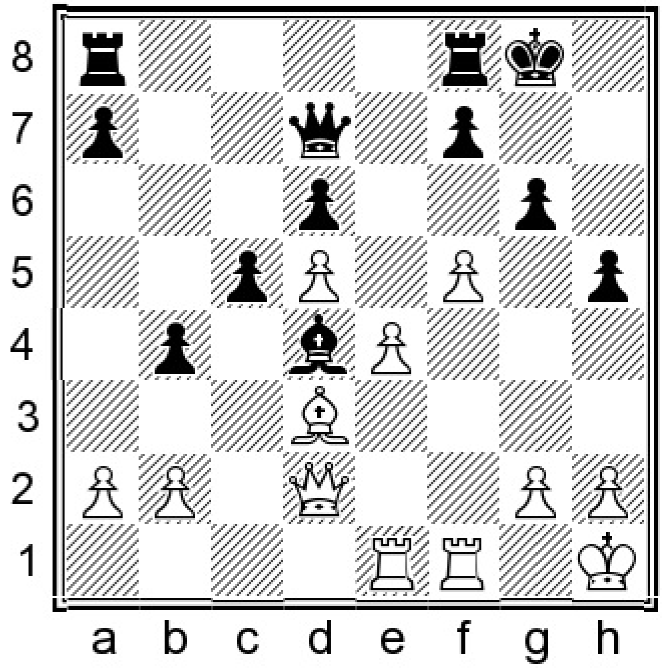
20.c6!

The bishop is attacked and Black must react. But after any reply, White has achieved his aim – the diagonal a3-f8 is open for his bishop.

20...♕xc6 21.♘xf6+

Black resigned on account of 21...♗xf6 22.♕h7+ ♔f8 23.♗a3+ ♗e7 24.♕h8#.

Nikita Vitiugov 2703
Ding Liren 2680
St Petersburg tt 2012 (1)



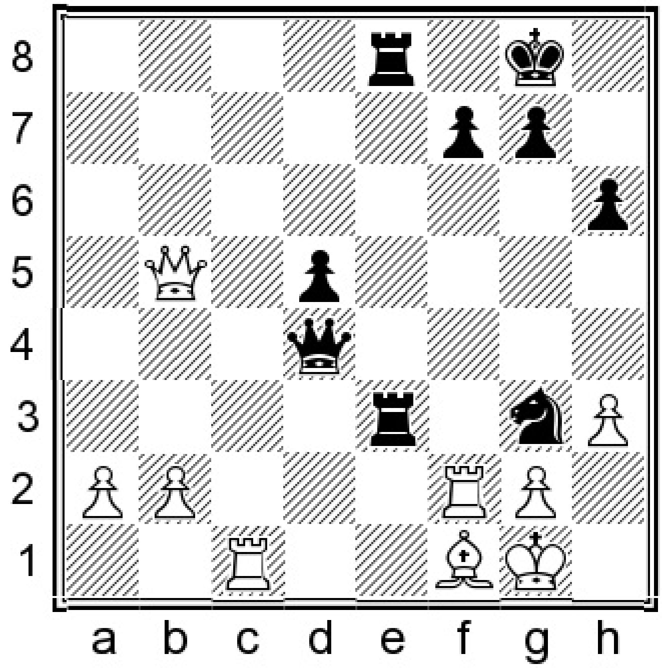
White to play

Here, two sacrifices allow White not so much to clear the diagonal as eliminate the chief defender of the black king, the dark-squared bishop:

21.e5! ♗xe5 22.♖xe5! dxe5 23.f6 ♔h7 24.♖f5!

The decisive blow. Black resigned because of 24...gxf5 25.♕g5 ♖g8 26.♕xh5#.

Ivan Bukavshin 2539
Kacper Drozdowski 2306
Albena Ech jr 2011 (7)



Black to play

No, there is no mistake in the players' names: the opponent of the talented Russian junior, tragically killed in 2016, was not GM Yuri but the Polish master Kasper. The game was played in the European U16 Championship.

29...♖e1! 30.♖xe1 ♖xe1

At first, it may seem as though Black has blundered a piece:

31.♕b8+ ♔h7 32.♕xg3,

but in reality, he has prepared a knockout blow –

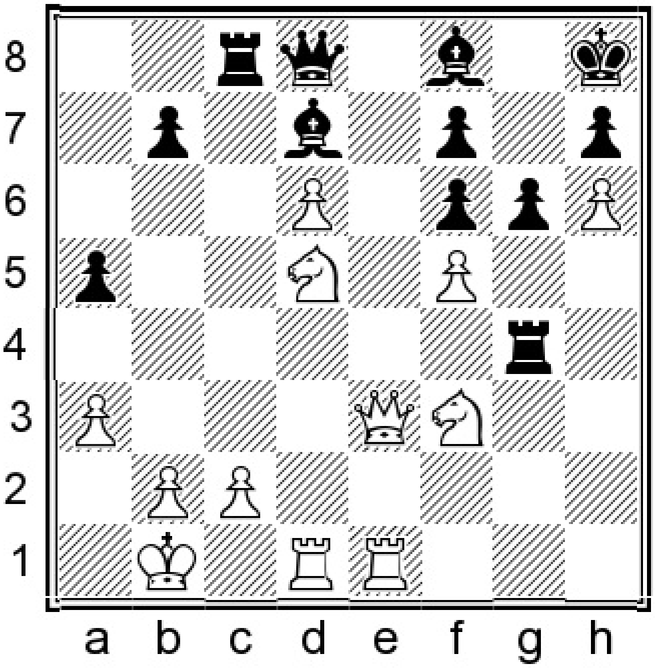
32...♖xf1+!

White resigned.

Above we saw a number of examples where the queen's faithful assistants were bishops and rooks. But the pairing of queen and knight is also traditionally a good one.

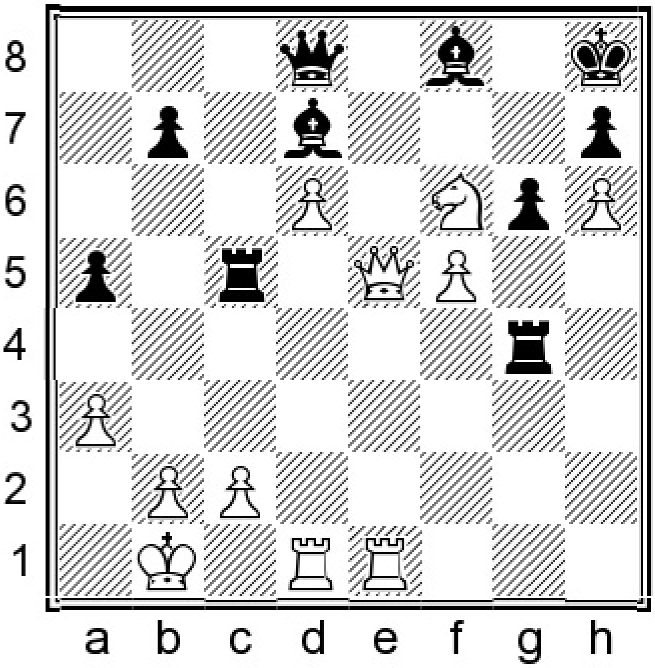
Admittedly, sometimes the knight has to sacrifice itself to the common good...

Leinier Dominguez Perez 2734
Veijo Maki 2383
Eilat tt 2012 (3)



White to play

27.♘e5! fxe5 28.♕xe5+ f6 29.♘xf6 ♖c5



The knight which remains alive also sacrifices its life for the sake of victory:

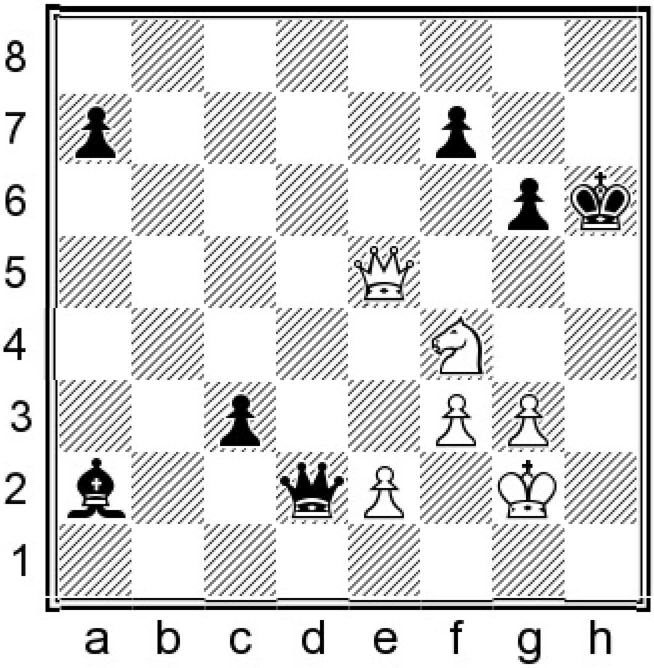
30.♘d5+ ♔g8 31.♘e7+ ♗xe7

31...♔f7 32.fxg6+ hxg6 33.♖f1+.

32.♕g7#

Aleksey Goganov 2562

Ildar Khairullin 2658
Yekaterinburg 2013 (3)



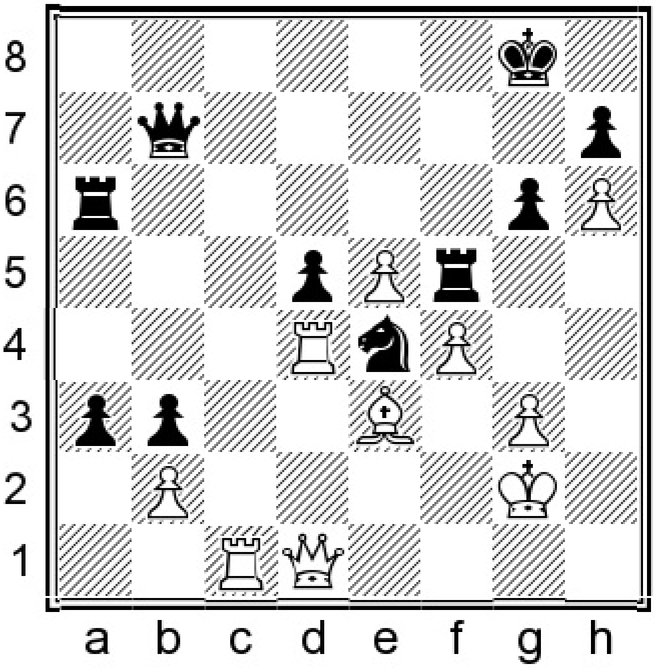
White to play

44.♕h8+ ♔g5 45.♘e6+!

Black resigned. He either loses the queen or is mated: 45...♗xe6 (45...fxe6) 46.f4+ ♔f5 (46...♔g4 47.♕h3#) 47.♕e5+ ♔g4 48.♕g5#; 45...♔f5 46.♘d4+ ♔g5 47.f4+.

Sometimes a rook is parted with, to allow the queen to participate in the attack.

Tigran L Petrosian 2645
Tomasz Markowski 2567
Legnica Ech 2013 (10)



White to play

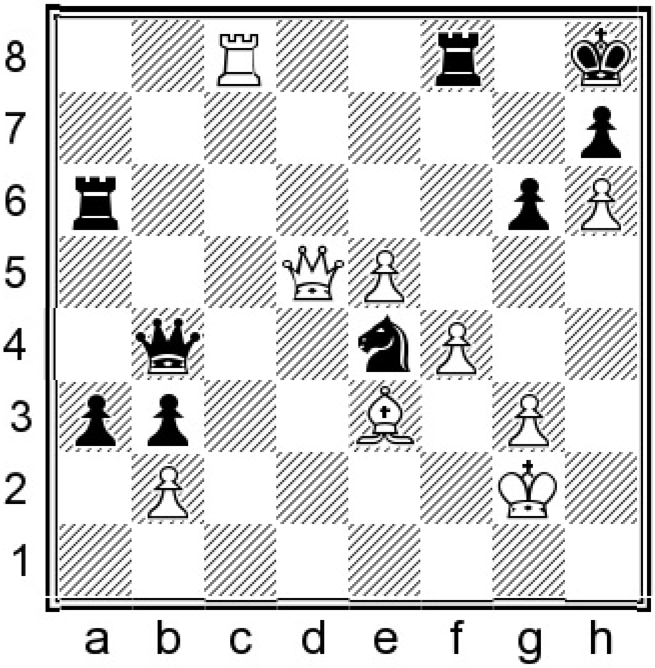
43.♖b4!

Deflecting the enemy queen from the defence of the d5-square. On 43.♖xd5 there is the unexpected 43...♘f6!–+.

43.♖b4! ♕xb4

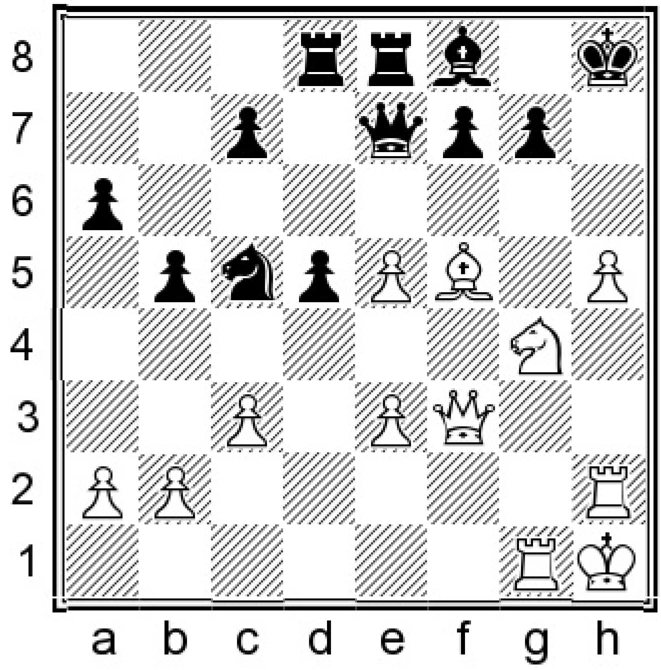
On 43...♕d7 or 43...♕a8 there is the decisive 44.♕xb3 with the threats of 45.♖b8+ and 45.♖xe4.

44.♕xd5+ ♔h8 45.♖c8+ ♖f8



46.♕f7! 1-0

Yuriy Kryvoruchko 2668
Pavel Kotsur 2552
Dubai 2013 (6)



White to play

In this game between two well-known GMs, White is well-prepared for the final storming of the enemy king, but first would like to open lines towards the black monarch. The direct 32.h6 does not work because of 32...g6. A blockading sacrifice comes to his aid:

32.♗g6! ♘e4

Of course, bad is 32...fxg6 33.hxg6+ ♔g8 34.♖h8+ ♔xh8 35.♕h3+ ♔g8 36.♕h7#.

33.h6 ♘g5

Here too, taking the bishop is no good for Black: 33...fxg6 (33...gxh6 34.♘xh6) 34.hxg7+ ♔xg7 35.♘f6 ♘xf6 36.exf6+ ♕xf6 37.♖h7+ ♔xh7 38.♕xf6. The rest is simple.

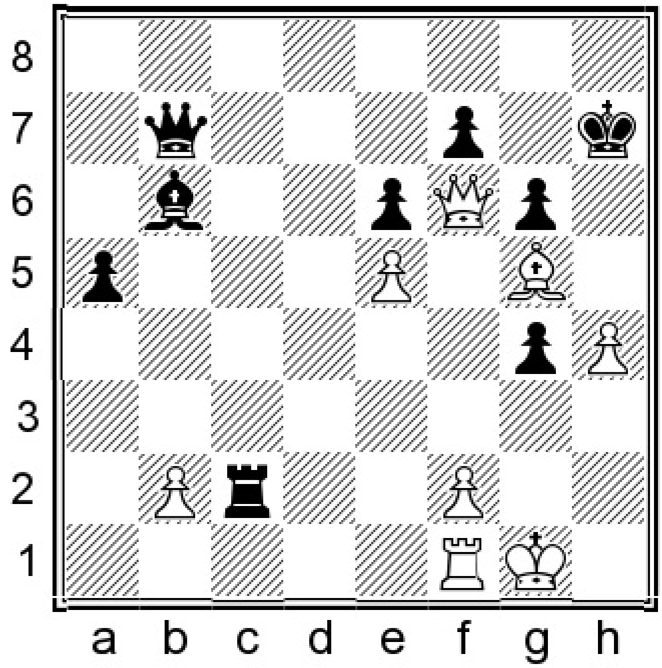
34.hxg7+ ♔xg7 35.♘f6 ♕xe5 36.♘xe8+ ♖xe8 37.♖xg5

Black resigned.

Show in Text Mode

Exercises

61

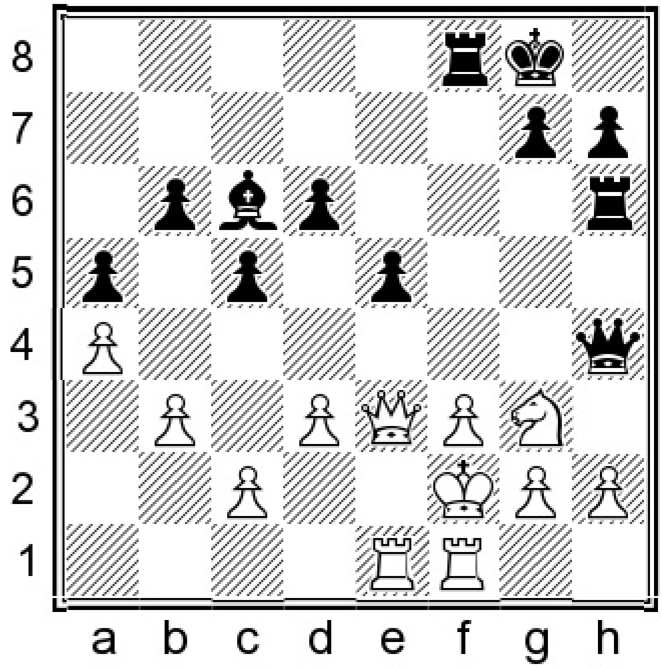

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

White to play

Show/Hide Solution

61 **38.♗h6!** 1-0 Lugovoi-Lastin, Kazan ch-RUS 2002.

62

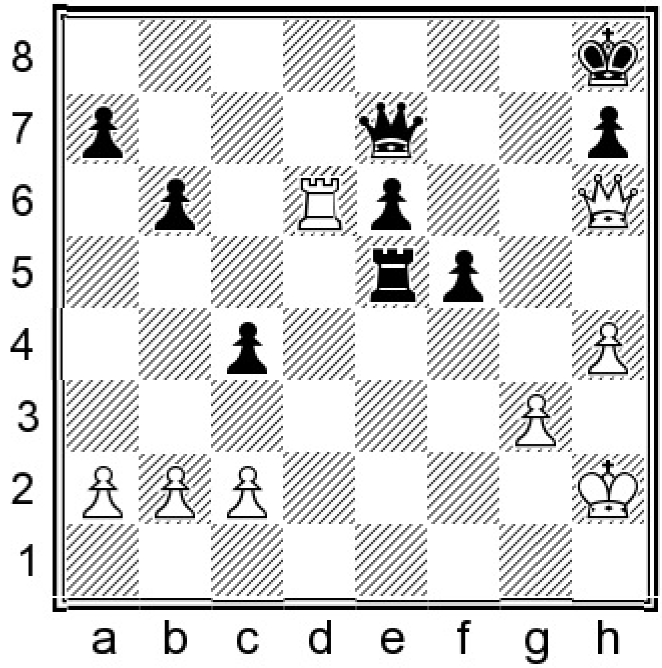


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

62 **27...♖xf3+!** 0-1 Padjen-V.Srebrnic, Bled 2003; 28.gxf3 ♕xh2#.

63

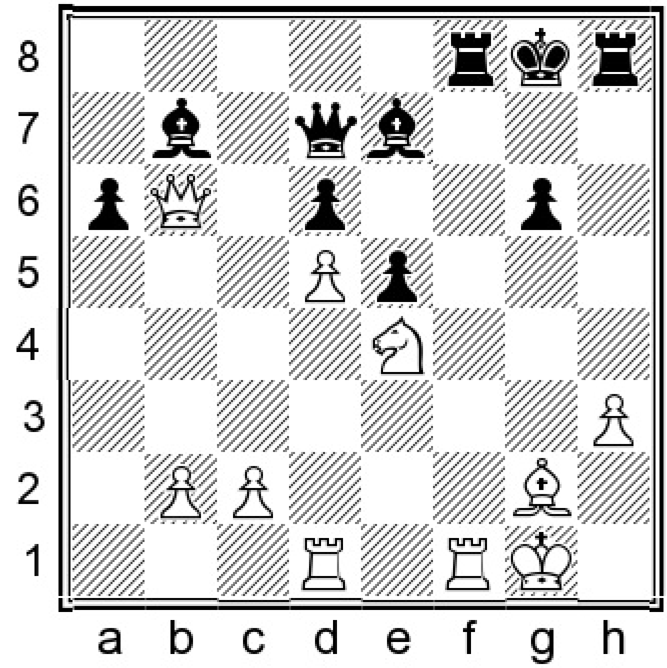


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

63 **35.♖d7!** 1-0 Gashimov-Managadze, Athens 2005.

64

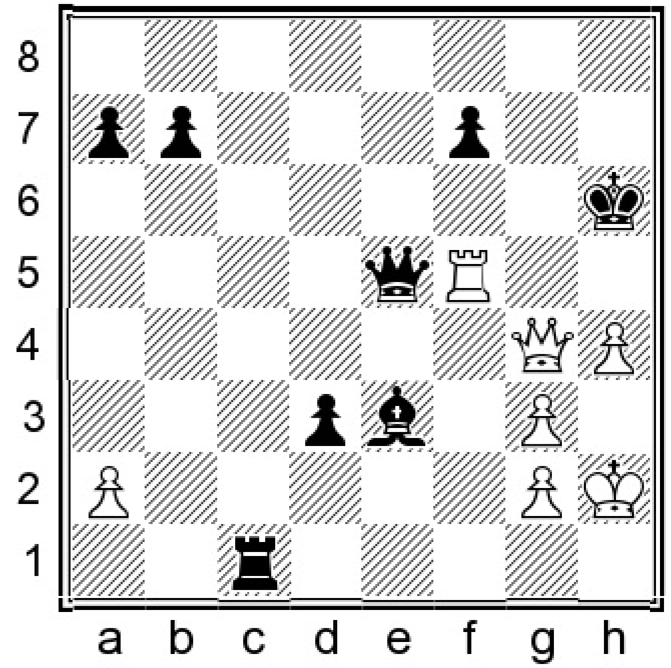


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

64 **27.♘c5!** Potapov-Henrichs, Pardubice 2006; Black resigned, because he loses the ♗b7: 27...dxc5 28.♕xg6# – an epaulette mate; nothing is changed by the preliminary rook exchange 27...♖xf1+ 28.♖xf1.

65

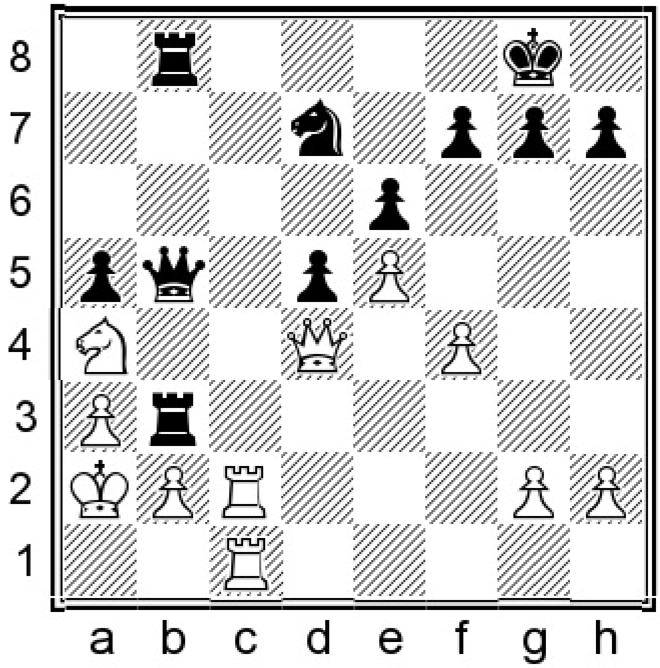


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

65 **38...♖h1+!** Mateo-Hernandez Carmenates, Madrid 2007; White resigned because of 39.♔xh1 ♕a1+ 40.♔h2 ♕g1+ 41.♔h3 ♕h1#.

66

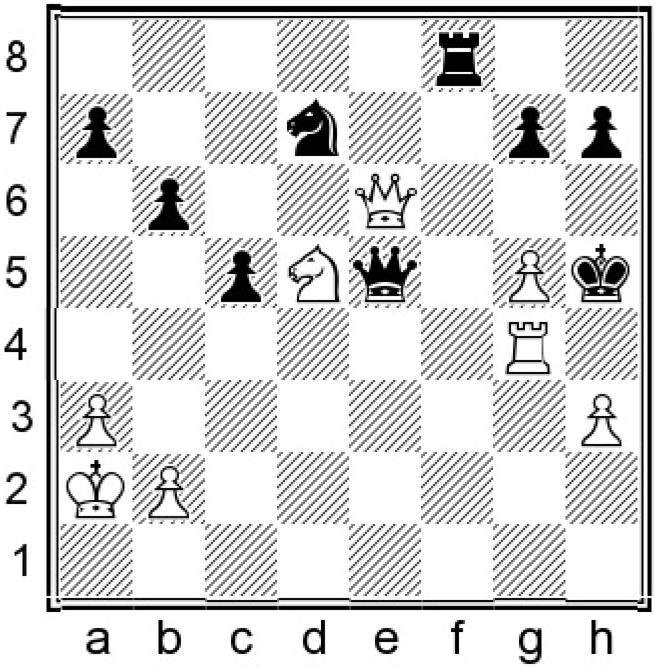


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

66 **26...♖xa3+! 27.♔b1** 27.bxa3 ♕b3+ 28.♔a1 ♕xa3+ 29.♖a2 ♕xc1#. **27...♖xa4** 0-1 Dourerassou-Dizdar, Paris 2007.

67

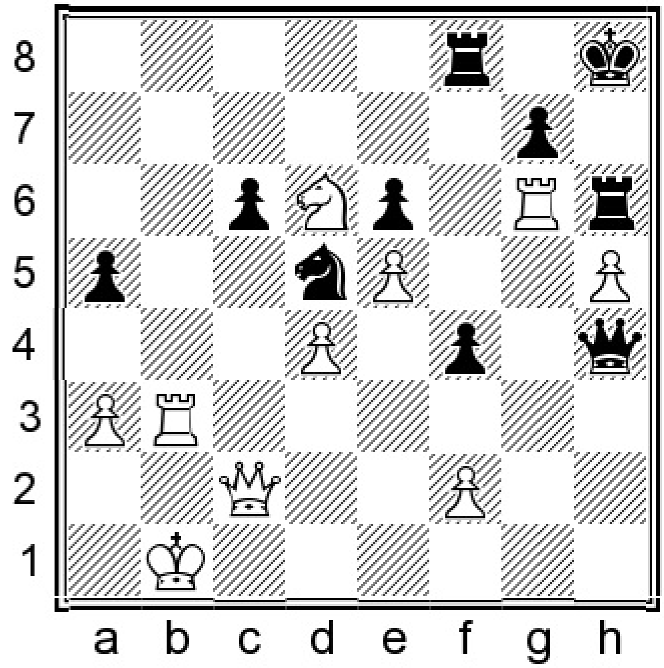


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

67 **34.♖h4+!** 1-0 Miroshnichenko-Zubov, Ukraine tt 2009.

68

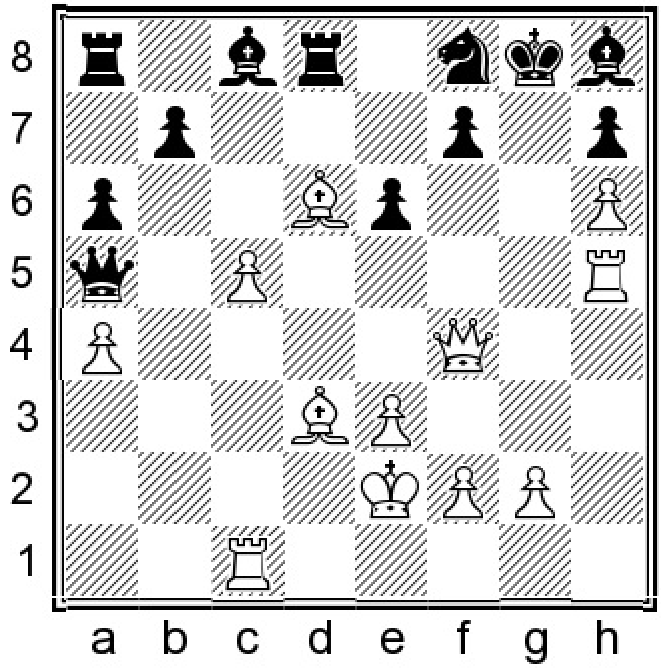

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h

White to play

Show/Hide Solution

68 **46.♘f7+! ♖xf7 47.♖b8+ ♔h7 48.♖xh6+ ♔xh6 49.♕g6#** Milanovic-Jovanic, Sarajevo 2006.

69

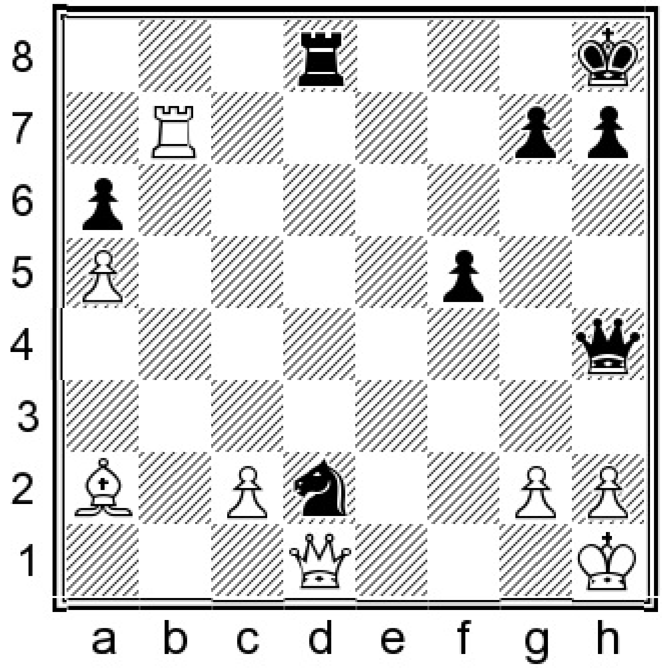


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

69 **24.♗xh7+!** 1-0 Maslak-Potkin, Novokuznetsk 2008; 24...♔xh7 25.♕xf7+; 24...♘xh7 25.♕g3/4+.

70

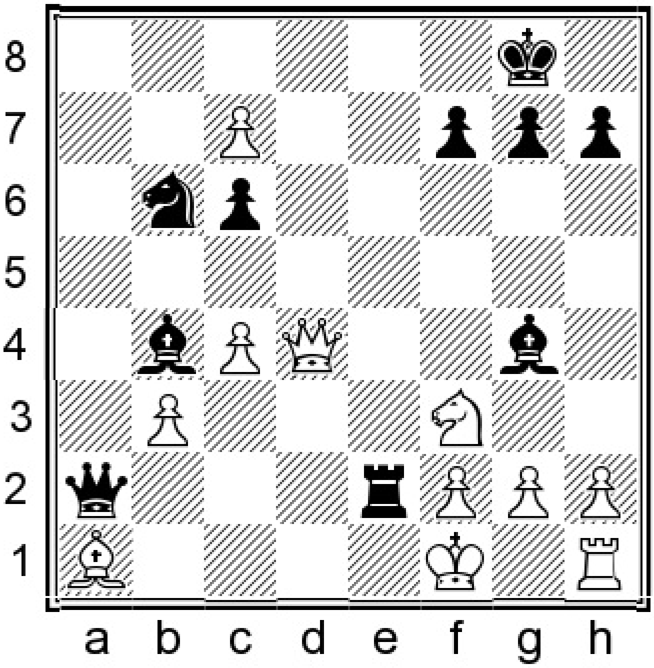


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

70 **30...♘f3! 31.♕xd8+** 31.♕xf3 ♕e1+. **31...♕xd8 32.gxf3 ♕d1+ 33.♔g2 ♕xc2+ 34.♔h3 h5** and Black won in Kovchan-Nepomniachtchi, Russia tt 2010.

71

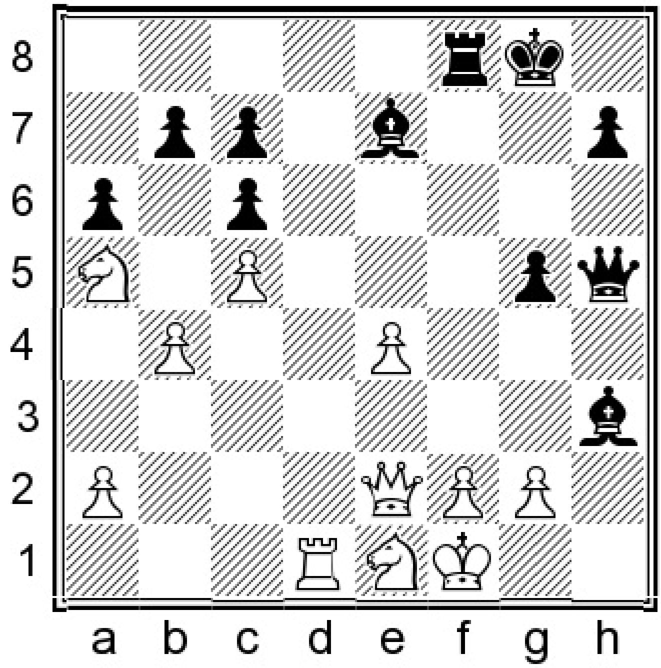


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

71 **22...♖e1+! 23.♘xe1 ♕e2+ 24.♔g1 ♕xe1#** Frisk-Marrero Lopez, Khanty-Mansiysk ol W 2010.

72

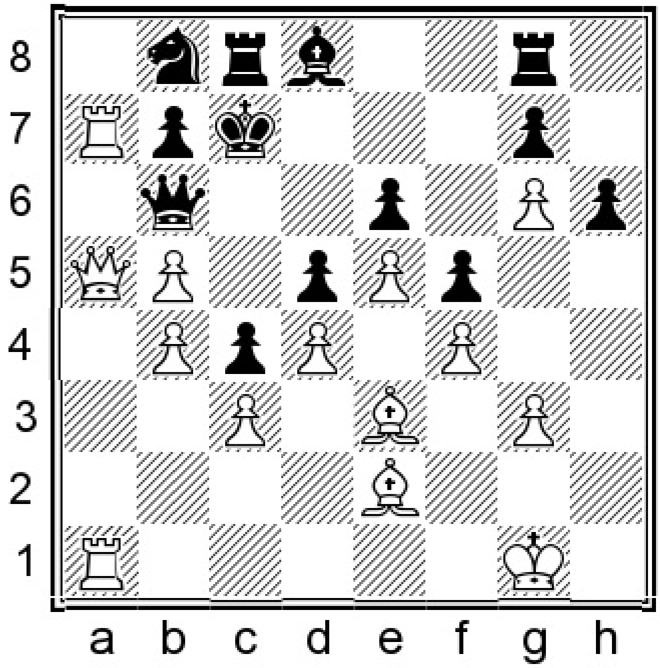


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

72 **26...♗xg2+!** 0-1 C.Eriksson-Rej, Copenhagen 2010; 27.♘xg2 ♕h1#.

73

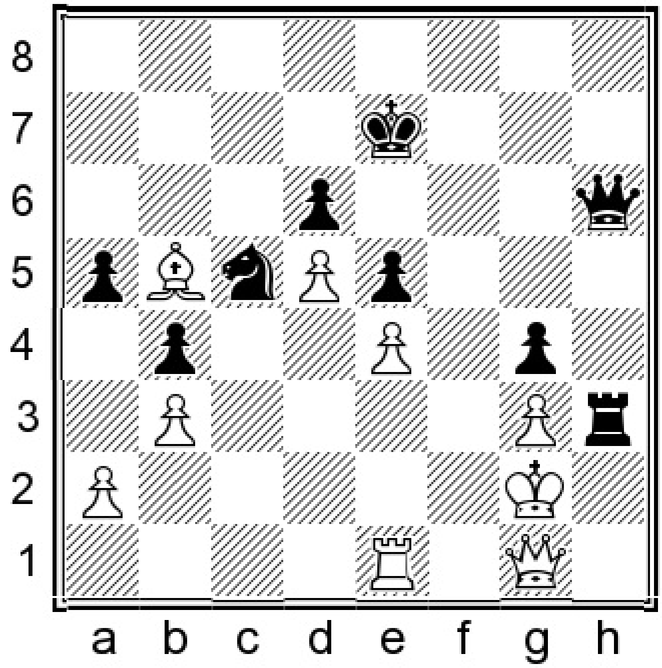


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

73 **30.♖xb7+!** Savic-Senic, Serbia tt 2009; Black resigned because of 30...♔xb7 31.♕a8+ ♔c7 32.♖a7+ ♕xa7 33.♕xa7#.

74

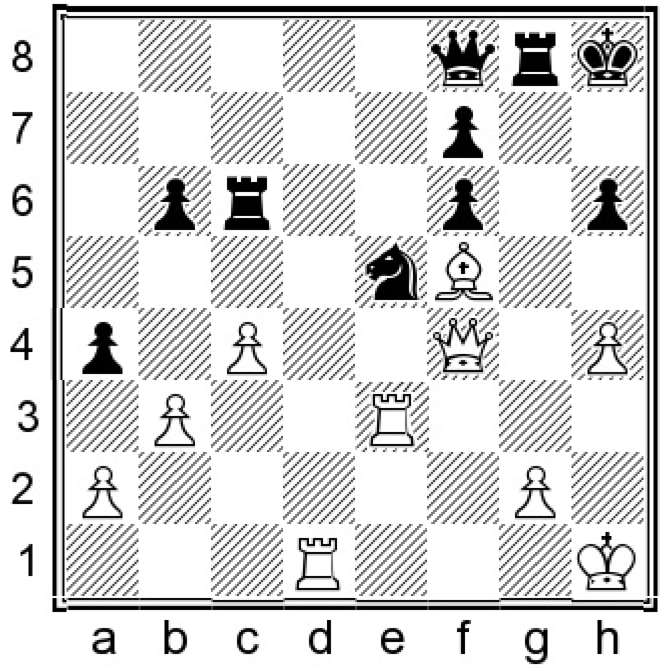


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

74 **51...♖xg3+!** 0-1 Kovanova-Mkrtchian, Nalchik W 2010; 52.♔xg3 ♕h3+ 53.♔f2 ♕f3#.

75

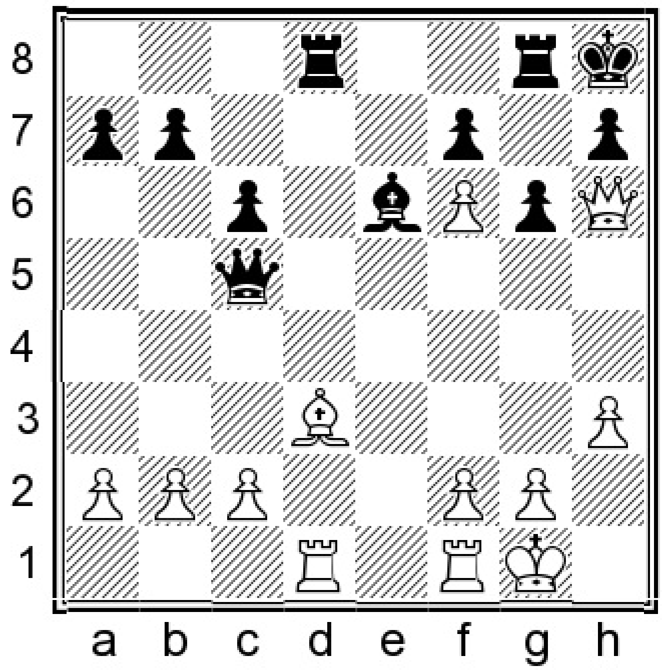


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

75 **36.♖d8! ♕g7** 36...♕xd8 37.♕xh6#. **37.♖xg8+ ♔xg8 38.♖g3** 1-0 Movsesian-Adams, Wijk aan Zee 2009; 38...♘g6 39.♕e4!.

76

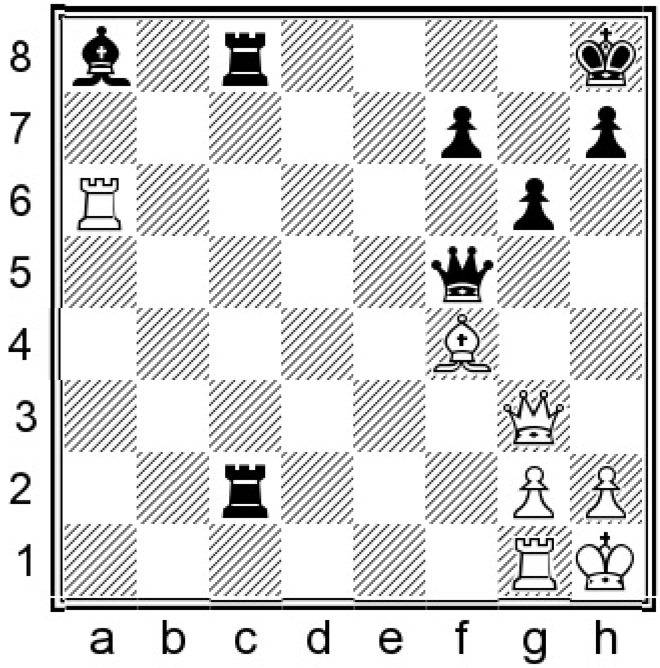


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

76 **21.♗xg6!** 1-0 S.Gustavsson-Standal, Reykjavik sr 2011.

77

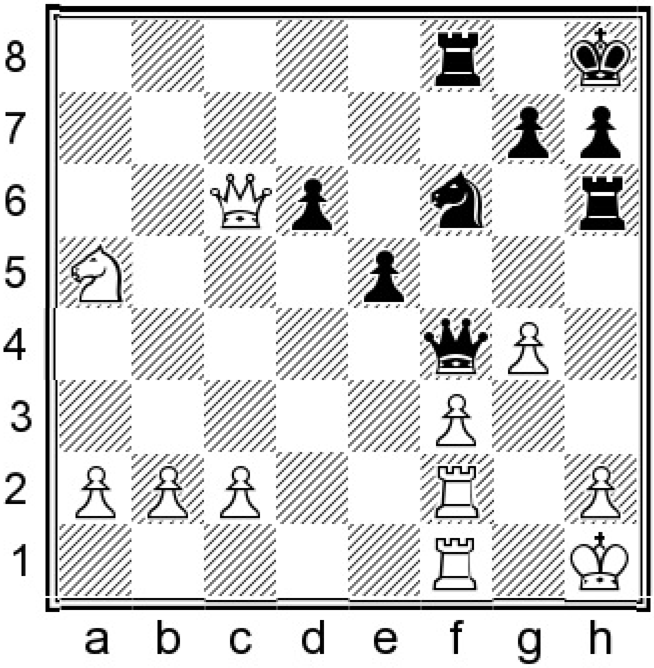

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h

Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

77 **35...♖xg2! 36.♖xg2 ♕b1+** 0-1 Gluszko-Bacallao Alonso, Barcelona 2011.

78

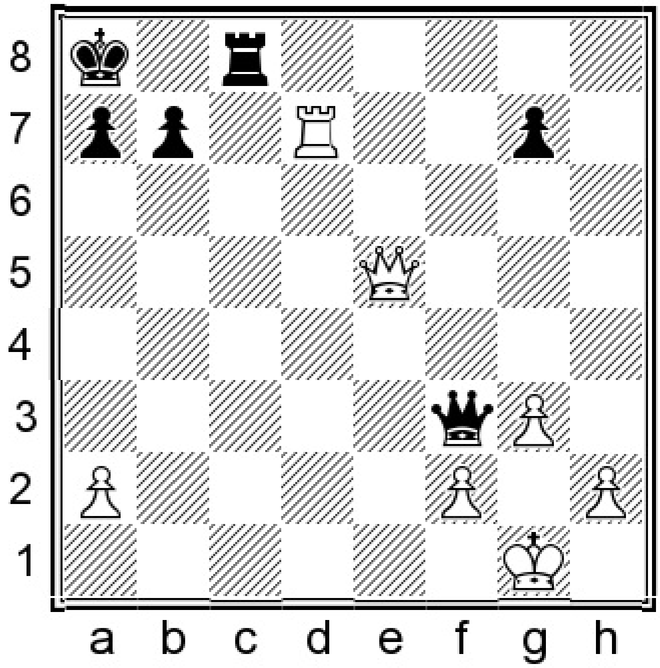

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h

Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

78 **26...♘xg4!** Vega Cordovilla-Nunez Asencio, Havana 2011; White resigned, without waiting for 27.fxg4 ♖xh2+ 28.♖xh2 ♕xf1#.

79

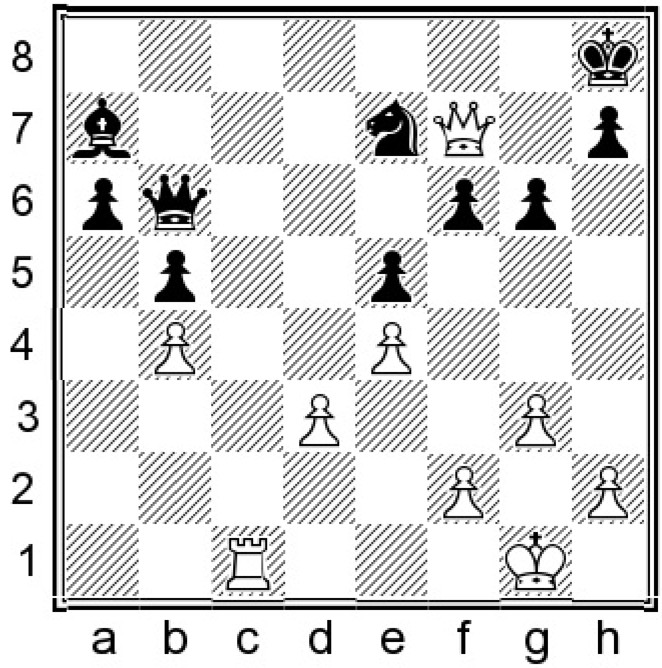


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

79 **35.♕c7!** 1-0 Vachier-Lagrave-Grigoryan, Al-Ain 2012; 35...♖b8 36.♖d8.

80

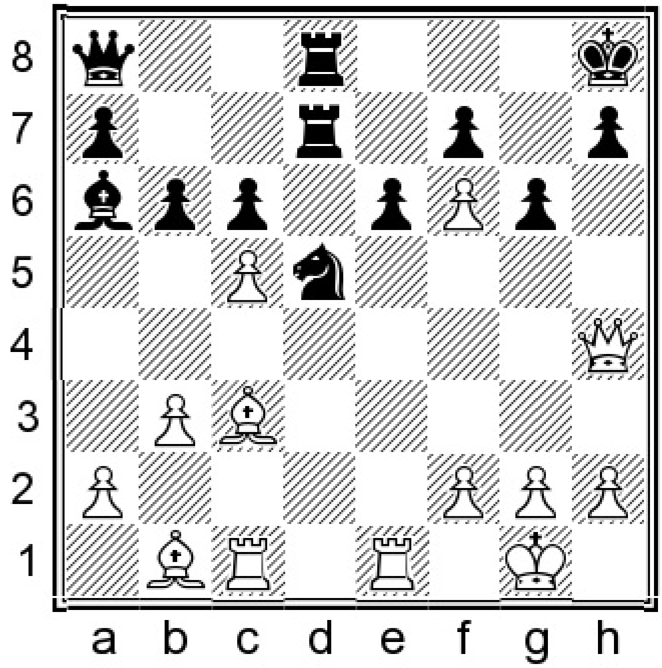

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h

White to play

Show/Hide Solution

80 **41.♖c8+!** 1-0 Cebalo-Bozinovic, Zagreb 2013.

81

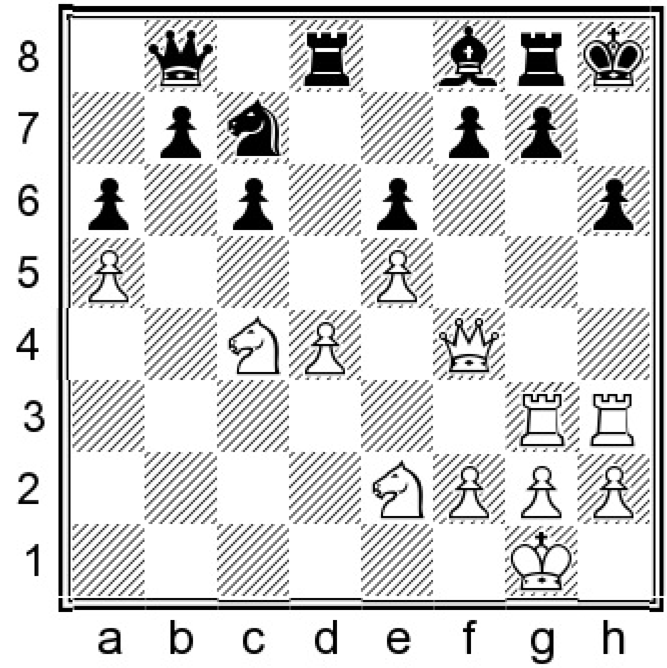

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h

White to play

Show/Hide Solution

81 **26.♗xg6!** Moor-Lillevold, Oslo 2011; Black resigned, seeing mate after 26...fxg6 27.f7+ ♘xc3 28.♕f6#.

82

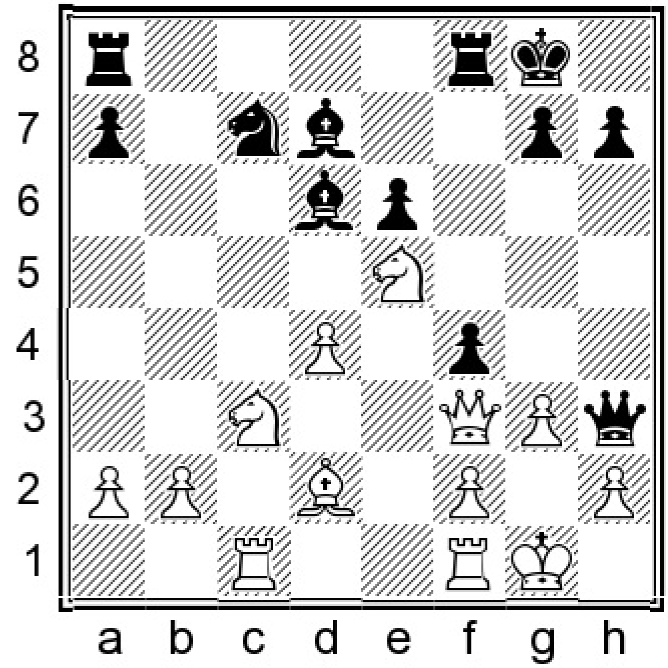


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

82 **31.♖xg7!** Vaulin-Izmukhambetov, Tula 2002; Black resigned – he is mated in at most two moves: 31...♔xg7 32.♕xh6#; 31...♗xg7 32.♖xh6+ ♗xh6 33.♕xh6#; 31...♖xg7 32.♕xh6+ ♔g8 33.♕h8#.

83

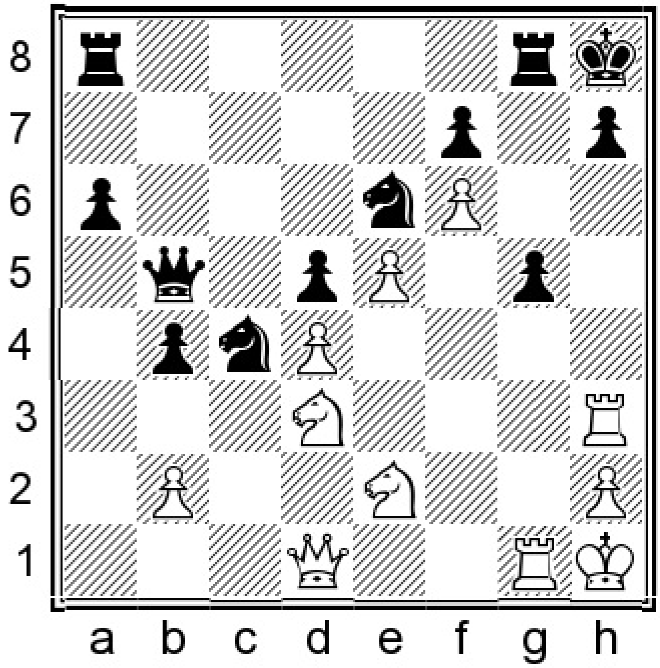


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

83 **17...♗xe5 18.dxe5 ♗c6!** Arizmendi Martinez-Burmakin, Benidorm 2009; White resigned because of 19.♕xc6 f3.

84

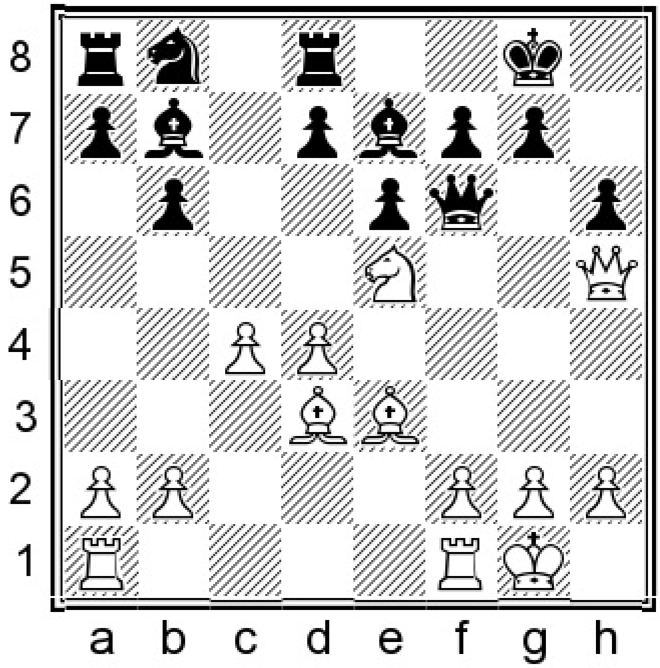


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

84 **35.♘c3!** 1-0 Beliavsky-Laznicka, Austria Bundesliga 2006/07; after the knight is captured (or the queen retreats), there follows 36.♖xh7+ and mate on h5 next move.

85

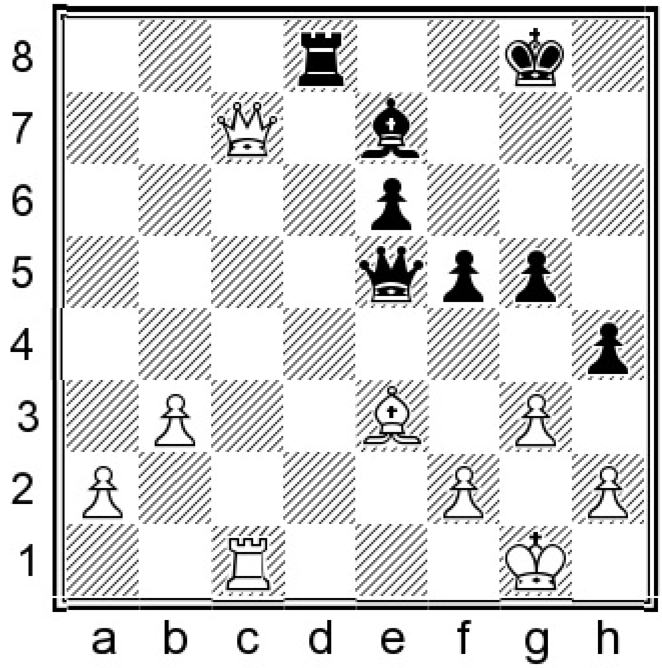


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

85 **14.♗g5! ♕xg5** 14...hxg5 15.♕h7+ ♔f8 16.♕h8#. **15.♕xf7+ ♔h8 16.♘g6+ ♔h7 17.♘xe7+ ♔h8 18.♘g6+ ♔h7 19.♘f4+ ♔h8 20.h4! ♕f6 21.♘g6+ ♔h7 22.♘e5+ ♔h8 23.♕xf6 gxf6 24.♘f7+** 1-0; Iordachescu-Slavin, London 2013.

86

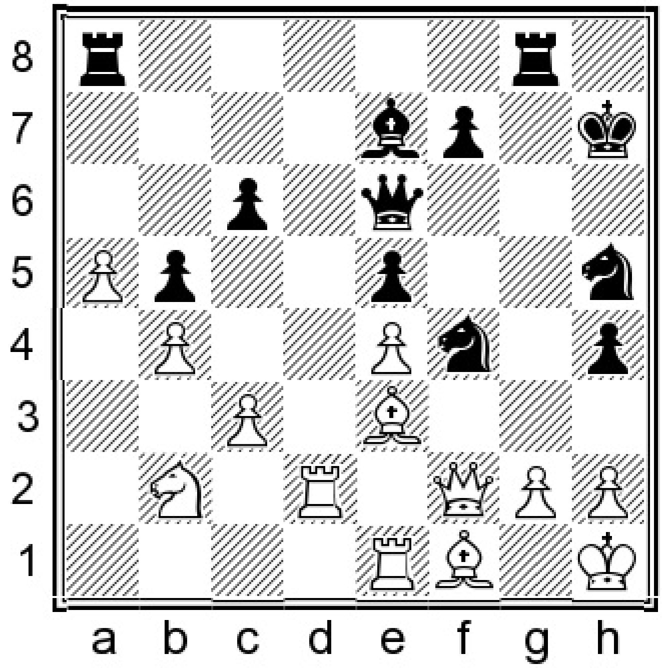


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

86 The white player had just offered the queen exchange, forget-ting about the device of ‘deflection’, which is as old as the hills. And she might have got away with it, were it not for the draughty light squares around her king... **35...♖d1+! 36.♔g2 h3+! 37.♔xh3 g4+** Agaeva-Sachdev, Nakhchivan Wch U20 W 2003; White resigned, because after the king retreats, there is the decisive 38...♕e4+. This would not have worked on move 36, but now Black has full control of the f3-square.

87

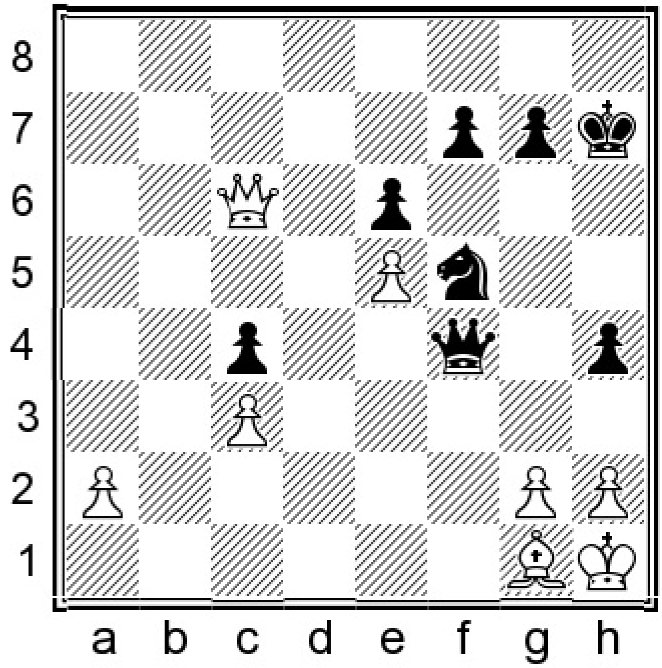


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

87 **39...♘g3+! 40.♔g1** Of course, he loses immediately after 40.hxg3 hxg3 41.♕f3 ♕h6+ 42.♔g1 ♕h2#. Now the king looks safe, but it is the turn of the second knight to offer itself in sacrifice: **40...♘h3+! 41.gxh3 ♘xe4+ 42.♗g2 ♘xf2**, and Black soon won in Malakhatko-Gallagher, Leon Ech-tt 2001.

88

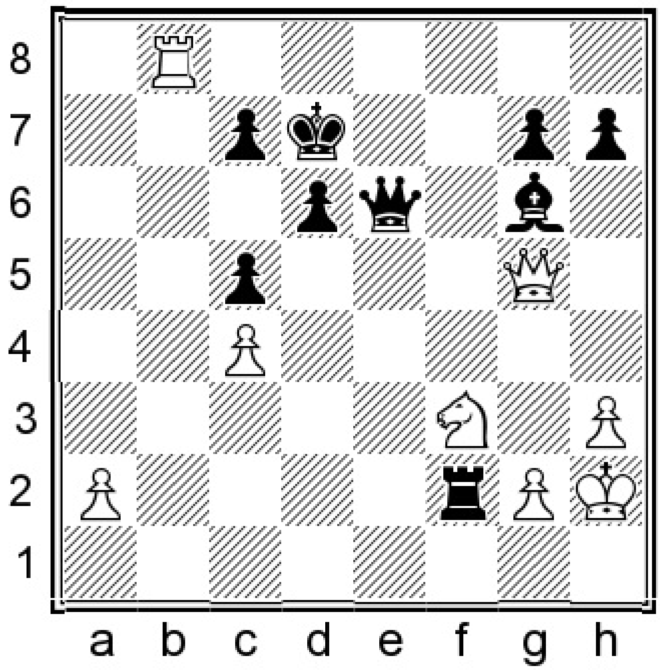


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

88 **32...♘g3+!** Yu Shaoteng-Wu Wenjin, Yongchuan zt 2003; White resigned because of 33.hxg3 hxg3 34.♗d4 (or 34.♗h2 ♕c1+ 35.♗g1 ♕h6+) 34...♕h6+ 35.♔g1 ♕c1#.

89

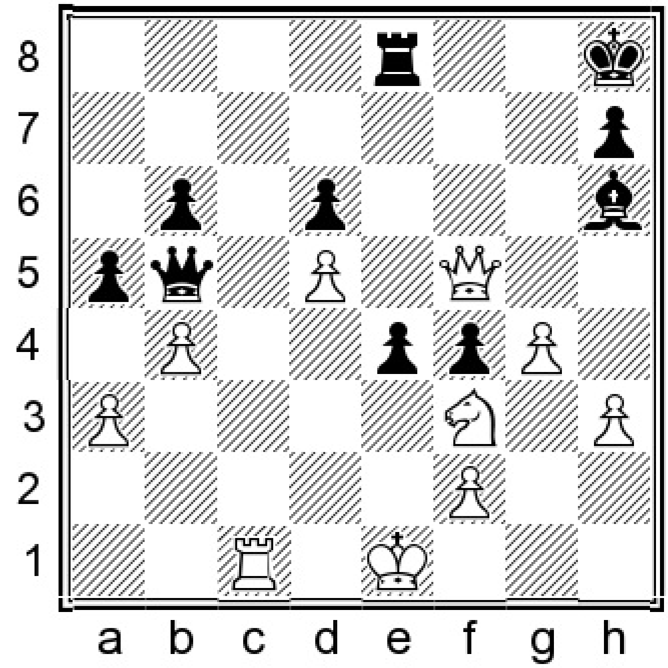


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

89 One of those positions where it is easier to work out the combination than to guess that one exists. **35.♖d8+** Okhotnik-Marzolo, Nancy 2007; Black resigned because of 35...♔c6 36.♘d4+! cxd4 37.♕b5#.

90



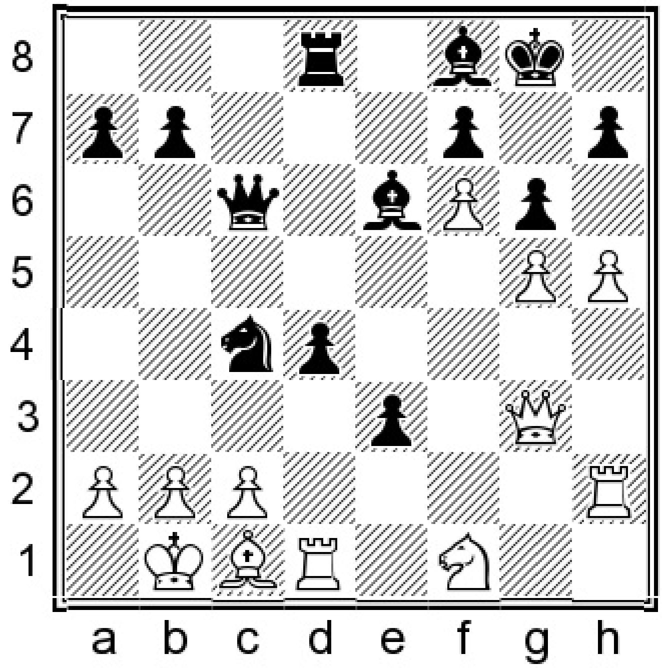
White to play

Show/Hide Solution

90 **37.♘g5!** Threatening mate on h7 and deflecting the bishop from the h6-f8 diagonal. **37...♗xg5 38.♖c7 ♗e7 39.♖xe7!** Goryachkina-Kovanova, Khanty-Mansiysk W 2012; Black resigned because of 39...♖xe7 40.♕f8#.

Show in Text Mode

91



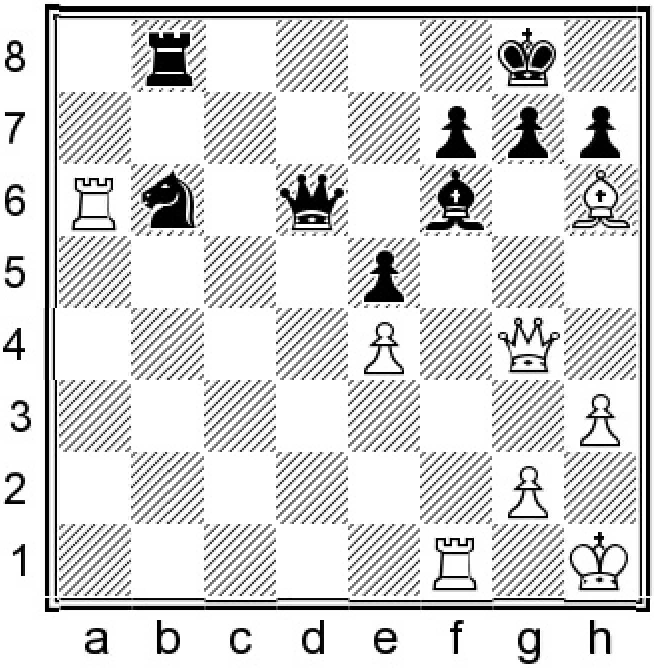
Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

91 **32...♘a3+!** Of course, 32...♗d6 also leaves White little hope, but the text is quicker.

32...♘a3+! 33.bxa3 ♕c4 34.♗xe3 ♕xa2+ 35.♔c1 dxe3 0-1 Adams-P.H.Nielsen, Khanty-Mansiysk playoff rapid 2011.

92

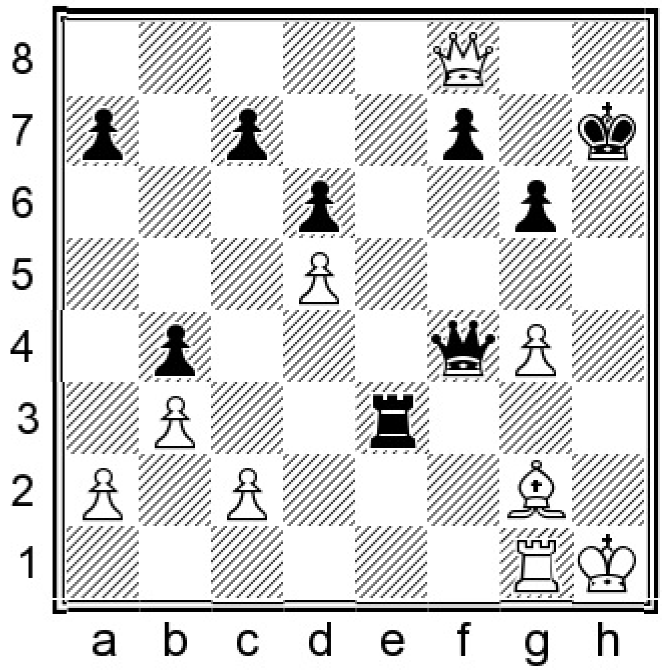


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

92 White needs two successive exchange sacrifices to start the decisive attack: **29.♖xf6!** Haba-Lechtynsky, Karlov Vary ch-CZE 2005; Black resigned, without checking his opponent’s calculations: 29...♕xf6 30.♖xb6! ♖xb6 (30...♕xb6 31.♕xg7#) 31.♕c8+.

93

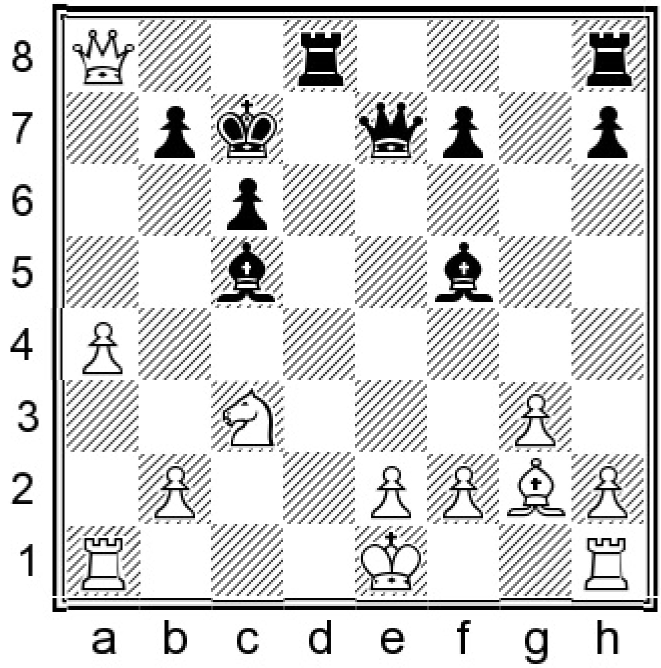


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

93 **40...♖e8!!** Conquering the h6-square! The queen has no retreat. **41.♖f1** 41.♕xe8 ♕h6+. **41...♕xf1+ 42.♗xf1 ♖xf8**, and soon White resigned in Pourkashiyan-T.L.Petrosian, Dubai 2006.

94

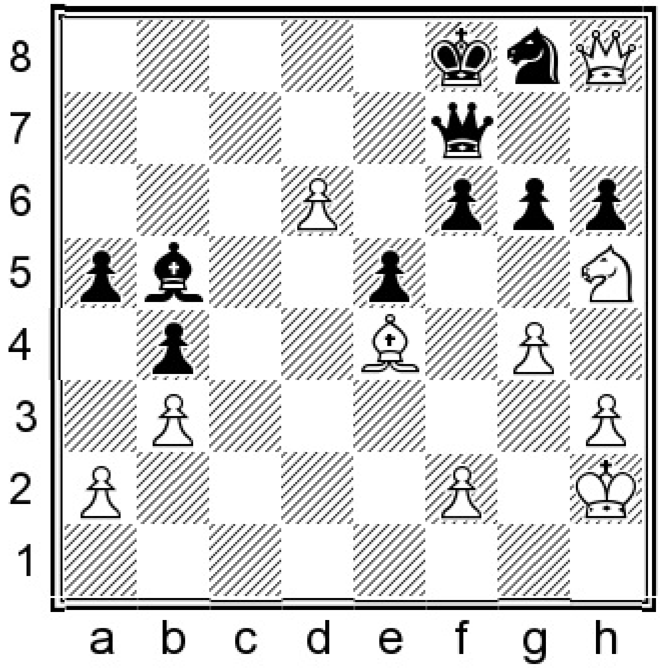


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

94 **19.♘b5+! cxb5** 19...♔b6 20.♕a7#; 19...♔d7 20.♕xb7+. **20.♕xb7+ ♔d6 21.♕c6+ ♔e5 22.f4+** Ward-Matthiesen, Copenhagen 2003; Black resigned because of 22...♔d4 23.♖d1+ ♗d3 24.♖xd3+ ♔c4 25.♕xb5#.

95

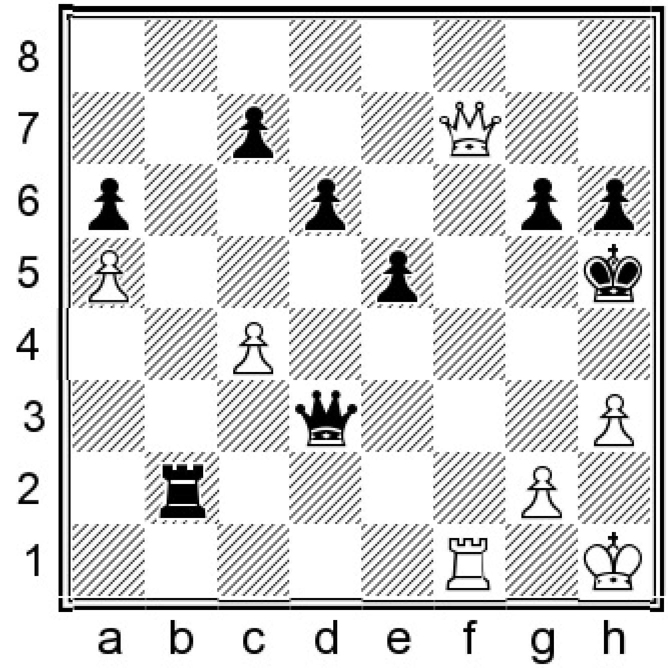


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

95 **39.♗d5! ♕xd5 40.♕g7+ ♔e8 41.♘xf6+ ♘xf6** Or 41...♔d8 42.♕c7#. **42.♕e7#** Gallego-Fedorchuk, Warsaw Ech 2005.

96



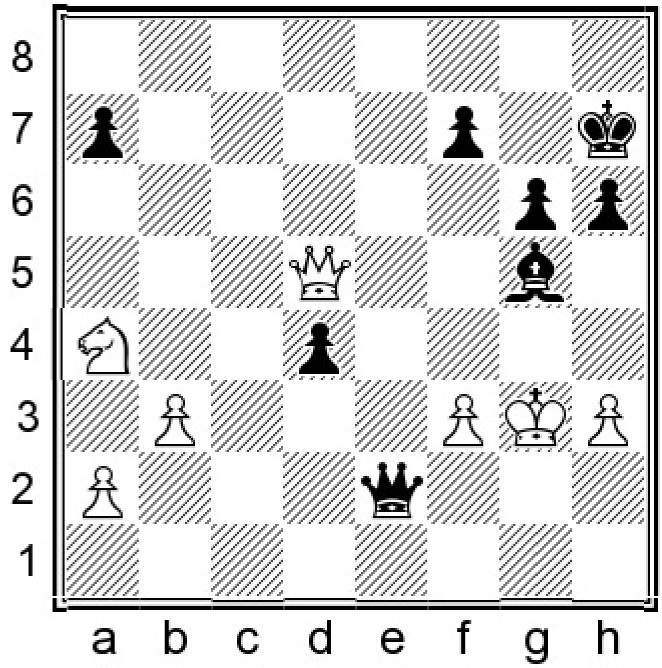
White to play

Show/Hide Solution

96 The direct 39.g4+ ♔h4 does not bring anything positive,

but there is **39.♖f5+! ♕xf5** White mates quickly after 39...♔h4 40.♕f6+ ♔g3 (40...g5 41.♕xh6+ ♔g3 42.♕xg5#) 41.♕xg6+ ♔h4 42.♕g4#. **40.g4+ ♕xg4 41.hxg4+ ♔xg4 42.♕xg6+**, and soon Black resigned in Vocaturo-V.Georgiev, Turin ol 2006.

97

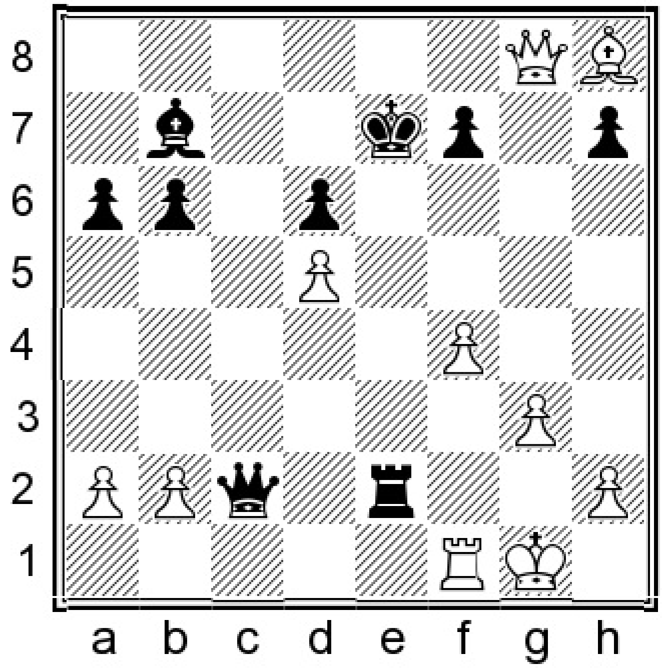


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

97 **47...♗h4+! 48.♔xh4** Or 48.♔g4 f5+. **48...♕f2+ 49.♔g4 f5+ 50.♔f4 ♕h2#** Drozdovskij-Grishchenko, Russia tt 2010; fans of Tarrasch's teachings may draw attention to the knight stuck on the edge of the board...

98

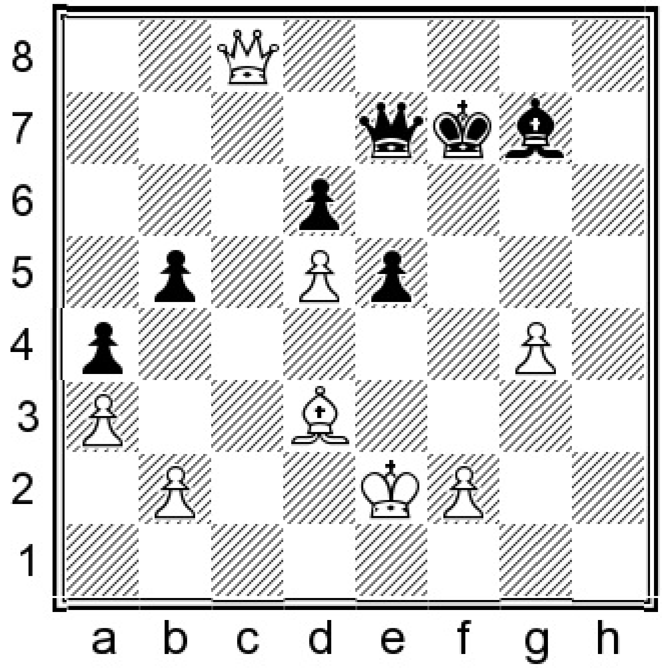

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h

White to play

Show/Hide Solution

98 **29.♗f6+!** Cvetkovic-Perunovic, Vrnjacka Banja ch-SRB 2013; Black resigned: mate next move is inevitable.

99

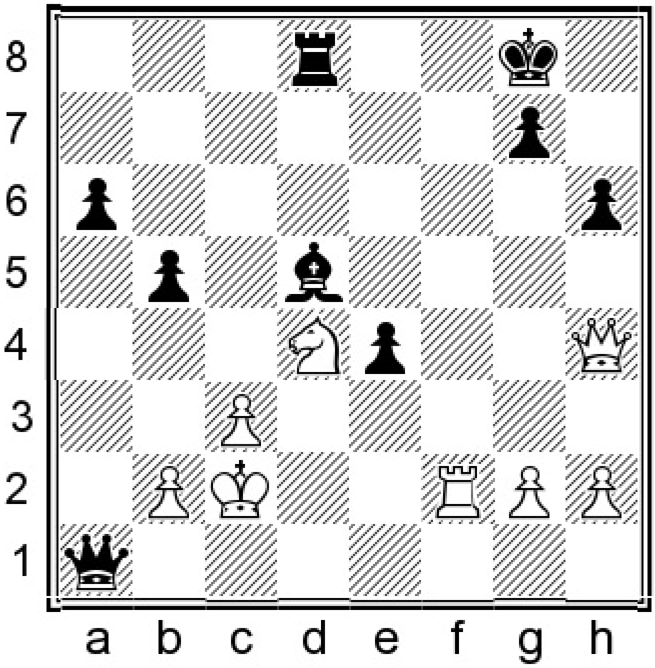


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

99 **43.♗g6+!** 1-0 Gustafsson-Vedmediuc, Istanbul ol 2012; 43...♔xg6 44.♕f5+ ♔h6 45.♕h5#.

100

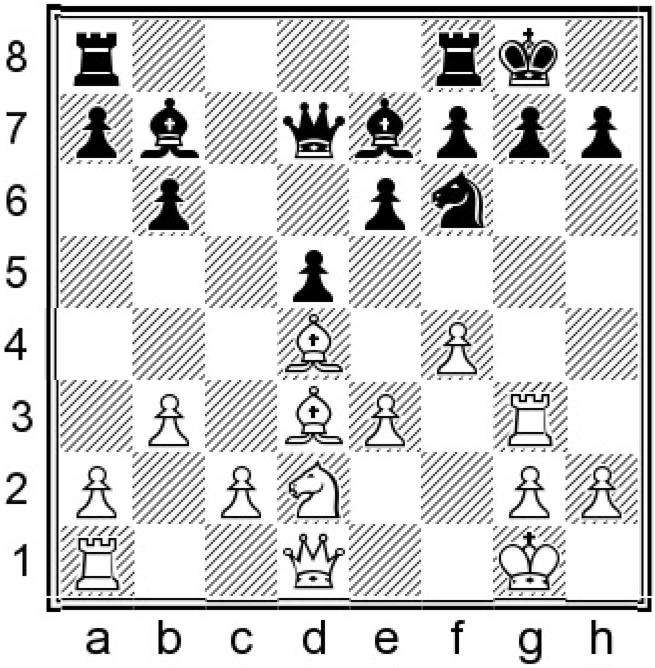


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

100 At first sight, White's position is solid, but suddenly... **30...♗b3+!** Filippas-Kohlweyer, Kavala 2011; and White resigned. After taking the knight it is mate in one (31.♔xb3 ♕a4#; 31.♘xb3 ♕d1#), but even after 31.♔d2 the king doesn't get far: 31...♕xb2+ 32.♔e3 ♕xc3+ 33.♔f4 g5+.

101

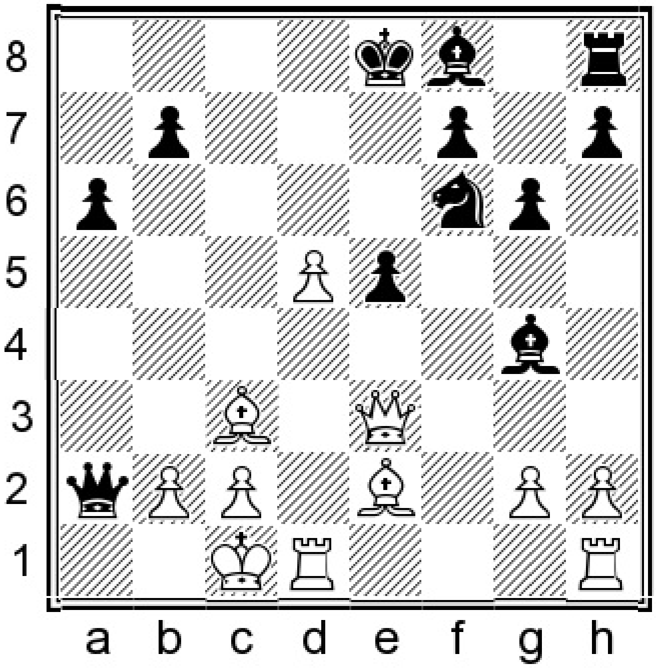


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

101 Black has played the opening too passively and suffers a well-deserved punishment: **15.♖xg7+! ♔xg7 16.♕g4+ ♔h6** Or 16...♔h8 17.♗xf6+ ♗xf6 18.♕h5. **17.♕g5#** De Florio-Necesito, Cento 2011.

102

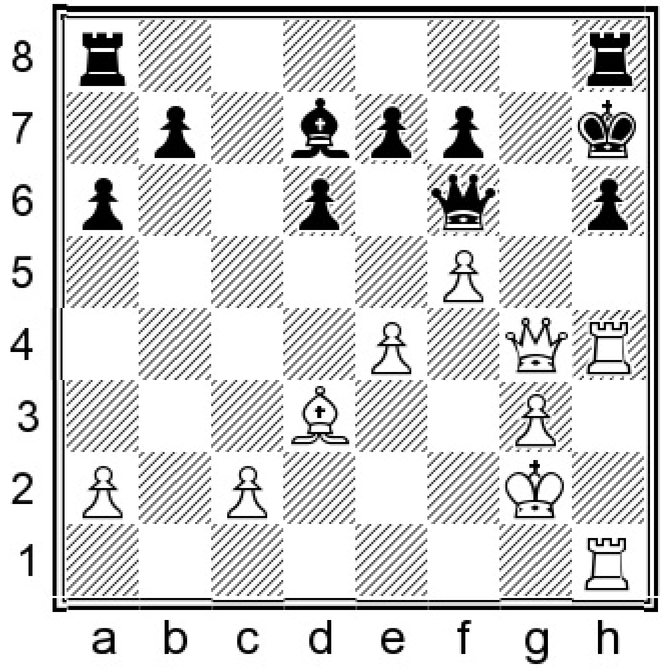


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

102 **18...♘e4!** 0-1 Mikheev-Polschikov, St Petersburg 2006; beautiful, don’t you agree? Black is an exchange down, and has an undeveloped kingside, and yet he puts a second piece under attack. But it cannot be taken, and White is lost anyway: 19.♗xg4 ♕a1#; 19.♕xe4 ♗h6+ 20.♗d2 ♕a1#; 19.b4 ♕a3+.

103

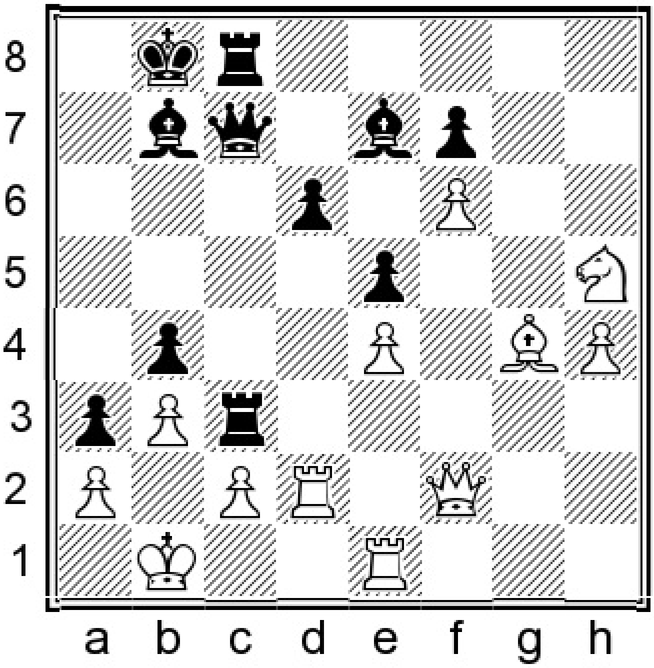


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

103 **36.e5! ♗c6+ 37.♔f2 dxe5 38.♖xh6+! ♕xh6 39.f6+** 1-0 Gharamian-Adhiban, Paris 2010.

104

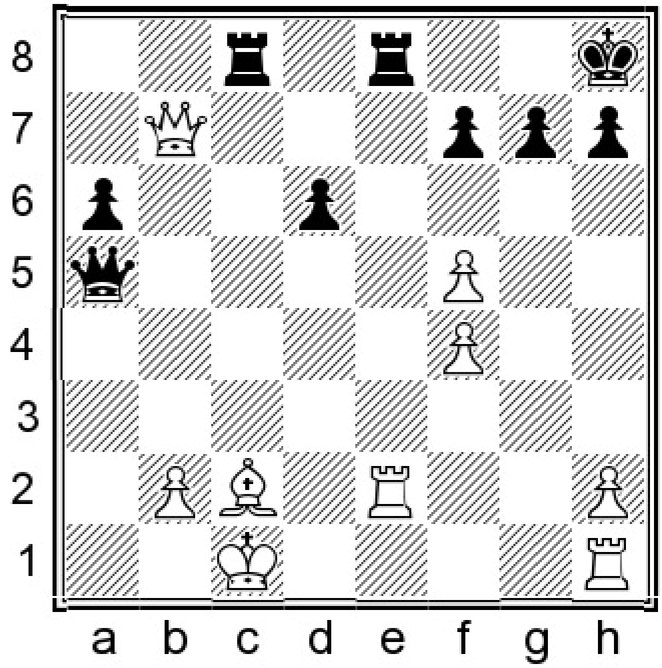


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

104 At first glance, White’s position is fairly solid, but after **32...♖xb3+!** he resigned at once in Kanarek-Swiercz, Chotowa ch-POL 2009; 33.axb3 ♕c3 is bad, whilst after 33.cxb3 another sacrifice settles things: 33...♗xe4+ 34.♖xe4 ♕c1#.

105

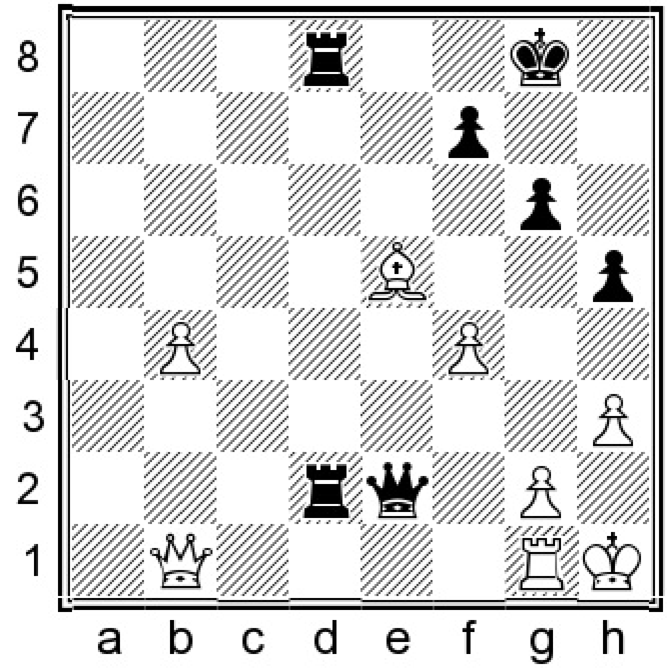


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

105 **28...♖xc2+! 29.♔xc2** Completely bad is 29.♖xc2 ♖e1+ 30.♖xe1 ♕xe1#. **29...♖xe2+ 30.♔d3** More tenacious was 30.♔b1 ♕xf5+ 31.♔a1, but this does not change the assessment of the position. **30...♕d2+ 31.♔c4 ♕c2+** 0-1 Potkin-Wang Yue, Ningbo tt rapid 2010.

106

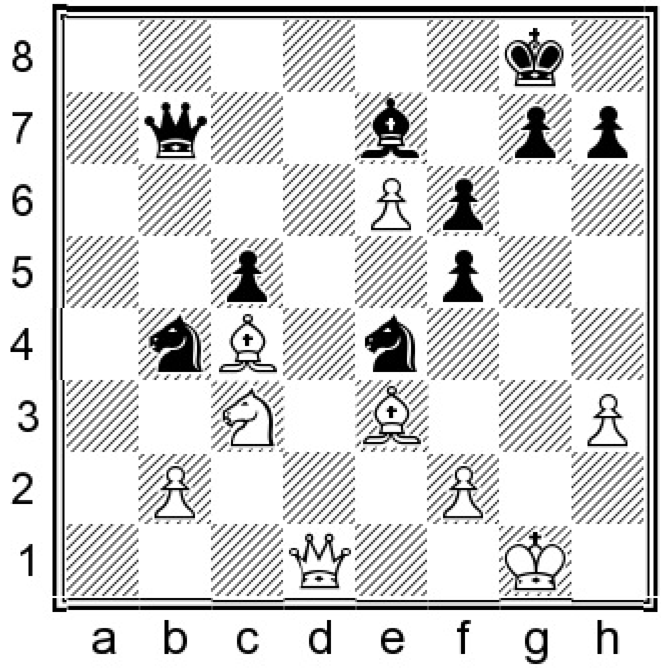


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

106 **38...♖8d3!** Creating the lethal threat of 39...♖xh3+. It looks as though White can meet this with **39.♔h2**, but **39...♖xh3+!** forces immediate surrender: 0-1 Valenti-Cocchi, Cento 2011; the disaster comes from the other side: 40.♔xh3 ♕g4+ 41.♔h2 ♕h4#.

107

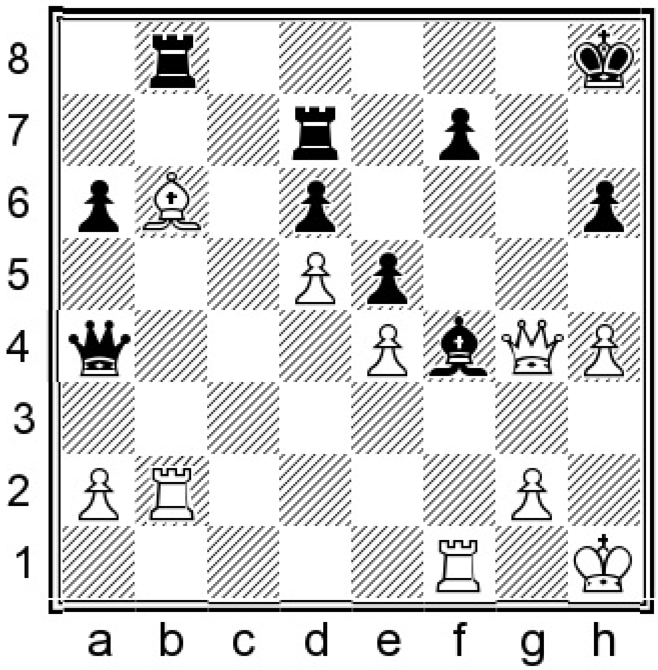


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

107 **23.♕d8+! ♗xd8 24.e7+** 1-0 Moskalenko-Massana Blanch, Barcelona 2005; do not forget this useful device, deflection!

108

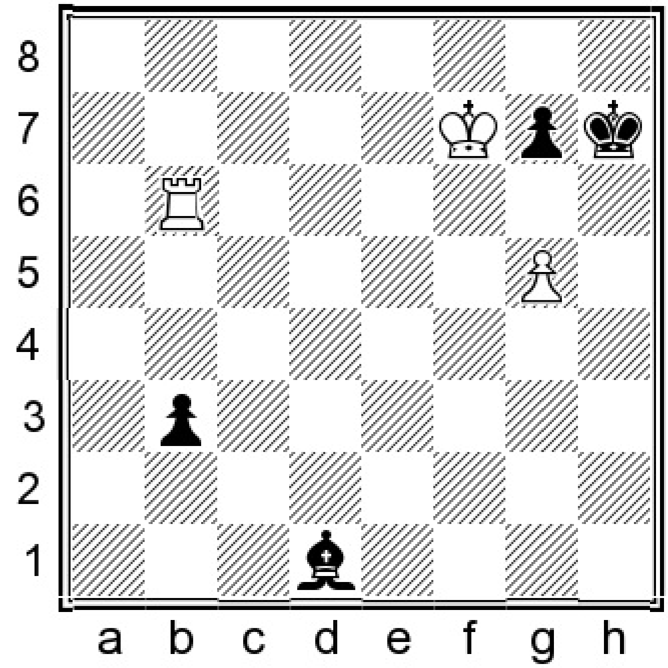

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h

White to play

Show/Hide Solution

108 **32.♖xf4!** Yu Ruiyuan-Oleksienko, Chennai 2012; Black resigned because of 32...♖g8 33.♕h5 exf4 34.♕xh6# or 32...exf4 33.♗d4+ ♕xd4 34.♖xb8+ ♔h7 35.♕g8#.

109



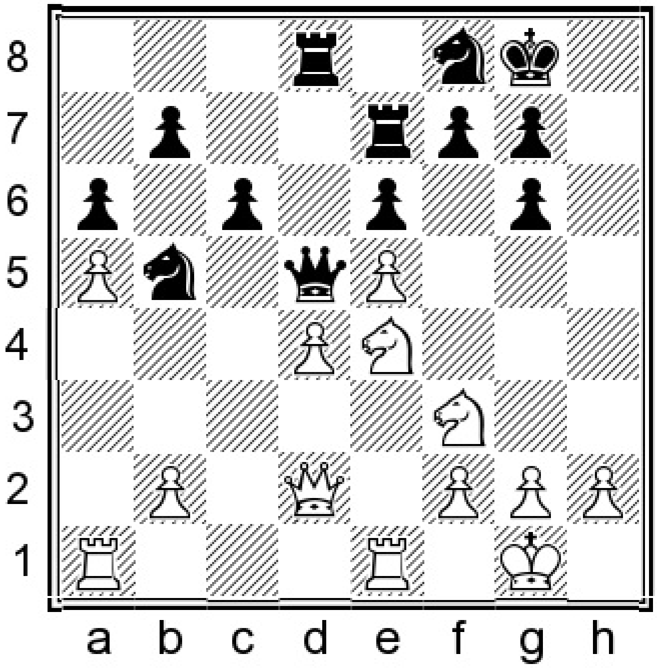
White to play

Show/Hide Solution

109 **73.♖h6+!** Ghaem Maghami-Khader, Ha Long City rapid 2009;

Black resigned, since he cannot prevent the triumphal march of the g-pawn. A nice miniature (the term used for a problem or endgame study with fewer than seven units on the board).

110

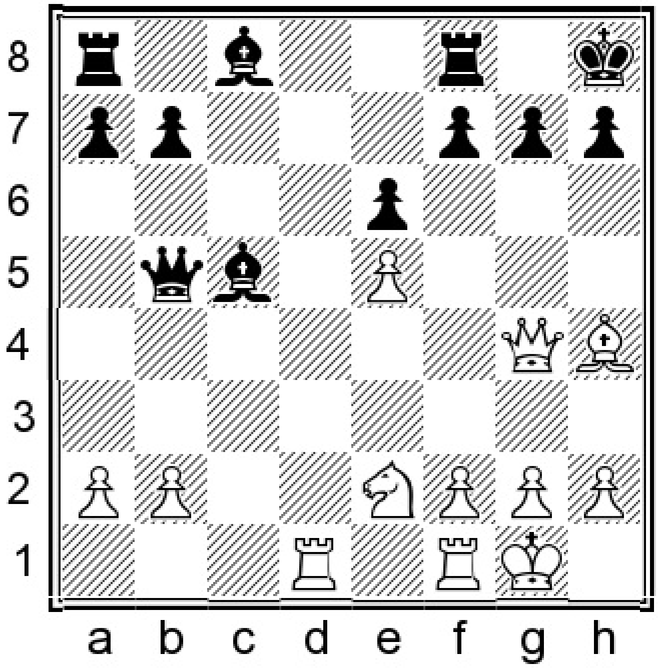


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

110 The unfortunate position of the rook on e7 suggests a motif for a combination: **21.♘f6+! gxf6 22.exf6 ♘h7** Necessary – if the rook retreats, 23.♕h6 is decisive. **23.fxe7** and White won in Alsina Leal-Franco Alonso, Elgoibar 2013.

111

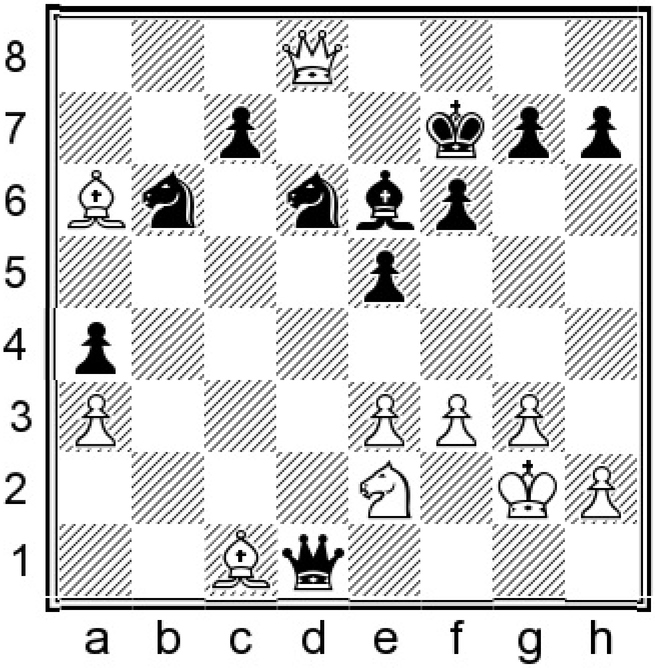


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

111 **21.♗f6! gxf6** 21...♖g8 22.♗xg7+ ♖xg7 23.♖d8+. **22.exf6** Grischuk-Genba, Khanty-Mansiysk 2011; Black resigned because of 22...♖g8 23.♖d8!.

112

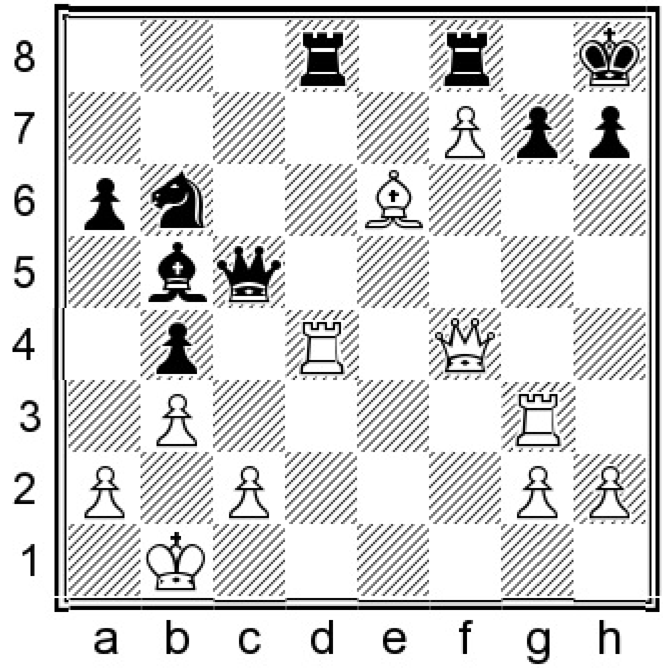


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

112 **28...♗h3+!** J.Grant-Hawkins, London 2012; beautiful, isn’t it? White resigned because of 29.♔xh3 ♕f1+ 30.♔g4 (30.♔h4 g5+) 30...h5+! 31.♔xh5 ♕h3#.

113

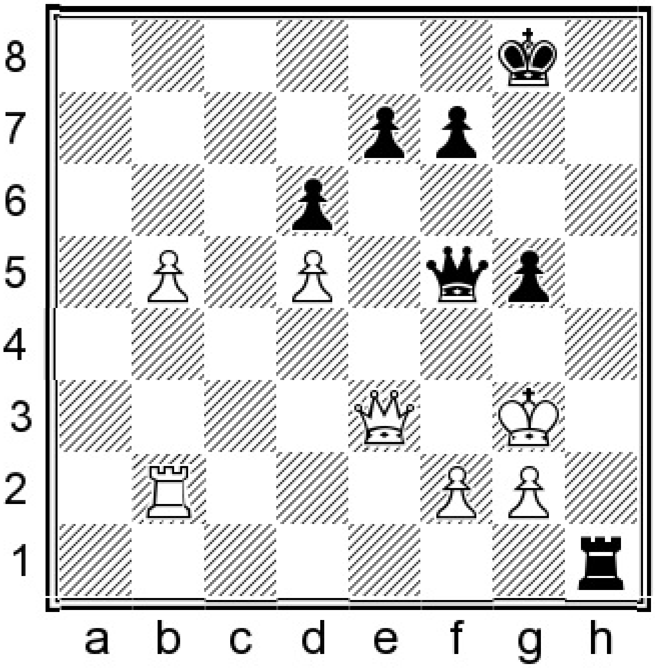


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

113 **31.♖xd8 ♖xd8 32.♕f6!** As well as attacking the pawn, this also covers the long diagonal a1-h8, insuring White against checks on g1 followed by d4, when the black rook would have to leave the back rank. **32...♕f8 33.♖xg7** 1-0 Nijboer-Naumkin, Hoogeveen 2008.

114

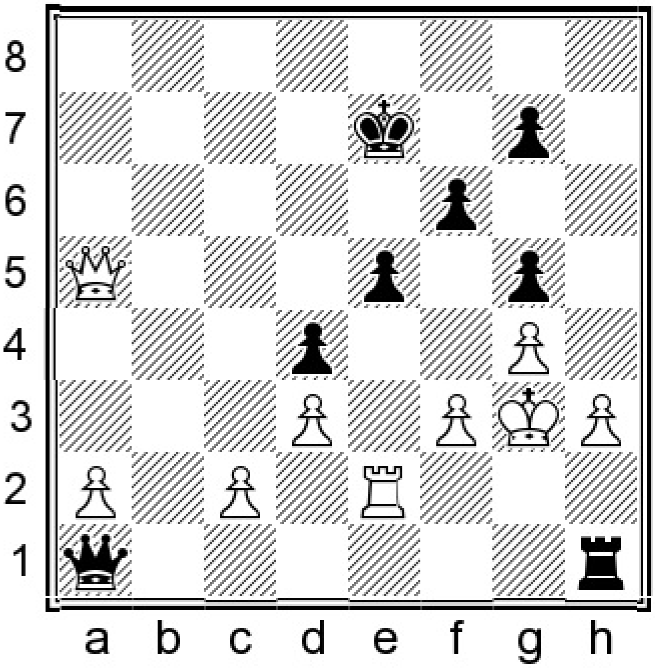


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

114 **42...♖e1! 43.♕d2** Not better are either 43.♕xe1 ♕f4+ 44.♔h3 ♕h4#, or 43.♕d4 ♖e4 44.♕d2 ♕e5+ 45.♔f3 g4#. **43...♖e2!** Insisting: 0-1 Lobzhanidze-Kacheishvili, Dresden Ech 2007.

115

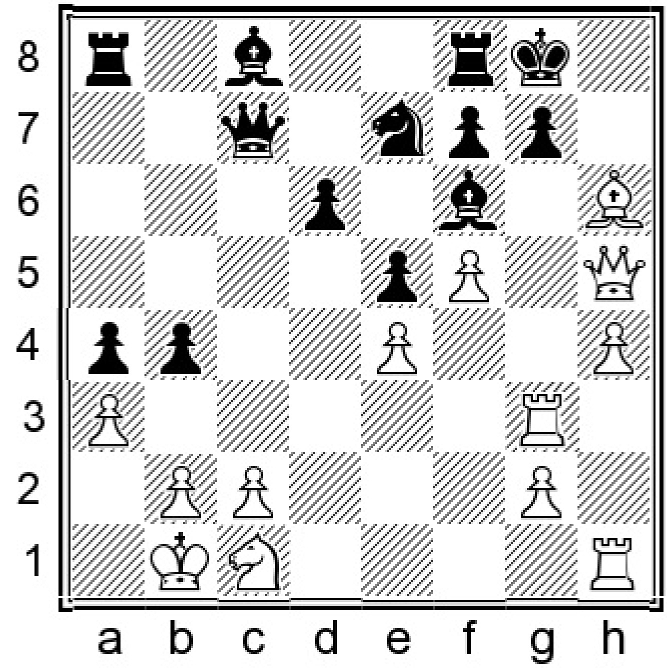


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

115 **34...♕g1+ 35.♖g2 ♖xh3+!** Ferguson-Williams, London 2012; White resigned because of 36.♔xh3 ♕h1+ 37.♔g3 ♕h4# or 37.♖h2 ♕xf3#.

116



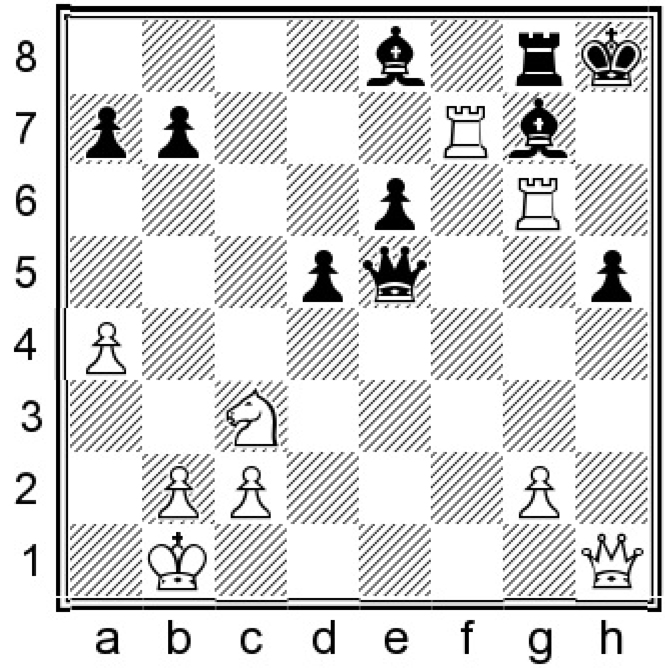
White to play

Show/Hide Solution

116 White is a piece down, but happily parts with another rook: **24.♗xg7!** 24.♖xg7+! ♗xg7 25.♗xg7 transposes.

24.♗xg7! ♗xg7 25.♖xg7+ ♔xg7 26.♕g5+! ♘g6 Nothing changes after 26...♔h7 27.f6. **27.f6+** P.H.Nielsen-Van Wely, Wolvega 2010; Black resigned because of 27...♔h7 28.♕h5+ ♔g8 29.♕h6. The queen alone is stronger than the whole force (although not without the help of the powerful footsoldier on f6).

117

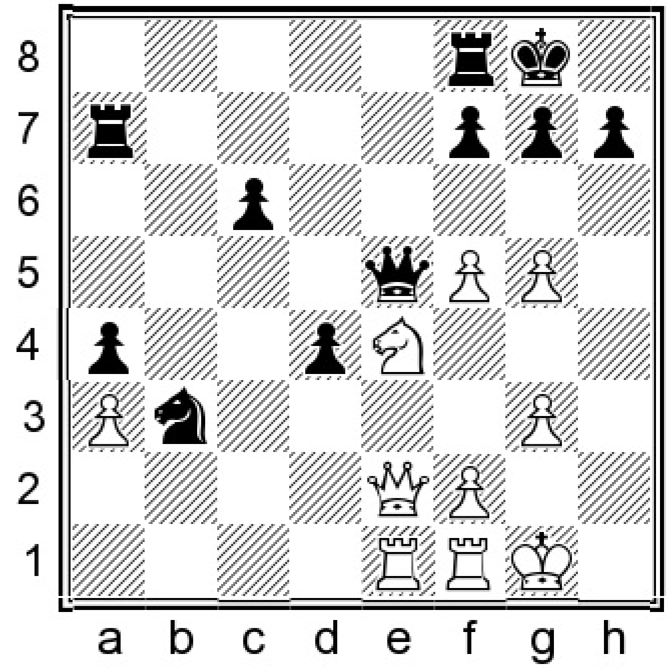


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

117 **30.♕c1!!** 1-0 Marholev-Rotstein, Livigno 2011; this is hardly the move that leaps first to one’s eye, but it immediately dots the i’s and crosses the t’s. The h6-square is defenceless.

118

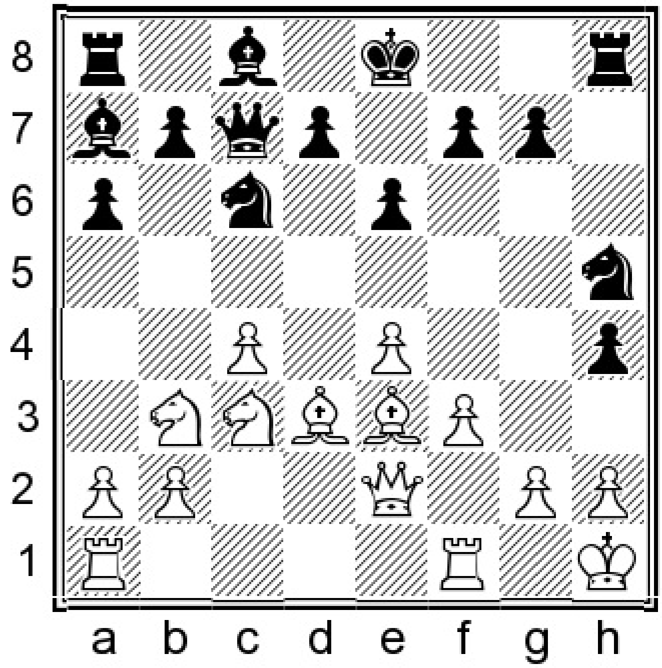


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

118 **24.♘f6+! gxf6 25.♕g4!** There is no time to retreat the queen, because mate in two is threatened. **25...♔h8 26.♖xe5 fxe5 27.f6 ♖g8 28.♔g2** 1-0 Moiseenko-Külaots, Warsaw Ech rapid 2013.

119

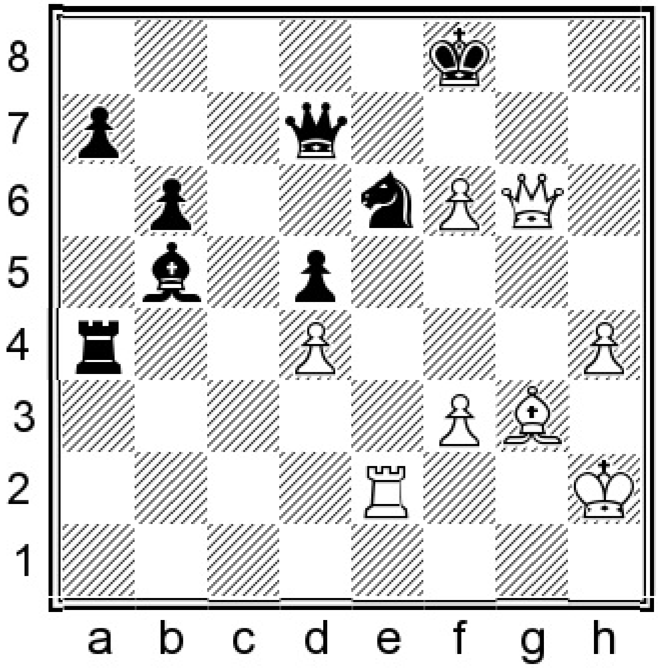


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

119 Here the first move of the combination is definitely very attractive: **13...♘g3+! 14.hxg3 hxg3+ 15.♔g1 ♕f4!** Padeiro-Galego, Canecas 2002 ch-POR playoff rapid; White resigned because of 16.♗xa7 ♖h1+! 17.♔xh1 ♕h4+.

120

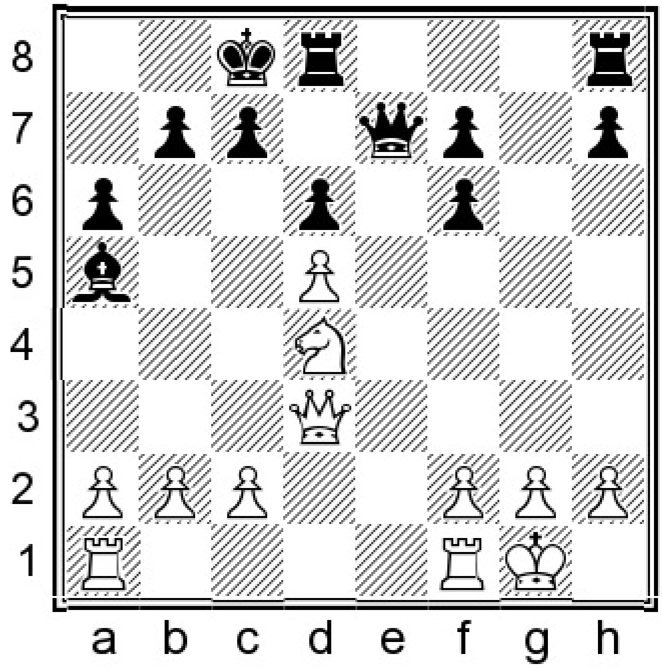


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

120 White is a piece down and has a rook attacked, but he offers the sacrifice of a bishop. **43.♗f4!** The only way to win, in fact. **43...♘xf4 44.♖e8+! ♕xe8 45.♕g7#** Jones-Hawkins, North Shields ch-GBR 2012.

121



White to play

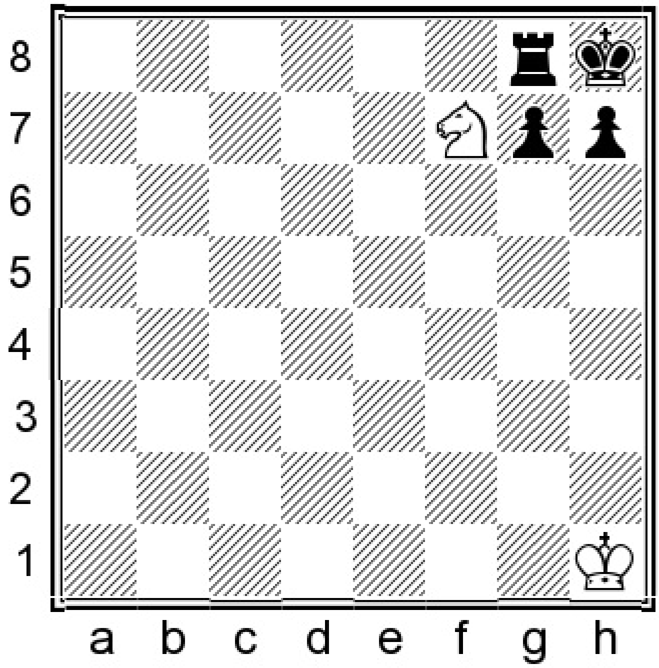
Show/Hide Solution

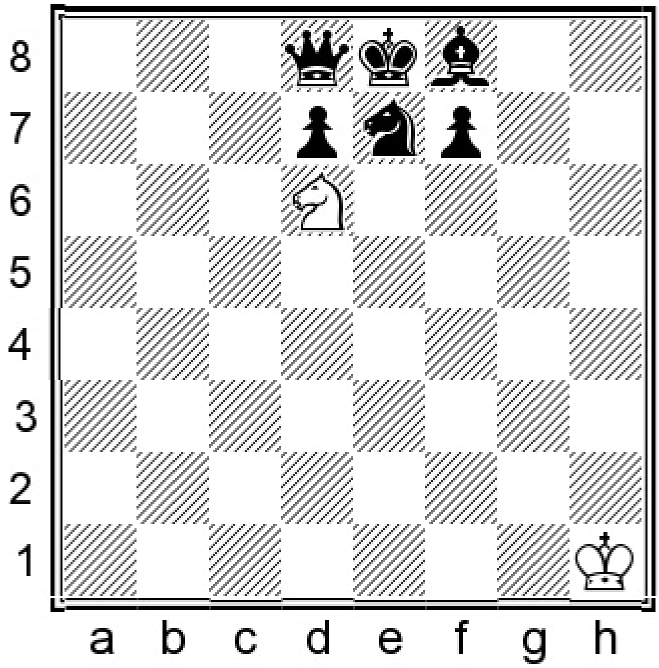
121 **17.♘c6! bxc6 18.dxc6** 1-0 Mulet-Korcz, Zabrze 2011; such an unpretentious quiet move. Black has lots of pieces, but there is nothing to be done against the queen and pawn mate. Usually such a catastrophe occurs on the kingside, but it seems that one must keep one’s eyes open on the other wing too.

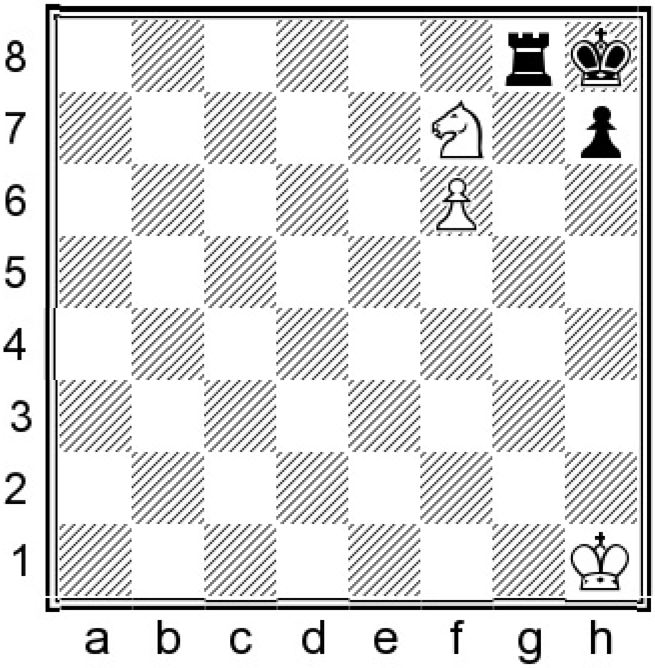
Chapter 3

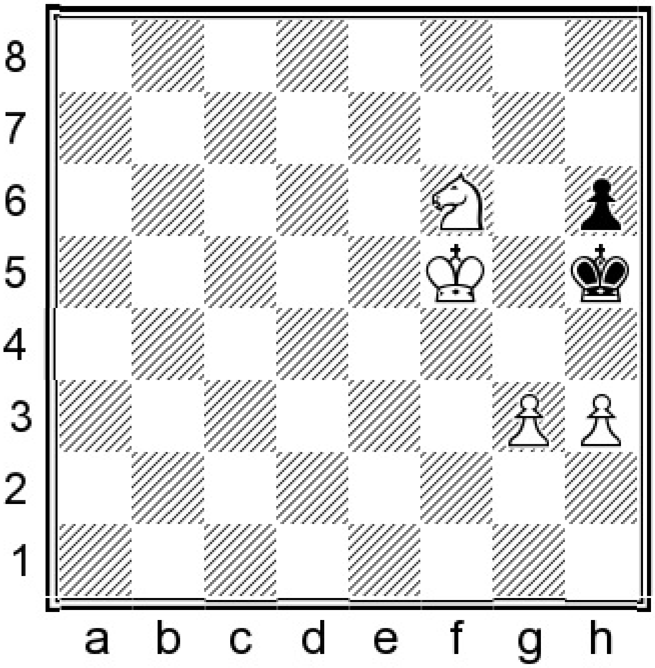
The minor pieces and pawns

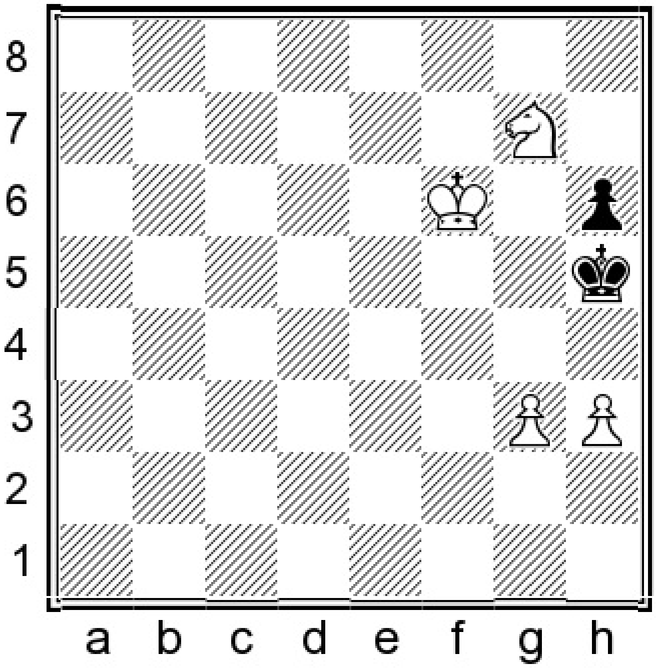
The **knight** on its own can only give mate when the enemy king's escape paths are blocked by his own pieces. The most common form of this is the so-called 'smothered mate'.

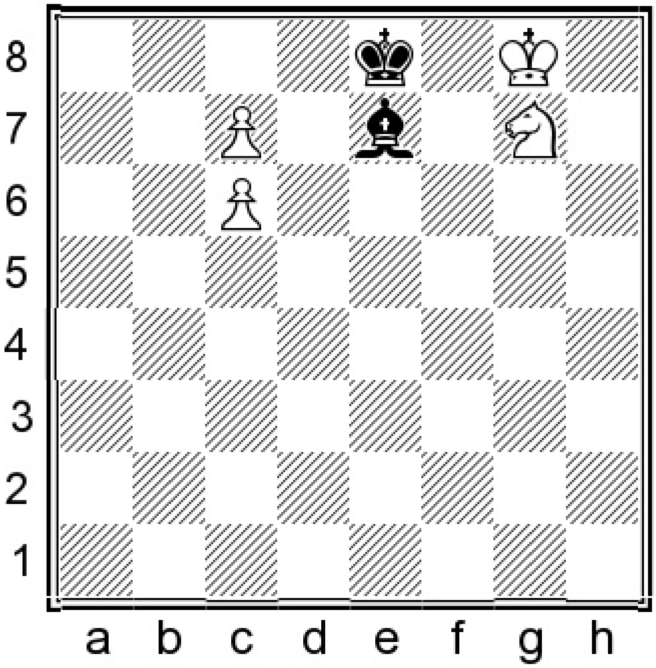




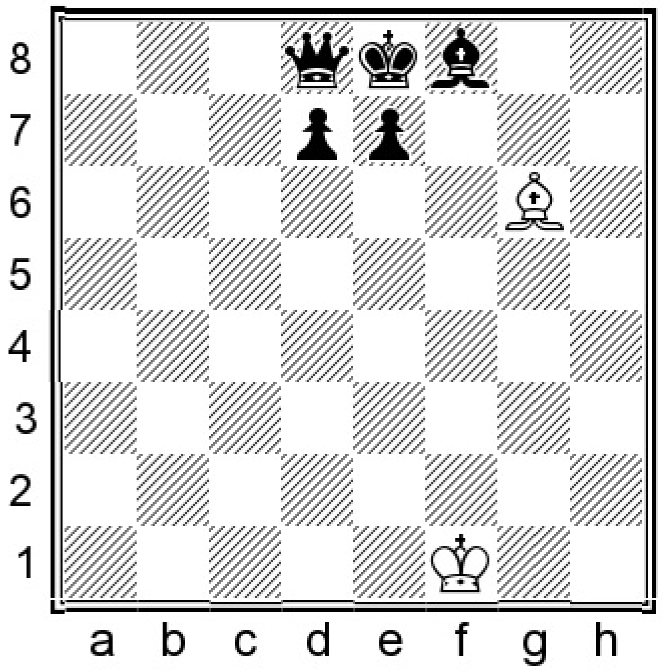

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h

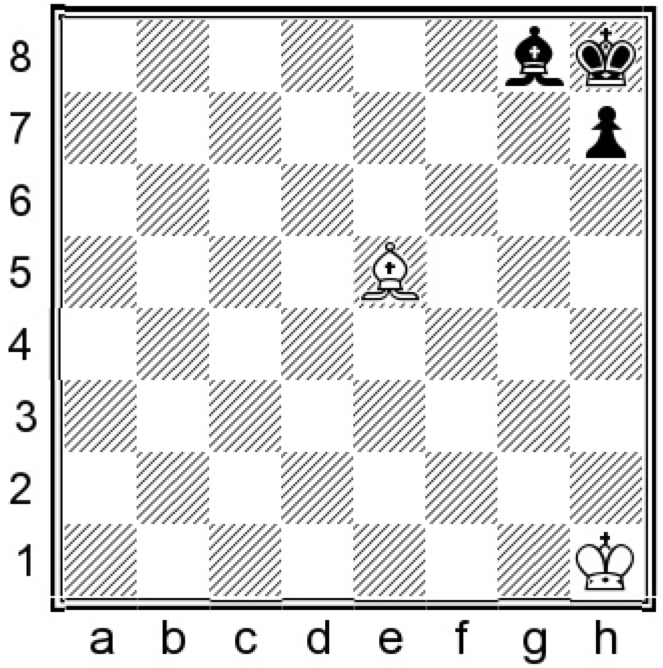

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h

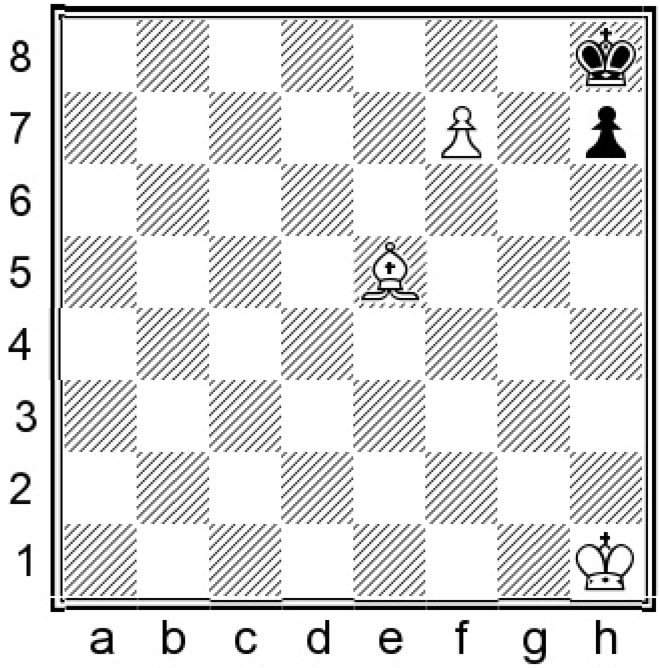


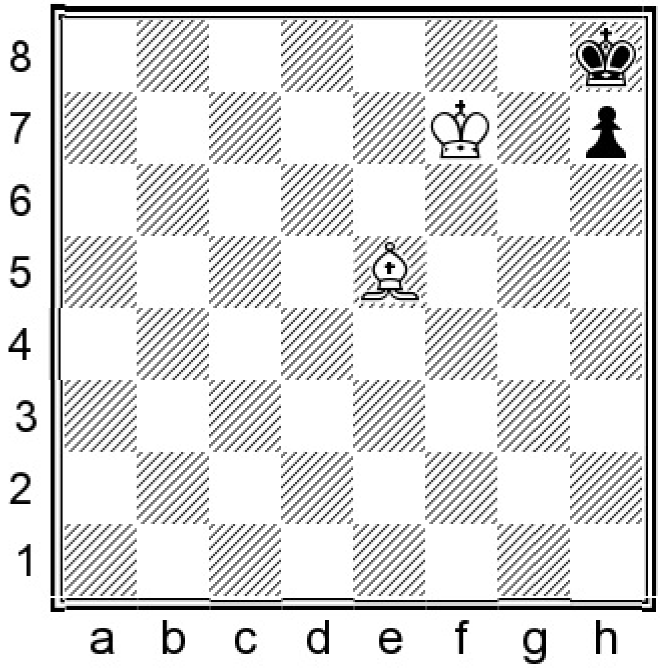


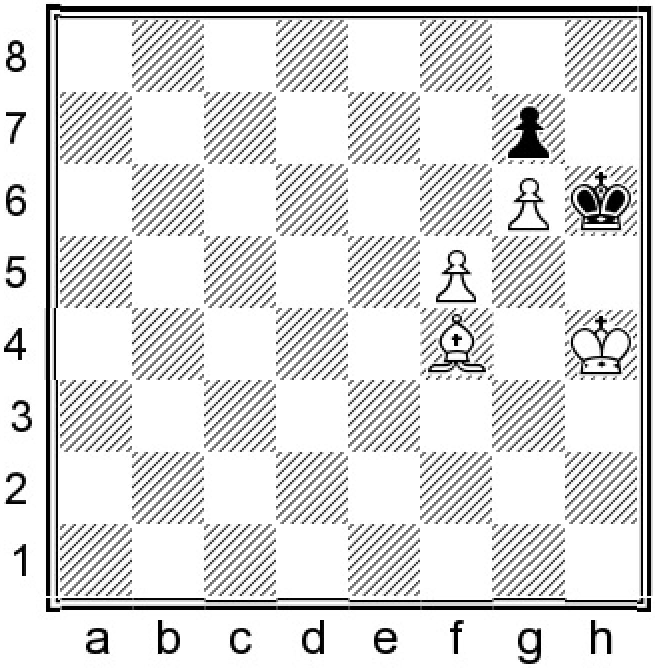
The **bishop** also needs the help of his own or enemy units to give mate. The most common constructions are the following:

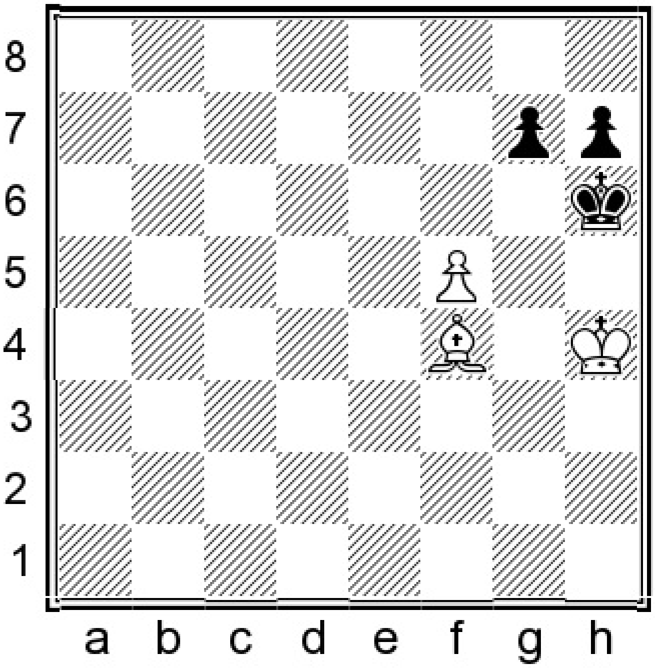




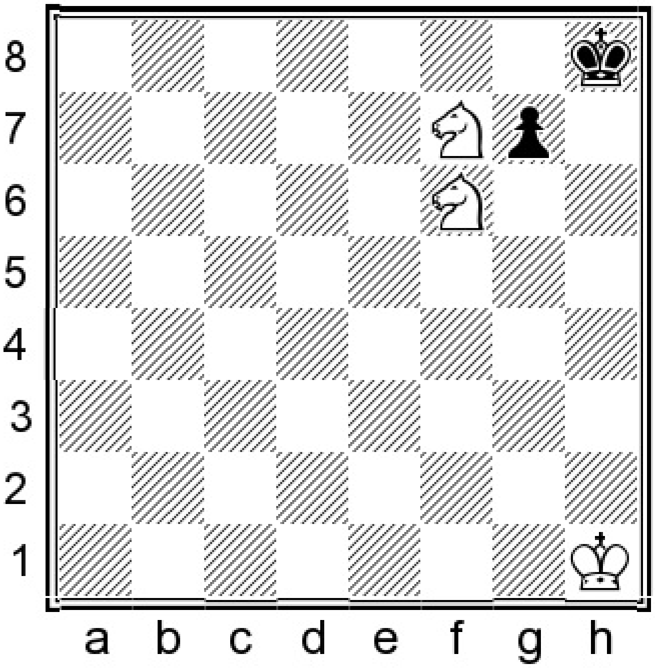

a b c d e f g h

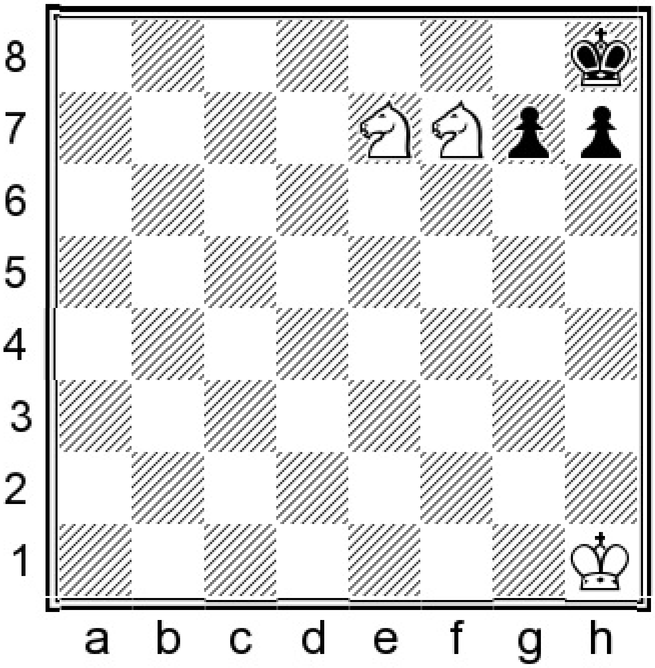

a b c d e f g h

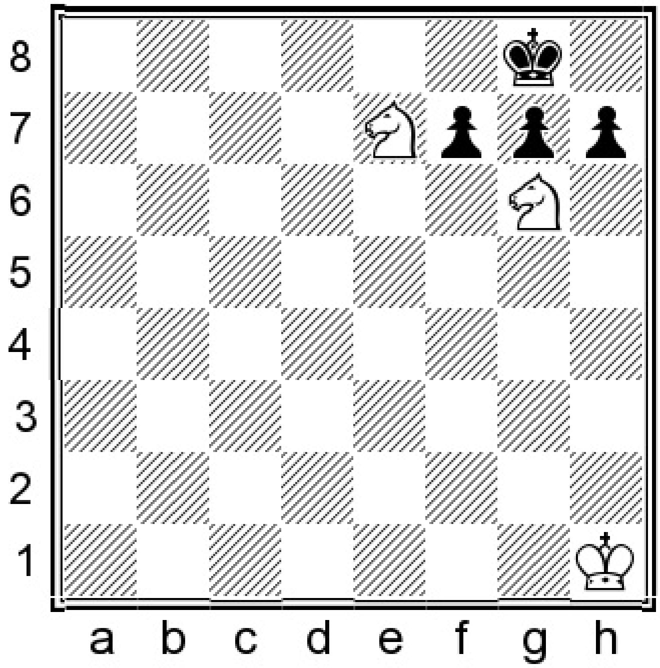


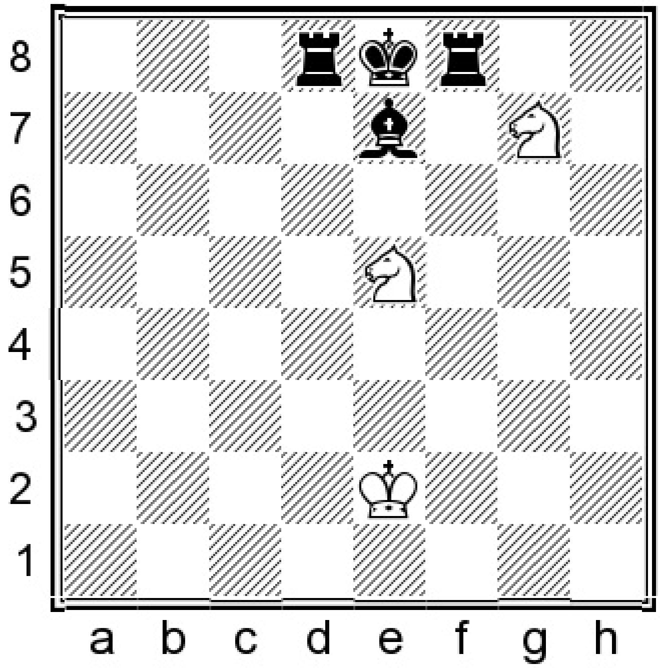


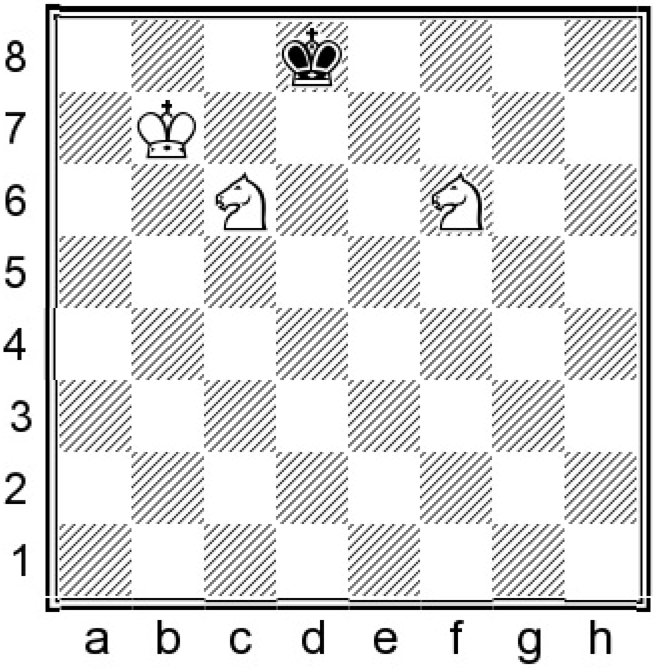
Two knights cannot mate a lone king on an empty board, but in a position full of life, they often constitute a powerful weapon. The most popular mating set-ups are as follows:



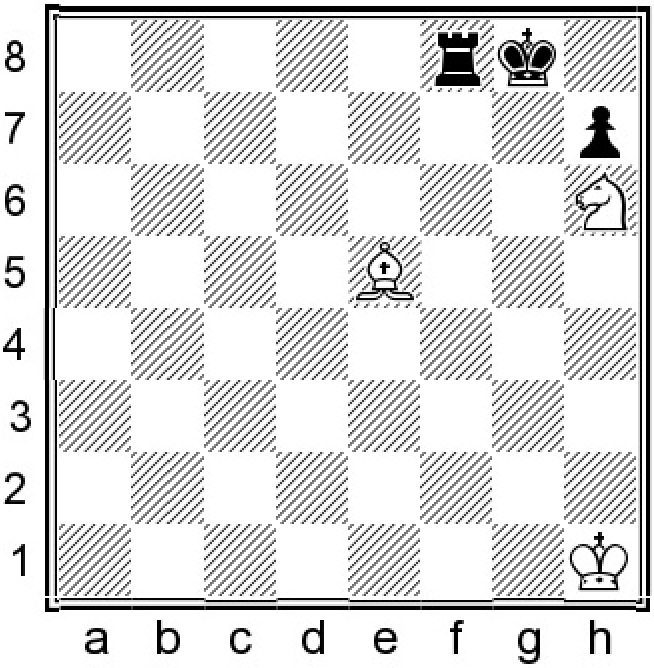


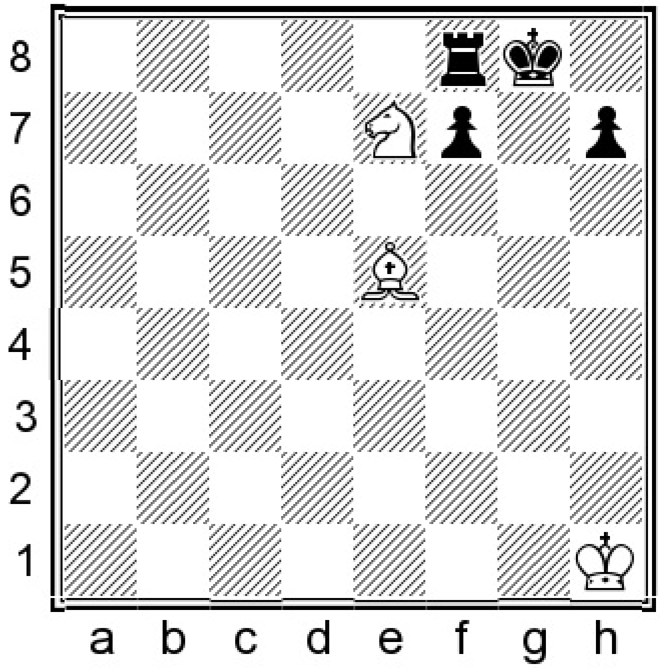


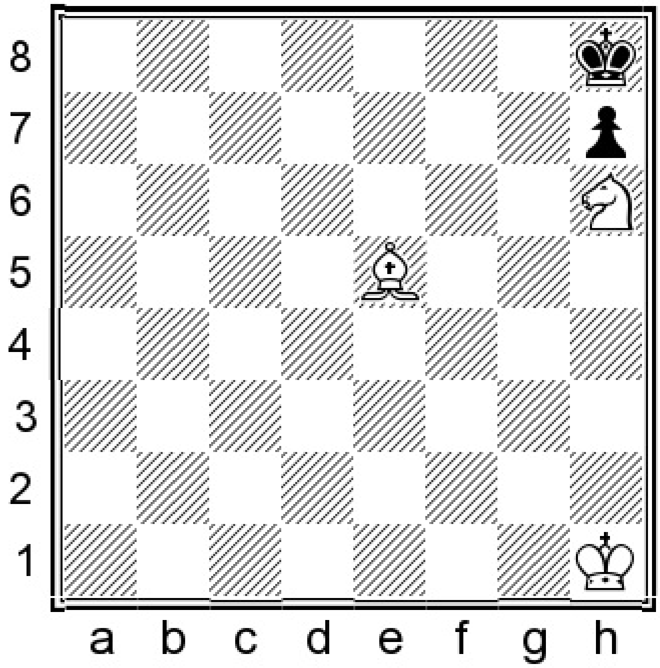


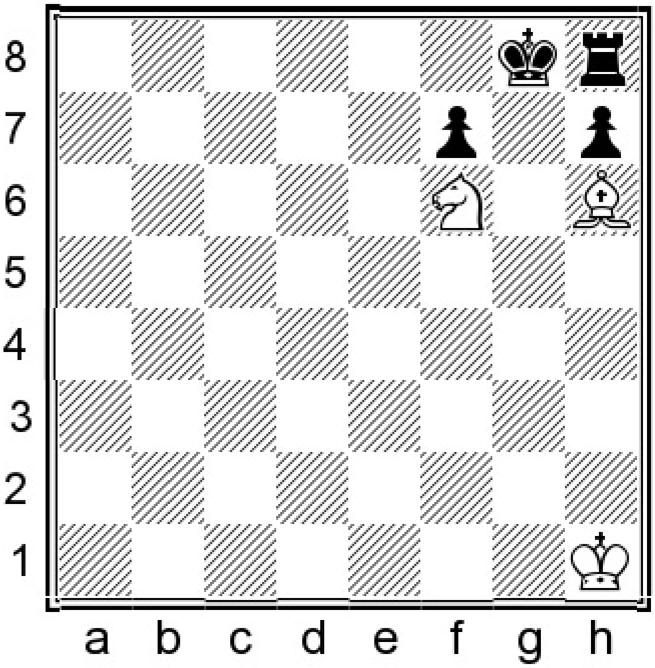


Knight and bishop, as a rule, usually do most damage to a king when it is in the corner or adjacent to it: b1 (b8) or g1 (g8). Consider the following diagrams:

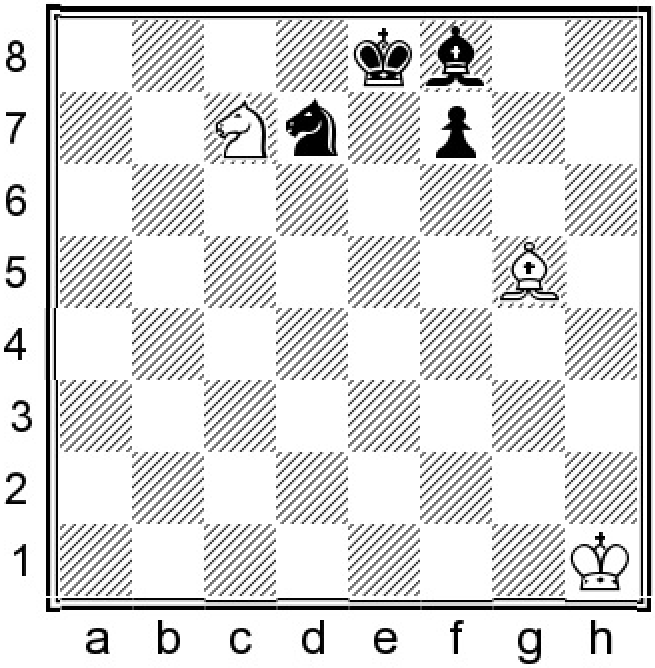



8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h

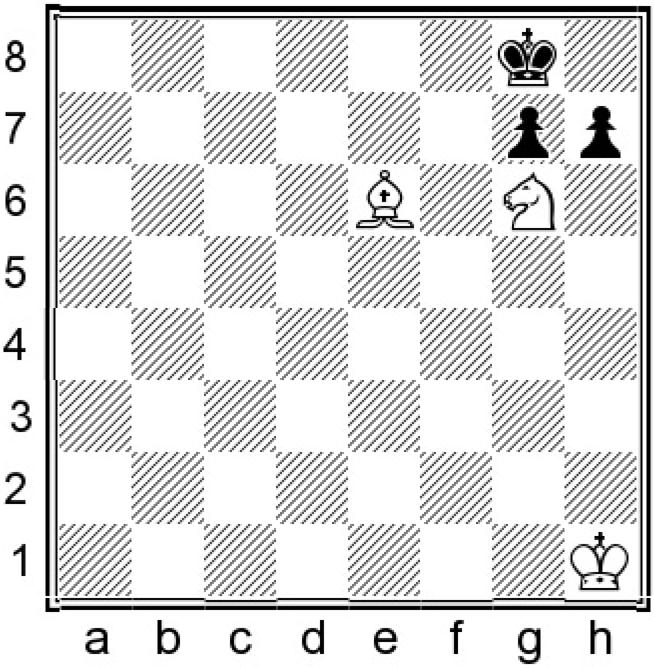

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h

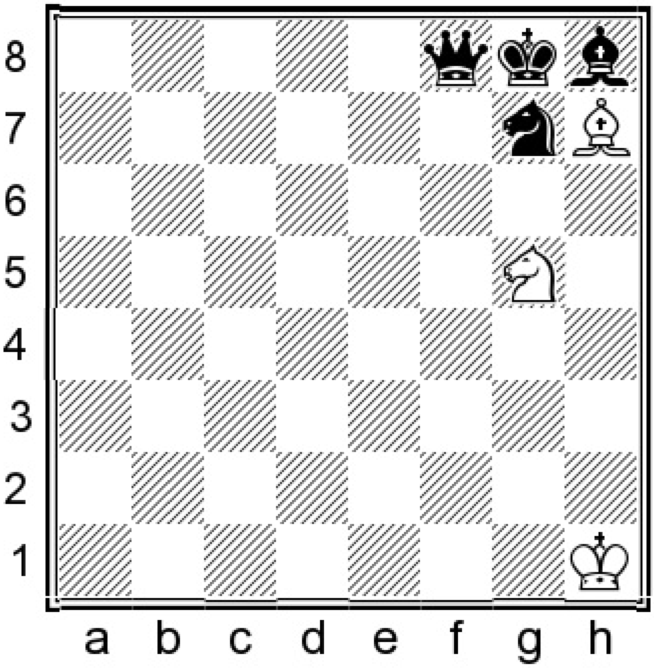


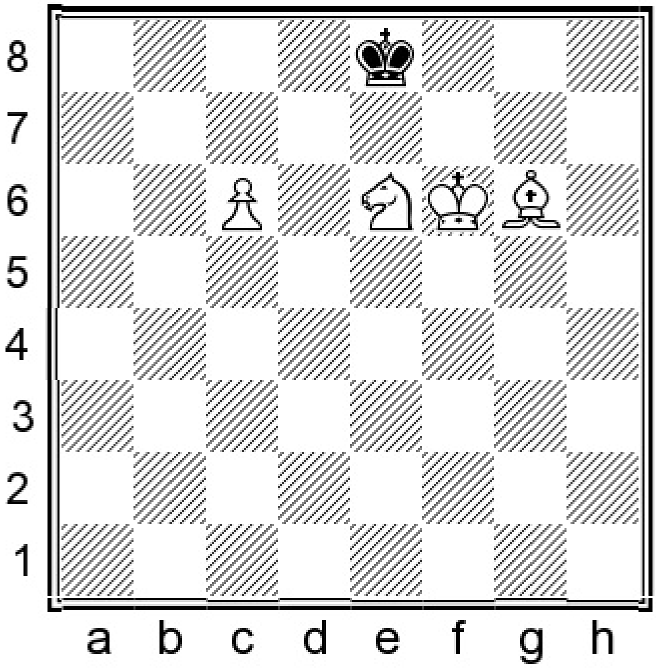
a b c d e f g h

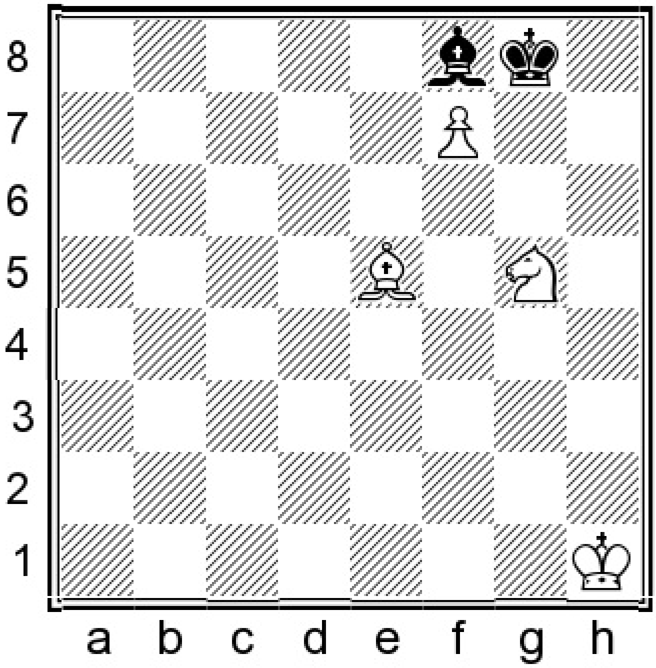


a b c d e f g h

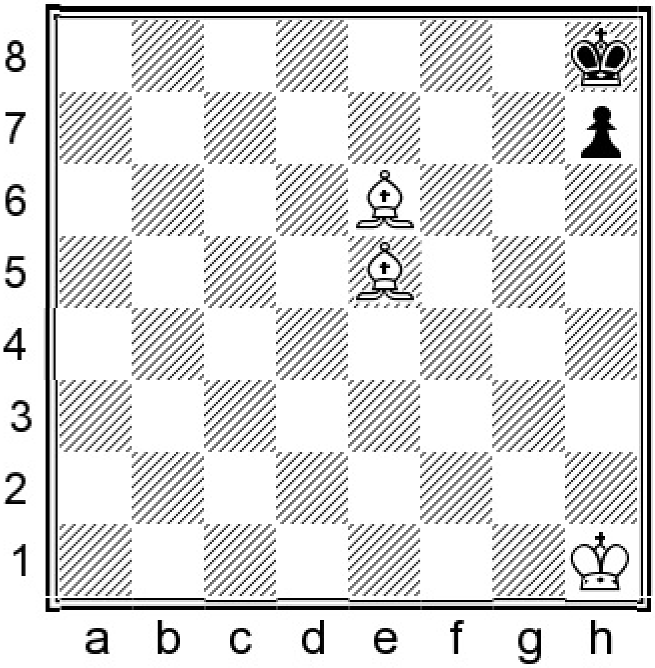

a b c d e f g h

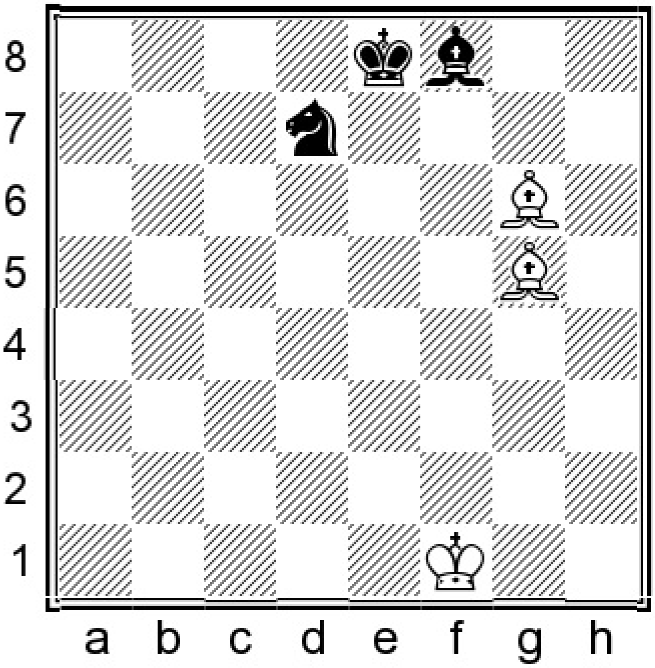

a b c d e f g h

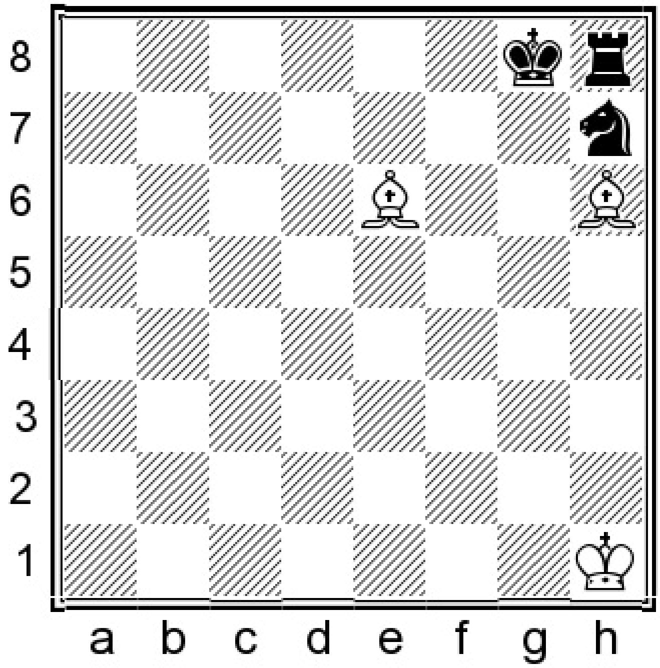

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h

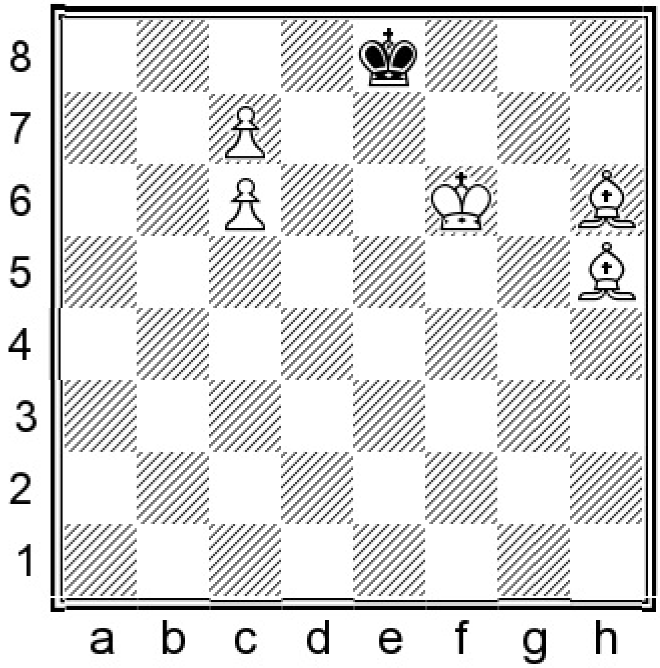
Two bishops are especially strong in the hands of the attacking side. Often, after delaying castling, the king is nailed to its initial position by their joint efforts, but he frequently has trouble in the corner as well.





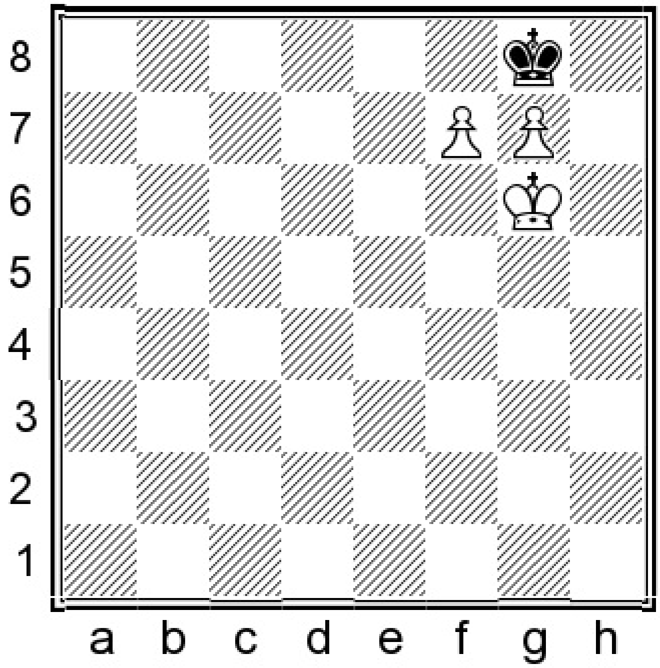


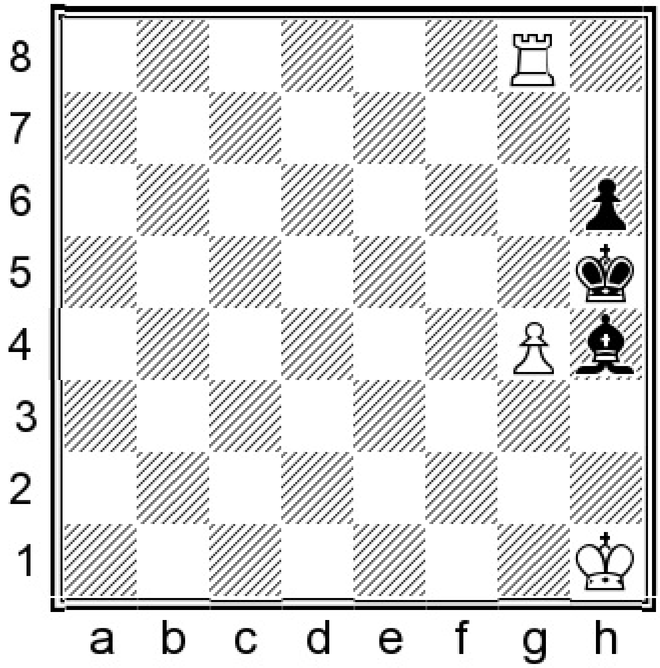
8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

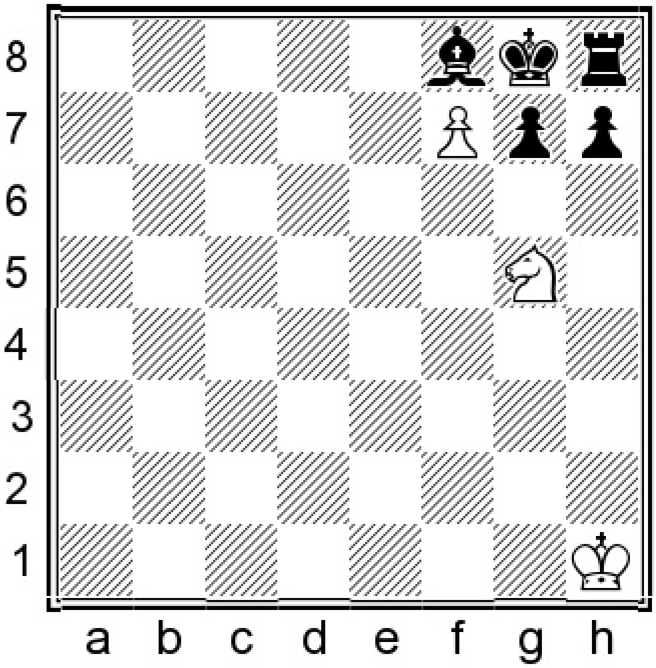


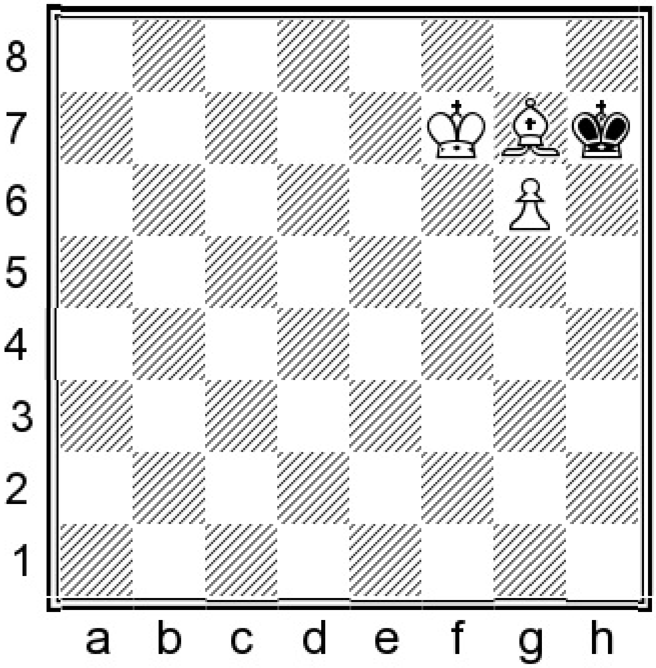
8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

The **pawn**, in order to give mate, needs the active assistance of his own and often the enemy units as well. This is because, in checking the king, it does not control a single escape square.


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h

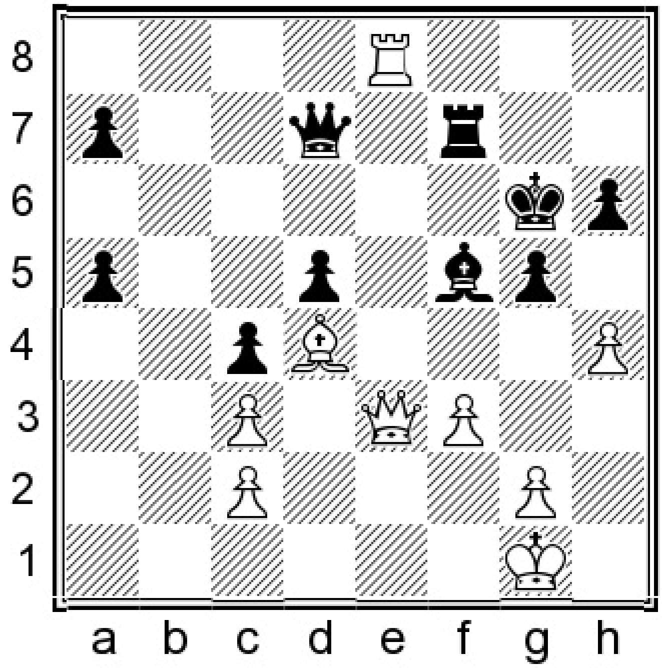

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h





The main heroes of this chapter usually succeed when the enemy king is on or near the edge of the board – either the rank or file. The exception is the pawn, as it can often catch the king in the centre of the board, although here too, the main role is played by those forces which cut off the king's retreat.

Piotr Bobras 2535
Tatiana Kononenko 2387
Port Erin 2013 (4)



White to play

41.♖g8+ ♔h7

41...♔h5 42.♖xg5+ ♔xh4 43.♕f4+.

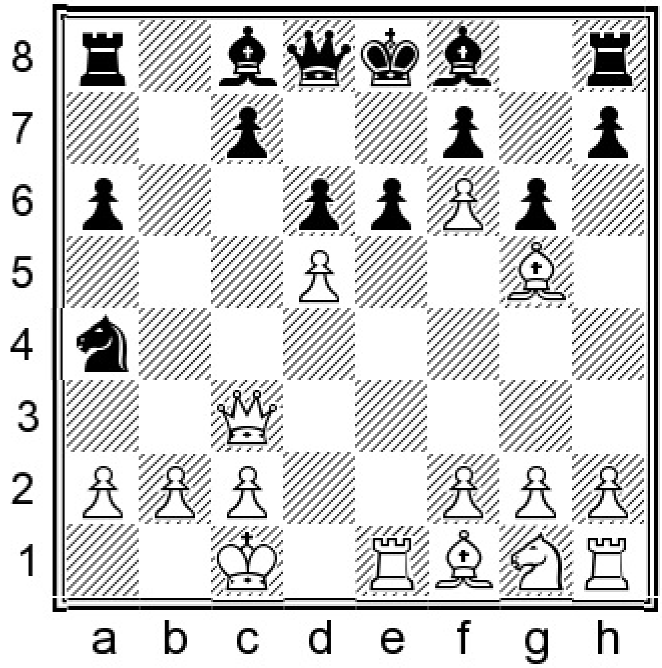
42.♖h8+ ♔g6

What has White achieved? After all, the queen does not have a single square in the king's field. But...

43.♕xg5+!

And Black resigned: 43...hxg5 44.h5# – an elegant mating position, in which White is a whole queen down.

Igor Kurnosov 2577
Marat Dzhumaev 2527
Tashkent 2008 (8)



White to play

A painfully familiar picture: Black is behind in development and his opponent finds an elegant decision, where the main role is played by the smallest unit, the brave footsoldiers.

12.♕c6+! ♗d7 13.♖xe6+! fxe6

13...♗e7 14.♖xe7+ ♕xe7 15.♕xa8+.

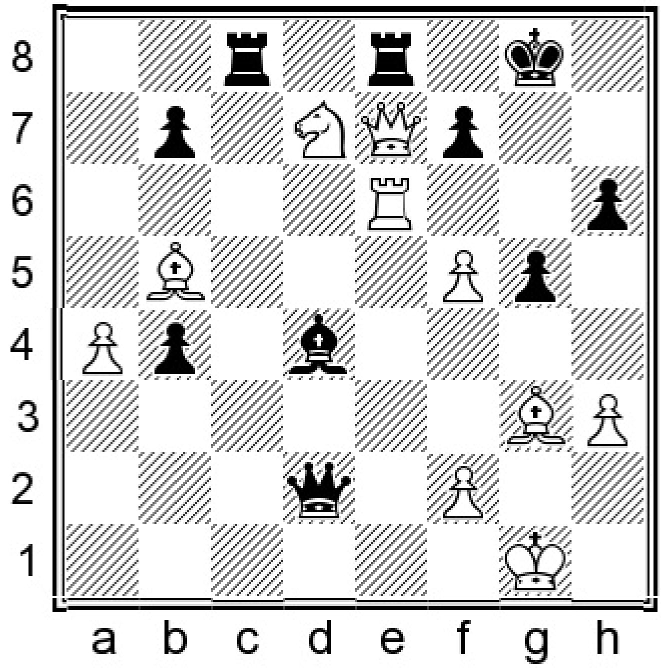
14.dxe6!!

White does not hesitate to sacrifice even the queen: he threatens mate in one (14...♗xc6 15.f7#).

14...♗g7 15.exd7+

Black resigned: huge material losses are inevitable.

Djurabek Khamrakulov 2548
Saidali Iuldachev 2501
Tashkent ch-UZB 2008 (4)



White to play

White has a material advantage, and would seem to be winning after the prosaic 28.♕xe8+. However, in this case, he would have to reckon with the passed pawn on b4 and analysis shows that White can count only on perpetual check. But he has a combinative path to victory, which was demonstrated in the game:

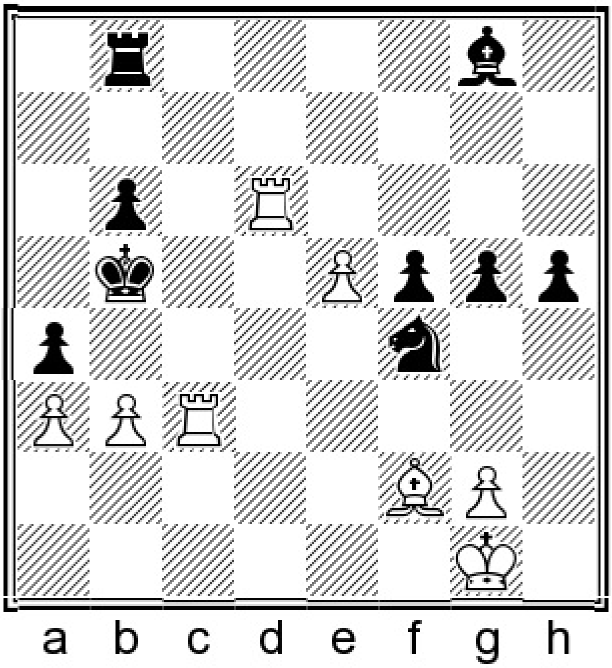
28.♖g6+! fxg6 29.♘f6+!

Enticing the bishop to the fatal square.

29...♗xf6 30.♗c4+

Black resigned, seeing the mate after 30...♔h8 31.♕xf6+ ♔h7 32.fxg6. And if instead 30...♖xc4 White wins both rooks and a bishop by force – 31.♕xe8+ ♔g7 32.♕xg6+ ♔f8 33.♕xf6+ ♔e8 34.♕e6+ and 35.♕xc4, keeping an extra piece.

Ian Nepomniachtchi 2706
Krishnan Sasikiran 2681
Khanty-Mansiysk ol 2010 (4)



White to play

The black king is not yet on the edge, but White is able to force it to make the fatal step.

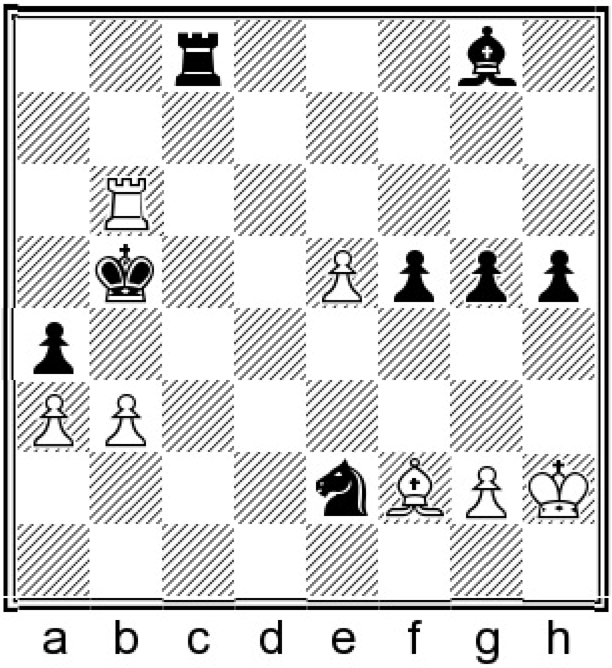
52.♖c8! ♘e2+

A so-called ‘spite check’.

53.♔h2 ♖xc8

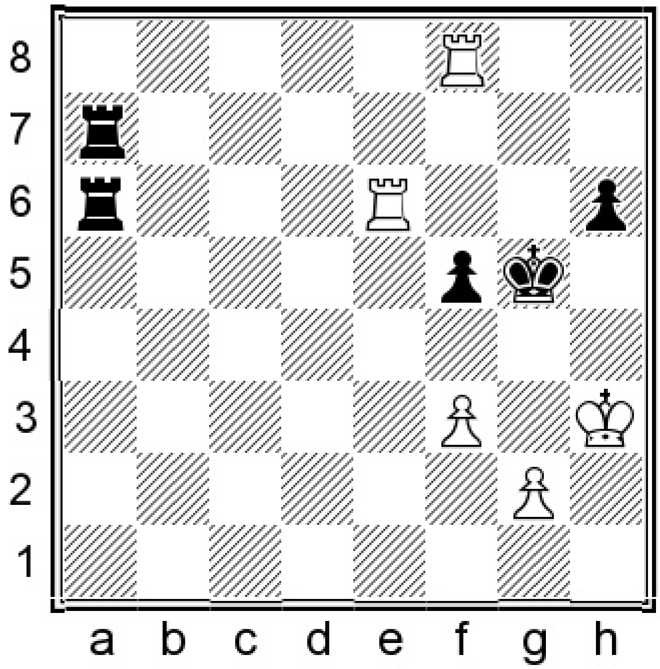
The Greek Gift must be accepted, else Black faces an endgame a rook down (53...♖b7 54.♖xg8).

54.♖xb6+



Black resigned: 54...♔a5 55.b4#.

Pia Cramling 2516
Irina Krush 2470
Khanty-Mansiysk Wch W playoff rapid 2012 (3)



White to play

In this seemingly quiet rook ending, White has an unexpected and beautiful combinative solution:

68.f4+!!

White gives up one of his two pawns to take control of the f4-square.

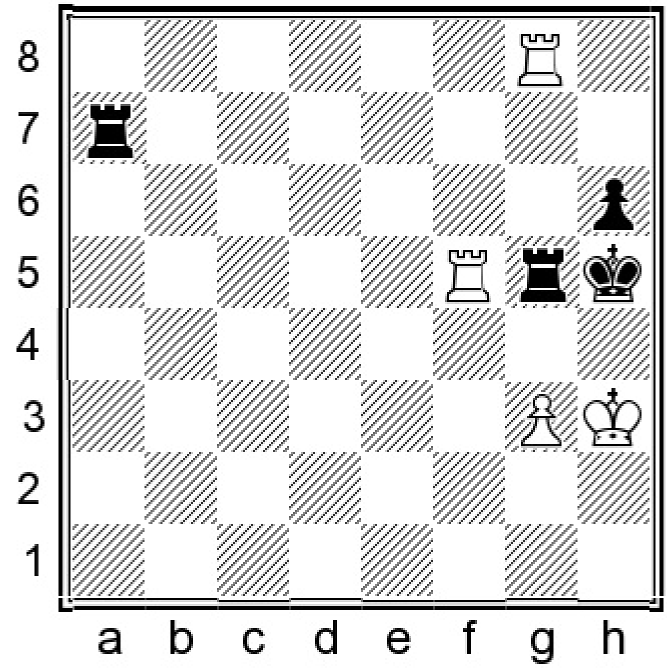
68...♔xf4 69.g3+ ♔g5

69...♔f3 70.♖xf5#.

70.♖g8+ ♔h5 71.♖e5

Threatening 72.g4#.

71...♖g6 72.♖xf5+ ♖g5

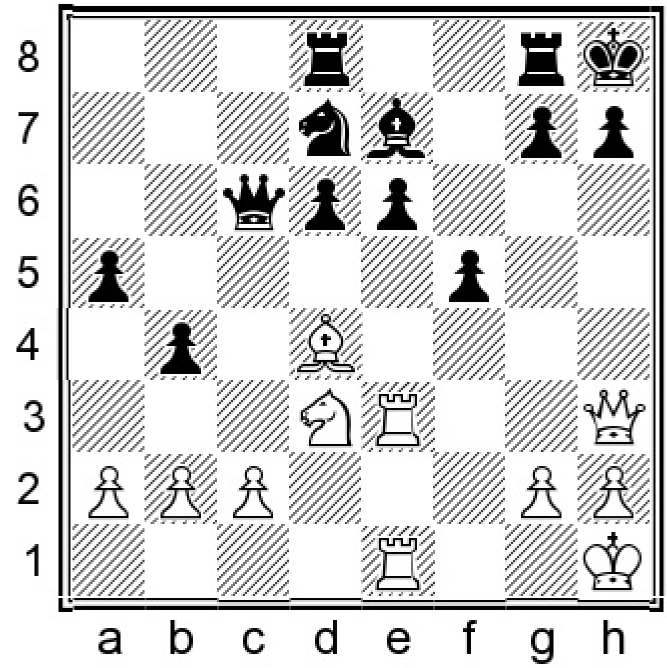


And now, after all:

73.g4#

However, Pia did not see this possibility and eventually even lost.

Javier Moreno Carnero 2509
Loek van Wely 2675
Villarrobledo rapid 2006 (5)



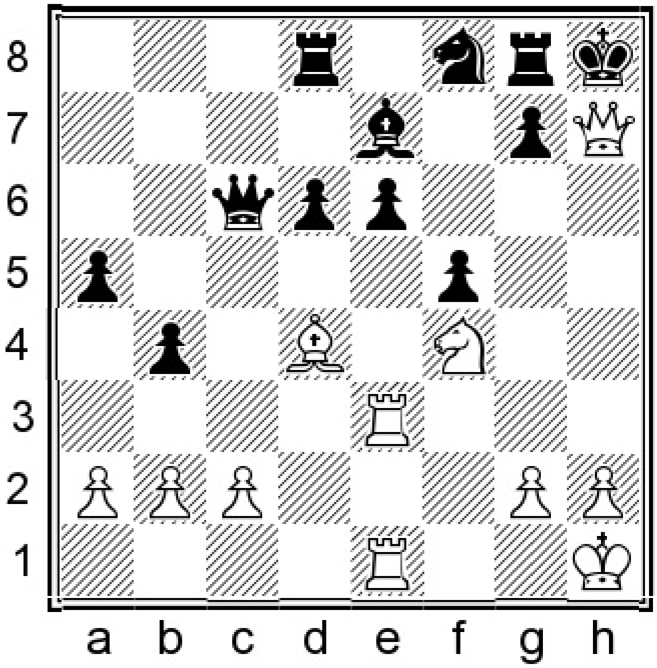
White to play

Despite a two-pawn deficit, White's position looks threatening: almost all of his pieces are pointing at the enemy king. It is not surprising that there is a decisive combination:

26.♘f4! ♘f8

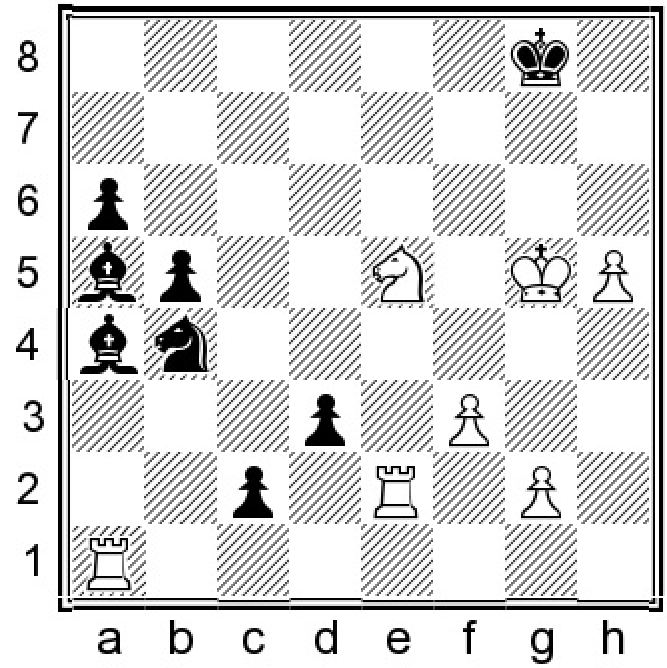
It may seem as though with a single move, Black has managed to defend everything: the squares g6 and h7 and even the pawn on e6 (if it is taken, one of the white attacking pieces is exchanged off, always a good thing for the defender). But the blow lands on the most fortified point...

27.♕xh7+!!



Black resigned. Either capture allows mate in one: 27...♔xh7 28.♖h3# or 27...♘xh7 28.♘g6#.

Viktor Kortchnoi 2543
Joseph Gallagher 2496
Switzerland tt 2011 (5)



White to play

In this position of an unusual material balance, the great veteran managed to find the only winning move.

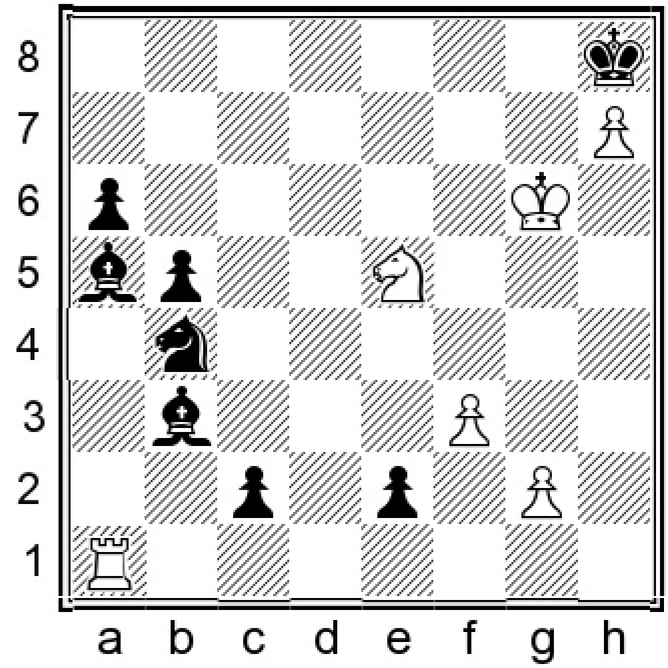
58.♔g6!!

Only a draw results from 58.h6 ♔h7! (58...dxe2 59.♔g6+–) 59.♘xd3 ♘xd3 60.♖e7+.

58.♔g6!! dxe2

After 58...♘d5 59.♘xd3, Black loses his main trump and can resign with a clear conscience.

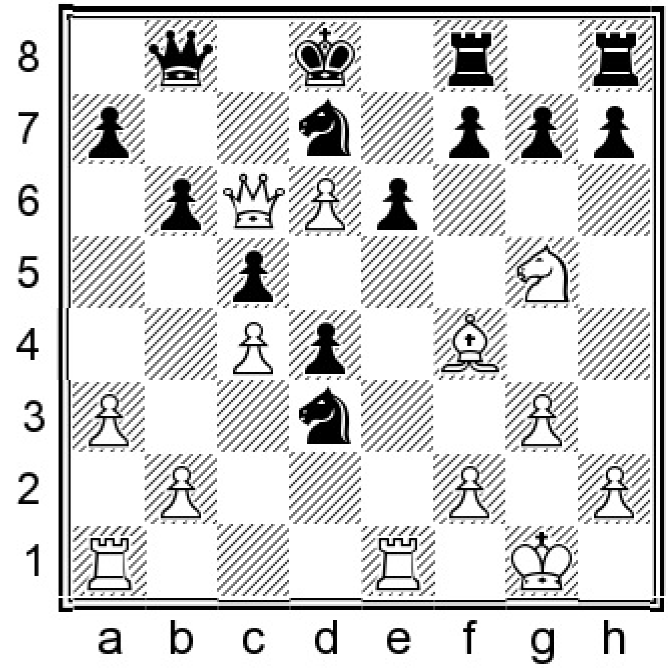
59.h6 ♗b3 60.h7+ ♔h8


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h

61.♔h6

Black resigned: mate on g6 or f7 is unavoidable.

Dagur Arngrimsson 2381
Petar Hristov 1965
Albena 2012 (1)


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h

White to play

In the diagram position, White has all the preconditions for a successful attack: the enemy king is trapped in the centre, and his pieces are slumbering on the back rank and cannot establish any communication.

20.♖xe6! ♕c8

Possibly Black had calculated the following variations:

A) 20...♘xf4 21.gxf4 fxe6 22.♘xe6+ ♔e8 23.♖e1 ♖f7 24.♘xc5+ ♔d8 25.♘b7+; and

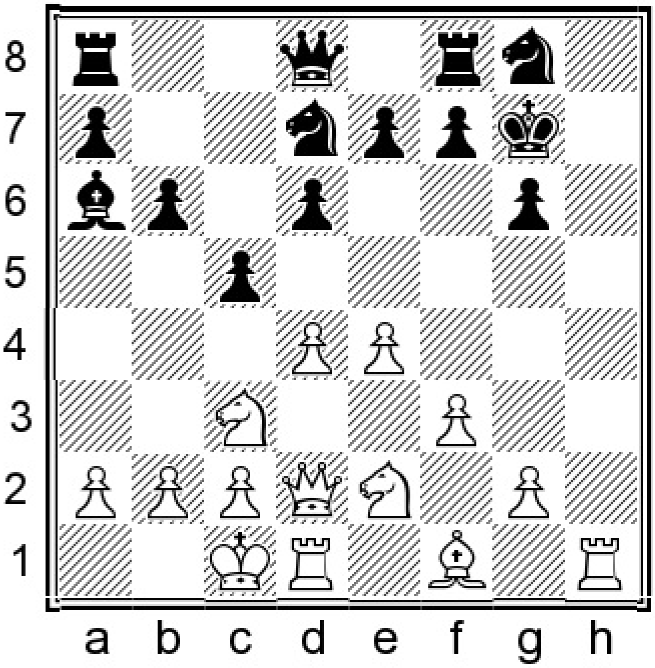
B) 20...fxe6 21.♘xe6+ ♔e8 22.♘xg7+ ♔f7 (22...♔d8 23.♗g5+) 23.♕xd7+ ♔g8 24.♘h5! ♖f7 25.♕g4+ ♔f8 26.♗h6+ ♔e8 27.♕e6+ ♔d8 28.♗g5+.

And, perhaps, he took his opponent at his word. However, the text also does not avoid an immediate crush:

21.♖e8+!

Black resigned: 21...♖xe8 22.♘xf7#.

Robin van Kampen 2592
Tome Arizanov 2099
Skopje 2013 (1)



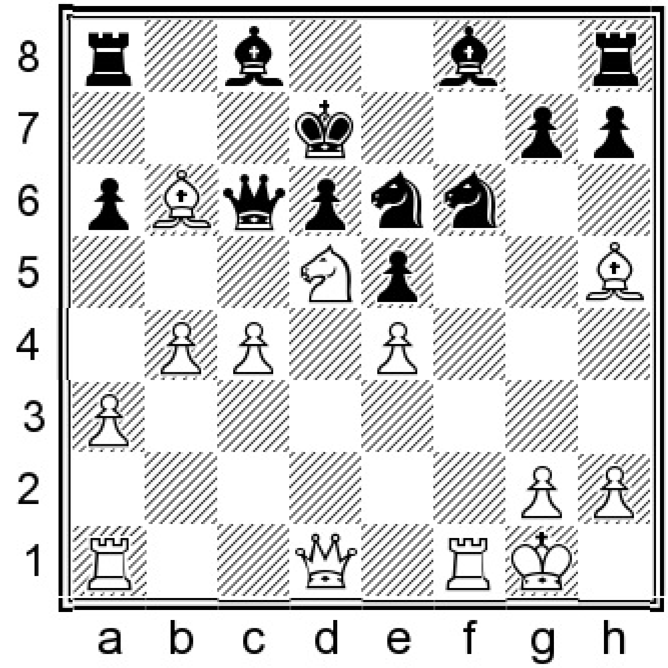
White to play

The open h-file and undefended ♗a6 left White wondering if there were not a combinative solution?

14.♘g3! ♗xf1 15.♘f5+!

Black resigned in view of 15...gxf5 16.♕g5# or 15...♔f6 16.♘d5+ ♔e6 17.♘g7#.

Julian Radulski 2502
Jan Bernasek 2428
Brno Skanska 2005 (6)



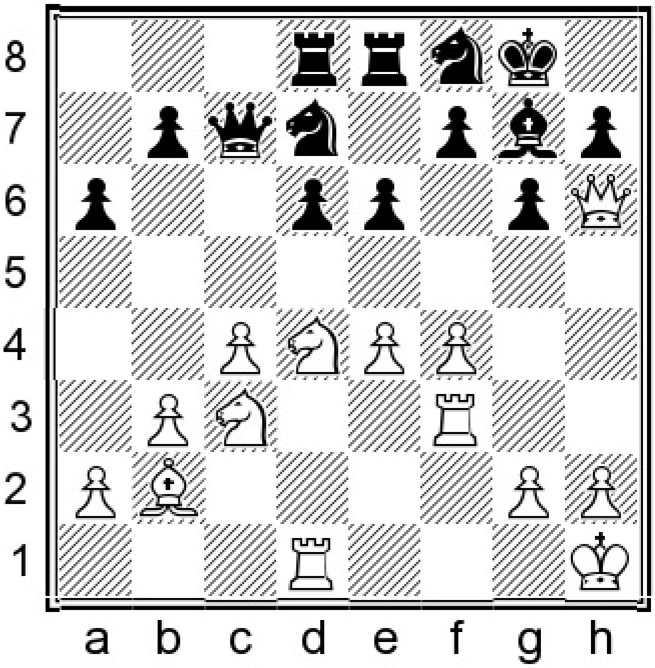
White to play

In a position with easily recognizable Sicilian characteristics, White has already sacrificed a piece and now offers an exchange and a bishop in succession. But do not be surprised: the black pieces so lack harmony that they can only look on in desperation as the slaughter unfolds:

19.♖xf6! gxf6 20.♗e8+! ♔xe8 21.♕h5+

Black resigned because of 21...♔d7 22.♕f7+ ♗e7 23.♘xf6#.

Rogelio Jr Antonio 2513
Dao Thien Hai 2601
Kuala Lumpur 2005 (11)



White to play

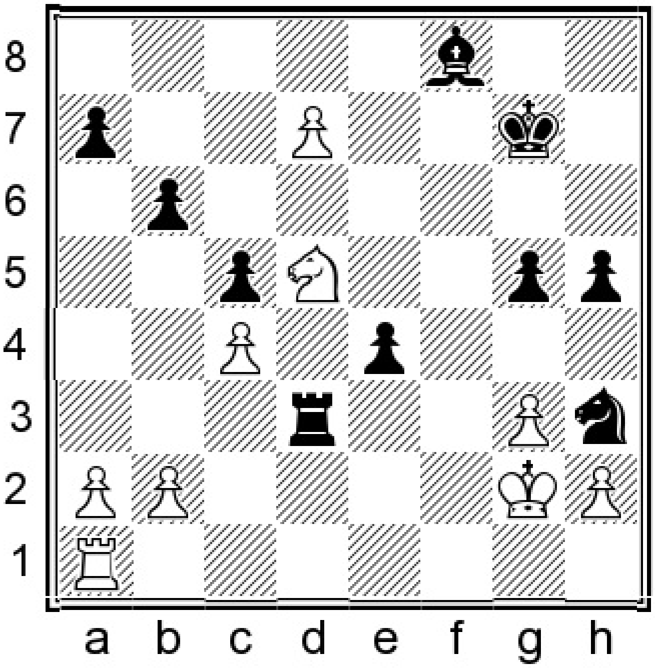
19.♕xg7+!!

You will agree that this is perhaps not the first move that comes to mind, since, after all, two pieces stand between the ♗b2 and the black king. But the Filipino GM sees that one of these can jump to attack the queen with tempo.

19...♔xg7 20.♘d5

Black resigned, since 20...exd5 21.♘f5+ ♔g8 22.♘h6# is mate, whilst after 20...e5 21.♘xc7 exd4 22.♗xd4+ White wins the exchange, obtaining an absolutely winning position.

Evgeny Vorobiov 2584
Aleksandr Shimanov 2640
Moscow rapid 2013 (7)



Black to play

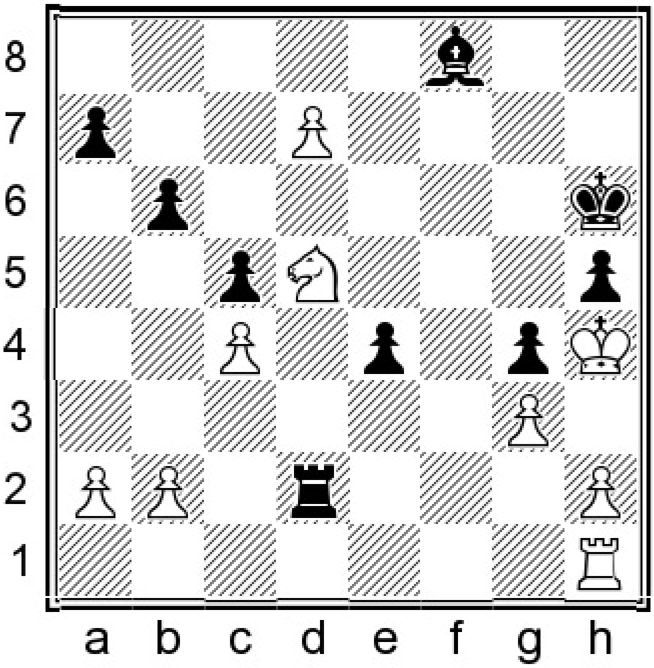
At first sight, Black has only one option: 36...♗e7 37.♔xh3 ♗d8 and try to realize the extra pawn, although the computer is cool towards this idea. But Black found a surprising attacking possibility...

36...♖d2+! 37.♔xh3?

Evidently a time-trouble error, which allows Black to realize his main idea. Much more tenacious was 37.♔f1 ♗e7 38.♘xe7 ♖xd7 39.♘d5, although after 39...♖f7+ 40.♔g2 g4 41.♖f1 ♖f3 the healthy extra pawn gives Black a large advantage.

37...g4+ 38.♔h4 ♔h6! 39.♖h1

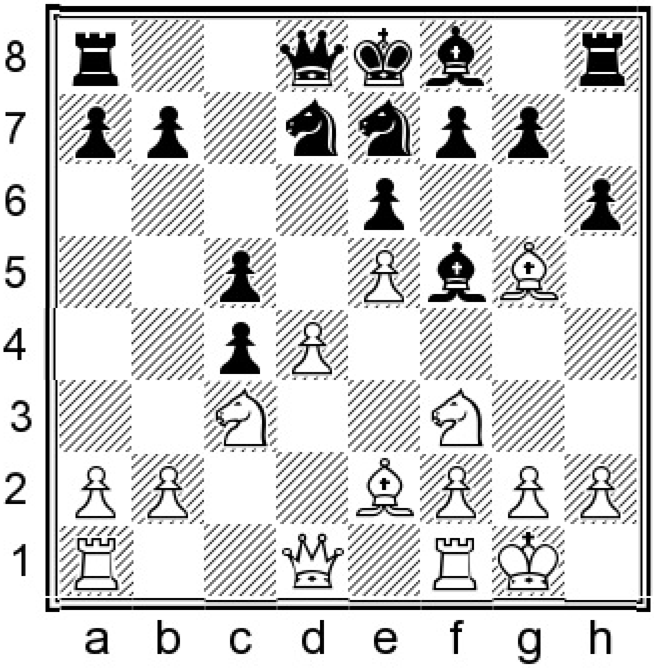
39.d8=♕ ♖xh2#.



39...♖xd5!

White resigned because of 40.cxd5 ♗e7#.

Zoran Runic 2398
Damir Bosnjak 2314
Sarajevo 2010 (6)



White to play

The game has not yet left the opening stage. Black has just naively played 9...h6?, not doubting that White will routinely move the bishop.

10.♘b5!

With the ♘e7 pinned, White creates a threat of smothered mate (10...hxg5 11.♘d6#). Now any black reply leads to serious material losses.

10...♕b6 11.♘d6+ ♔d8 12.dxc5

A useful intermediate move, although after the simple 12.♘xf7+ White has a decisive advantage.

12...♕xb2 13.♗xe7+ ♗xe7

Or 13...♔xe7 14.♘xf5+ exf5 15.♖b1 ♕xa2 16.♖xb7 ♖d8 17.c6.

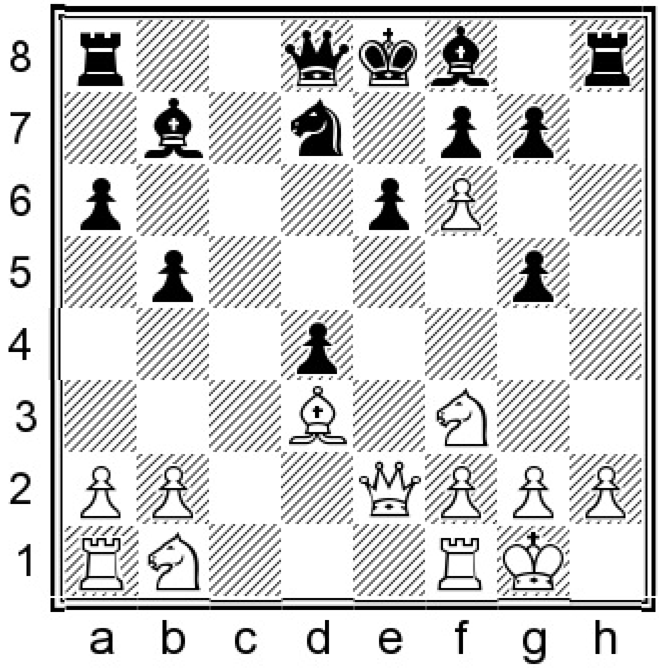
14.♘xf5 exf5 15.♖b1

Black resigned. If the queen retreats, 16.♖xb7 decides, as Black’s position collapses.

Show in Text Mode

Exercises

122

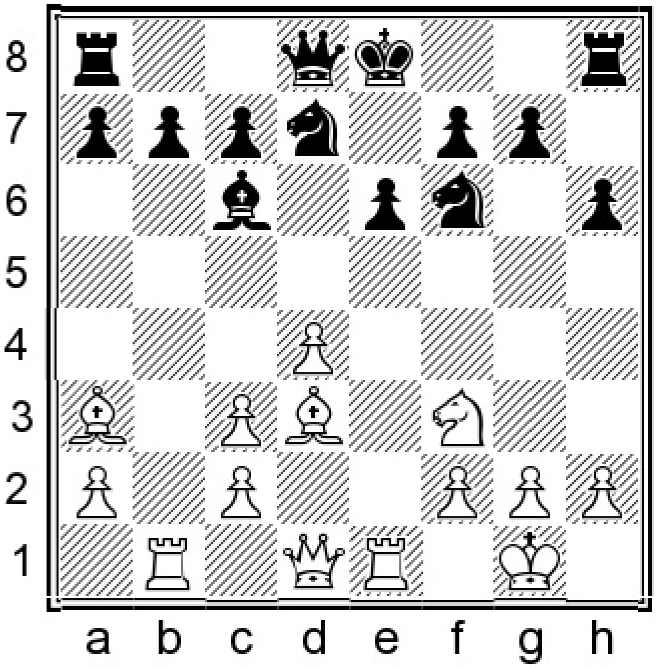


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

122 **14.♕xe6+!** 1-0 Tunik-J.Geller, Togliatti 2001; 14...fxe6 15.♗g6#.

123

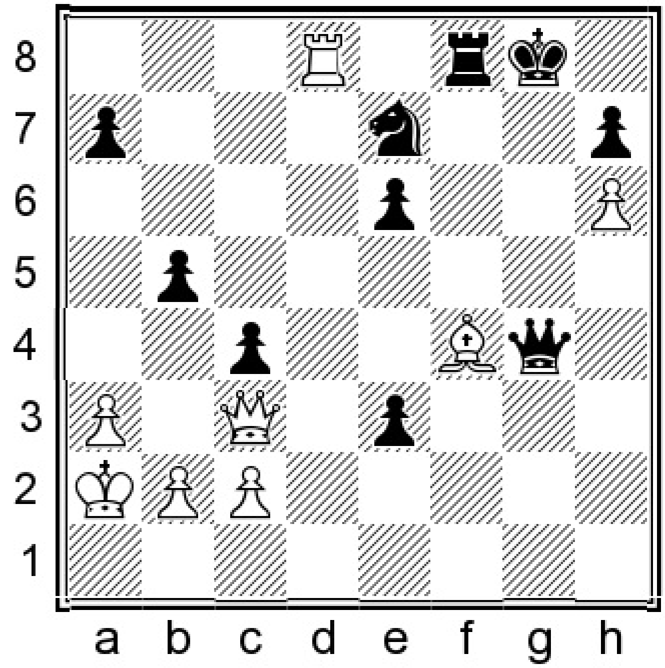


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

123 **12.♖xe6+! fxe6 13.♗g6#** Kornev-Soloviov, Tula 2002.

124

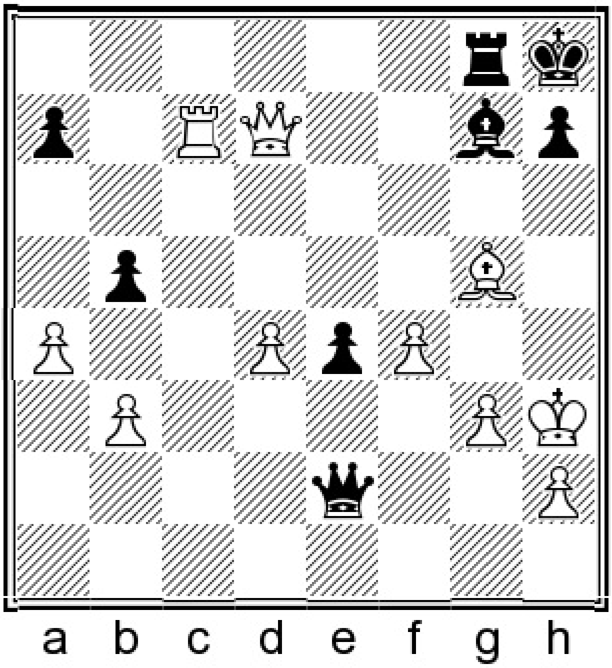

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h

White to play

Show/Hide Solution

124 **28.♕h8+!!** Morozevich-Bologan, Russia tt 2004; Black resigned because of 28...♔xh8 29.♖xf8+ ♘g8 30.♗e5+.

125

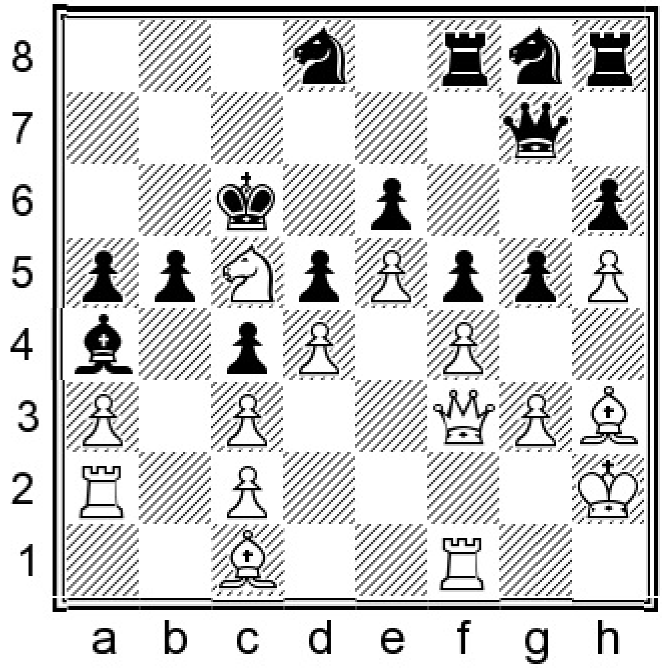

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

White to play

Show/Hide Solution

125 **36.♕xg7+!** 1-0 B.Socko-Khmelniker, Pardubice 2004; the end is easy to calculate: 36...♖xg7 37.♖c8+ ♖g8 38.♗f6#.

126

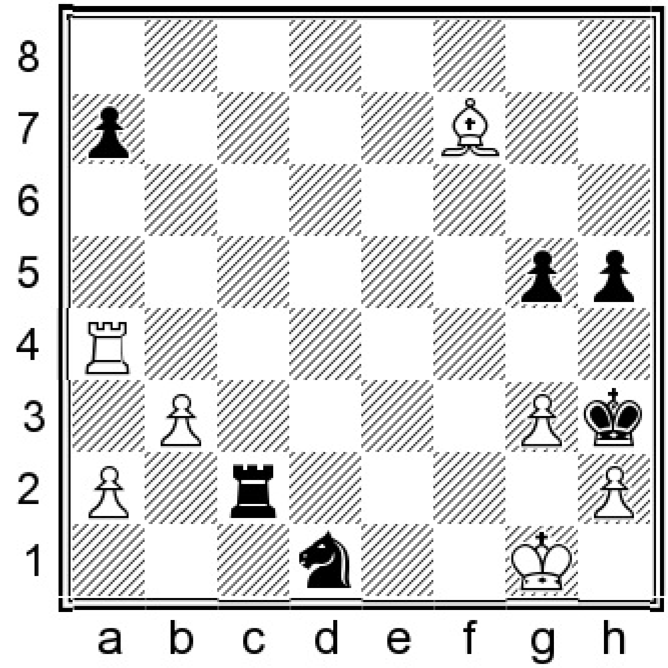

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h

White to play

Show/Hide Solution

126 **27.♘xe6!** 1-0 Firman-Gdanski, Capelle-la-Grande 2006; if 27...♘xe6 (what else?), then 28.♕xd5+! ♔xd5 29.♗g2#.

127

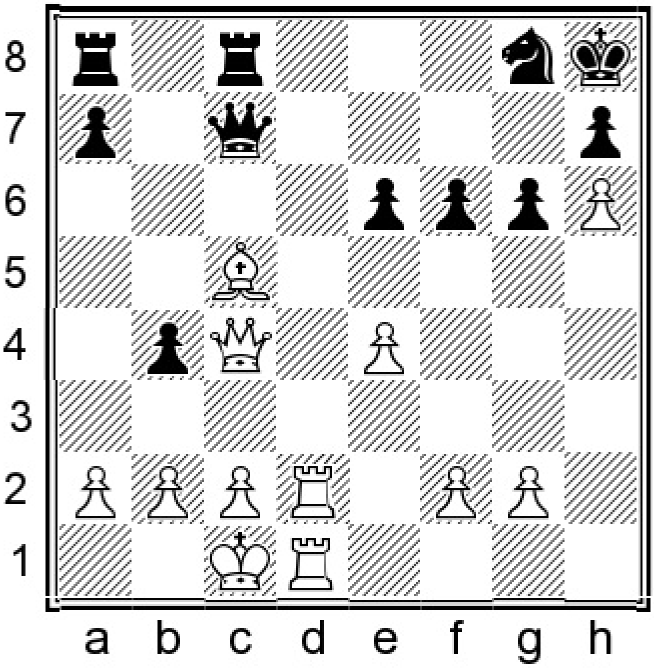


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

127 **43.♖h4+!** 1-0 Goloshchapov-Deviatkin, Moscow 2004; 43...gxh4 44.♗e6#.

128

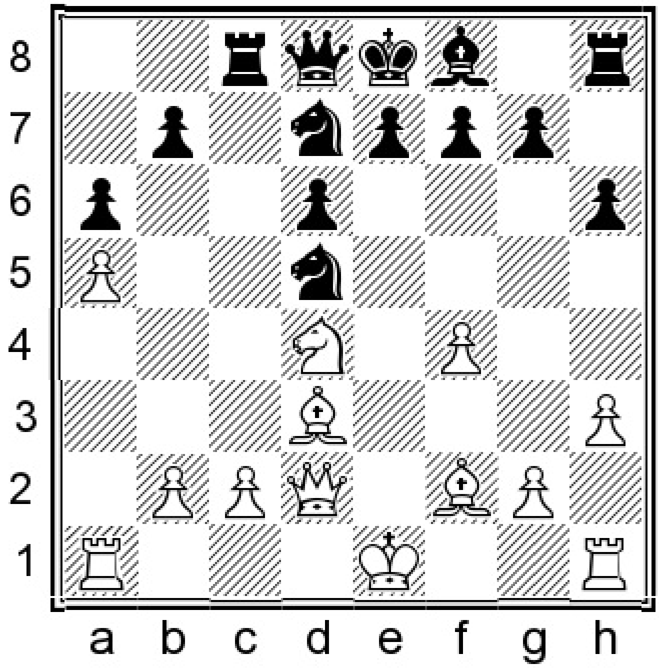


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

128 **25.♗f8! ♕xc4 26.♗g7#** D.Mastrovasilis-Short, Porto Carras Ech-tt 2011.

129

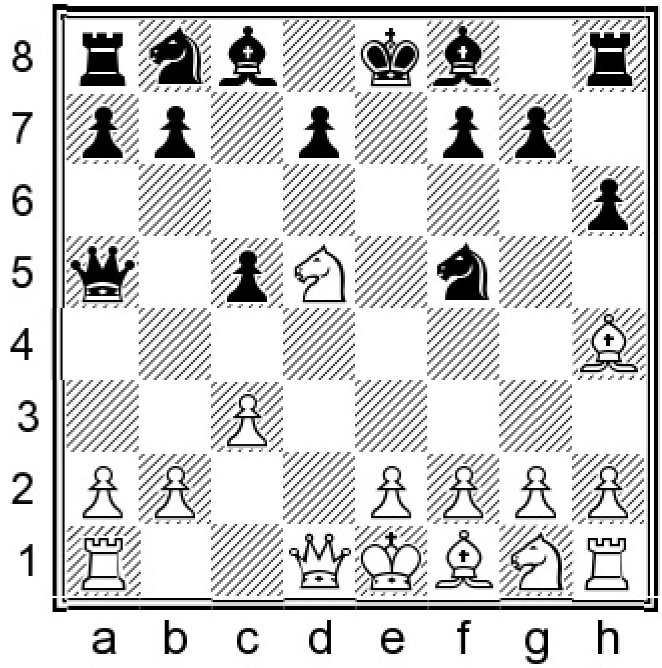

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h

White to play

Show/Hide Solution

129 **21.♘e6!** 1-0 Johansen-P.H.Nielsen, Helsingor 2012; the queen has no retreat and on 21...fxe6 it is mate after 22.♗g6.

130

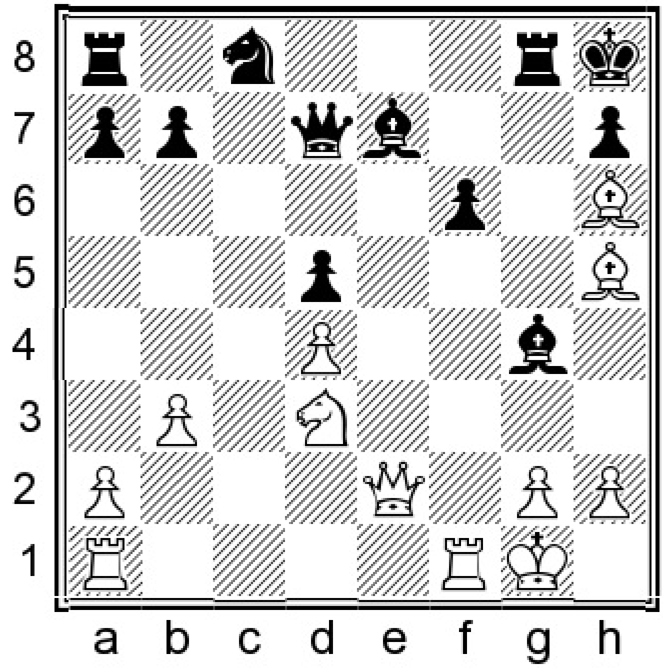


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

130 **8.♕a4!! ♕xa4** Nothing would have been changed by 8...♘c6 9.♕xa5. **9.♘c7#** Yermolinsky-E.Tate, USA 2001.

131

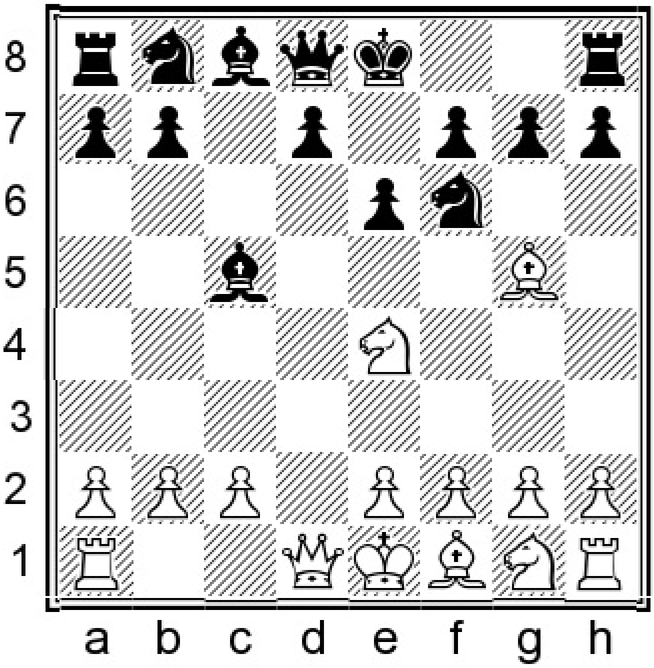


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

131 **23.♘e5!** 1-0 Fernando-Giaccio, Santa Clara 2005; he cannot play either 23...fxe5 24.♕xe5+, or 23...♗xe2 24.♘f7#, whilst 23...♗xh5 24.♕xh5 only delays defeat by one move.

132

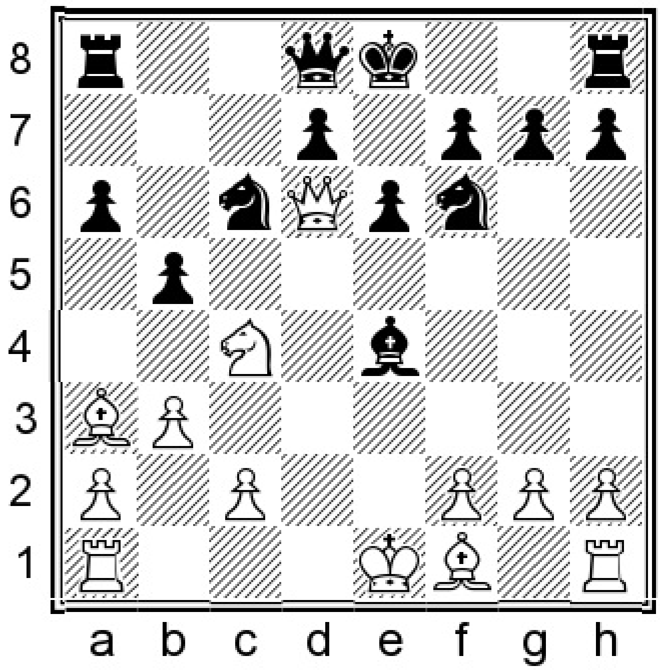


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

132 **5...♘xe4!** 0-1 Hoang Thanh Trang-Franchini, Budapest 2005; 6.♗xd8 ♗xf2#.

133

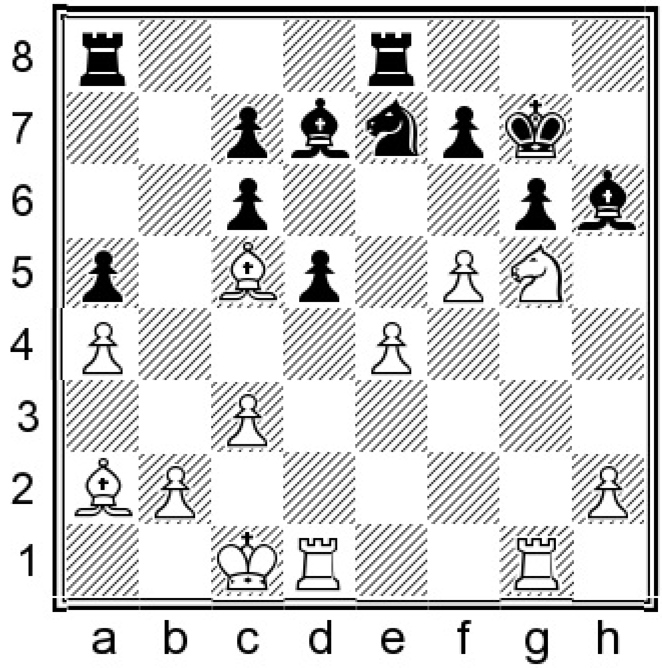

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h

White to play

Show/Hide Solution

133 **12.♕f8+!** Kotrotsos-Stiri, Heraklio 2005; Black resigned, because of the forced 12...♖xf8 13.♘d6+ ♔e7 14.♘f5+ ♔e8 15.♘xg7#.

134

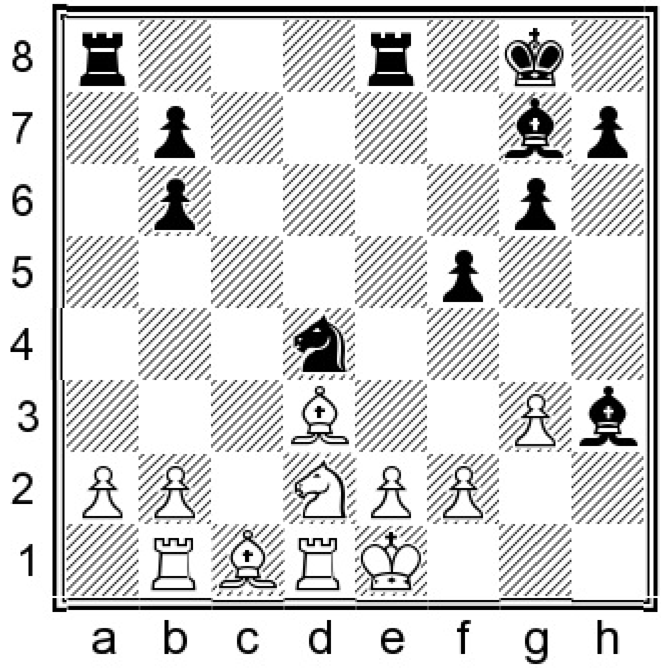

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h

White to play

Show/Hide Solution

134 **26.f6+!** 1-0 Ansell-Jonkman, England 4NCL 2005/06; 26...♔xf6 27.♗d4#.

135

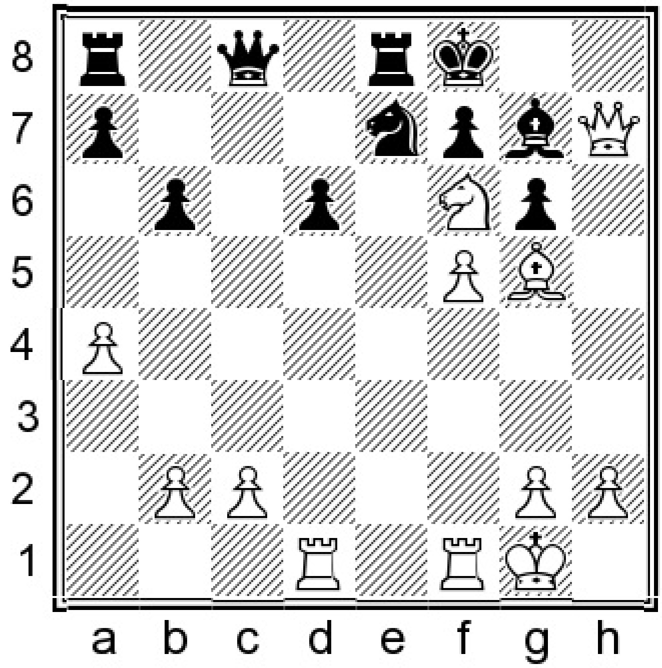


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

135 **20...♖xe2+!** Gabriel-Zhelesny, Arvier Wch sr 2006; White resigned because of 21.♗xe2 ♘c2#.

136

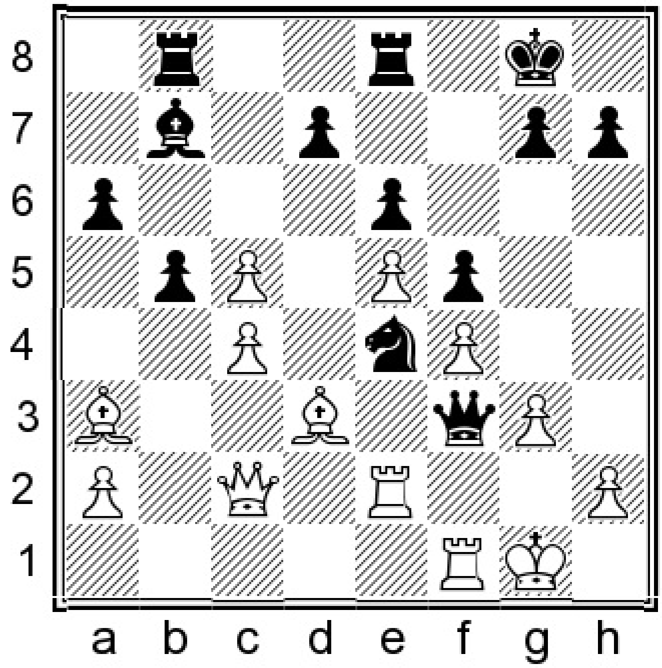


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

136 **25.♕g8+!** 1-0 Bodnaruk-Gunina, Gorodets ch-RUS W 2006; 25...♘xg8 26.♘h7#.

137


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h

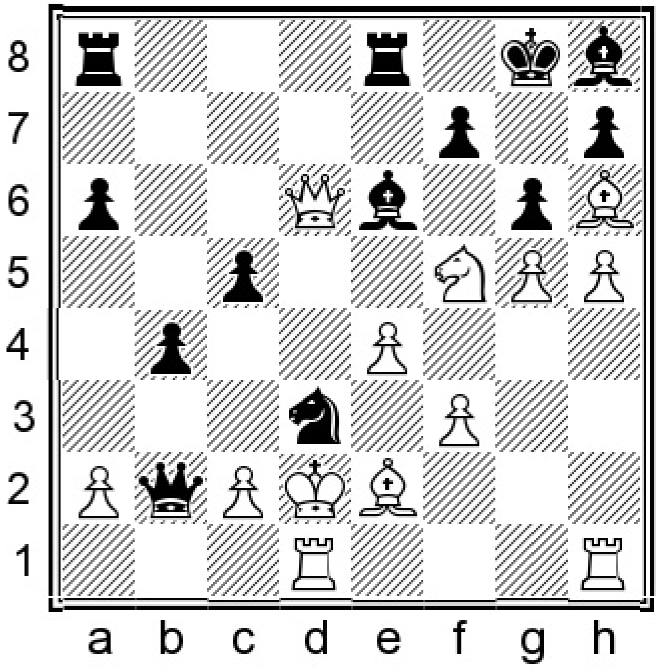
Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

137 **25...♕h1+!** 0-1 Caspi-Kaplan, Herzliya 2006; 26.♔xh1 ♘f2+ 27.♔g1 ♘h3#.

Mate is one move quicker by 25...♘f2! 26.♖exf2 (26.♗e4 ♘h3#) 26...♕h1#.

138

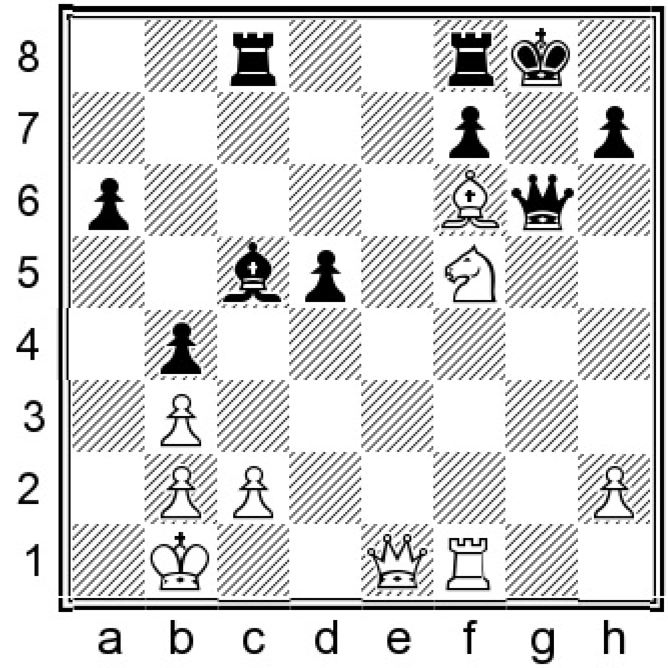

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h

White to play

Show/Hide Solution

138 **21.♕f8+! ♖xf8 22.♘e7#** Arakhamia-Grant-Robertson, Grangemouth 2001.

139

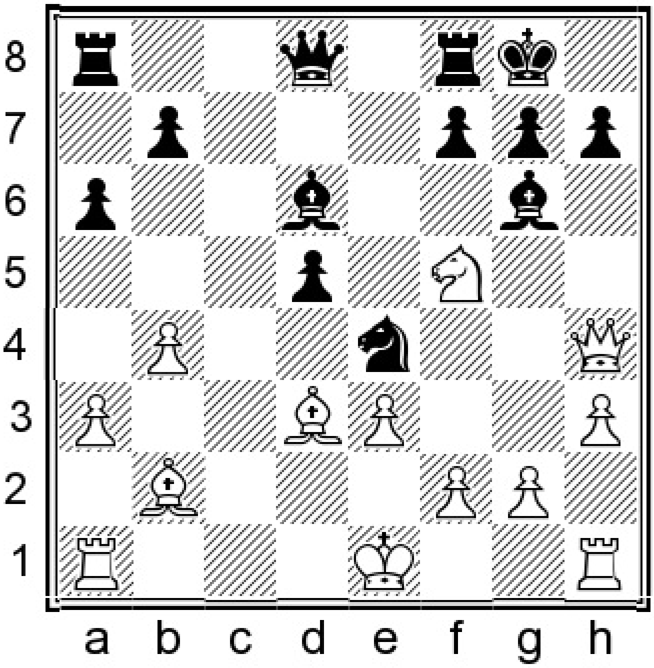


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

139 **31.♖g1!** 1-0 Stets-Oleksienko, Lviv 2009; whichever way Black takes the rook, the knight mates: 31...♗xg1 32.♘e7# or 31...♕xg1 32.♘h6#.

140

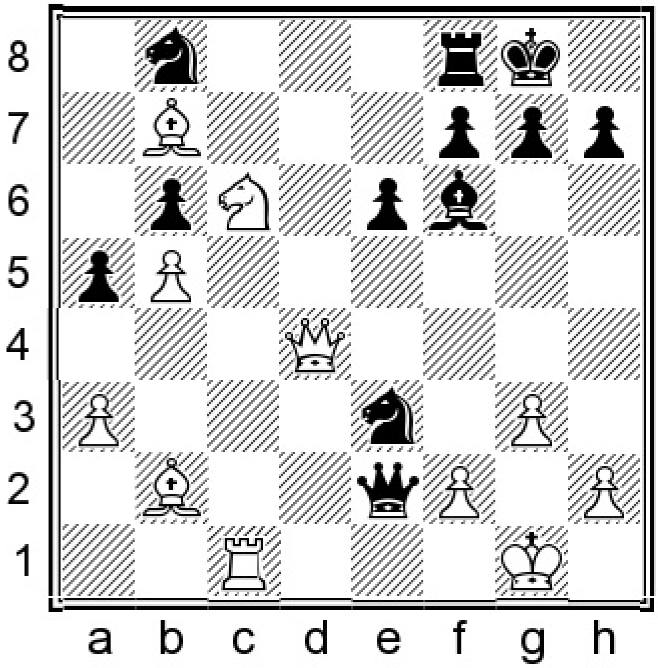


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

140 **19.♕h6!** 1-0 Semcesen-Grandelius, Kungsor ch-SWE 2009; Black is mated on g7 or h6.

141

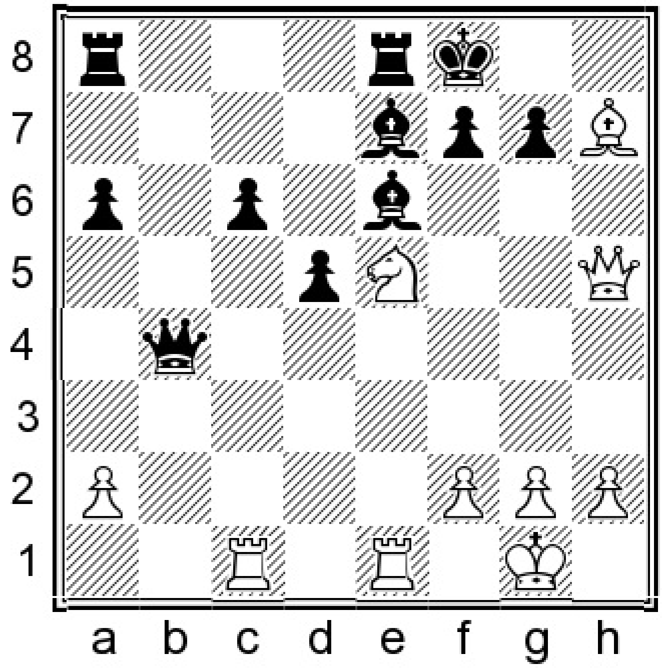

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h

White to play

Show/Hide Solution

141 **22.♘e7+! ♔h8 23.♕xf6! ♕xb2 24.♕xb2** 1-0 Kraai-Kavutskiy, San Diego 2009.

142

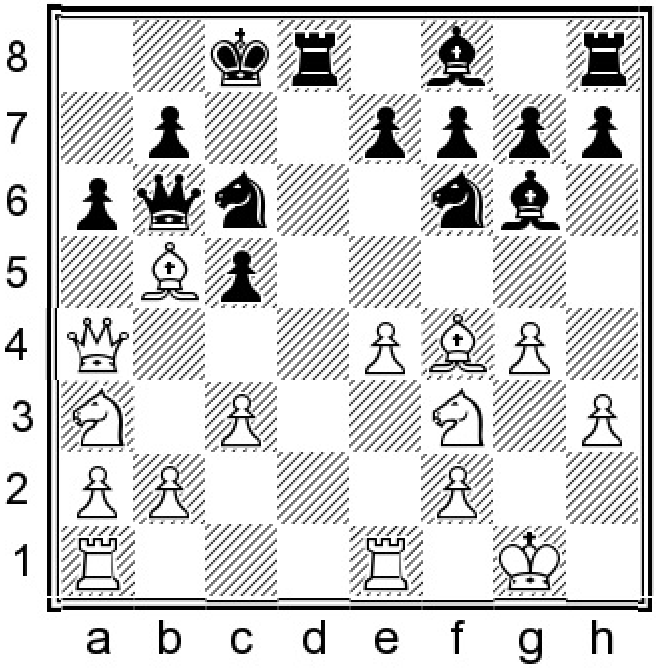


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

142 **25.♕xf7+!** 1-0 Iakymov-Vysochin, Yuzhny 2009; 25...♗xf7 26.♘d7#.

143

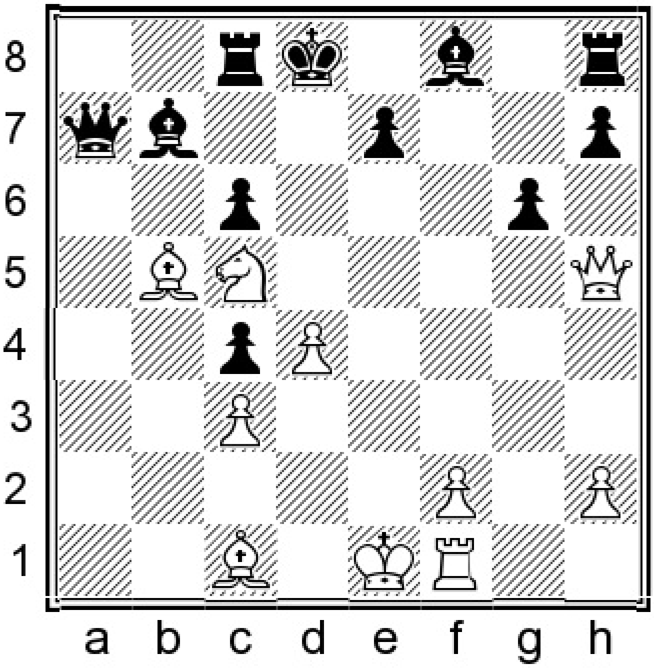


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

143 **14.♘c4!** Arngrimsson-Omarsson, Reykjavik 2010; Black resigned, in view of 14...♕xb5 (14...♕a7 15.♗xc6) 15.♕xb5 axb5 16.♘b6#.

144

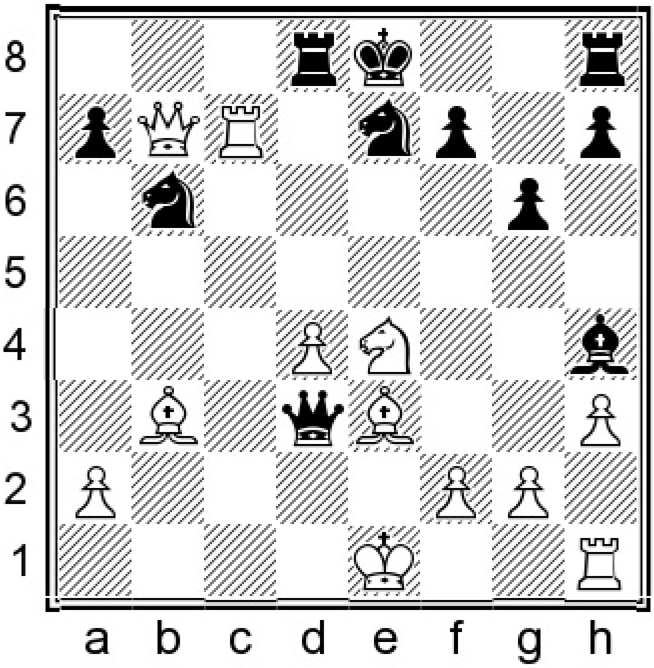


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

144 **21.♕d5+!** Rapport-Huschenbeth, Chur tt 2010; Black resigned because of 21...cxd5 22.♘e6#. And if instead 21...♔c7 22.♗f4+ e5 23.♗xe5+ ♔b6 24.♘d7+ ♔a5 25.♕xc4 or 21...♔e8 22.♕d7+ ♔f7 23.♗xc4+ ♔g7 24.♕e6 and again the black king does not survive long.

145

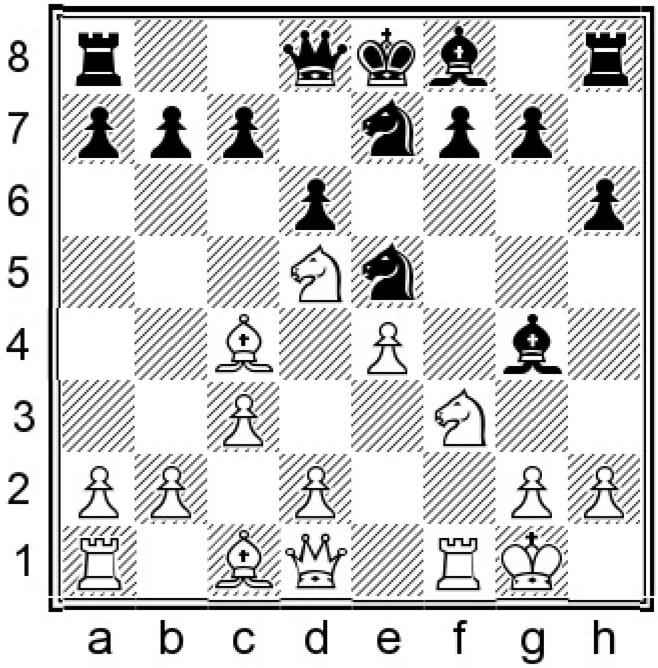


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

145 **20.♖xe7+! ♗xe7 21.♘f6+** 1-0 Vajda-Abrahamyan, Khanty-Mansiysk ol W 2010; equally bad is 21...♗xf6 22.♕xf7# and 21...♔f8 22.♗h6#.

146

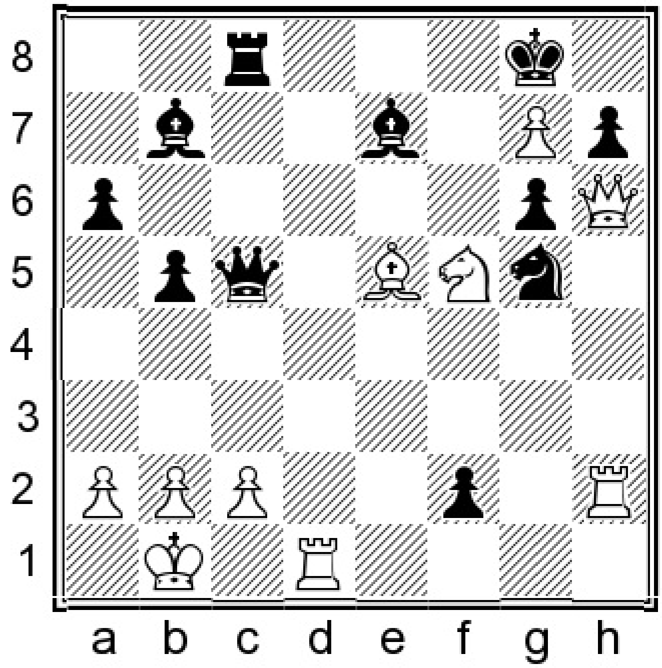


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

146 **10.♘xe5! f5** If 10...♗xd1, then 11.♘f6+ gxf6 12.♗xf7#, but the text does not change anything. **11.♘f6+** 1-0 Espinosa-Moreno, Bogota 2011.

147

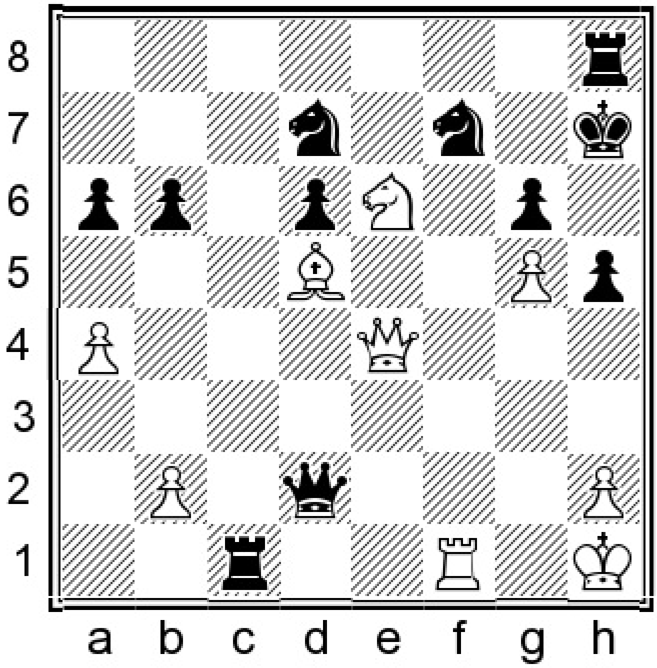


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

147 **29.♕xh7+!** 1-0 T.Kosintseva-Kosteniuk, Gaziantep Ech rapid W 2012; 29...♘xh7 30.♘h6#.

148

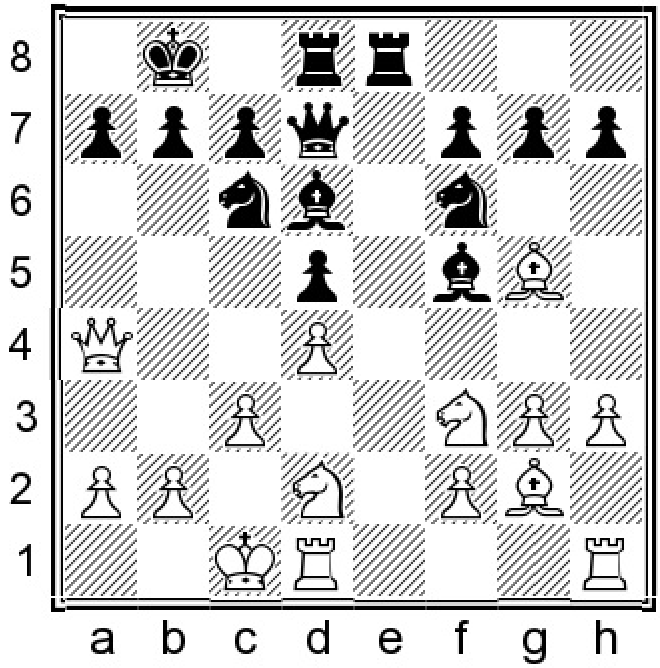


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

148 **39.♕xg6+!** Harikrishna-Van Wely, Wijk aan Zee 2013; Black resigned because of 39...♔xg6 40.♗e4#.

149

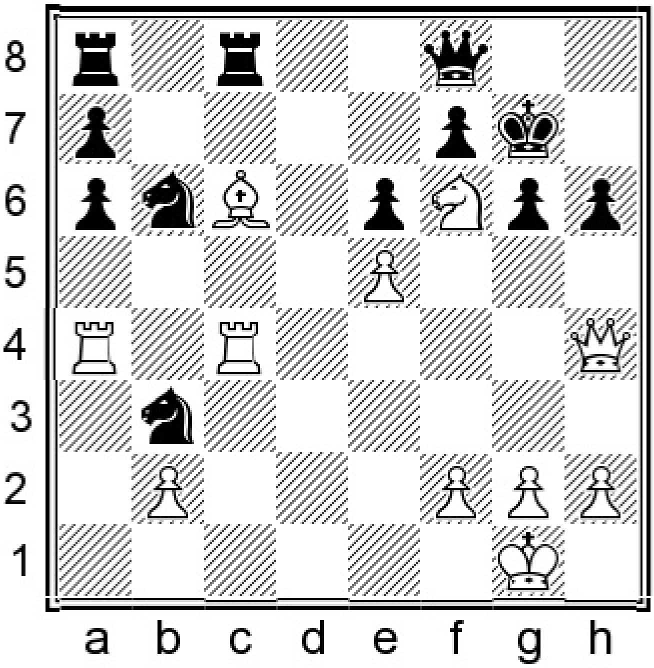


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

149 **13...♘b4!** 0-1 Dimov-A.Rudolf, Skopje 2013; if 14.♕xd7 White is mated by 14...♘xa2#, whilst otherwise she has to part with her queen: 14.♕a3 ♘d3+ or 14.♕a5 ♘d3+ 15.♔b1 b6 16.♕a6 ♘b4+.

150

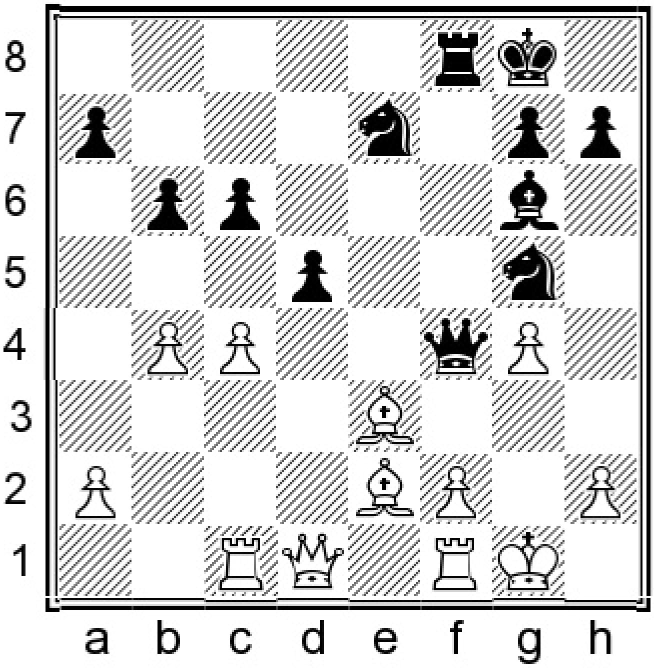

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h

White to play

Show/Hide Solution

150 **29.♕xh6+! ♔xh6 30.♖h4+ ♔g5** 30...♔g7 31.♖h7#. **31.f4+ ♔xh4 32.g3+** 1-0 Plat-Kozak, Teplice 2013; 32...♔h3 33.♗g2#.

151

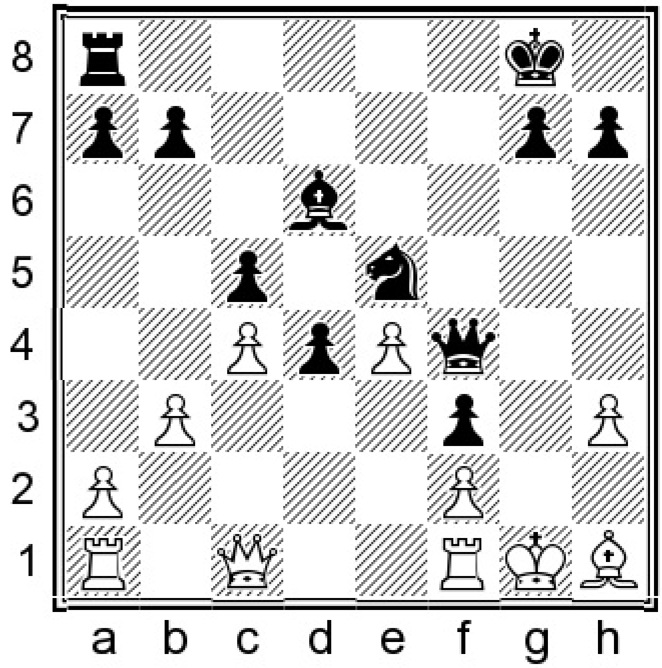


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

151 **20...♗e4!** 0-1 V.Popov-Kukhmazov, St Petersburg 2013; on 21.♖e1 White is mated by 21...♘h3+ 22.♔f1 ♕xf2+!.

152

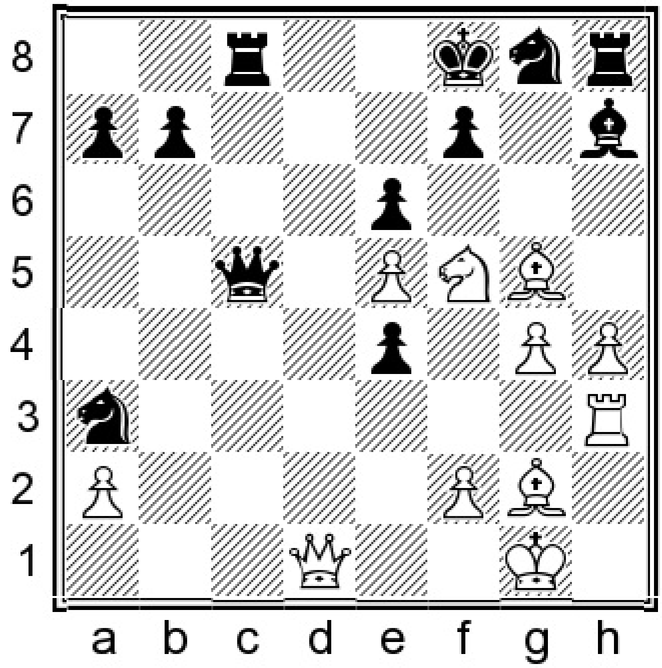


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

152 **21...♕h2+! 22.♔xh2 ♘g4+** 0-1 Plivcevic-Shadrina, Rhodes tt W 2013; 23.♔g1 ♗h2#.

153

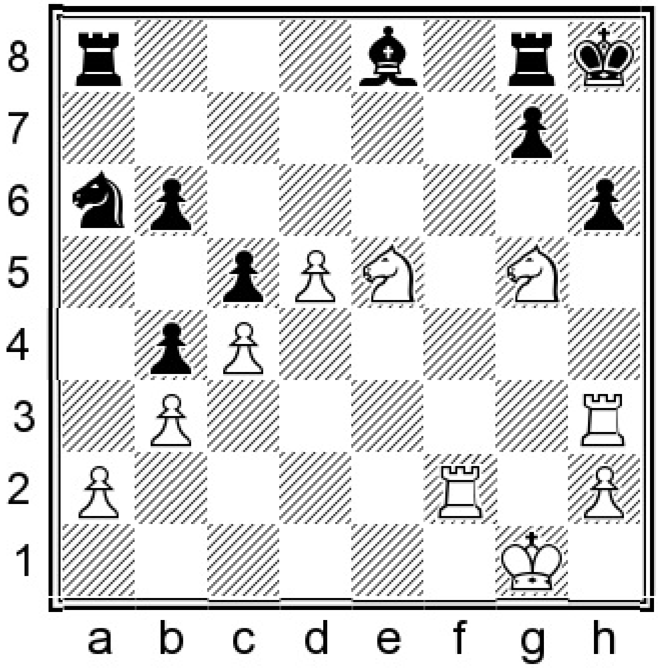


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

153 **21.♖c3! ♕xc3 22.♕d6+ ♘e7** 22...♔e8 23.♘g7#. **23.♗h6+** 1-0 Shabalov-Lenderman, Arlington 2013.

154

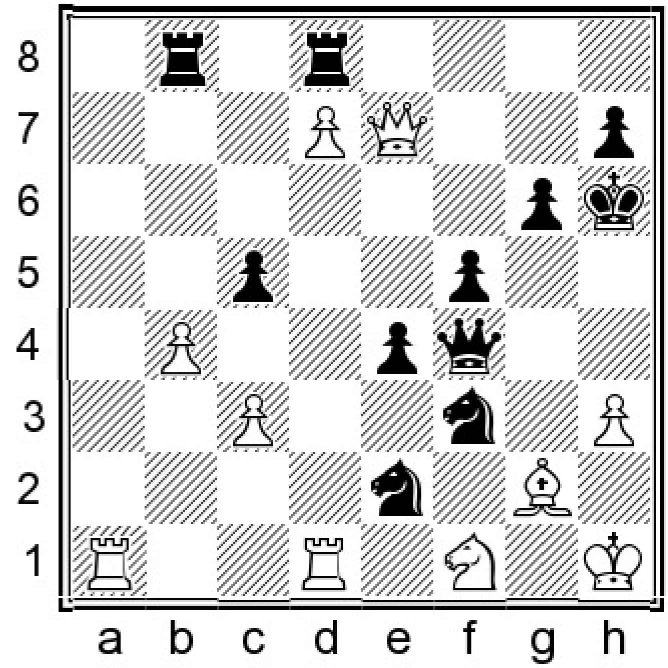


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

154 **34.♖f7!** 1-0 Delemarre-Deleyn, Netherlands tt 2007/08; 34...♗xf7 35.♘exf7#; 34...g6 35.♖h7#, and in other lines Black is mated by 35.♘g6.

155

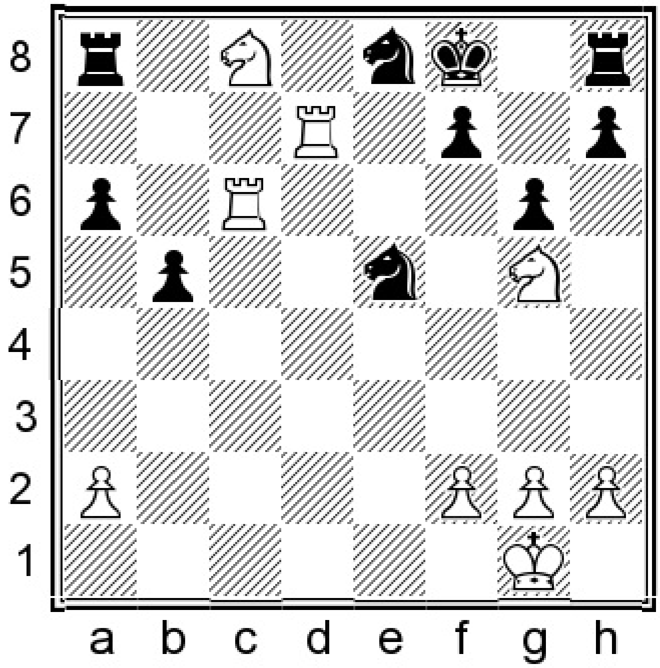


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

155 **39...♕h2+!** Sergienko-Rustemov, Samara ch-RUS 2000; White resigned because of 40.♘xh2 ♘g3#.

156

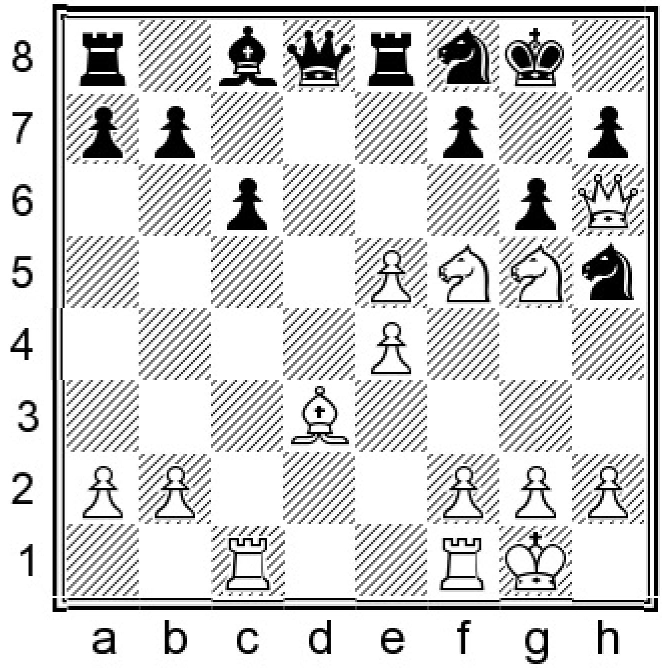


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

156 **30.♖xf7+!** Rodriguez-Contin, Buenos Aires 2008; Black resigned, because mate is unavoidable: 30...♔g8 31.♘e7# or 30...♘xf7 31.♘e6+ ♔g8 32.♘e7#.

157

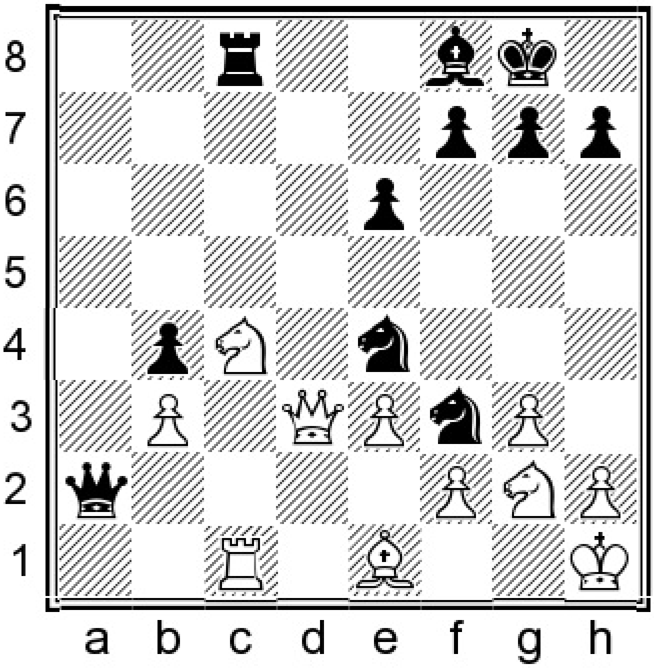


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

157 **22.♕g7+!!** 1-0 Komljenovic-Ayucar Diaz de Cerio, Pamplona 2001; 22...♘xg7 23.♘h6+ ♔h8 24.♘gxf7#.

158

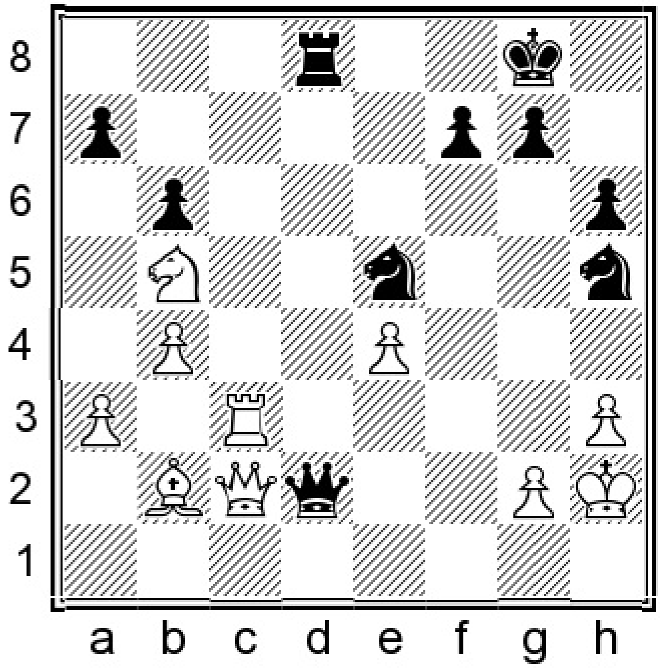


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

158 **29...♕xf2! 30.♗xb4** The threat was 30...♕g1#. **30...♕xg3** The alternative was 30...♕g1+ 31.♖xg1 ♘f2#. **31.hxg3 ♘xg3#** Dumpor-Kosic, Donji Vakuf 2001.

159

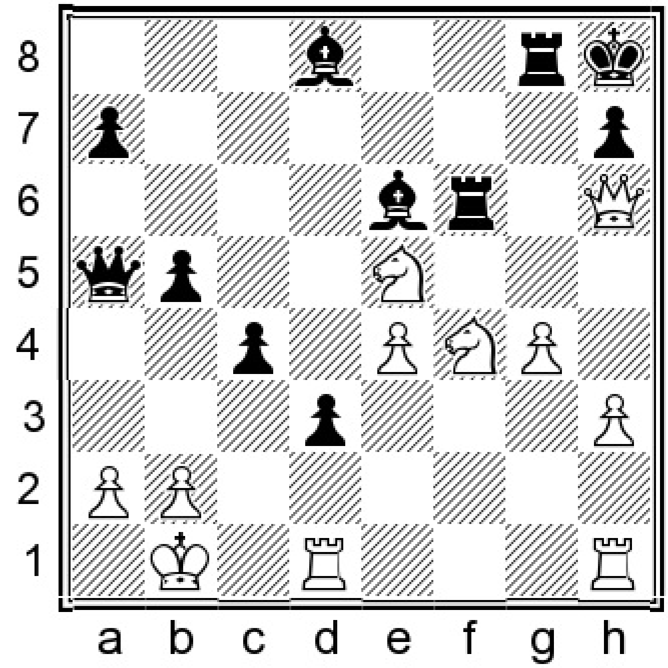


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

159 **33...♘f3+!** 0-1 Bluvstein-Andreikin, Moscow 2011.

160

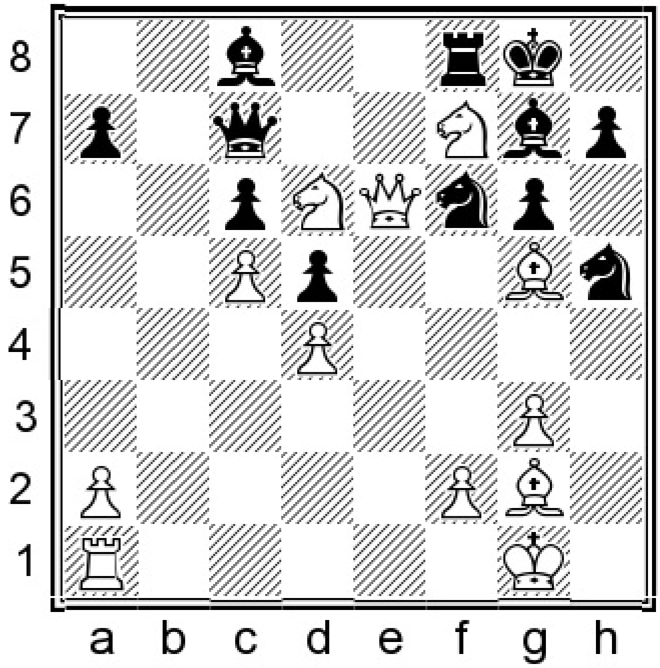


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

160 **31.♘xe6!** 1-0 So-Laznicka, New Delhi 2011; 31...♖xh6 32.♘f7# or 31...c3 32.♕xf6+!.

161

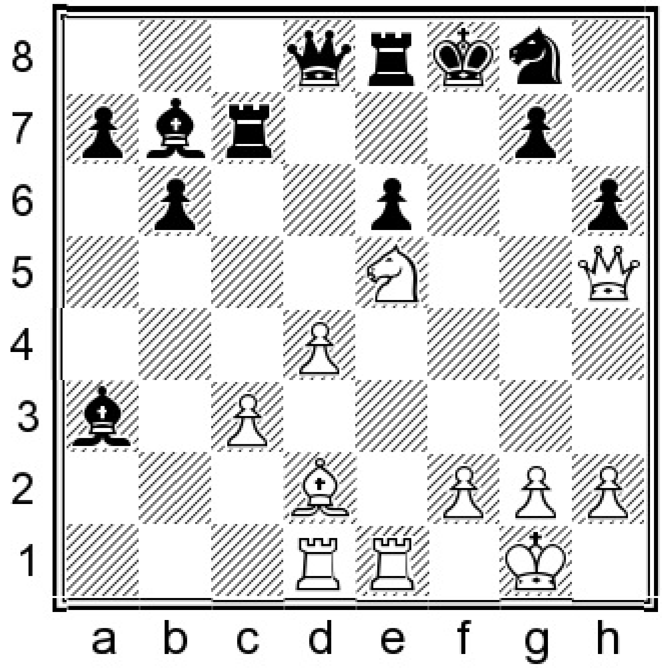

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h

White to play

Show/Hide Solution

161 **27.♘h6+ ♔h8 28.♘df7+ ♖xf7 29.♕xf7 ♗d7 30.♕g8+!** 1-0 Shabanaj-Titova-E.Boric, Turin ol 2006.

162

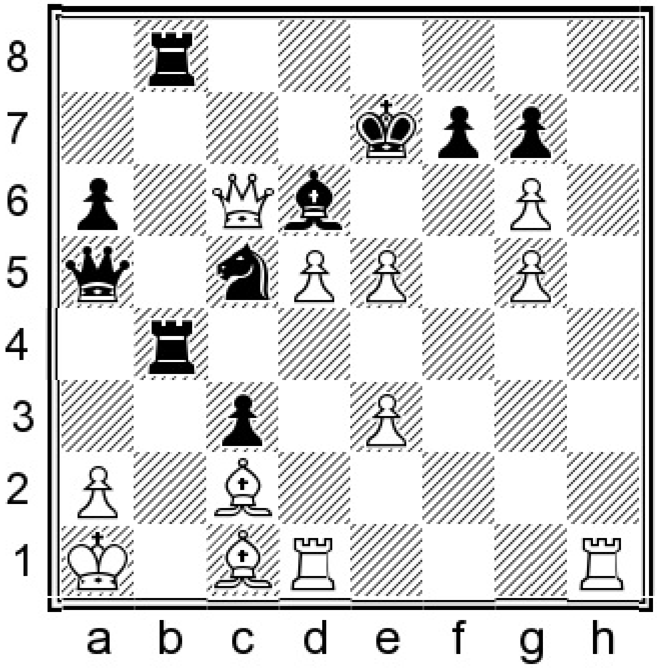


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

162 Black had just played 26...♖c7?? and resigned at once, without waiting for **27.♕f7+! ♖xf7 28.♘g6#** Lomineishvili-Melia, Tbilisi 2004.

163

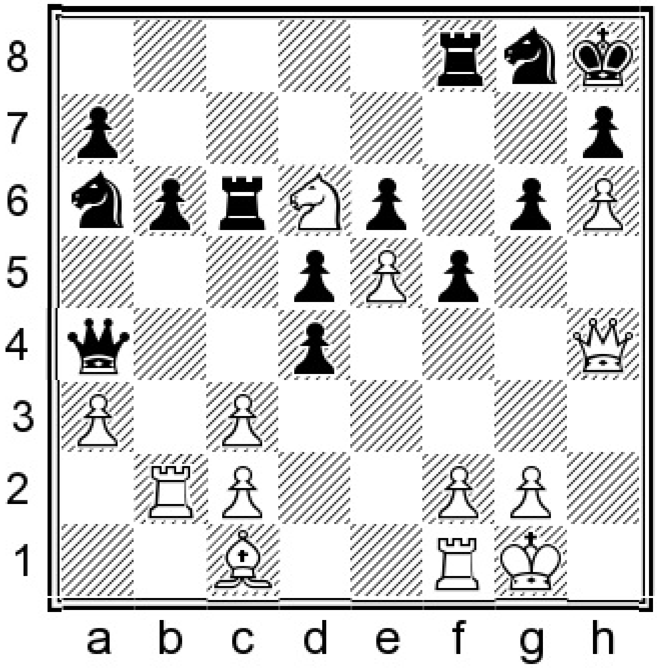


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

163 **35...♖b1+!** 0-1 Schlosser-Rusev, Deizisau 2009; 36.♗xb1 ♘b3#.

164

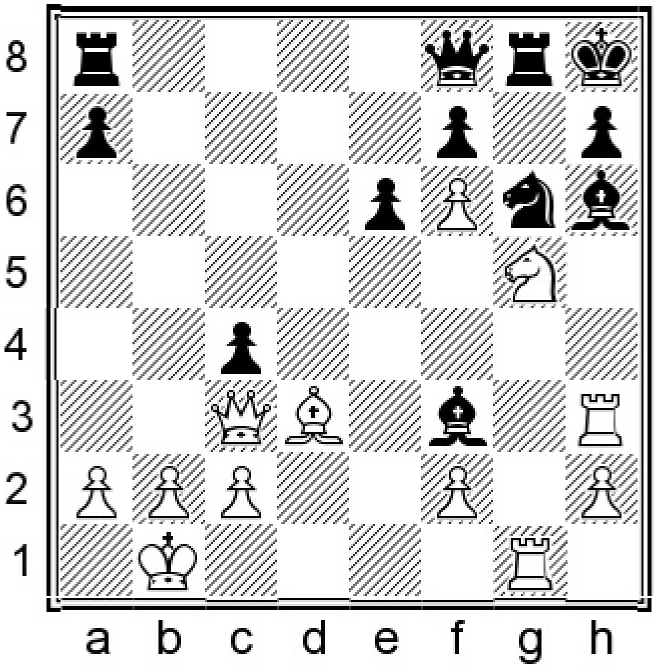


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

164 **25.♕d8! ♖c8** 25...♖xd8 26.♘f7#. **26.♕xc8** 1-0 Anand-Ivanchuk, Moscow Wch blitz 2009.

165


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h

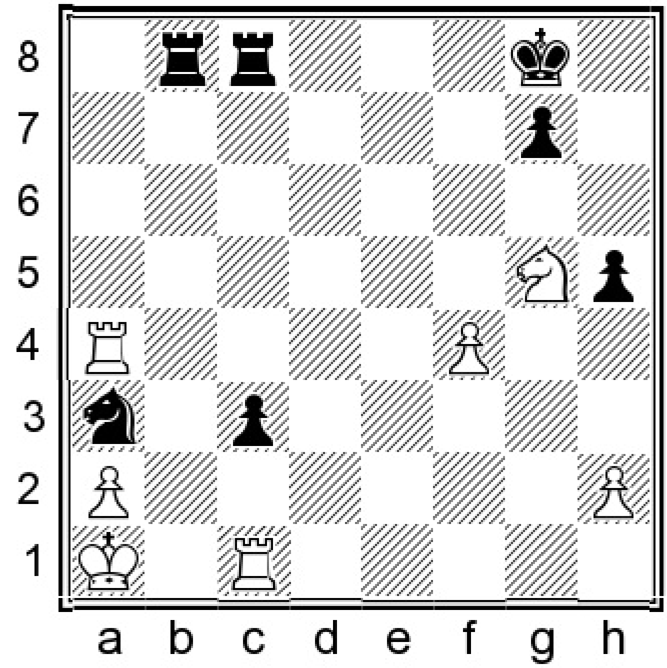
White to play

Show/Hide Solution

165 **22.♖xh6!** 1-0 Fier-Name, Campinas 2010.

Show in Text Mode

166

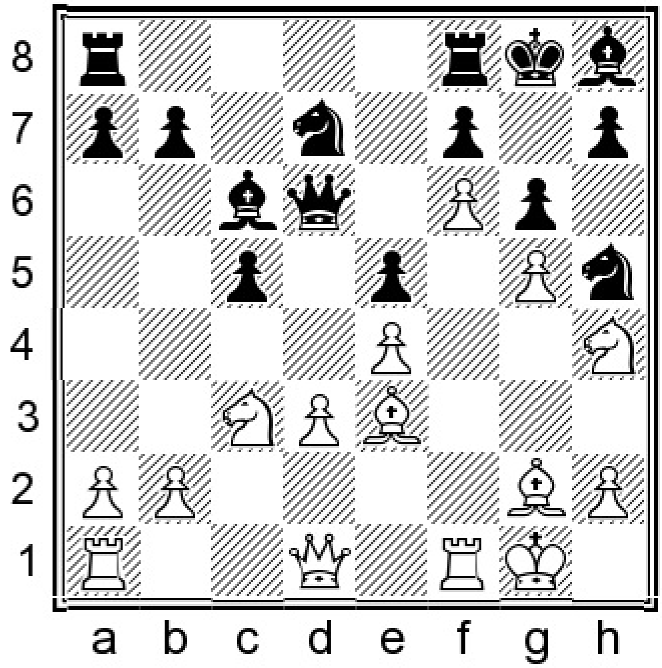


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

166 **57...♖b1+!** 0-1 Pakleza-Jakubowski, Warsaw ch-POL 2011.

167

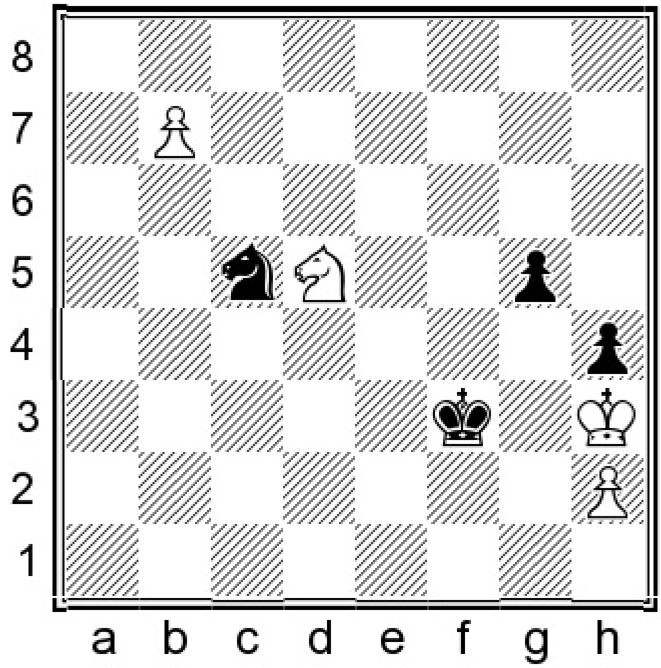


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

167 **19.♕xh5!** Hübner-Kulovana, Marianske Lazne tt 2011; Black resigned: after 19...gxh5 20.♘f5 she has a sad choice – be mated on h6 or play an ending a piece down.

168

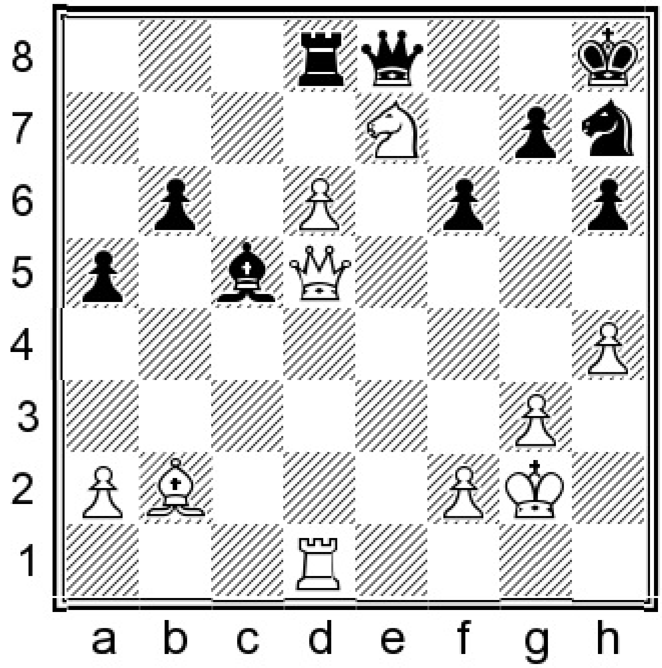


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

168 **72...♘e4** 0-1 Krysa-Salinas Herrera, Moron 2012;
there is a dual: 72...♘d3. Mate on f2 is unavoidable.

169

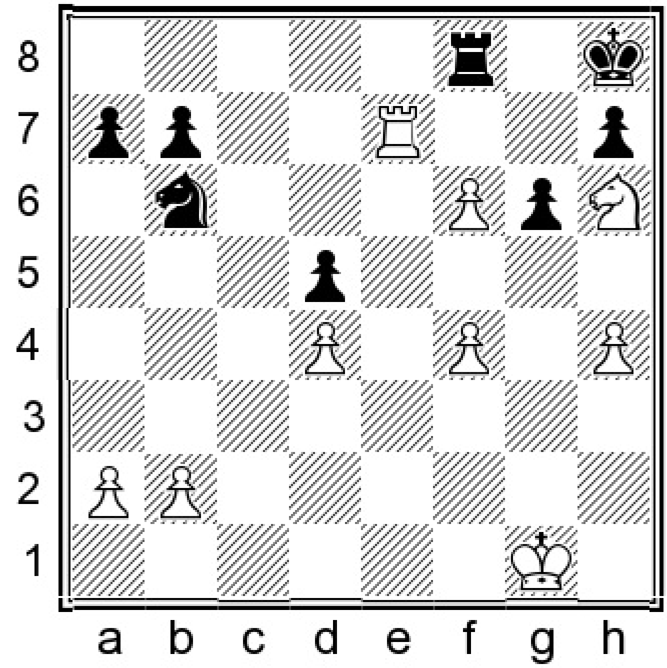


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

169 **31.♕g8+!** 1-0 Tikkanen-Sharavdorj Istanbul ol 2012; 31...♕xg8 32.♘g6#.

170

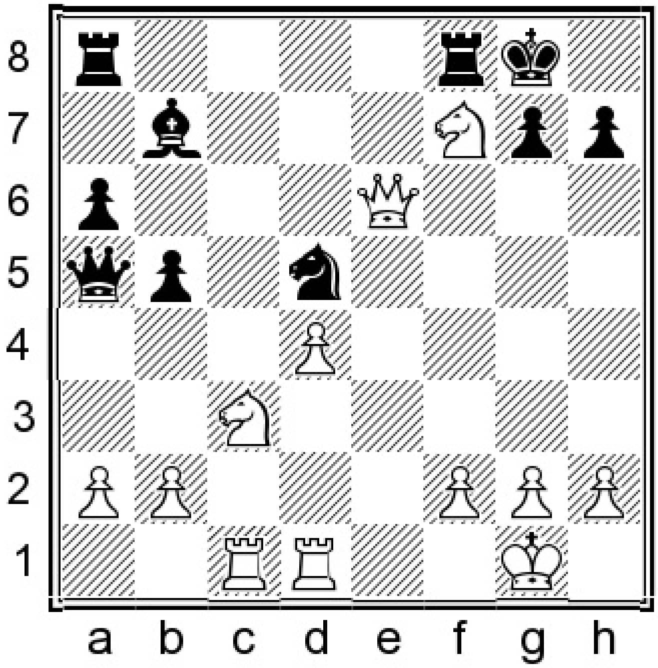


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

170 **31.♖g7** Maiorov-Stromboli, Milan 2012; Black resigned, because he has no defence to 32.♖g8+ ♖xg8 33.♘f7#.

171

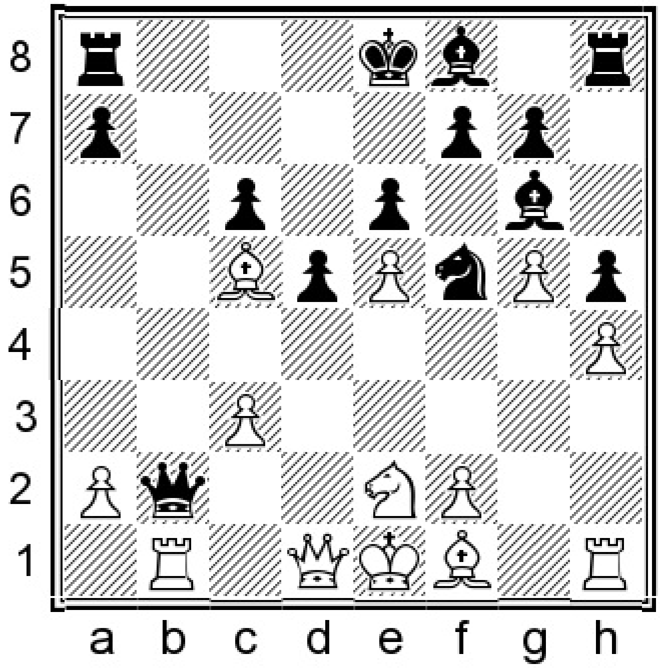


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

171 **21.♘h6+ ♔h8 22.♕g8+! ♖xg8 23.♘f7#** Bue-Ellingsrud, Oslo 2013.

172

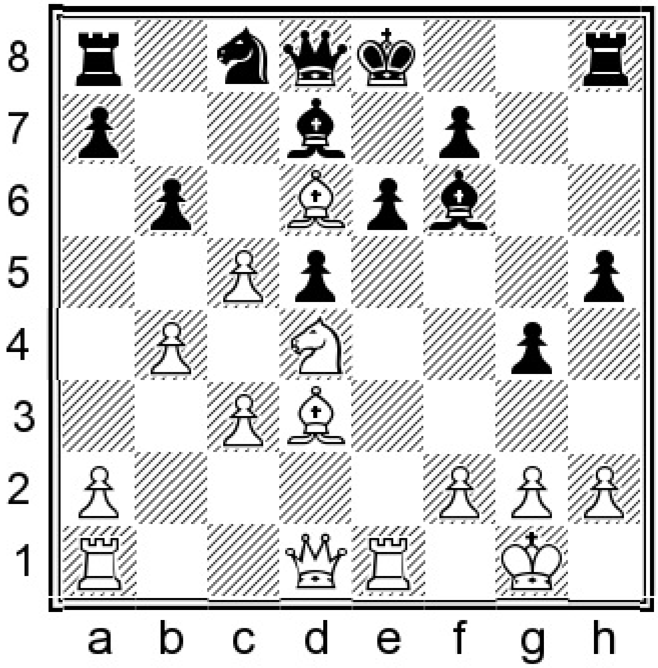

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h

Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

172 **15...♘xh4!** 0-1 Nagashima-Milosa, Sao Paulo 2003; to meet the threat of 16...♘f3#, he must lose the rook on b1.

173

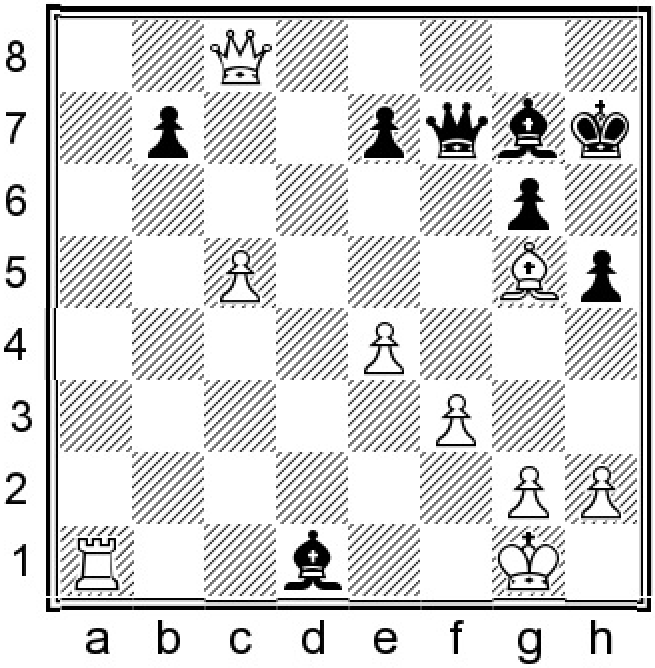


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

173 **18.♘xe6!** A.Ivanov-Figler, Washington 2004; Black resigned: both 18...♗xe6 19.♗b5+, and 18...fxe6 19.♗g6# are bad.

174

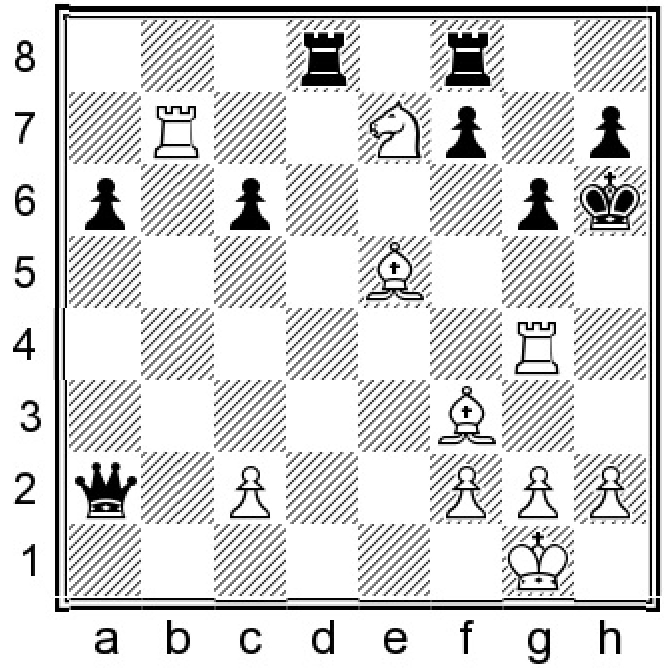


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

174 **34...♗d4+! 35.♔h1** On 35.♔f1 there follows 35...♕c4+ 36.♔e1 ♕e2#. **35...♕xf3!!** 0-1 Filippov-B.Savchenko, Kazan 2005; White loses immediately after 36.gxf3 ♗xf3#, but nor is he saved by 36.h4 ♕f1+ 37.♔h2 ♗e5+ 38.g3 ♕f2+.

175

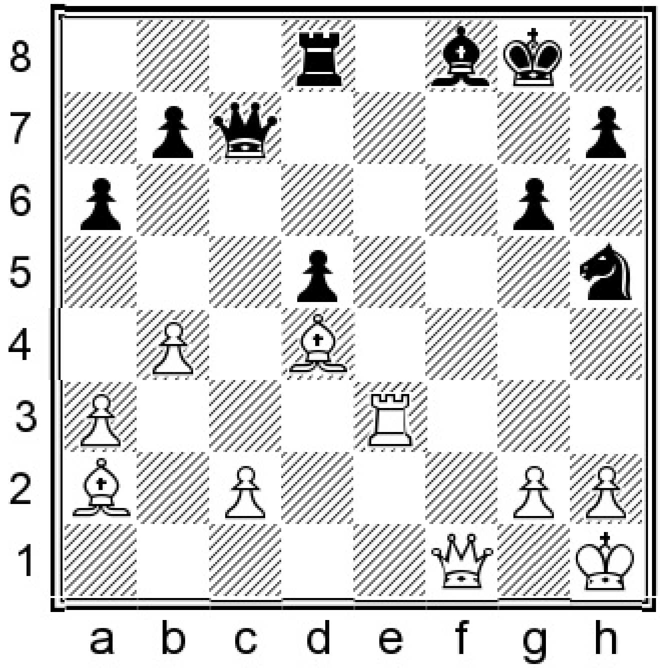


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

175 **26.♘f5+!** Kovalevskaya-Kurajica, Solin 2005; Black resigned, because of 26...gxf5 27.♗g7+ ♔h5 28.♖g3+ ♔h4 29.♗f6#.

176

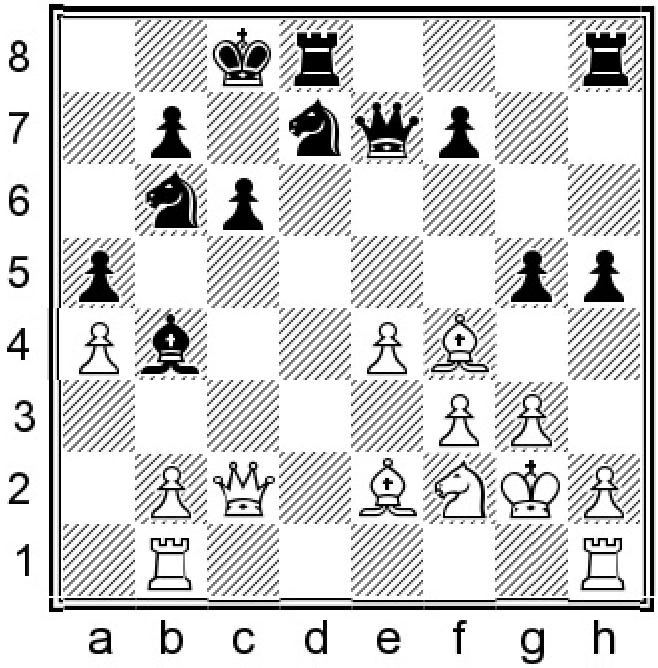


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

176 **27.♖e8!** 1-0 Yemelin-Slizhevsky, St Petersburg 2005; 27...♖xe8 28.♗xd5+; 27...♕d6 28.♗xd5+! ♕xd5 29.♕xf8#.

177

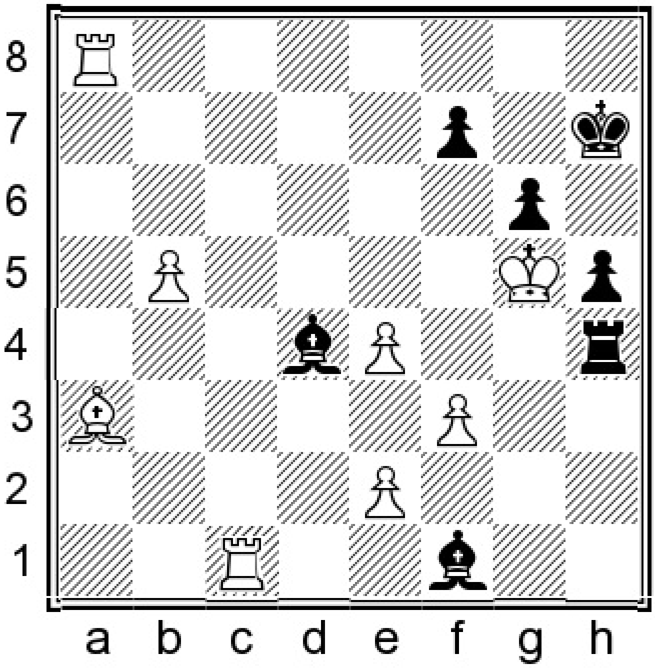


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

177 **21.♕xc6+!** 1-0 Lamprecht-Polyakova, Pardubice 1998; 21...bxc6 22.♗a6#.

178

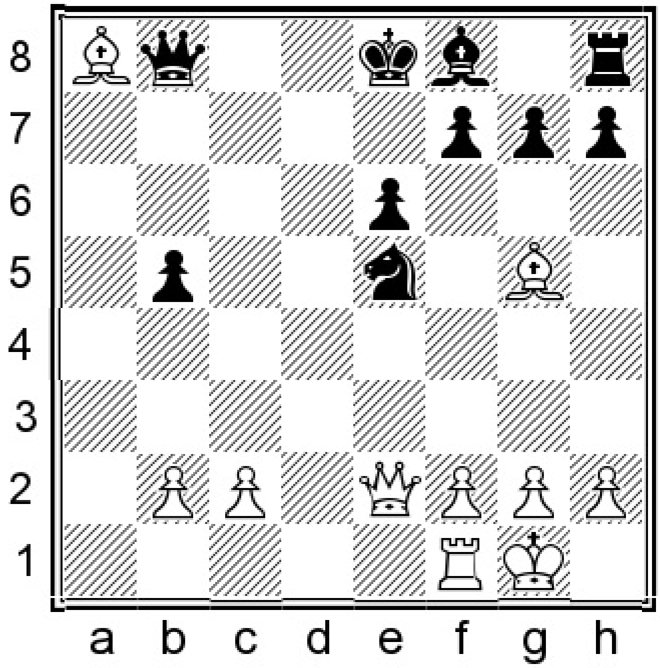


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

178 **39...f6+!** Jianu-Roganovic, Bucharest 2009; White resigned because of 40.♔xh4 ♗f2#.

179

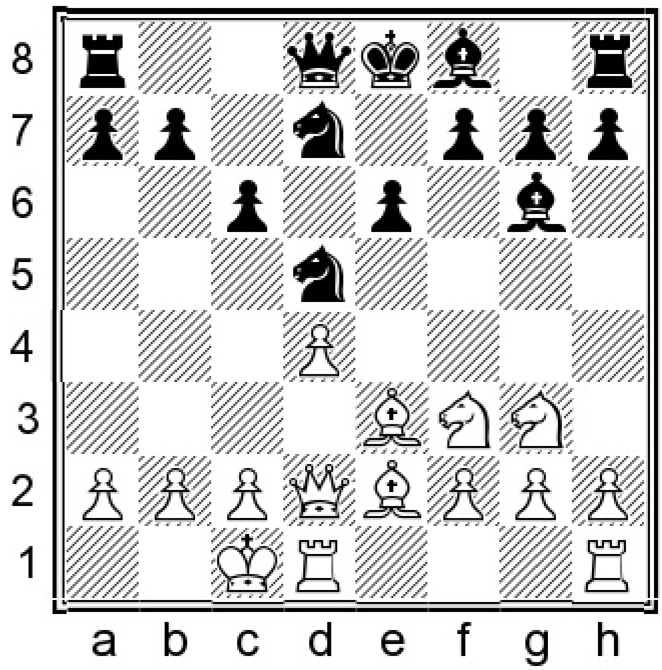


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

179 **19.♕xe5!** 1-0 A.Vovk-Kowara, Warsaw rapid 2009; 19...♕xe5 20.♗c6# or 19...♕xa8 20.♕xb5+.

180

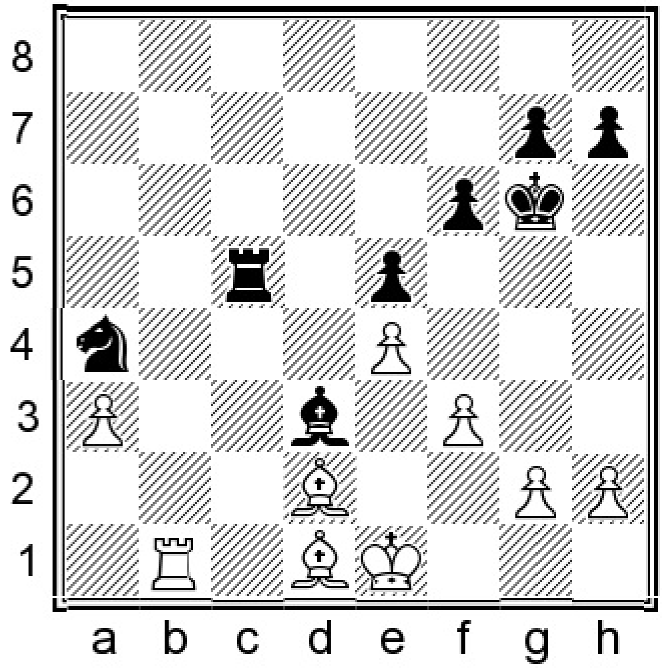


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

180 **10...♗b4! 11.c3 ♘xc3 12.bxc3 ♗a3+** Matoussi-Jorgensen, Khanty-Mansiysk ol W 2010; White resigned: she loses the queen.

181

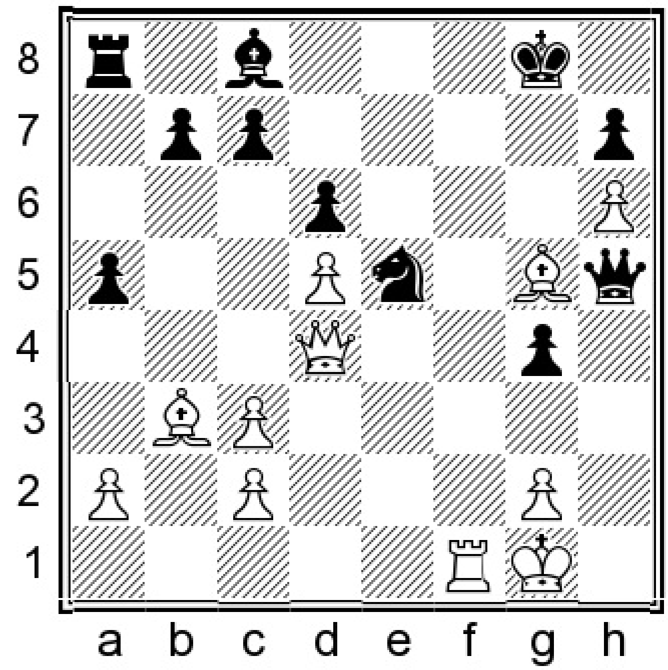


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

181 **35.♗xa4!** Stocek-Kryvoruchko, Plovdiv Ech 2012; Black resigned because of 35...♗xb1 36.♗e8#.

182

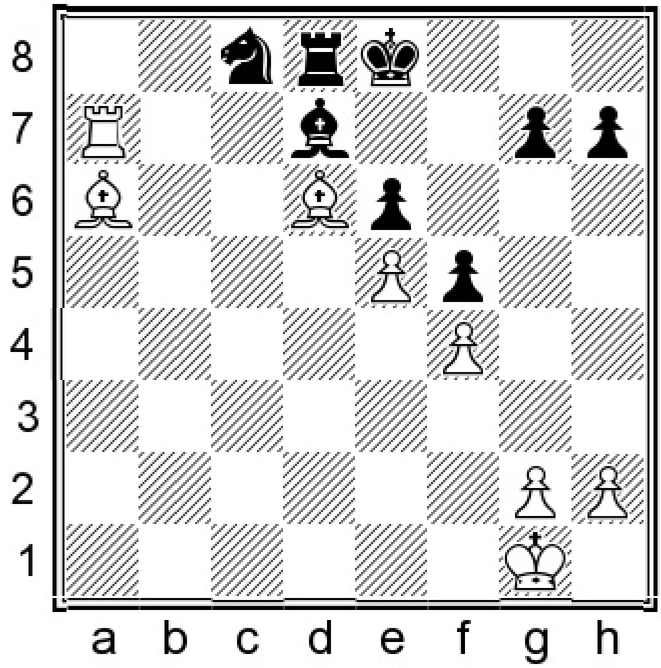

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h

White to play

Show/Hide Solution

182 **24.♕xe5!** Fedorov-Gyimesi Croatia tt 2001; Black resigned, without waiting for 24...dxe5 25.d6+ ♔h8 26.♗f6#.

183

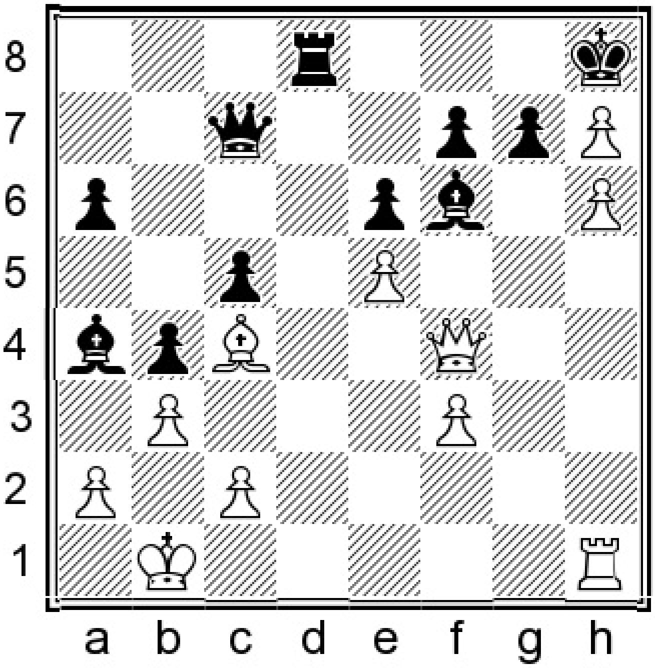


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

183 **32.♖xd7! ♔xd7** More tenacious is 32...♖xd7 33.♗xc8, although the endgame is completely hopeless. **33.♗b5#** Paragua-Sadorra, Manila Ach 2013.

184

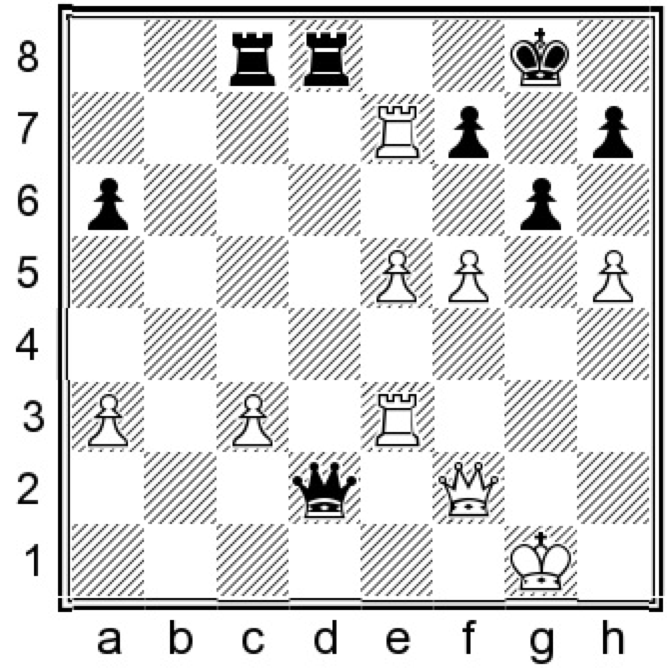


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

184 **26.exf6!** 1-0 Ye Jiangchuan-Xu Jun, Yongchuan zt 2003; if the queen is taken, 27.hxg7 mates, nor is he saved after 26...♖d1+ 27.♔b2 (or 27.♖xd1 ♕xf4 28.hxg7+ ♔xh7 29.♖h1+).

185

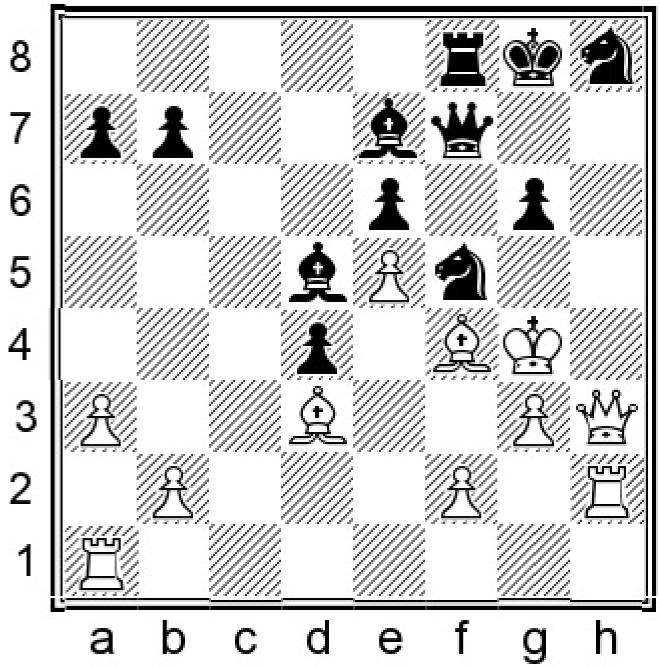


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

185 **41.♖e8+! ♔g7 42.h6+** Zhukova-Matveeva, Krasnoturinsk 2003; Black resigned because of 42...♔xh6 43.♕h4+ ♔g7 44.f6#.

186

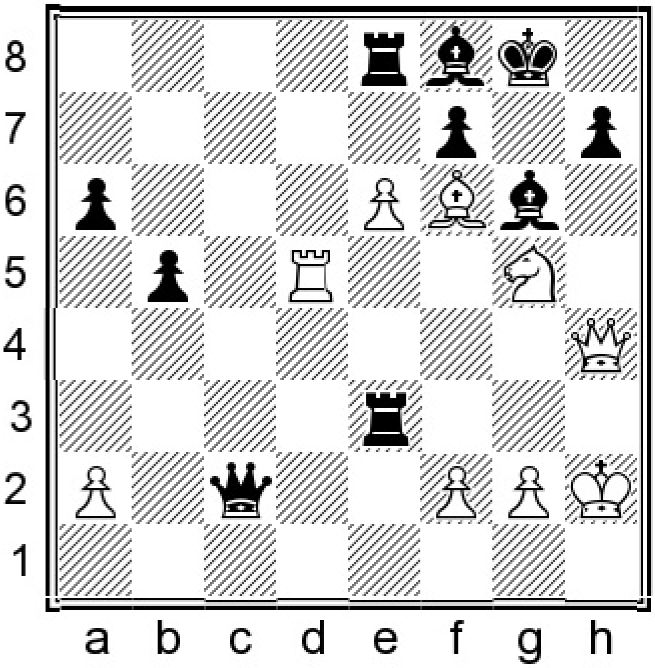


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

186 **31...♘e3+! 32.fxe3 ♕f5+! 33.♗xf5 exf5#** Ronchetti-Piscopo, Reggio Emilia 2003/04.

187

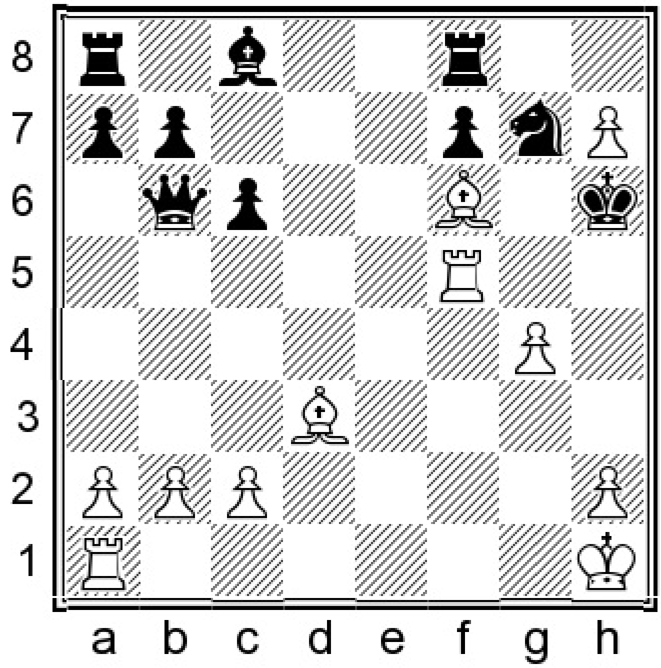

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

White to play

Show/Hide Solution

187 **39.♕xh7+!** 1-0 A.Muzychuk-Bellia, Budapest 2006; 39...♗xh7 40.exf7#.

188

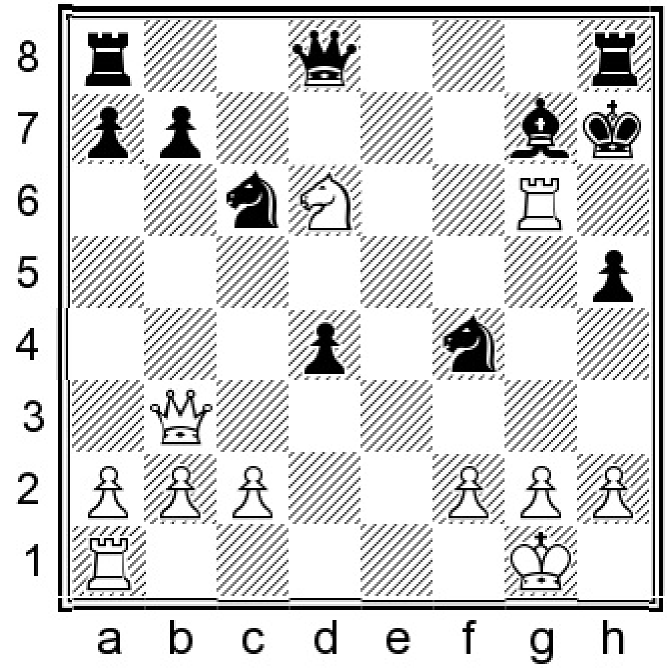


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

188 **29.♖h5+! ♘xh5 30.g5#** T.L.Petrosian-Minasian, Yerevan ch-ARM 2006.

189

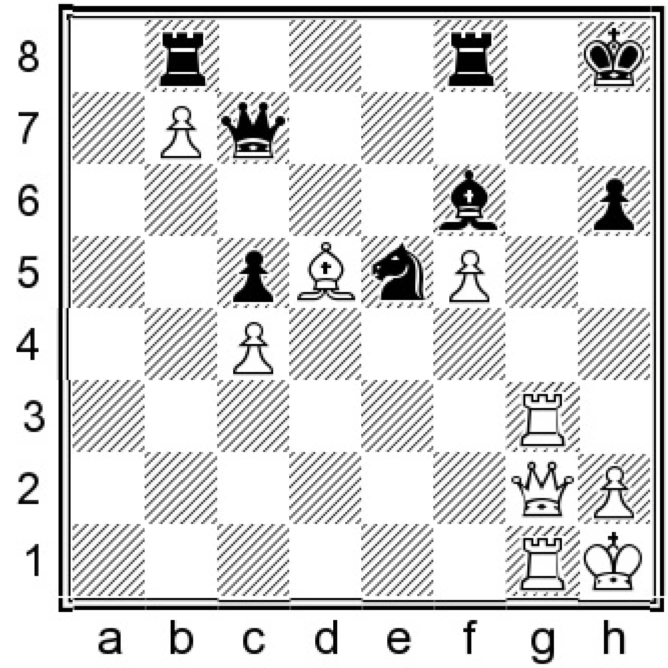


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

189 **20.♖xg7+! ♔xg7 21.♕f7+ ♔h6 22.♘f5+** Ulibin-Cabrera Trujillo, Cappelle-la-Grande 2008; Black resigned, because of 22...♔g5 23.h4+ ♔g4 24.f3#.

190

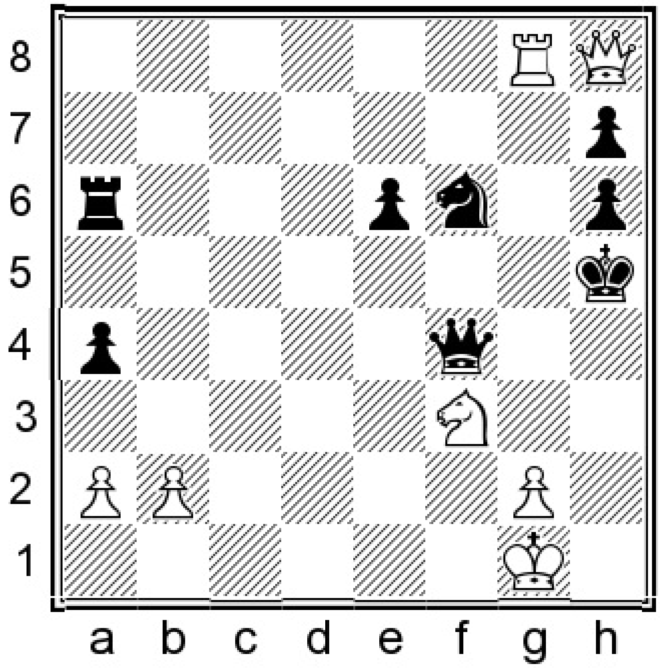


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

190 **42.♖g8+ ♔h7** Or 42...♖xg8 43.♕xg8+ ♖xg8 44.♖xg8+ ♔h7 45.b8=♕ with a decisive material advantage. **43.♕g6+!** 1-0 Kotanjian-Zysk, Athens 2006; 43...♘xg6 44.fxg6#.

191

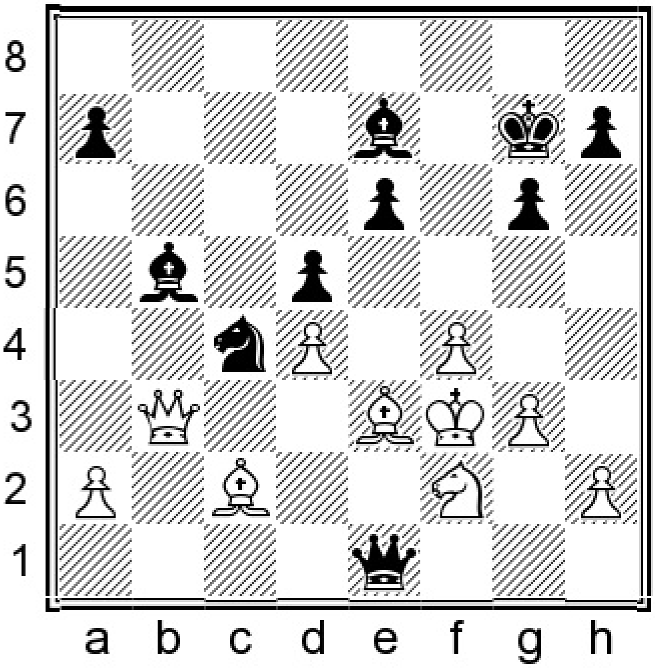


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

191 **37.♕xf6!** 1-0 Karjakin-Short, Kiev m rapid 2008; 37...♕xf6 38.g4#.

192

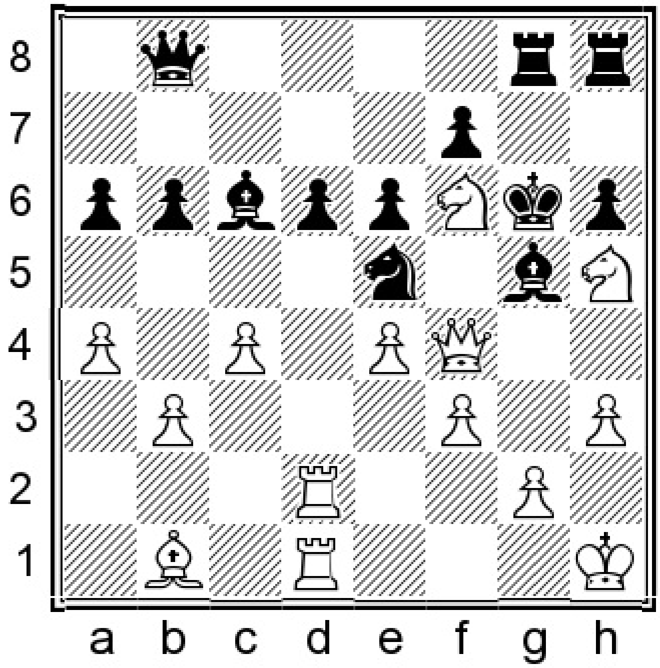


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

192 **31...♘e5+!** Filippov-Nguyen Ngoc Truong Son, Khanty-Mansiysk ol 2010; White resigned because of 32.fxe5 ♗e2+ 33.♔f4 (33.♔g2 ♕f1#) 33...g5#.

193

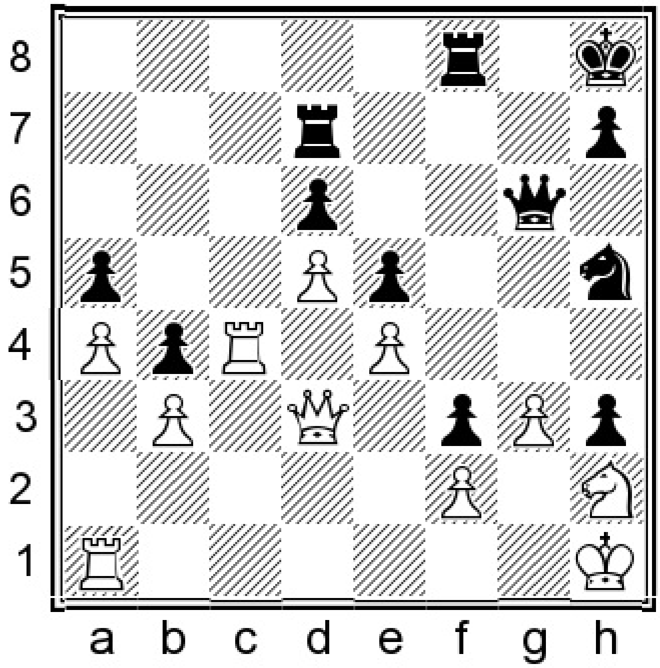


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

193 **35.♕f5+!** 1-0 Peptan-Padurariu, Sarata Monteoru ch-ROM W 2011.

194

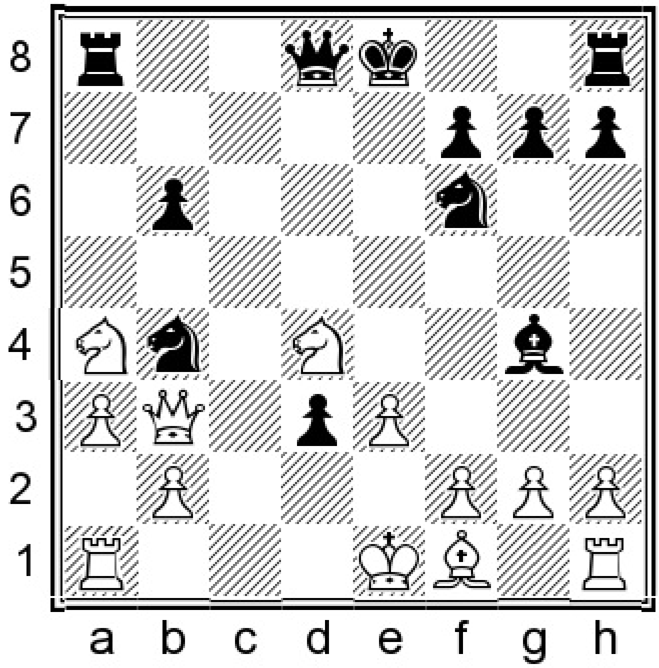


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

194 **31...♕xg3!** Konyshev-Bologan, Russia tt 2011; White resigned because of 32.fxg3 ♘xg3+ 33.♔g1 f2# or 32.♖g1 ♕xf2 with the threat of 34...♘g3+.

195

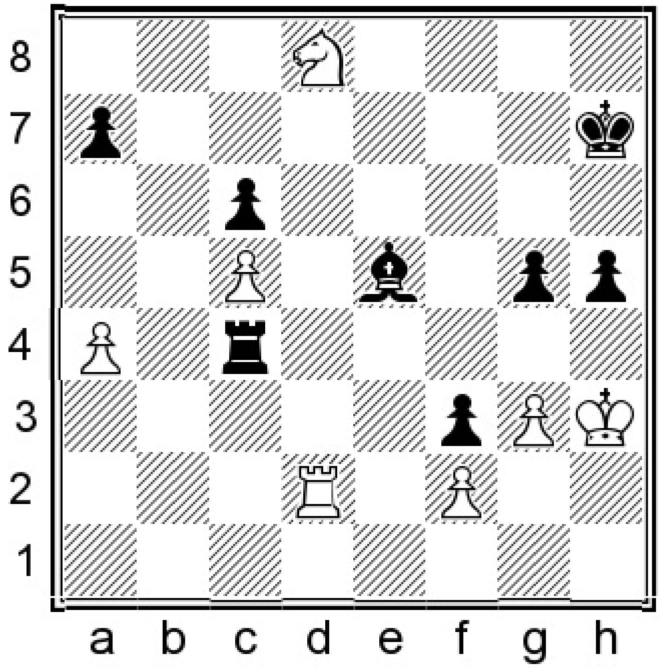

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

195 **14...♘c2+!** 0-1 Haugli-Lundin, Oslo 2012; if White wants to keep the rook, he is mated: 15.♘xc2 d2#.

196

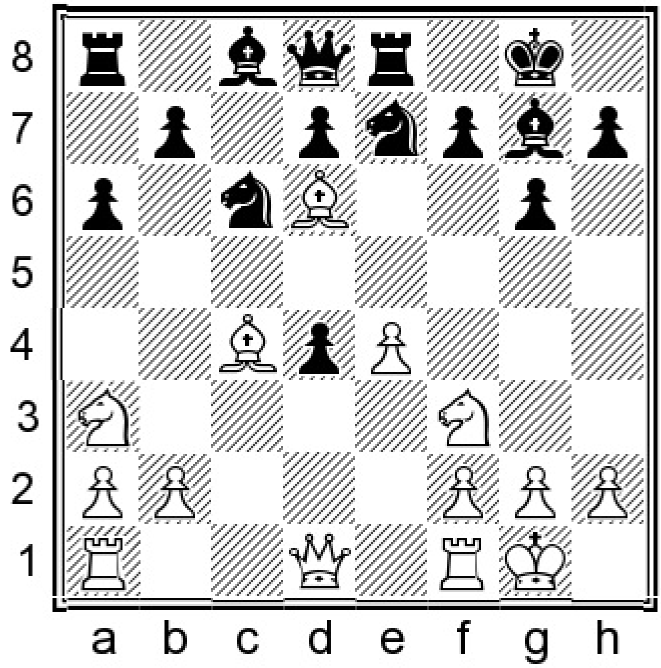


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

196 **49...♖h4+!** 0-1 Patil-Venkatesh, Chennai 2012; 50.gxh4 g4#.

197

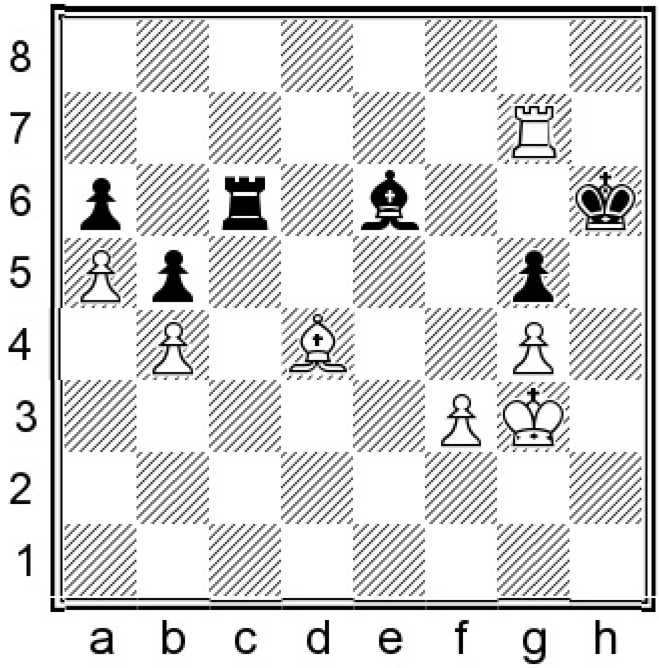


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

197 **12.♗xf7+! ♔xf7 13.♕b3+ ♔f6** 13...♔f8 14.♘g5. **14.e5+ ♔f5 15.♕f7+ ♔g4 16.h3+** Baklan-Grosselohmann, Werther 2004; Black resigned because of 16...♔h5 17.♕xg7 ♘f5 18.g4#.

198

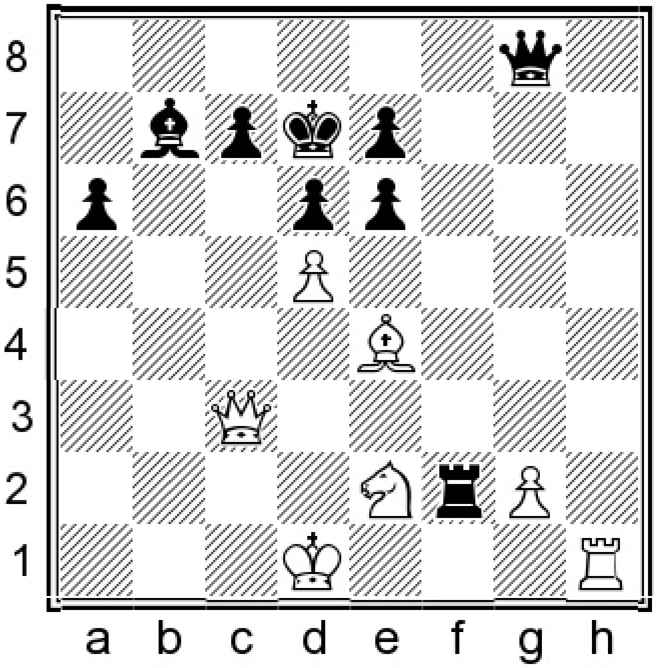

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h

White to play

Show/Hide Solution

198 **57.f4! gxf4+ 58.♔h4** 1-0 Potkin-Sanikidze, Legnica Ech 2013; to stop mate, Black has to give up a bishop.

199

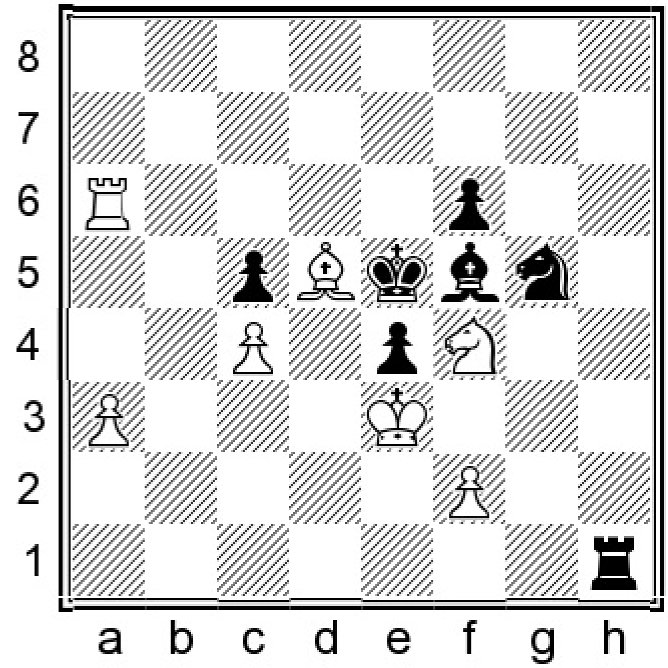


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

199 **28.♖h8! ♕g4 29.♕c6+!** 1-0 Hamdouchi-Shoker, France tt 2013; 29...♗xc6 30.dxc6#.

200

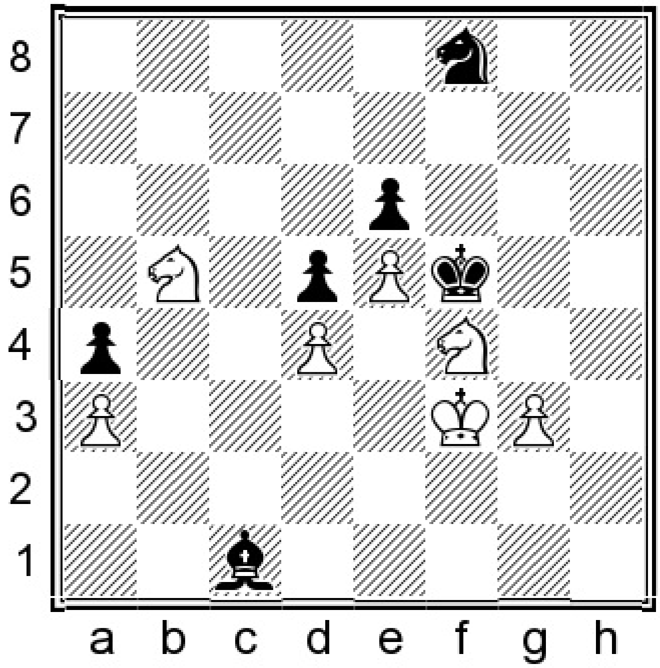


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

200 **37.♘d3+! exd3 38.f4#** Zhou Yang Fan-Burnett, Torquay ch-GBR 2013.

201

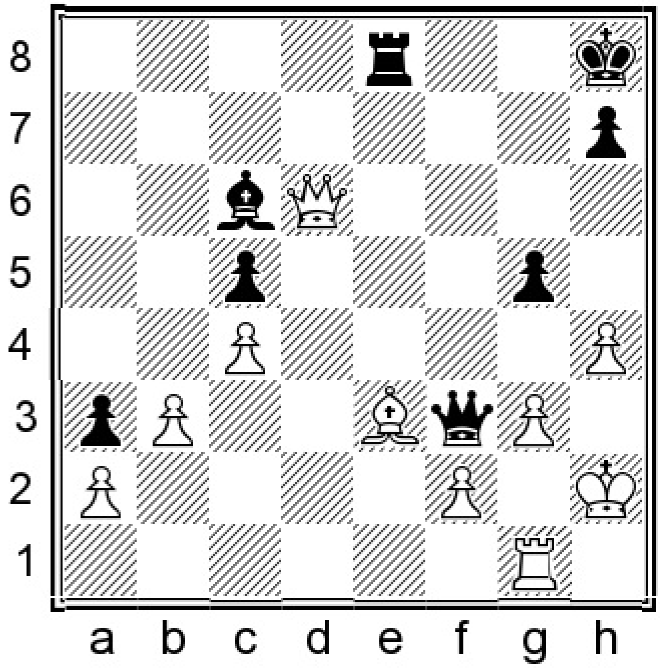


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

201 **49.♘d6+ ♔g5 50.♘f7+ ♔f5 51.g4#** Hebden-Arkell, Torquay ch-GBR 2013.

202

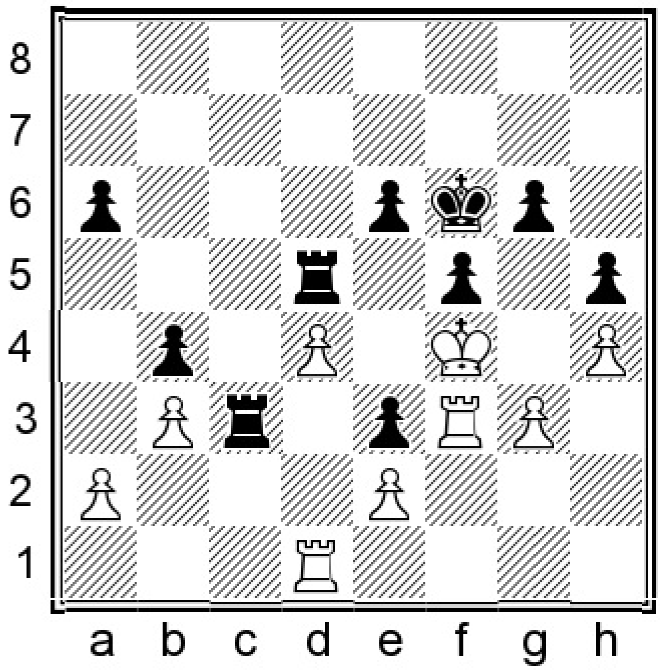


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

202 **34...♖xe3! 35.fxe3** 35.♕d8+ ♖e8. **35...♕e2+ 36.♔h3 g4#** Bach-Romanov, Bad Wiessee 2013.

203

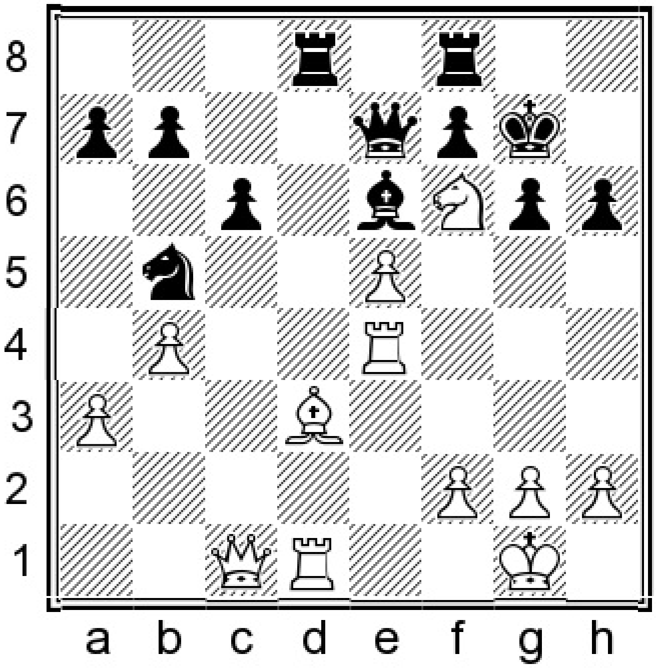

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

203 **1...♖xd4+!** 0-1 Orlinkov-Barsky, Moscow 2014; 2.♖xd4 e5#.

204

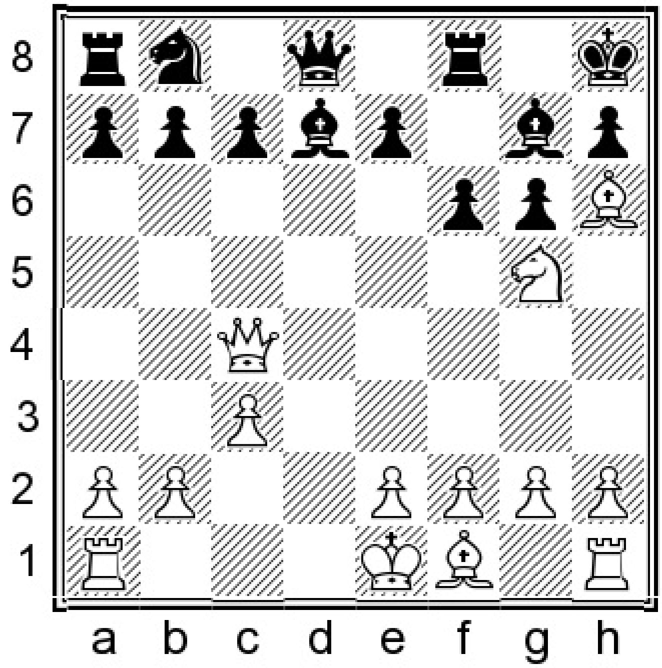


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

204 **25.♕xh6+! ♔xh6 26.♖h4+ ♔g5** 26...♔g7 27.♖h7#. **27.f4+ ♔xh4 28.g3+** Valsecchi-Bontempi, Zagreb 2012; Black resigned one move from mate: 28...♔h3 29.♗f1#.

205

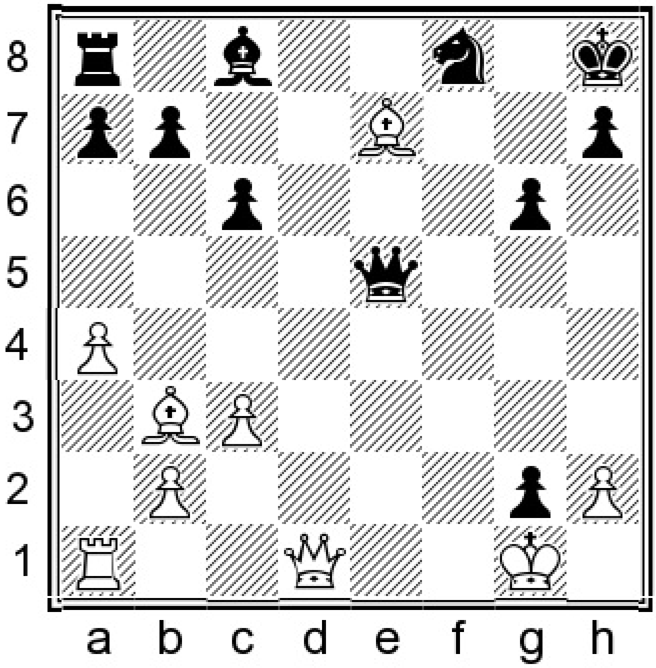


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

205 **11.♕f7! ♖g8** Black does not want to play an endgame an exchange down after 11...♖xf7 12.♘xf7+ ♔g8 13.♘xd8 ♗xh6 14.♘xb7, but an unpleasant surprise awaits him: **12.♕xf6!!** Berezovsky-Ruzel, Odessa 1984; Black resigned because of 12...♗e8 13.♗xg7+ ♖xg7 14.♕xg7+ ♔xg7 15.♘e6+.

206

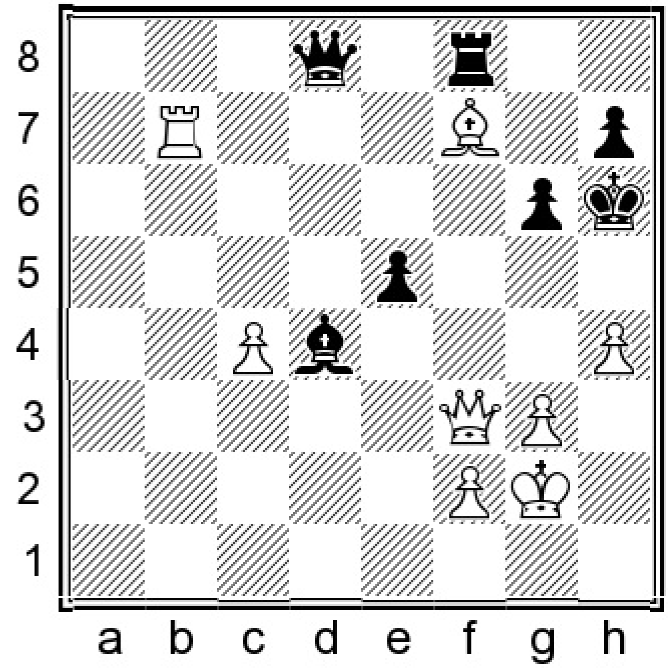


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

206 **20.♕e2! ♕f4** Bad is 20...♕xe2 21.♗f6#, and 20...♕g7 21.♗xf8 ♕xf8 22.♕e5+ ♕g7 23.♕e8+ is not much better. **21.♕e4!** Simpler than 21.♗xf8 ♗g4 22.♗d6; 1-0 Bagheri-Cleran, Fouesnant 2001.

207

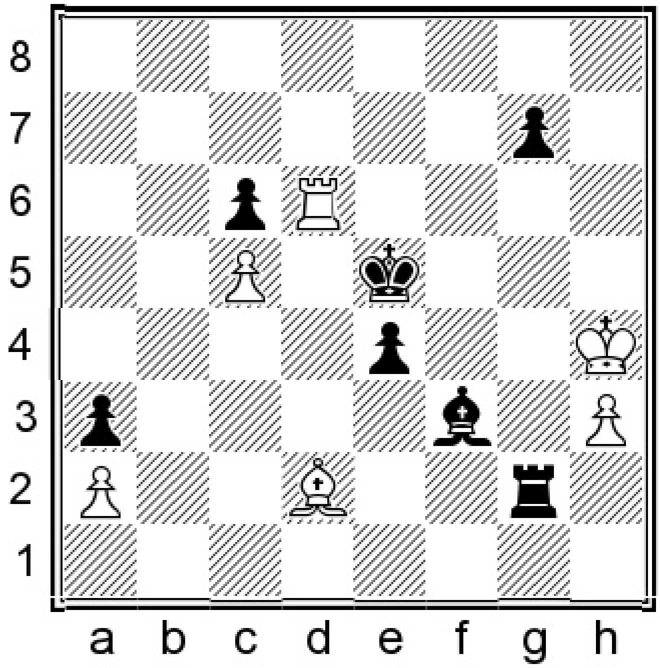


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

207 **36.♗g8! ♖xg8** The threat was 37.♖xh7#. **37.♕f7 ♖h8 38.♕g7+ ♔h5 39.♔h3** Collins-Constantinou, Liverpool 2008; Black resigned: there is no defence against the threat of g3-g4#, as 39...♕c8+ fails to 40.♖d7.

208

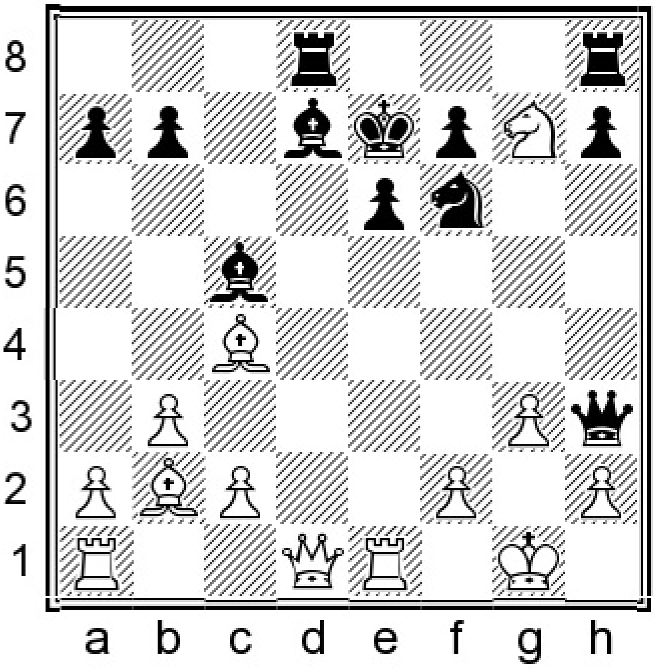


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

208 **52...♖xd2! 53.♖xd2 ♔f4** Ptacnikova-Kociscak, Prague 2013; a beautiful and economic mating pattern. White resigned – she has to give the rook because of the threat of ...g7-g5#.

209



White to play

Show/Hide Solution

209 **17.♕d4!!** An excellent double attack, winning a piece. **17...♘e4** Not 17...♗xd4 18.♗a3+ ♗c5 19.♗xc5#. **18.♕xe4 ♗c6 19.♕h4+!** Simplest. **19...♕xh4 20.♘f5+** 1-0 Parligras-Kruppa, Romania tt 2008.

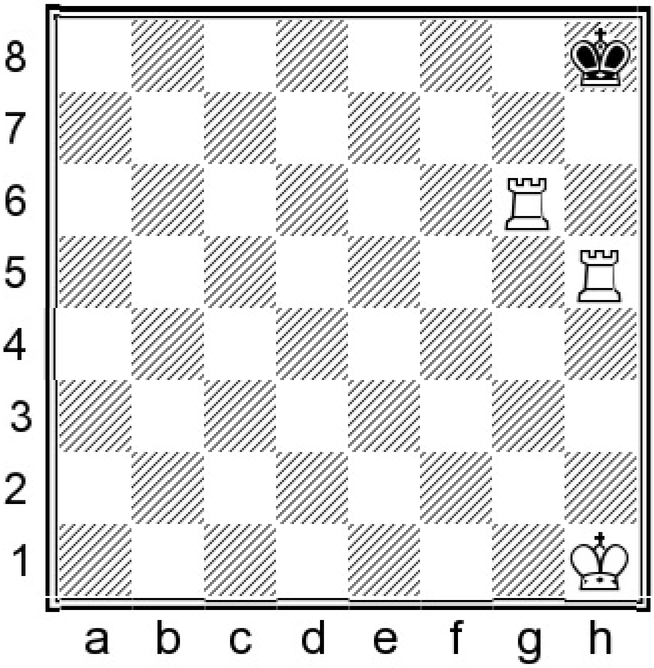
Chapter 4

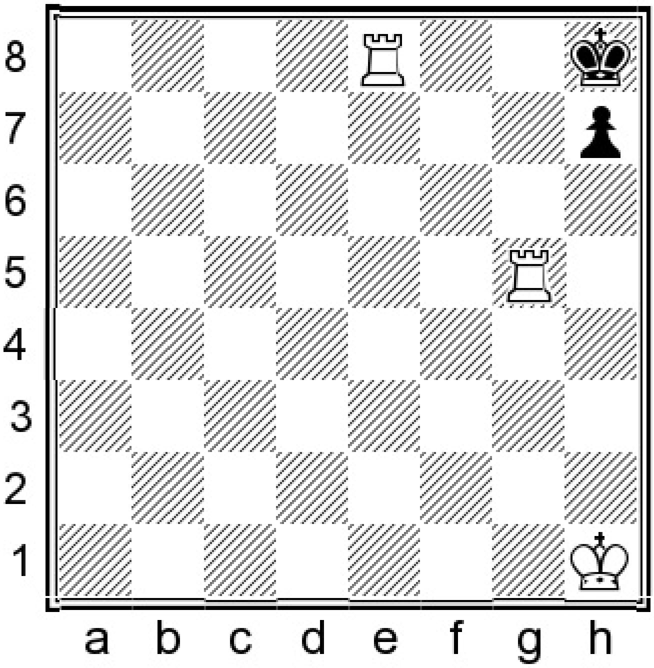
Two rooks

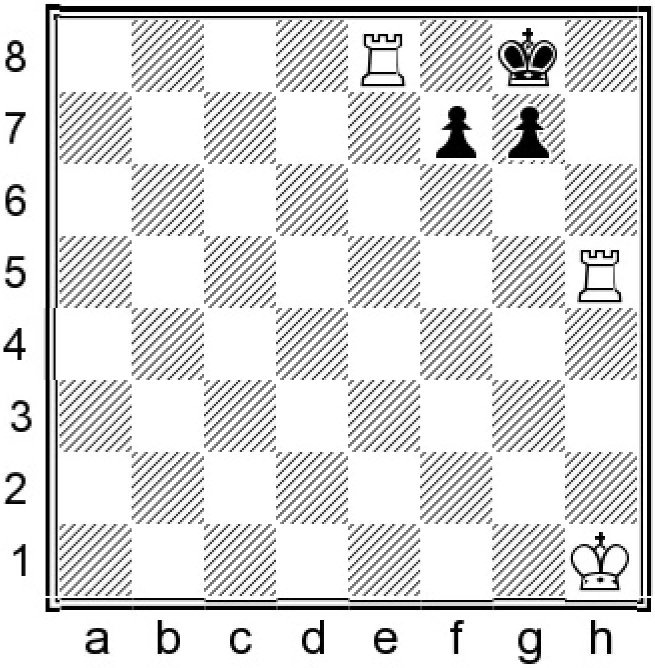
The rook is a line piece and two rooks usually give mate by one attacking the king on a rank or file, while the other cuts off the neighbouring line. An analogous construction is also possible in the centre of the board, if the king's retreat onto the line not controlled by the rooks is cut off.

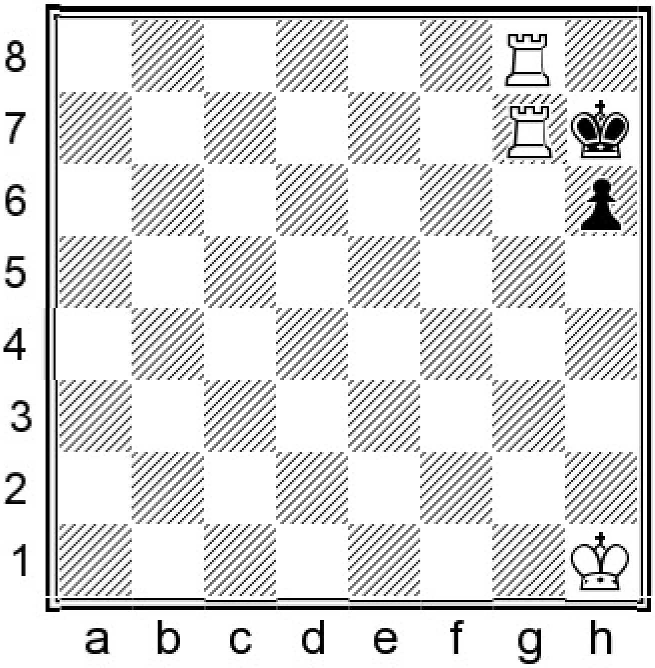
Mate on the edge of the board can also be effected with our rooks not acting on parallel lines, if our or the opponent's other units obstruct it.

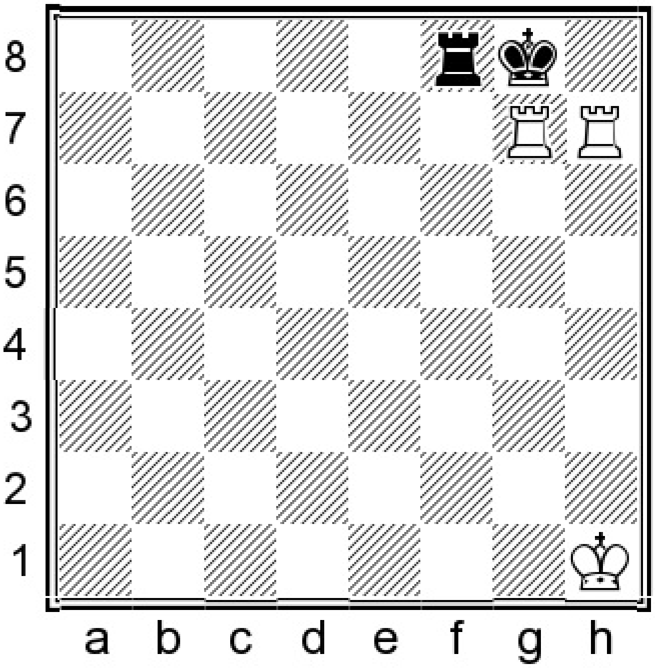
Here are some of the more typical schemes.

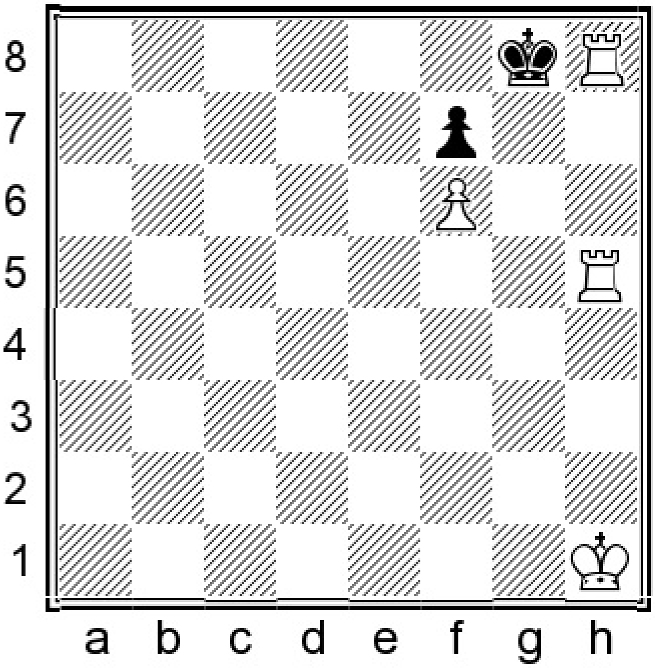


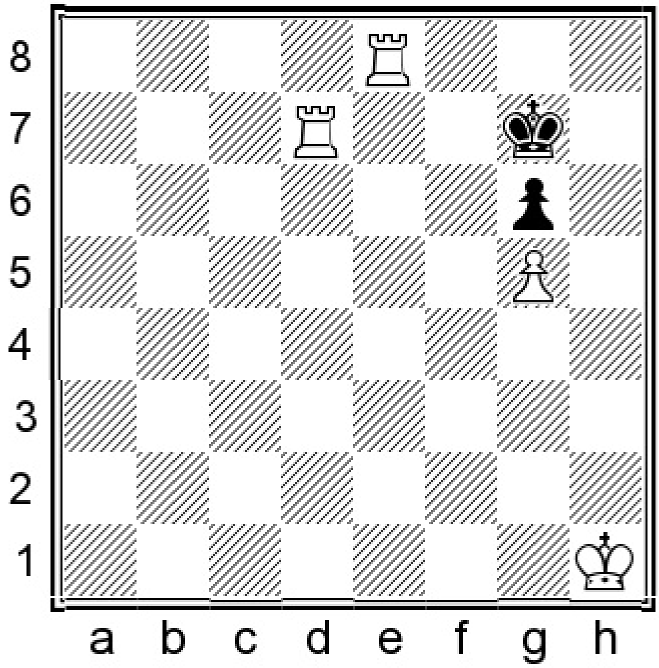


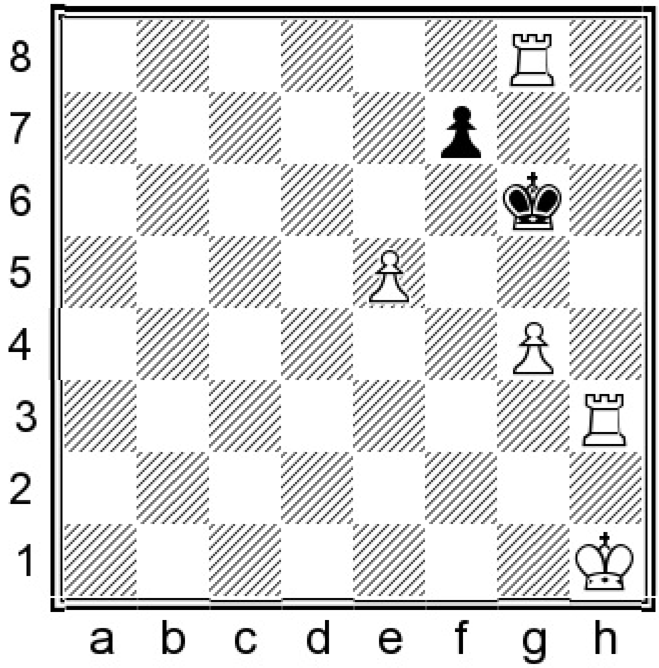




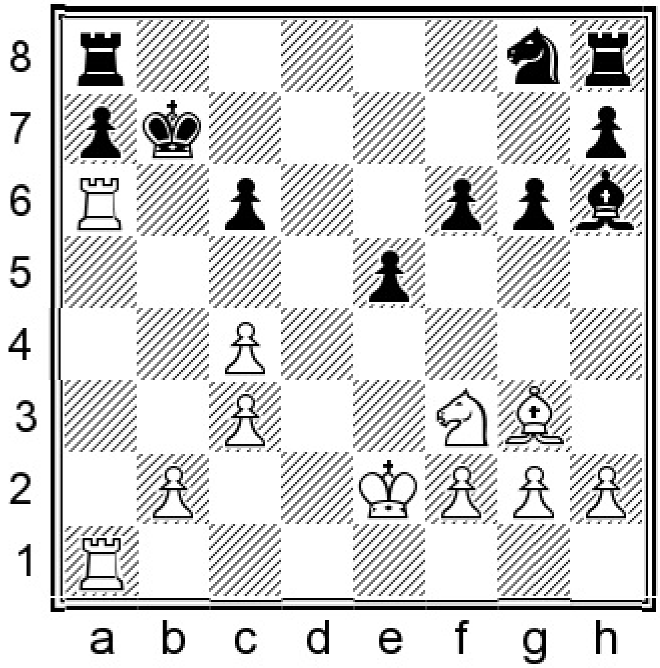








Luke McShane 2531
Lars Borbjerggaard 2369
Stockholm 2001/02 (6)



White to play

Even in the endgame, the king can find itself in trouble whilst almost in the centre of the board.

21.♘xe5! fxe5 22.♗xe5 ♖e8

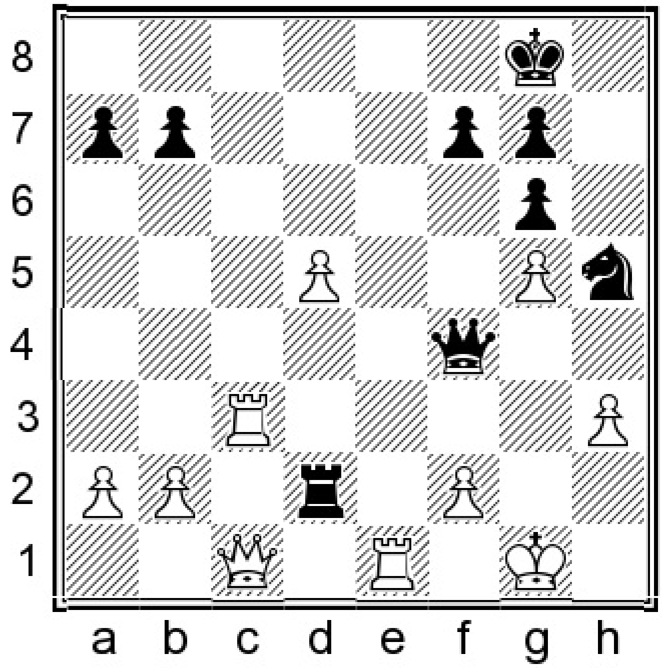
If 22...♘f6 23.♗xf6 ♖he8+ 24.♔d3 White simply has two extra pawns.

23.♖xa7+ ♔b6 24.b4!

Black resigned.

After 24...♖xe5+ 25.♔f1 the two extra pieces cannot defend against mate on a6.

Zurab Azmaiparashvili 2676
Alexei Shirov 2715
Dubai rapid 2002 (3)

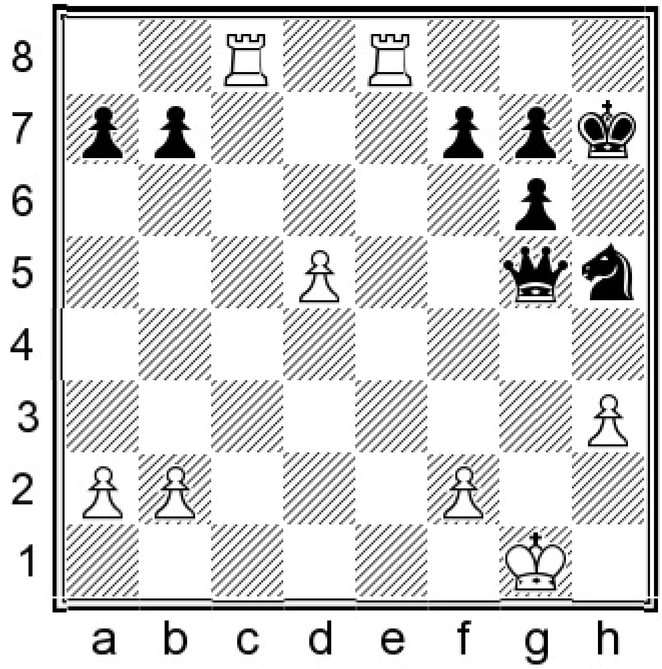


White to play

In the game, there followed 29.♖f3? ♕xf3 30.♕xd2 ♘f4, and White lost.

But he could have won with the fantastic

29.♕xd2!! ♕xd2 30.♖c8+ ♔h7 31.♖ee8 ♕xg5+



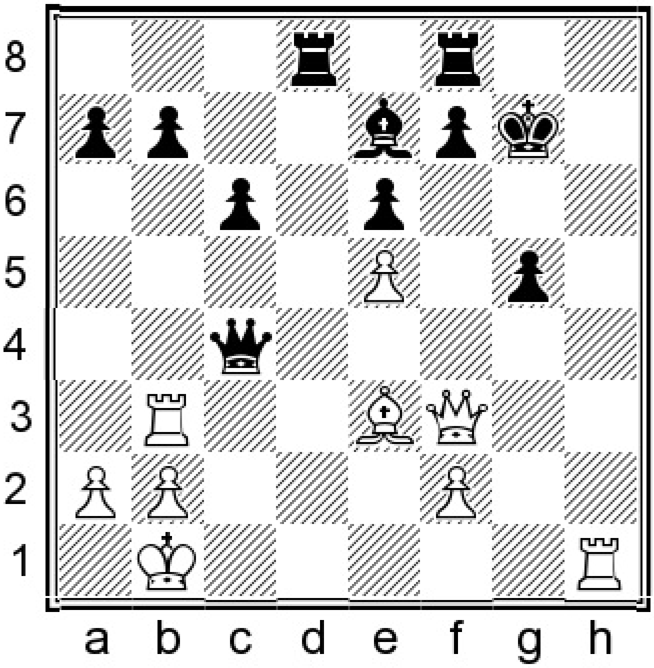
32.♔f1

But not 32.♔h1? ♕xd5+ 33.♔g1 g5 or 32.♔h2? ♕f4+ 33.♔g1 g5.

32...♘g3+ 33.♔e1!

And Black must give up the queen to avoid mate.

Manuel Apicella 2522
Christian Bauer 2589
Aix-les-Bains ch-FRA 2003 (6)

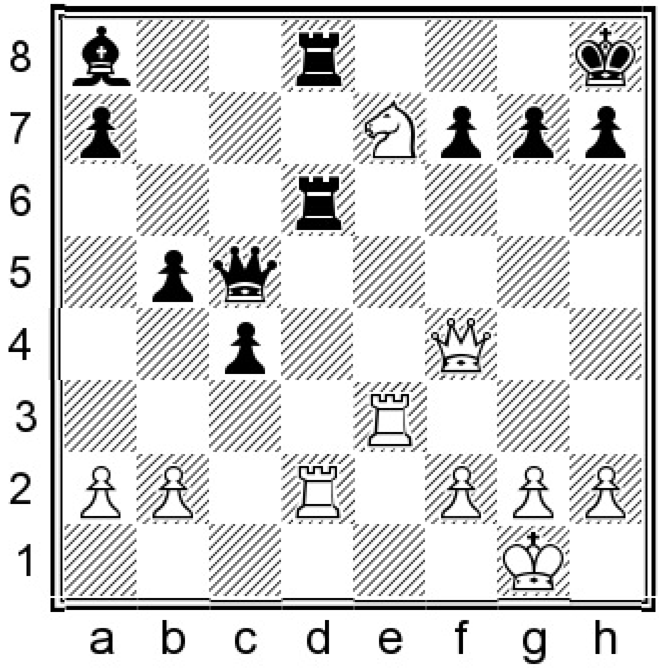


White to play

29.♗xg5! ♗xg5 30.♕f6+!!

A very beautiful finale. Black resigned (30...♗xf6 31.♖g3+ ♗g5 32.♖xg5#).

Shakhriyar Mamedyarov 2646
Artyom Timofeev 2578
Moscow 2004 (5)



White to play

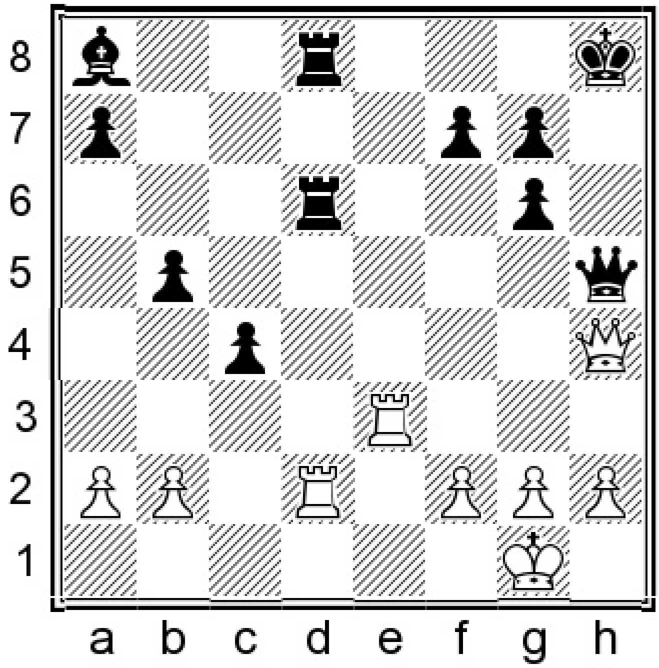
The Azeri GM carried out a lovely combination:

30.♘g6+! hxg6

30...fxg6 31.♕xd6; 30...♖xg6 31.♖xd8+.

31.♕h4+! ♕h5

31...♔g8 32.♕xd8+ ♖xd8 33.♖xd8+ ♔h7 34.♖h3+ ♕h5 35.♖xh5+ gxh5 36.♖xa8.

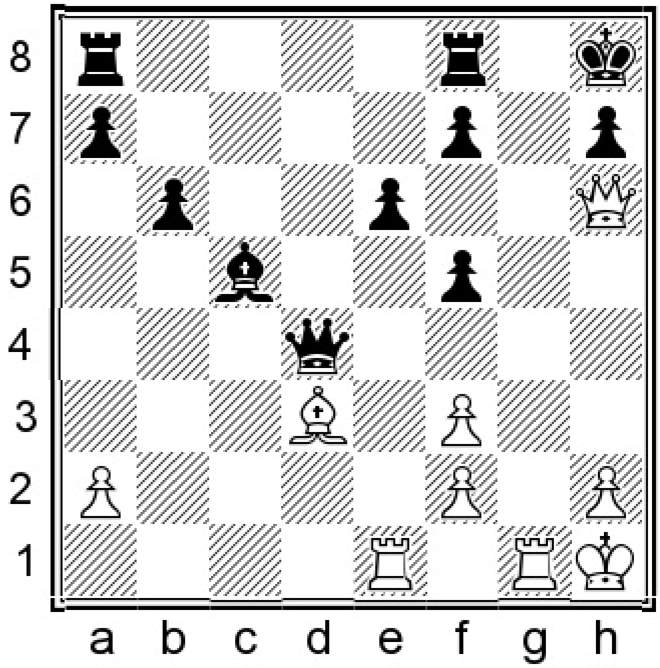


32.♕xd8+ ♖xd8 33.♖xd8+ ♔h7 34.♖ee8

If the queen were not on the same file as the king, Black could save himself with 34...g5. Now, however, this leads to the loss of a whole rook, so he resigned.

In the following example, White sets up a line mate by transferring his rook to the theatre of operations with tempo.

Elena Tomilova 2273
Marina Guseva 2349
Cheboksary ch-RUS U20 W 2006 (3)

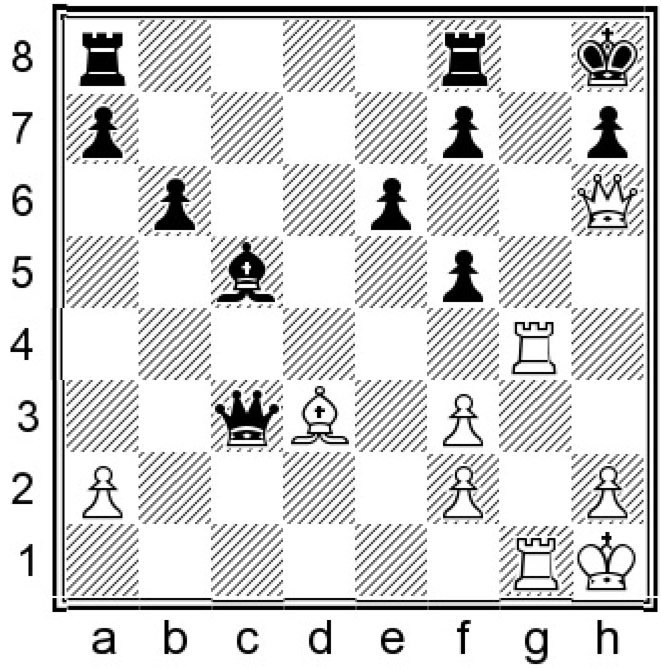


White to play

25.♖g4!

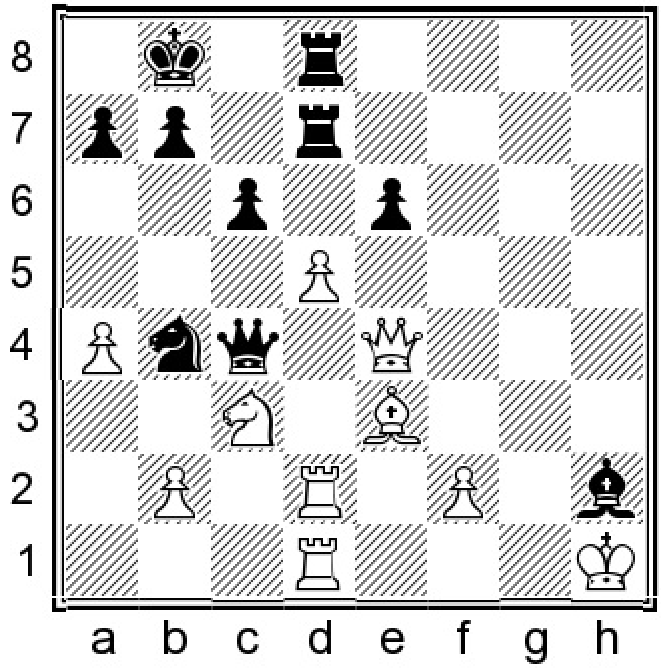
Exploiting the fact that the rook is immune (25...fxg4 26.♕xh7#), while the queen cannot leave the long diagonal because of mate on g7, White gains time to set up the mating construction.

25...♕c3 26.♖eg1!



Black resigned: she cannot meet the threat of 27.♕xh7+ ♔xh7 28.♖h4#.

Ferenc Berkes 2601
Zhang Pengxiang 2622
Taiyuan 2006 (8)



Black to play

28...♖h8!!

The magical strength of the open lines against the white king is such that Black can give up the queen for just a tempo.

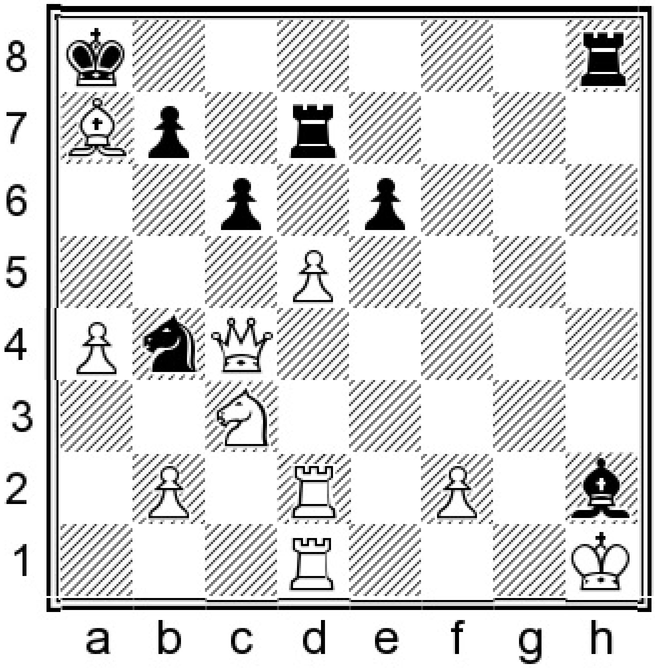
29.♗xa7+

29.♕xc4 ♖g7 30.♖d4 ♗f4#.

29...♔a8!

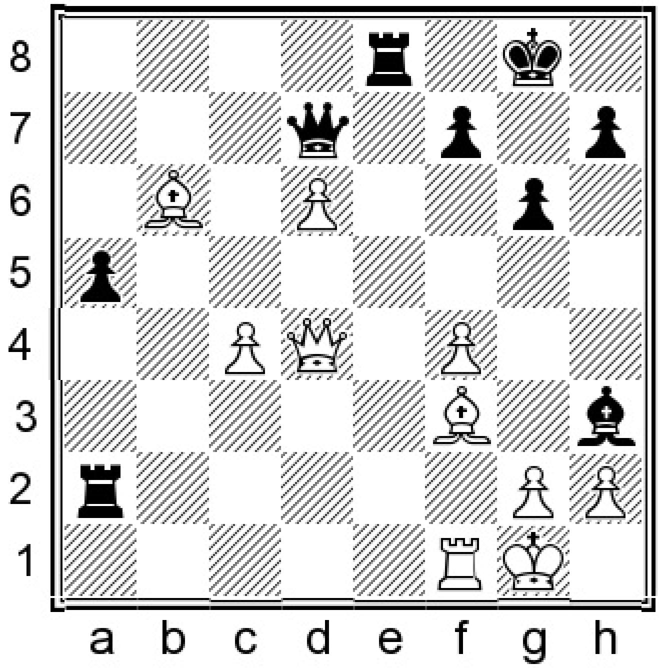
Not falling for the trap: 29...♔xa7?? 30.♕xc4, and thanks to the threat of 31.♕d4+ White emerges on top.

30.♕xc4



30...♖g7 31.♖d4 ♗f4#

Gerhard Fahnenschmidt 2166
Mark Tseitlin 2458
Bad Homburg Ech sr 2005 (2)



Black to play

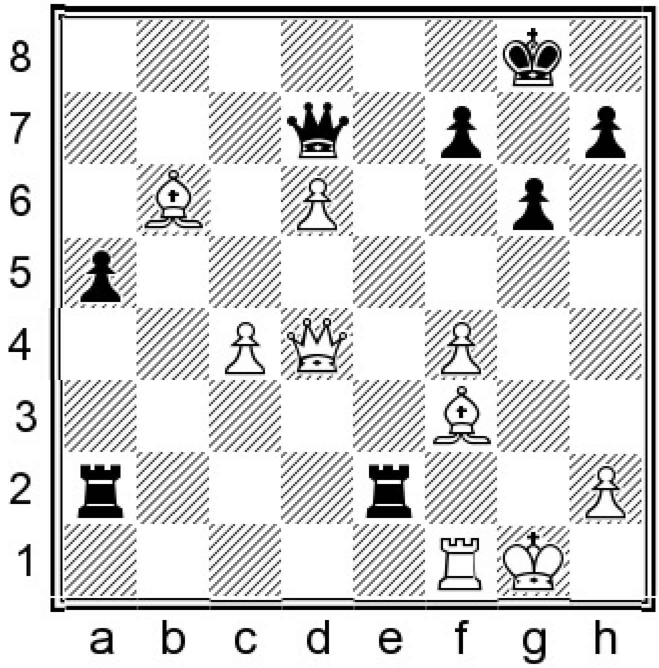
25...♗xg2!!

An accurately calculated combination. Other continuations lead to equality.

26.♗xg2 ♖ee2

Now after the bishop retreat Black has prepared 27...♕g4+. It seems that White can meet the threat with

27.♗f3



But even so:

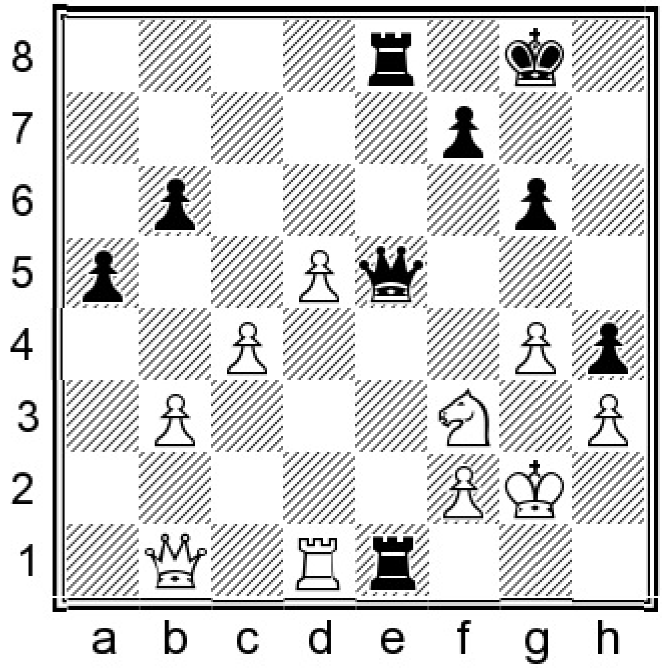
27...♕g4+! 0-1

Two rooks are sufficient for Black to give mate: 28.♗xg4 ♖g2+ 29.♔h1 ♖xh2+ 30.♔g1 ♖ag2#.

Show in Text Mode

Exercises

210

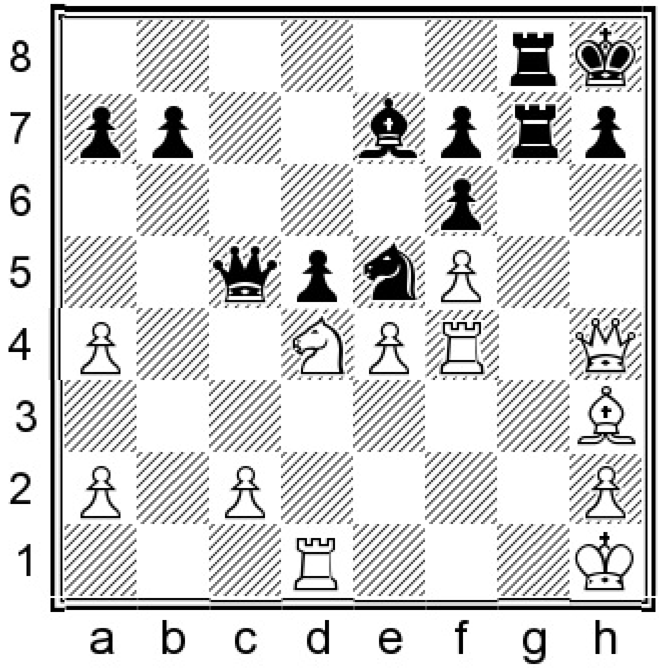


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

210 **47...♕g3+!** Moroz-Lener, Ordzhonikidze zt 2000; White resigned because of 48.fxg3 ♖8e2#.

211

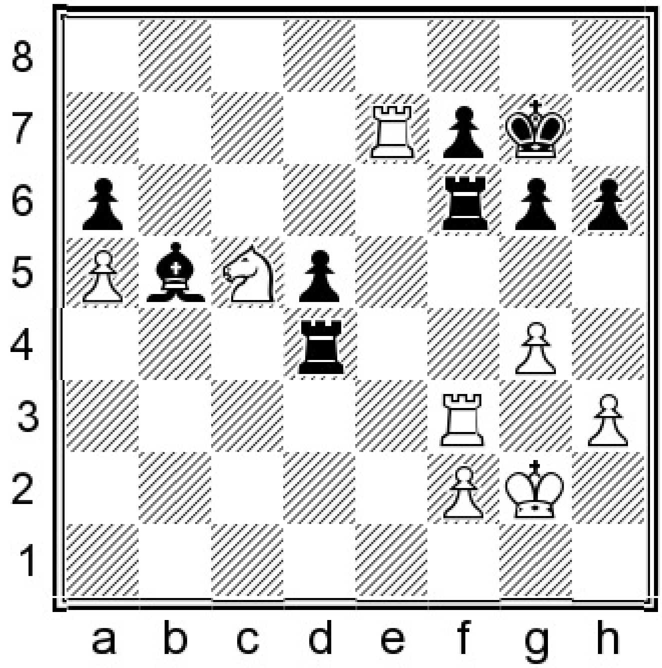

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h

Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

211 **27...♕xd4!** 0-1 Kharlov-Rublevsky, Bastia rapid 2001.

212

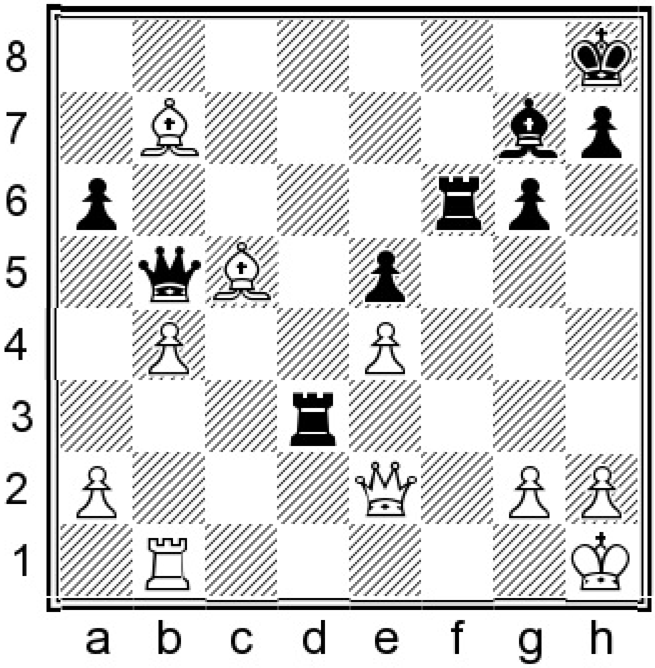


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

212 **1.♘e6+! ♖xe6 2.♖exf7+ ♔g8 3.♖f8+** 1-0 Morozevich-Ivanenko, Moscow 2001.

213

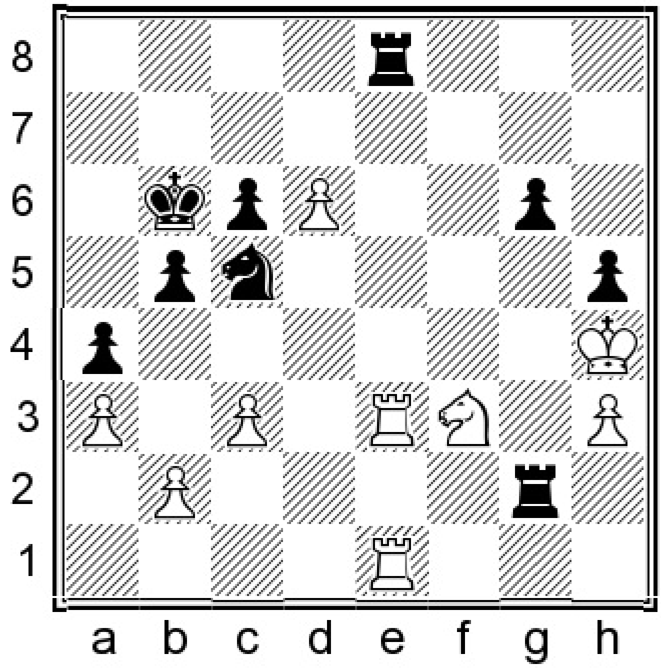


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

213 **33...♖b3!** Berkvens-Efimenko, Hengelo jr 2001; White resigned, in view of the variation 34.♖e1 (34.♕e1 ♖xb1 35.♕xb1 ♖f1+) 34...♕xe2 35.♖xe2 ♖b1+ 36.♗g1 ♖ff1 with a decisive material advantage.

214

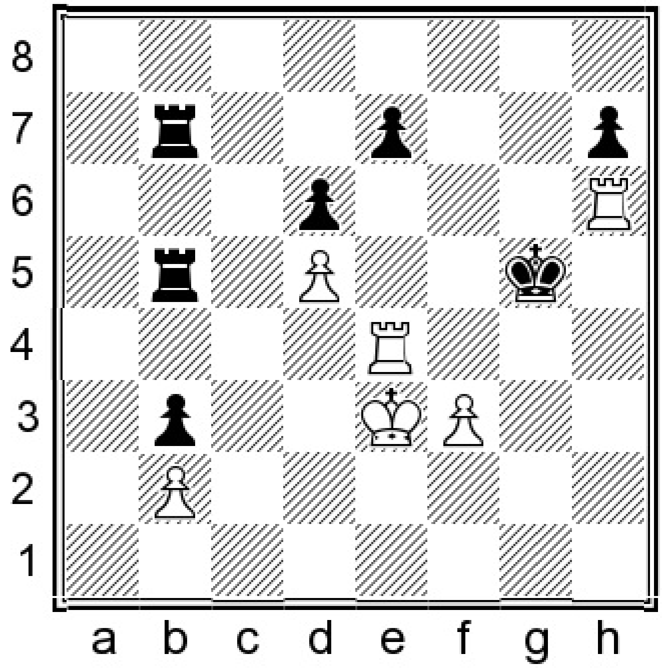


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

214 **50...♖f8!** 0-1 Moroz-Romanishin, Ordzhonikidze ch-UKR 2001; defending against the threat of 51...♖f4# will cost too much material.

215

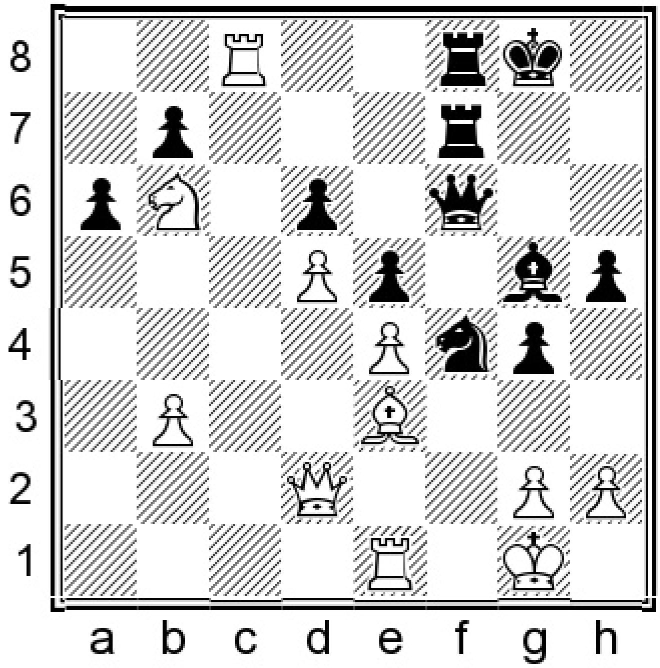

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h

White to play

Show/Hide Solution

215 **37.♖eh4!**, and mate next move; 1-0 Shirov-Topalov, Moscow Wch k.o. rapid 2001.

216

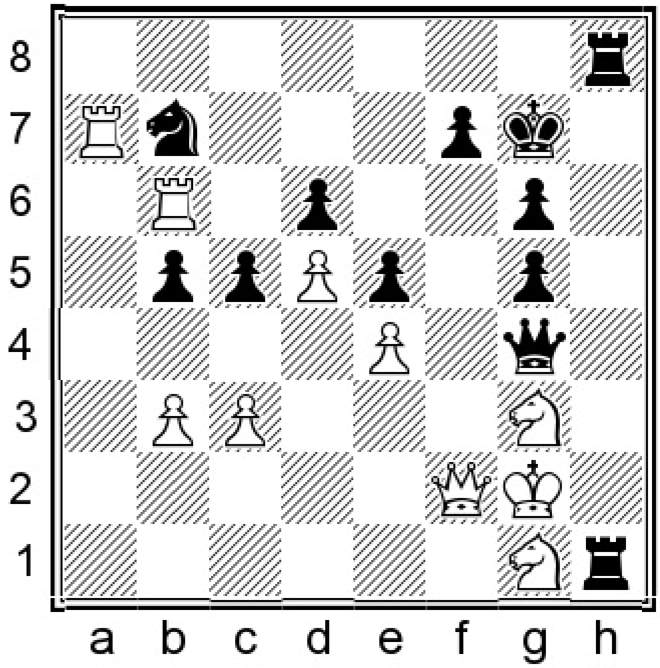


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

216 **34...♘e2+!** Sasikiran-Kasimdzhanov, Hyderabad 2002; White resigned: after 35.♕xe2 ♗xe3+ 36.♔h1 (36.♕xe3 ♕f1+!) 36...♗xb6 he loses a piece.

217

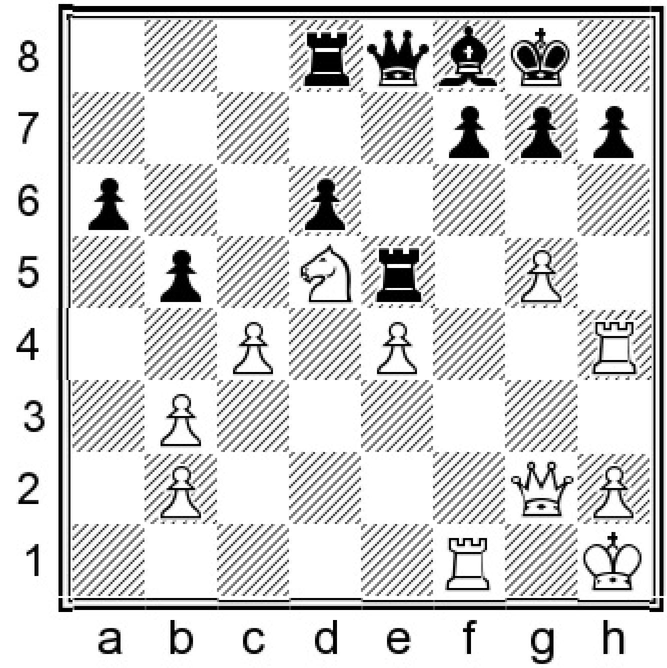


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

217 **39.♕xf7+! ♔xf7** Or 39...♔h6 40.♔xh1 ♕xg3 41.♖a2, and White is not threatened with anything. **40.♖bxb7+ ♔f6 41.♖f7#** Hort-Radulski, Hoogeveen 2002.

218

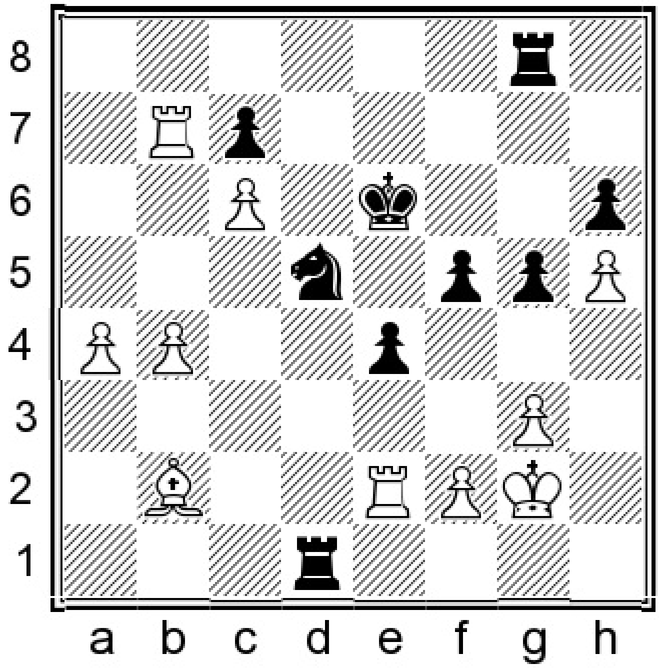

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h

White to play

Show/Hide Solution

218 **30.♘f6+! gxf6 31.gxf6+ ♔h8 32.♖g1 ♗h6 33.♖xh6 ♕g8 34.♕g7+! ♕xg7 35.♖xg7** 1-0 De Firmian-Thorhallsson, Selfoss 2003.

219

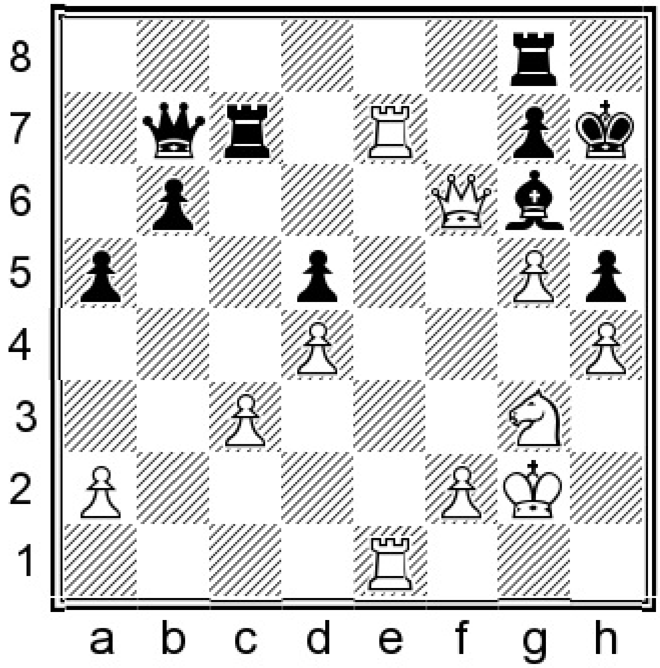

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h

Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

219 **40...♘f4+! 41.gxf4 gxf4+ 42.♔h2 f3** 0-1 Roussel-Moiseenko, Montreal 2004; 43.♖c2 ♖g2+ 44.♔h3 ♖h1#.

220

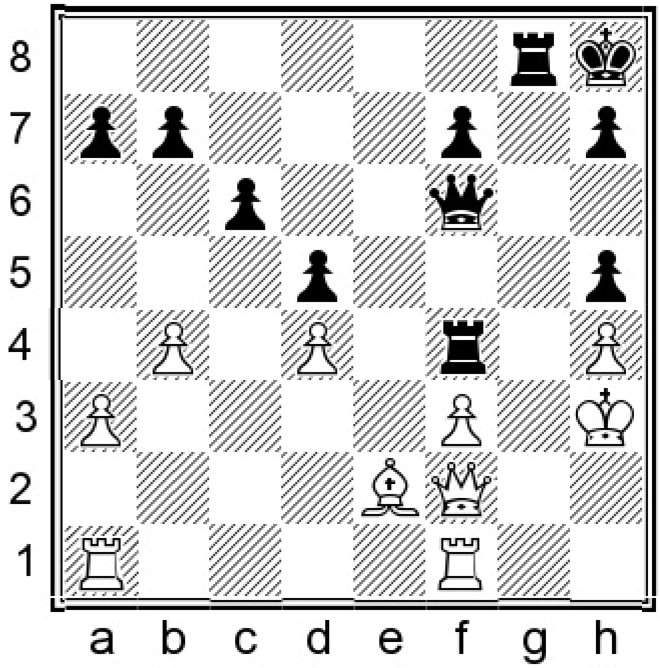


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

220 **39.♕xg6+!** Sadvakasov-Karpov, Astana m 2004; Black resigned because of 39...♔xg6 40.♖1e6+ ♔h7 41.♖h6#.

221

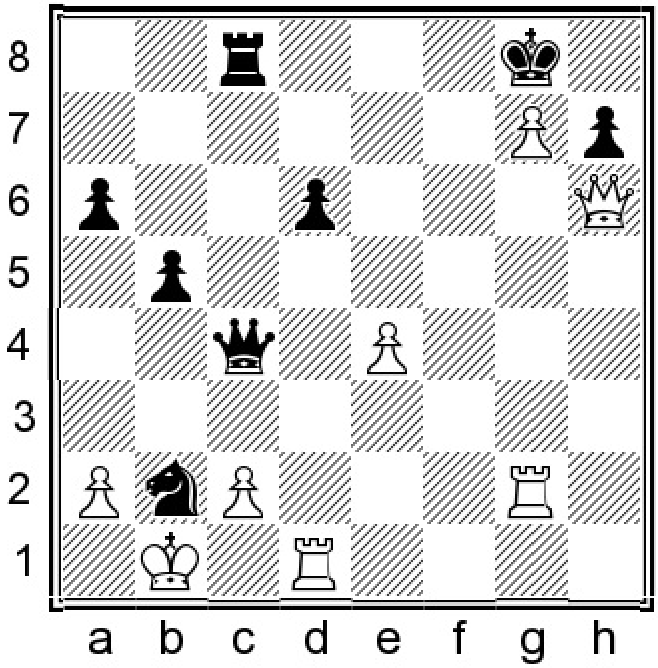


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

221 **27...♕e6+ 28.♔h2 ♕xe2!** A.Srebrnic-Sveshnikov, Slovakia tt 2004; White resigned, without waiting for 29.♕xe2 ♖xh4#.

222

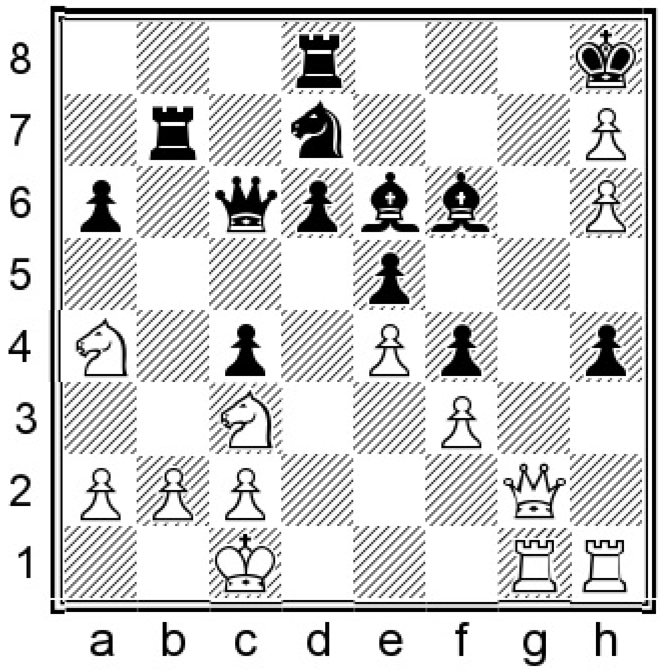

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h

White to play

Show/Hide Solution

222 **43.♕xh7+!** 1-0 Zawadzka-Kovalev, Litomysl 2004; 43...♔xh7 44.g8=♕+! ♖xg8 45.♖h1#.

223

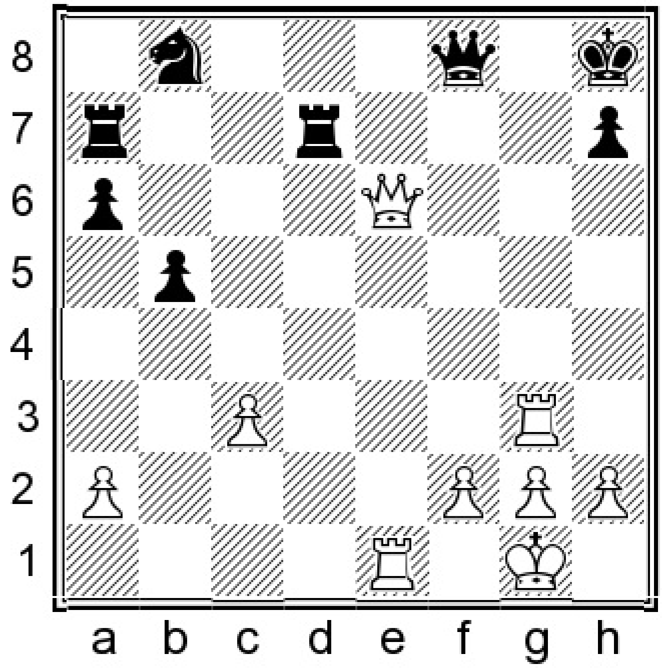


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

223 **27.♕g7+! ♗xg7 28.hxg7+ ♔xh7 29.g8=♕+** Vachier-Lagrave-Alb.David, Paris 2004; Black resigned because of 29...♖xg8 30.♖xh4#.

224

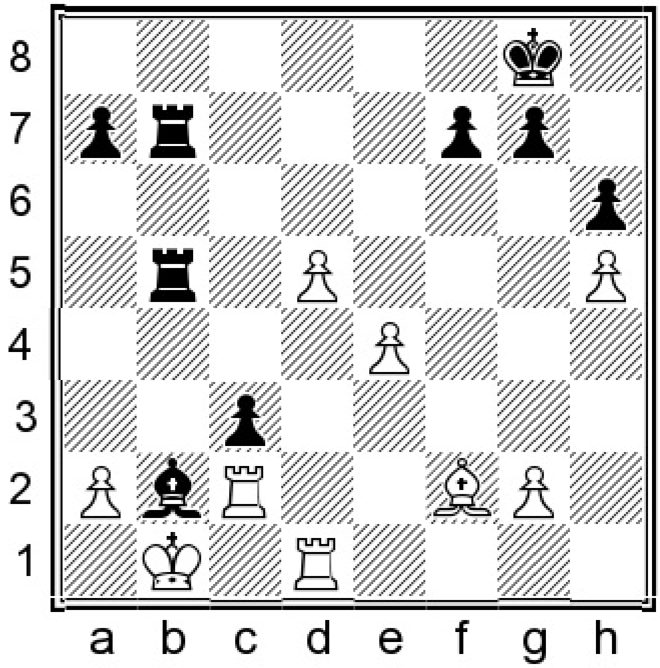


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

224 **27.♕f6+!** 1-0 Topalov-Naiditsch, Dortmund 2005.

225

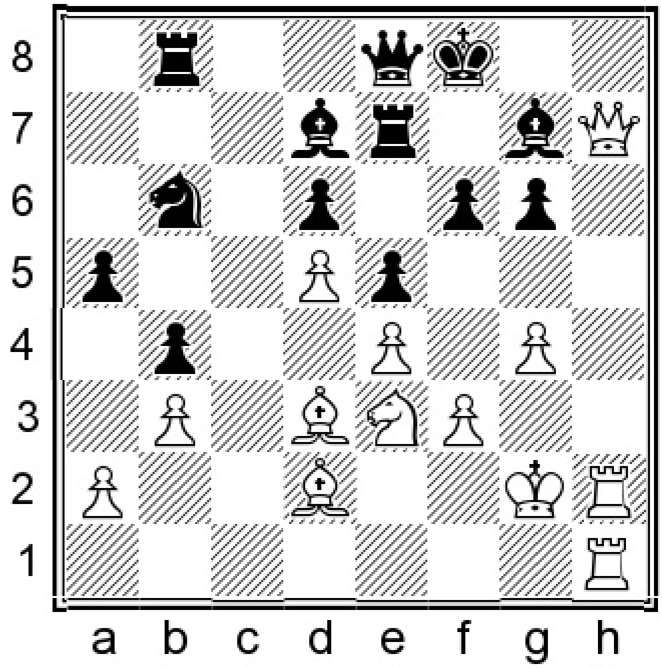


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

225 **37...♗c1+!** 0-1 Nevostrujev-Riazantsev, Kazan 2005.

226

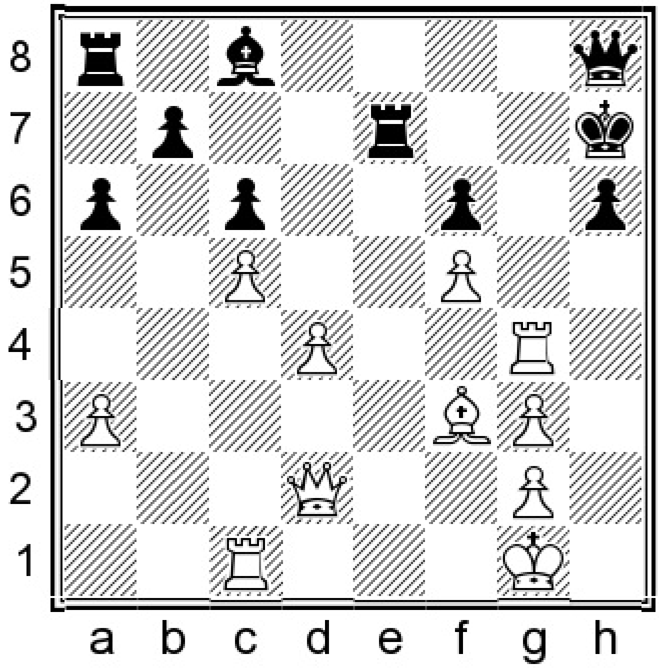


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

226 **37.♕h8+! ♔f7 38.♕xg7+ ♔xg7 39.♖h7+ ♔g8 40.♖h8+ ♔g7 41.♖1h7#** Krush-Ruxton, Gibraltar 2007.

227

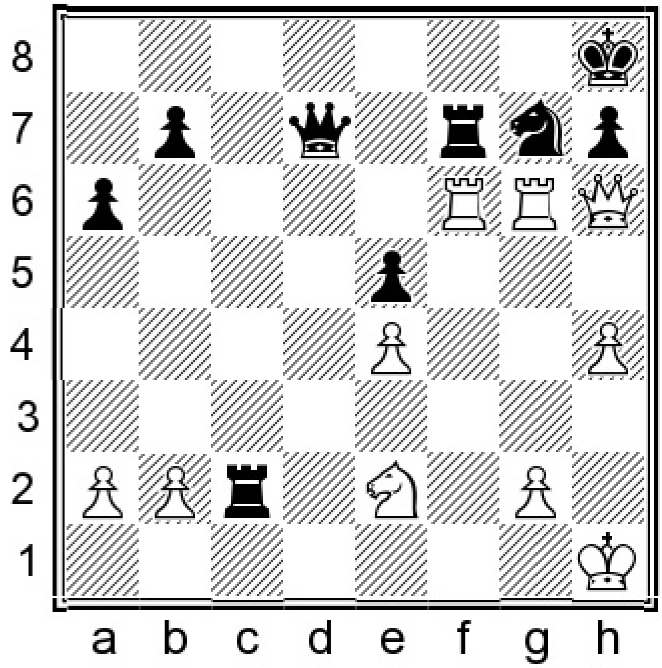


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

227 **34.♕xh6+! ♔xh6 35.♔f2** 1-0 Arutinian-O.Danielian, Cappelle-la-Grande 2007; 35...♕e8 36.♖h1+ ♕h5 37.♖g6+.

228

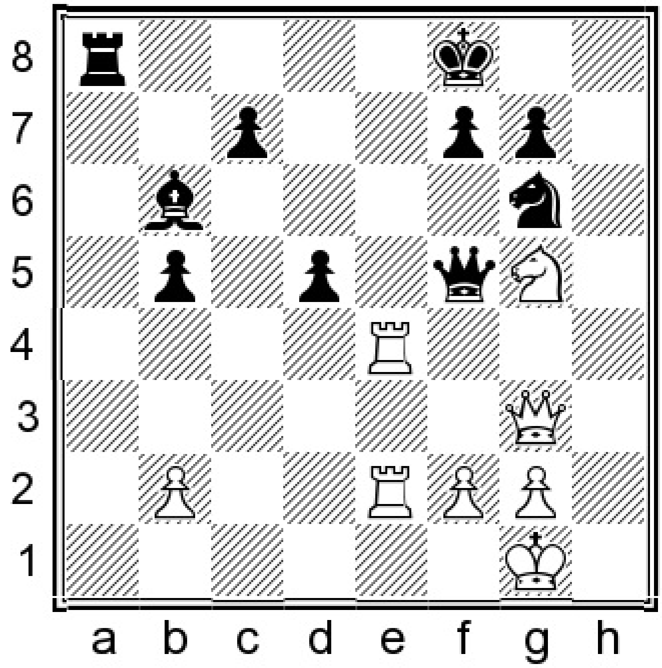


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

228 **29.♕xg7+! ♖xg7 30.♖f8+** 1-0 Andreikin-Lanin, St Petersburg ch-RUS U20 2007.

229

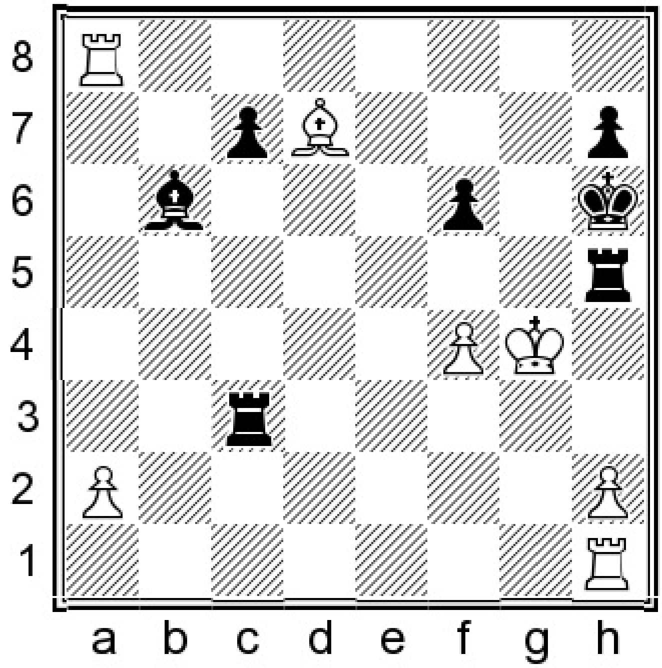

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h

White to play

Show/Hide Solution

229 **32.♕a3+!** 1-0 Jones-Hasan, Hastings 2007/08.

230

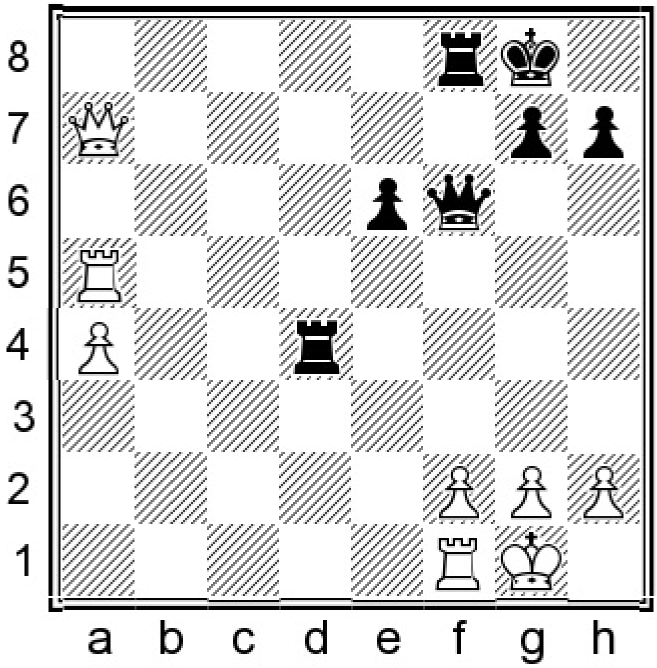


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

230 **36...♖ch3! 37.♖f8** The same move as in the game would follow after any other white move. **37...f5+** 0-1 Epstein-Batchimeg, Tulsa ch-USA 2008.

231

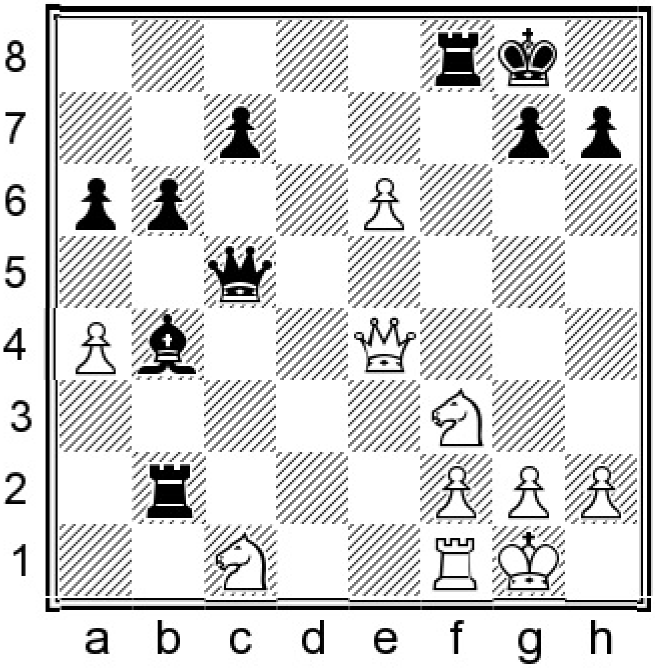


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

231 **25...♕xf2+!** 0-1 Pruijssers-Kroeze, Netherlands tt 2007/08; 26.♖xf2 ♖d1+.

232

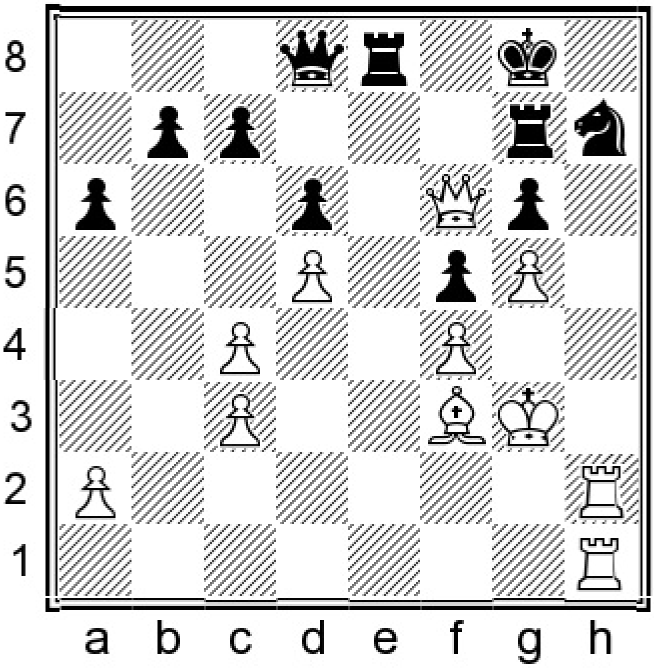


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

232 **23...♖xf2! 24.♘d3** Or 24.♖xf2 ♕xc1+ 25.♖f1 ♗c5+. **24...♖2xf3+** 0-1 I.Sokolov-Golod, Gibraltar 2009.

233

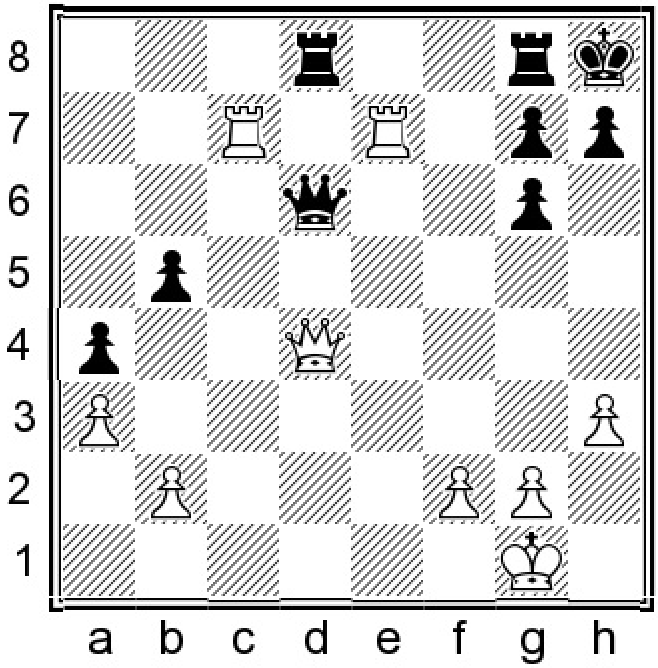


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

233 **35.♕xg7+!** Dautov-Bosman, Germany Bundesliga 2009/09; Black resigned: after 35...♔xg7 36.♖xh7+ the black king cannot escape.

234

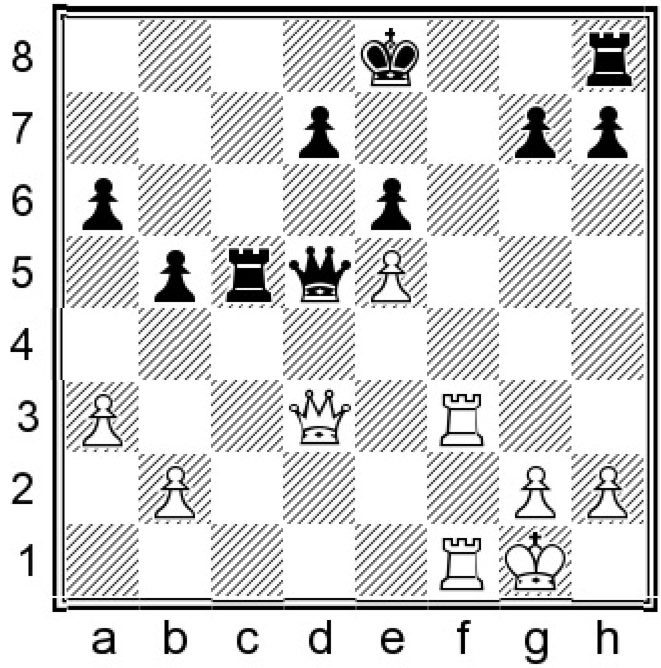

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

White to play

Show/Hide Solution

234 **33.♖xg7! ♕xc7 34.♖d7+** 1-0 Andriasyan-Nikolic, Budva Ech 2009.

235

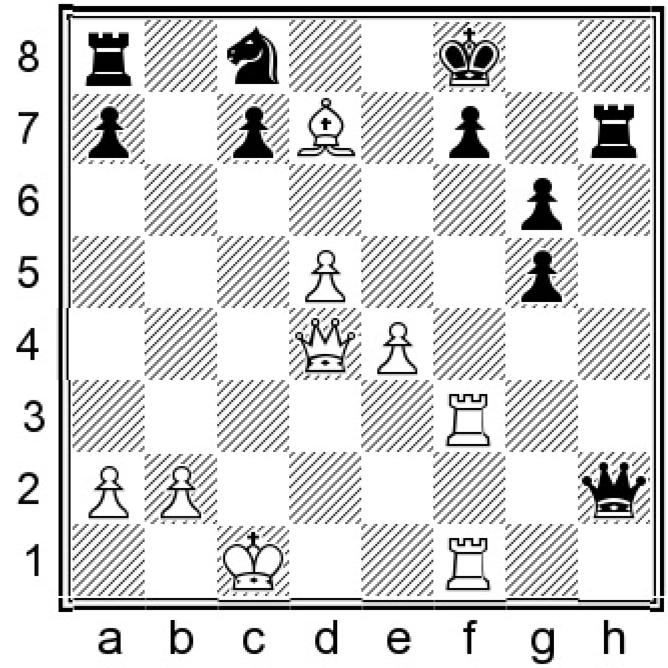


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

235 **22.♕xh7!** 1-0 Yurtaev-Safira, Sangli 2000.

236

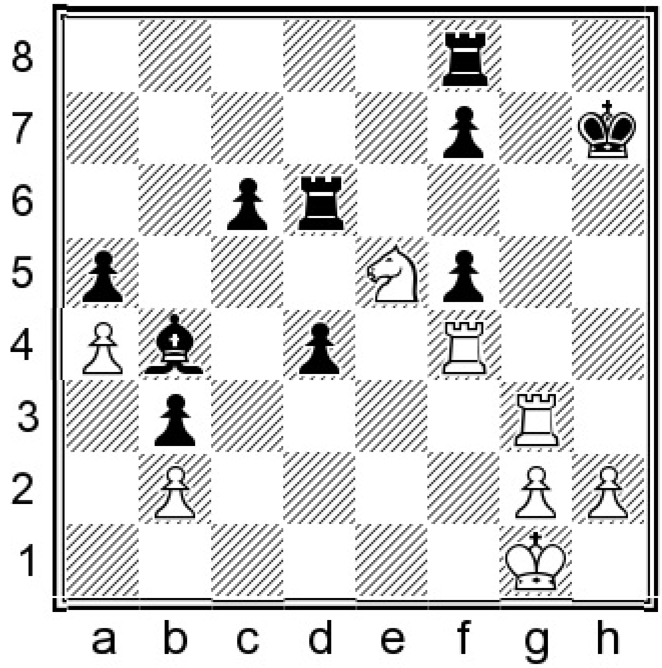


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

236 **28.♕h8+!! ♔e7** 28...♖xh8 29.♖xf7+ ♔g8 30.♖f8+ ♔g7 31.♖1f7+ ♔h6 32.♖xh8#. **29.♖xf7+** Howell-I.Sokolov, London 2009; Black resigned, seeing the forcing mating variation: 29...♖xf7 30.♕e8+ ♔d6 31.♕e6+ ♔c5 32.♕c6+ ♔d4 (32...♔b4 33.♕c3#) 33.♕c3+ ♔xe4 34.♖e1+ ♔xd5 35.♕c6+ ♔d4 36.♖e4+.

237

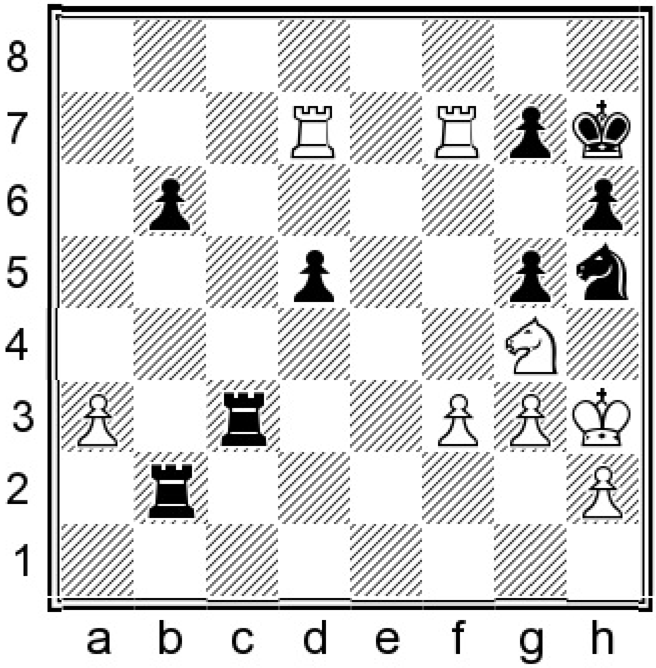


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

237 **27.♘d7! ♖d8** Rather more tenacious is 27...♖g6, although it is practically impossible to defend such an endgame at GM level. **28.♖h4+** I.Sokolov-Ib.Saric, Bosnia and Herzegovina tt 2007; Black resigned because of 28...♖h6 29.♘f6+.

238

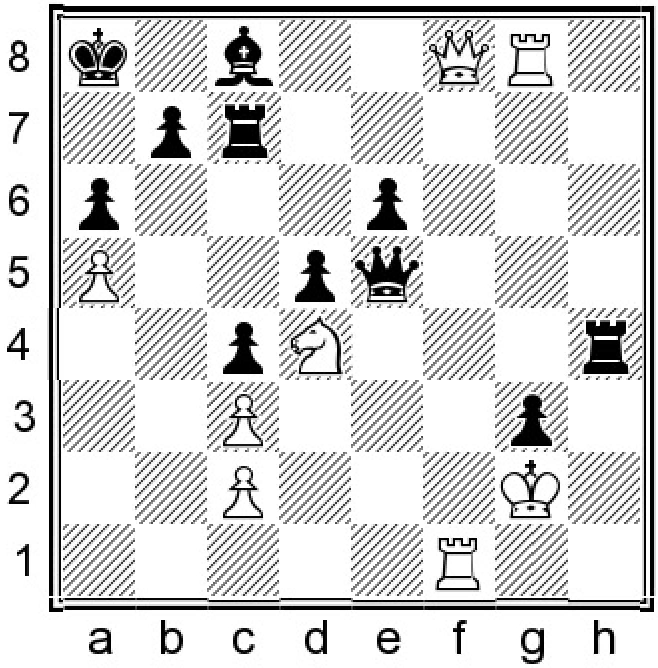

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h

Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

238 **34...♘f4+!** Cramling-Brynell, Stockholm 2009/10; White resigned, because 35.gxf4 fails to 35...♖xf3#.

239

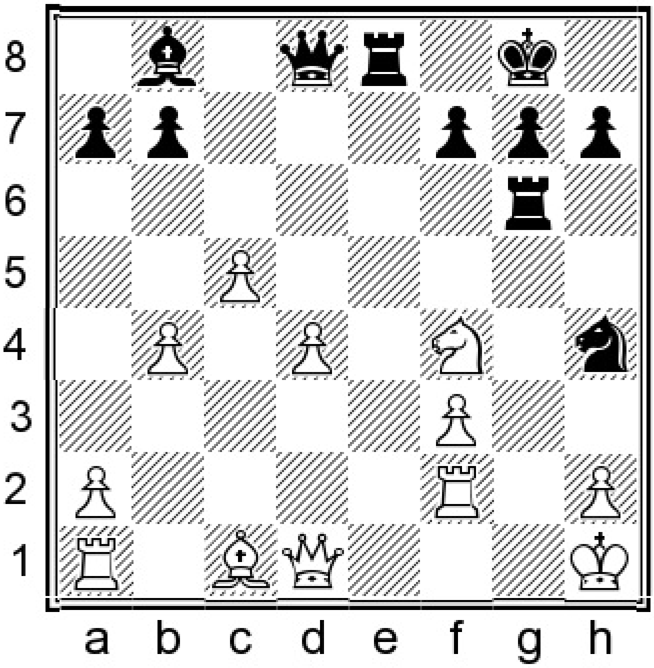


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

239 **56.♕xc8+! ♖xc8 57.♖xc8+ ♕b8** 57...♔a7 58.♘c6+ bxc6 59.♖f7+ ♕c7 60.♖fxc7#. **58.♖xb8+** White has an extra piece and won quickly in Amonatov-Gabrielian, Moscow 2010.

240

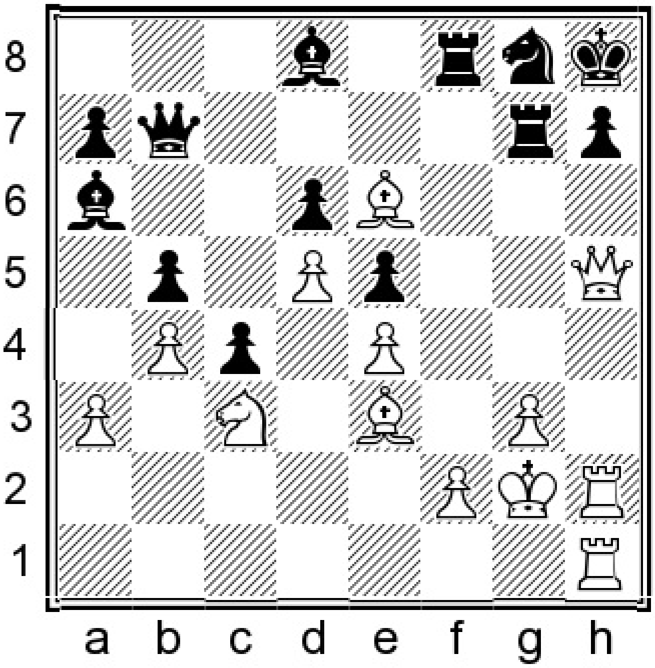


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

240 **19...♕xd4! 20.♗e3** Hopeless is 20.♕xd4 ♖e1+ or 20.♕f1 ♗xf4. **20...♕xe3 21.♖e2 ♕xf3+** 0-1 Krassowizkij-Issing, Bad Liebenzell ch-GER 2010.

241



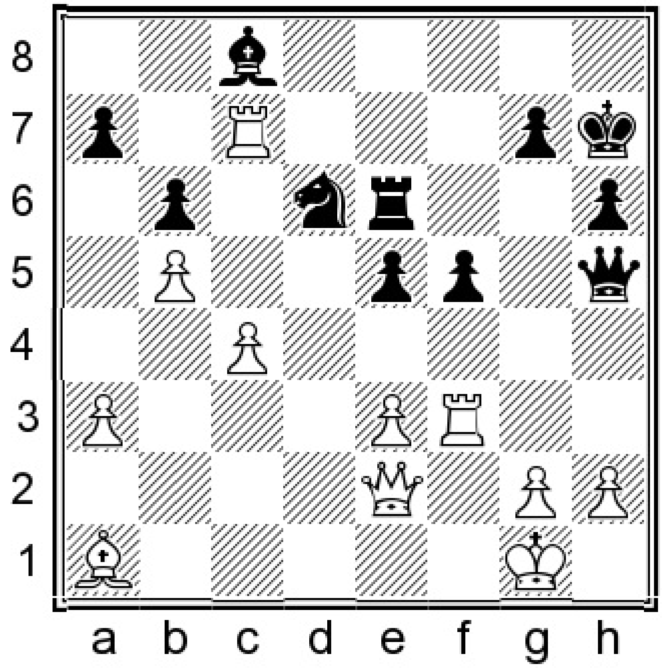
White to play

Show/Hide Solution

241 **43.♗c8!** 1-0 Zhukova-Kovanova, Rijeka Ech W 2010; Black has an unpleasant choice: give up the ♗a6 or be mated on h7.

Show in Text Mode

242

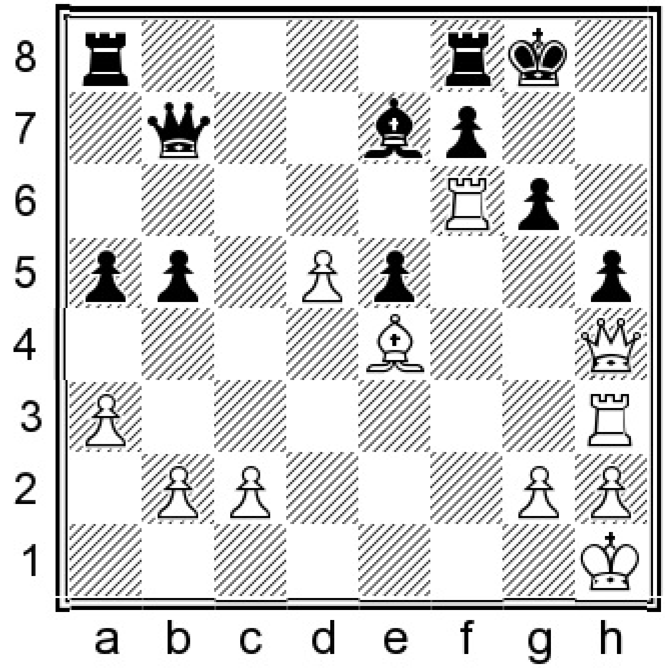


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

242 **31.♖g3!** Ding Liren-Li Shilong, Xinghua ch-CHN 2010; Black resigned, having seen 31...♕xe2 32.♖cxg7+ ♔h8 33.♖g8+ ♔h7 34.♖3g7#.

243

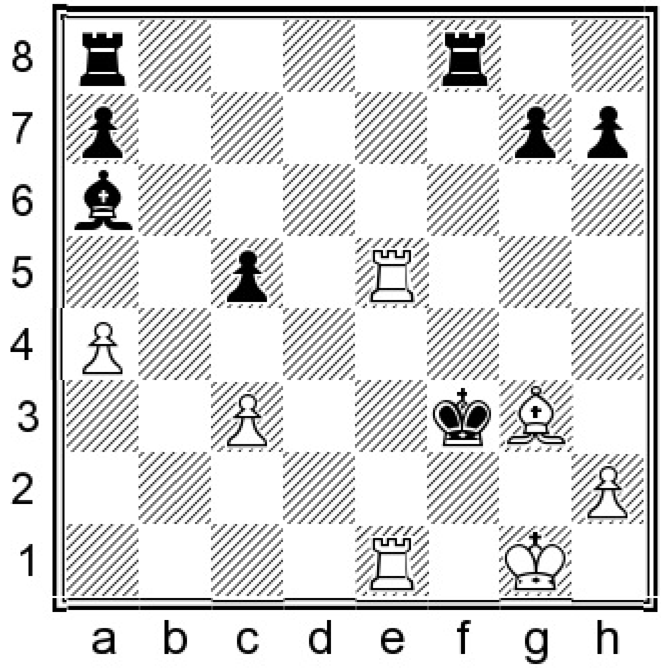


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

243 **30.♕xh5!** 1-0 Kobalia-Van Wely, Tromsø 2010; mate cannot be avoided: 30...♗xf6 31.♕h7# or 30...gxh5 31.♖g3+ ♔h8 32.♖h6#.

244

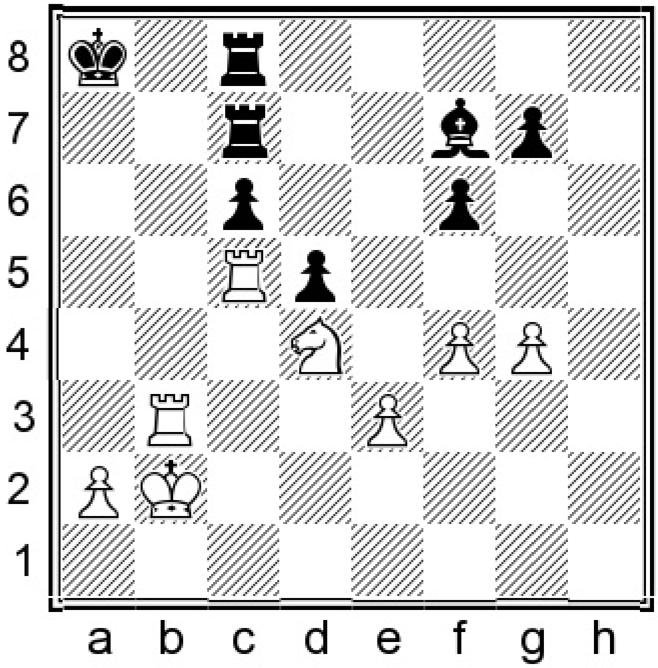

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h

White to play

Show/Hide Solution

244 **28.♖5e4!** 1-0 Guseinov-Pashikian, Khanty-Mansiysk ol 2010; he cannot stop the threat of 29.♖1e3#.

245

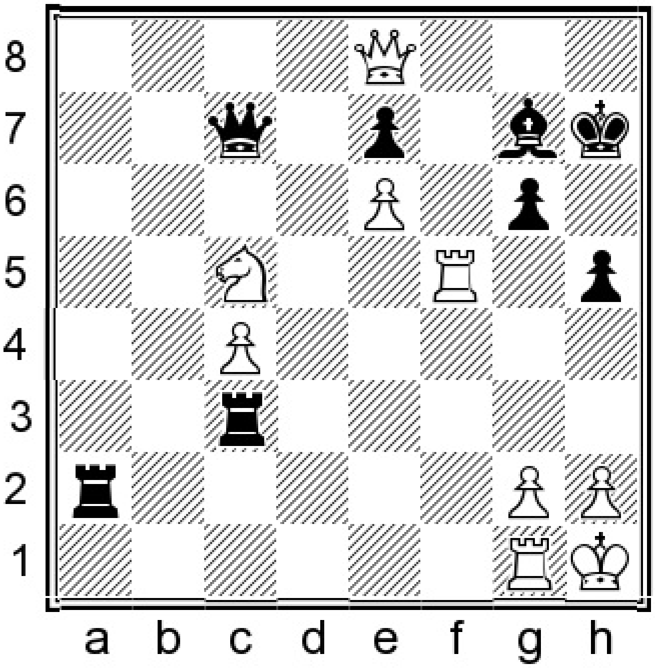

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h

White to play

Show/Hide Solution

245 **35.♘xc6! ♖a7 36.♖cb5!** 1-0 Ivanchuk-Lafuente, Gibraltar 2011; disaster strikes from b8.

246

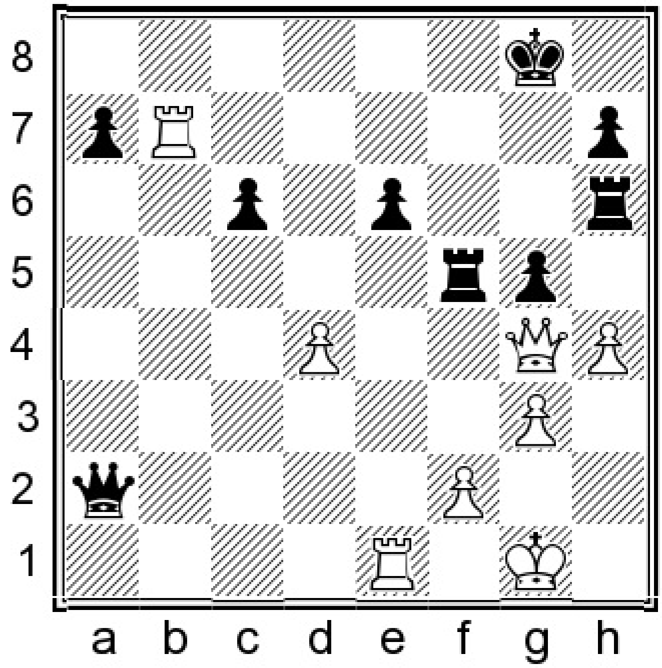


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

246 **39...♖h3!** 0-1 Liu Guanchu-Li Chao, China tt 2011; it is impossible to defend h2.

247

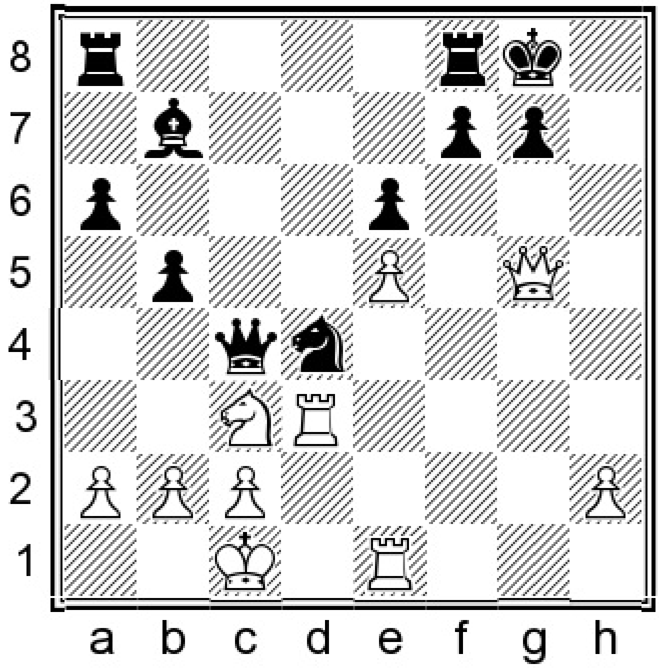

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

White to play

Show/Hide Solution

247 **32.♕xf5!** 1-0 T.Kosintseva-Stefanova, Rostov-on-Don W 2011; 32...exf5 33.♖e8#.

248

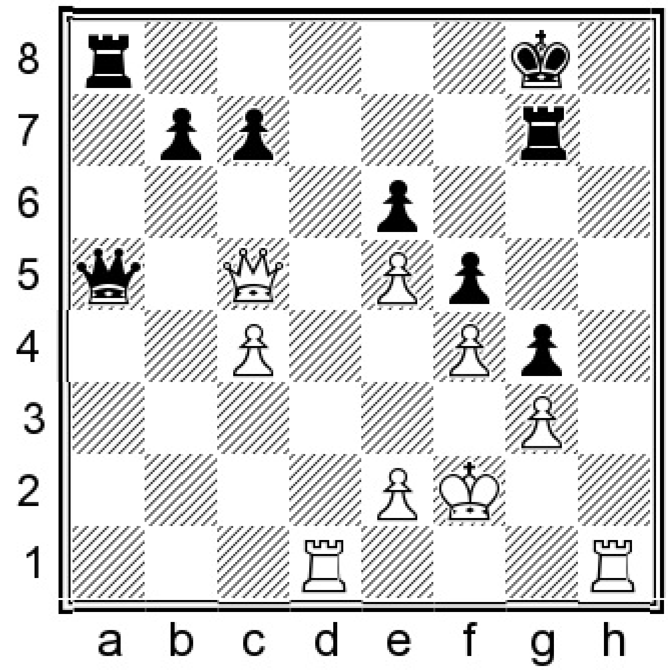


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

248 **24.♕xg7+! ♔xg7 25.♖g1+** 1-0 Huschenbeth-Atabayev, Dubai 2011; 25...♔h6 26.♖h3#.

249

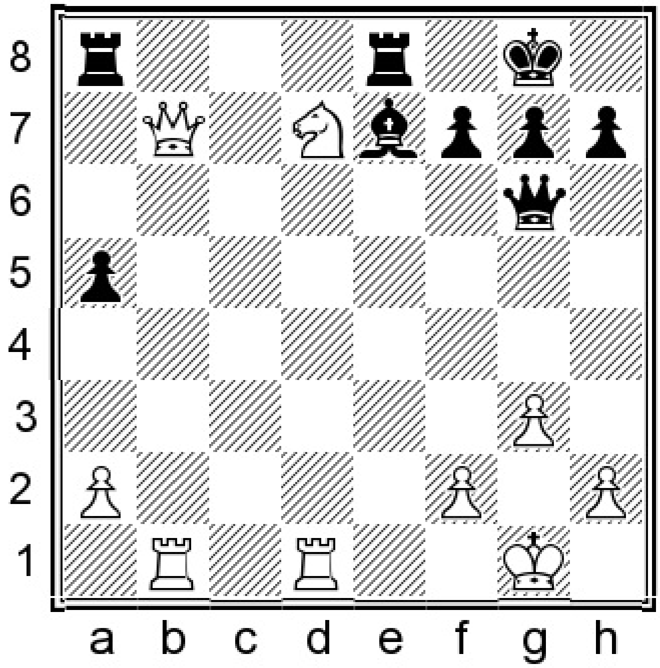


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

249 **36.♖d8+! ♔f7** Neither here nor on the following move can the rook be taken because of the loss of the queen. **37.♖f8+ ♔g6 38.♖f6#** Taylor-Rizvi, England 4NCL 2011/12.

250

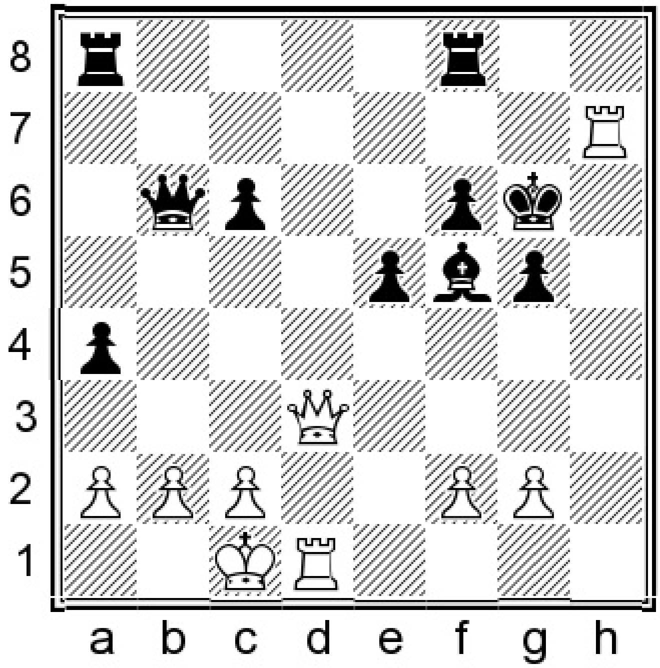


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

250 **30.♘b8!** 1-0 Uhlmann-Rodriguez Vargas, Rogaska Slatina Ech-tt sr 2012; the ♖a8 cannot be saved, because 30...♖axb8 fails to 31.♕xb8 ♖xb8 32.♖xb8+ ♗f8 33.♖dd8, and the queen cannot defend the bishop.

251

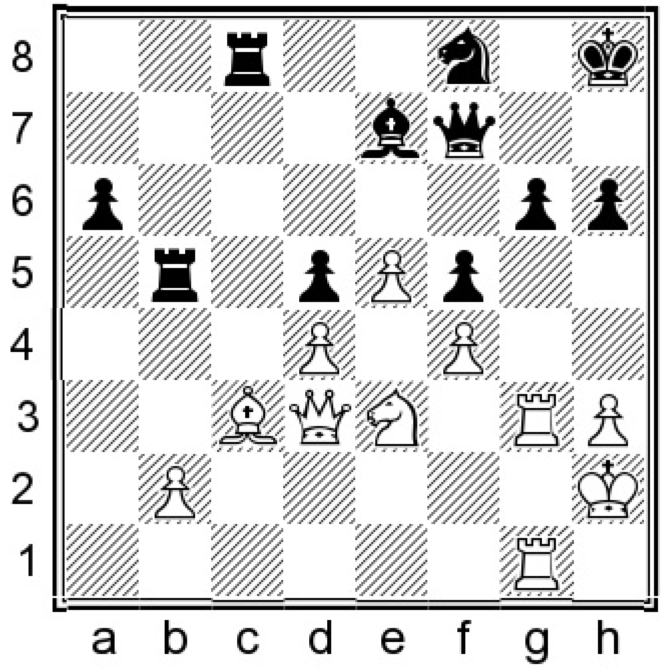

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h

White to play

Show/Hide Solution

251 **24.♖dh1!! ♗xd3 25.g4!** Ismagambetov-Wen Yang, Zaozhuang 2012; Black resigned: he cannot prevent ♖1h6#.

252

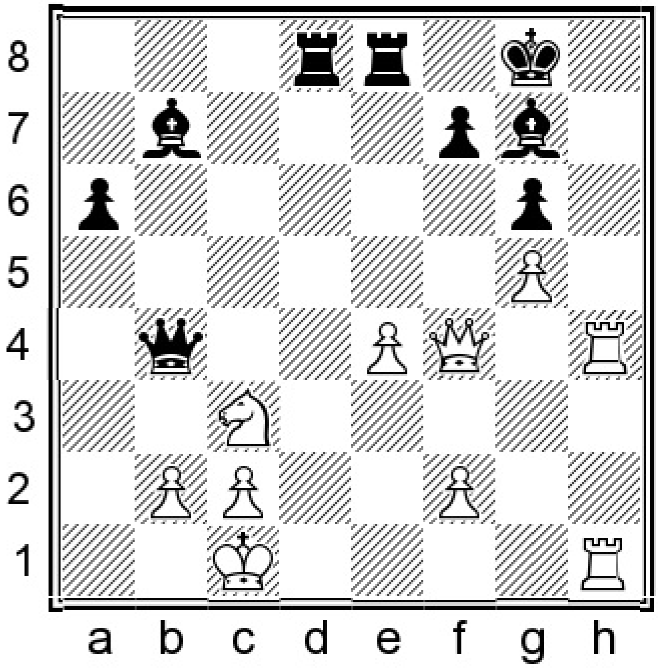


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

252 **32.♘xf5! gxf5 33.♕xf5!** 1-0 Karjakin-Grischuk, Astana Wch rapid 2012; Black can only defend against the mate and keep his queen with 33...♕e6, but then after 34.♖g8+ ♕xg8 35.♖xg8+ ♔xg8 36.♕xc8 White obtains a decisive material advantage.

253

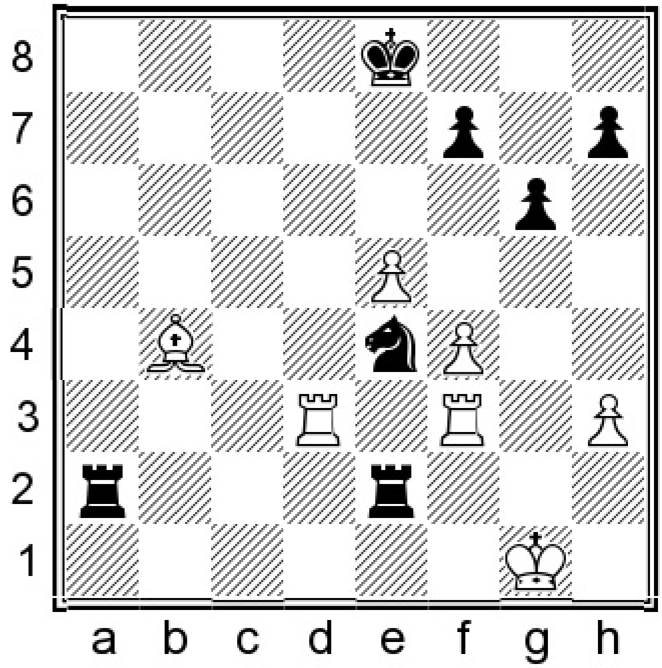

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h

White to play

Show/Hide Solution

253 **28.♕f6! ♖d1+ 29.♘xd1** 1-0 Buzeti-Janzelj, Ljubljana ch-SLO 2012.

254

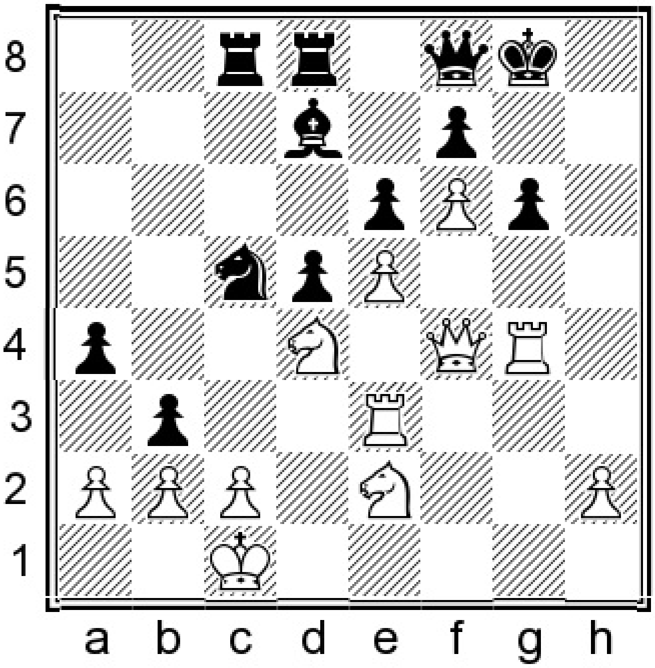


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

254 **41...♘g3!** Aagaard-Ismagambetov, Istanbul ol 2012; the threat of 42...♖g2# deflects the rook off the f-file. White resigned, because mate follows 42.♖xg3 ♖a1+, whilst the ending an exchange down after 42.♖f2 ♖xf2 43.♖xg3 ♖xf4 is completely hopeless.

255

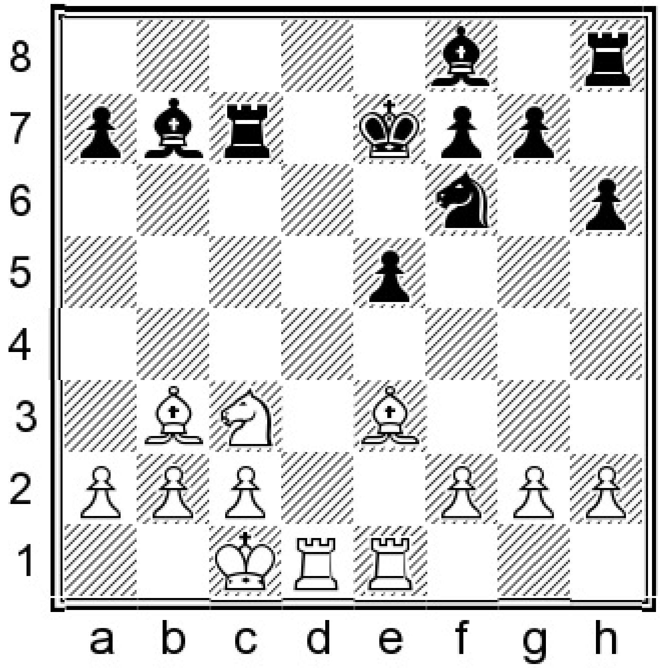


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

255 **27.♖h4! bxa2 28.♖eh3 a1=♕+ 29.♔d2 ♘e4+ 30.♕xe4 ♕b4+ 31.♘c3** 1-0 Guseinov-Bajarani, Baku 2012.

256

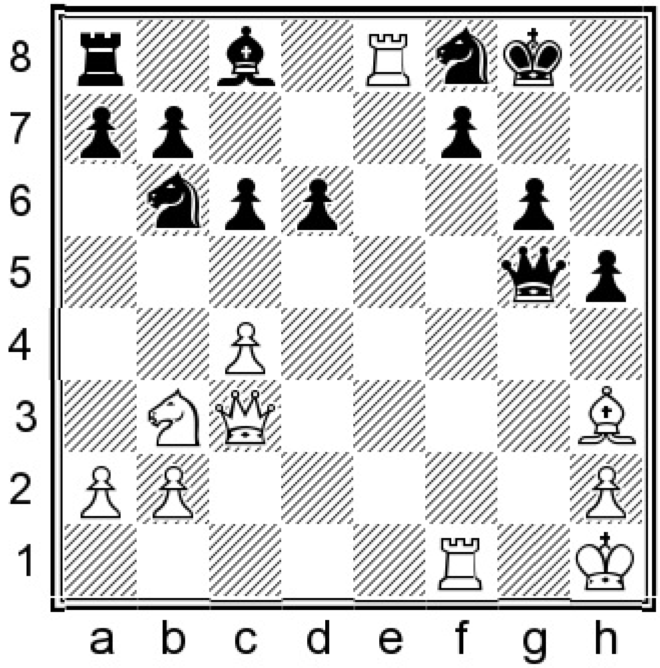


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

256 **17.♗b6!** Gieben-Djuric, Hoogeveen 2012; Black resigned because of 17...axb6 18.♖xe5#.

257

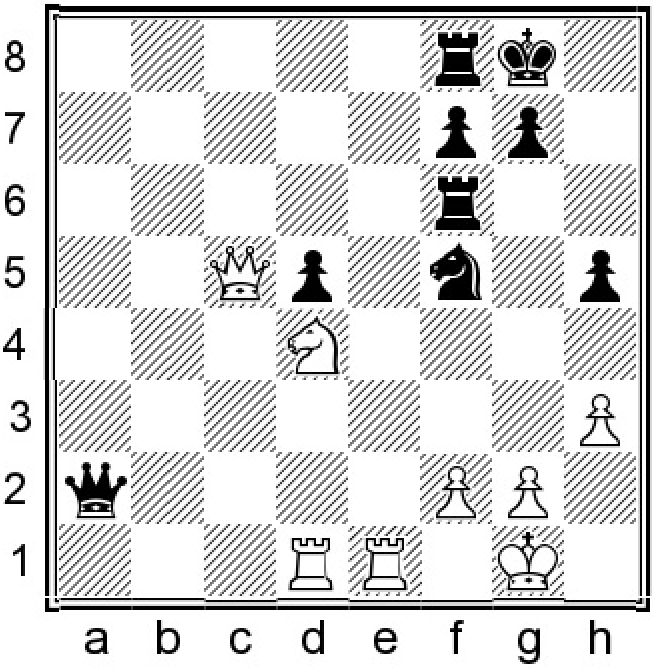


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

257 **24.♕h8+!** 1-0 Fier-Flores, Santos 2012; 24...♔xh8 25.♖xf8+ ♔g7 26.♖1xf7.

258

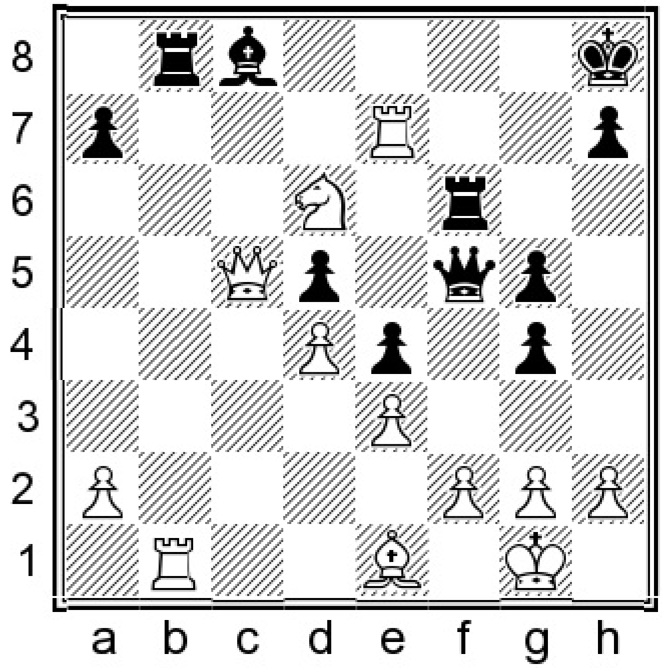

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h

White to play

Show/Hide Solution

258 **25.♖a1!** 1-0 Smirin-Dizdar Sibenik 2005; wherever the black queen goes, White gives mate after 26.♕xf8+! ♔xf8 27.♖a8+.

259

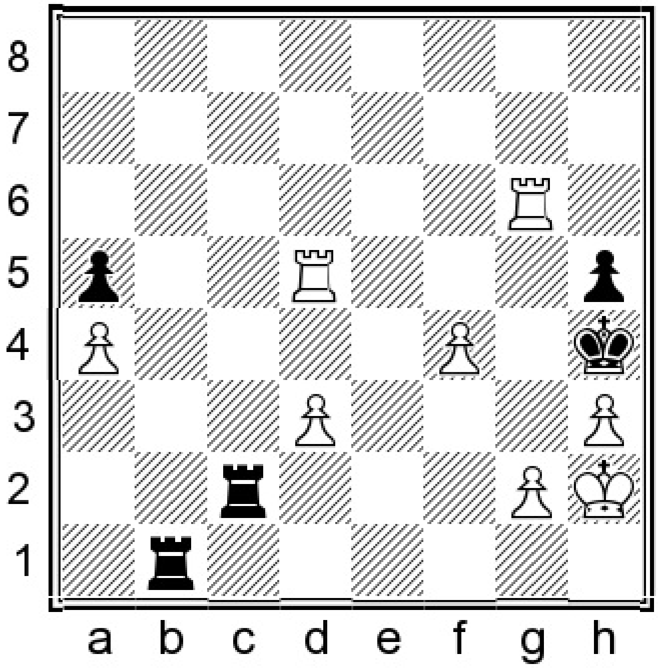


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

259 **29...♕xf2+! 30.♗xf2 ♖xb1+** 0-1 Baraeva-Dogodkina, Russia tt W 2013.

260



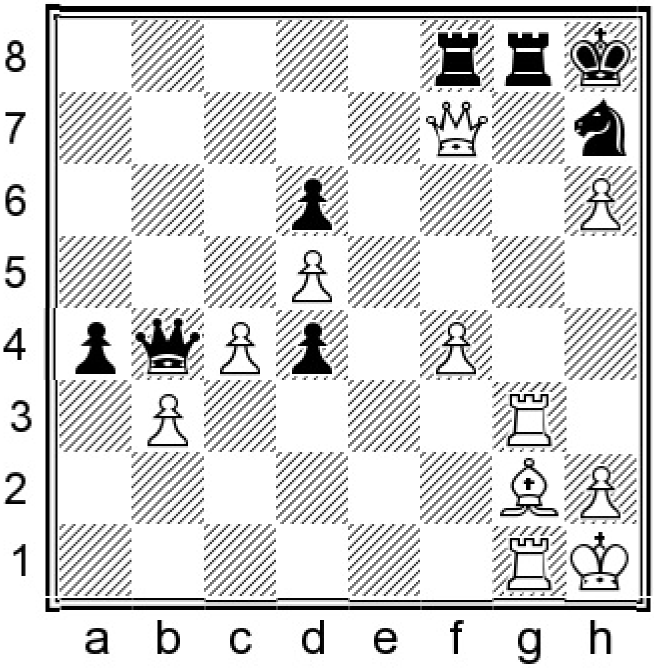
White to play

Show/Hide Solution

260 **39.♖h6** 1-0 A.Muzychuk-Dzagnidze, Dilijan W 2013;

but 39.♖gg5?? would be a serious mistake because of 39...♖h1+! 40.♔xh1 ♖c1+ 41.♔h2 ♖h1+ and stalemate.

261

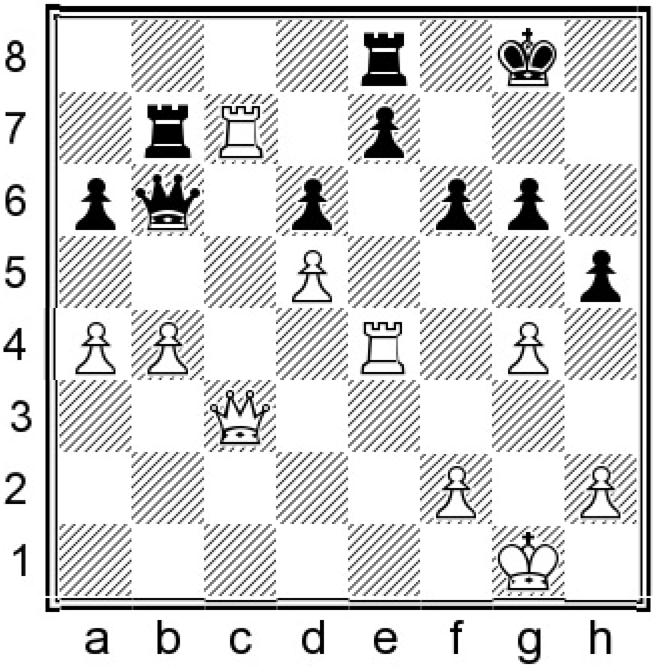

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h

White to play

Show/Hide Solution

261 **40.♗e4!** 1-0 Bok-Bitalzadeh, Haarlem 2013; 40...♘f6 41.♕xf6+.

262

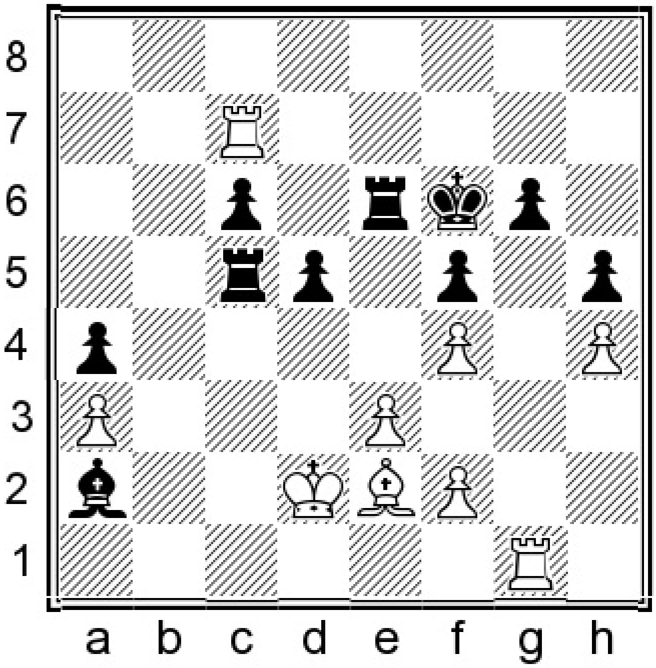

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h

White to play

Show/Hide Solution

262 **26.♕xf6!** 1-0 Bacrot-Giri Germany Bundesliga 2013/14; White cannot avoid mate after 26...♖xc7 27.♕xg6+ ♔h8 (27...♔f8 28.♖f4#) 28.♕xe8+ ♔g7 29.♖e6.

263

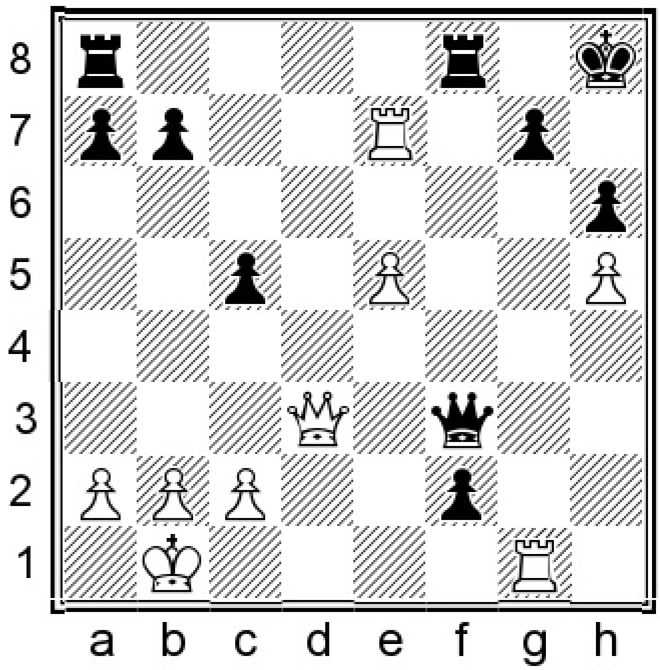


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

263 **57.♗xh5! gxh5 58.♖cg7 ♖e7** Other moves also lose. **59.♖1g6#** Peng Zhaoqin-T.Burg, Groningen 2013.

264

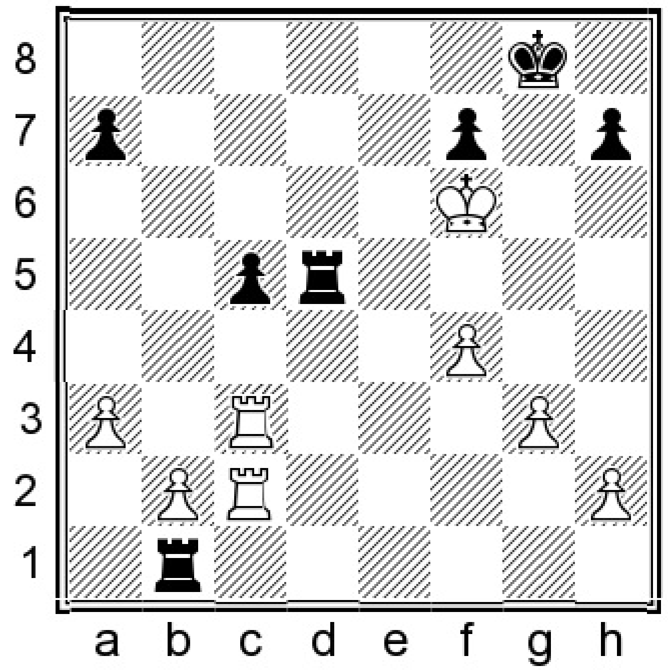

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h

White to play

Show/Hide Solution

264 **27.♕h7+! ♔xh7 28.♖gxg7+ ♔h8 29.♖h7+ ♔g8 30.♖eg7#** McShane-J.Gustavsson, Kuppenheim blitz 2003.

265

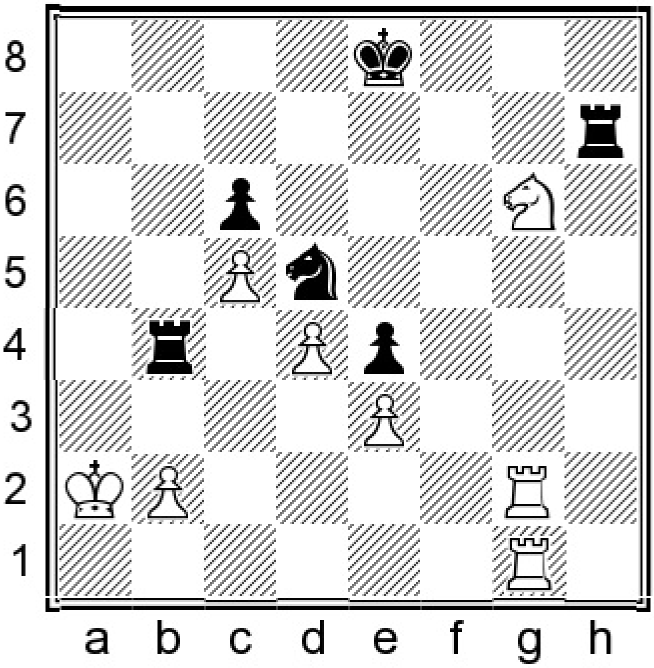


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

265 **35...♖e1!** Threatening mate on e6. **36.f5 h6!** Covering the escape on g5. Now mate is threatened from d6: 0-1 Akesson-Bagheri, Belgium tt 2004/05.

266

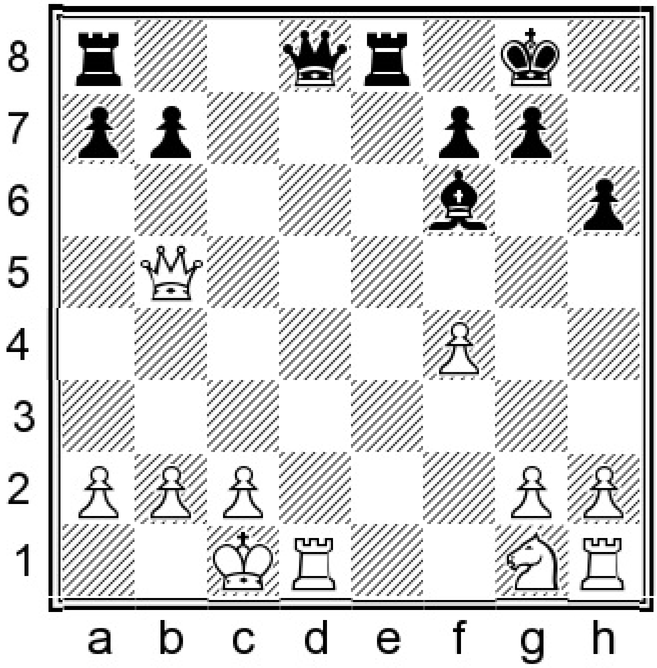


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

266 **41...♘c3+! 42.♔a3 ♖hb7! 43.bxc3 ♖4b5** 0-1 Gvilava-Polivanov, Moscow 2007; 44.♔a4 ♖a7#.

267

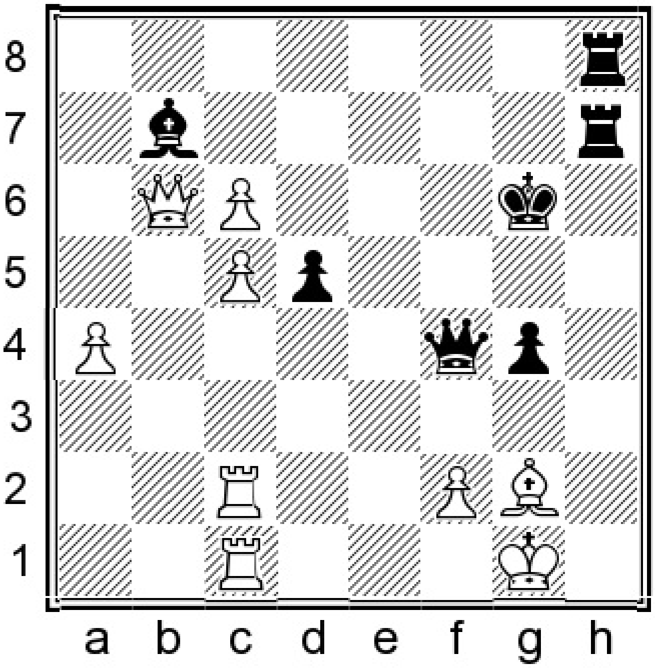


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

267 **17...♗xb2+! 18.♕xb2 ♕xd1+** Schmitz-Lomineishvili, Bad Wiessee 2000; White resigned: he can only stop mate after 19.♔xd1 ♖ad8+ at the cost of the queen (20.♕d4).

268

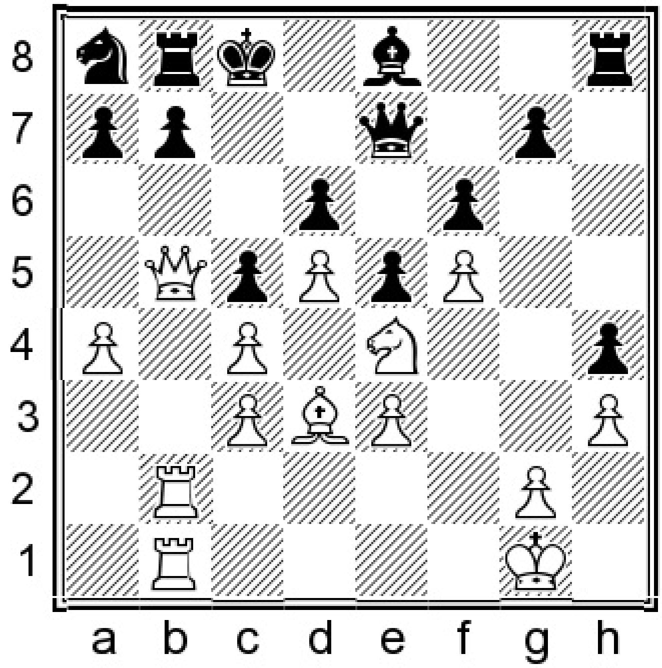


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

268 **42...♕f3!! 43.cxb7+ ♔f5** 0-1 Kramnik-Anand, Nice rapid 2008; the extra queen cannot save White from mate after 44.♗xf3 gxf3.

269

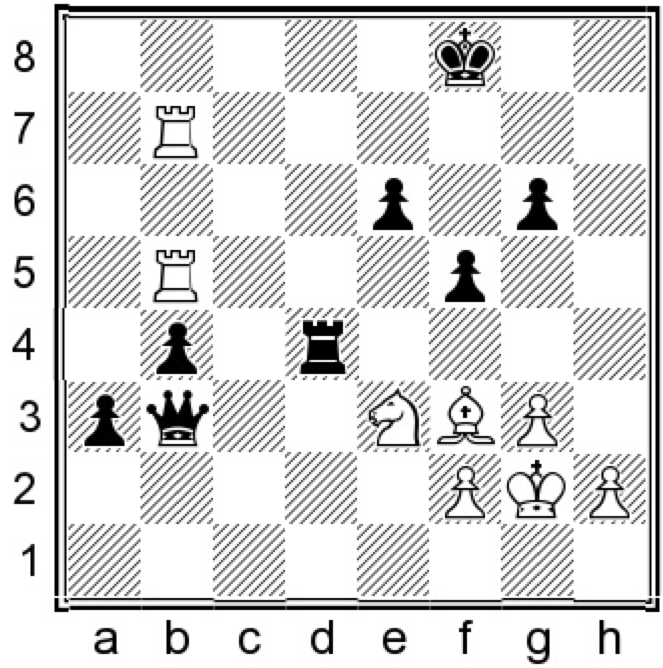


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

269 **24.♕a6!** 1-0 Neverov-Reinwald, Rijeka Ech 2010; 24...bxa6 25.♖xb8+ ♔d7 26.♖xa8 is bad, as to save himself from mate Black has to play 26...♕d8, accepting serious material losses. At the same time, he can only meet the threat against d6 by a king move (leaving pawn b7 undefended), or by 24...♘b6, but after 25.♕xa7 ♘xa4 26.♖xb7! ♖xb7 27.♖xb7 ♕xb7 28.♘xd6+ White then wins anyway.

270



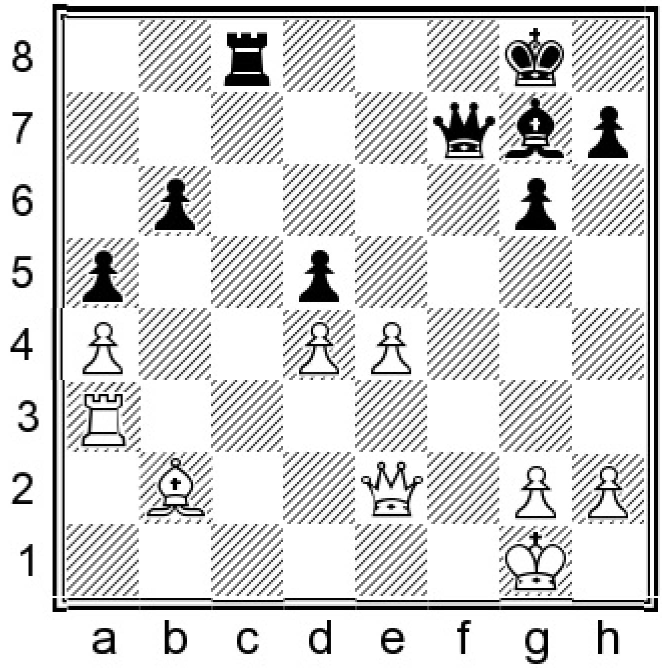
White to play

Show/Hide Solution

270 White would like to give a line mate after cutting off the king, but the rook can come to assist. Therefore, we must shut off its return home: **43.♘d5!** 0-1 Topalov-Iturrizaga, Istanbul ol 2012; 43...exd5 44.♖a5 or 43...♕c2 44.♖b8+ ♔g7 45.♖5b7+ ♔h6 46.♖h8+ ♔g5 47.h4+.

If 43.♗d5? exd5 44.♖a5 Black is saved by 44...♖e4!.

271

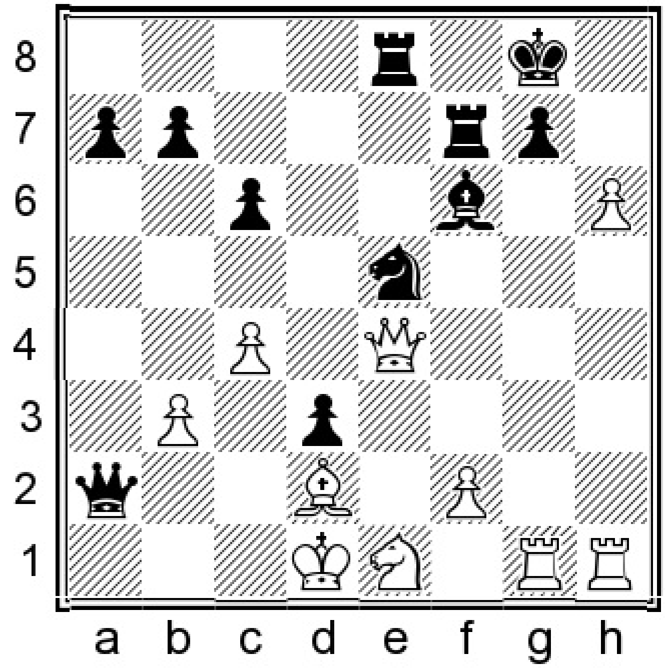


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

271 **26...♗xd4+!** 0-1 Jakubauskas-Baburin, Dublin 2005.

272

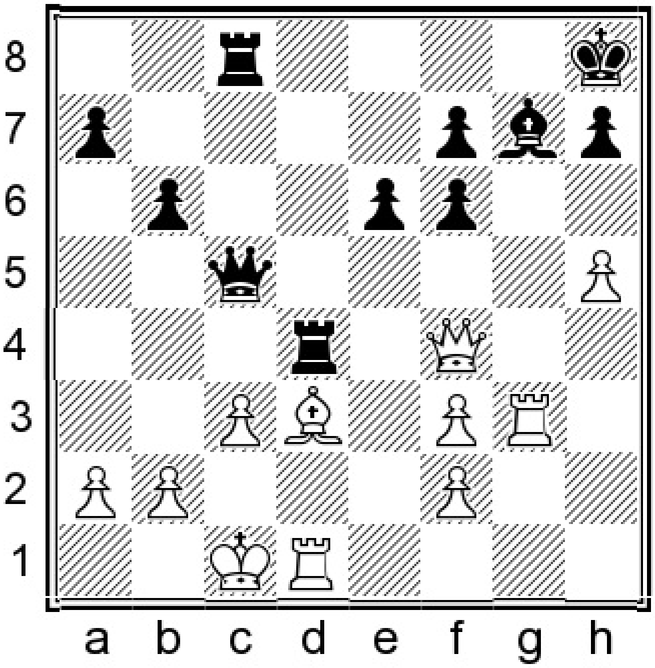


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

272 **31.♕h7+!!** Bacrot-Leko, Elista 2008; Black resigned because of 31...♔xh7 (31...♔f8 32.♗b4+, and after the blockade of the e7-square – 33.♕h8#) 32.hxg7+ ♔g8 33.♖h8#.

273


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h

White to play

Show/Hide Solution

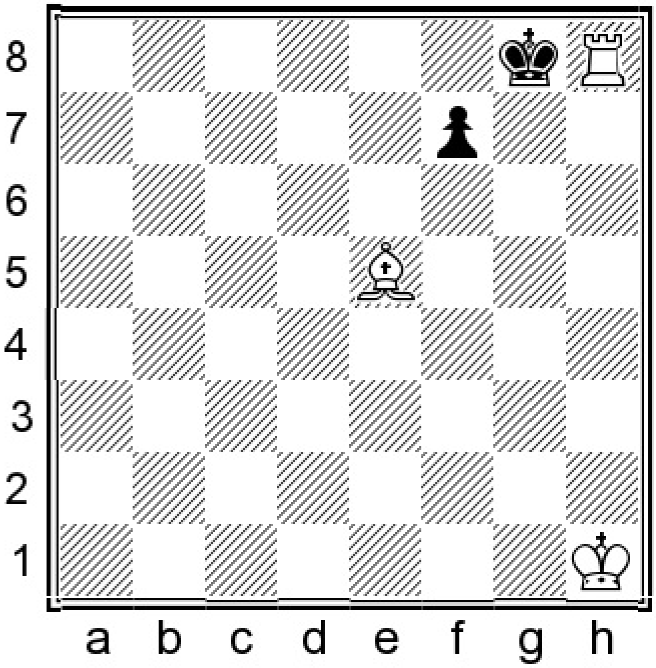
273 **24.h6! ♖xf4 25.hxg7+ ♔g8 26.♗xh7+! ♔xh7 27.♖h1+** 1-0 Y.Vovk-Lasschuit, Vlissingen 2009.

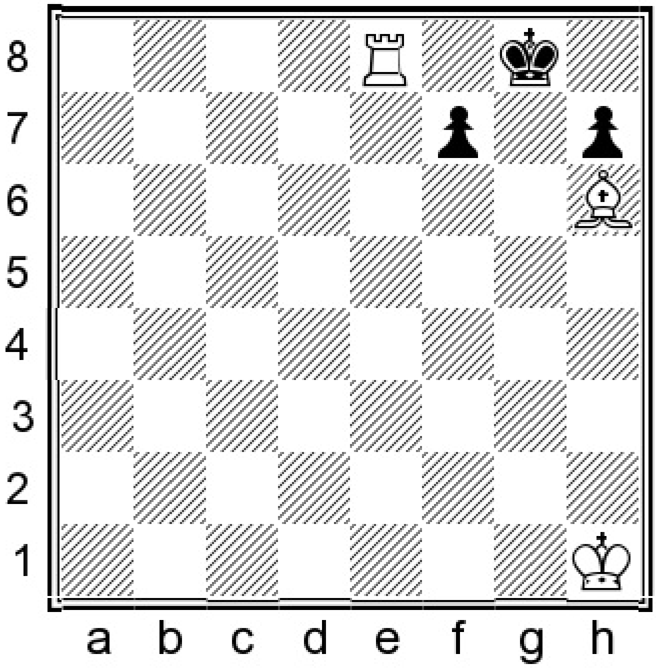
Chapter 5
Rook and bishop

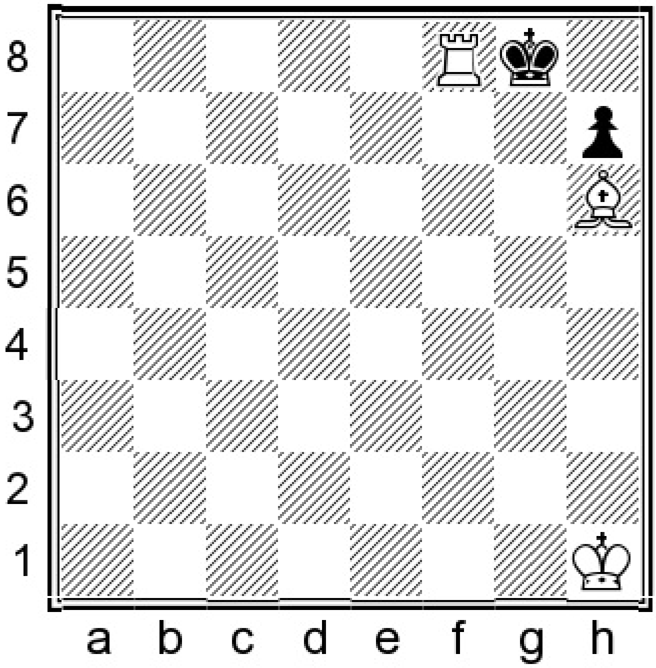
A rook and bishop are dangerous to an enemy king if it is trapped in the corner or on the edge of the board, but hindered by its own pawns (or in some cases, pieces). One of the most common mating patterns sees the rook attacking the king along the back rank, whilst the bishop cuts off the only escape square.

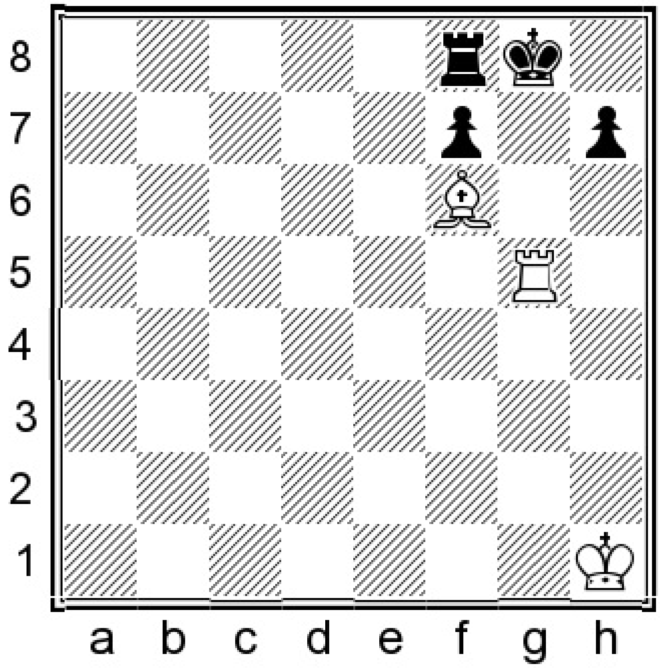
Many examples see the so-called ‘see-saw’ mechanism, where the king is restricted to the corner and one adjacent square (most often h8 and g8, or h1/g1 – the equivalent situation on the other flank is rather rarer) with discovered checks.

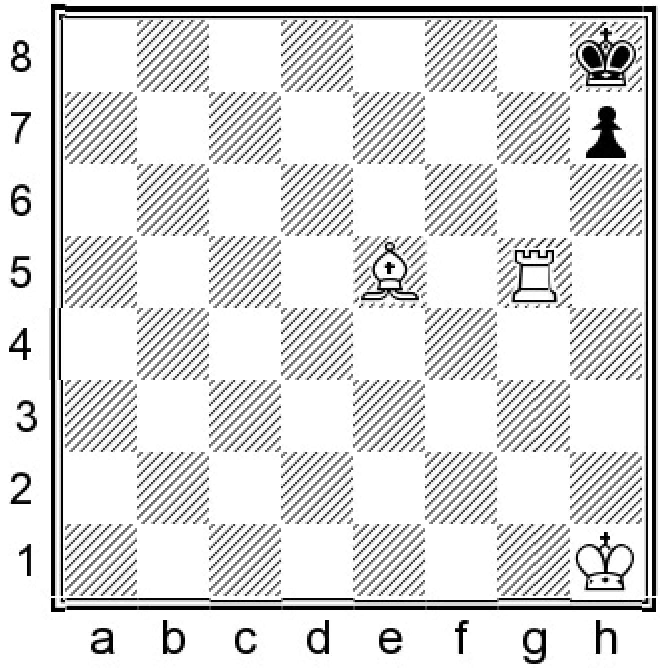
And, of course, one should not forget the set-up with the bishop on h6 (h3) and the rook on the back rank, with the opponent lacking a bishop fianchettoed in the opening.

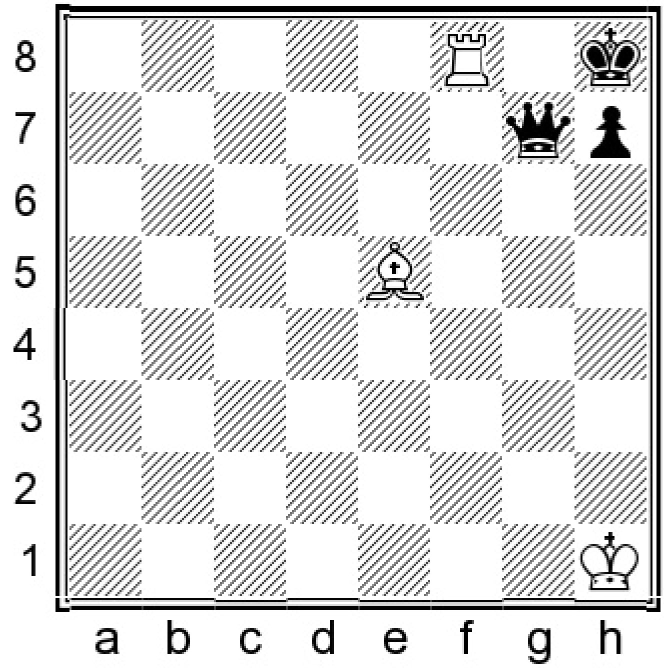


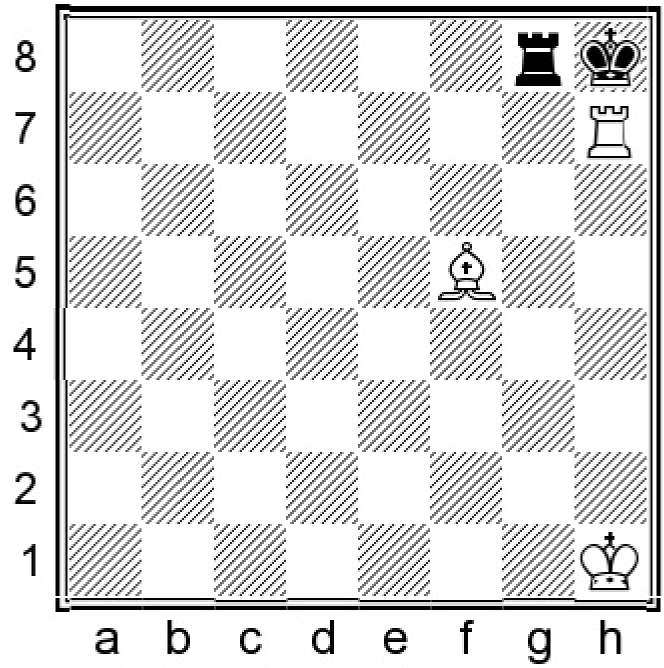


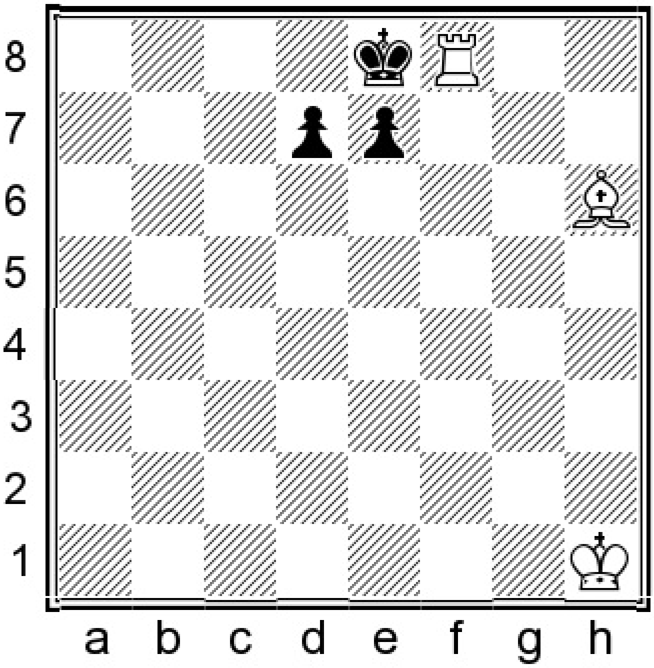



a b c d e f g h

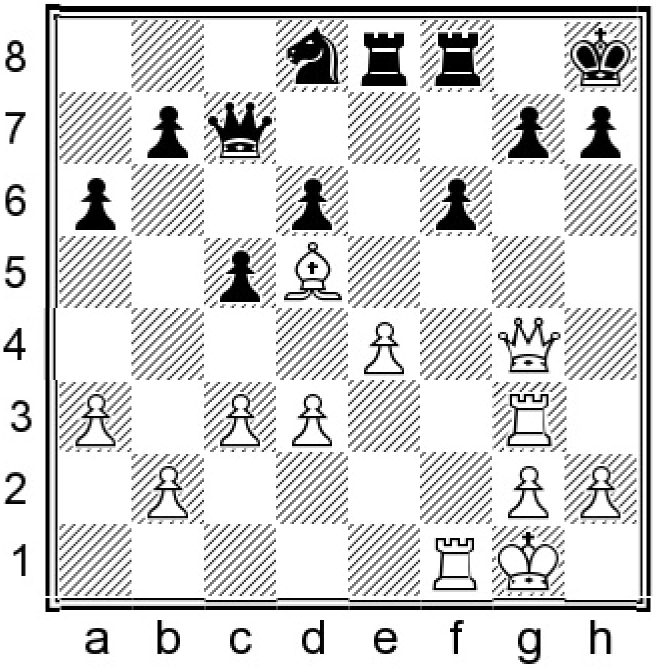

a b c d e f g h







Inna Gaponenko 2383
Katerina Rohonyan 2340
Kramatorsk ch-UKR 2001 (10)



White to play

24.♕g6!!

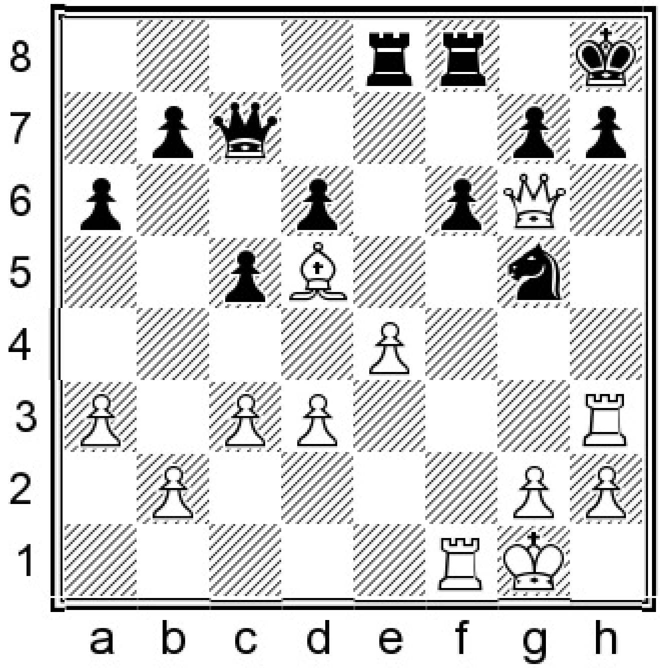
An excellent blockading sacrifice: White wants in all comfort to play ♖g3-h3 and advance the g-pawn.

24...♘e6

Taking 24...hxg6 allows mate in one – 25.♖h3#, but nor does 24...♕d7 25.♖f5 (25.♖h3? ♕xh3) 25...h6 26.♖h5 help, as there is no way to prevent ♖gh3 and ♖xh6+.

25.♖h3 ♘g5

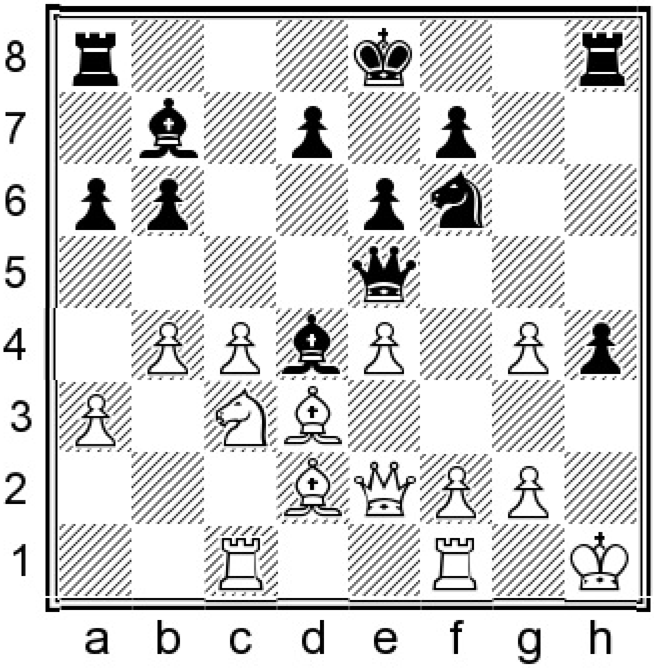
25...h6 26.♖xf6!.



26.♖xh7+!

Black resigned because of 26...♘xh7 27.♖f4 followed by 28.♖h4 and 29.♕xh7#. The black pieces are so badly placed that they cannot come to the aid of their king.

Jozsef Horvath 2591
Anthony Kosten 2533
France tt 2002 (8)



Black to play

Here Black needs to hurry with the attack; if White is allowed to play f2-f4, all danger will be behind him. As in the previous example, the attacking side's bishop occupies a powerful position in the centre of the board.

18...♕g3! 19.♗e3

On 19.♕f3 Black decides with 19...♘xg4 20.♗f4 ♘xf2+, but the move in the game also fails to stop the black knight joining in the attack.

19...♘xg4! 20.fxg3 hxg3+ 21.♔g1 ♘xe3!

He would have lost a significant part of his advantage after 21...♗xe3+ 22.♕xe3 ♘xe3 23.♖f3 ♘g4 24.♖xg3 ♘e5.

22.♖f2! ♘f5

Black settles for the exchange, but could have achieved the aim more quickly with 22...gxf2+ 23.♔xf2 (23.♕xf2 e5!) 23...♘xc4+ 24.♔g3 ♘e5!, and White cannot prevent the manoeuvre ...♔e7 followed by ...♖a8-g8+.

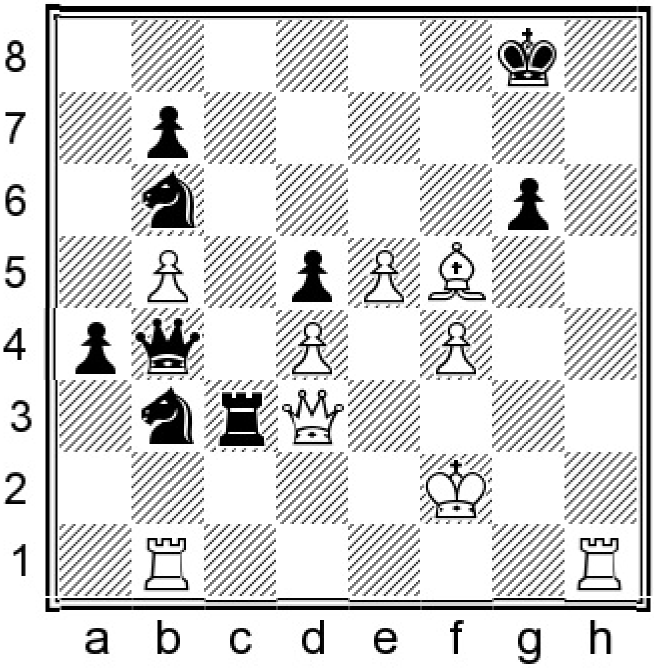
23.exf5

23.♘d1 gxf2+ 24.♘xf2 ♘g3.

23...gxf2+

And Black won.

Constantin Lupulescu 2480
Blazo Lupulescu 2430
Bucharest 2002 (5)



White to play

In this position, full of romanticism, White found the strongest continuation:

35.♖bg1!

The most reliable and the quickest path to victory, although the computer agrees that after the prosaic 35.♗e6+ ♔f8 (a very nice line is 35...♔g7 36.♕xg6+!!) 36.♖h8+ ♔e7 37.♖h7+ ♔d8 38.♕xg6 ♕xd4+ 39.♔g2 the king can escape the checks.

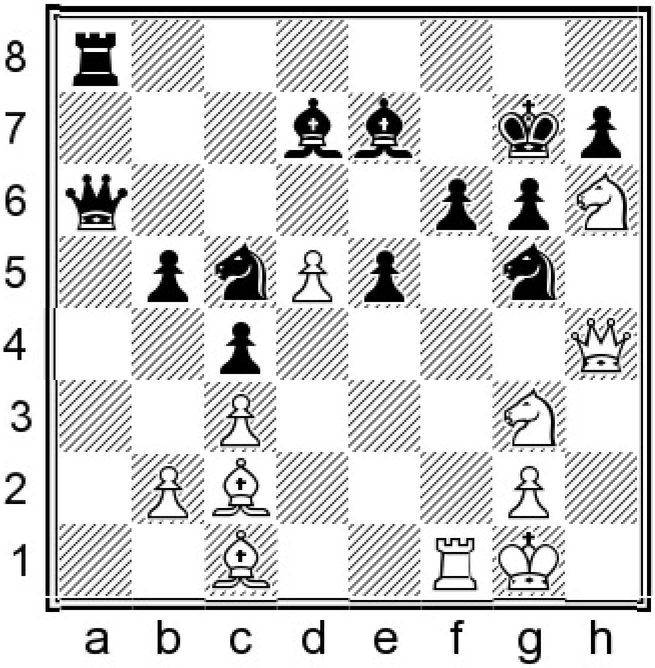
35.♖bg1! ♔f7

A transposition results from 35...♖xd3 36.♖xg6+.

36.♖xg6 ♖xd3 37.♖h7+ ♔f8 38.♖h8+ ♔f7 39.e6+ ♔e7 40.♖g7+

Black resigned: 40...♔f6 41.♖f7# or 40...♔d6 41.♖d8+.

Magnus Carlsen 2385
Hans Harestad 2249
Copenhagen 2003 (9)



White to play

The still young future World Champion carried out a striking attack:

35.♘h5+! gxh5

The alternatives are cheerless:

A) 35...♔h8 36.♘xf6 ♗xf6 37.♖xf6! ♕xf6 38.♗xg5 ♖a1+ 39.♔h2; or

B) 35...♔xh6 36.♘xf6+ ♔g7 37.♗xg5.

36.♕xg5+! fxg5

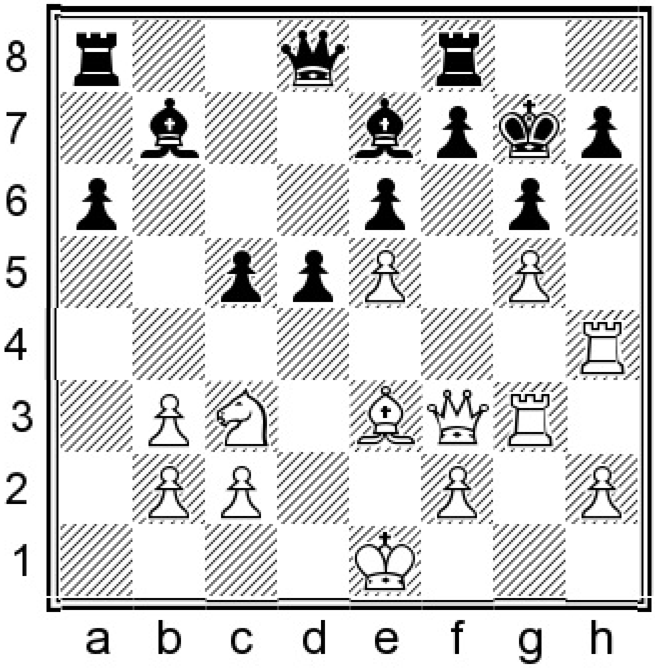
36...♔h8 37.♘f7#; 36...♔f8 37.♕g8#.

37.♖f7+ ♔xh6

37...♔h8 38.♖xh7#.

38.♖xh7#

Henrikas Asauskas 2358
Vidmantas Malisauskas 2525
Vilnius ch-LTU 2004 (1)



White to play

White unleashed a whole cascade of sacrificial fireworks, creating a mating set-up with minimal material. As well as the rook and bishop, an important role is played by the pawns.

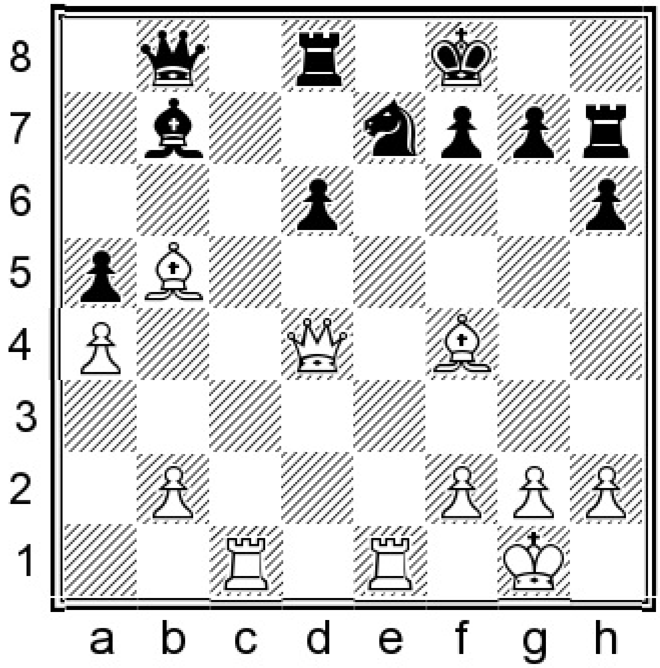
19.♕f6+!! ♗xf6 20.gxf6+ ♔g8

20...♕xf6 21.exf6+ ♔xf6 22.♗xc5, and White has an extra piece.

21.♖xh7! ♔xh7 22.♖h3+ ♔g8 23.♗h6! ♕c7 24.f4!

White had to see this quiet move when he begun the combination. Black resigned, because he cannot prevent his opponent triumphantly bringing his bishop to g7.

Zhang Zhong 2603
Bernard Bannink 2280
Port Erin 2004 (7)



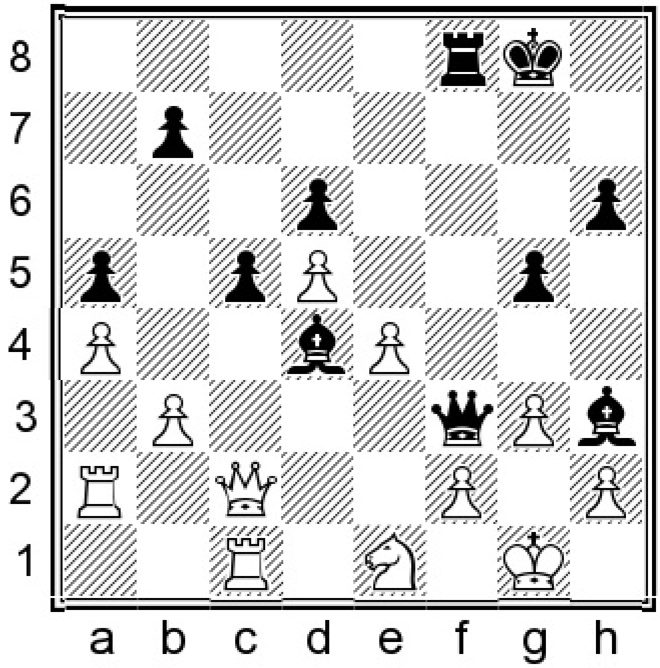
White to play

Of course, the ♖h7 is no adornment to the black position and at the same time it takes an important flight square from the black king.

24.♖xe7!

Black resigned because of 24...♔xe7 25.♖e1+ ♔f8 26.♗xd6+! ♖xd6 (26...♔g8 27.♗xb8 ♖xd4 28.♖e8# – this is where the position of the black rook comes back to haunt him) 27.♕xd6+! ♕xd6 28.♖e8#.

Jan Bernasek 2428
Matthieu Cornette 2362
Steinbrunn tt 2005 (4)



Black to play

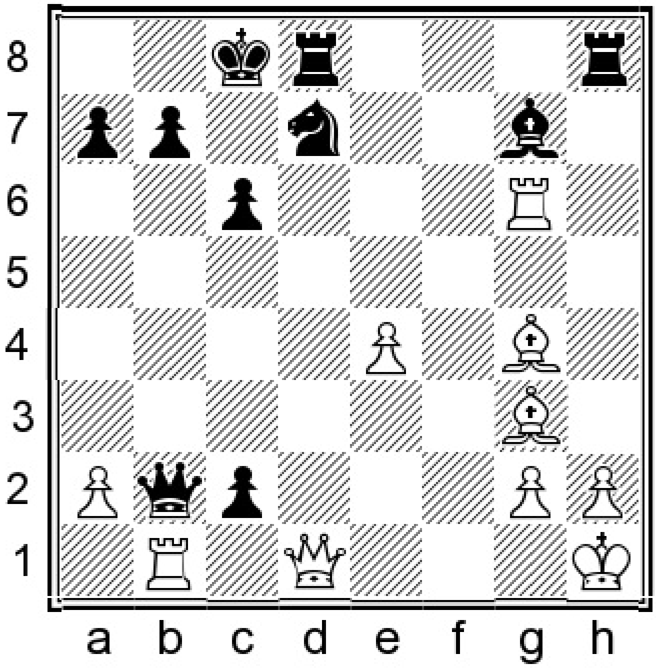
33...♗xf2+! 34.♕xf2 ♕e3!

Finding this quiet move was the most difficult part. White must give the queen, because he loses at once after 35.♕xe3 ♖f1#.

35.♖d1 ♖xf2 36.♖xf2 ♕xb3 37.♘c2 ♕xa4

And Black won.

Evgeniy Najer 2677
Alexei Kornev 2568
Tomsk 2006 (5)



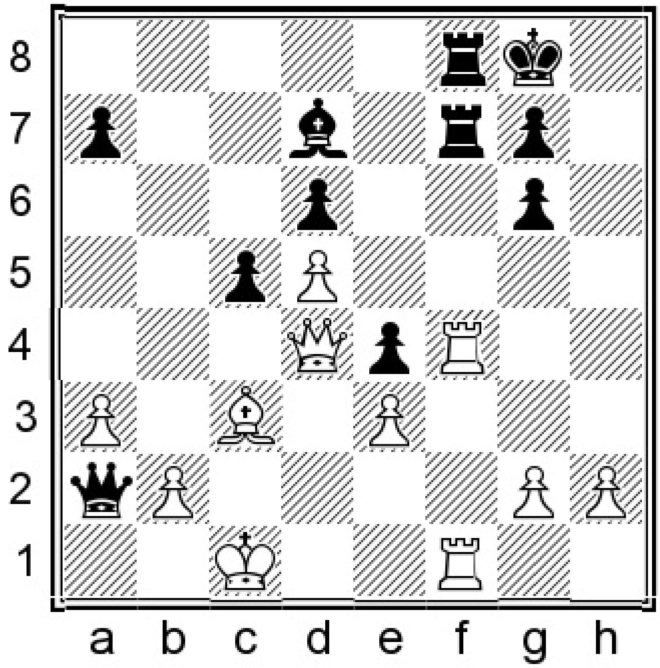
White to play

At first glance, White seems to be in trouble, but he had calculated a couple of moves further. Black is killed by, of all things, the weakness of the b8-square! But how can we get to it?

21.♖xc6+!!

Black resigned because of 21...bxc6 22.♕xc2! ♕xc2 23.♖b8# or 22...♕xb1+ 23.♕xb1, and again mate on b8 is unavoidable.

Robert Kempinski 2549
Evgeny Gleizerov 2520
Stockholm 1999/00 (5)



White to play

There seem to be no preconditions for a mating attack by White, because his queen is attacked. On 26.♖xf7 there is the cold-blooded 26...♖xf7, whilst taking *en passant* (Black's last move was ...c7-c5)

26.dxc6 ♗xc6 gives the black queen access to f7, and the exchange of all the rooks is nothing so terrible for him. But an unexpected thing happened...

26.♕xg7+! ♖xg7 27.♖xf8+ ♔h7 28.♖1f7

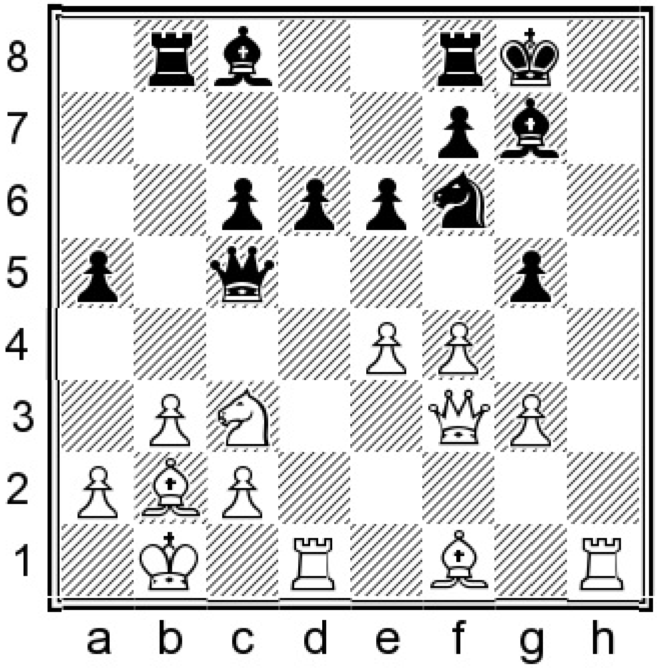
The black rook turns out to be defenceless: 28...♖xf7 29.♖h8#.

28...♗a4 29.♖xg7+ ♔h6

Here White played 30.♔d2, which did not throw away the win, but a quicker way was the elegant

30.♖h7+! ♔g5 31.♗f6+ ♔f5 32.♗g7+ ♔g5 33.♗h6+ ♔g4 34.♖f4+ ♔h5 35.♗g5+! ♔xg5 36.h4#

Yuri Solodovnichenko 2558
Maxime Lagarde 2414
Paris 2010 (4)



White to play

The eternal theme: the Sicilian, opposite-side castling... but the two sides have very different attacking potential!

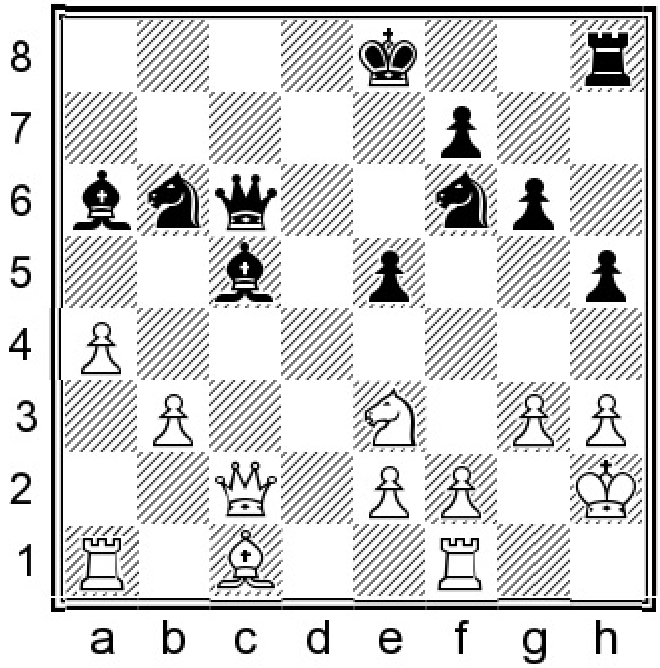
22.e5 g4

No relief is offered by 22...dxe5 23.fxg5 ♘d5 24.♘e4 ♕e7 25.♖xd5! exd5 26.♘f6+ ♗xf6 27.gxf6, whilst after 22...♘d5 23.♘e4 White just has an overwhelming position.

23.exf6!

Black resigned, seeing 23...gxf3 24.fxg7 ♖e8 (24...♔xg7 25.♘e4+, and White ends up with an extra piece at least) 25.♘e4 – it is impossible to save the king and queen at the same time.

Levan Pantsulaia 2599
Jordi Magem Badals 2589
Khanty-Mansiysk ol 2010 (10)



Black to play

24...♘g4+! 25.♘xg4

Nor is he saved by 25.hxg4 hxg4+ 26.♔g1 ♖h1#, whilst after 25.♔g1 ♗b7 he has to play f2-f3, giving up the ♘e3.

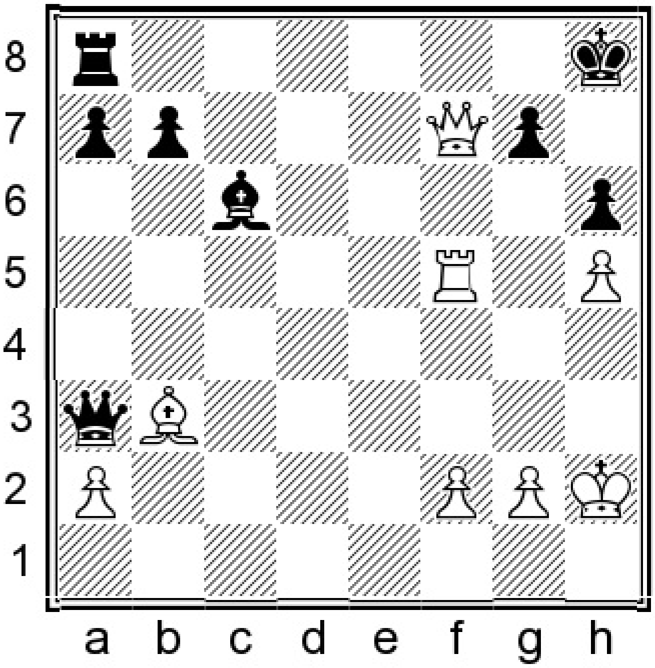
25...hxg4 26.h4 ♖xh4+! 27.gxh4 g3+ 28.fxg3

Or 28.♔h3 ♗c8+!, forcing the king onto a dark square under a discovered check.

28...♗g1+ 29.♔xg1 ♕xc2

And Black won.

Sebastien Maze 2571
Jacques Elbilia 2390
France tt 2011 (10)

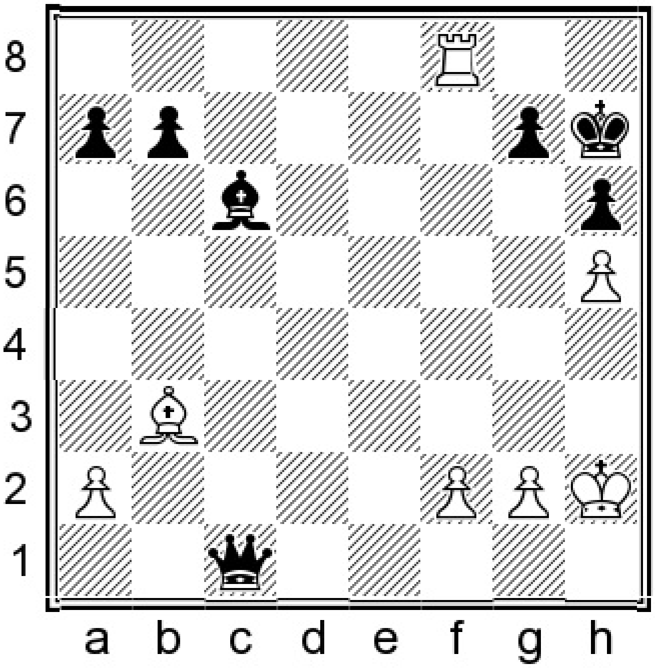


White to play

Here White succeeds in building a decisive attack with minimal forces. Black does not manage to come to the aid of his king.

30.♖f6! ♕c5

A) The main line is 30...♕c1 31.♕f8+! ♖xf8 32.♖xf8+ ♔h7



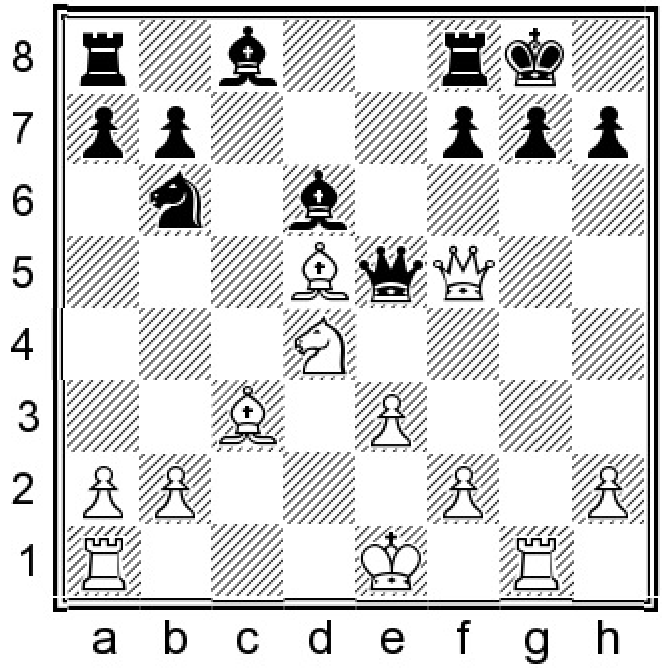
analysis diagram

33.♗g8+ ♔h8 34.♗f7+ ♔h7 35.♗g6#;

B) Nor is he saved by 30...♗e4 31.♖e6! ♖f8 32.♖e8.

31.♖xh6+! gxh6 32.♕f6+ ♔h7 33.♕g6+ 1-0

Shakhriyar Mamedyarov 2726
Konstantine Shanava 2589
Tbilisi tt 2012 (3)



White to play

In this GM encounter, White won in beautiful style:

17.♕d3!! ♘xd5

The other capture is in no way better: 17...♕xd5 18.♖xg7+! ♔xg7 19.♘f5+ ♔g6 (19...♔g8 20.♘h6#) 20.♘e7+, winning the queen.

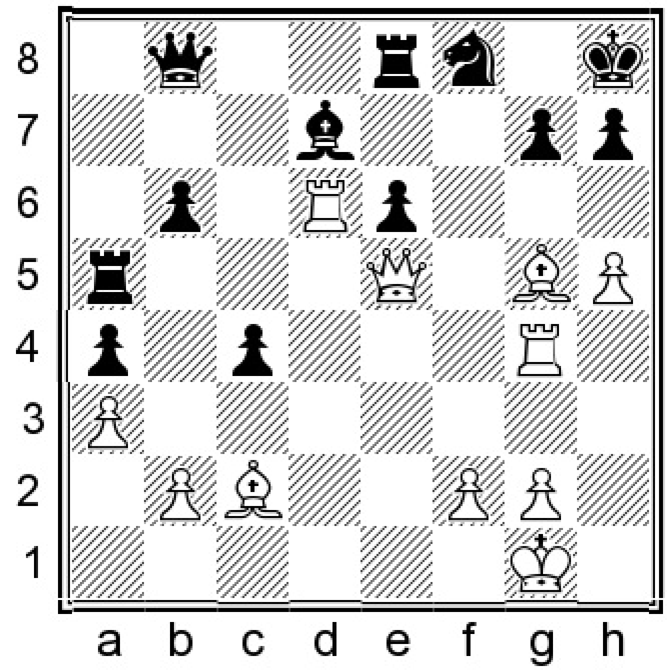
18.♘f3 ♗f5

On 18...♘b4 the calm 19.♕d2 decides, whilst now a second and decisive sacrifice follows:

19.♕xd5! ♕xd5 20.♖xg7+ ♔h8 21.♖xf7+ ♗e5 22.♗xe5+ ♔g8 23.♖g7+ ♔h8 24.♖g5+

Black resigned.

Axel Rombaldoni 2464
Stefan Schneider 2312
Stockholm 2012/13 (4)



White to play

Again White breaks through to g7, not caring about material. The leitmotiv of this and similar combinations is the scattered enemy forces, which cannot coordinate and come to the aid of their king.

30.♗h6!

30.♗f6! was also possible.

30.♗h6! ♖xe5 31.♗xg7+ ♔g8 32.♗xe5+ ♘g6

32...♔f7 33.♖g7#.

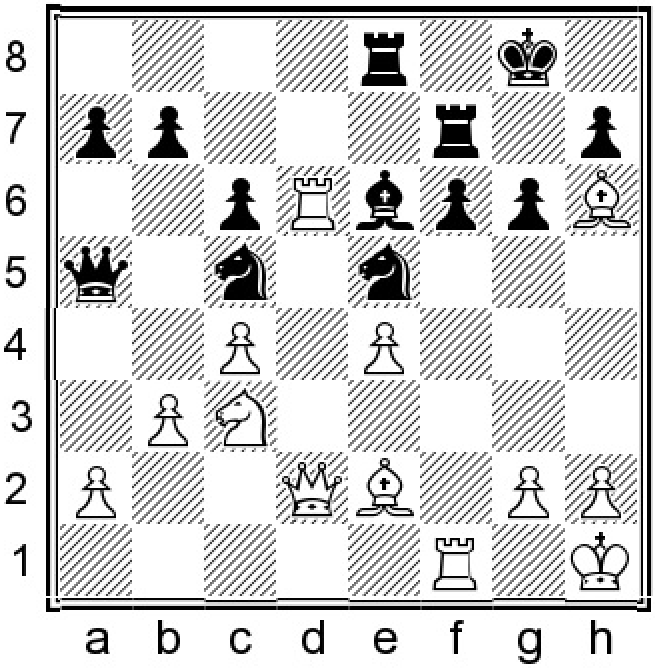
33.hxg6 hxg6

After 33...h6 34.♖h4 Black is completely helpless.

34.♖xg6+ ♔f8 35.♖f6+ ♔g8 36.♗h7+!

Black resigned because of 36...♔xh7 37.♖xd7+.

Valentina Gunina 2505
Ju Wenjun 2505
Astana Wch-tt W 2013 (4)



White to play

25.b4!

With the help of a pawn sacrifice, White deflects the enemy queen from the defence of the square d8.

25...♕xb4 26.♖d8 ♖fe7

Or 26...♗d7 27.♖xe8+ ♗xe8 28.♕d8, and to avoid mate Black must play either 28...♘cd7 or 28...♘e6, remaining a piece down.

27.♖xf6

White could also win with 27.♕d6! ♘cd3 28.♖xf6 ♗f7 29.♗xd3.

27...♘cd7

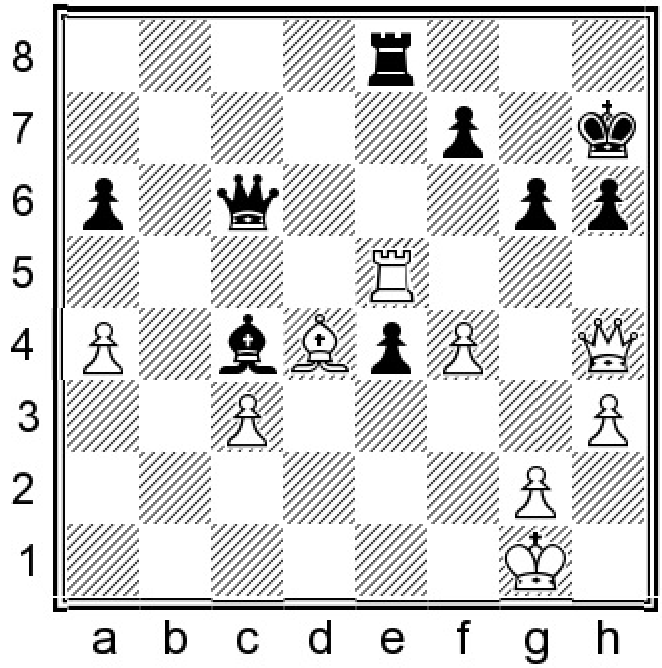
Nothing would have been changed by 27...♘f7 28.♘d5! ♕b1+ (28...♕xd2 29.♘xe7+) 29.♖f1+–.

28.♘d5! ♕a3 29.♕a5! ♕d6

The queen is immune because of 30.♘xe7+ with a quick mate.

30.c5 1-0

Piotr Brodowski 2422
Pavel Cech 2376
Czechia tt 2012/13 (8)



White to play

White has few pieces with which to attack and the solution is not obvious...

29.♕f6!!

A very elegant blow. After 29.♖xe8 ♕xe8 30.♕f6 ♕f8 Black holds.

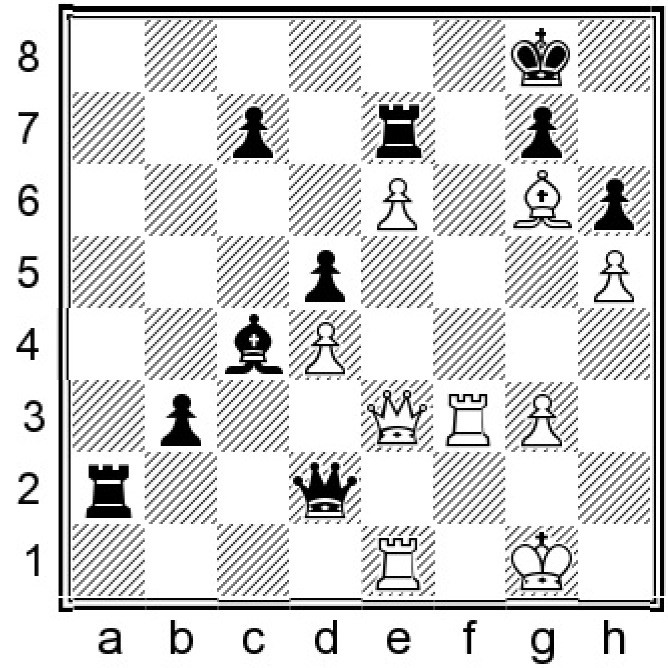
29.♕f6!! ♕xf6 30.♖xe8 ♕xd4+

How else to defend against mate on h8?

31.cxd4

Black resigned.

Dede Lioe 2375
Rustam Khusnutdinov 2509
Jakarta 2013 (5)



White to play

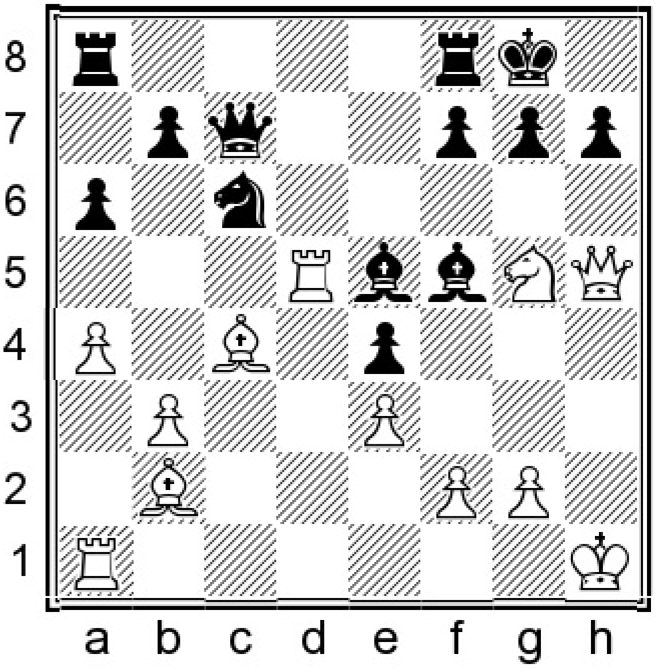
Here White is ready to sacrifice queen and rook, solely in order to get the pawn on e6 moving:

58.♖f8+! ♔xf8 59.♕f3+

Black resigned because of 59...♔g8 60.♕f7+! ♖xf7 61.exf7+ ♔f8 62.♖e8#.

And here is the 14th World Champion showing the theme.

Vladimir Kramnik 2797
Darmen Sadvakasov 2585
Astana 2001 (7)



White to play

19.♘xf7!

An accurately calculated blow.

A) Now Black loses quickly after 19...♕xf7 20.♖xe5; and

B) 19...♗g6 20.♘xe5 ♗xh5 21.♖d7+;

C) Things are no better for Black after 19...♗xb2 20.♖xf5 g6 21.♕h6! gxf5 22.♘d8+.

That only leaves the text move.

19...♖xf7 20.♕xf5! g6

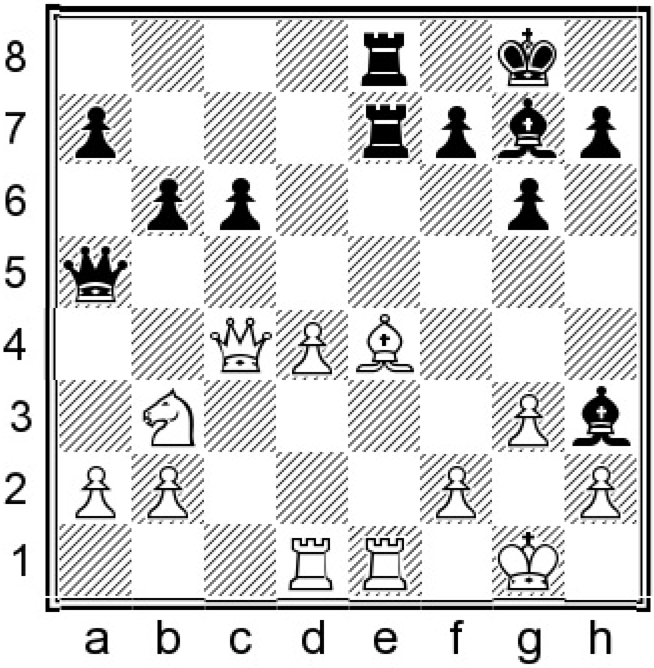
After 20...♖xf5 21.♖d8 it is double check and mate; remember this construction! Also hopeless is 20...♗xb2 21.♖d7.

21.♗xe5 1-0

Show in Text Mode

Exercises

274

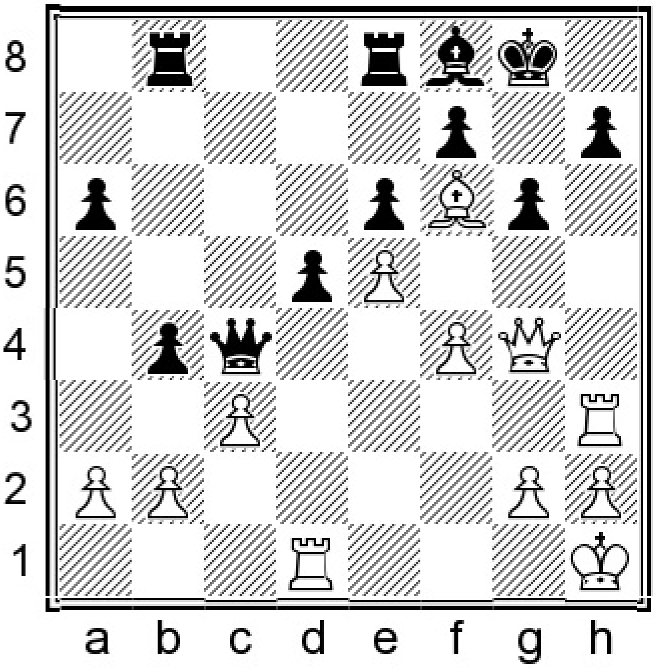


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

274 **22...♕d5!** 0-1 Belcher-Fang, Philadelphia 2001; the bishop comes under a deadly pin and will be lost: 23.♘d2 (23.♗xd5 ♖xe1+) 23...♕xc4.

275

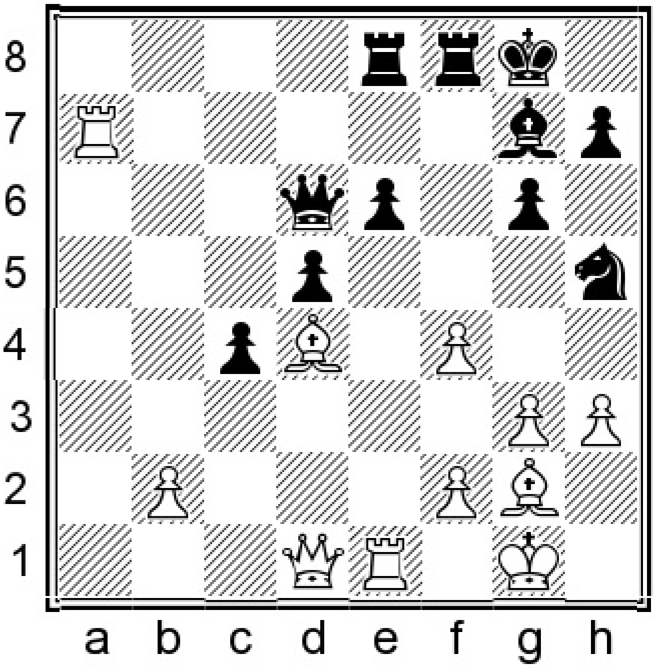


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

275 **23.♕h5!** Reizniece-Stepovaia, Tallinn W 2002; Black resigned because of 23...h6 24.♕xh6 ♗xh6 25.♖xh6 or 23...gxh5 24.♖g3+ ♗g7 25.♖xg7+ ♔f8 26.♖xh7. This device (transferring the queen to h5 for the attack, exploiting the g-pawn's inability to move) is often seen in such positions.

276

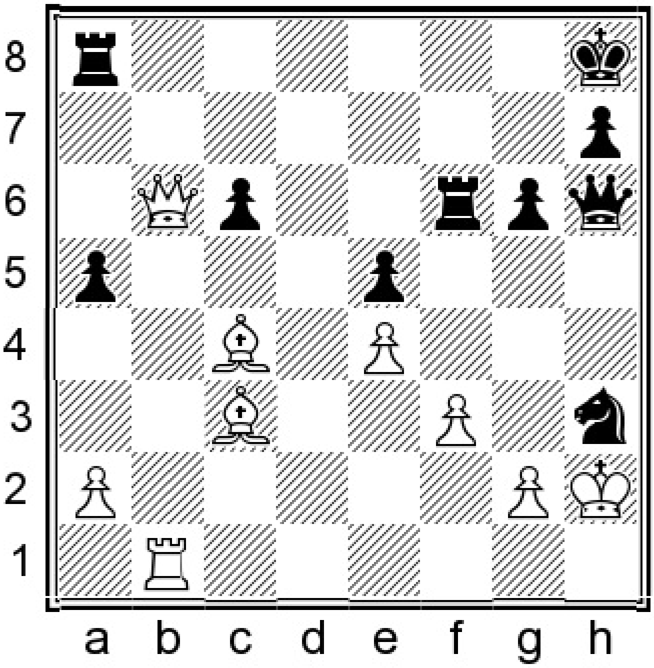


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

276 **24.♕xh5! ♖f7** 24...♗xd4 25.♕xh7#; also bad is 24...gxh5 25.♖xg7+ ♔h8 26.♖d7+. **25.♖xf7 gxh5 26.♖xg7+ ♔f8 27.♖xh7** 1-0 Alvarez Marquez-Nybäck, Bermuda 2002; as well as a material advantage, White has an overwhelming positional superiority.

277



White to play

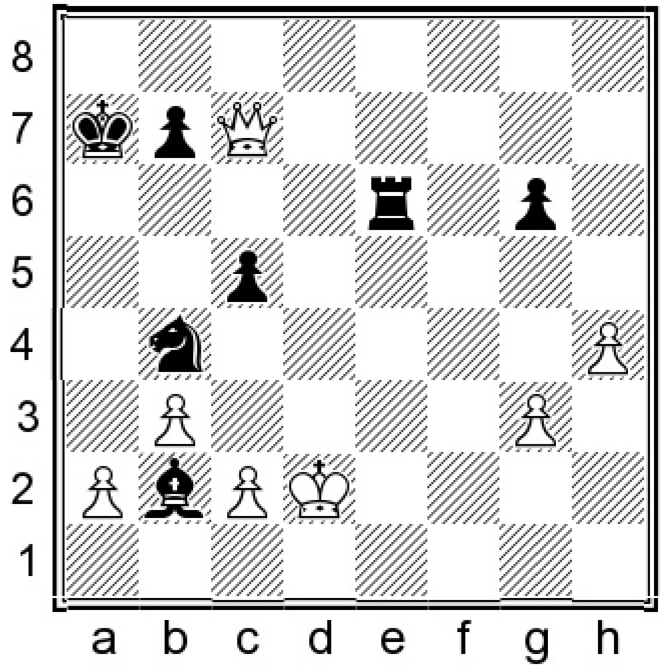
Show/Hide Solution

277 **37.♕b8+!** White must not dawdle: 37.gxh3? ♕f4+;

37.♗xe5? ♘g5+! 38.♔g3 (38.♔g1 ♘xf3+ 39.gxf3 ♕g5+) 38...♘xe4+ 39.fxe4 ♕g5+.

37.♕b8+! ♖xb8 38.♖xb8+ ♔g7 38...♖f8 39.♗xe5+ ♕g7 40.♖xf8#. **39.♖g8#** Kasimdzhanov-Golubev, Germany Bundesliga 2001/02.

278

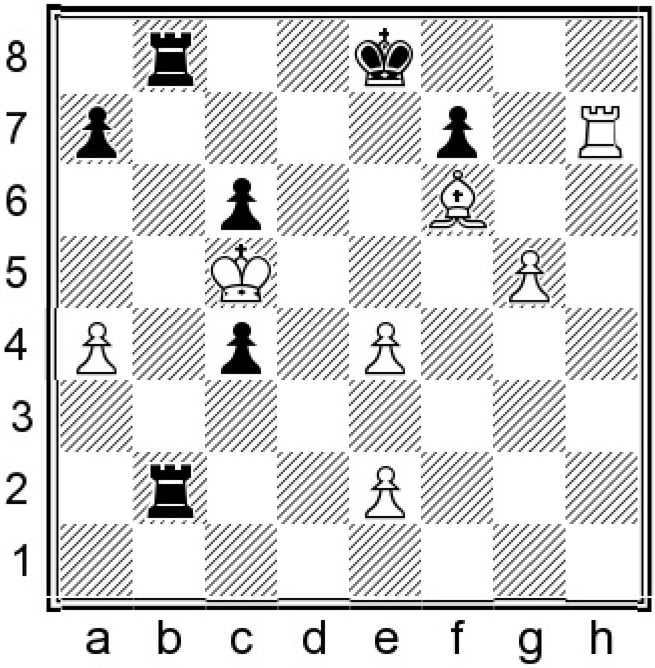


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

278 **45...♗c3+!** Pavasovic-Acs, Bled ol 2002; drawing the king into a fork. White resigned: the alternative of loss of the queen (after 46.♔xc3 ♘d5) is mate (46.♔d1 ♖e1#).

279

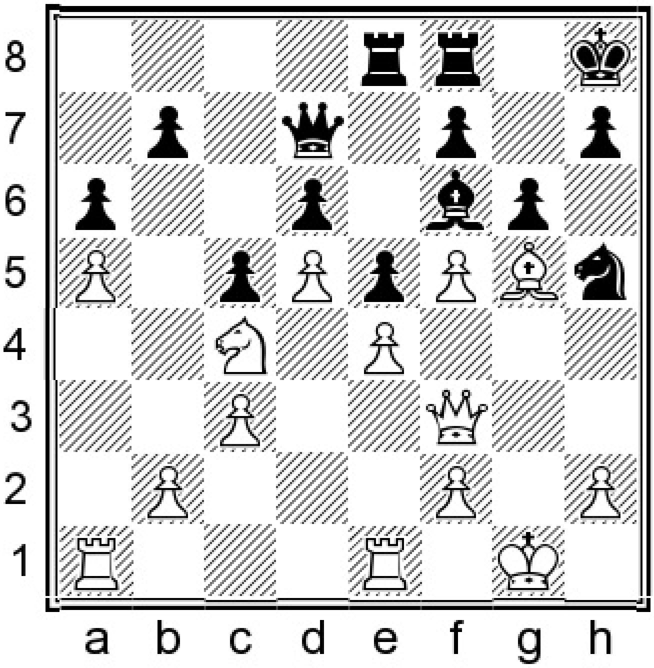


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

279 **38.♔d6! ♖d8+ 39.♔c7!** 1-0 Beliavsky-Cornette, Linares 2003; After 39...♖d7+ 40.♔c8 Black runs out of checks.

280

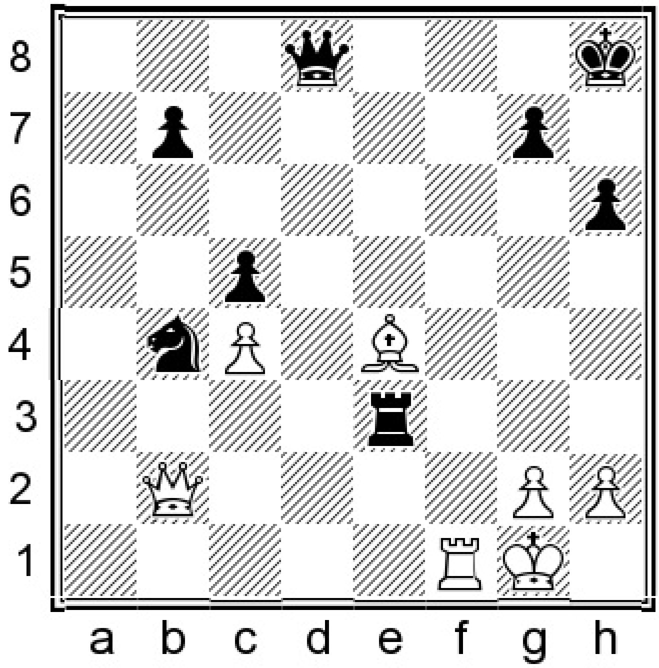


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

280 **21.♕xh5!** Again the queen lands on h5 with decisive effect. T.Kosintseva-Galliamova, Istanbul Ech W 2003; Black resigned: after 21...gxh5 22.♗xf6+ ♔g8 23.♔h1 h6 24.♖g1+ ♔h7 25.♖g7+ ♔h8 26.♖ag1 there is no defence to mate.

281

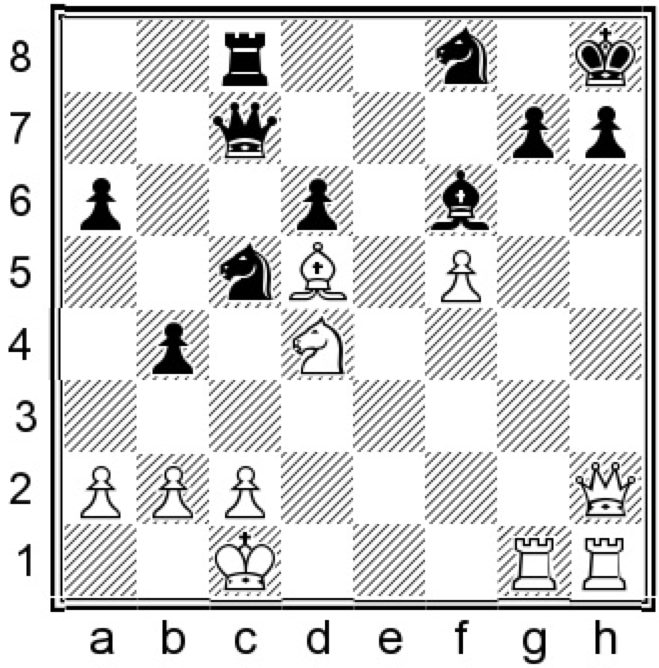


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

281 **32.♕d2! ♖d3** 32...♕xd2 33.♖f8#. **33.♗xd3 ♕d4+ 34.♕f2 ♘xd3 35.♕xd4 cxd4 36.♖f8+**, and White won in Sasikiran-C.Hansen, Esbjerg 2003.

282

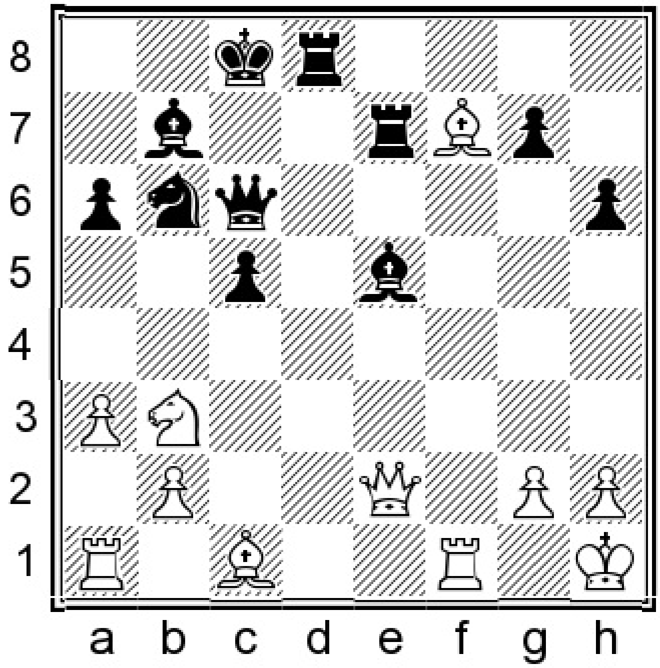


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

282 **35.♕xh7+! ♘xh7 36.♖xh7+ ♔xh7 37.♖h1+** 1-0 Short-Muir, Gibraltar 2004.

283

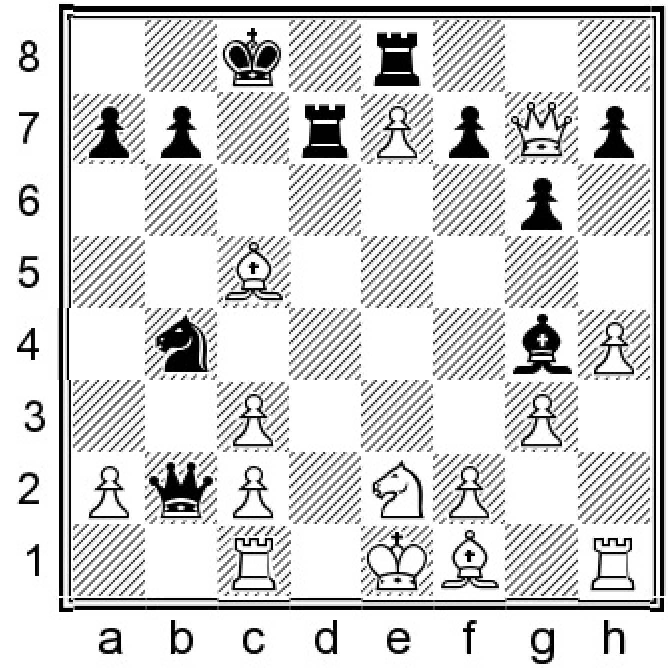


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

283 **29...♖xf7!** Klimov-Yevseev, St Petersburg 2004; White resigned because of 30.♖xf7 ♕xg2+! (it is also possible to begin with 30...♖d1+) 31.♕xg2 ♖d1+ 32.♖f1 ♖xf1#.

284

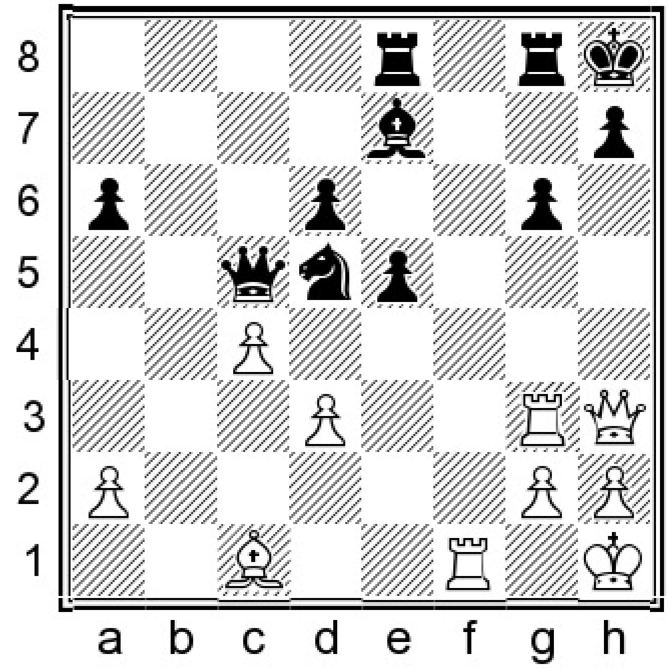


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

284 **20...♛xc1+!** 0-1 Medvegy-Rajlich, Szeged tt W 2004; 21.♘xc1 ♖d1#.

285

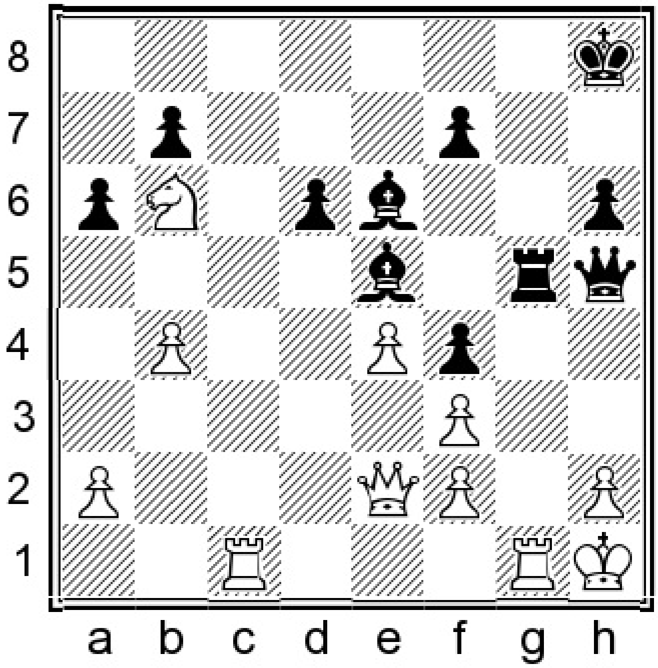


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

285 Again Short, again a sacrifice on h7, but this time in a slightly more complicated version: **27.♕xh7+!** 1-0 Short-Ye Jiangchuan, Taiyuan 2004; Black is mated by force: 27...♔xh7 28.♖h3+ ♔g7 29.♗h6+ ♔h7 30.♗f8+ ♗h4 31.♖xh4#.

286

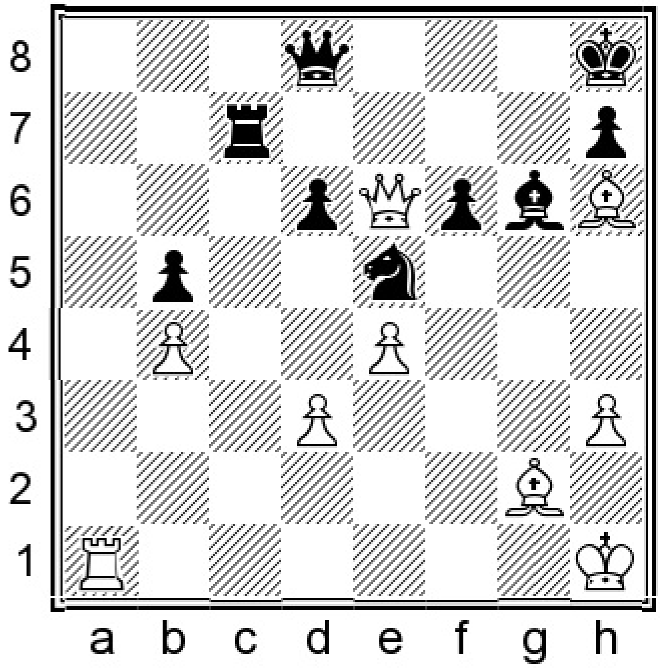


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

286 If you succeeded in solving Short-Ye Jiangchuan above, then this example should not be so difficult. **30...♕xh2+! 31.♔xh2 ♖h5+ 32.♔g2 ♗h3+** 0-1 Almond-Rossi, Cork 2005.

287

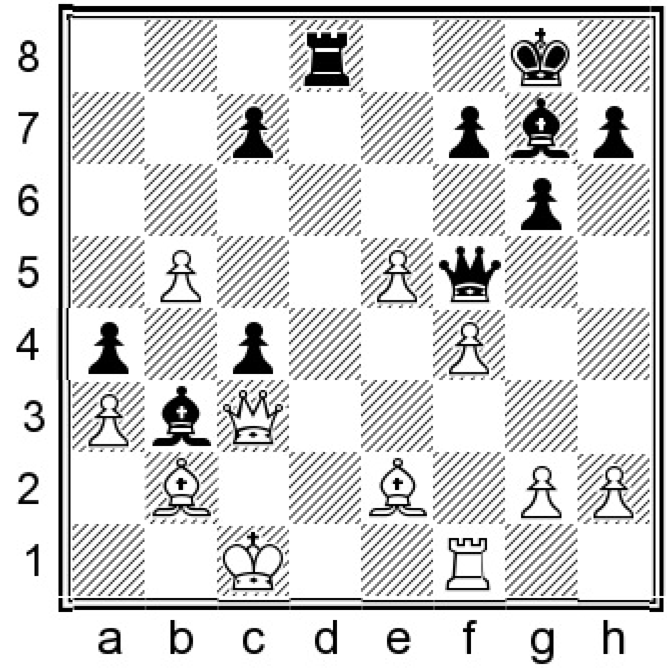


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

287 **42.♕xf6+!** 1-0 Chebotarev-Yandarbiev, Voronezh 2005; if the queen is taken, it is mate after 43.♖a8+.

288

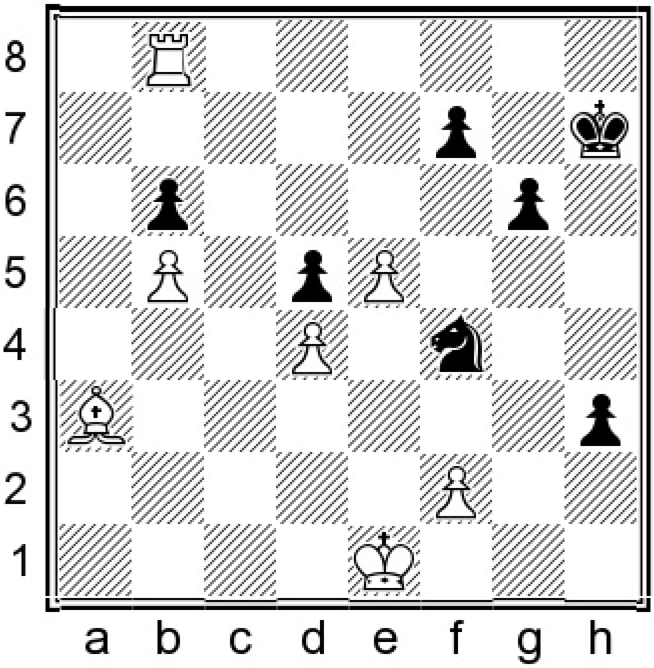

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

288 **27...♗xe5!** Beautiful, Voitsek-hovsky-A.Smirnov, Voronezh 2005; White resigned because of 28.♕xe5 ♕c2# or 28.fxe5 ♕xf1+ 29.♗xf1 ♖d1#.

289

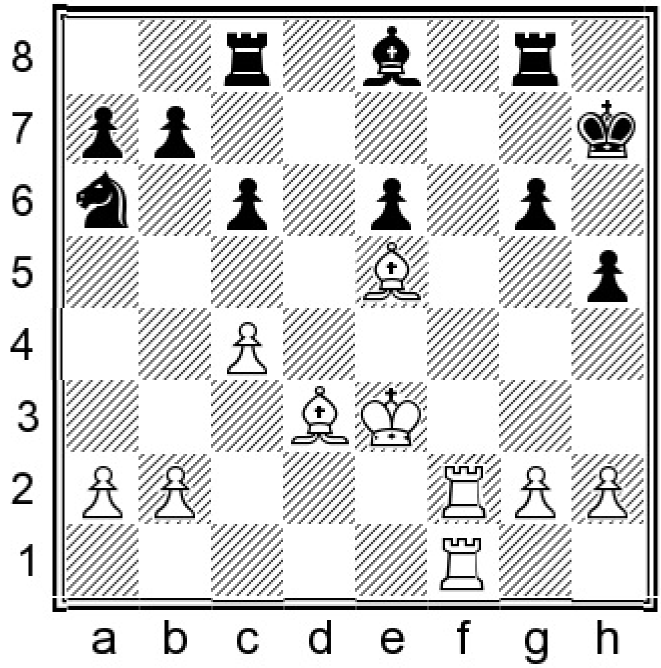

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h

White to play

Show/Hide Solution

289 **37.♗e7! h2 38.♗f6** 1-0 Bacrot-Sasikiran, Corsica rapid 2005; 38...h1=♕+ 39.♔d2 g5 40.♖h8+ ♔g6 41.♖xh1.

290

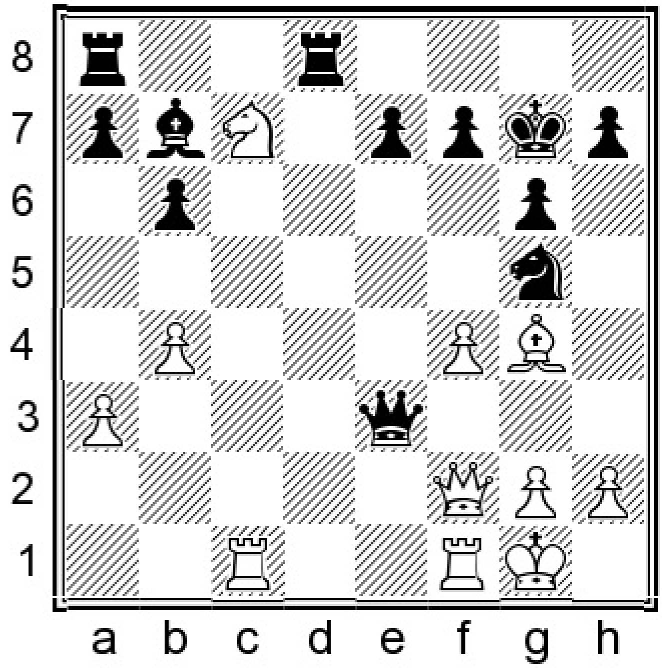

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h

White to play

Show/Hide Solution

290 **28.♖f7+! ♗xf7 29.♖xf7+ ♔h6 30.♗f4+** Grischuk-Shulman, Khanty-Mansisyk playoff rapid 2005; Black resigned because of 30...g5 31.♖h7#.

291

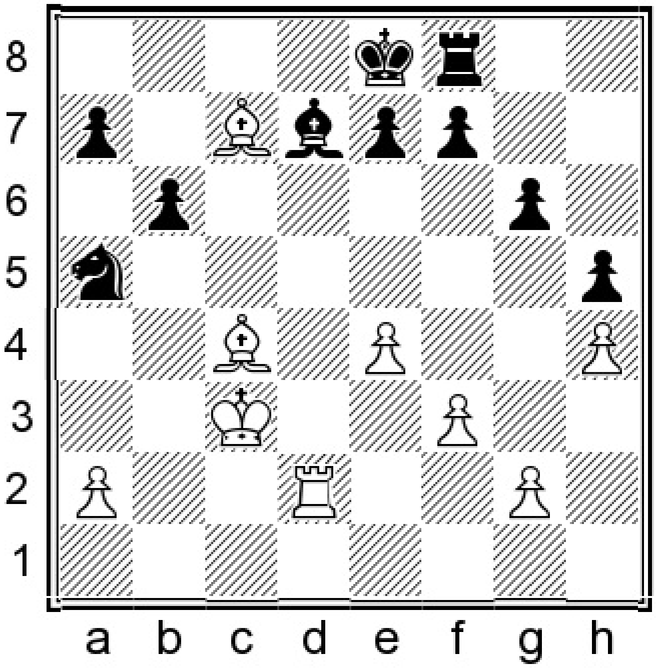


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

291 **25...♖d2! 26.♕xe3 ♖xg2+ 27.♔h1 ♖xg4+ 28.♖f3 ♘xf3 29.h4 ♘g5+** 0-1 Dizdarevic-Jankovic, Solin 2005; after 30.♔h2 ♖g2+ the king has to return to h1 into a discovered check.

292

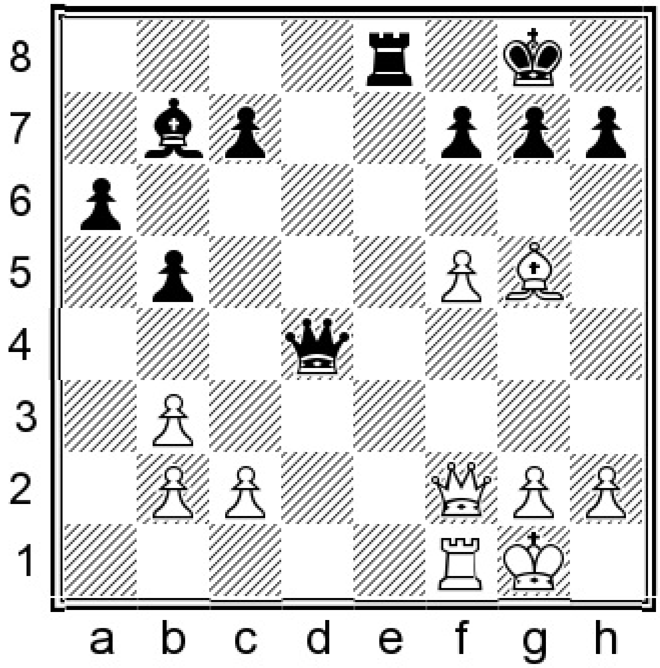


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

292 **30.♗b5!** Karpov-Shirov, Tallinn rapid 2006; Black resigned: taking the bishop leads to mate on d8.

293

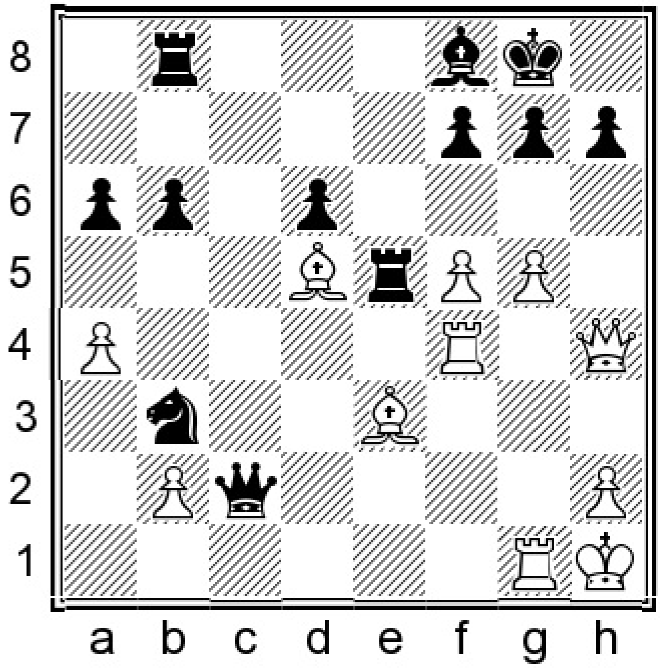


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

293 You will already have realized that Black will spare no sacrifice to seize the g2-square: **23...♖e2! 24.♕xd4 ♖xg2+ 25.♔h1 ♖xg5+** 0-1 Choisy-Shen Yang, Paris tt W 2006.

294

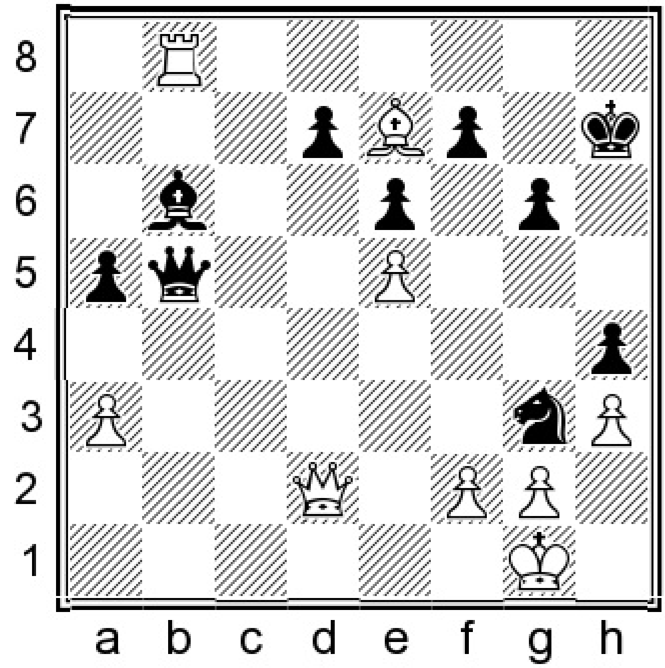


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

294 **28.♕xh7+!** Nijboer-Hoffmann, Netherlands tt 2006/07; Black resigned because of 28...♔xh7 29.g6+! fxg6 30.♖h4# or 29...♔g8 30.♗xf7+ ♔h8 31.♖h4#.

295



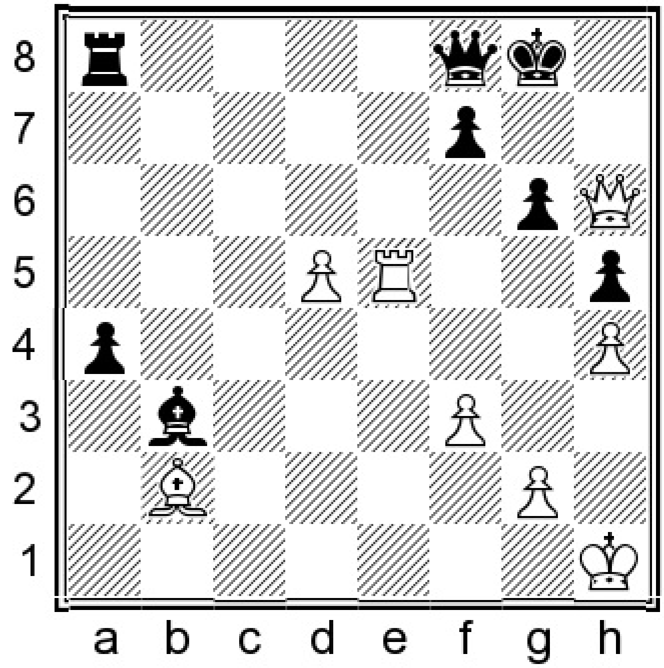
White to play

Show/Hide Solution

295 Here 43.♖h8+ is tempting and does indeed lead to mate, but by a longer route.

The shortest way is the 'paradoxical' **43.♕h6+!** 1-0 Zakurdjaeva-Pähtz, Dresden Ech W 2007; 43...♔xh6 44.♖h8+ ♔g7 45.♗f6#.

296



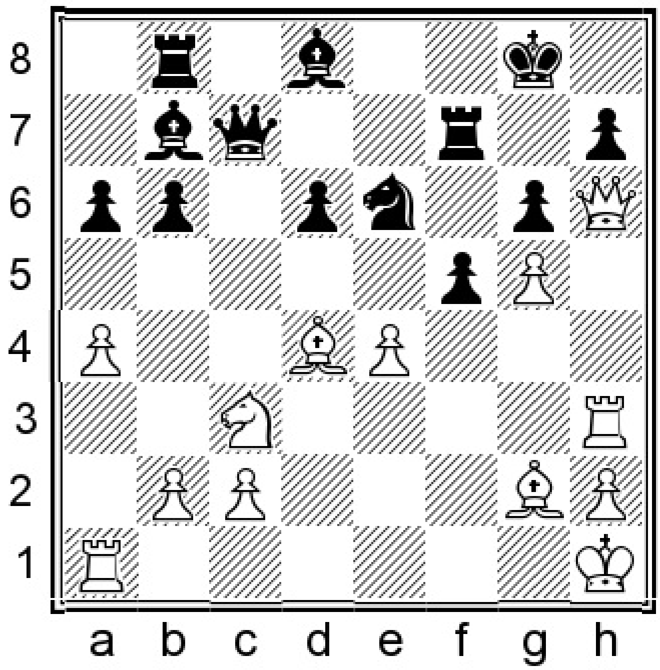
White to play

Show/Hide Solution

296 **38.♕h8+!** An excellent example of deflection, Nebolsina-Gromova, Russia tt W 2007; Black resigned, because she cannot avoid mate: 38...♔xh8 39.♖xh5+ ♔g8 40.♖h8#.

Strictly, we should mention that there is a dual: 38.♖e8! f6 39.♕xg6+ ♔h8 40.♗xf6#.

297

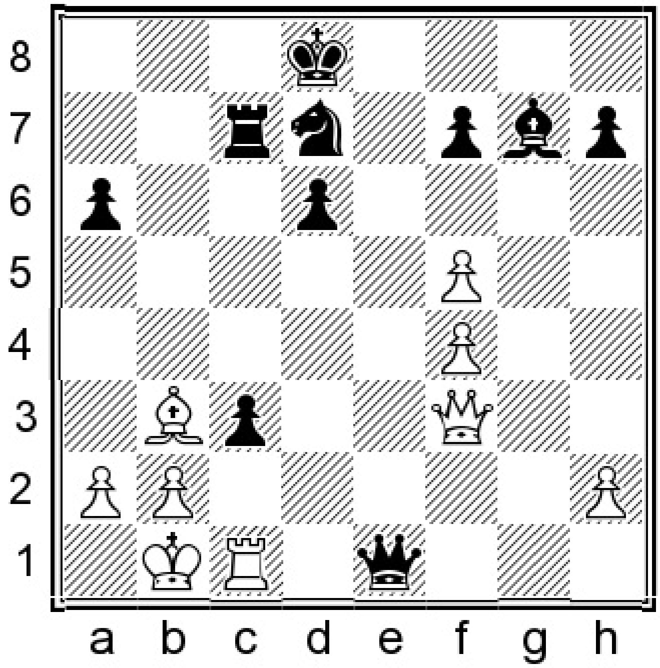


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

297 **25.♕xg6+! hxg6 26.♖h8#** Lissang-A.Andersson, Stockholm ch-SWE U20 2007.

298

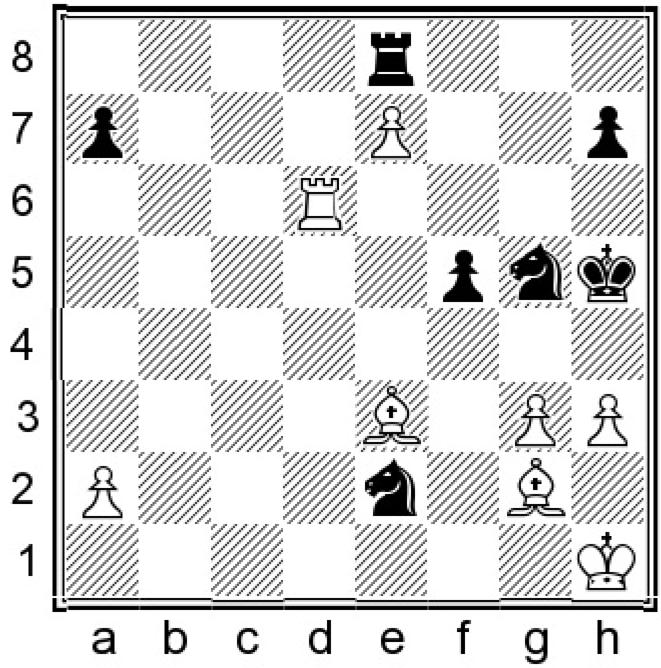


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

298 **32...♕xc1+!** 0-1 Nepomniacht-chi-Khismatullin, Krasnoyarsk 2007; 33.♔xc1 cxb2+ 34.♔b1 ♖c1#.

299

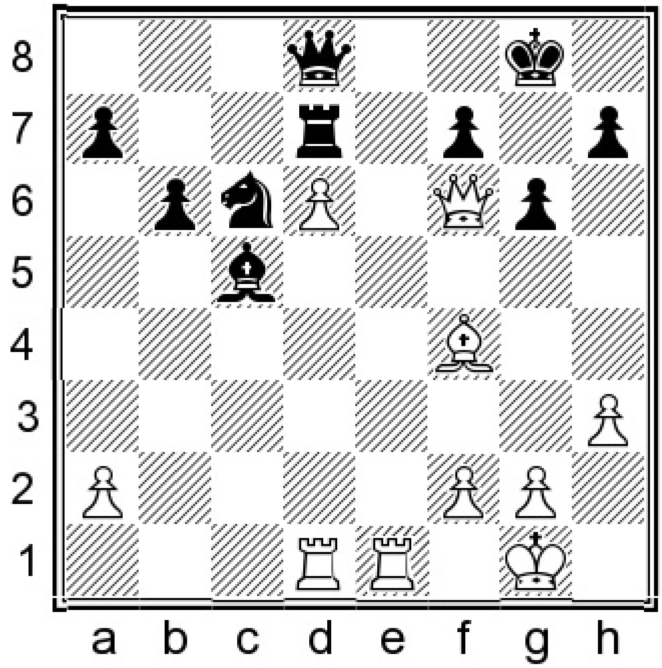


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

299 **36.♗f3+!** 1-0 Houska-Snape, Hastings 2007/08; 36...♘xf3 37.♖h6#.

300

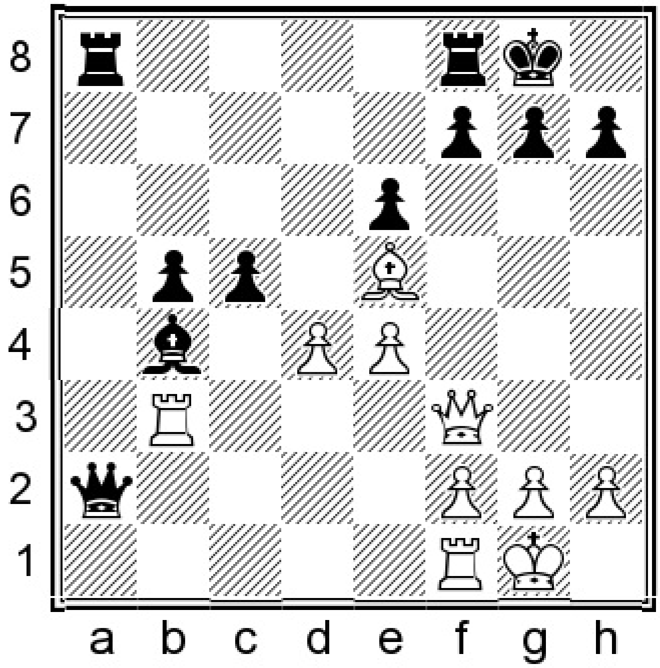


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

300 **28.♗h6! ♗xf2+ 29.♔h1** 1-0 Bjerke-C.Andersson, Oslo tt 2008.

301

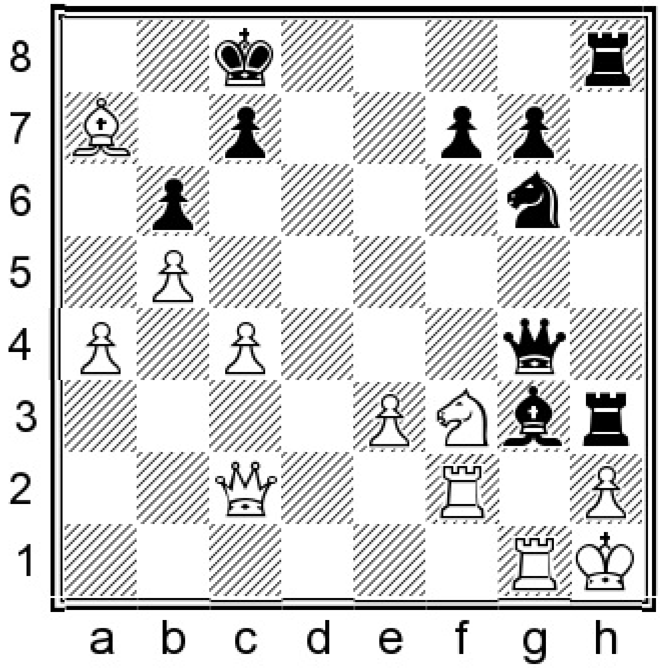


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

301 **23.♕f6!** Gleizerov-Alavkin, Kaluga 2003; Black resigned because of 23...gxf6 24.♖g3+ ♔h8 25.♗xf6#.

302



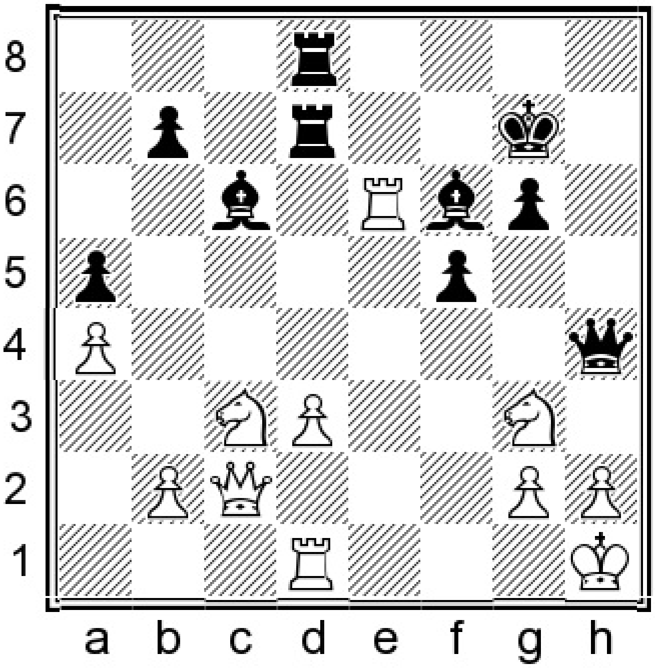
8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h

Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

302 **23...♕xf3+!** 0-1 Van Wely–Morozevich, Nice blindfold 2008; catastrophe occurs on h2.

303

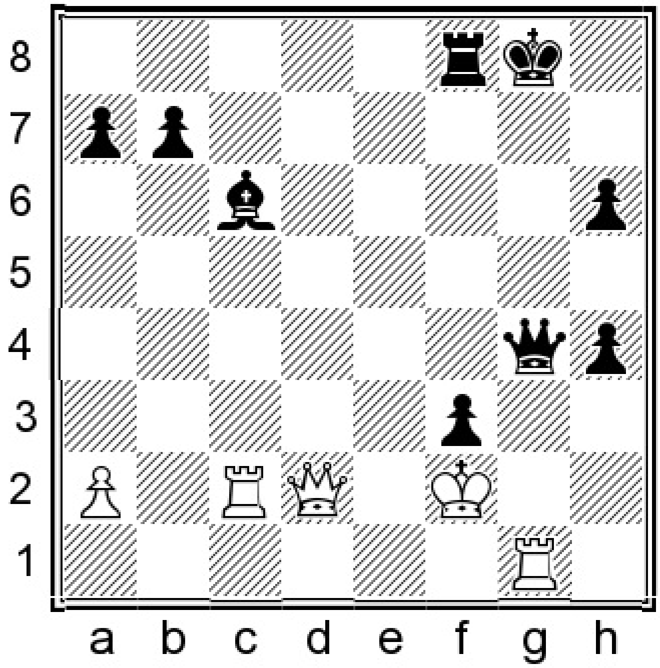


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

303 **30...♕xg3! 31.hxg3 ♗d4!** De Vreugt-Mchedlishvili, Hilversum 2008; White resigned: there is no defence to the thrat of 32...♖h8+ and mate.

304

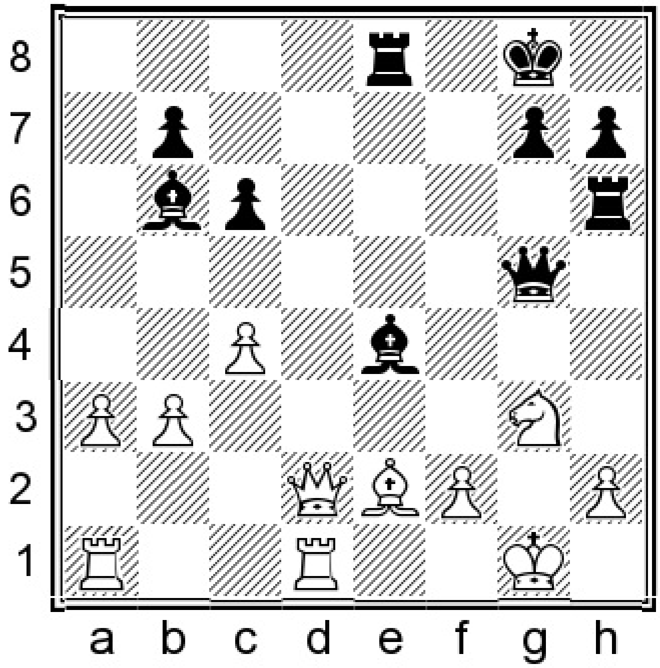


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

304 **32...♕g2+!** 0-1 Gubaydulin-Kasyan, Tashkent ch-UZB 2008; After 33.♖xg2 fxg2+ he cannot prevent a new black queen appearing, whilst he has no checks.

305


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h

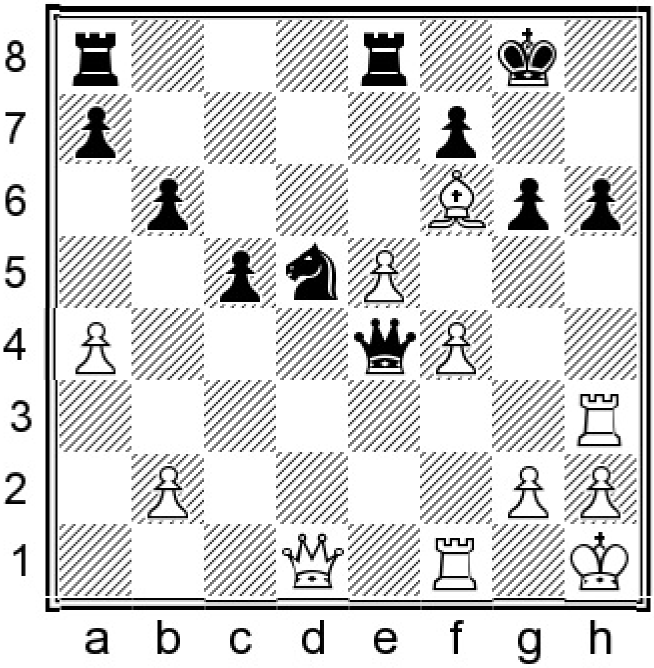
Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

305 **26...♕xg3+! 27.hxg3 ♖h1#** Vaznonis-Sakalauskas, Kaunas ch-LTU 2008.

Show in Text Mode

306

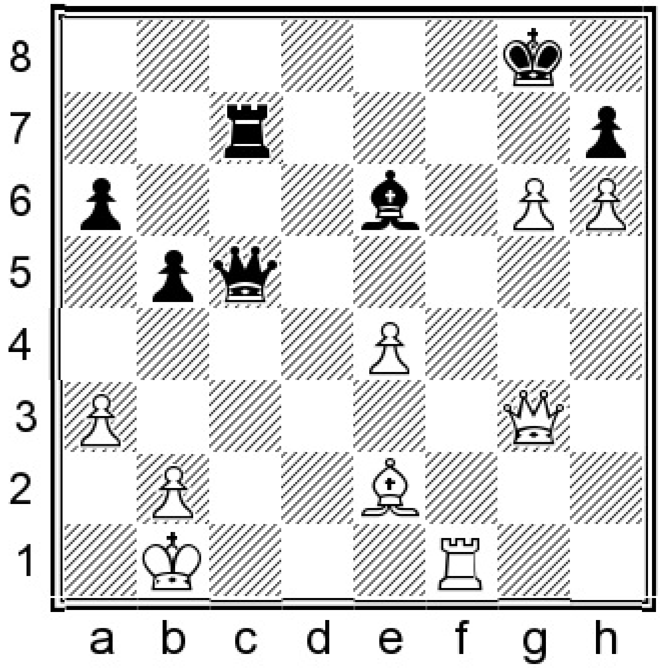


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

306 Here the most important piece for White is the ♗f6 and it must be preserved at all costs. **26.♕xd5!** D.Rombaldoni-Iturrizaga, Gaziantep Wch U20 2008; Black resigned because of 26...♕xd5 27.♖xh6, and mate is unavoidable.

307

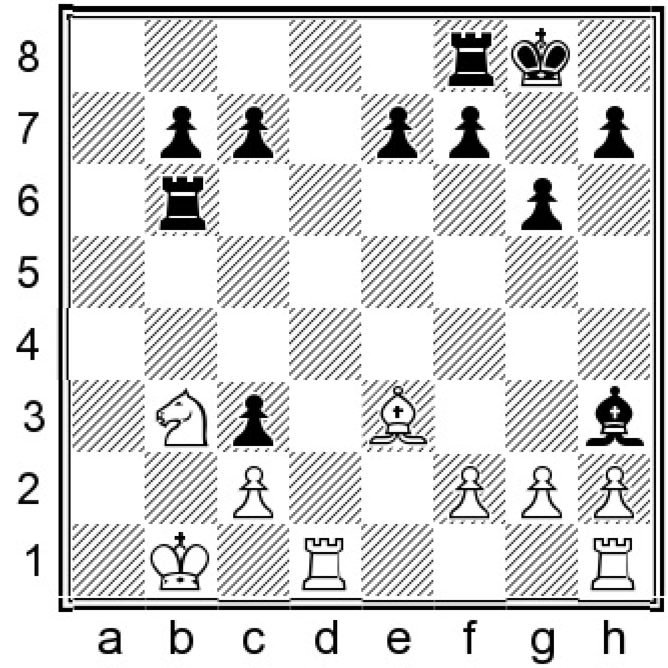

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h

Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

307 **38...♕c2+ 39.♔a1 ♕c1+** 0-1 Karjakin-Ivanchuk, Moscow blitz 2008.

308

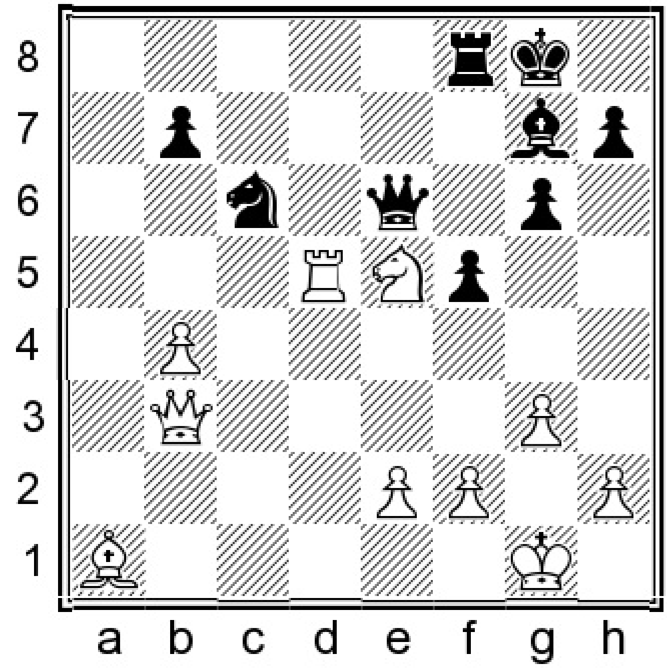


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

308 Here Black wove an instructive mating net with minimal force. **20...♖xb3+! 21.cxb3 ♗f5+ 22.♔c1 ♖a8** 0-1 Nestorovic-Popchev, Stara Pazavo 2008.

309

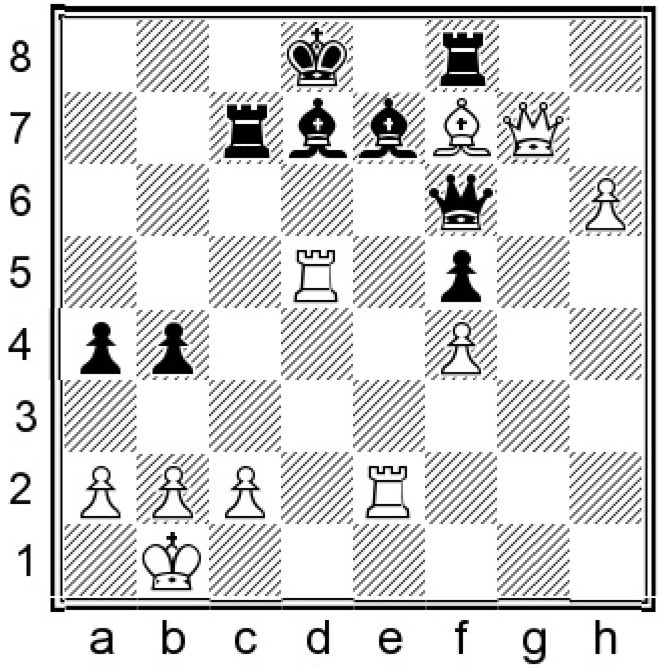


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

309 **23.♘xc6! bxc6** No better is 23...♗xa1 24.♘d8!, and wherever the black queen retreats, White wins it with a discovered check and ends up with a large material advantage. **24.♖d7!** 1-0 Cmilyte-E.Boric, Kallithea tt W 2008; 24...♕xb3 25.♖xg7+ ♔h8 26.♖xg6+.

310

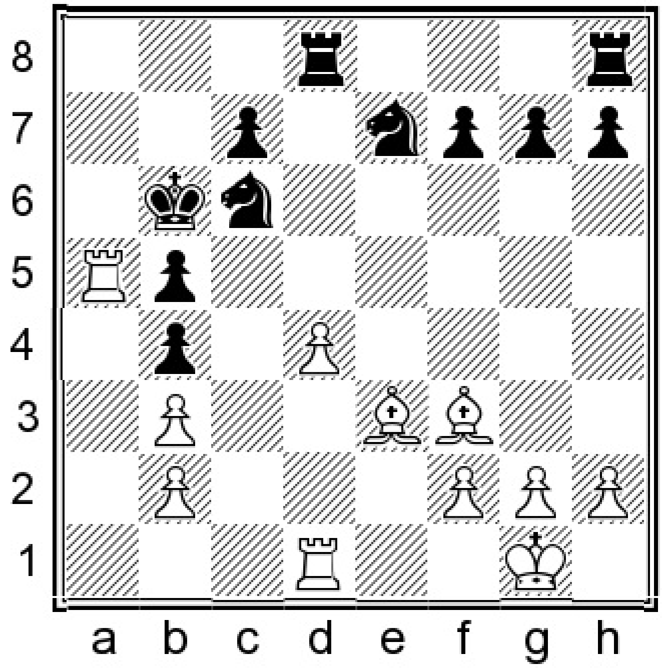


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

310 **35.♕xf8+!** 1-0 Jobava-Hernandez Carmenates, Barcelona 2008; 35...♗xf8 36.♖e8#.

311

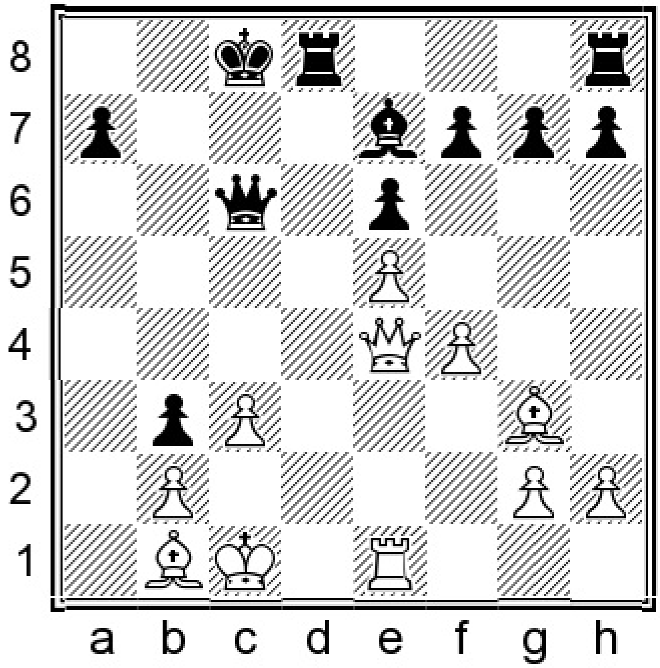

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h

White to play

Show/Hide Solution

311 **20.d5+!** Perez Ponsa-Y.Vovk, Gibraltar INT blitz 2008; Black resigned: the rook is untouchable because of mate on a1.

312

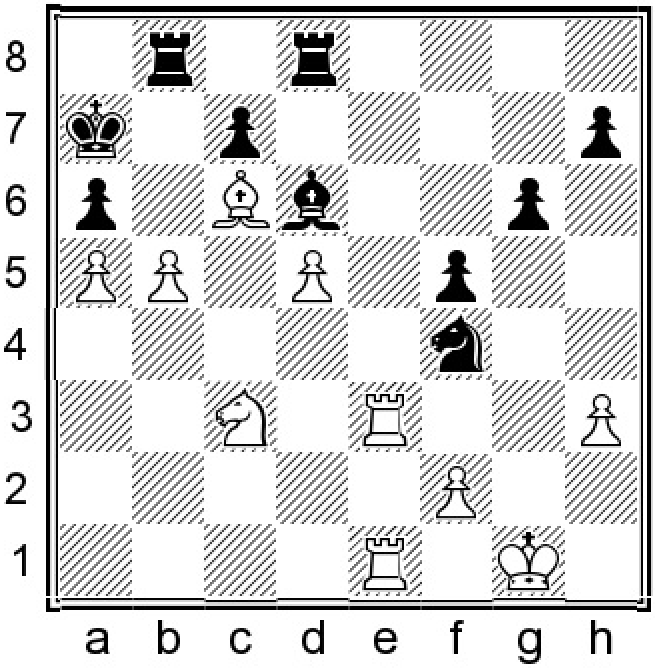


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

312 **23...♕xc3+!** 0-1 Georgiou-S.Volkov, Korinthos 2000; 24.bxc3 ♗a3#.

313

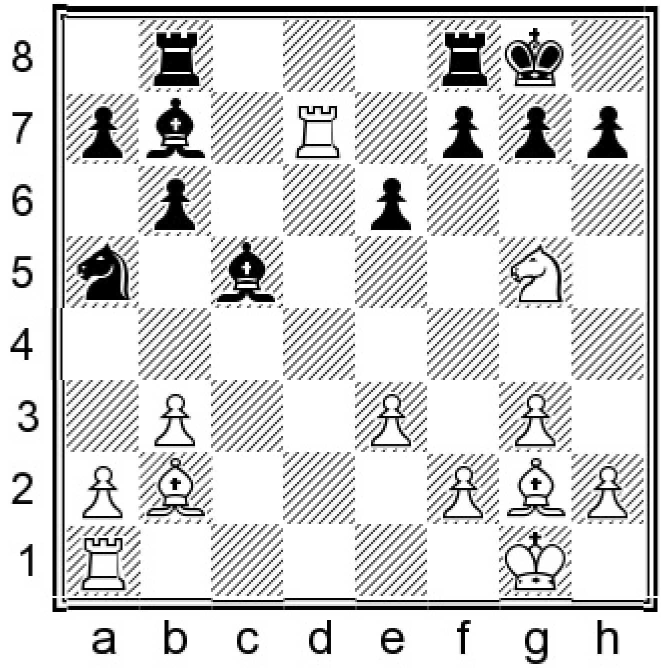

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h

White to play

Show/Hide Solution

313 **29.b6+** S.Zhigalko-Maiorov, Minsk ch-BLR 2009; Black resigned because of 29...cxb6 30.♖e7+.

314

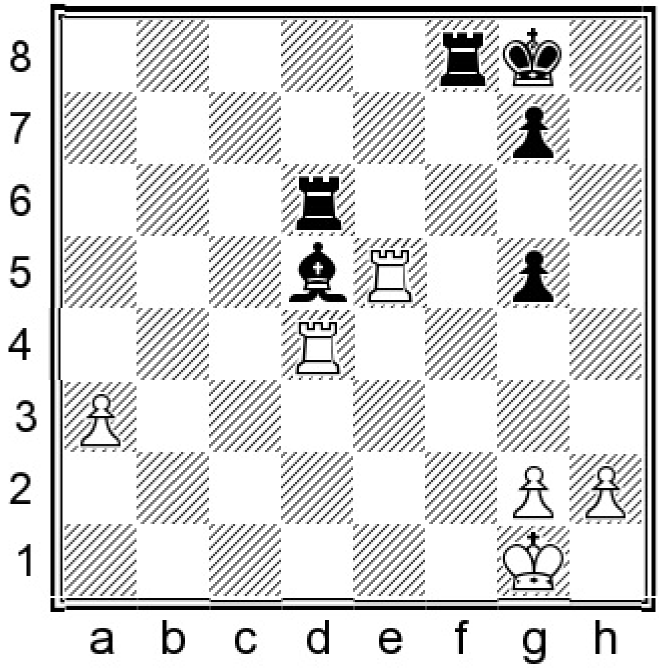

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h

White to play

Show/Hide Solution

314 **17.♘xe6!** 1-0 Kengis-Tsiganova, Pärnu 2004.

315

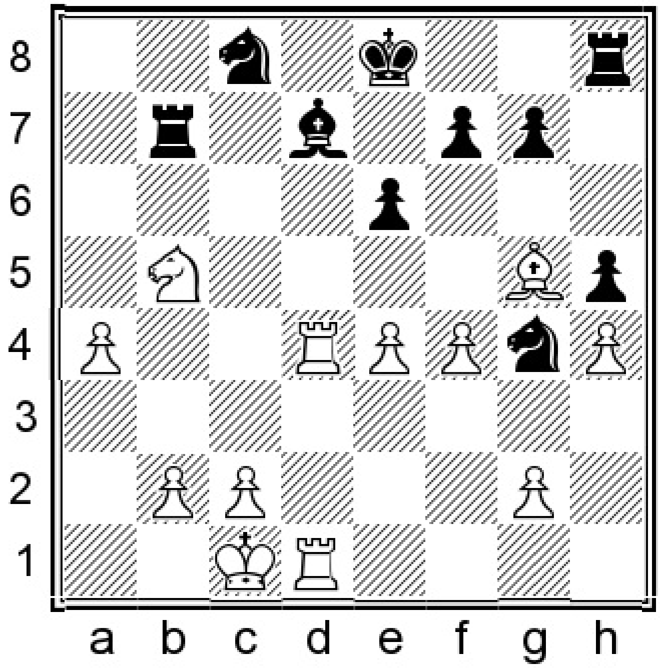


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

315 **35...♗c4!** Li Shilong-Wang Hao, Xinghua ch-CHN 2009; an elegant decision. White can take any of the attacked pieces, but his immobile king is quickly mated. Therefore he resigned.

316

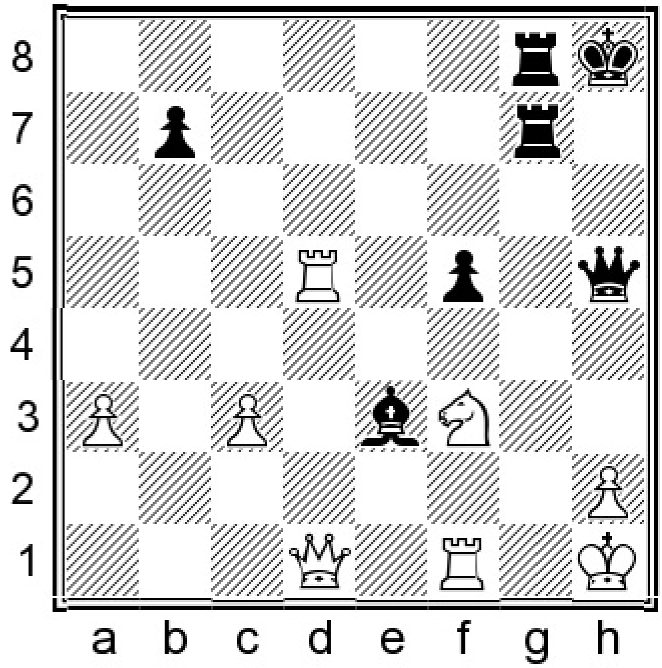


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

316 **22.♖xd7!** Corrales-Quesada Perez, Havana 2009; Black resigned, in view of 22...♖xd7 23.♘c7+, and after 23...♖xc7 it's mate by 24.♖d8#.

317

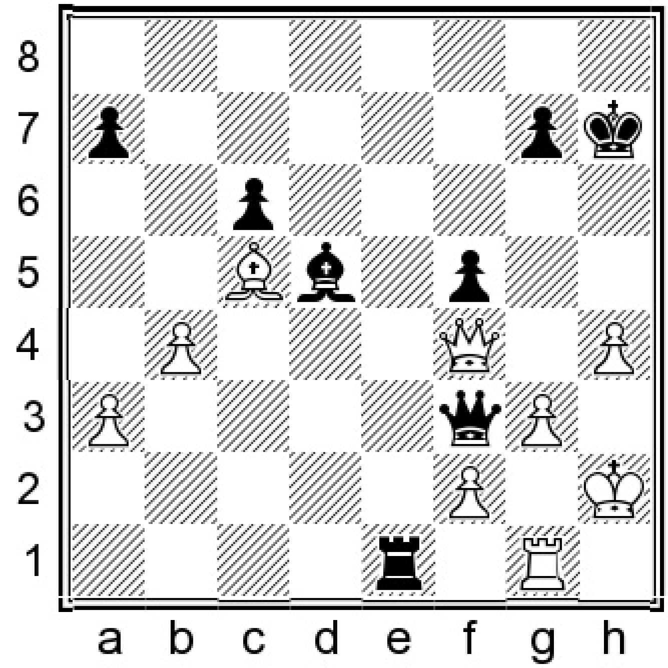


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

317 Black’s target is the g1-square, which is currently defended three times. But Black’s next move removes two of the defences...**45...♛xf3+!** 0-1 Zhang Fan-White, Edinburgh ch-SCO 2009.

318

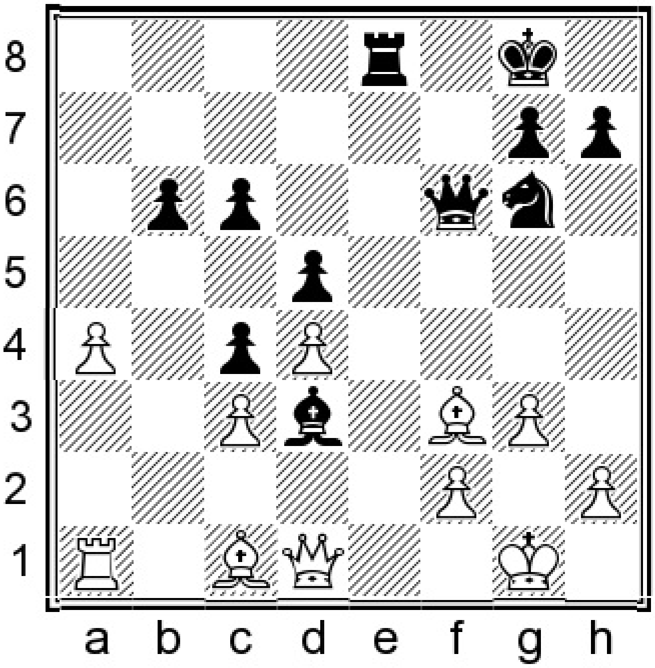

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h

Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

318 **39...♕h1+!** 0-1 Manakova-Stepovaia, St Petersburg W 2009.

319

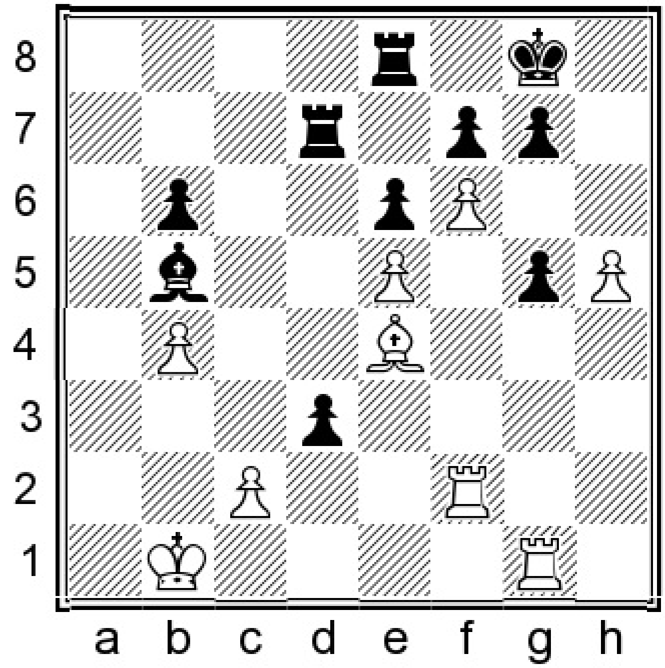


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

319 **23...♕xf3!** Laksman-Lundin, Lund 2010; White resigned because of 24.♕xf3 ♖e1+ 25.♔g2 ♗f1+ 26.♔g1 ♗h3#.

320

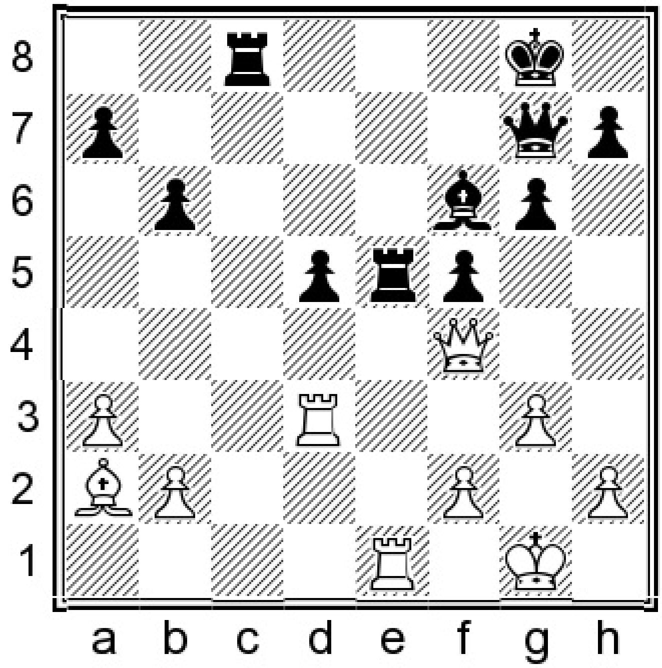


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

320 **36.♖xg5!** The white attack is more important than a rook. **36...d2 37.♖xg7+ ♔f8 38.♖xd2 ♖xd2 39.♗h7** 1-0 Van Delft-Neverov, Dieren 2010.

321

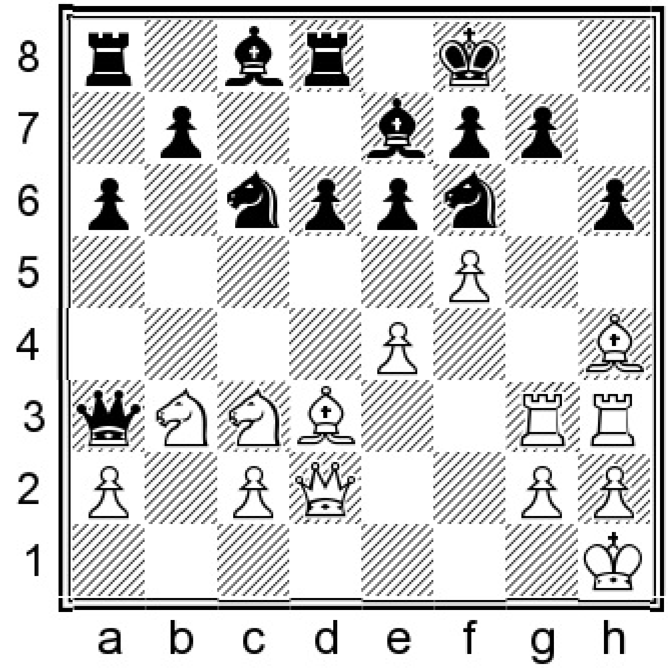

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h

White to play

Show/Hide Solution

321 **27.♖xe5 ♗xe5 28.♖xd5!** 1-0 Rakhmanov-Ginzburg, Irkutsk 2010; 28...♗xf4 29.♖d8#.

322

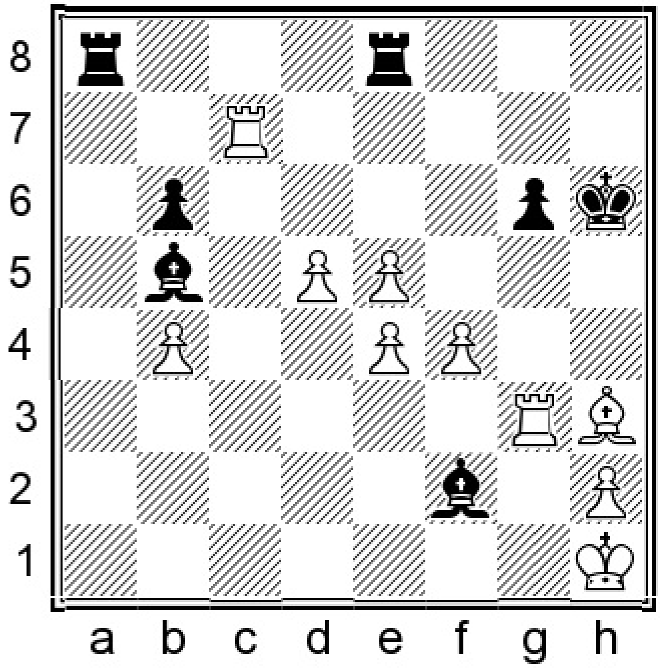


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

322 A surprising succession of sacrifices allows the black king to be mated in full view of his helpless army, cut off on the queenside: **20.♖xg7! ♚xg7 21.♕xh6+!** Matthews-Seegolam, Khanty-Mansiysk ol 2010; Black resigned because of 21...♔xh6 22.♗xf6#.

323

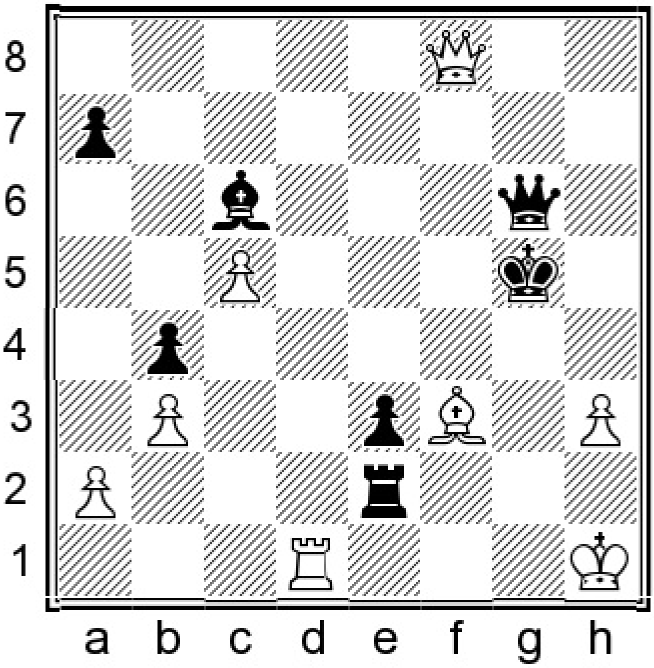


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

323 White is a piece down and now indicates his willingness to part with a rook as well: **32.♖xg6+!** 1-0 Baburin-S.Short, Dun Loaghaire 2010; 32...♔xg6 33.♗f5+, and mate next move.

324

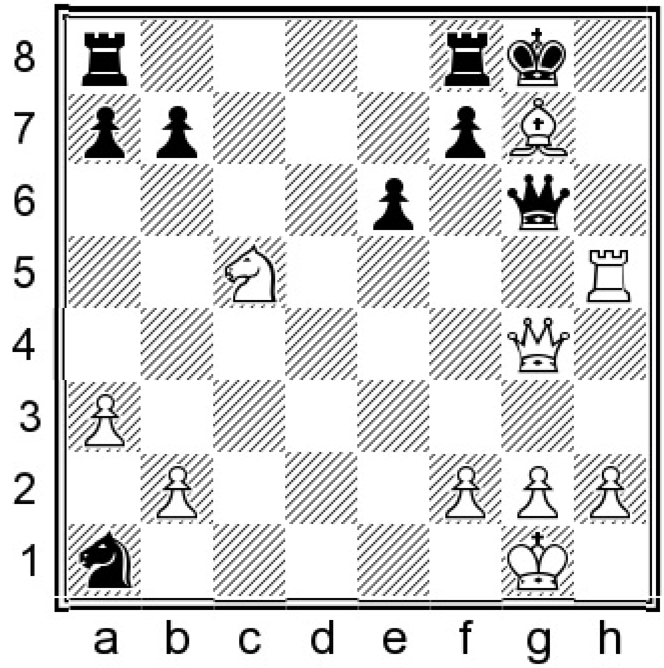

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h

Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

324 **50...♖h2+! 51.♔g1** 51.♔xh2 ♕c2+ 52.♔g3 ♕f2#. **51...♔h4+ 52.♗g4 ♖h1#** Höffer-Geske, Germany Bundesliga 2010/11.

325

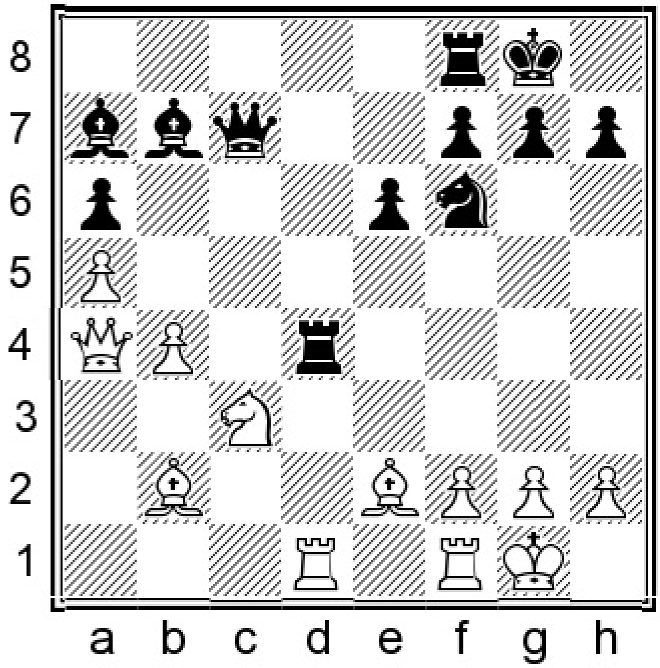


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

325 **26.♗f6!** 1-0 Andreikin-Dreev, Baku 2011; the same result follows after any bishop retreat to squares between c3 and f6.

326

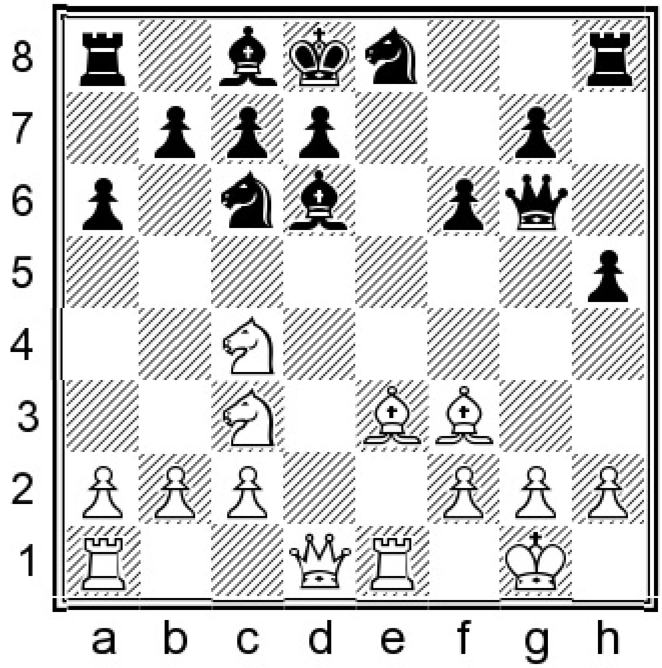


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

326 Again a theme that is as old as the hills: the white queen is cut off on the edge of the board and cannot help his colleagues in defence of their king. **18...♖h4! 19.g3** 19.h3 ♖xh3 20.gxh3 ♕g3#. **19...♕xg3+!** Soultatis-Kapnisis, Vrachati 2011; White resigned, the rook mates on h1.

327

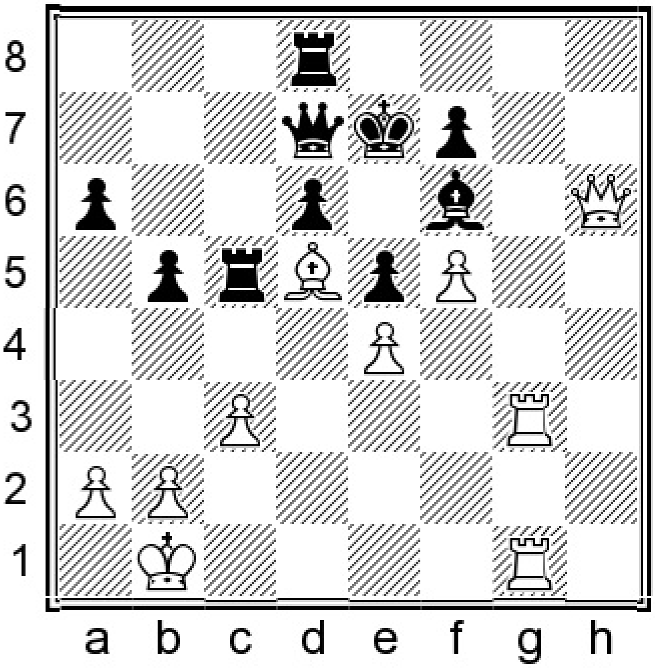


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

327 **14.♘xd6! ♘xd6 15.♕xd6!** 1-0 Borst-Heijboer, Leiden 2011; 15...cxd6 16.♗b6#.

328

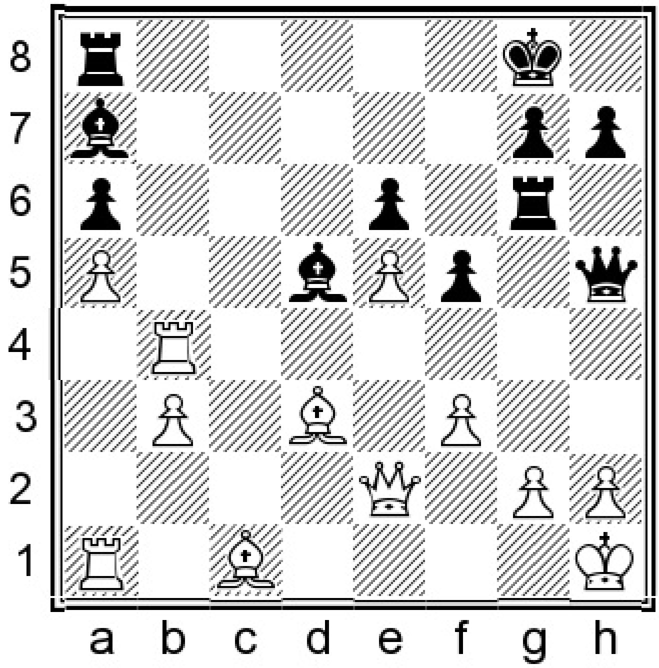


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

328 This example shows once again how dangerous a bishop on d5 can be for the enemy king: **32.♕xf6+!! ♔xf6 33.♖g6+! fxg6 34.♖xg6+ ♔e7 35.f6+** 1-0 Lutz-Ftacnik, Germany Bundesliga 2000/011; 35...♔e8 36.♖g8#.

329

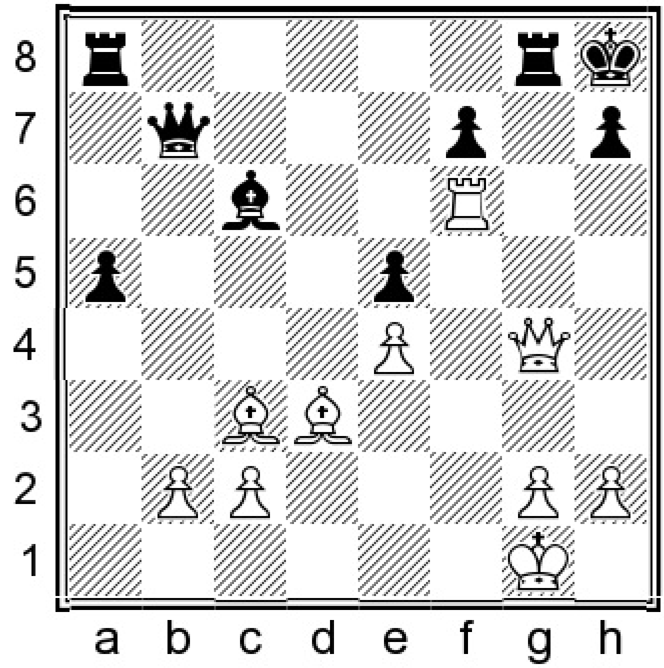


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

329 **26...♗xf3!** Kozul-Bosiocic, Opatija ch-CRO 2012; White resigned: the g2-pawn cannot move because of ...♖g1#.

330

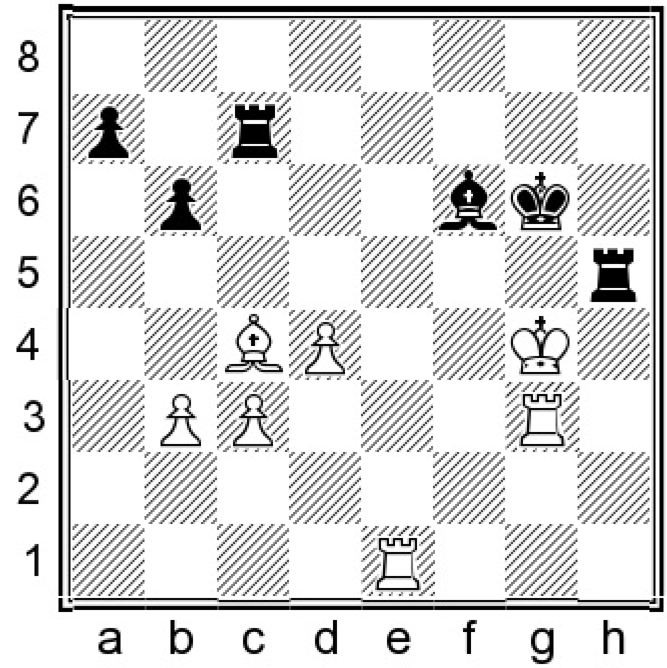


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

330 **26.♗xe5! ♖xg4 27.♖g6+ f6 28.♗xf6+ ♕g7 29.♗xg7+** 1-0 Ziaziulkina-Arig, Gaziantep Ech W 2012.

331

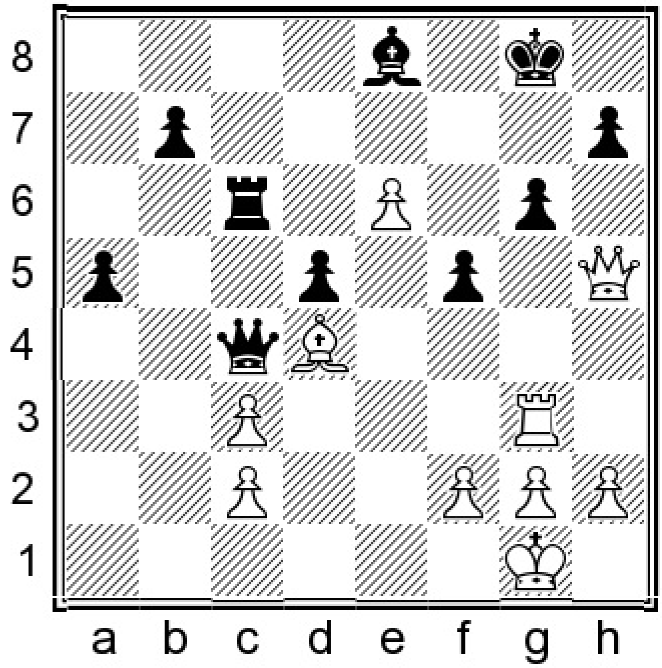


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

331 **36.♔f4+ ♗g5+** Nor is he saved after 36...♔h6 (36...♔h7 37.♗d3+; 36...♖g5 37.♗d3+ ♔h6 38.♖h1+) 37.♖e6 ♖f7 38.♗d3, and Black is helpless. **37.♖xg5+!** E.Sveshnikov-Degraeve, Cappelle-la-Grande 2012; Black resigned because of 37...♖xg5 38.♖e6+ ♔h5 39.♗e2+.

332

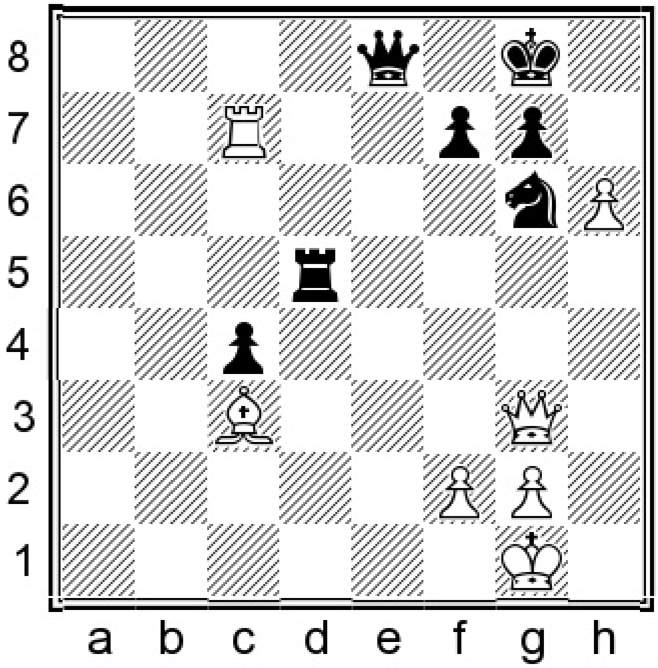


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

332 **29.♕xh7+!** 1-0 P.Smirnov-Pelletier, Panormo Ech rapid 2002; 29...♔xh7 30.♖h3+.

333

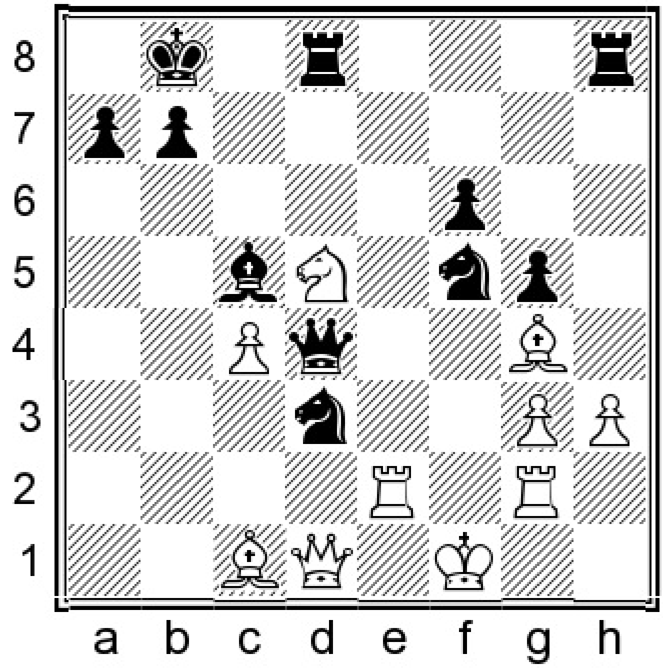

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h

White to play

Show/Hide Solution

333 **42.♕xg6!** Negi-Marin, La Massana 2012; Black resigned – after 42...fxg6 43.♖xg7+ ♔f8 44.♗b4+ he loses everything.

334

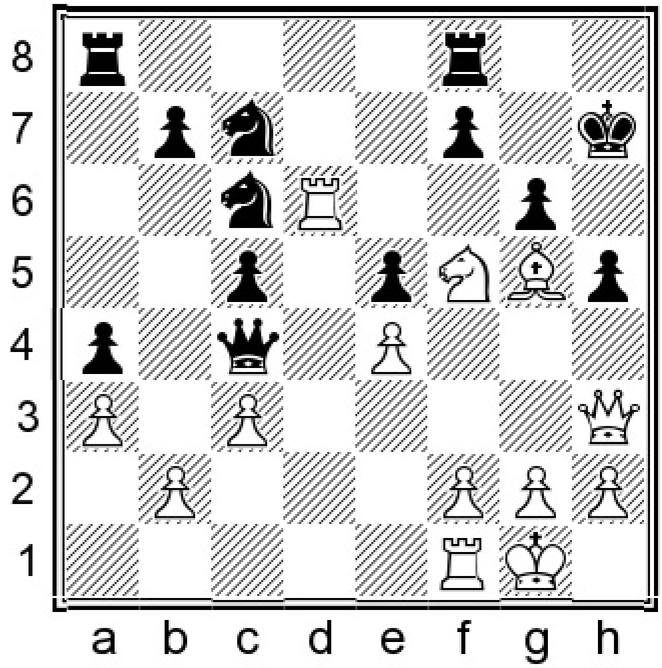

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h

Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

334 **27...♕xg4!** 0-1 Yu-Seirawan, Vancouver 2012; disaster strikes on h1.

335

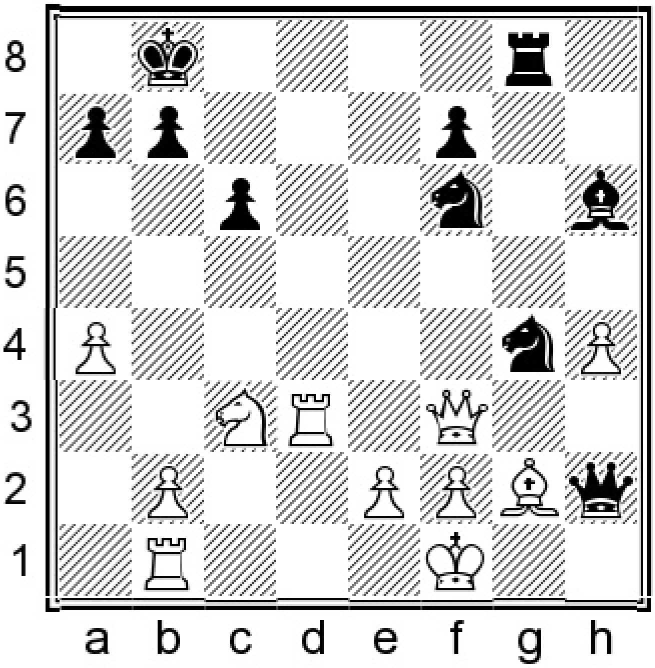

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h

White to play

Show/Hide Solution

335 **25.♕xh5+! gxh5 26.♖h6+** 1-0 Ju.Plenca-Klaric, Split 2012; after 26...♔g8 27.♗f6 mate is unavoidable.

336

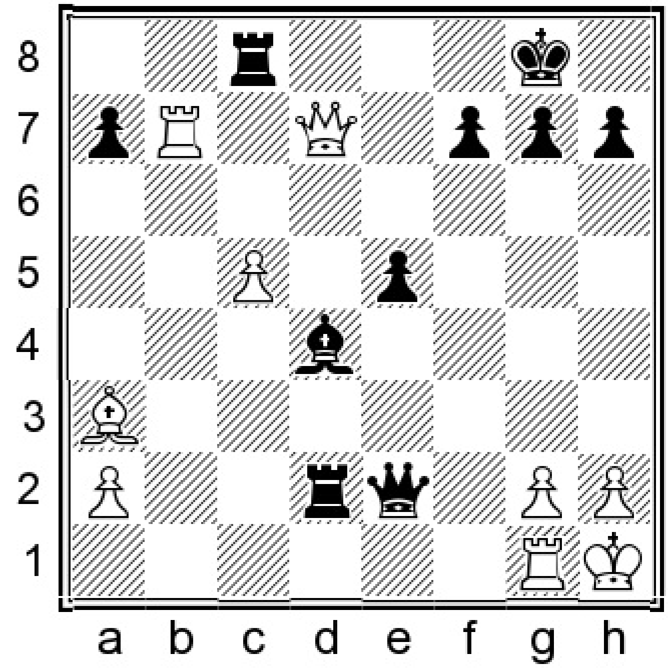

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

336 **25...♛h1+!** 0-1 Milos-P.Carlsson, Istanbul ol 2012; forcing mate in three: 26.♗xh1 ♘h2+ 27.♔e1 ♖g1#.

337


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h

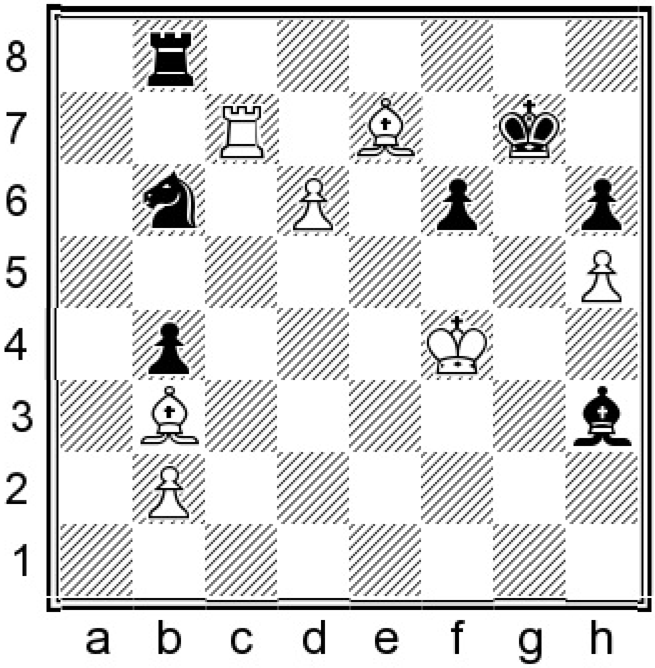
Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

337 **26...♕xg2+!** 0-1 Ferdiman-Hakiki, Jakarta 2012; 27.♖xg2 ♖d1+.

Show in Text Mode

338

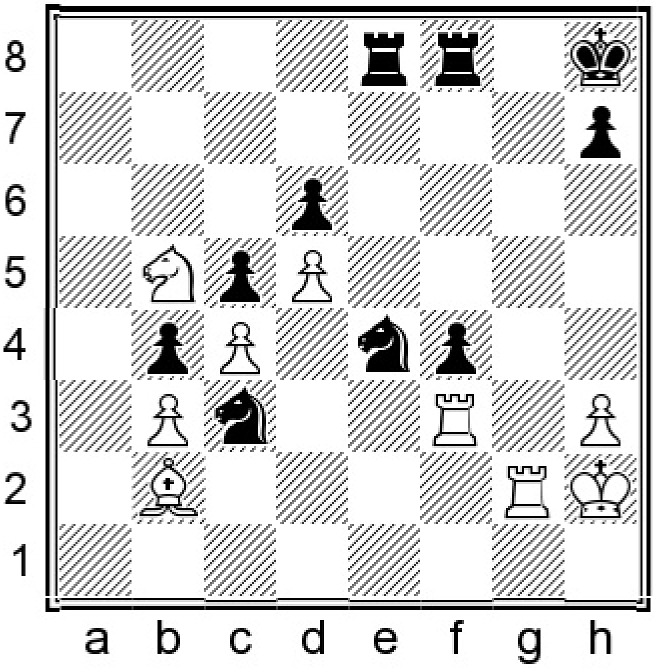


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

338 **44.♗xf6+!** 1-0 Fridman-McShane, Wolvega 2012; after any king move, he is mated on f7.

339



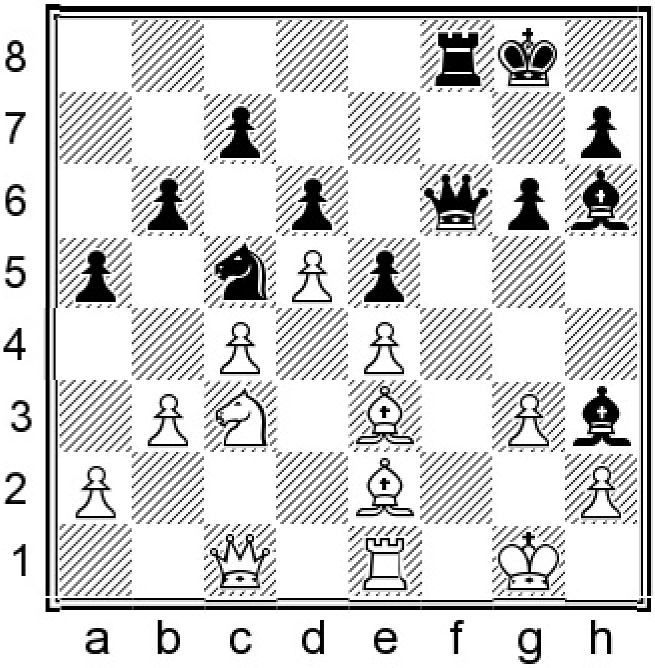
White to play

Show/Hide Solution

339 No success results from 40.♘xc3 ♘xc3 41.♖xc3 bxc3 42.♗xc3+, because Black manages to defend by 42...♖e5. But White can start by destroying the bases...

40.♘xd6!! 1-0 Naiditsch-Timman, Wijk aan Zee 2013; after 40...♘xd6 41.♖xc3 ♘f5 he decides with 42.♖d3+ ♘d4 43.♖xd4.

340

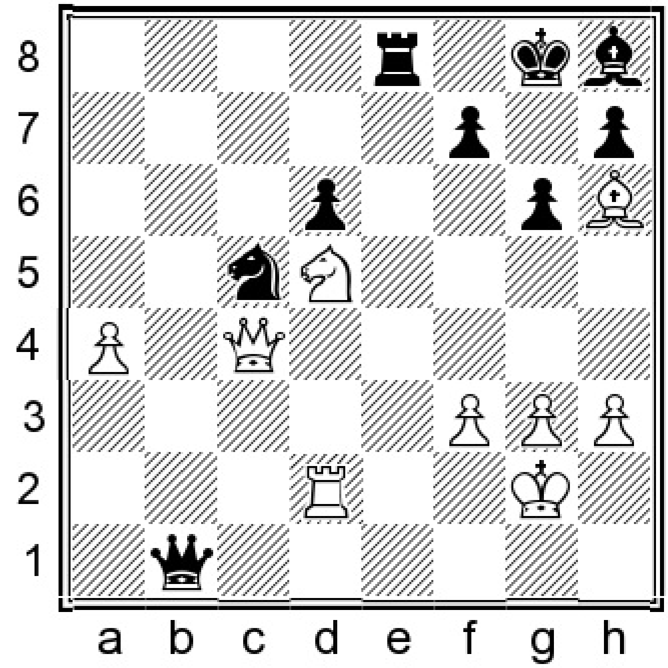

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h

Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

340 **26...♘d3! 27.♗xd3 ♕f3** Now, in order to defend g2, White has to remove a defence from f1. **28.♕d2 ♗xe3+** 0-1 Pinho-Gallagher, Gibraltar 2013; 29.♖xe3 ♕f1+.

341

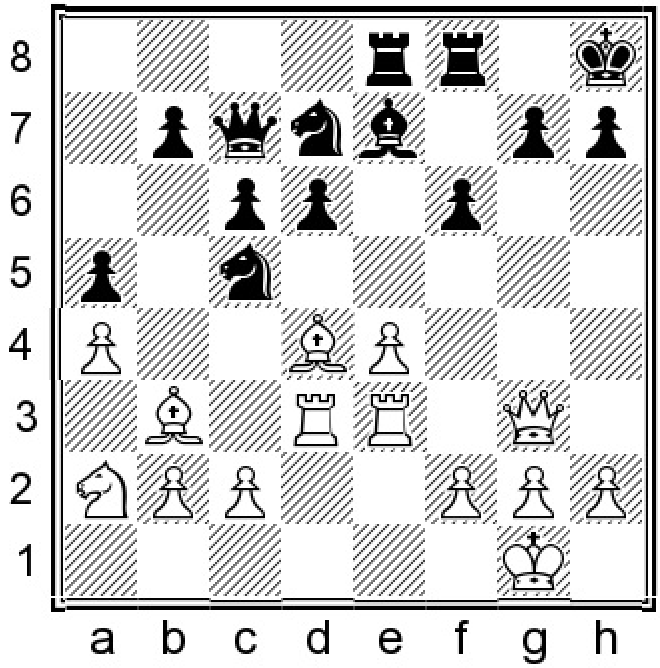


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

341 **35.♕xc5!! ♗g7** On 35...dxc5 the battle is ended by 36.♘e7+! ♖xe7 37.♖d8+. **36.♘e7+ ♔h8 37.♗xg7+ ♔xg7 38.♕xd6** And White won in Aleksandrov-Meenakshi, Dubai 2010.

342

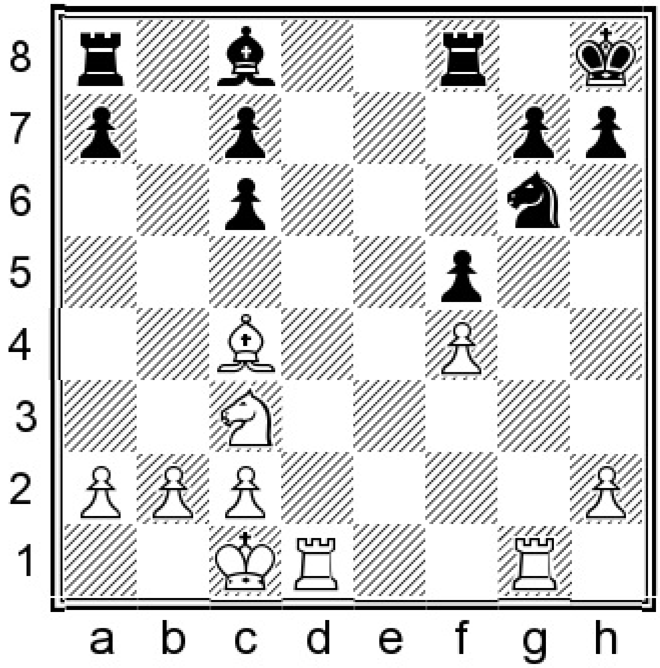


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

342 **22.♕g6! ♘xb3** 22...hxg6 23.♖h3#. **23.♖h3 h6 24.♖xh6+ ♔g8** Or 24...gxh6 25.♕xh6+ ♔g8 26.♕g6+ and 27.♖h3#. **25.♖h7 ♖f7 26.♖dh3** 1-0 Terletsky-Zajarnyi, Horodok 2013.

343

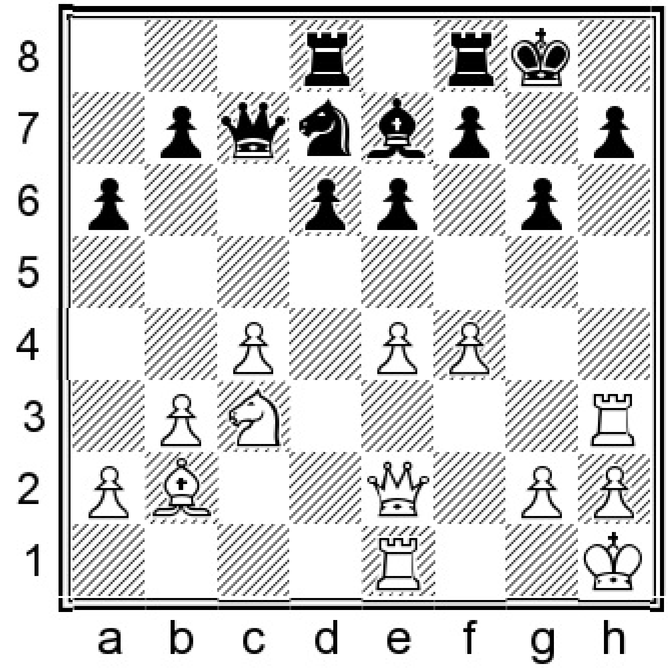


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

343 **17.♖xg6!** Menzel-S.Koop, Neumünster 2013; even a queen down, this idea can end the game, as we have already seen. Black resigned because of 17...hxg6 18.♖d3!, and there is no defence against mate.

344

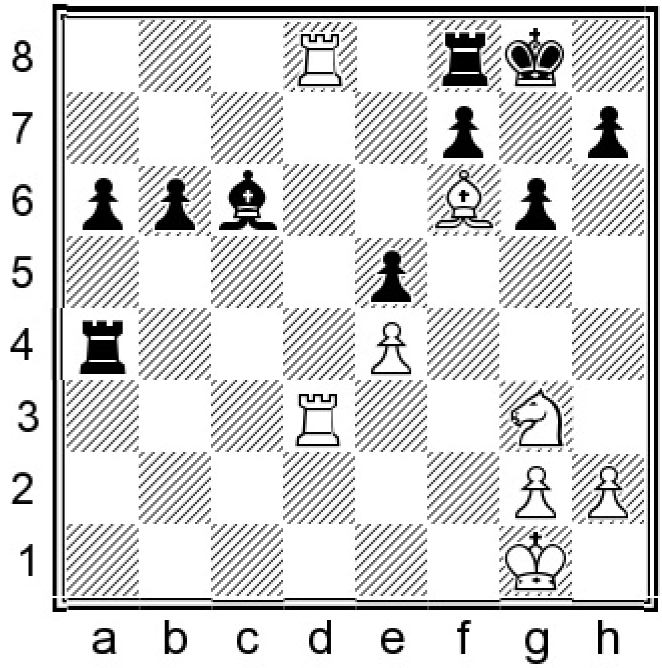


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

344 **20.♘d5! exd5 21.♕h5!** 1-0 Mainka-Van de Plassche, Germany Bundesliga B 2002/03; 21...♘f6 22.♗xf6; 21...gxh5 22.♖g3+.

345

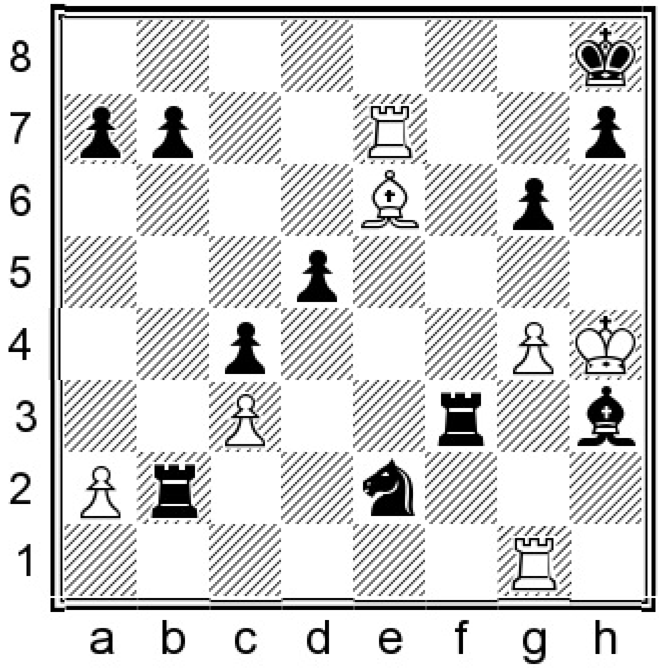


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

345 **29.♘f5! ♖a1+ 30.♔f2 ♖a2+ 31.♔e1** 1-0 Meribanov-Kempinski, Legnica Ech 2013; the king easily escapes the checks, whilst the knight cannot be taken because of mate in one.

346

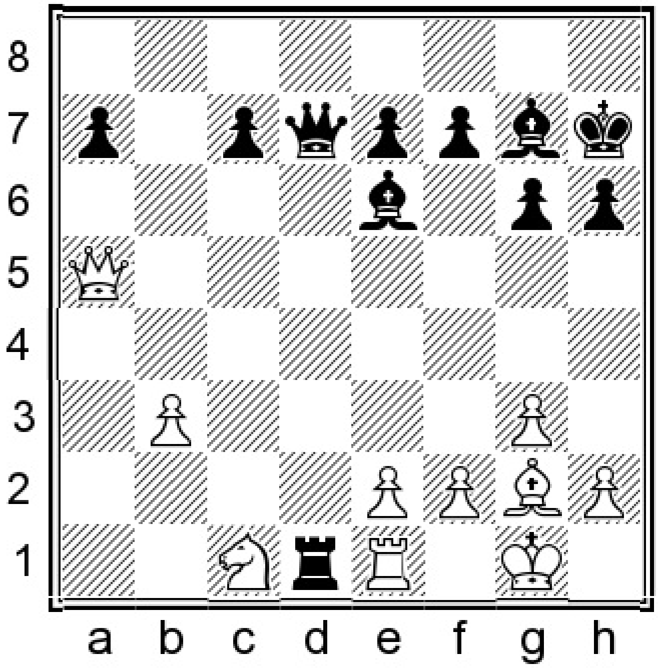


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

346 **31.♔g5! ♖f7** He also loses after both 31...♖f8 32.♔h6, and 31...♗f1 32.♖e8+ ♔g7 33.♖g8#. **32.♖xf7 ♔g8 33.♖c7+ ♔f8 34.♔f6** 1-0 Vishnu-Chatalbashev, Albena 2013.

347

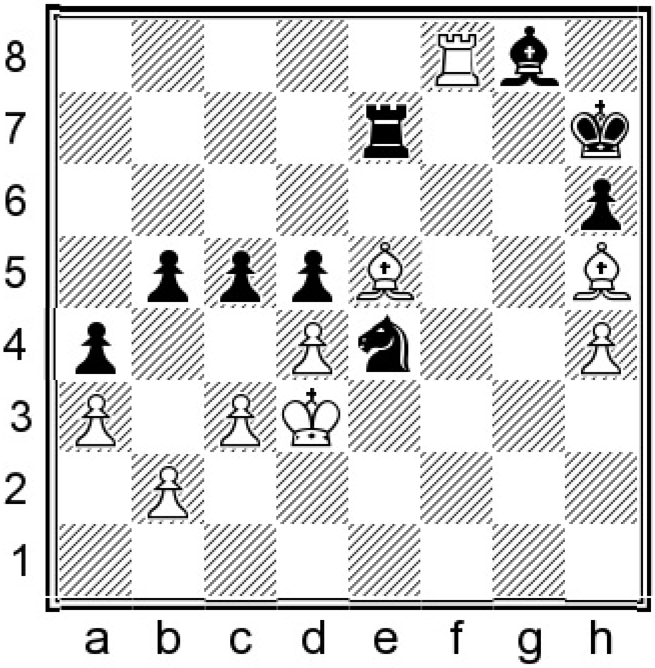


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

347 **28...♕b5!** Romanishin-Sadzikowski, Lublin 2013; White resigned, having seen 29.♕xb5 ♖xe1+ 30.♗f1 ♗h3 31.e3 ♖xc1 – after the exchange on f1, Black is left with an extra piece.

348

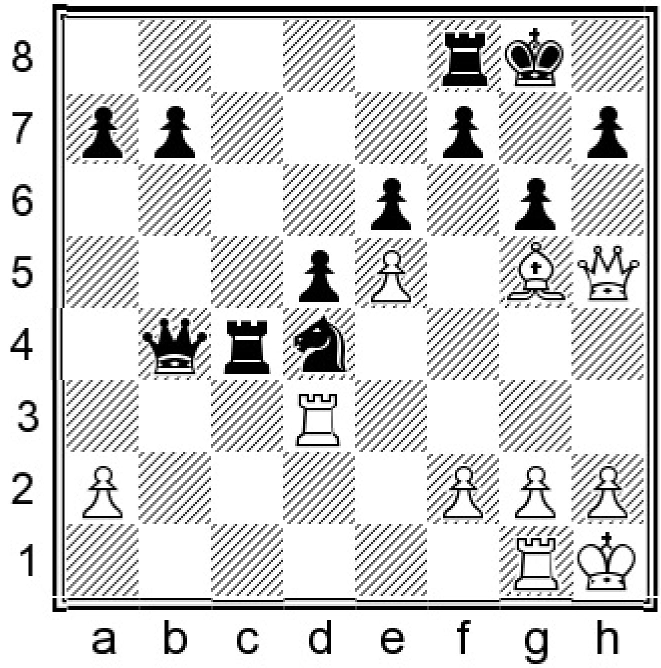


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

348 **58.♗g4! ♗e6 59.h5!** Shutting off the g6-square – we have already seen this set-up in the present chapter. **59...♗xg4 60.♖h8#** Dowgird-Swicarz, Wroclaw rapid 2013.

349

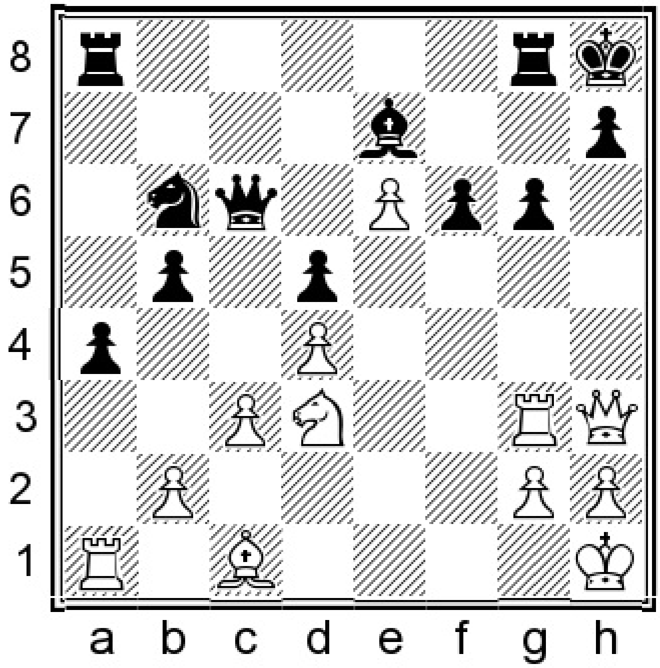


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

349 **23.♕xh7+! ♔xh7 24.♖h3+** 1-0 Garcia-Gleizerov, Montcada 2013; after 24...♔g8 25.♗f6 mate is unavoidable.

350

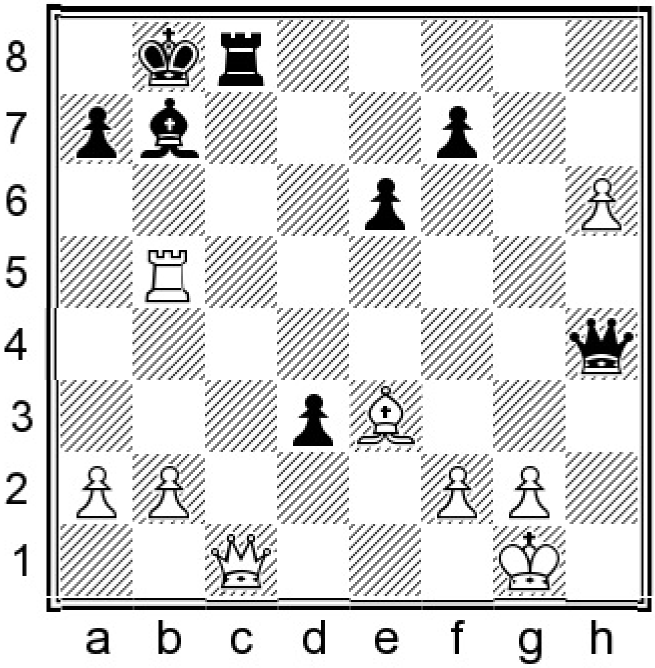

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h

White to play

Show/Hide Solution

350 **26.♕xh7+! ♔xh7 27.♖h3+ ♔g7 28.♗h6+ ♔h7 29.♗f8#** Pancevski-Bogdanovski, Struga ch-FRM 2013.

351

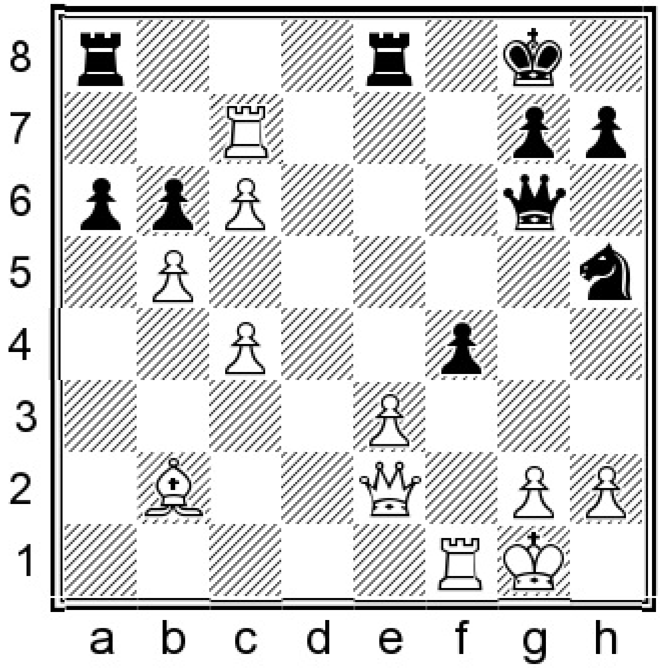

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h

White to play

Show/Hide Solution

351 **31.♗f4+! ♔a8 32.♕xc8+! ♗xc8 33.♖b8#** Sipila-J.Geller, Pardubice 2013.

352

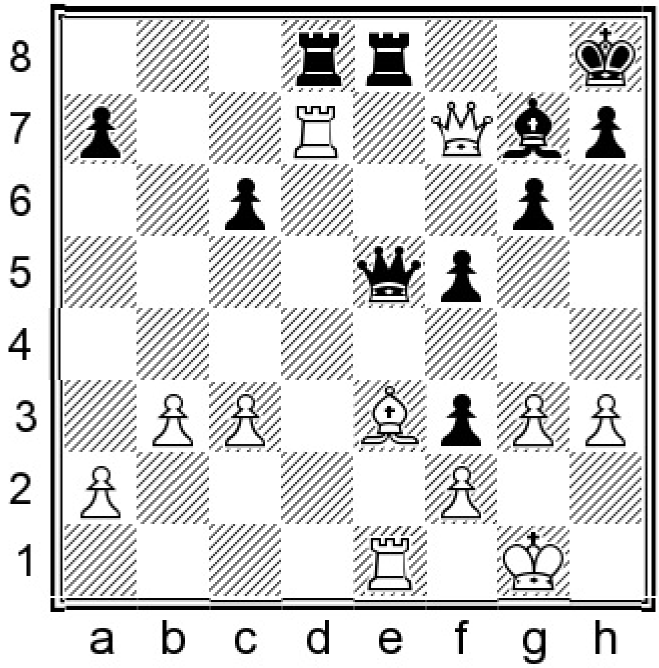


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

352 **31.♕xh5!** Korobov-Durarbayli, Tromsø playoff rapid 2013; Black resigned because of 31...♕xh5 32.♖xg7+ ♔h8 (32...♔f8 33.♖xf4+) 33.♖g5+ ♖e5 34.♗xe5#.

353

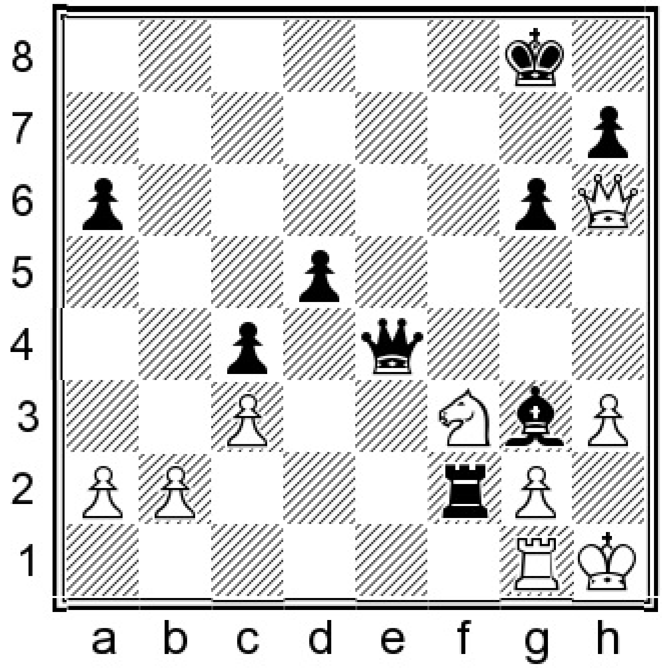


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

353 **26.♗d4! ♖xd7** 26...♕xe1+ 27.♔h2 ♖xd7 28.♗xg7#. **27.♕xe8+** 1-0 Swicarz-Froewis, Vienna 2013.

354

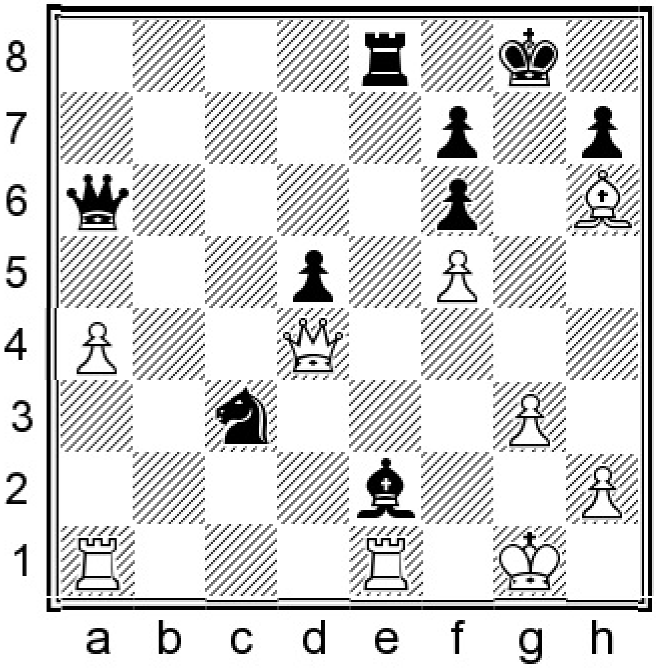


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

354 **35...♕xf3!** 0-1 C.Braun-Wagner, Saarbrücken ch-GER 2013.

355

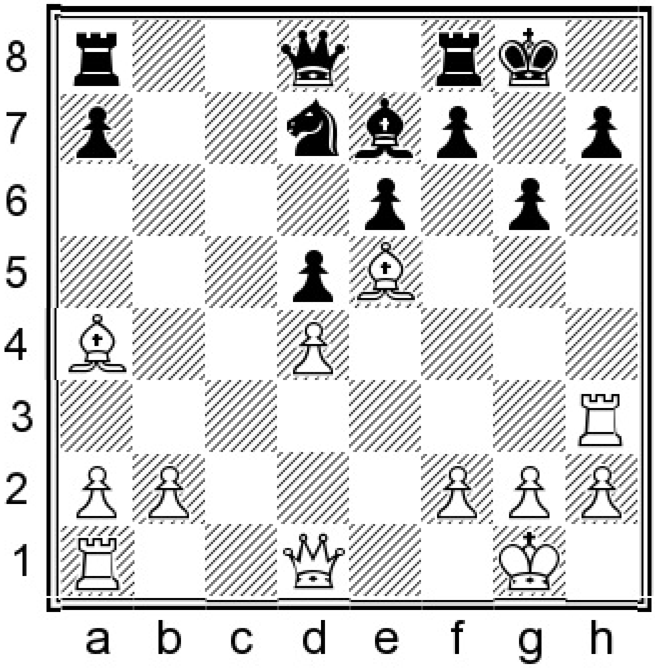


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

355 **37.♕g4+!** 1-0 E.Hansen-Shankland, Barcelona 2013.

356

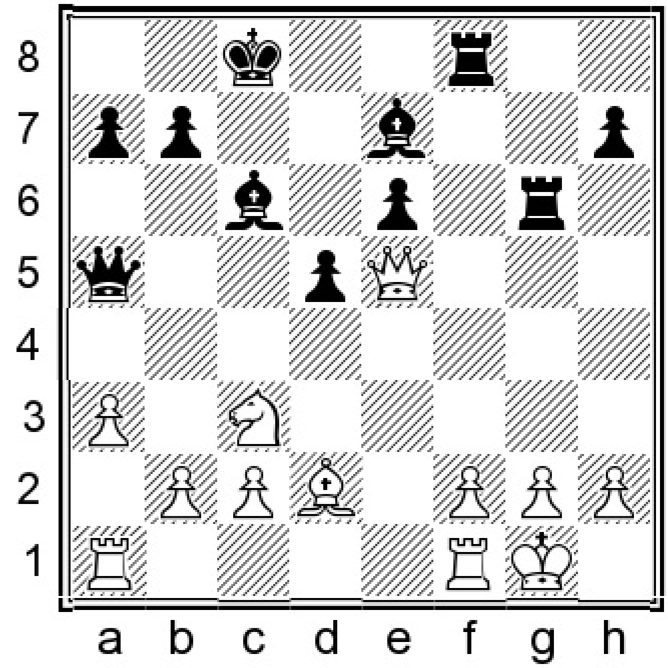


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

356 **23.♗xd7!** Kirk-Arkell, England 4NCL 2012/13; Black resigned because of 23...♕xd7 24.♕h5! gxh5 25.♖g3+, and the queen does not observe g5.

357

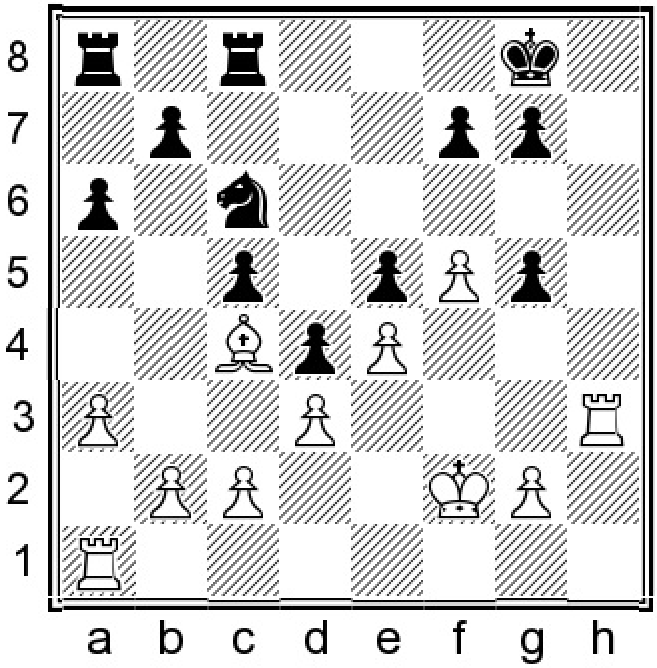

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h

Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

357 **20...d4! 21.♕xa5 ♖xg2+ 22.♔h1 ♗f3!** 0-1 Corbalan Gomez-Dizdar, Dos Hermanas 2006; White cannot attack the bishop: 23.♕h5 ♖g4#.

358

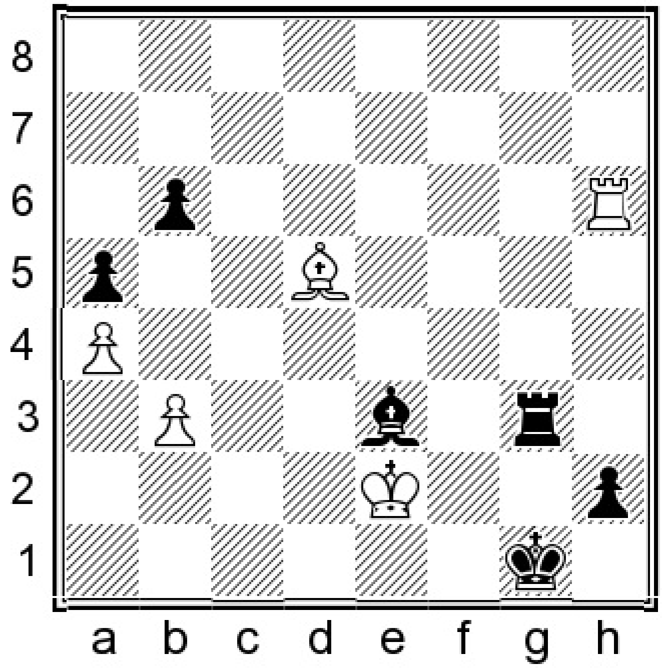


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

358 It seems nothing can prevent the black king slipping away after 24...♔f8. However, it can be held at the cost of a rook... **24.♖h8+!!** It turns out that this method can even work effectively in the absence of queens. **24...♔xh8 25.♗xf7 g6 26.f6** 1-0 Yoseph-Limono, Penang 2013.

359

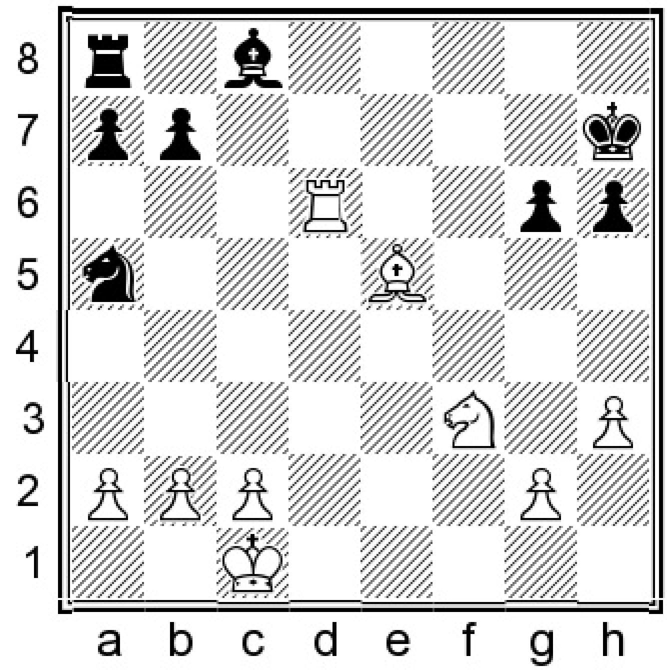

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h

White to play

Show/Hide Solution

359 **72.♖f6! ♖g2+ 73.♗xg2 ♔xg2 74.♖g6+ ♔h1 75.♔xe3 b5 76.axb5 a4 77.♔f2 a3 78.♖e6** 1-0 Cheremnova-Guseva, Khanty-Mansiysk W 2013.

360

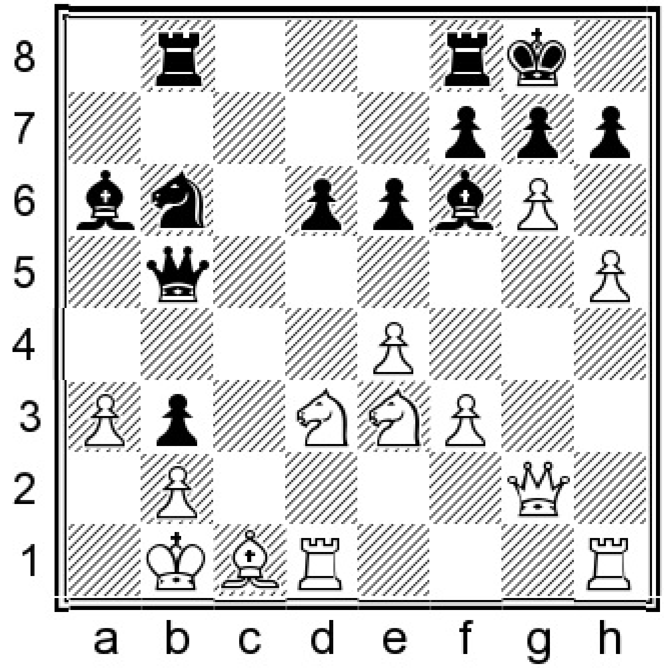


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

360 **27.♘g5+! hxg5 28.♖d8** 1-0 Kislinsky-Cerveny, Litomysl 2013; mate on f8 can be avoided only by giving up a rook.

361

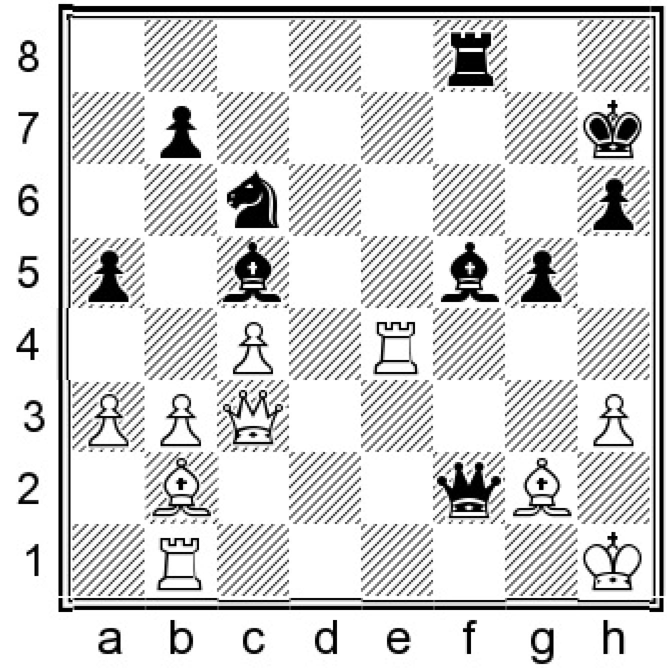


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

361 **28...♕xd3+! 29.♖xd3 ♗xd3+ 30.♔a1 ♖a8!** 0-1 Popovic-Ivanisevic, Serbia & Montenegro tt 2005; the threat of 31...♖xa3+ is unstoppable.

362

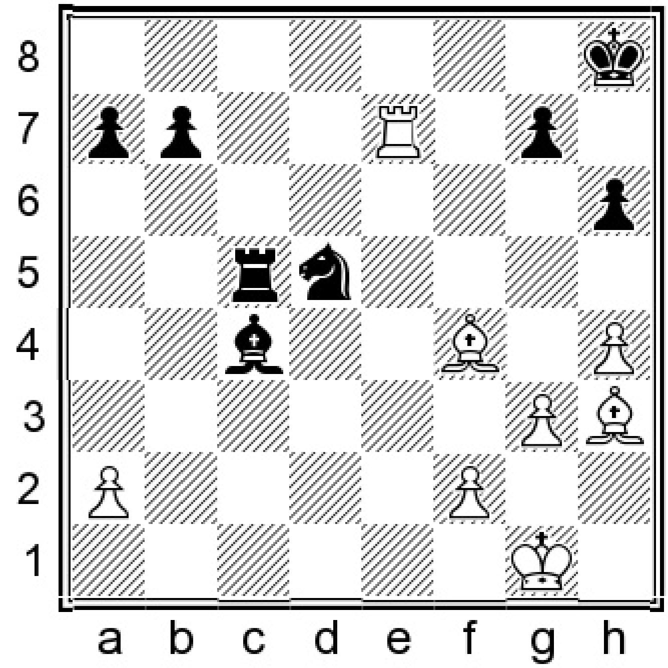


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

362 **31...♕xg2+!** Black agrees to large material losses, but the white king will be greatly exposed. And sure enough, he will not be able to resist for long: **32.♔xg2 ♗xe4+ 33.♔h2** If 33.♔g3 ♗d6+ 34.♔g4 and an easy win results from 34...♖f4+ with mate or win of the queen, whilst the computer sees mate in 6 after the far-from-obvious 34...♘d4!. **33...♖f2+** 0-1 Novik-Sakaev, Kirishi rapid 2007; he has to choose between mate in one and stepping into a discovered check.

363

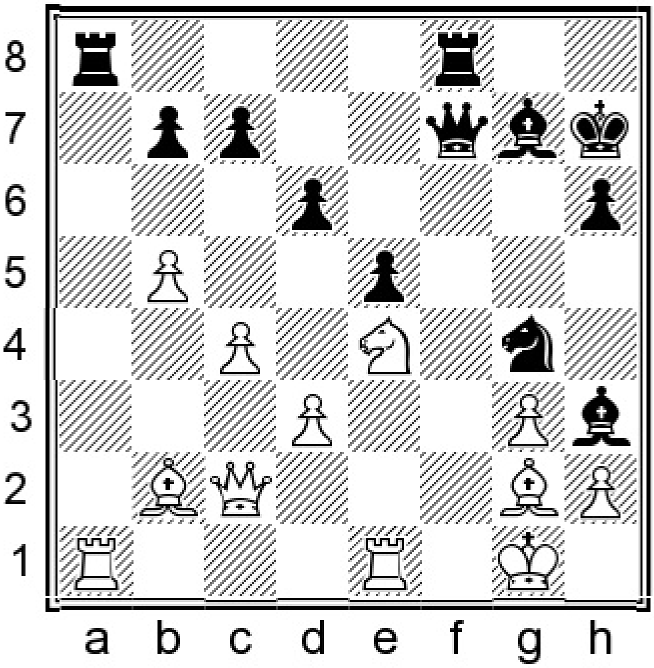


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

363 **32.♖e8+ ♔h7 33.♗f5+ g6 34.♗e5! gxf5 35.h5!** 1-0 Grandelius-Semcesen, Lund ch-SWE 2010; the point! It had to be seen at the start of the combination. Mate can only be avoided by means of 35...♘f6 36.♗xf6 ♗g8, but after 37.♖e7+ the bishop must be surrendered.

364



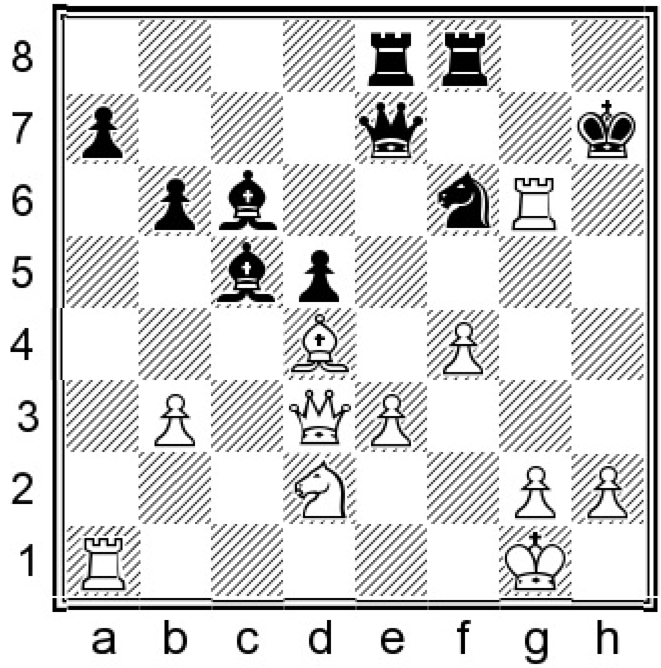
Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

364 Here there followed 26...♖xa1?! 27.♗xa1? ♘e3!, and White resigned in S.Smits-Michalczak, Vlissingen 2010, not wishing to be mated after 28.♖xe3 ♕f1+. He could have offered more tenacious resistance with 27.♖xa1! ♘e3 28.♕f2 ♕xf2+ 29.♘xf2 ♗xg2 30.♖e1 ♘c2 31.♖c1 (31.♖e2 ♘d4 32.♗xd4 ♗f3) 31...♘b4 32.♔xg2 ♖xf2+ 33.♔xf2 ♘xd3+ 34.♔e3, although there is no doubt about the assessment of the endgame.

But an immediate win results from the transposition – **26...♘e3!**, and if 27.♖xe3, then 27...♖xa1+ 28.♗xa1 ♕f1+ 29.♗xf1 ♖xf1#. Here 27.♕f2 no longer helps: 27...♘xg2 28.♕xf7 (28.♖xa8 ♘xe1 29.♖xf8 ♕xf8 30.♕xe1 ♕f3 31.♕f2 ♕d1+, and the queen + bishop give mate) 28...♖xf7 29.♖xa8 ♘xe1, with an extra piece.

365

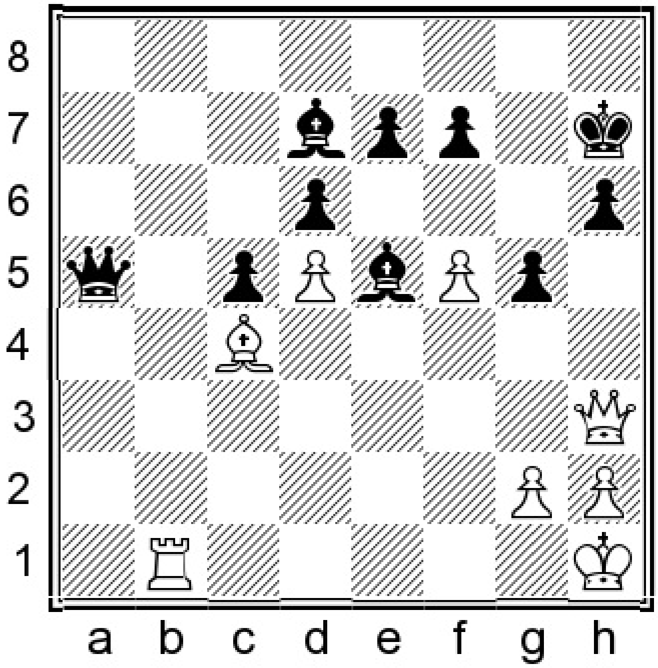


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

365 **24...♕xe3+! 25.♗xe3 ♖xe3! 26.♖xa7+ ♗d7!** Zherebukh-Shneider, Cappelle-la-Grande 2011; White resigned: he suffers large material losses because of the threat of mate on e1.

366

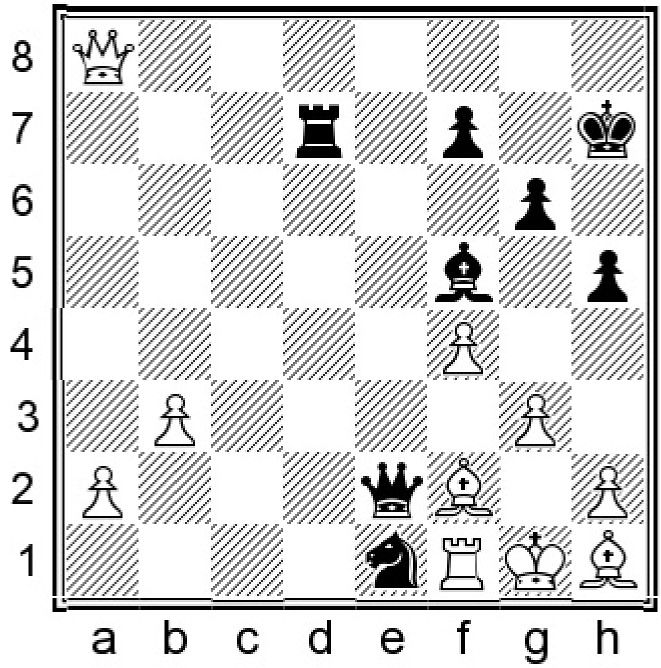

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h

White to play

Show/Hide Solution

366 **35.f6!!** Not obvious but immediate ending the fight. **35...♗xh3 36.♗d3+ ♔g8 37.♖b8+ ♕d8 38.♖xd8#** Rapport-Pijpers, Groningen 2011.

367

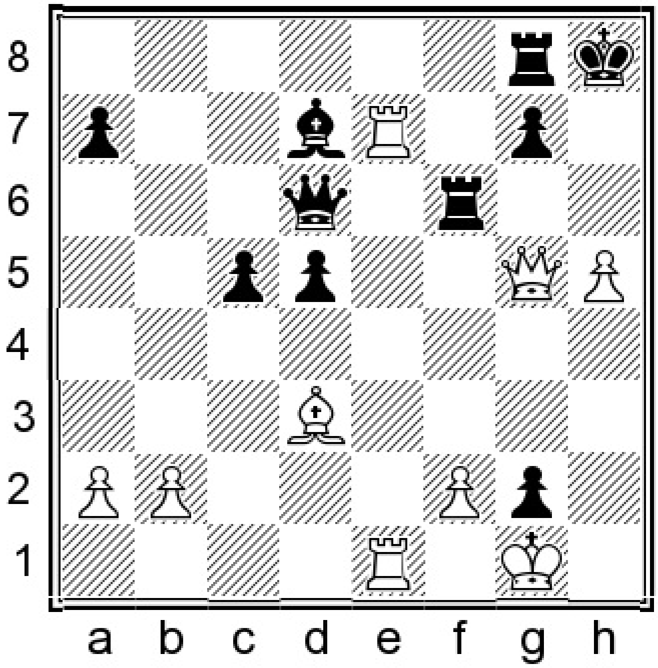

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h

Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

367 **39...♗h3! 40.♖xe1 ♖d1** Bakre-Senador, Al-Ain 2012; White resigned because of 41.♕a5 ♕f1+! 42.♖xf1 ♖xf1#.

368



White to play

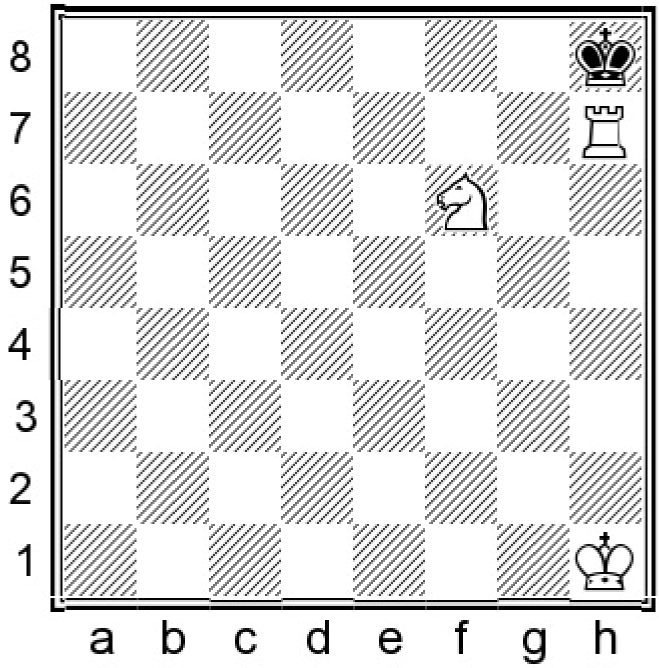
Show/Hide Solution

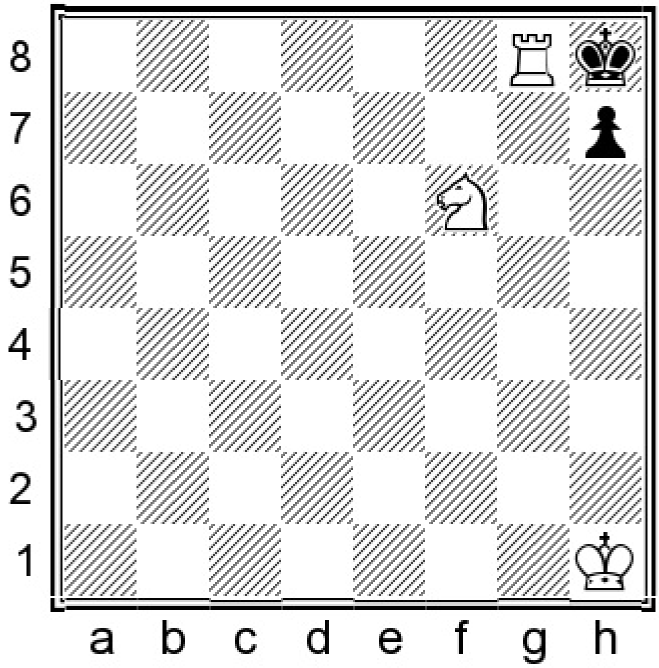
368 **30.♗g6! ♗c6** If 30...♖d8 then 31.♗e8 decides, and after 30...♕f4 31.♕xf4 ♖xf4 32.♖xd7 Black loses a piece. Finally, after 30...♖gf8 the battle is ended by 31.h6 ♖xg6 32.hxg7+. **31.♕h6+** 1-0 McShane-Istratescu, London rapid 2013.

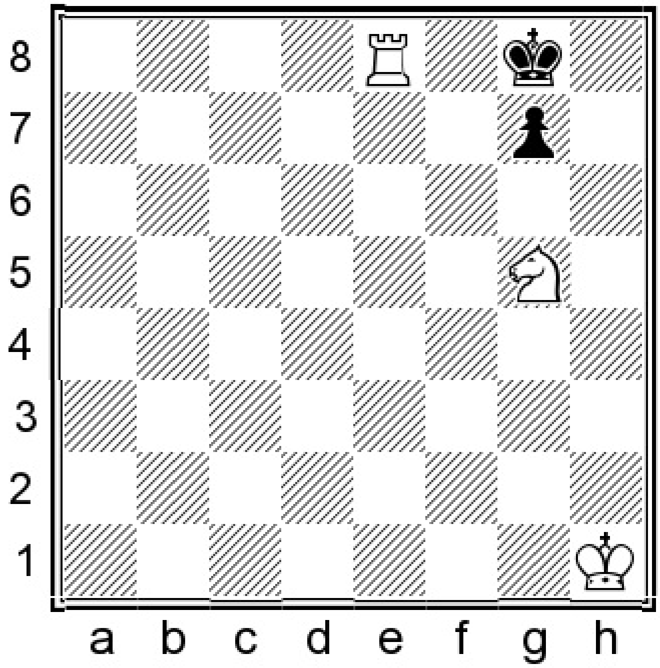
Chapter 6

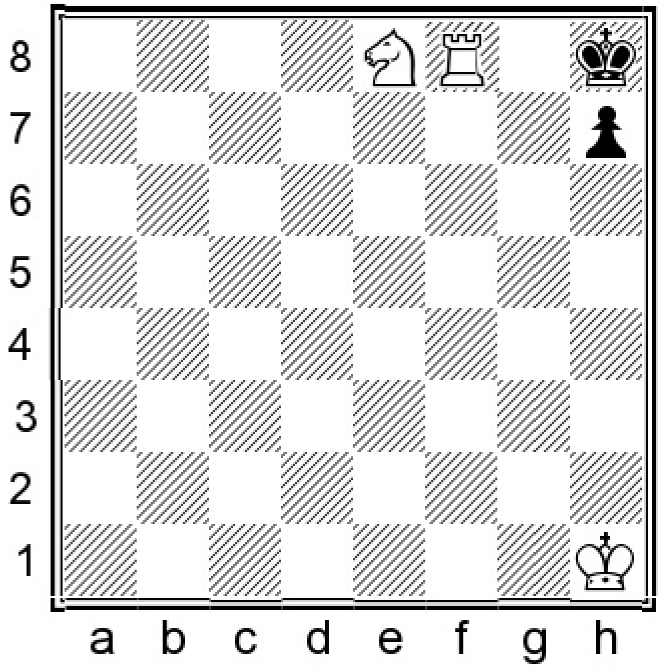
Rook and knight

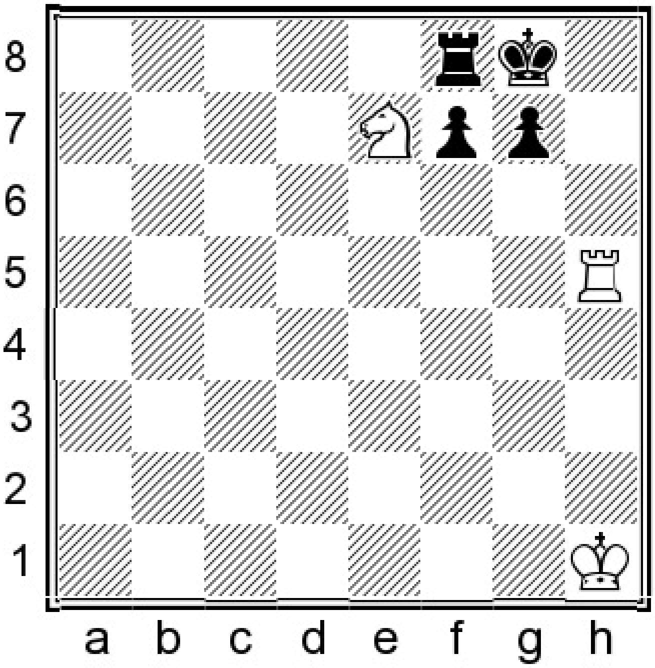
In the great majority of cases of mating set-ups without the involvement of the queen, the defending king is stuck on the edge, either the back rank or the side of the board. A frequent guest in tournament play is the mate in the corner, when rook and knight do not need helpers (for example ♘f6, ♖h7 – ♔h8; the so-called 'Arab mate'). In the remaining cases, the attacking side needs help from enemy pawns or (more rarely) pieces, blocking the king's flight.

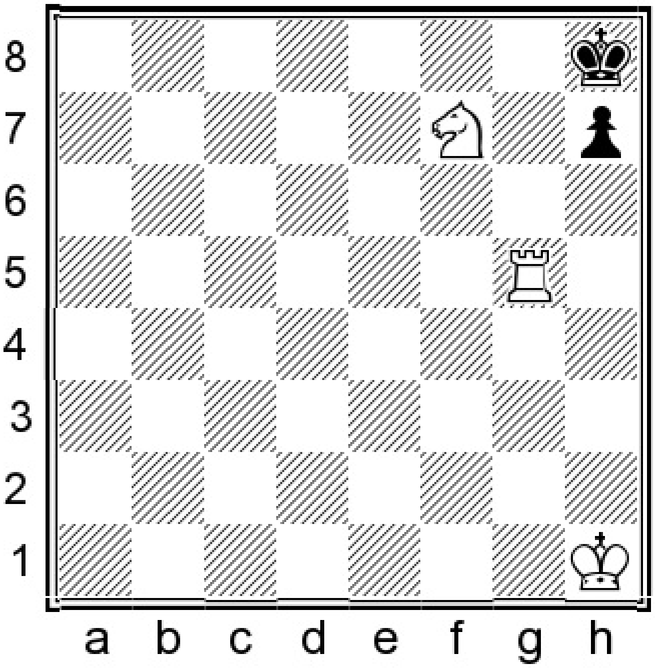


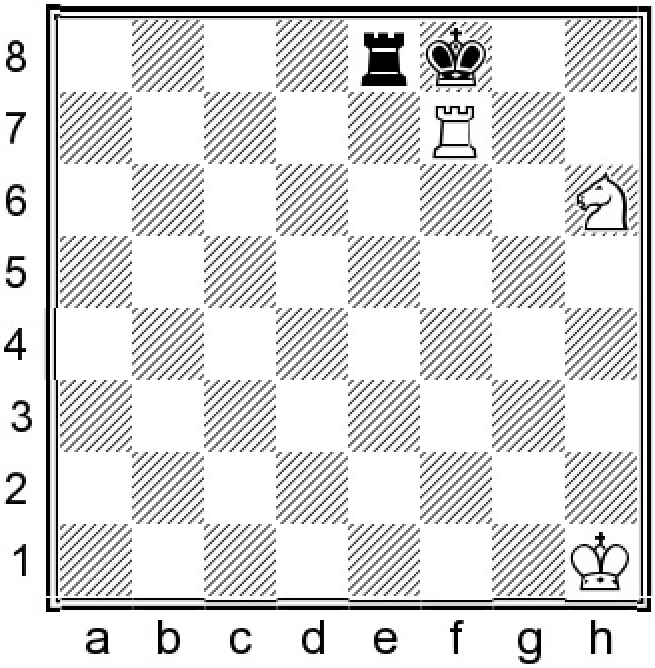


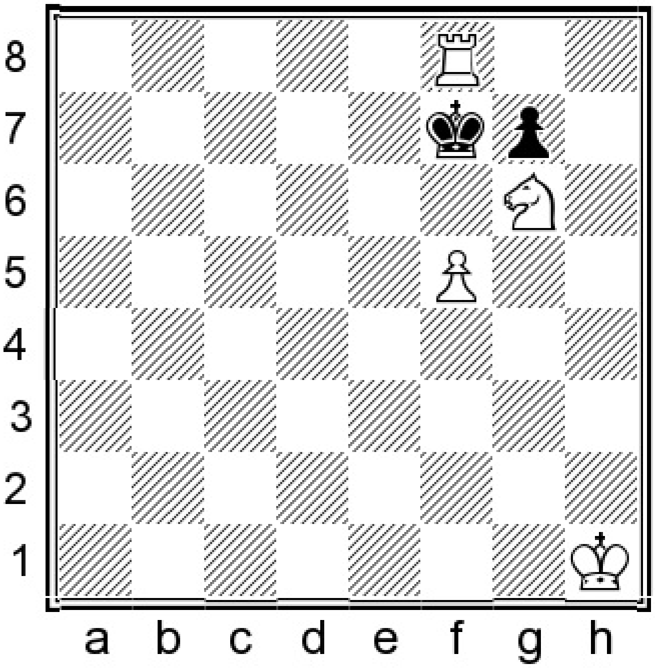

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h

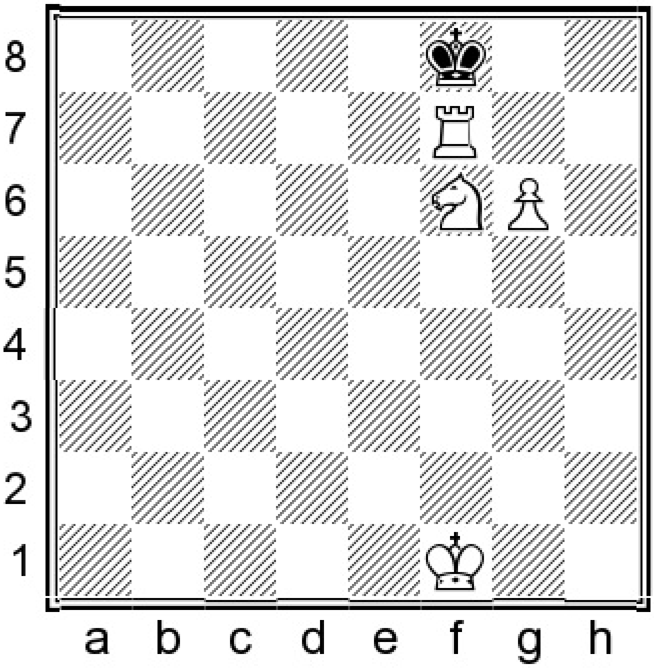

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h

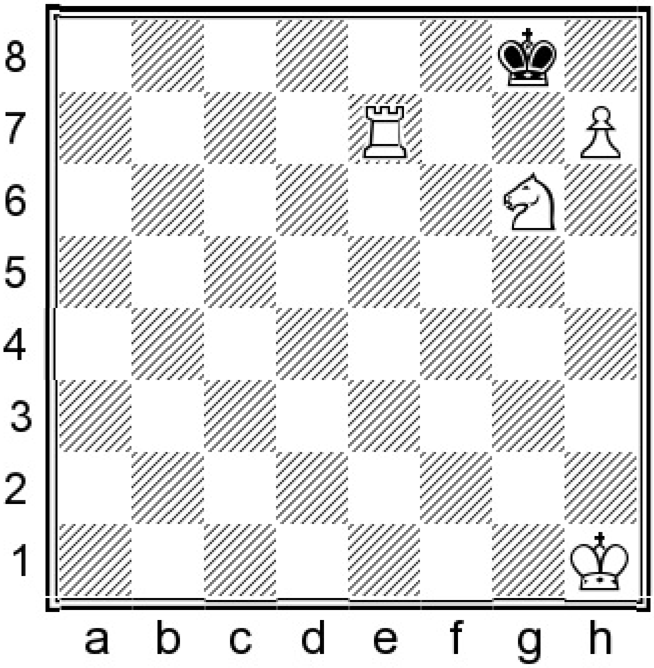




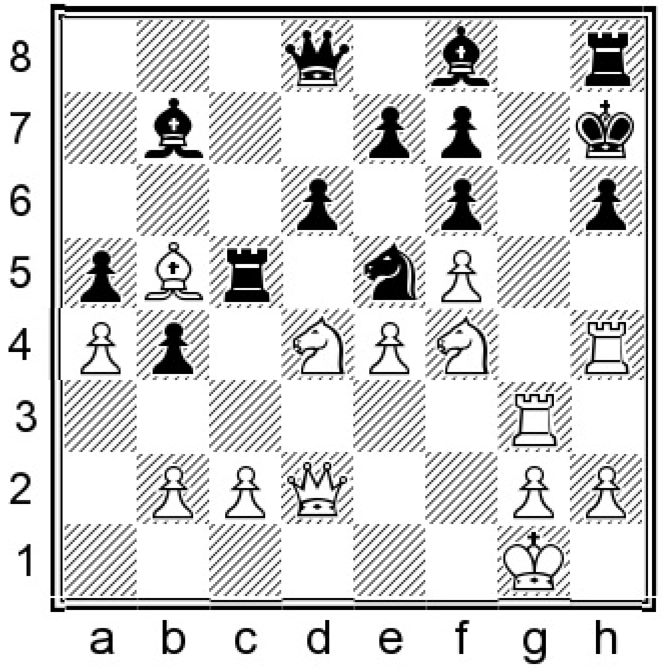

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h





Pavel Simacek 2420
Petr Neuman 2438
Czechia tt 2003/04 (1)



White to play

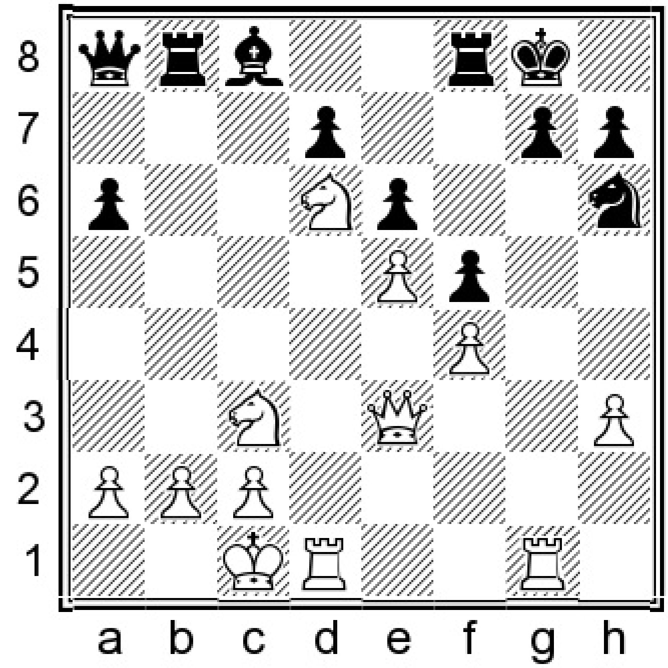
White’s aim is to break through to h6:

25.♘fe6! fxe6 26.♘xe6 ♕c8 27.♕xh6+!

Black resigned because of 27...♗xh6 28.♖g7#.

It is interesting to note that, if in the initial position Black had no pawn on e7 and so could defend g7 with 26...♕e7 this would still not save him from mate: 27.♕xh6+! ♗xh6 28.♖xh6+ ♔xh6 29.♖h3#.

Alexander Grischuk 2719
Jakov Geller 2489
Russia tt 2004 (6)



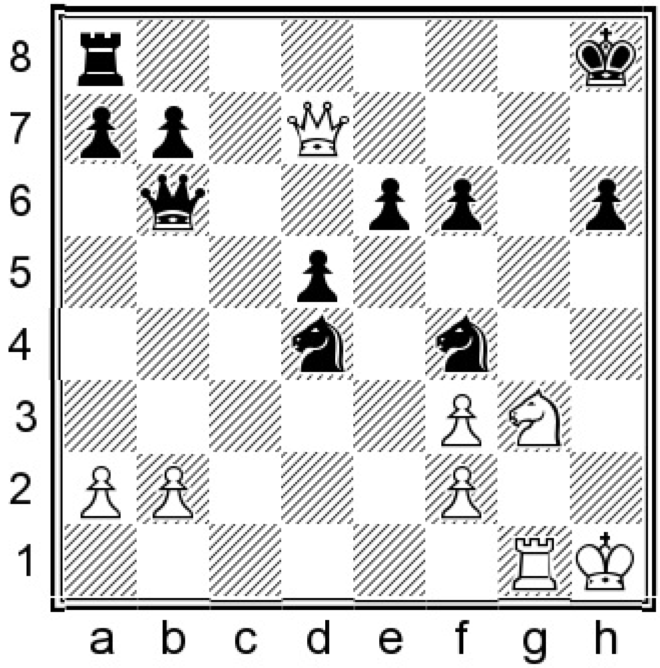
White to play

Another case of what we have already seen: the defender’s pieces grouped on the queenside cannot come to the aid of their king.

27.♖xg7+!

Black resigned. The game could end as follows: 27...♔xg7 28.♖g1+ ♔h8 (the end is not long delayed by 28...♘g4 29.hxg4, and the g-file will in any case be opened with decisive effect) 29.♕g3 ♖g8 30.♕xg8+ ♘xg8 31.♘f7#.

Goran Todorovic 2459
Jesse Kraai 2454
Budapest 2003 (7)



White to play

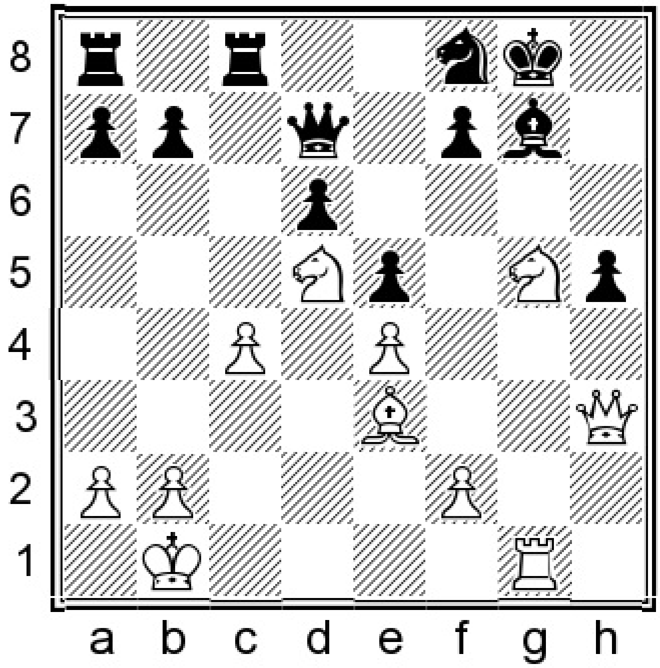
26.♘e4! ♖g8 27.♕h7+!!

Black resigned, without waiting for 27...♔xh7 28.♘xf6+ and mate next move. Weaker was 27.♖xg8+? ♔xg8 28.♘xf6+ ♔f8!.

Interestingly, the same combination has been seen in several other games, e.g. Perunovic-Maksimovic, SCG tt 2004; Kulovana-Berescu, Litomysl 2006; and Äpfler-Karabalis, Germany tt 2005/06.

White realized the same idea in somewhat more complicated form in the following example:

Carsten Hoi 2381
Alexandre Sulypa 2469
Esbjerg 2004 (9)



White to play

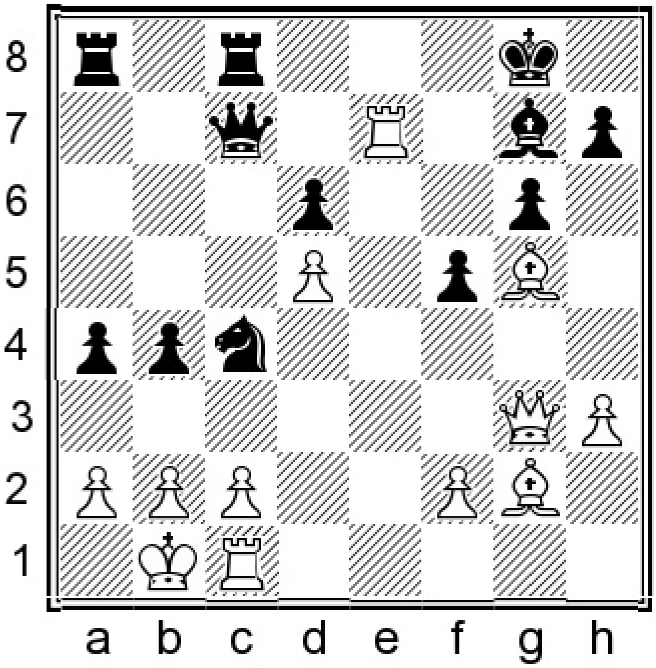
24.♘f6+! ♗xf6 25.♘h7+! ♔h8

25...♘g6 26.♘xf6+.

26.♘xf6!

Black resigned (26...♕xh3 27.♖g8#).

Kivanc Haznedaroglu 2394
Mikhail Golubev 2520
Izmir 2004 (6)



Black to play

27...♕xe7!

This is significantly stronger than winning the exchange for a pawn after 27...♘d2+ 28.♗xd2 (28.♔a1 ♗xb2+) 28...♕xe7 29.♗xb4.

27...♕xe7! 28.♗xe7 ♘d2+ 29.♔a1 a3 30.c3

Equally hopeless is 30.♖b1 axb2+ 31.♖xb2 ♖xc2.

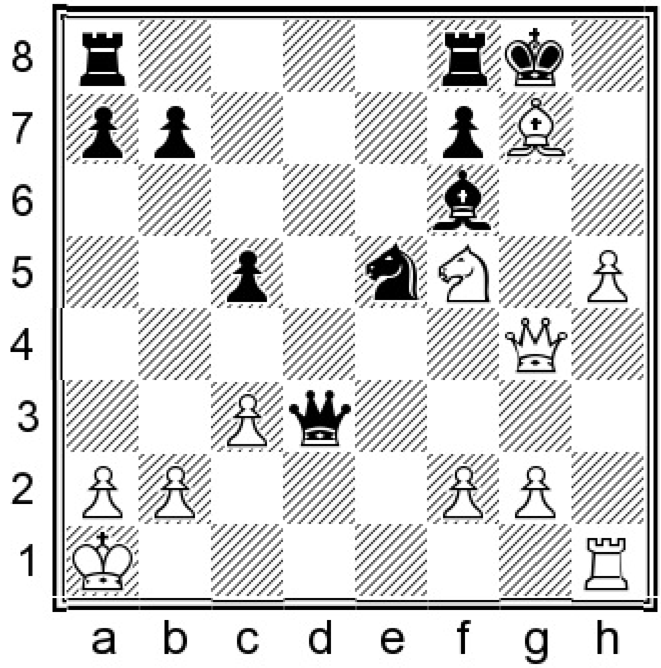
30...bxc3 31.bxc3 ♖ab8!

White resigned,

because he has no defence against 32...♖xc3 33.♕xc3 ♗xc3+, and Black breaks through to b1 after all.

White's combination in the next game was exceptionally beautiful.

Lev Milman 2434
Joseph Fang 2322
Mashantucket 2005 (6)



White to play

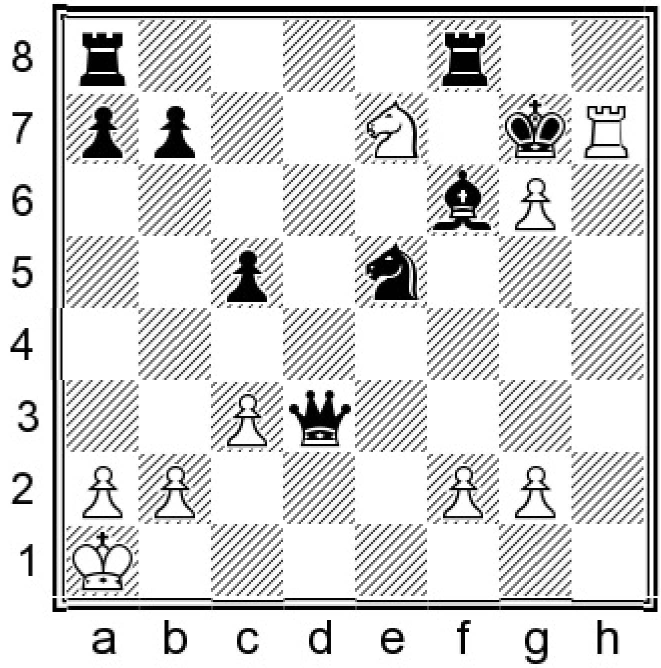
28.♘e7+! ♔h7

28...♗xe7 29.♗xe5+.

29.♕g6+!! fxg6

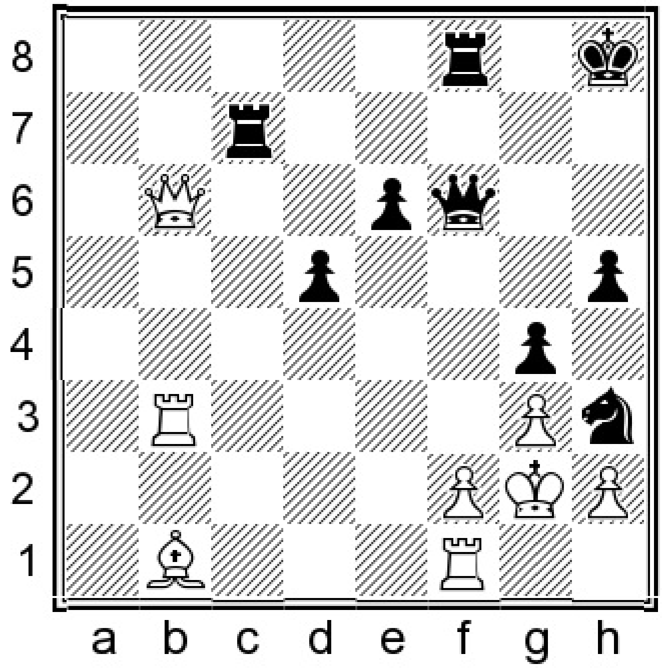
The other capture changes nothing.

30.hxg6+ ♔xg7 31.♖h7#



A compact mate with minimal force, facing a huge material deficit.

Artur Kogan 2561
Fidel Corrales Jimenez 2552
Barcelona 2008 (5)



Black to play

Here Black is prepared to give up a whole queen to establish the mating set-up:

35...♖b7! 36.♕e3

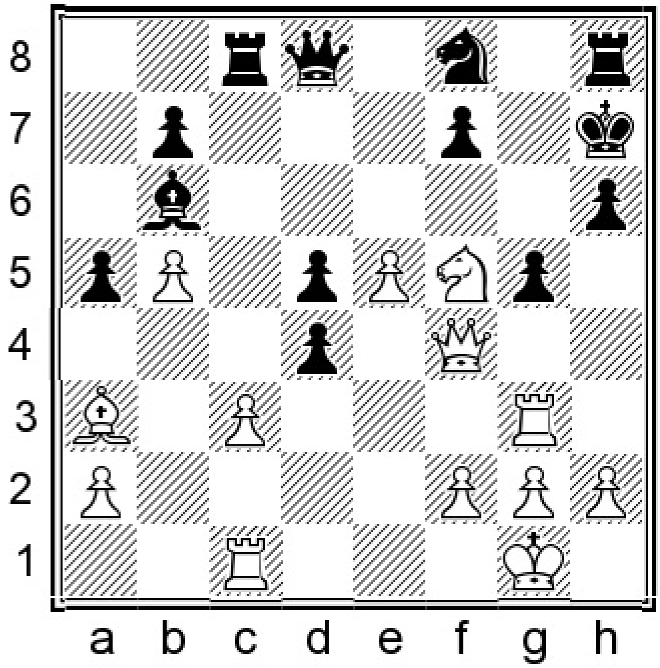
Taking on b7 is no better.

36...♖xb3 37.♕xb3 ♕xf2+

White resigned because of 38.♖xf2 ♖xf2+ 39.♔h1 ♖f1+ and mate next move.

The next combination required deep calculation.

Sergei Zhigalko 2668
Piotr Korobkov 2482
Moscow 2010 (7)



White to play

26.♕h4!

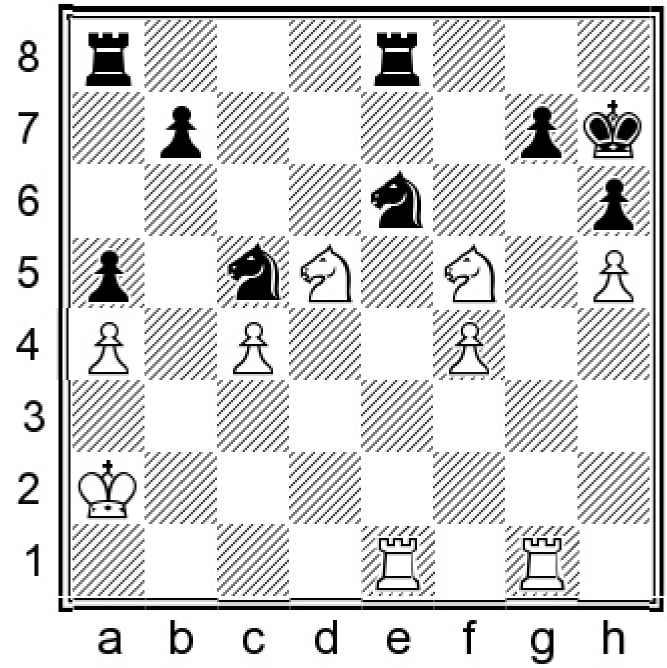
Black resigned. The queen is immune because of mate on g7.

A) On 26...♔g6 there is the decisive 27.♗e7! ♕d7 (27...♔xf5 28.♕g4+ ♔g6 29.♗xd8) 28.♖xg5+! hxg5 29.♕xg5+ and mate next move;

B) Nor is Black saved by 26...♘e6 27.♕h5! ♔g8 (or 27...♖c7 28.♖h3 ♔g8 29.♘xh6+) 28.♘xh6+ ♔g7 29.♕xf7+ ♔xh6 30.♖h3#.

Sometimes, in beginning the attack, it is essential at the critical moment to spot a quiet move.

Nikolay Ninov 2511
Julio Granda Zuniga 2640
Nancy 2010 (2)



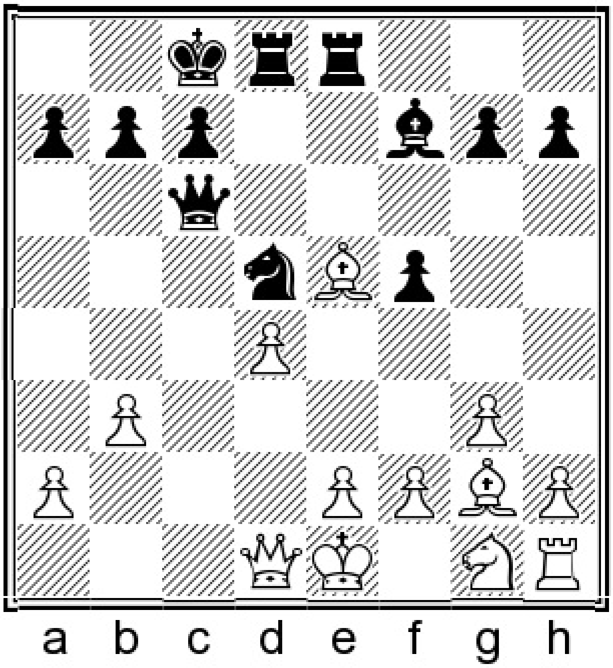
White to play

38.♘xg7! ♘xg7 39.♘f6+ ♔h8 40.♖g6

Black resigned.

If the ♘g7 stays put, White mates by ♖xh6, whilst after 40...♘ge6 the move 41.♖eg1 wins immediately. After other knight retreats, White takes on e8 and has a decisive material advantage.

Fernando Lida Garcia 2130
Yuri Shulman 2559
Buenos Aires Ach 2003 (2)



Black to play

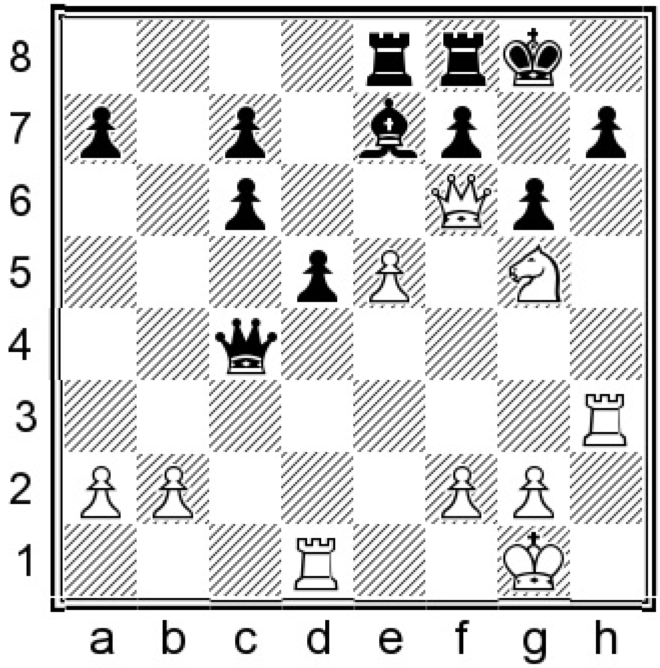
Yet another example on the eternal theme of ‘development in the opening’...

14...♖xe5! 15.dxe5 ♕c3+ 16.♕d2 ♘e3!!

A remarkable tactical blow, immediately deciding the game. White resigned because of 17.♕xc3 ♖d1#, whilst other moves lose the queen.

The following combination was regarded by its author as one of the best of his career.

Francisco Vallejo Pons 2698
Alexander Onischuk 2683
Reggio Emilia 2011 (8)



White to play

27.♘xh7!

Creating the threat of 28.♕xe7! ♖xe7 29.♘f6+

(only perpetual check results from 27.♖xh7? ♗xf6 28.exf6).

27.♘xh7!

On 27...♕b4 White gives mate with 28.♕h8+! ♔xh8 29.♘f6++–. The last chance is:

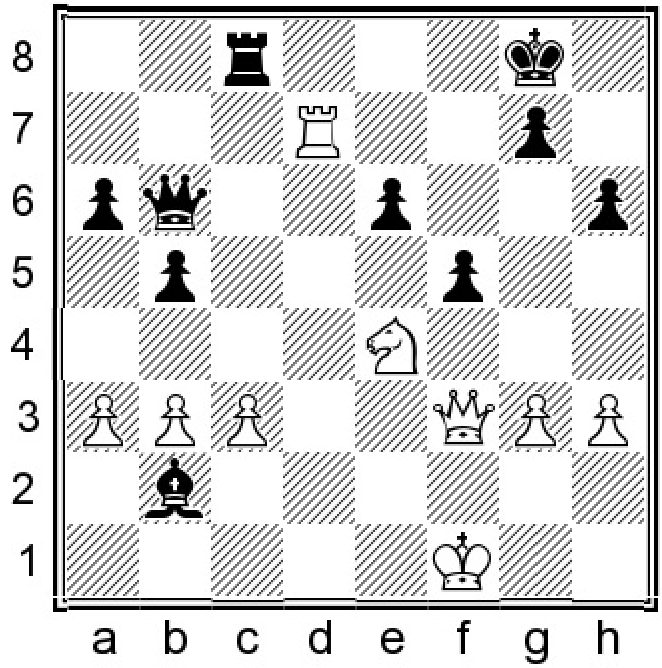
27...♕g4,

attacking both rooks. But White pays no attention to this at all:

28.♕xe7!!

Black resigned. If 28...♕xh3, then 29.♘f6+ and 30.♘xe8 with at least an extra piece, whilst after 28...♕xd1+ 29.♔h2 the desperate 29...f5 is parried by the simple 30.♘f6+ ♖xf6 31.♕xe8+.

Eduardas Rozentalis 2586
Boris Kantsler 2422
Israel tt 2011/12 (7)



White to play

29.♘f6+! ♔h8

On 29...gxf6 or 29...♔f8 there is the decisive 30.♕h5.

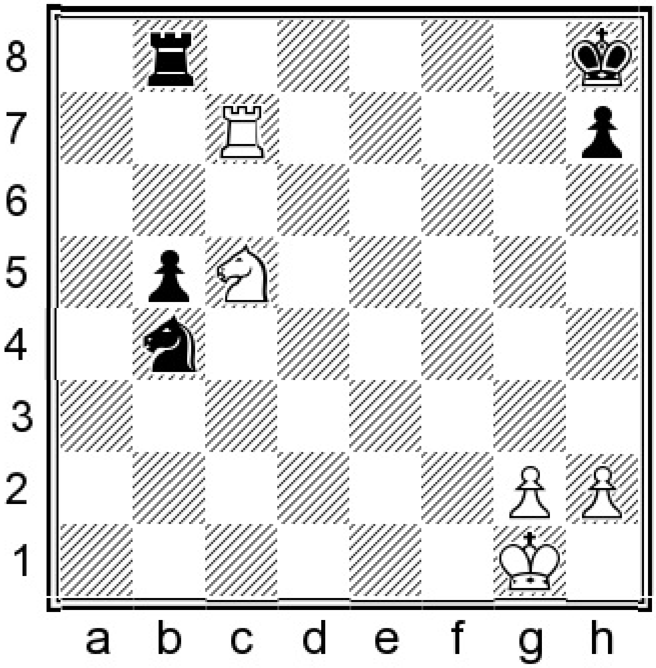
30.♕f4!

An excellent illustration of the importance of piece coordination. Black cannot meet the threat of a queen sacrifice.

30...♗xc3 31.♕xh6+ 1-0

Even in the endgame, it is possible to create a strong attack with minimal force:

Ioannis Papaioannou 2597
Jayaram Ashwin 2476
Kavala 2012 (5)



White to play

37.♘d7!

Attacking the rook and at the same time setting up the fearful threat of 38.♘f6, which cannot be stopped directly, since both f8 and b6 are attacked.

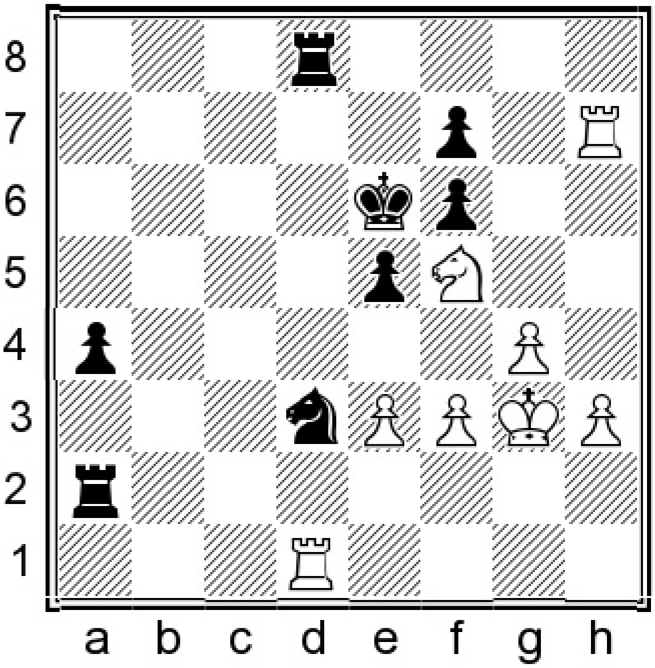
37...♘a6

He also loses after 37...♘d5 38.♖c5 ♖d8 39.♖xd5 b4 40.♘b6 with an extra piece.

38.♖a7! ♖d8 39.♘f6 ♖d1+ 40.♔f2 ♖d2+ 41.♔e1

Black resigned.

Denis Khismatullin 2652
Alexandr Predke 2503
Taganrog 2013 (2)



White to play

36.♖h8!!

An excellent decision. Black resigned, because all variations turn out against him:

A) 36...♖xh8 37.♖xd3 (with the threat of mate on d6) 37...e4 38.♖d6+ ♔e5 39.f4#;

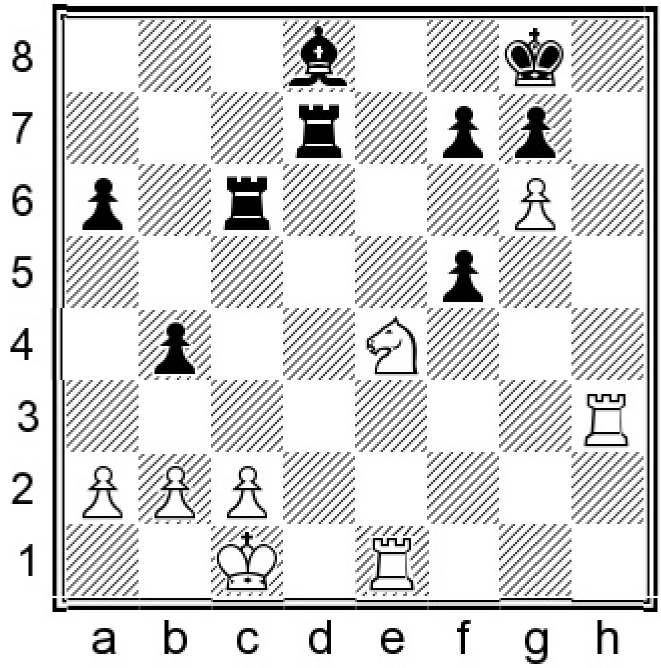
B) 36...♖d7 37.♖e8+ and 38.♖xd3+;

C) 36...♖d5 37.e4!, driving away the rook and winning the knight anyway.

Show in Text Mode

Exercises

369

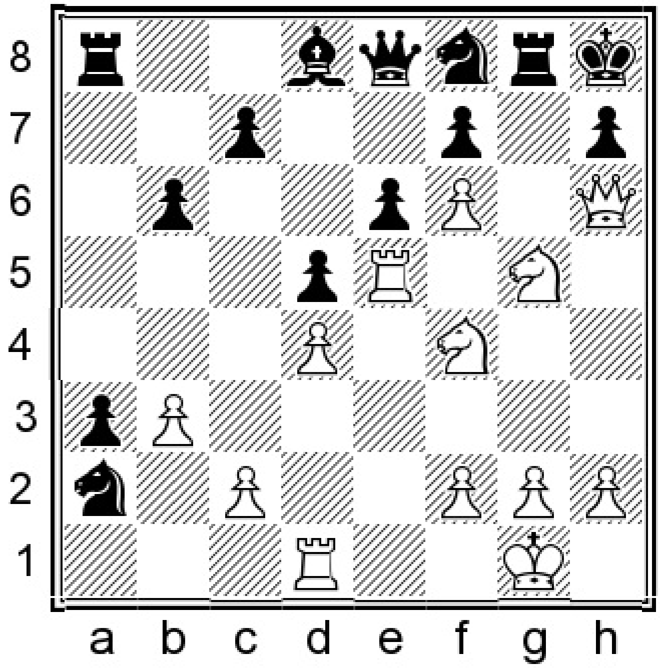


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

369 **35.♘d6! ♗g5+** On 35...♗e7 things are decided by 36.gxf7+ ♔f8 37.♖h8#. **36.♔b1 ♖e7 37.♖xe7** 1-0 Movsesian-Fernandes, Istanbul ol 2000.

370

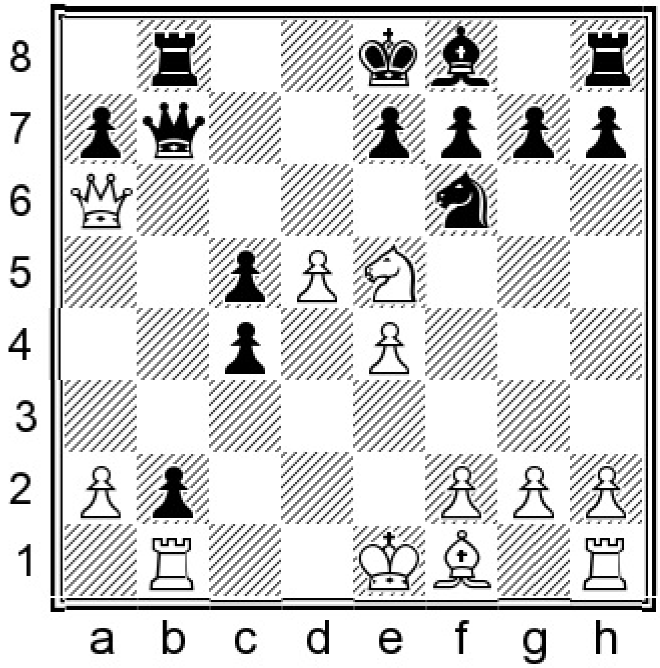


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

370 **25.♘xh7!** Golubev-Mikhaletz, Ordzhonikidze ch-UKR 2001; Black resigned because of 25...♘xh7 26.♕xh7+! ♔xh7 27.♖h5#.

371



White to play

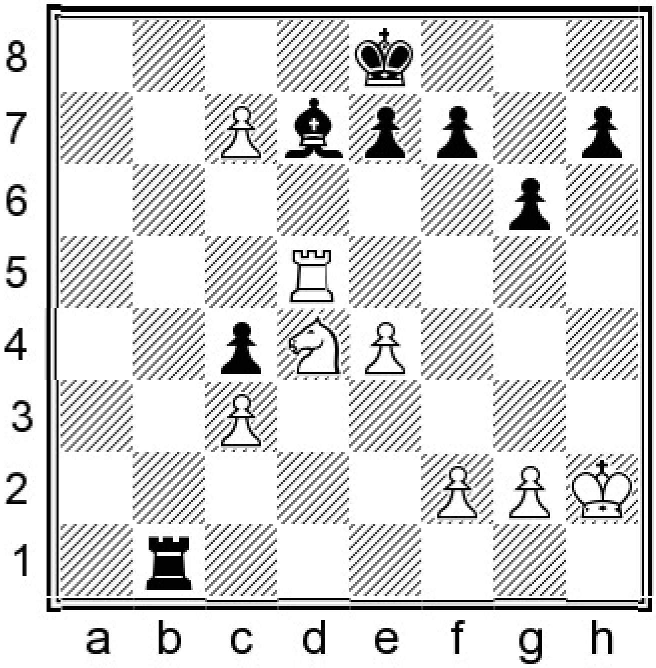
Show/Hide Solution

371 **13.♖xb2!** The other way is 13.♕a4+ ♘d7 14.♖xb2.

13.♖xb2!

Black resigned: mate follows after both 13...♕xb2 14.♕c6+ ♔d8 15.♘xf7 and 13...♕xa6 14.♖xb8, Shirov-Motylev, Moscow WCh k.o. rapid 2001.

372

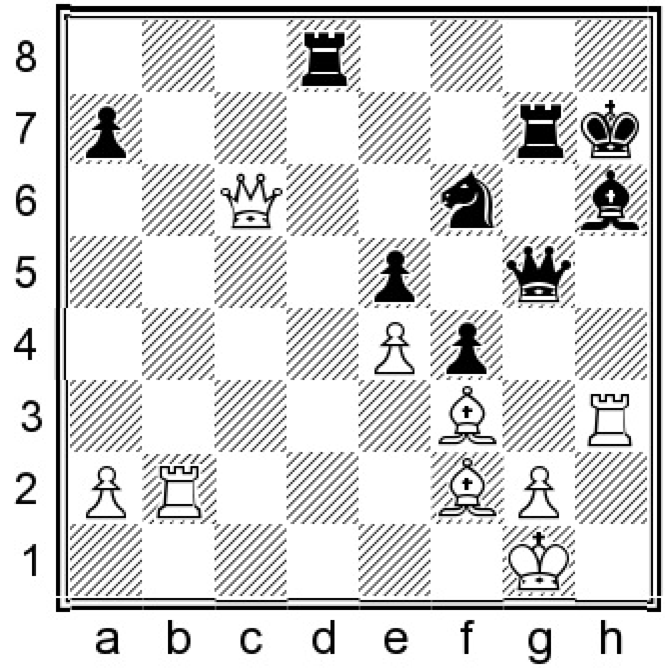


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

372 **33.♘c6!** Bareev-Van Wely, Wijk aan Zee 2002; Black resigned because of 33...f6 34.♘b8 or 33...♖b7 34.c8=♕+! ♗xc8 35.♖d8#.

373

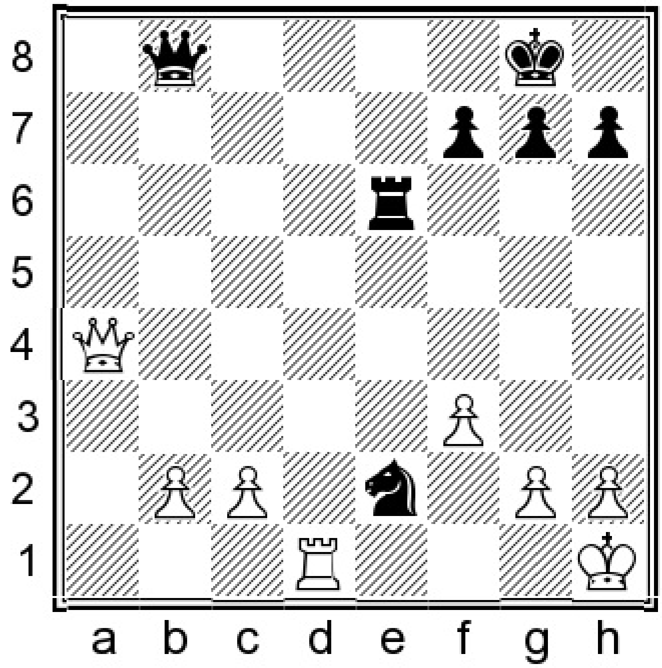


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

373 **41...♖d1+! 42.♔h2 ♕xg2+!** 0-1 Donaldson-Wang Ping, Shanghai tt 2002; 43.♗xg2 ♘g4#.

374

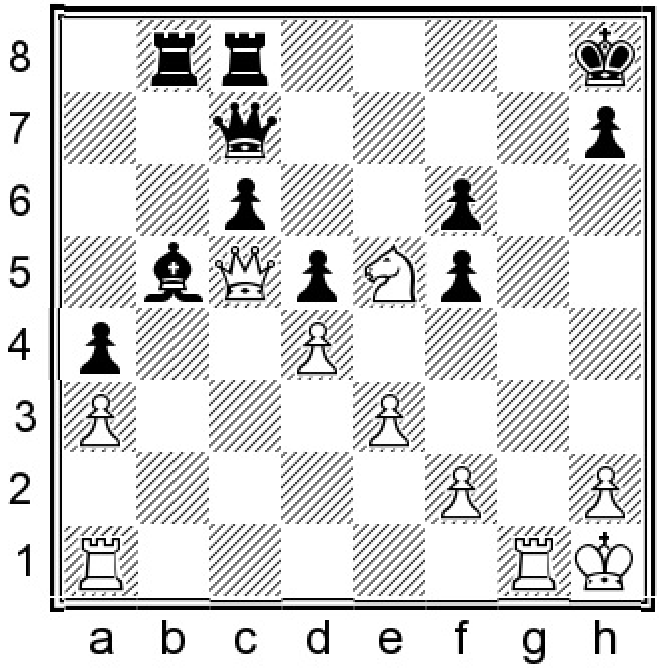


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

374 **37...♕xh2+!** 0-1 Goloshchapov-Dvoirys, Hoogeveen 2002.

375

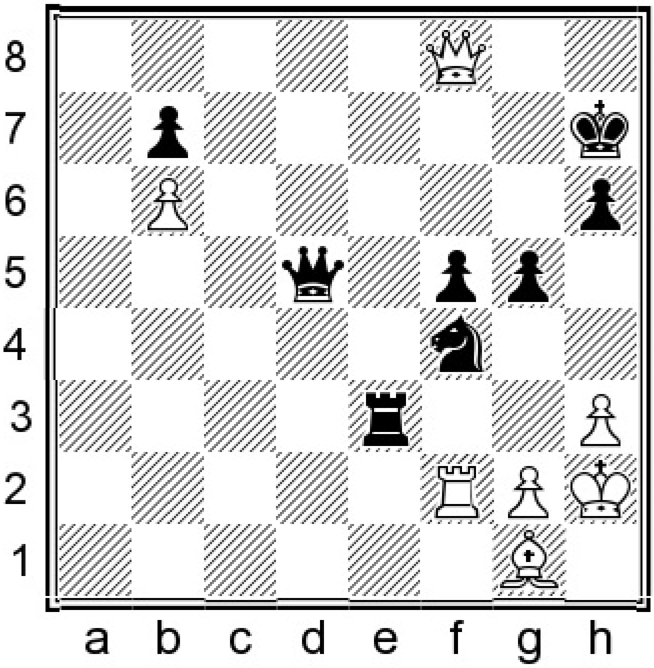


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

375 **32.♕d6!** 1-0 Bauer-Kortchnoi, Enghien les Bains 2003; Black cannot meet all the threats: 32...♕xd6 33.♘f7# or 32...fxe5 33.♕f6+ ♕g7 34.♕xg7#.

376

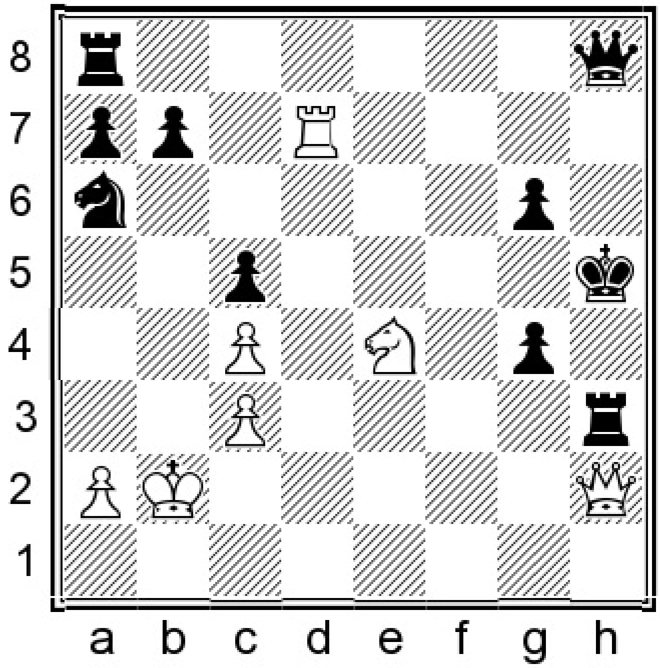

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h

Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

376 **51...♕xg2+!** Espinosa Flores-Sulskis, Yucatan 2004; White resigned because of 52.♖xg2 ♖xh3#.

377

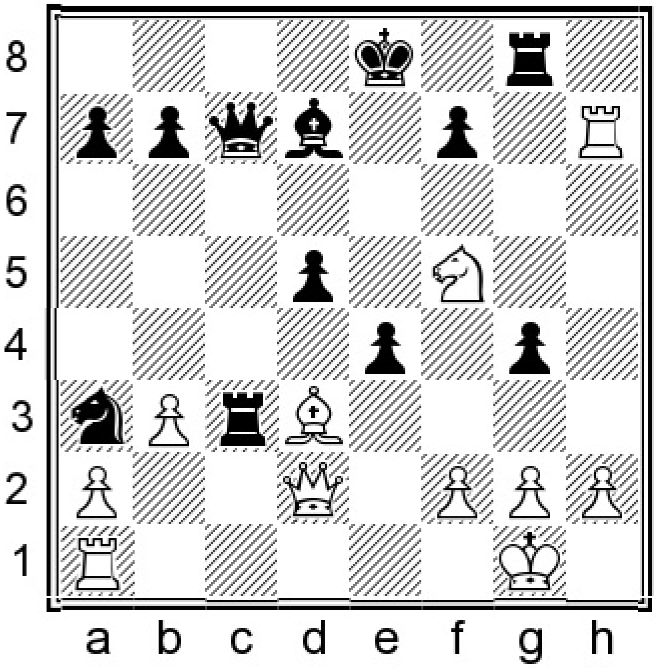


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

377 **37.♕e5+!** 1-0 Taleb-Svirjov, Alushta 2004; 37...♕xe5 38.♖h7#; 37...♔h4 38.♕g5#; 37...♔h6 38.♕g5#.

378

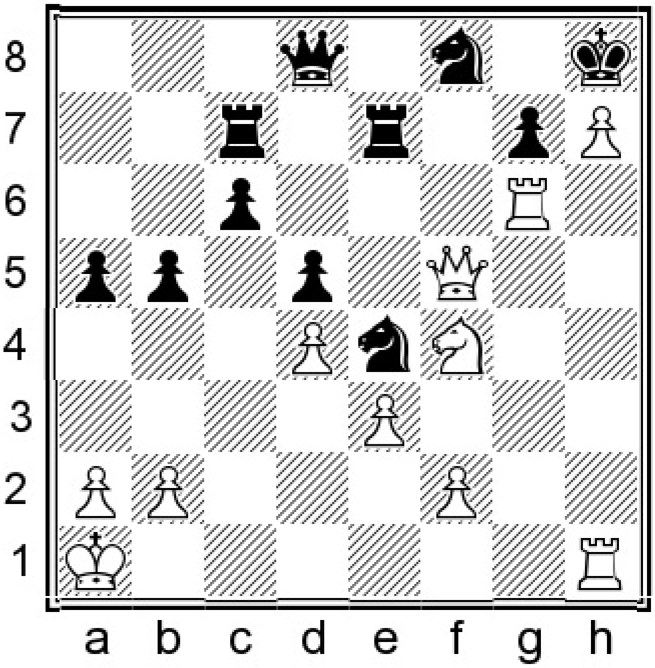

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h

White to play

Show/Hide Solution

378 **26.♕g5!** 1-0 Smirin-Akobian, Minneapolis 2005; 26...♖xg5 27.♖h8+.

379

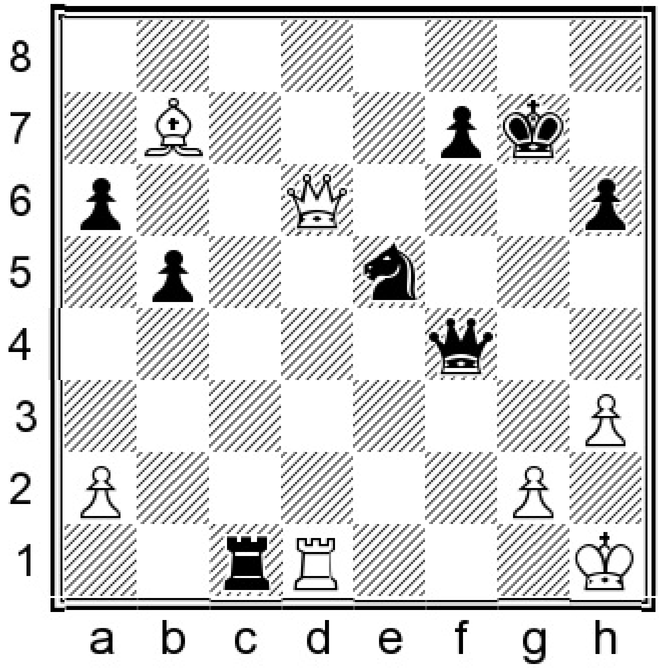


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

379 **31.♖d6!** 1-0 M.Socko-Guseva, Kishinev Ech W 2005; mate is unavoidable: 31...♕xd6 32.♕xf8# or 31...♘xd6 32.♕xf8+! ♕xf8 33.♘g6#.

380



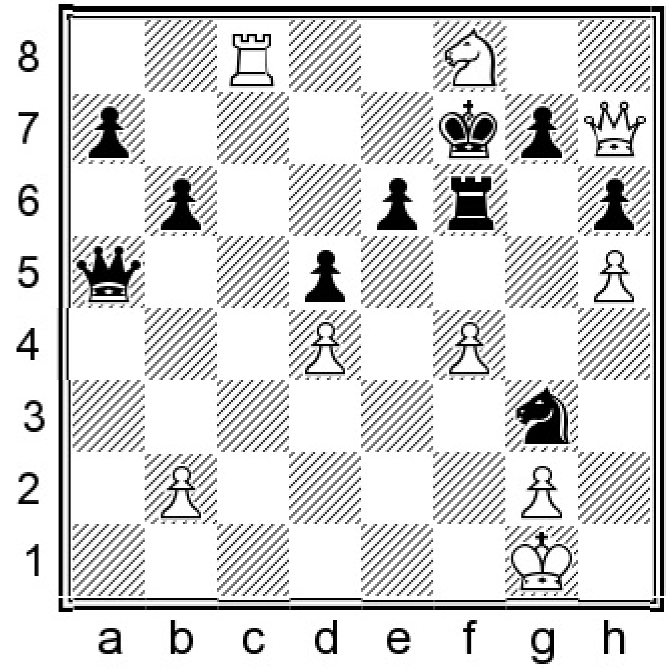
Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

380 **37...♘g4!** Also possible is 37...♘f3.

37...♘g4! 38.hxg4 Or 38.♕xf4 ♖xd1+, and mate next move. **38...♕xd6 39.♖xc1 ♕d2 40.♖c6 a5** 0-1 Rohit-Al-Modiakhi, Hyderabad Ach 2005.

381



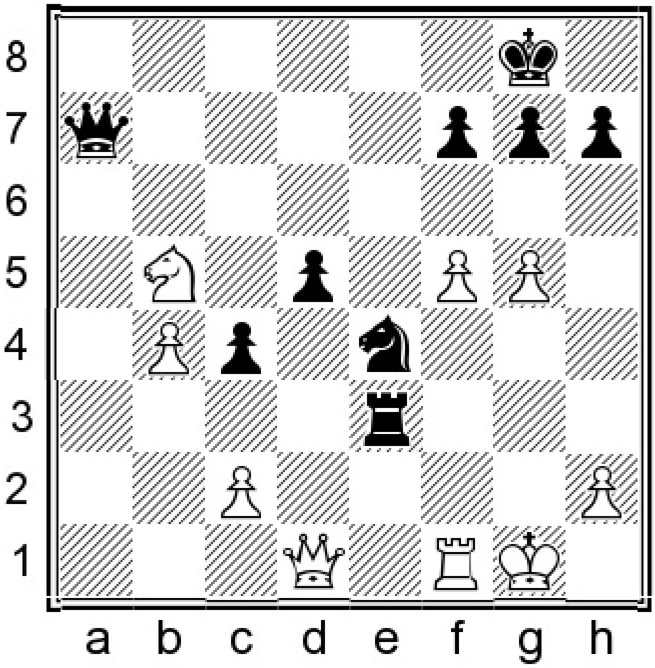
White to play

Show/Hide Solution

381 **35.♕g8+!** He does not achieve the aim by 35.♖c7+ ♔e8!, although he can then return to the correct plan: 36.♖c8+.

35.♕g8+! ♔e7 If 35...♔xg8, then 36.♘g6+ ♔f7 37.♖f8#. **36.♘g6+ ♖xg6 37.♕e8+** Dobrev-Bojchev, Sunny Beach 2005; Black resigned because of 37...♔f6 38.♕f8# or 37...♔d6 38.♕d8#.

382

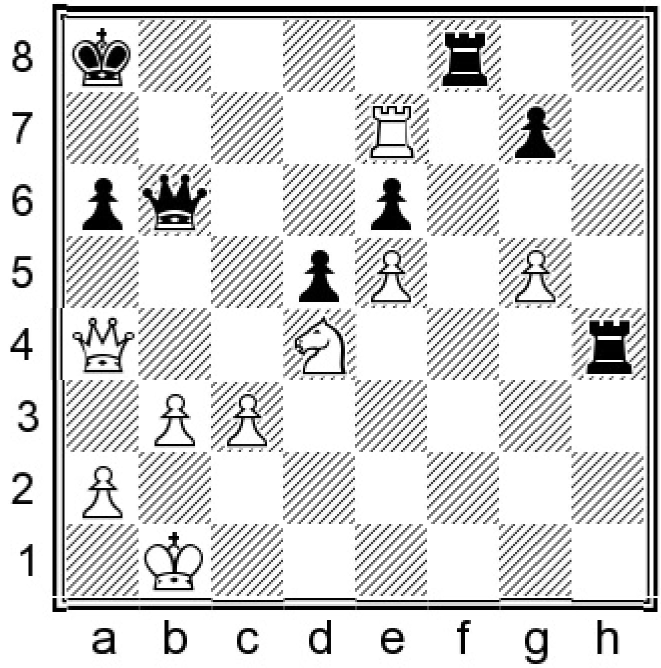


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

382 **37...♖g3+ 38.♔h1 ♕g1+! 39.♖xg1 ♘f2#** Marin-Jakovenko, playchess.com Ech blitz 2006.

383

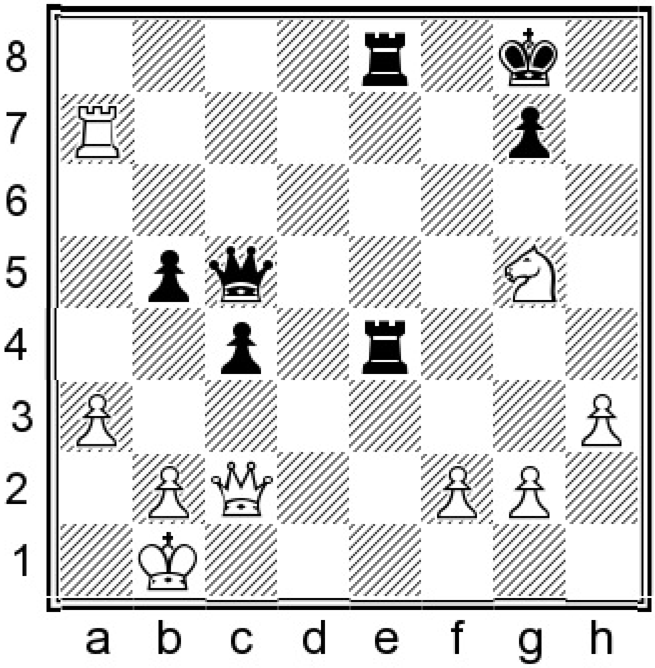

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h

White to play

Show/Hide Solution

383 **37.♕c6+! ♕xc6 38.♘xc6** 1-0 Murariu-Muir, Budapest 2006.

384

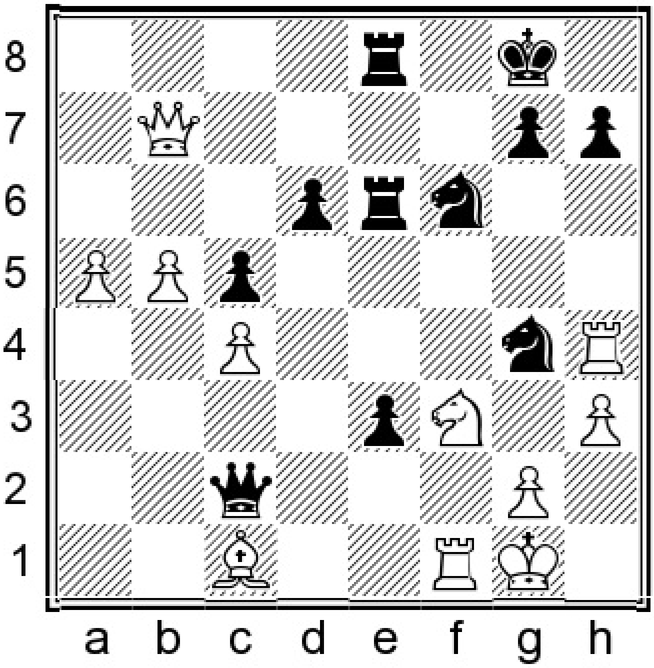

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h

White to play

Show/Hide Solution

384 **28.♕xe4!** 1-0 Sasikiran-D.Rombaldoni, La Roche-sur-Yon 2006.

385

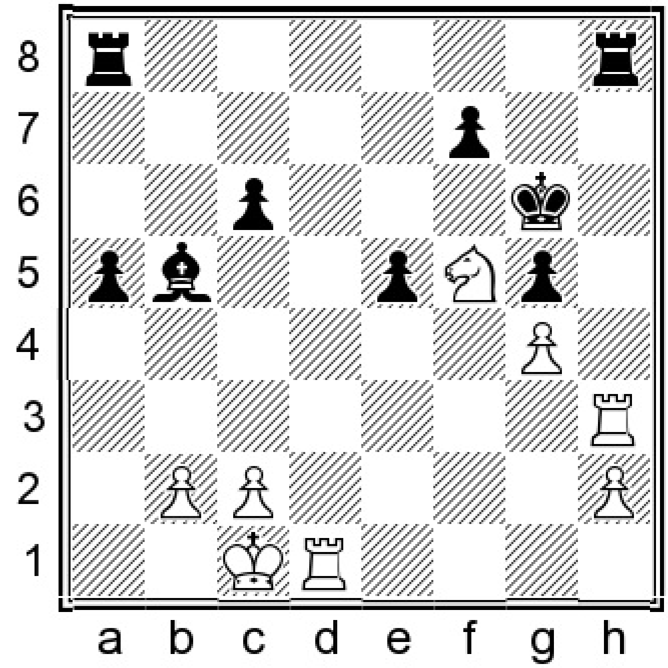


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

385 **48...♕f2+!** Kelly-Miezis, Turin ol 2006; White resigned, without waiting for 49.♖xf2 exf2+ 50.♔f1 ♖e1+ 51.♘xe1 ♖xe1#.

386

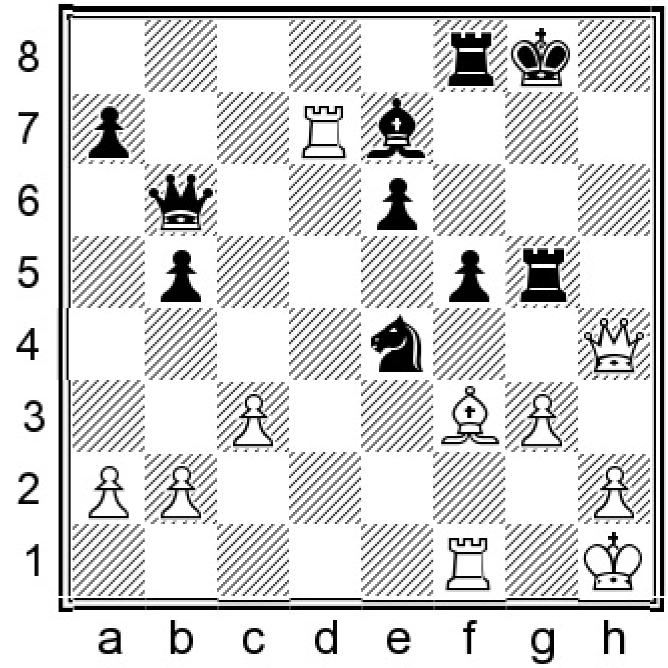


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

386 **34.♖d6+!** Opening the 7th rank for the attack. **34...f6 35.♖d7! ♖xh3** Neither did 35...♖ag8 36.♖xh8 or 35...♖hg8 36.♖h6# save Black. **36.♖g7#** Kristiansen-Short, Copenhagen 2006.

387

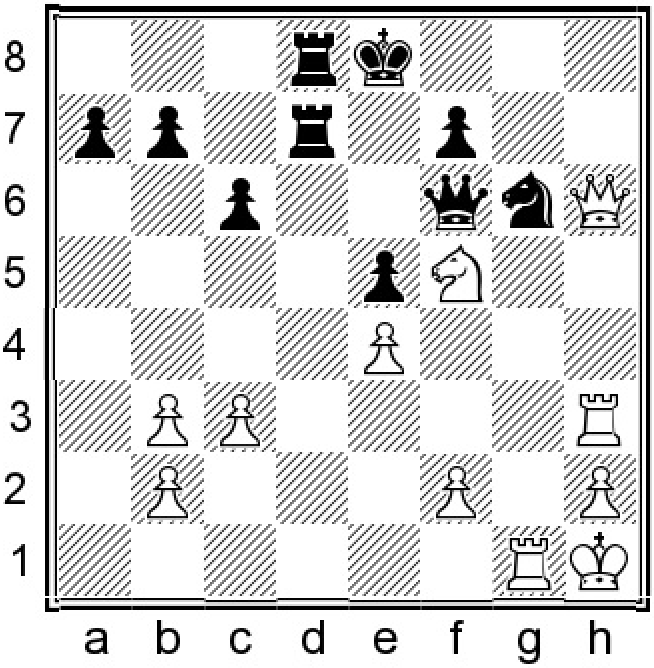


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

387 **26...♖xg3! 27.♕xe7** The same reply would follow after 27.♖xe7. **27...♕g1+! 28.♖xg1 ♘f2#** Y.Visser-Speelman, London/Crowthorne 2006.

388

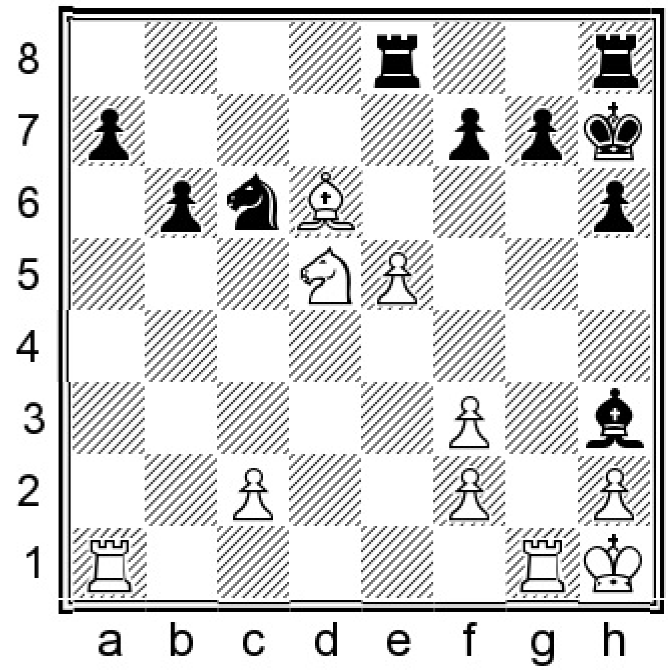


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

388 **30.♕h8+!** Fedorov-Iordachescu, Romania tt 2006; Black resigned, since after 30...♕xh8 (30...♘xh8 31.♖g8#) 31.♖xh8+ ♘f8 (31...♘xh8 32.♖g8#) 32.♖gg8 he loses a knight.

389

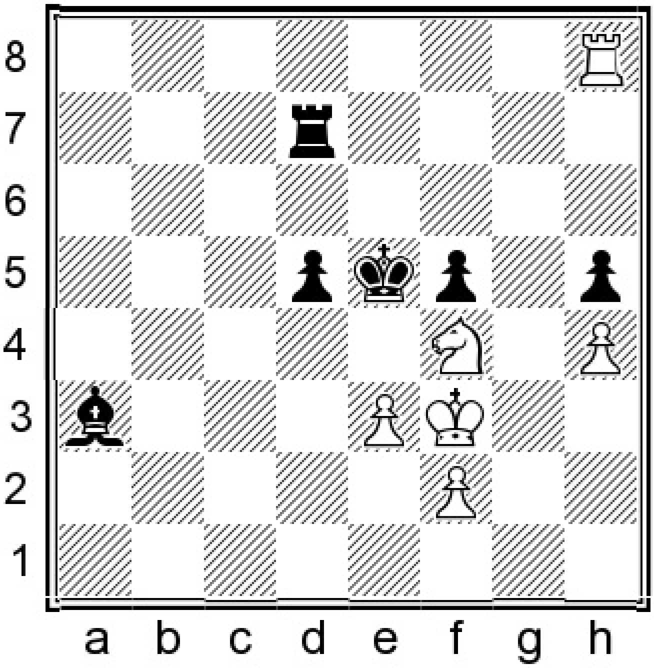

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h

White to play

Show/Hide Solution

389 **23.♖xg7+!** 1-0 Hamdouchi-Mirzoev, Illes Medes 2007; 23...♔xg7 24.♖g1+ ♔h7 25.♘f6#.

390

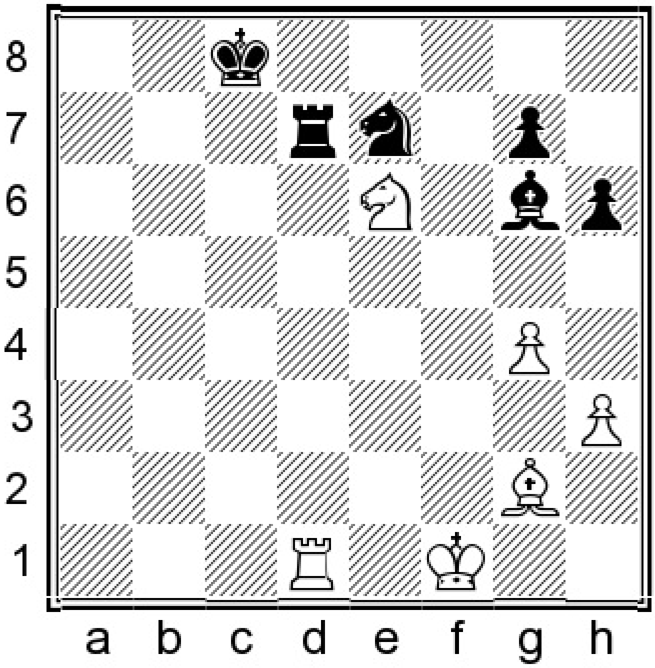


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

390 **57.♖h6!** Kuzubov-A.van Beek, Gibraltar 2007; Black resigned because of 57...♖d6 58.♘d3#.

391

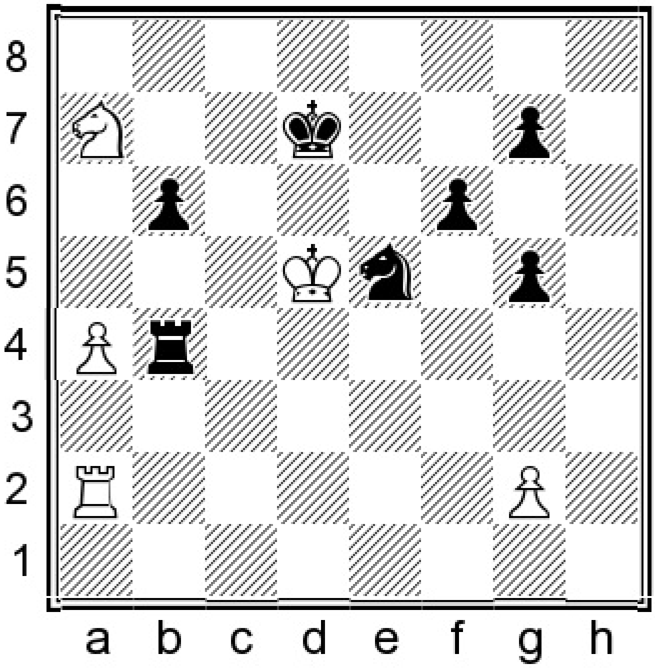


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

391 **41.♗b7+!** Savickas-Garnelis, Litva 2007; unexpected and beautiful. Black resigned, without waiting for mate after 41...♖xb7 42.♖d8, and in other lines he loses a rook.

392

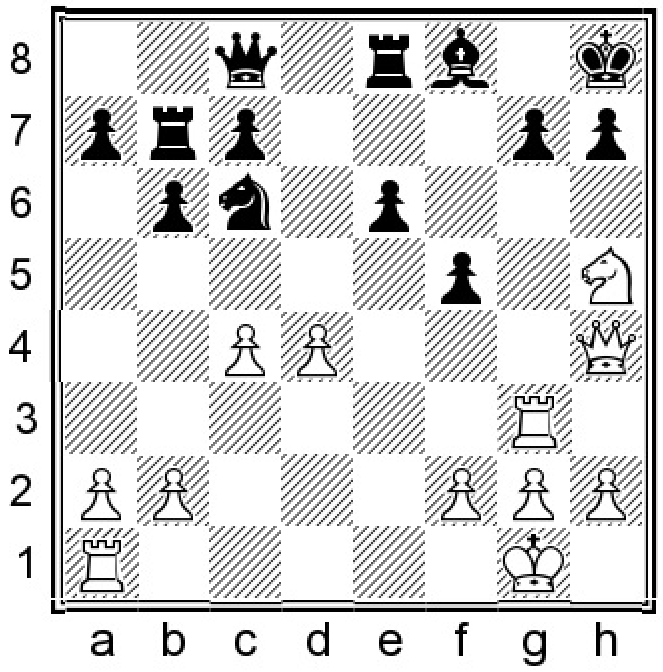


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

392 **47...♘g6! 48.g3** 48.♘c6 ♘f4#. **48...♘e7#** Pachow-Ernst, Germany Bundesliga 2006/07.

393

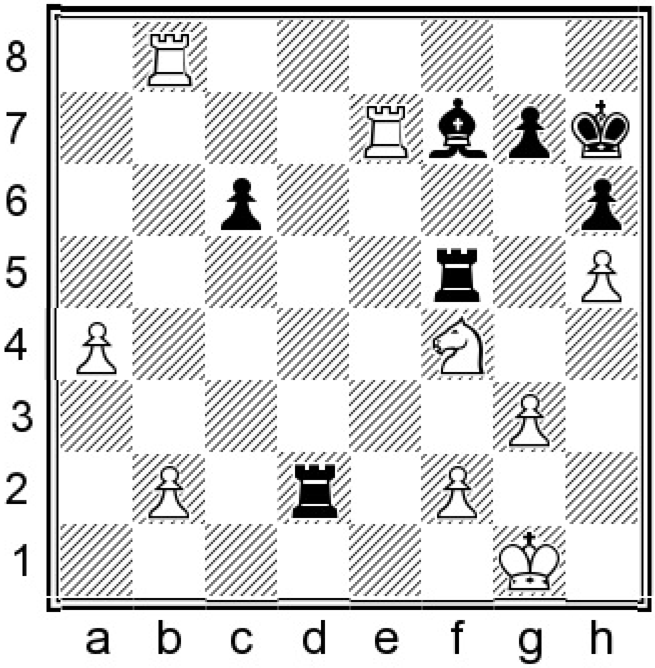


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

393 **23.♘f6! h6** Of course, hopeless is 23...gxf6 24.♕xf6+ ♗g7 25.♕xg7#, but now a familiar idea works: **24.♕xh6+! gxh6 25.♖g8#** Karpov-Stojanovic, Valjevo 2007.

394

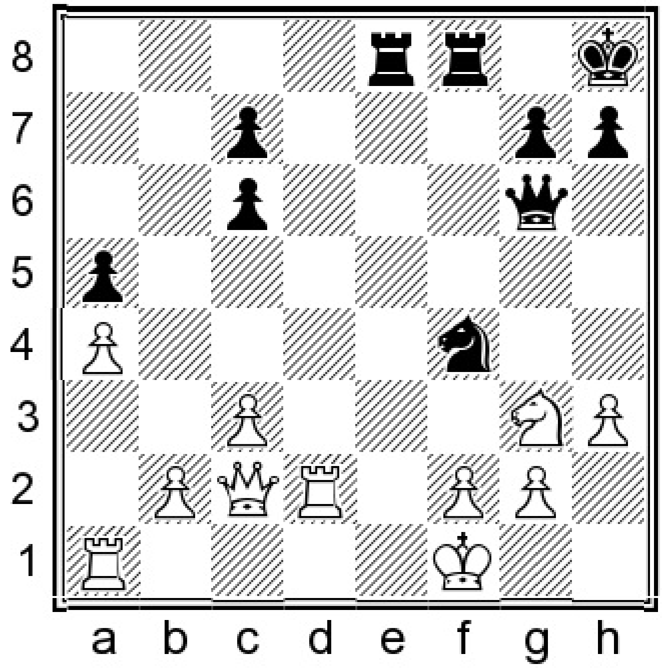


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

394 **39.♖xf7!** 1-0 Krasenkow-Barua, Vlissingen 2007; 39...♖xf7 40.♘g6 with inevitable mate on h8.

395

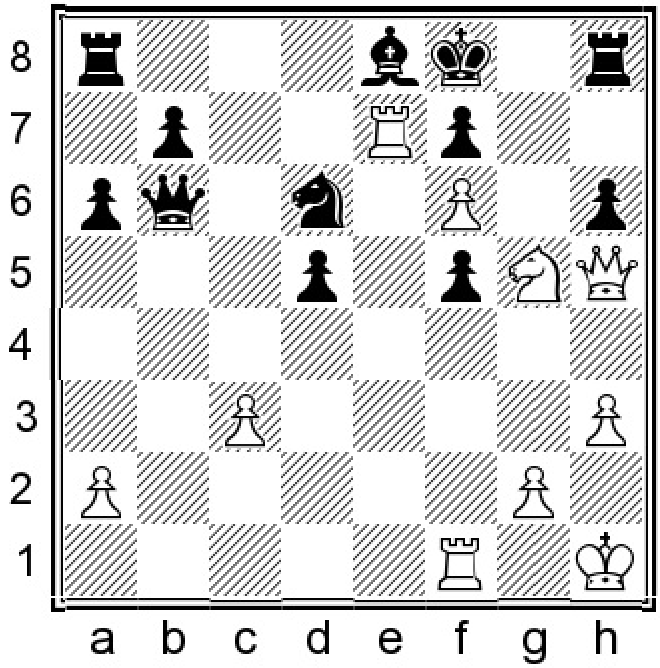


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

395 **28...♕xg3! 29.fxg3 ♘e2+! 30.♔e1 ♘d4+** 0-1 Guido-Brunello, Bratto 2007; 31.♖e2 ♘xc2+ or 31.♔d1 ♖f1#.

396

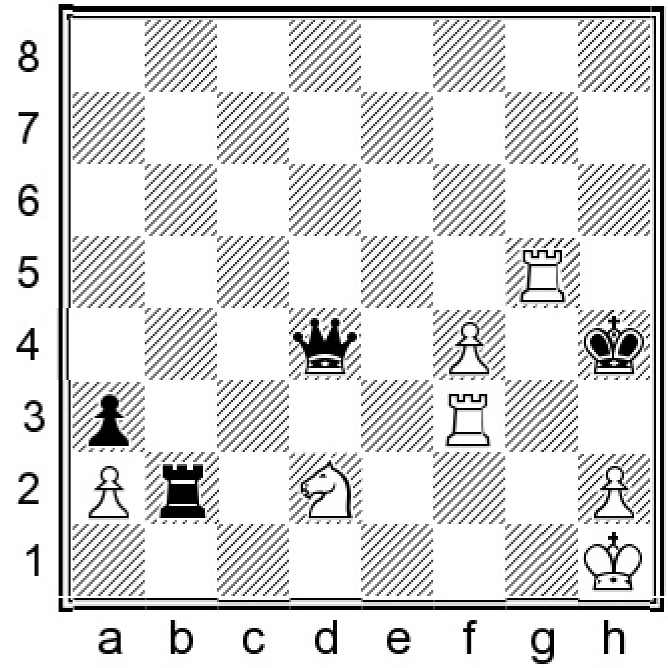


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

396 **26.♕g6!** 1-0 B.Savchenko-Kostin, Krasnoyarsk 2007; there is no defence to mate: 26...fxg6 27.♘e6+ ♔g8 28.♖g7#.

397

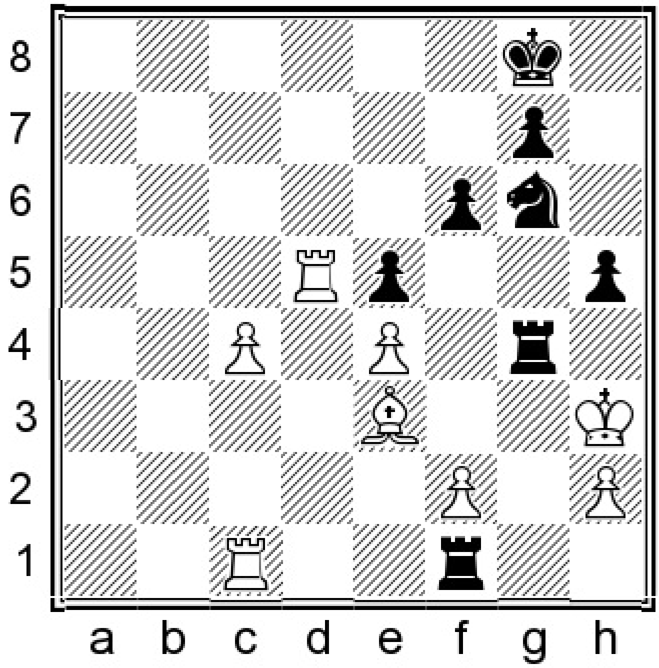


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

397 **64.♖h3+!** Freeing the square on which the knight will soon arrive with devastating effect. **64...♔xh3 65.♖g3+ ♔h4 66.♘f3+ ♔h5 67.♘xd4 ♖xa2 68.♘f5!** Ippolito-Shabalov, Peabody 2007; Black resigned – he has no defence to 69.♖g5 and mate.

398

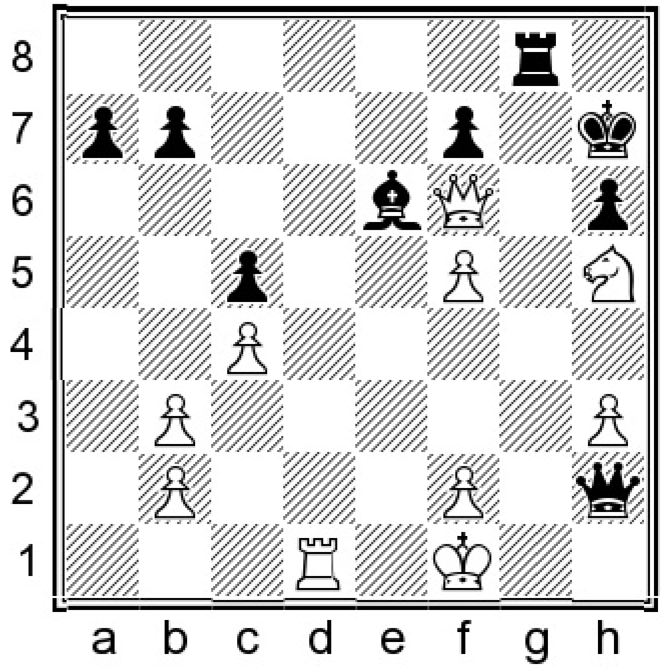


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

398 **42...♖xf2!** Wang Puchen-Bui Vinh, Budapest 2008; White resigned: the threat is 43...♖f3#, and on 43.♗xf2 there is mate by 43...♘f4.

399

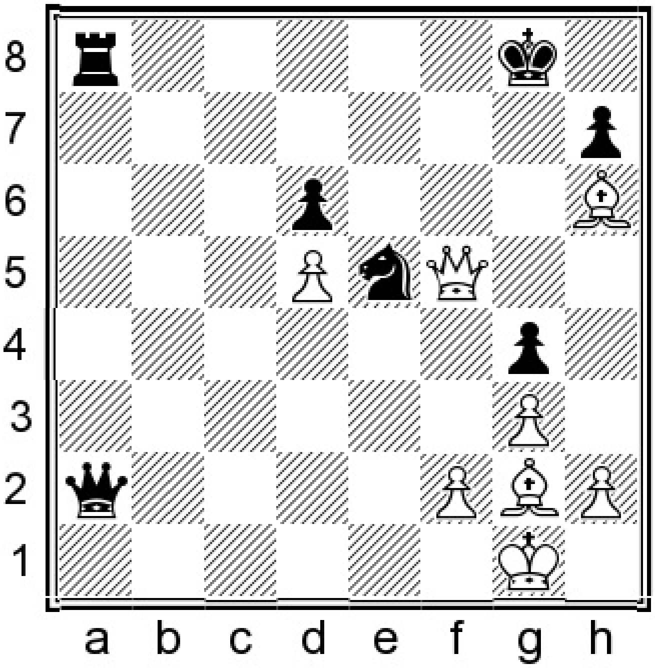


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

399 **27.♕g7+!** Casper-Brener, Germany Bundesliga 2007/08; Black resigned because of the forced 27...♖xg7 28.♘f6+ ♔h8 29.♖d8+.

400



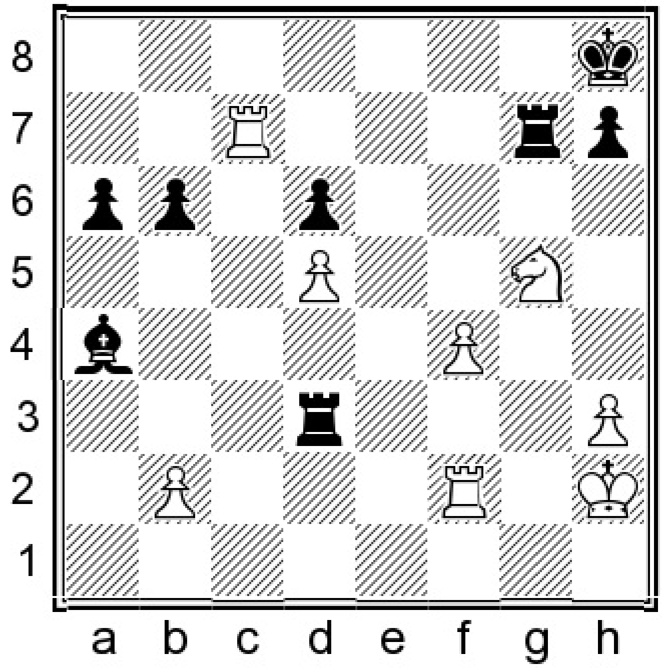
Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

400 **31...♕a1+ 32.♗f1 ♘f3+ 33.♔g2 ♕xf1+! 34.♔xf1 ♖a1+** 0-1 Clavery-Lemos, Villa Martelli 2008; Black can only avoid mate by 35.♔e2, but then Black establishes a decisive material advantage after 35...♘d4+.

Show in Text Mode

401

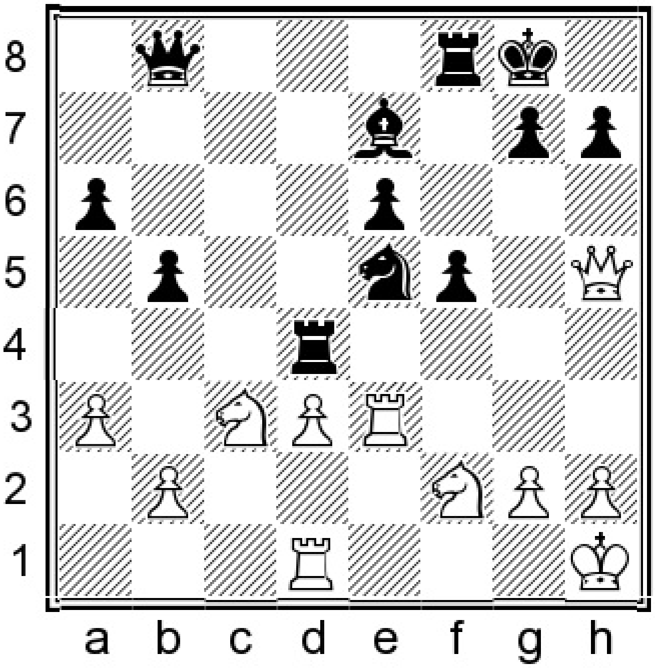


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

401 **41.♖c8+! ♖g8 42.♖g2!** Areshchenko-Sebenik, Plovdiv Ech 2008; the threat of 43.♘f7+ is unstoppable, Black resigned.

402

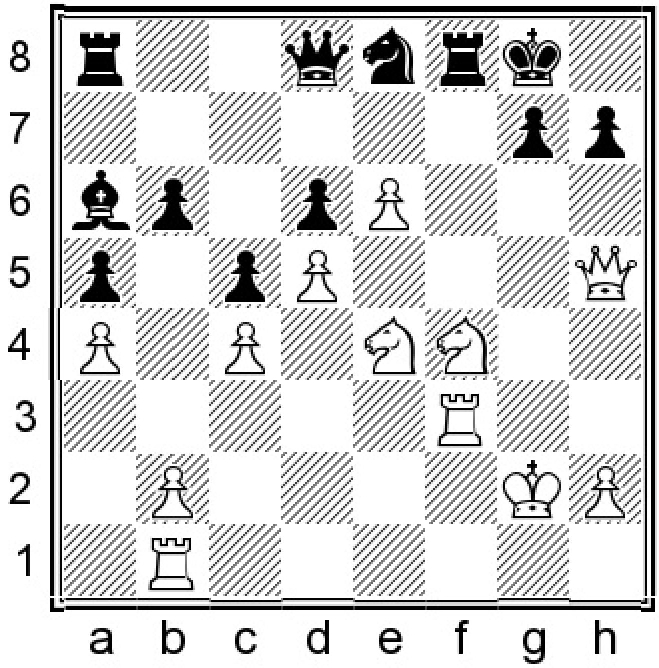


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

402 **25...♖h4 26.♕e2 ♘f3!** 0-1 Velcheva-Tairova, Plovdiv Ech W 2008; but not 26...♖xh2+?! 27.♔g1, and the fight continues.

403

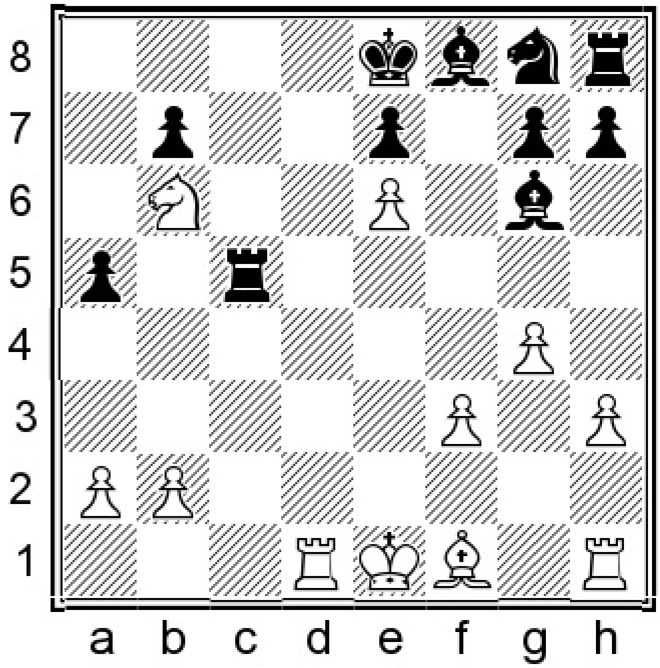


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

403 **25.♕xh7+!** Gyimesi-Bistric, Bosnia & Herzegovina tt 2008; Black resigned because of 25...♔xh7 26.♖h3+ ♔g8 27.♘g6 with unavoid-able mate.

404

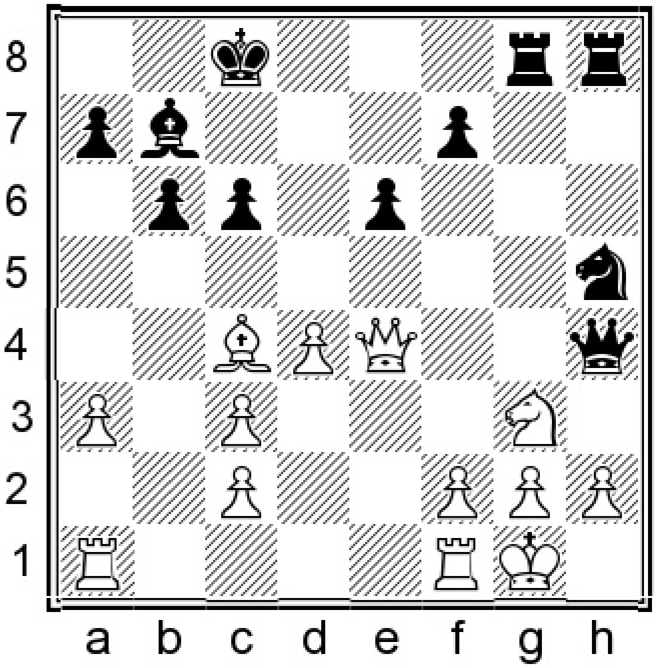


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

404 **22.♘a8!** With the threat of 23.♗b5+ ♖xb5 24.♘c7#. **22...♖e5+ 23.♔f2 ♖xe6 24.♘c7+ ♔f7 25.♗c4**, and White won in Contin-B.Larsen, Buenos Aires 2008.

405

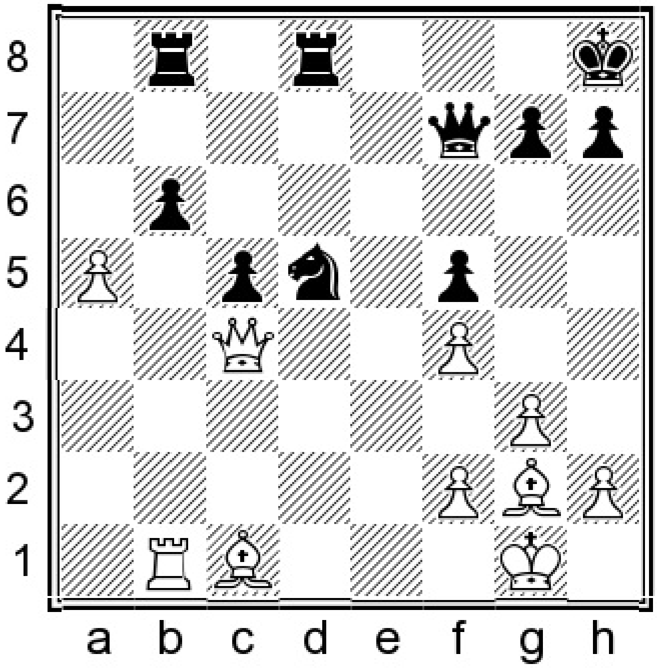


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

405 **20...♛xh2+! 21.♔xh2 ♘xg3+** 0-1 O’Brien-Salter, Kallithea tt 2008.

406

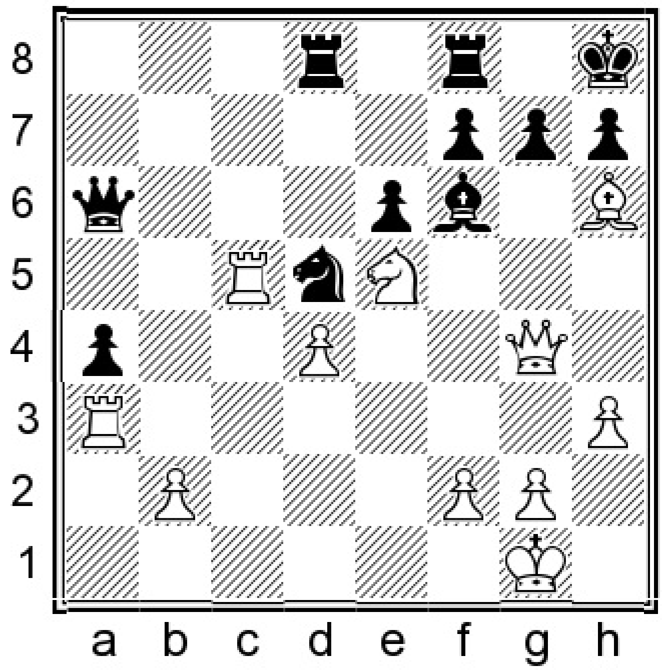

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

406 **29...♘e3!** 0-1 Noguchi-Tu Hoang Thong, Dresden ol 2008; after any queen move there is the decisive 30...♖d1+.

407

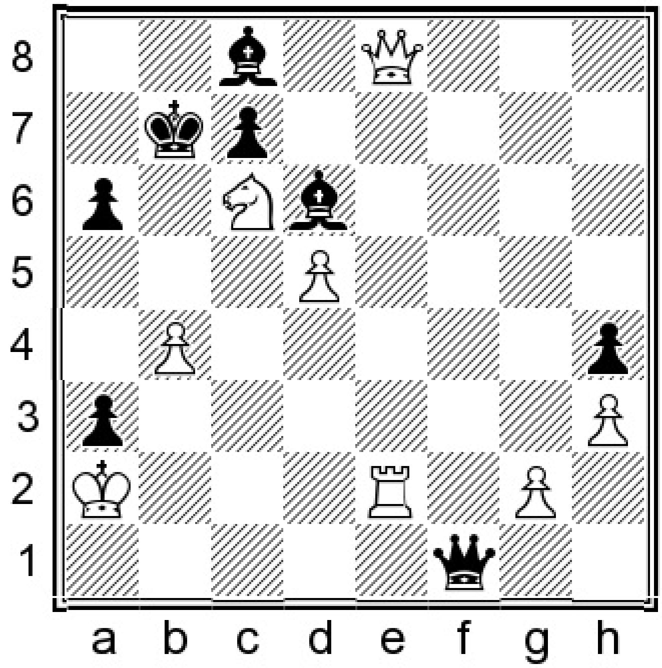


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

407 **31.♖g3!** Lomineishvili-Vasiliev, Dresden ol W 2008; Black resigned: if 31...g6 32.♗xf8 he loses the exchange, whilst after 31...gxh6 there follows a familiar mate: 32.♕g8+! ♖xg8 33.♘xf7#.

408

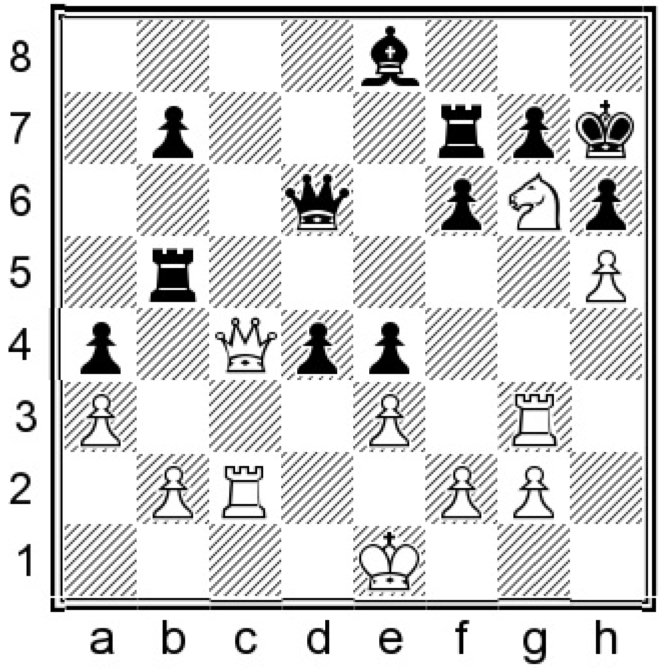

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h

White to play

Show/Hide Solution

408 **45.♕xc8+!** 1-0 Nepomniachtchi-Salgado Lopez, Pamplona 2008; 45...♔xc8 46.♖e8+ ♔b7 47.♖b8# or 46...♔d7 47.♖d8#.

409

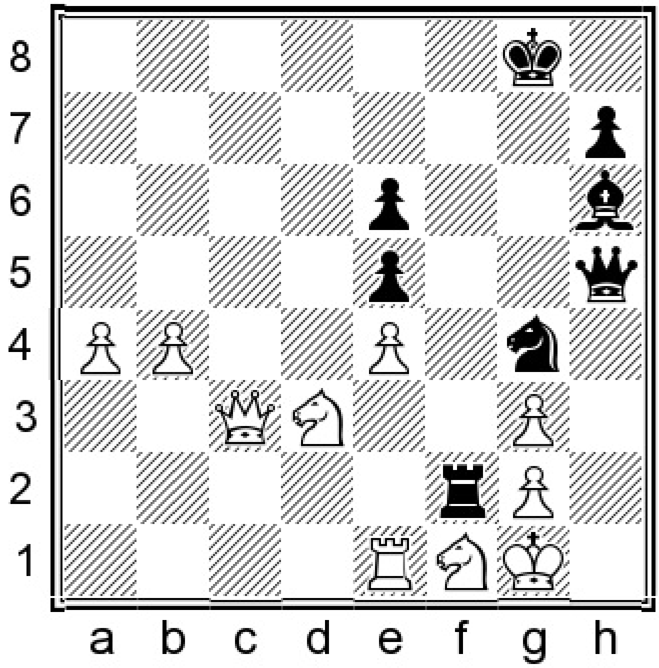

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h

White to play

Show/Hide Solution

409 **38.♕xb5! ♗xb5 39.♖c8** Berczes-Akesson, Stockholm 2008/09; Black resigned: he can only avoid mate at the cost of great material losses.

410

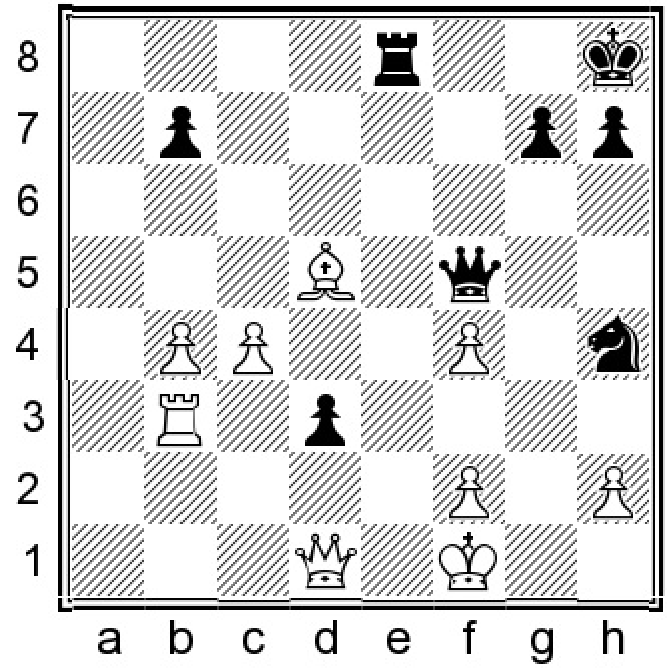

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

410 **44...♗e3! 45.♖xe3 ♕h1+!** 0-1 Ivakhinova-Nebolsina, Cheliabinsk ch-RUS W 2008.

411



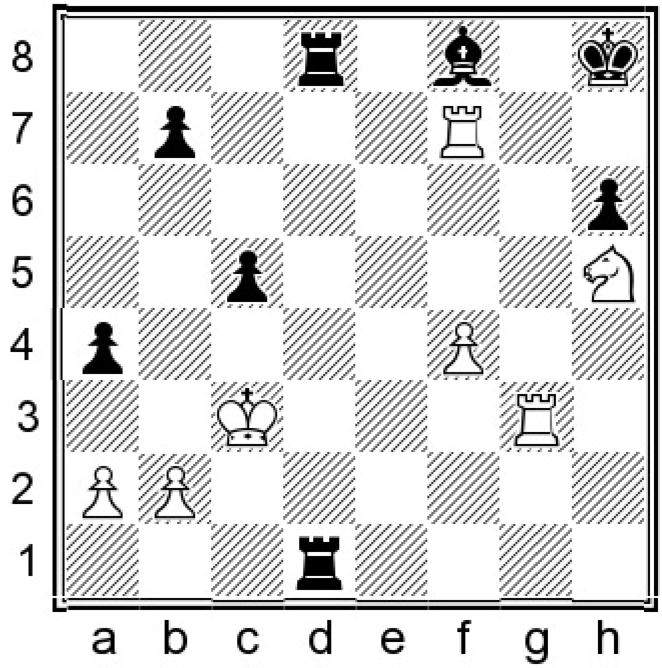
Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

411 Here Black played 36...♕xf4? in Bischoff-Khenkin, Saarbrücken ch-GER 2009 and after 37.♖xd3 ♖f8 38.♕e2 ♕xh2 39.♖e3 ♘f5?? 40.♖e8 admitted defeat.

He missed the not particularly difficult **36...♕h3+ 37.♔g1 ♕g4+! 38.♕xg4 ♖e1#**.

412



White to play

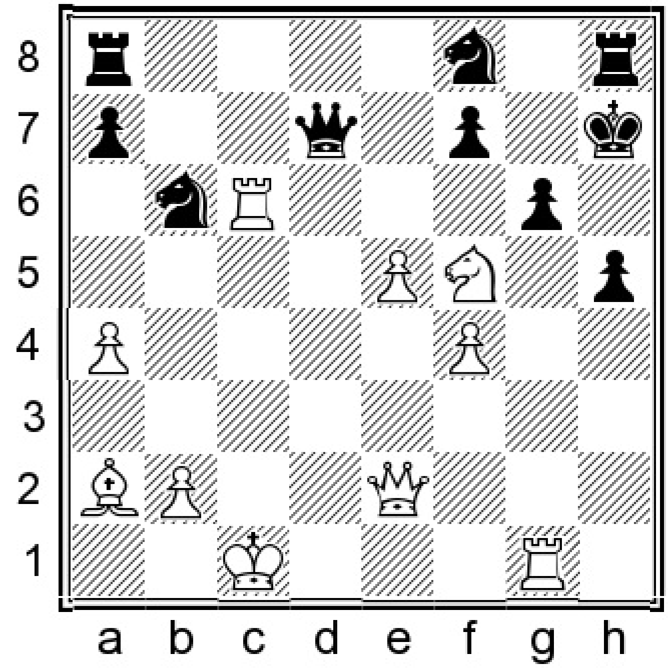
Show/Hide Solution

412 **42.♖h7+!** But not 42.♘f6?? ♖c1#.

42.♖h7+!

Kotronias-Vallejo Pons, Budva Ech 2009; Black resigned, without waiting for 42...♔xh7 43.♘f6+ ♔h8 44.♖g8#.

413

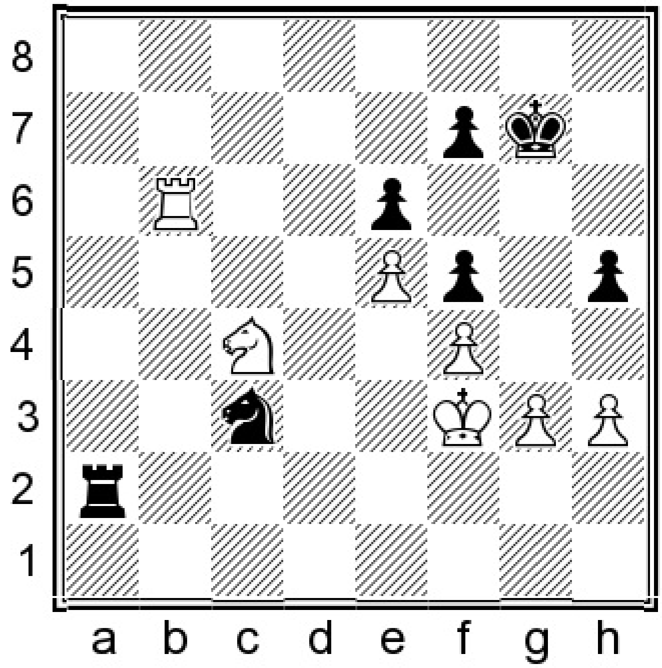


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

413 **32.♕xh5+! gxh5** He also loses after 32...♔g8 33.♖cxg6+ ♘xg6 34.♖xg6+ ♔f8 35.♕xh8#. **33.♖h6#** I.Sokolov-Middelburg, Netherlands tt 2008/09.

414

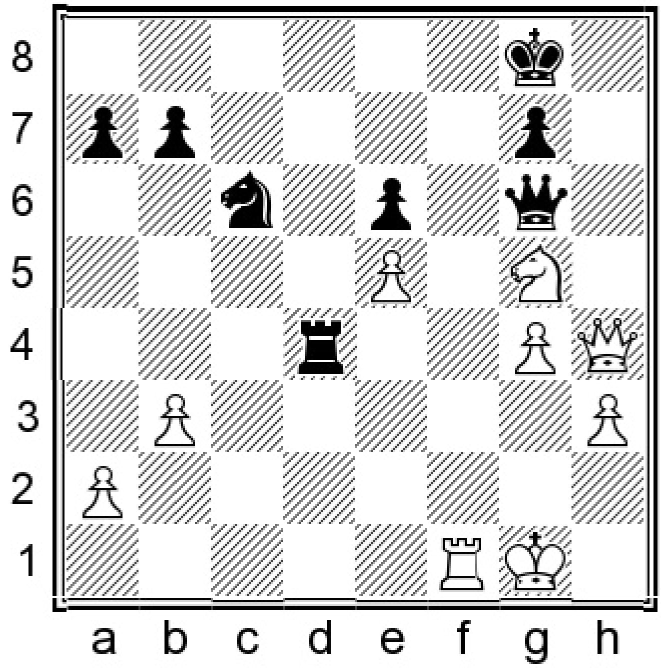


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

414 **59...♘d1! 60.g4 h4!** 0-1 Le Roux-Feller, Nimes ch-FRA 2009.

415

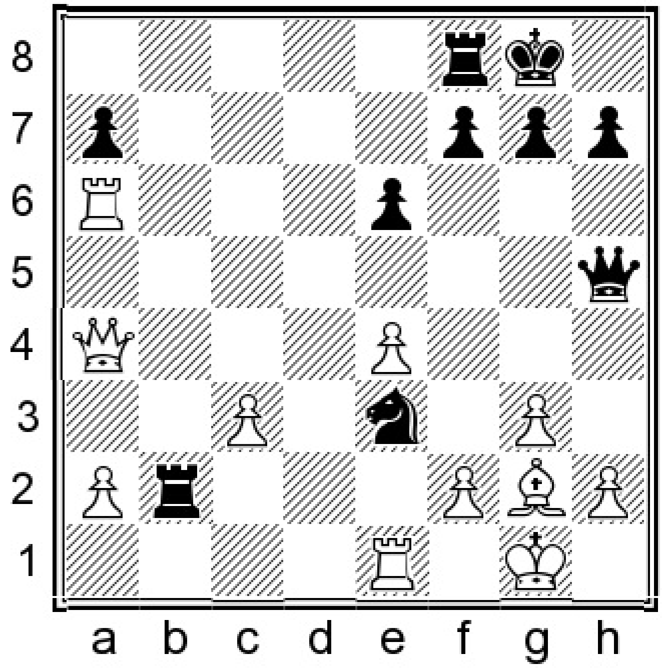


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

415 **32.♕h8+!** Cherednichenko-Malikentzos, Chalkida 2009; Black resigned – if 32...♔xh8 33.♖f8#.

416

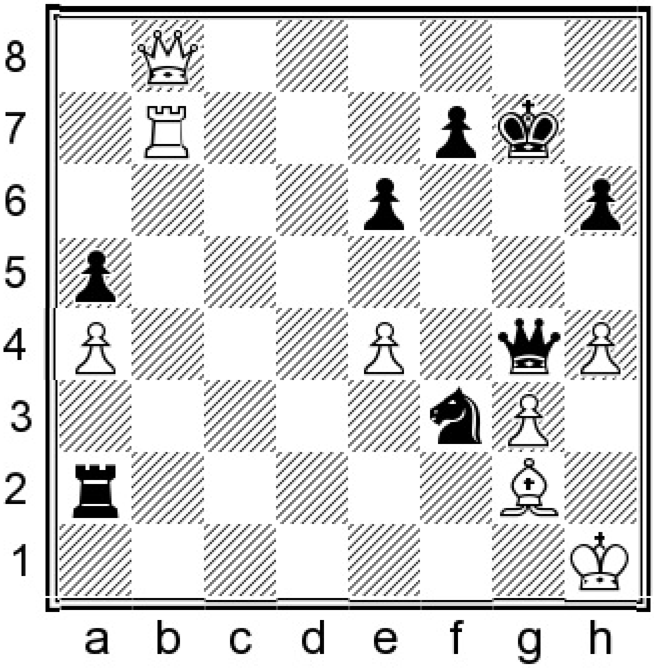


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

416 **21...♕e2!!** 0-1 Bacrot-Anand, Bastia rapid 2001; even top GMs overlook such blows: 22.♖xe2 ♖b1+.

417

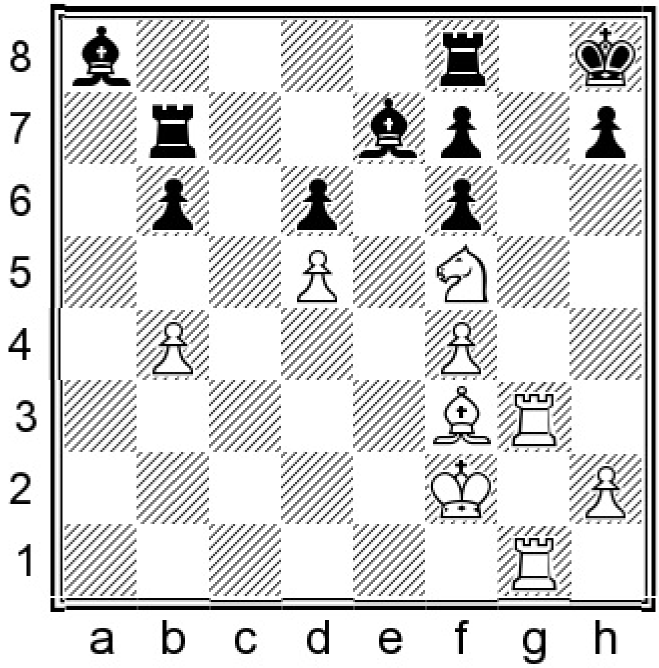


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

417 **48...♕h3+!** 0-1 Fridman-Lenderman, Gibraltar 2010.

418



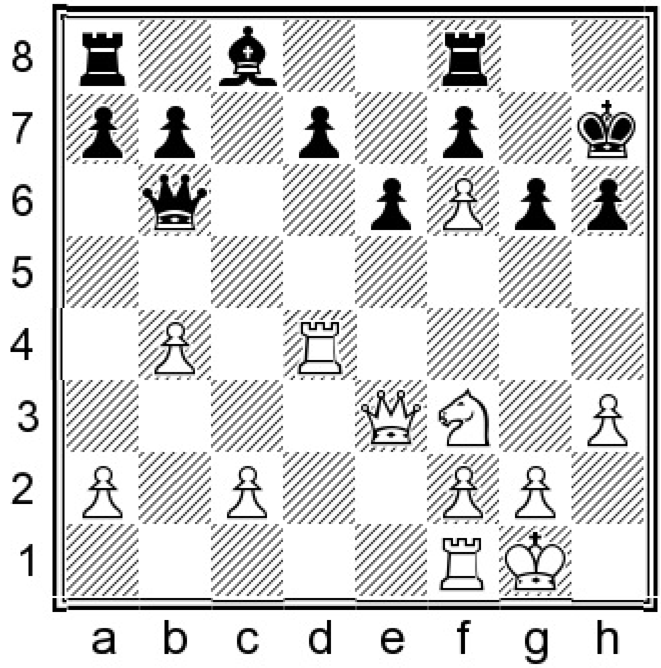
8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h

White to play

Show/Hide Solution

418 **33.♘h6 ♖bb8 34.♖g8+!** 1-0 Vorobiov-Tregubov, Rijeka Ech playoff rapid 2010; 34...♖xg8 35.♘xf7#.

419

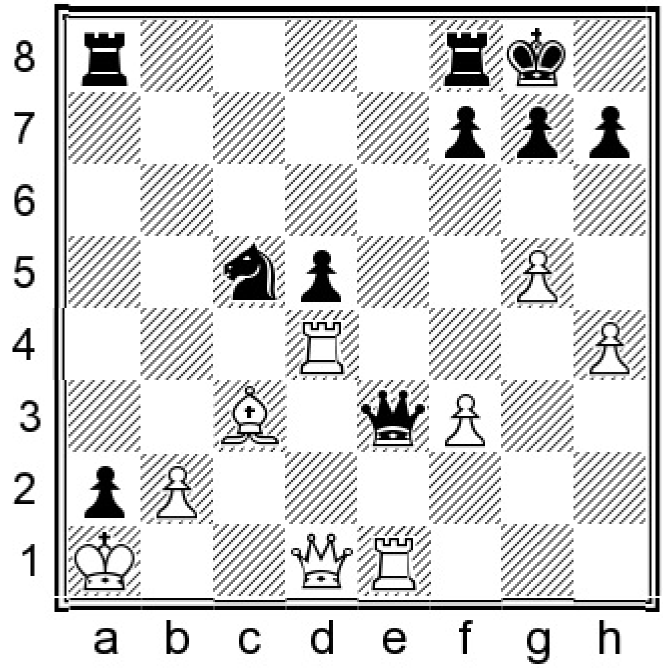


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

419 **19.♕xh6+!** 1-0 Milliet-Le Diouron, France tt 2010.

420

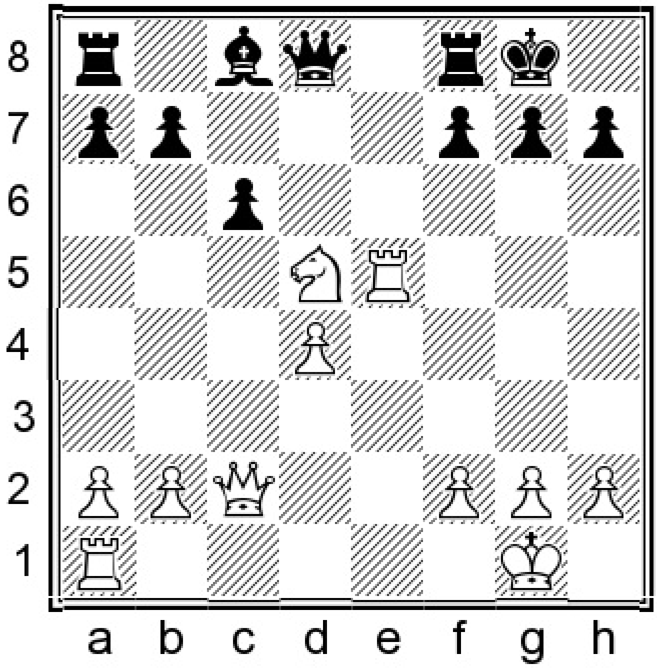


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

420 **30...♕c1+!** 0-1 Potkin-Caruana, Russia tt 2010; 31.♕xc1 ♘b3#.

421

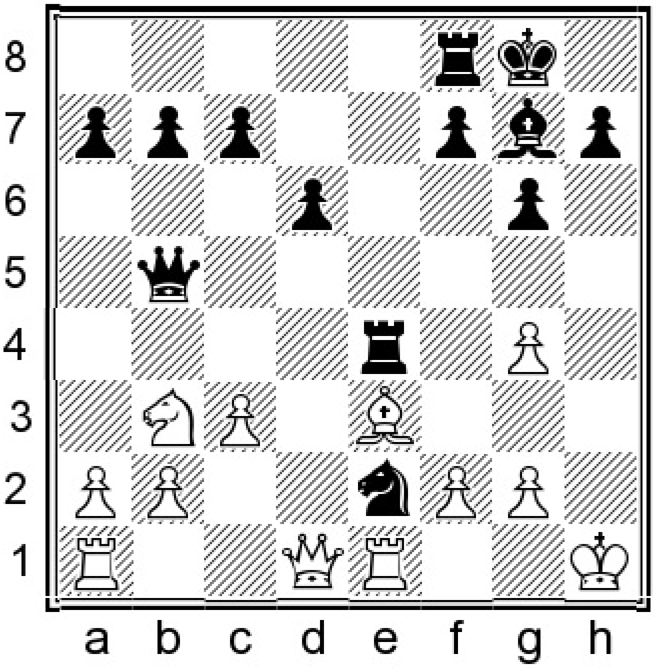


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

421 **18.♘e7+ ♔h8 19.♕xh7+!** 1-0 Wassin-Palacios, Khanty-Mansiysk ol 2010.

422

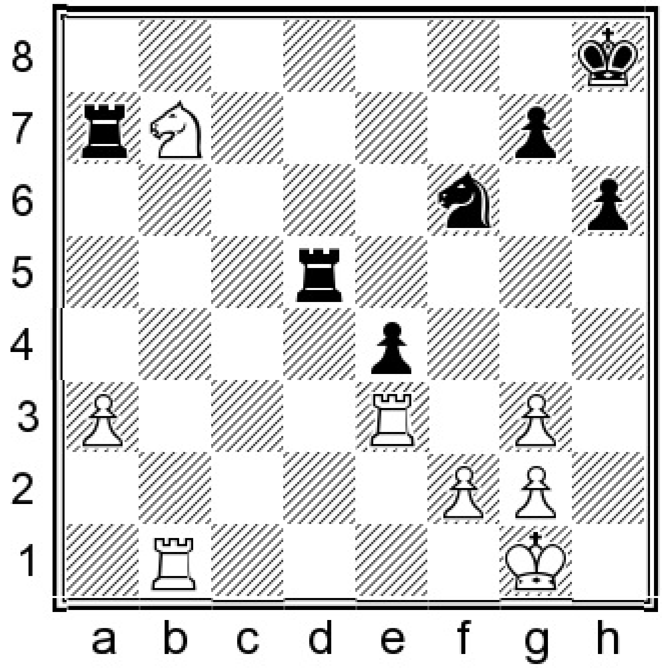


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

422 **17...♕h5+!** Hammer-Carlsen, Chalkidiki Wch jr 2003; White resigned: the rook mates from h4.

423

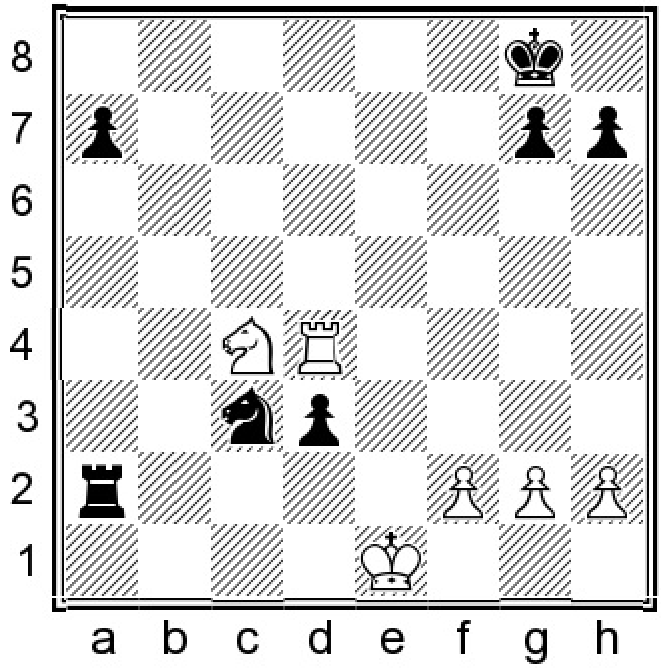


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

423 **29...♖xb7! 30.♖xb7 ♖d1+ 31.♔h2 ♘g4+ 32.♔h3 ♘xf2+ 33.♔h4 ♖h1#** Holt-Panchanathan, Berkeley 2011.

424

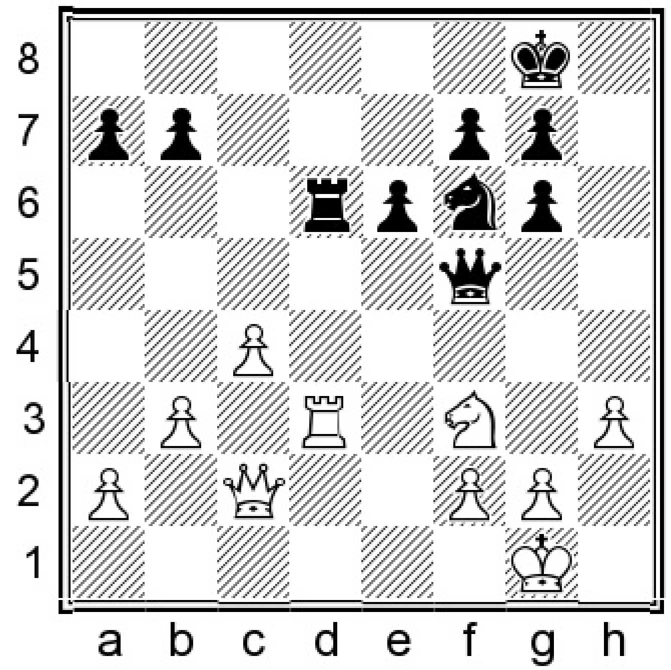


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

424 **33...d2+! 34.♘xd2 ♖a1+ 35.♘b1 ♖xb1+ 36.♔d2 ♘b5**, and Black won in Hebden-Wheeler, England 4NCL 2010/11.

425

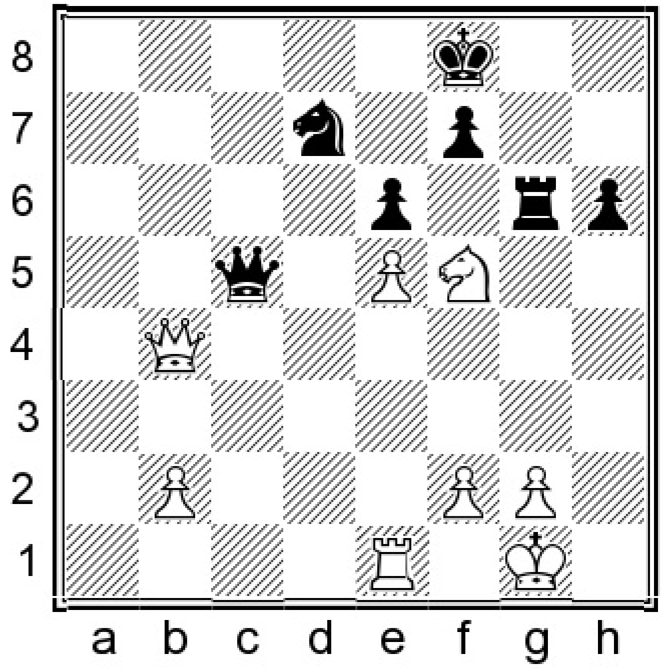

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h

White to play

Show/Hide Solution

425 **25.♖xd6! ♕xc2 26.♖d8+ ♔h7 27.♘g5+** Grachev-Inarkiev, Moscow jr 2011; Black resigned because of 27...♔h6 28.♘xf7+ ♔h5 29.♖h8+.

426

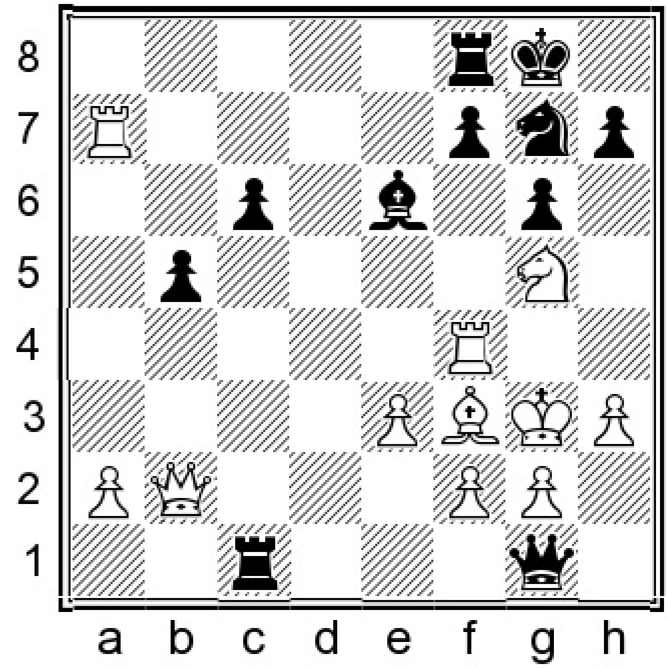


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

426 **39.♖c1!** 1-0 Edouard-Novikov, Moscow 2011; 39...♕xb4 40.♖c8#.

427

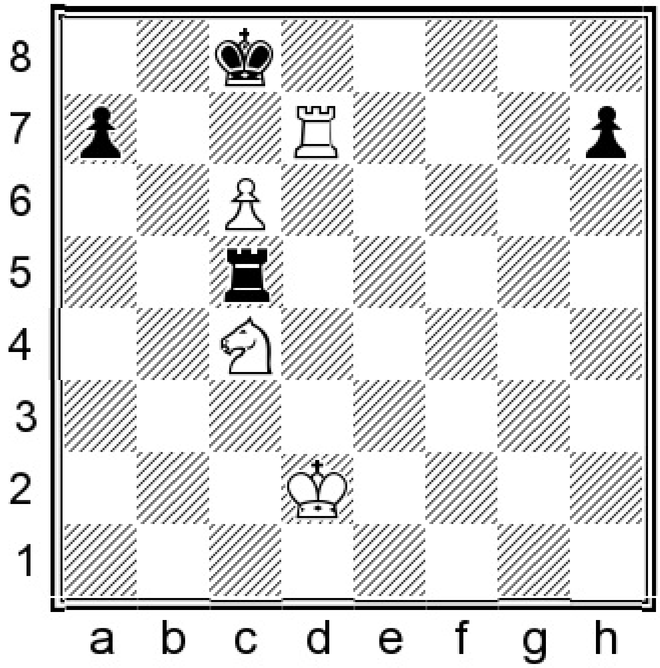


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

427 **33.♕xg7+! ♔xg7 34.♘xe6+** Jumabayev-Ahmad, Jakarta tt 2011; Black resigned, mate is unavoidable: 34...♔h6 35.♖h4# or 34...♔g8 35.♖fxf7! ♖xf7 36.♖a8+ ♖f8 37.♖xf8#.

428

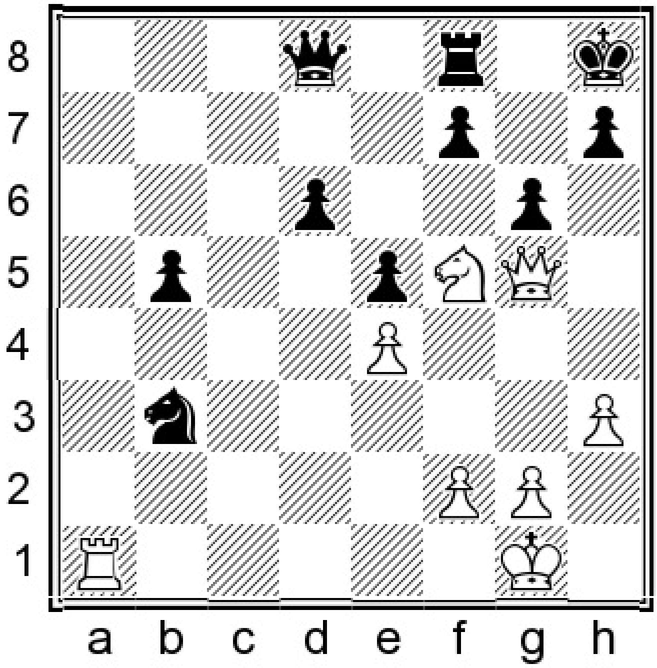


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

428 **53.♘d6+ ♔b8 54.c7+!** 1-0 I.Sokolov-Collutiis, Alghero 2011; 54...♖xc7 55.♖d8+.

429

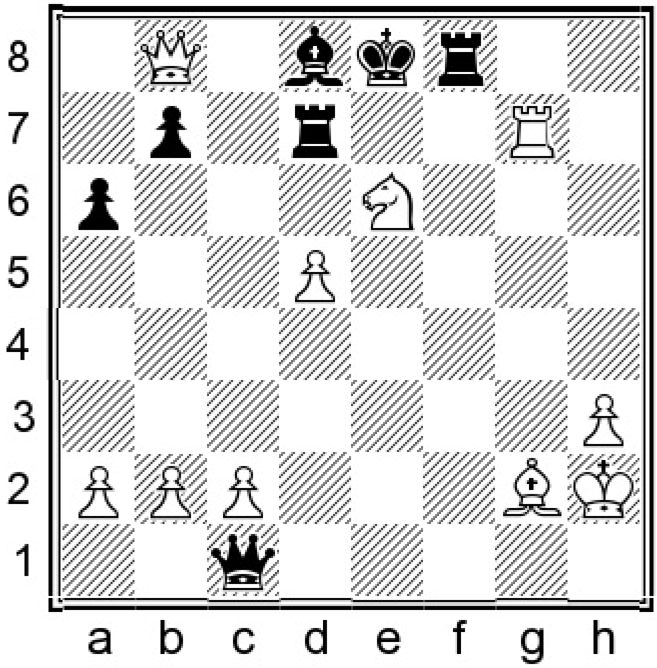

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h

White to play

Show/Hide Solution

429 **33.♖a8!** 1-0 Pierrot-Villanueva, Buenos Aires 2011; whichever piece Black takes with, mate is unavoidable: 33...♕xg5 34.♖xf8#; 33...♕xa8 34.♕f6+.

430

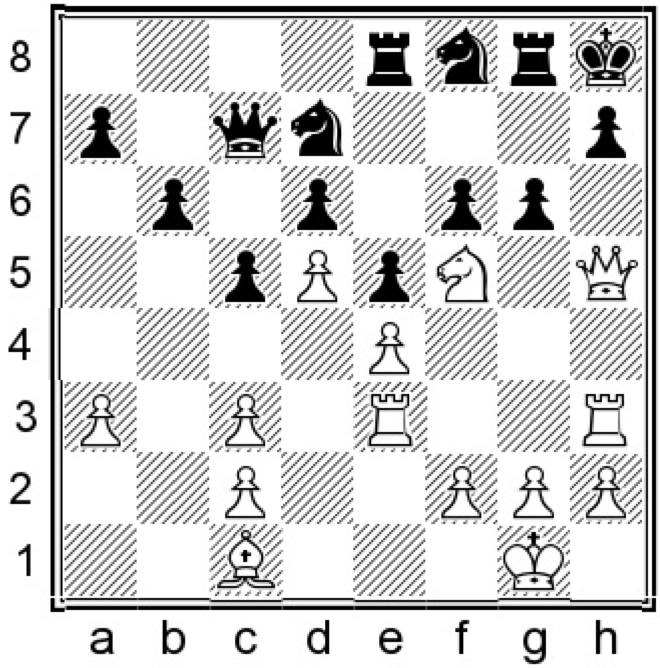

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h

White to play

Show/Hide Solution

430 **32.♕xd8+! ♖xd8 33.♘c7#** Guseinov-Rijnaarts, Rogaska Slatina tt 2011.

431

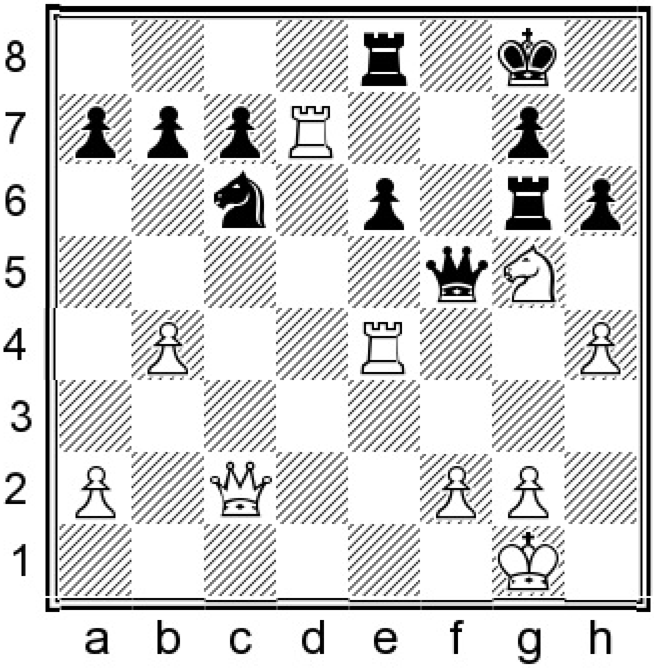


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

431 **25.♕xh7+!** 1-0 Kanli-O’Donoghue, Rogaska Slatina tt 2011; 25...♘xh7 26.♖xh7+ ♔xh7 27.♖h3#.

432



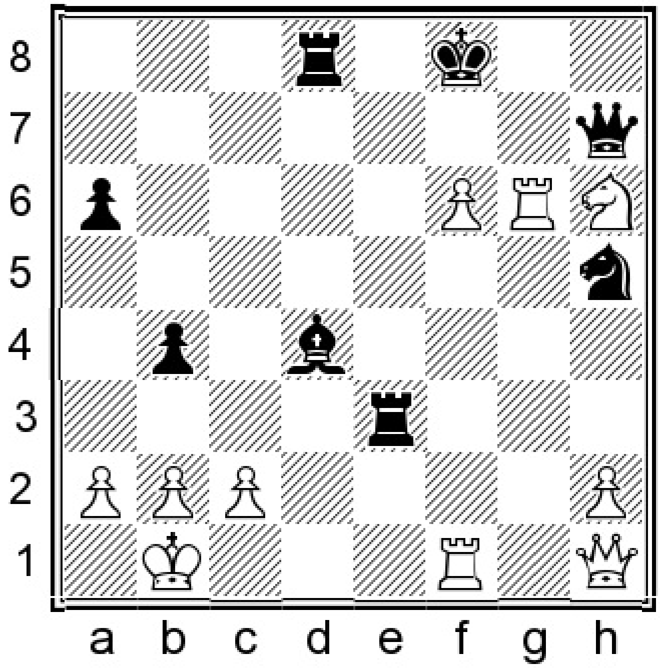
White to play

Show/Hide Solution

432 **25.♖xe6!** Aronian-Anand, Sao Paulo/Bilbao 2011; Black resigned: it is either mate after 25...♕xc2 26.♖xe8, or large material losses.

Show in Text Mode

433

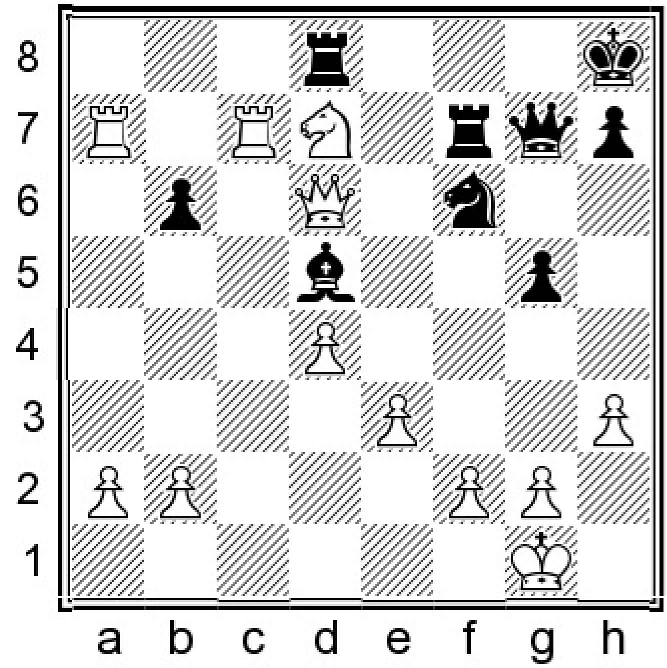


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

433 **31.♕b7!** Such ‘long’ moves can easily be overlooked at the board. Now taking the queen leads to mate on g8, but the move in the game also loses: **31...♕xg6 32.♕xb4+ ♔e8 33.f7+** 1-0 Motylev-Laznicka, Poikovsky 2011.

434

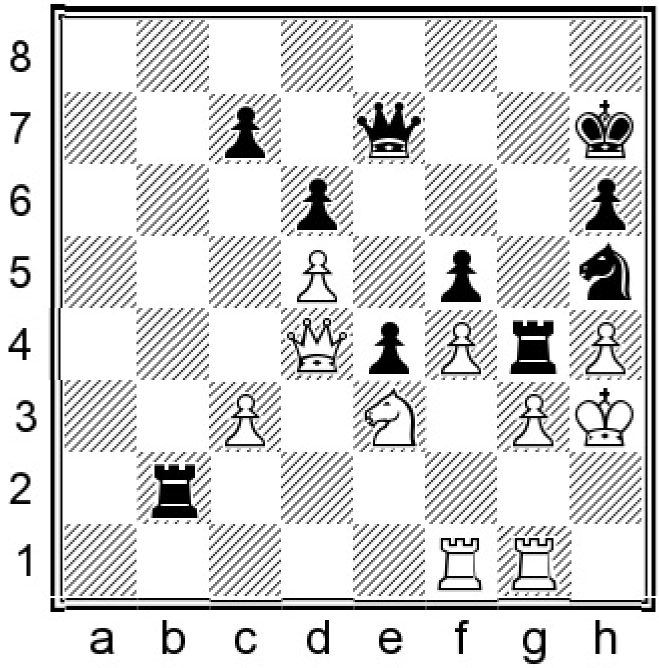


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

434 **36.♘xf6! ♖xd6** Much more tenacious was 36...♕xf6 37.♕xf6+ ♖xf6 38.♖xh7+ ♔g8 39.♖hg7+ ♔f8 40.♖xg5, although White has too many pawns for the bishop. **37.♖c8+ ♖f8 38.♖xf8+** 1-0 Tkachiev-Novita, Jakarta 2011.

435


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h

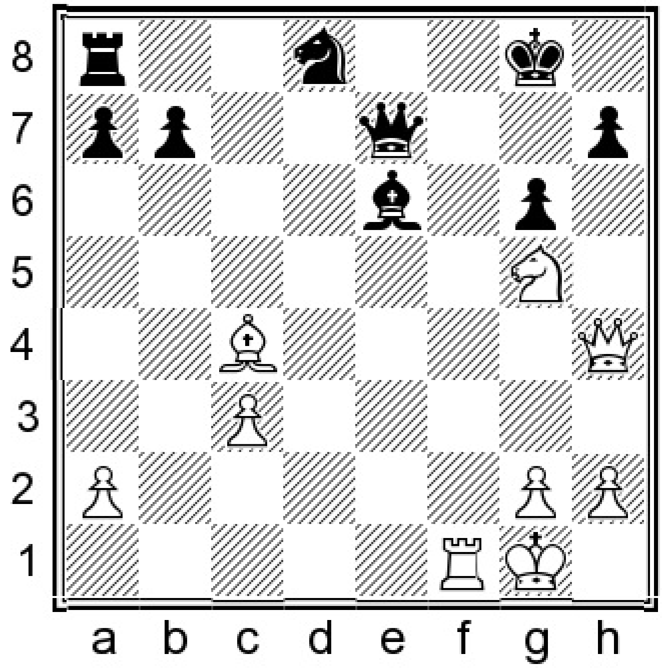
Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

435 **47...♖xh4+!** It was also possible to start with 47...♕xh4+!.

47...♖xh4+! 48.gxh4 ♕xh4+ 49.♔xh4 ♖h2# A.Hunt-Galdunts, Gold Coast 2000.

436

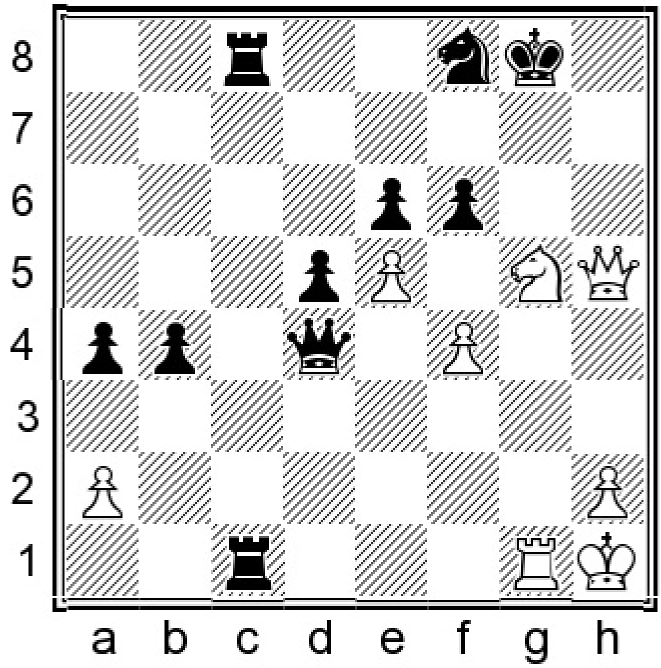


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

436 **24.♘xe6! ♛xh4 25.♖f8#** Ja.van Overdam-Theulings, Groningen 2011.

437

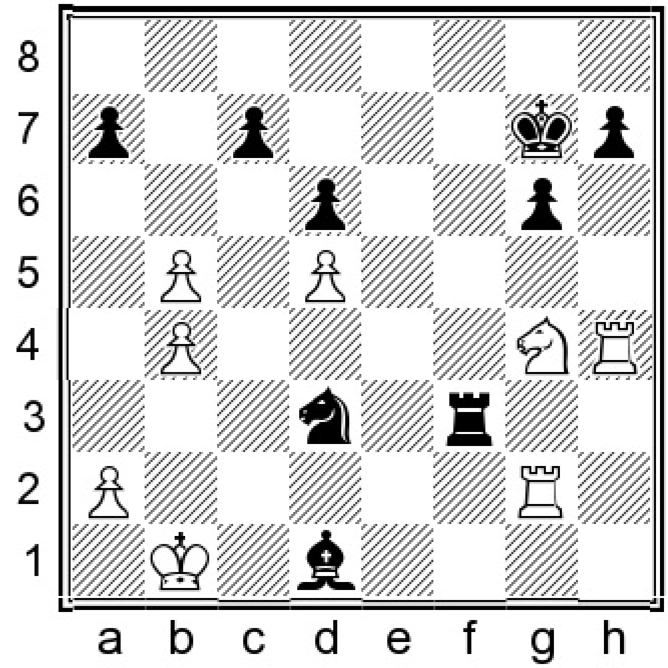


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

437 **40.♕f7+ ♔h8 41.♕h7+!** 1-0 Movsesian-Zatonskih, Gibraltar 2012.

438

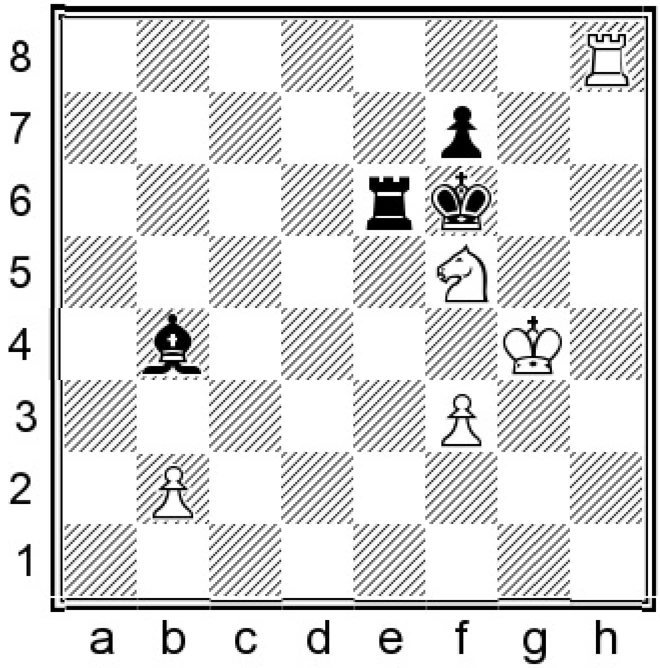


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

438 **36...♗c2+! 37.♔xc2** 37.♖xc2 ♖f1+. **37...♘e1+ 38.♔d2 ♘xg2 39.♖h2 ♖a3!** The knight is immune because of check on a2. **40.♔c1 ♘f4** 0-1 Yilmaz-Zherebukh, Moscow 2012.

439

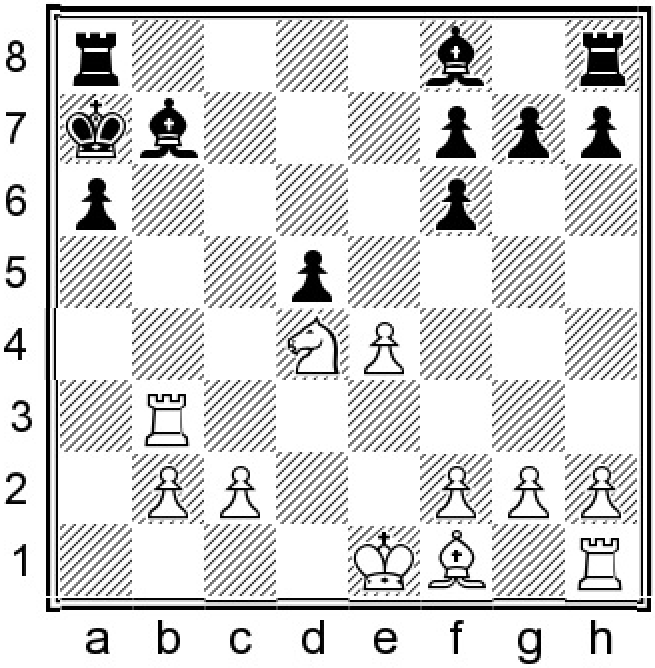

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h

White to play

Show/Hide Solution

439 **52.f4!** Ivanchuk-Dominguez Perez, Havana 2012; Black resigned, mate on h6 is inevitable.

440

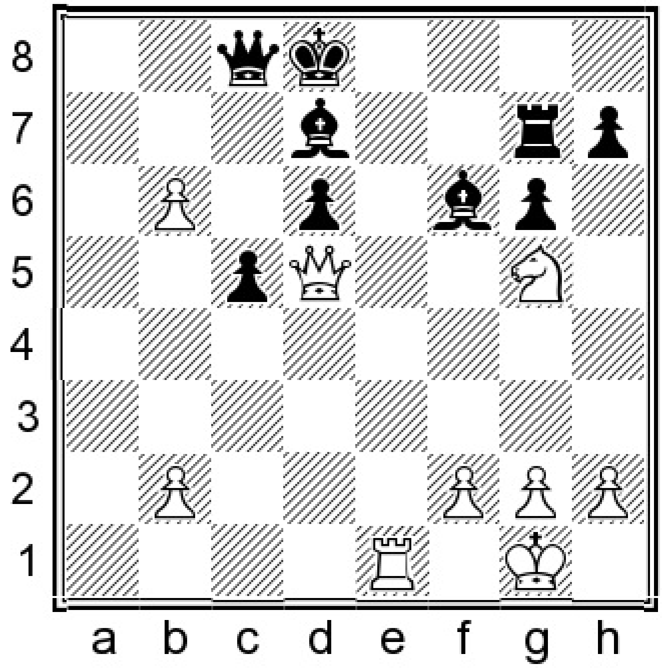


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

440 The very strong Chinese GM’s last move was a blunder 18...♔b6-a7?? (after 18...♔c7 Black faces no threats). The punishment was immediate and severe: **19.♗xa6!!** Motylev-Wang Hao, China tt 2012; Black resigned because of 19...♗xa6 20.♘c6# or 19...♔xa6 20.0-0 ♗a3 21.♖a1.

441

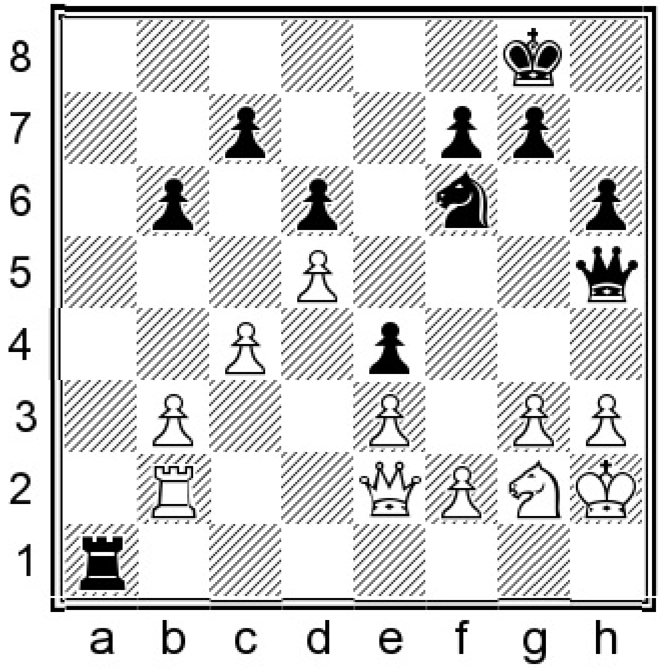

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h

White to play

Show/Hide Solution

441 **26.♕g8+! ♖xg8 27.♘f7#** Van Haastert-Van der Hoeven, Leiden 2012.

442

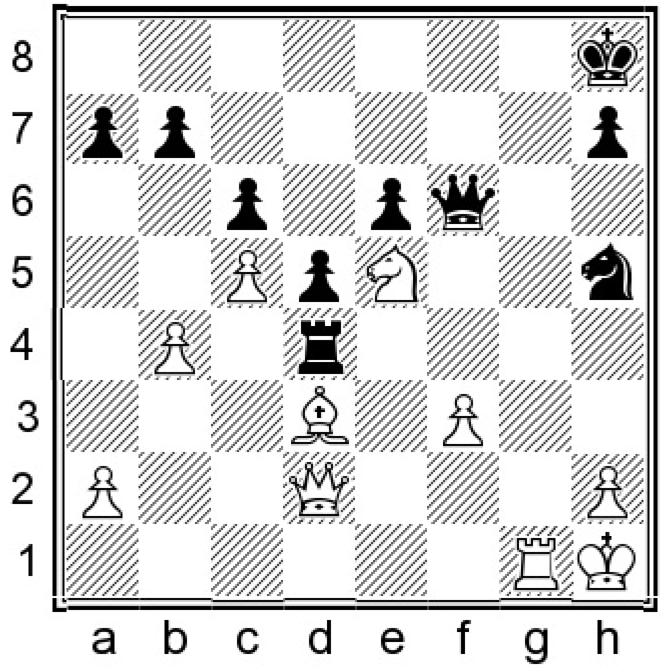


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

442 **29...♕xh3+!** 0-1 A.l'Ami-Timman, Helsingor 2012; 30.♔xh3 ♖h1#.

443

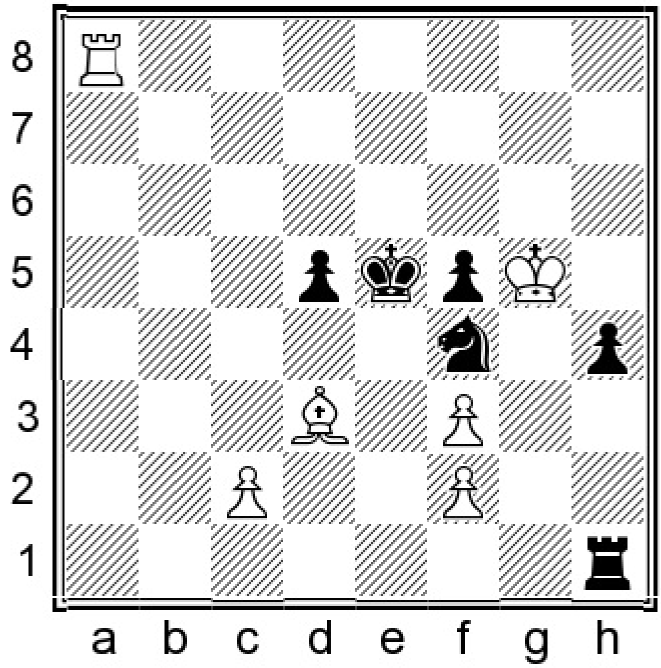


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

443 **34.♕h6!** 1-0 Lupu-Bricard, Marseille ch-FRA 2001; mate threatens from all sides: the knight from f7 and the queen from f8 and h7. On 34...♕e7 there is 35.♘g6+.

444

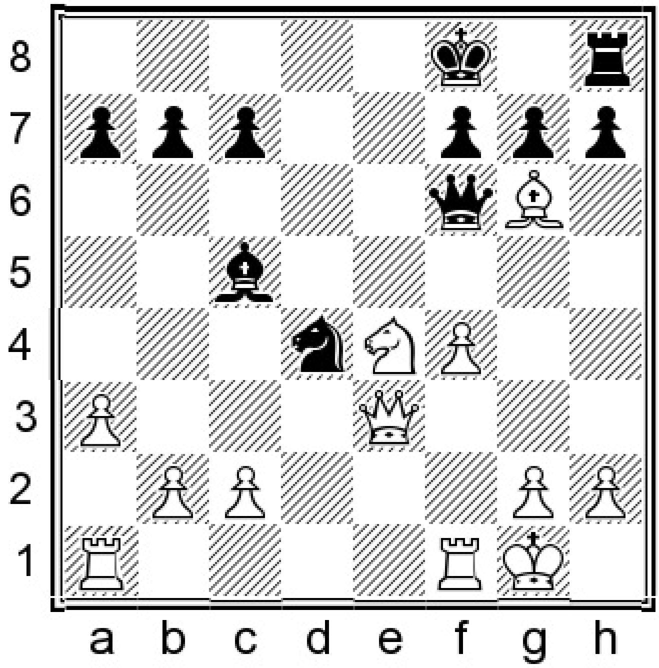


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

444 **47...♖g1+! 48.♔xh4** 48.♔h6 h3. **48...♖h1+ 49.♔g5** 49.♔g3 ♖h3#. **49...♖h5#** Leniart-Krasenkow, Warsaw ch-POL 2010.

445

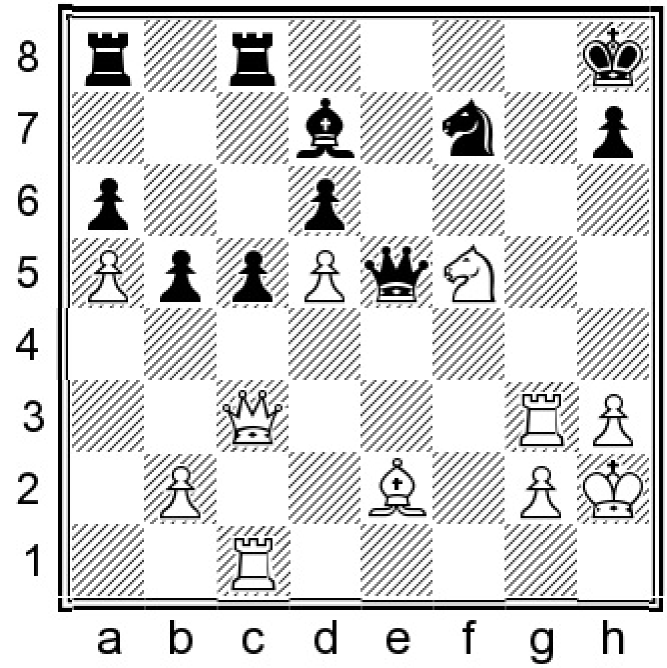


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

445 **18...♘e2+! 19.♔h1 ♗xe3 20.♘xf6 ♘g3+!** I.Popov-Vocaturo, St. Petersburg rapid 2012; White resigned because of 21.hxg3 hxg6+ and mate next move. It is curious how such ‘symmetrical’ moves have such different consequences for the two sides.

446

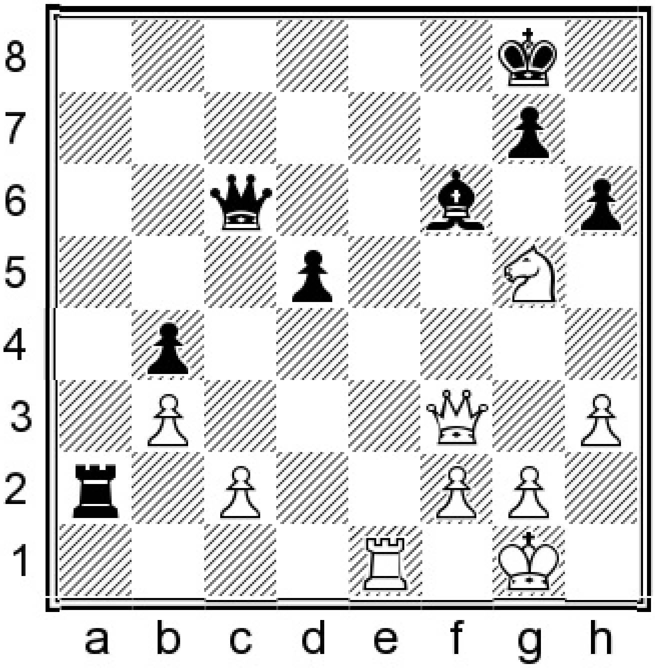


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

446 **29.♘xd6!** 1-0 Sachdev-Uhlmann, Podebrady tt 2012; 29...♕xc3 30.♘xf7#.

447

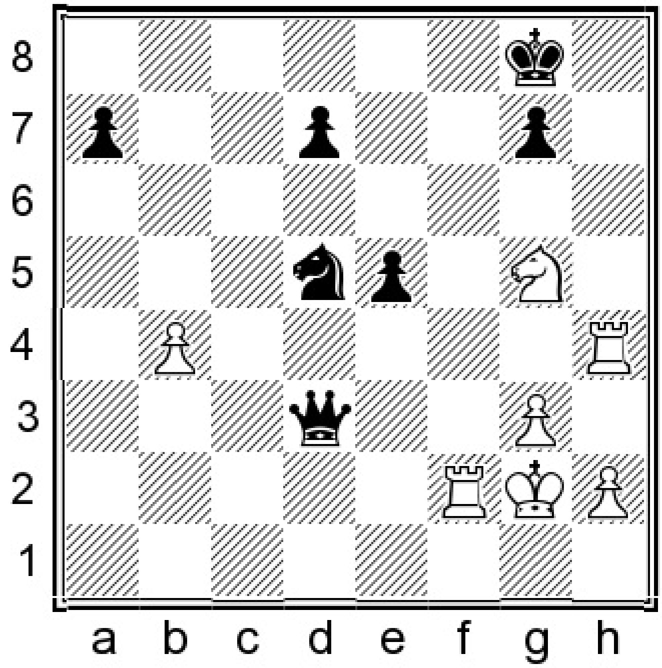


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

447 **31.♕xd5+!** 1-0 Hjartarson-Ulfarsson, Iceland tt 2000; 31...♕xd5 32.♖e8#.

448

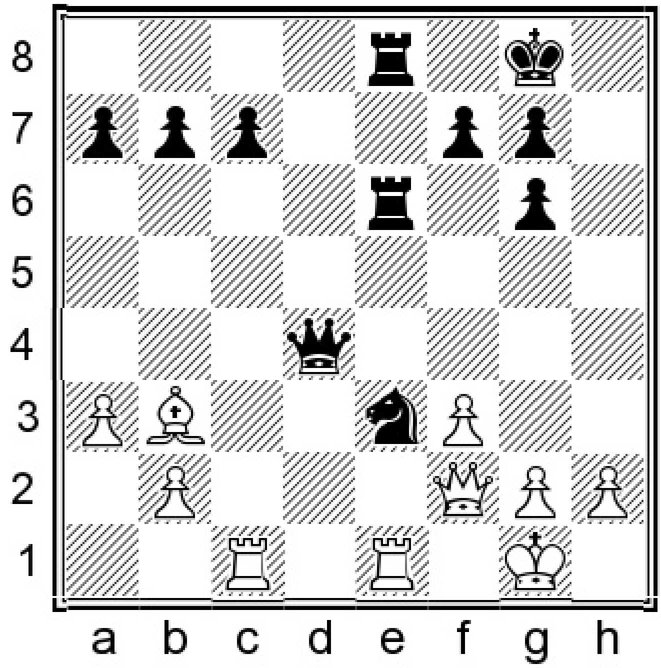


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

448 **35.♖h8+!** 1-0 Tregubov-Sasikiran, Moscow rapid 2013; mate ensues from f8.

449

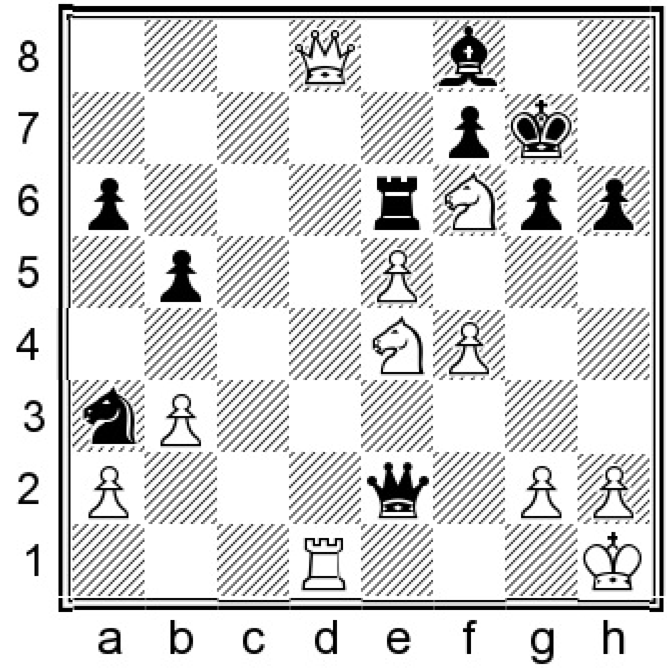


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

449 **24...♘g4!** 0-1 Dutina-Martinovic, Zagreb 2013; an elegant decision. Taking on d4 leads to mate after the double capture on e1, but he also loses after 25.fxg4 ♖xe1+, because the queen is pinned.

450

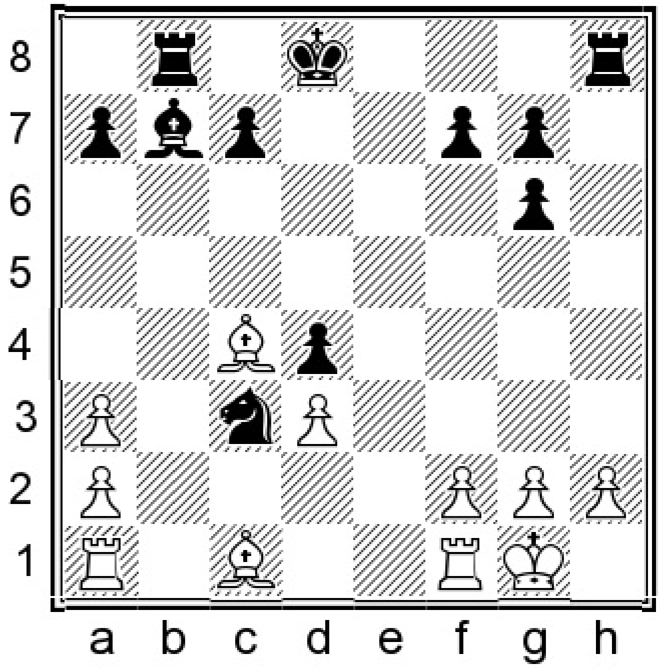


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

450 **35.♕xf8+!** Svetushkin-Dragun, Legnica Ech 2013; Black resigned: wherever the black king goes after 35...♔xf8 36.♖d8+, he is mated in one.

451

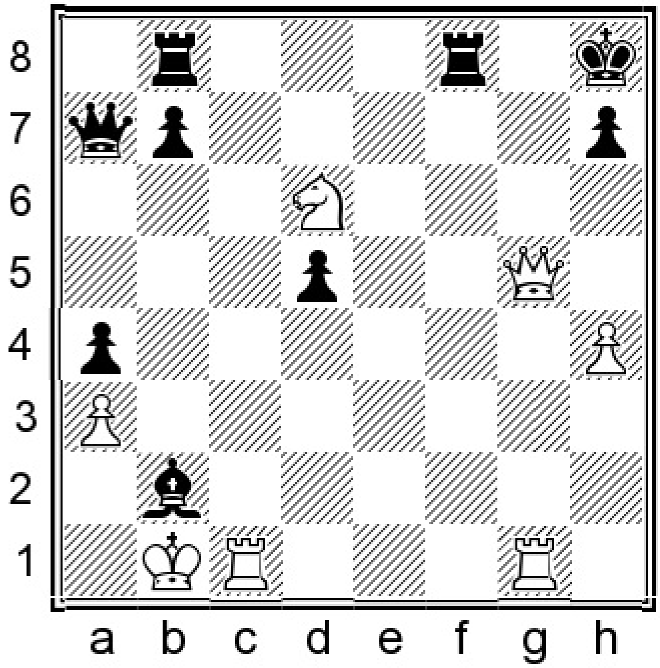


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

451 **17...♘e2+ 18.♔h1 ♔d7!** Baron-Marcellin, France tt 2013; White resigned, because nothing can stop the threat of a sacrifice on h2 followed by ...♖h8#. The g-pawn is pinned and the f4-square, from which the bishop could defend the h-pawn, is controlled by the black knight.

452

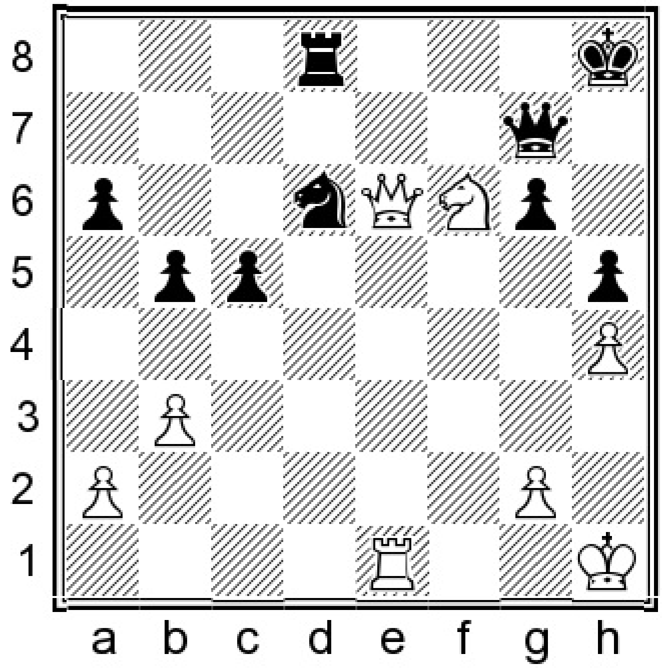

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h

White to play

Show/Hide Solution

452 **29.♕g8+!** 1-0 Martinovic-Rasik, Meissen tt 2013.

453

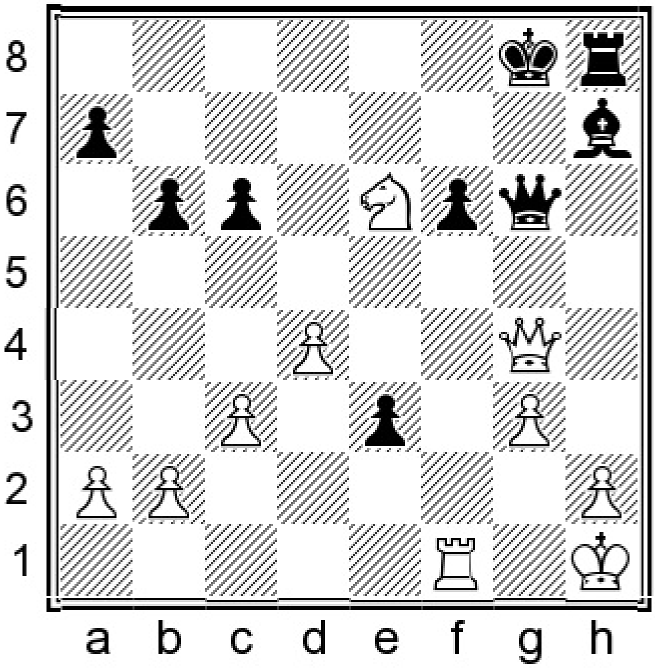

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h

White to play

Show/Hide Solution

453 **36.♕xd6!** Pfretzschner-Baer, Saarbrücken ch-GER 2013; Black resigned: after 36...♖xd6 37.♖e8+ ♕f8 38.♖xf8+ ♔g7 39.♘e8+ ♔xf8 40.♘xd6 he is a piece down.

454

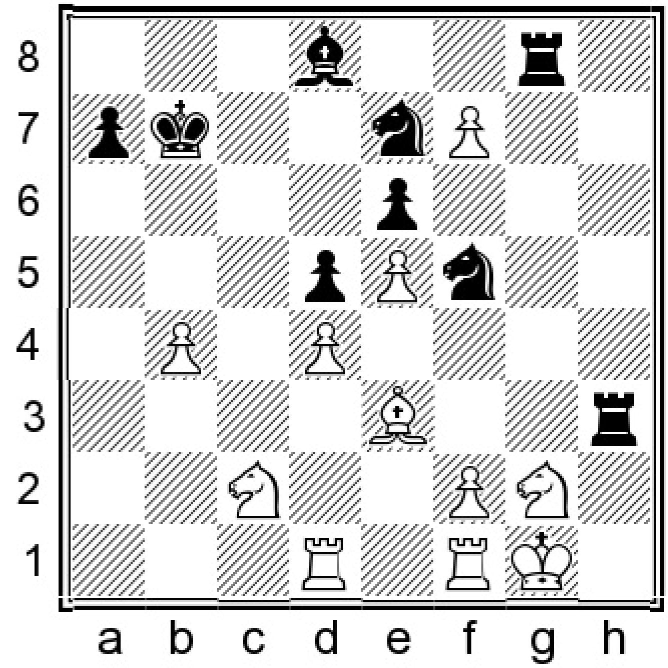

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h

White to play

Show/Hide Solution

454 **34.♖xf6!** 1-0 Moser-Stefanova, Warsaw Ech-tt W 2013; 34...♕xg4 35.♖f8#.

455

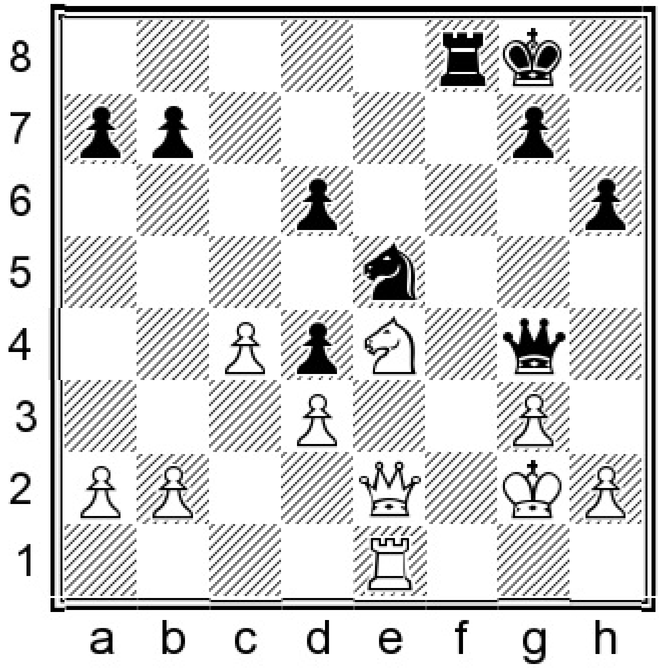


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

455 This time it’s the knight which plays the role of mating piece: **30...♘h4! 31.fxg8=♕ ♘f3#** Pancevski-Michiels, Warsaw Ech-tt 2013.

456

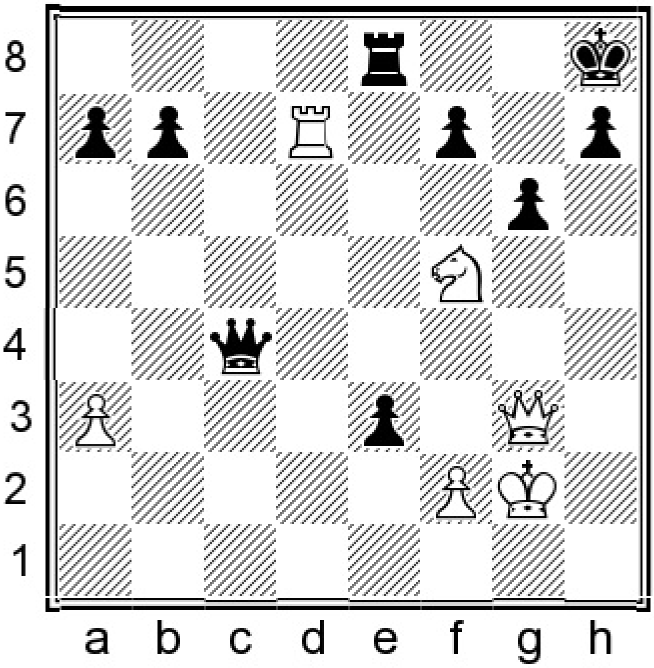


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

456 Thanks to the mate threat, Black wins the exchange: **27...♘f3! 28.♔h1** On the rook retreat, 28...♘h4+ wins the queen. **28...♘xe1!** Azarov-Moiseenko, Warsaw Ech blitz 2013; White resigned because of 29.♕xg4 ♖f1#.

457

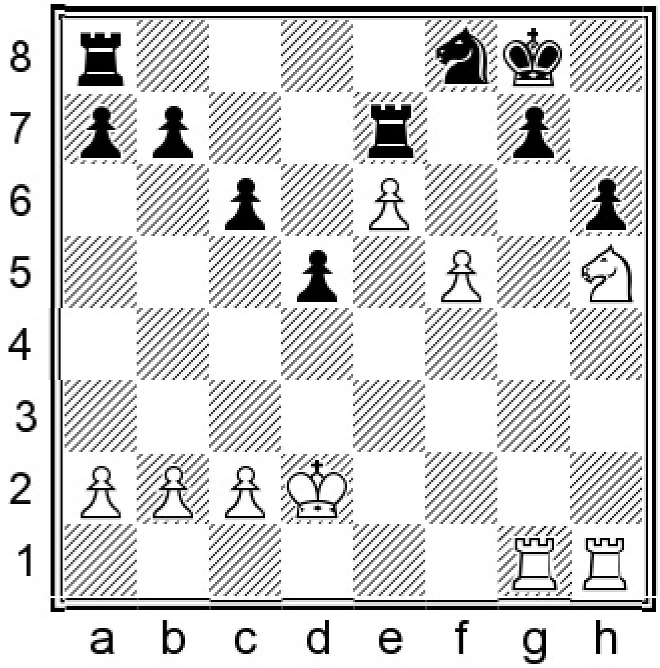

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h

White to play

Show/Hide Solution

457 **37.♕e5+!** 1-0 Al Qudaimi-Al- Modiakhi, Abu Dhabi ch-Arab 2013; 37...♖xe5 38.♖d8+ or 37...♔g8 38.♕g7#.

458

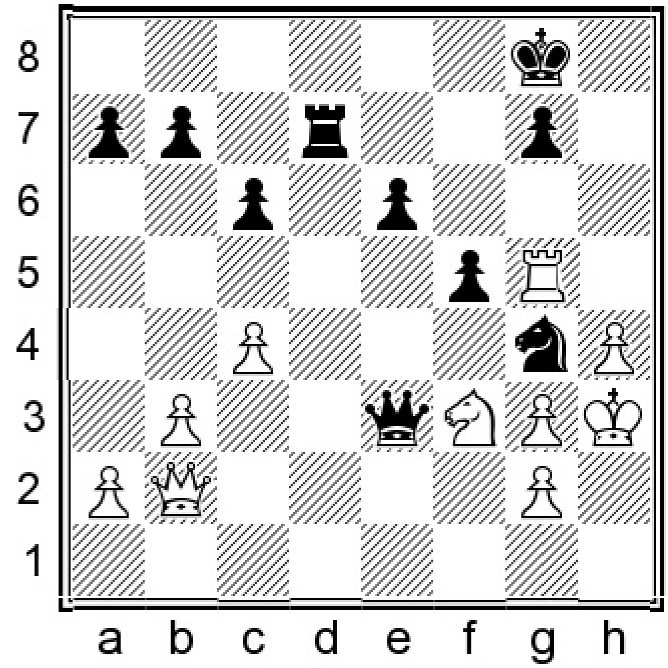

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h

White to play

Show/Hide Solution

458 **27.♘f6+ ♔h8 28.♖xh6+! gxh6 29.♖g8#** Andriasyan-B.Burg, Groningen 2013.

459

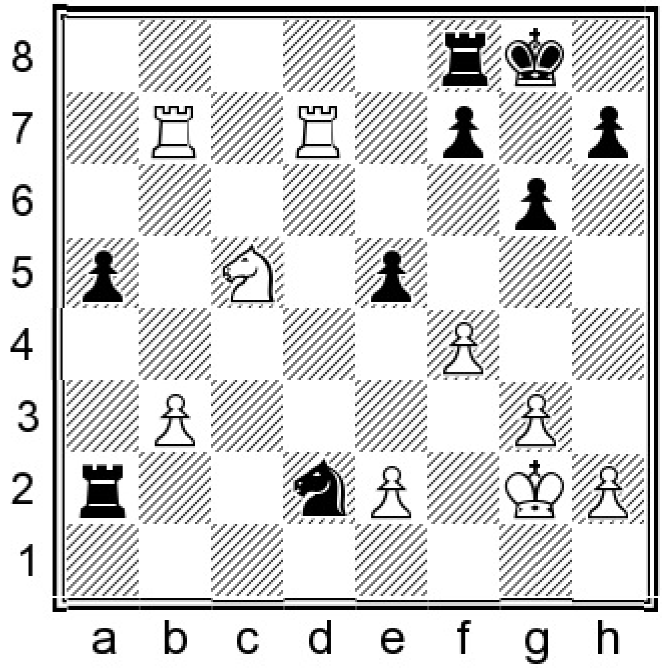


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

459 **43...♕xg5!** Unexpected and beautiful. 0-1 Fercec-Chernyshov, Cappelle-la-Grande 2003; however he takes the queen, mate after 44...♖d1 is unavoidable. For example: 44.hxg5 ♖d1 45.♘h2 ♖h1.

460

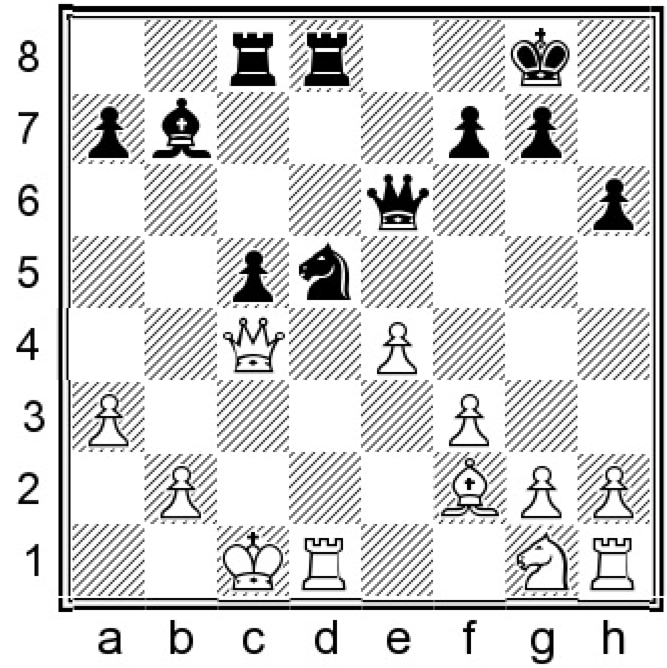


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

460 **44.♘e6! exf4** 44...fxe6 45.♖g7+ ♔h8 46.♖xh7+ ♔g8 47.♖bg7#, but 44...♖e8 also loses: 45.♖e7! ♖a8 (45...♖xe7 46.♖b8+) 46.♖xf7 etc. **45.♖xf7!** 1-0 Ivanchuk-Aronian, Morelia/Linares 2006.

461

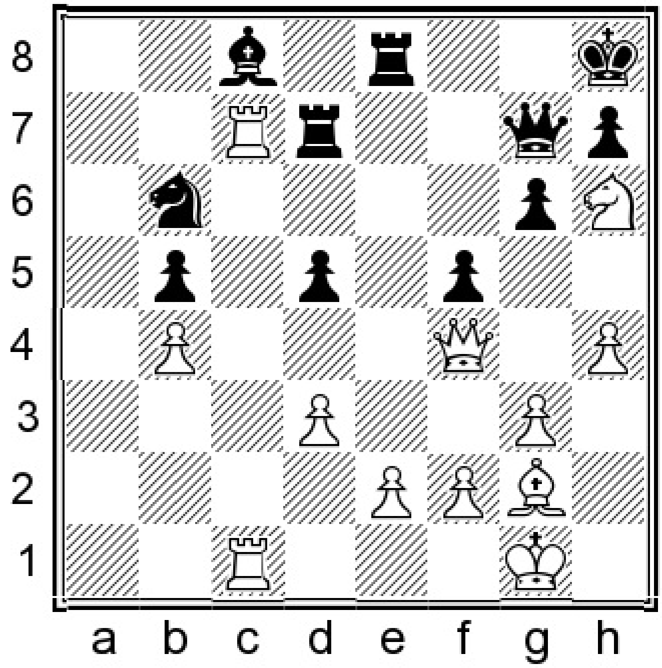


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

461 **23...♘e3!** We have already met this idea. **24.♖xd8+ ♖xd8 25.♕e2** White is willing to give queen for rook and knight, but that is not what happened: **25...♕c4+!** Shifting the king. If he takes the queen, White is mated on d1, whilst after 26.♔b1 ♖d1+ 27.♕xd1 ♘xd1 Black's material advantage is too great. 0-1 Gaasland-Carlsen, Norway tt 2001.

462

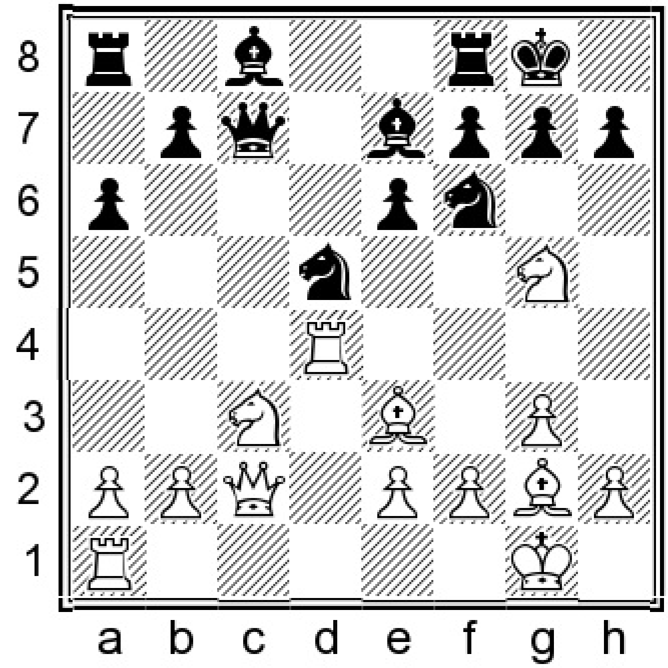


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

462 **34.♕e3!! ♖xe3** Other possibilities: 34...♖de7 35.♖xe7 ♕xe7 36.♕xb6; 34...♖f8 35.♕xb6 ♖xc7 36.♖xc7 ♕xh6 37.♕d4+ ♔g8 38.♗xd5+; on 34...♖ee7 the same move wins as in the game. **35.♖xc8+ ♕f8** Or 35...♘xc8 36.♖xc8+ ♕f8 37.♖xf8+ ♔g7 38.♖g8+ and 39.fxe3. **36.♖xf8+** 1-0 Greenfeld-Kuzubov, Chennai 2011.

463



White to play

Show/Hide Solution

463 **15.♘xd5!!** Ni Hua-Adly, Shenzhen 2011; Black resigned because of 15...♕xc2 (15...♘xd5 16.♕xh7#) 16.♘xe7+ ♔h8 17.♘xf7+! ♖xf7 18.♖d8+ with a quick mate.

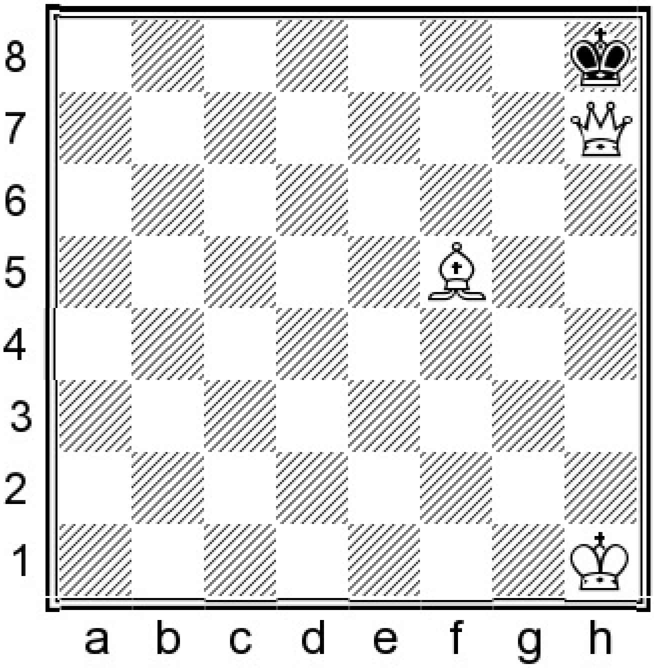
Chapter 7

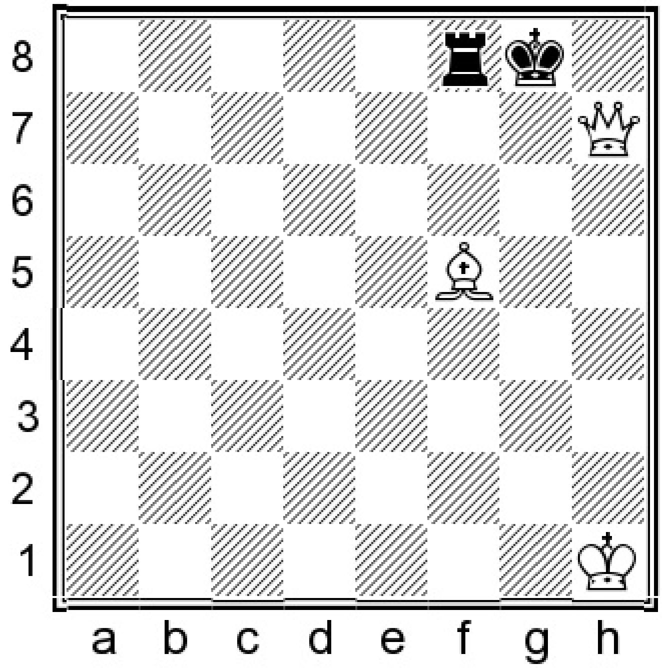
Queen and bishop

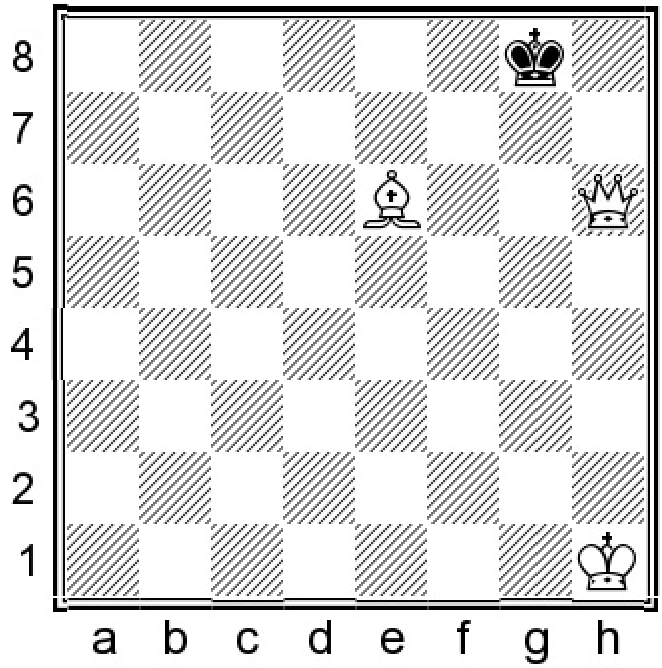
The bishop supports the queen splendidly in attacking situations. With the backing of a bishop, the queen is ready to land a deadly blow, occupying a square adjacent to the king and cutting off its retreat. At the same time, the bishop and the queen are ready to subject the king to both crossfire and diagonal attack.

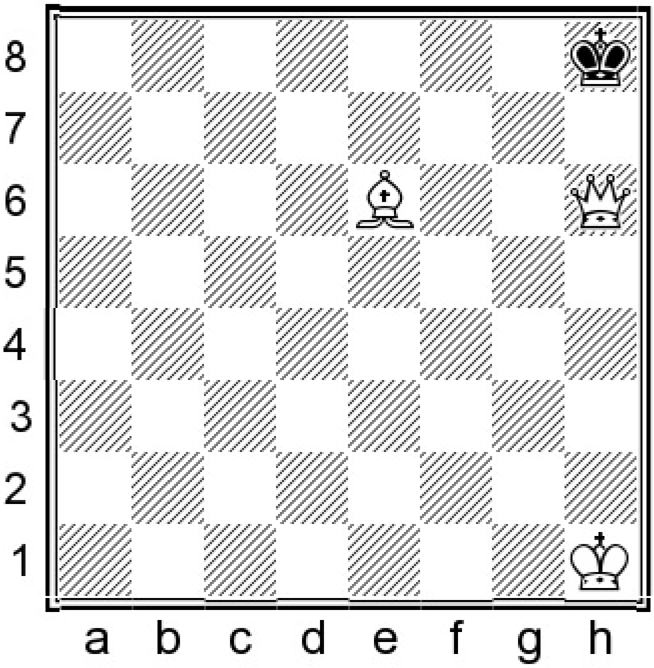
The most popular mate threat in practical play arises on the diagonal b1-h7 (for Black b8-h2). Almost uncountable games have been lost not only by amateurs, but also sometimes by strong chess players, who carelessly weakened the h1-a8 diagonal (for White, a1-h8). In this case, the opponent's queen goes to e4, attacking the piece that has been left unprotected: typically a rook on a8, or knight on c6, and at the same time threatening a checkmate on h7. Watch out for these insidious double blows!

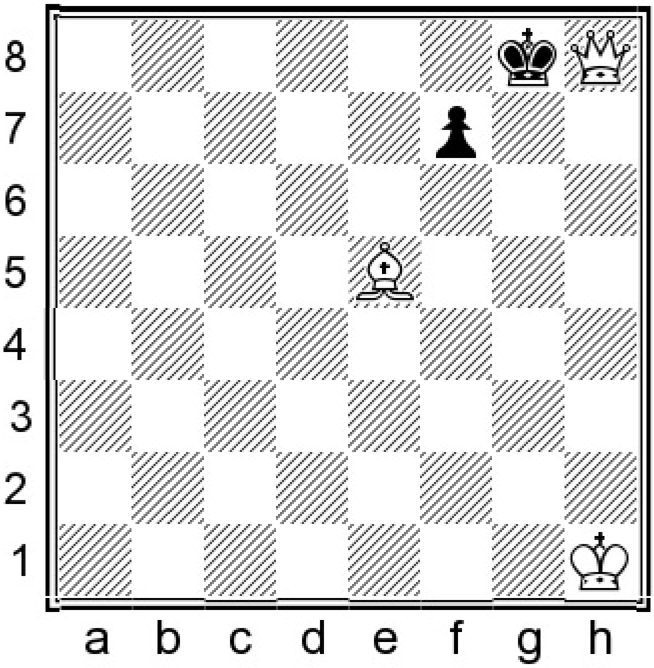
Here are some of the more typical mating constructions.

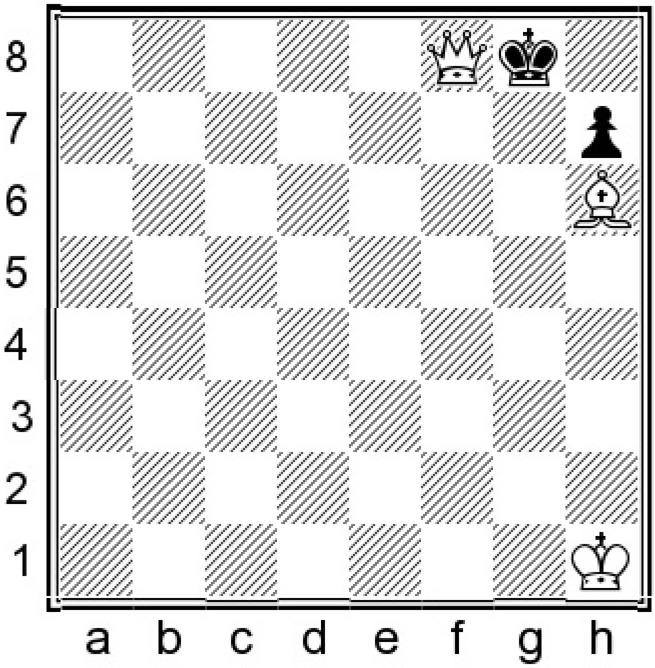


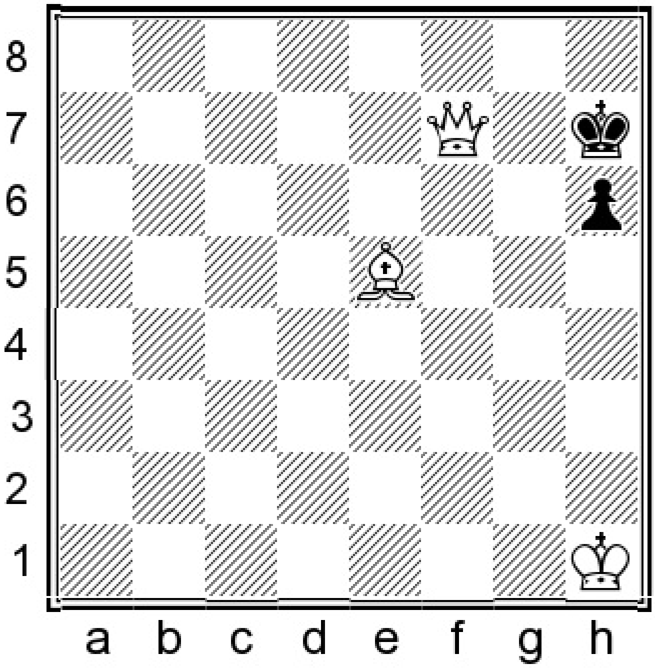


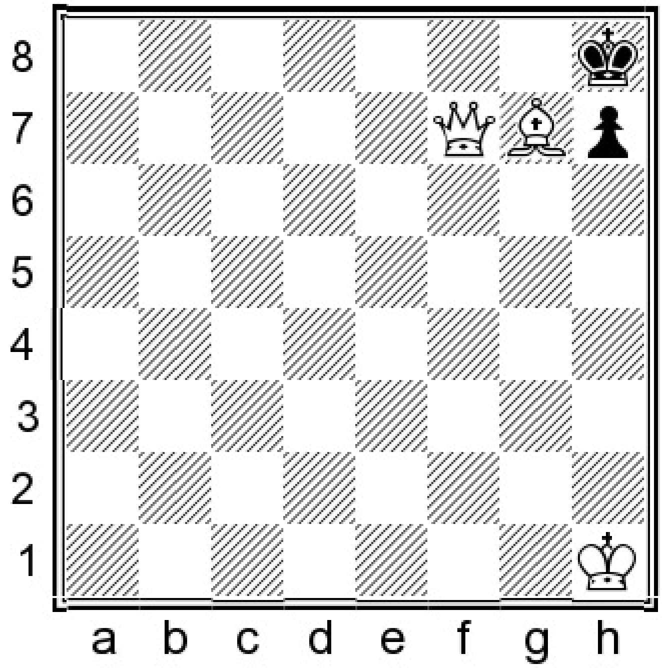



a b c d e f g h


a b c d e f g h

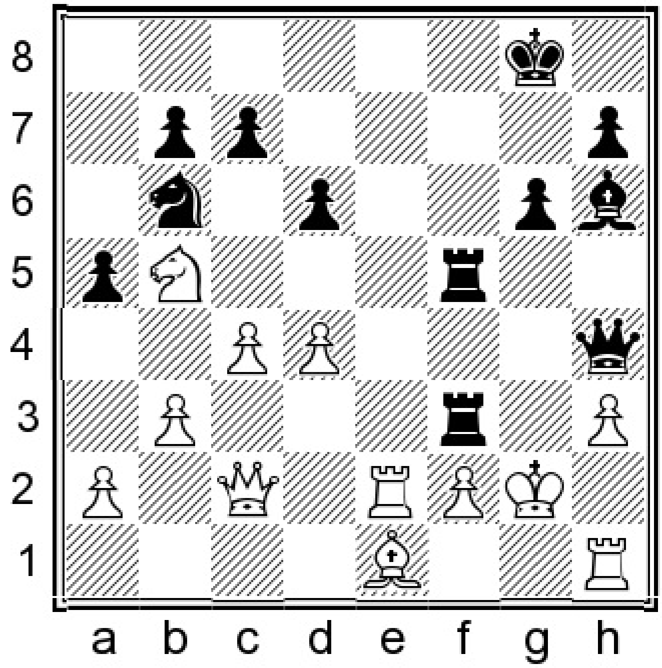





8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h

A very pretty combination was played by Black in the European Girls under-16 Championship:

Katerina Jonovska
Ani Avanesyan
Chalkidiki Ech jr W 2000 (8)


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h

Black to play

26...♖g5+!

Less convincing was 26...♗e3 27.♕xf5 (weaker is 27.fxe3 ♕g5+ 28.♔h2 ♖xh3+ 29.♔xh3 ♕h5+ 30.♗h4 ♖f3+ or 27.♖xe3 ♕g5+ 28.♔h2 ♕f4+ 29.♔g1 ♖xe3 30.fxe3 ♖g5+) 27...♖xf5 28.♖xe3.

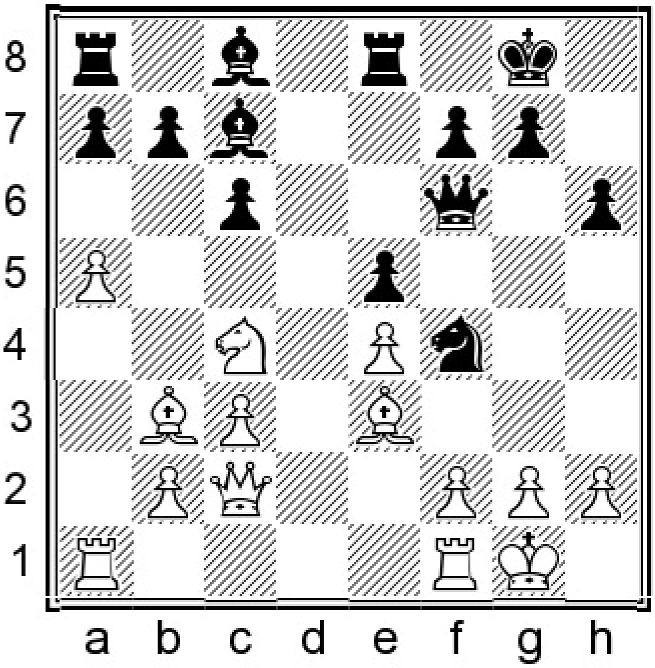
26...♖g5+! 27.♔xf3

She would also have lost after 27.♔f1 ♖xh3 28.♖e8+ ♔f7.

27...♕h5+ 28.♔e4 ♖g3!

Mate is threatened on f5. White resigned in view of 29.♘xd6 ♕h4+ 30.♔e5 ♕e7#.

Ventzislav Inkiov 2466
Ognjen Jovanic 2504
Conegliano 2008 (5)



Black to play

Black's pieces hover threateningly over the kingside, but if he delays, White will be able to defend. After a close examination of the position, Black found a way to bring into the attack the seemingly most irrelevant piece – the ♗c7.

18...♘xg2! 19.♔xg2 ♗h3+! 20.♔g3

On 20.♔xh3 Black wins with 20...♕f3+ 21.♔h4 ♗d8+.

20...♗d8!

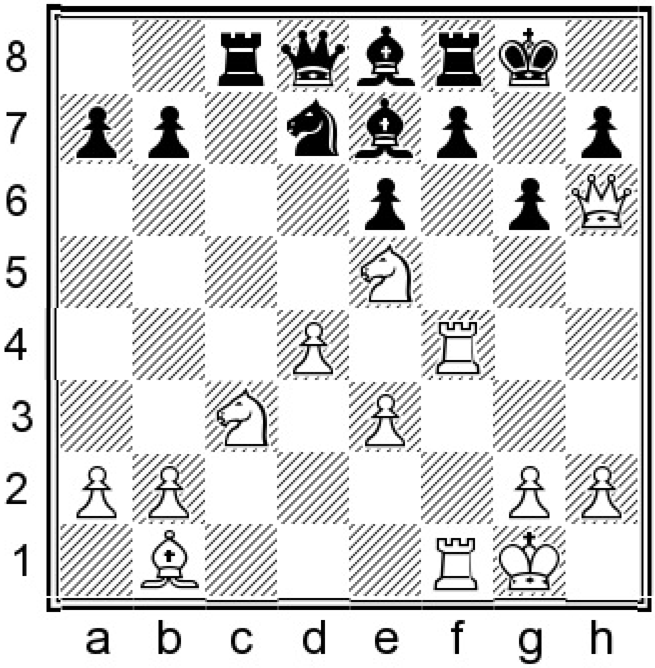
This bishop transfer is decisive.

21.f4 ♕h4+ 22.♔f3 ♕g4+

White resigned (23.♔f2 ♗h4#).

Sometimes one need not fear sacrificing half the set, if the result leaves the enemy king helpless.

Blazo Kalezic 2440
Dragan Popadic 2178



White to play

21.♘xf7! ♗xf7

On 21...♕b6 the game is ended by 22.♗xg6, whilst 21...♖xf7 22.♖xf7 ♗xf7 23.♖xf7! leads to a transposition.

22.♖xf7! ♖xf7 23.♖xf7 ♔xf7 24.♕xh7+ ♔f8

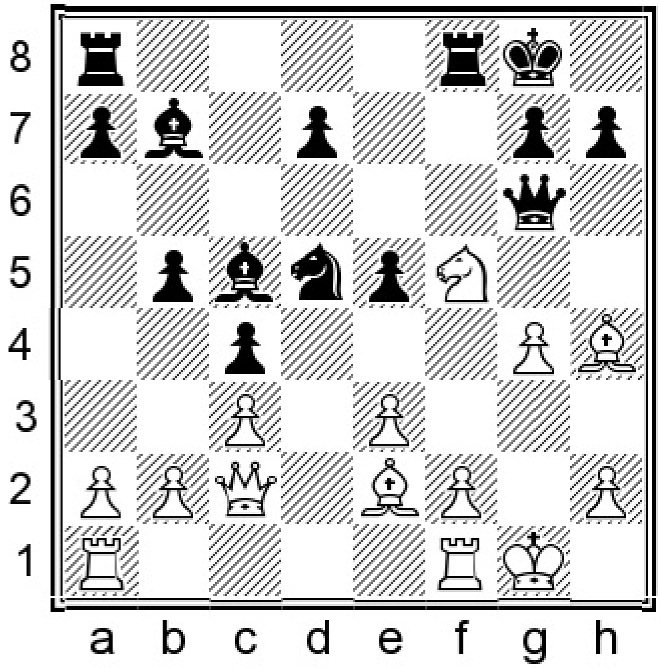
Or 24...♔f6 25.♕xg6#.

25.♗xg6 1-0

Mate next move is unavoidable.

In the next game, a moment's carelessness saw White punished immediately.

Vladimir Litvinov 2317
Kiril Georgiev 2695
Panormo tt 2001 (7)



Black to play

White has just played 18.g2-g4?? (he should have preferred 18.e4, although after 18...♘f4 Black's advantage is indisputable). After

18...♘f4!

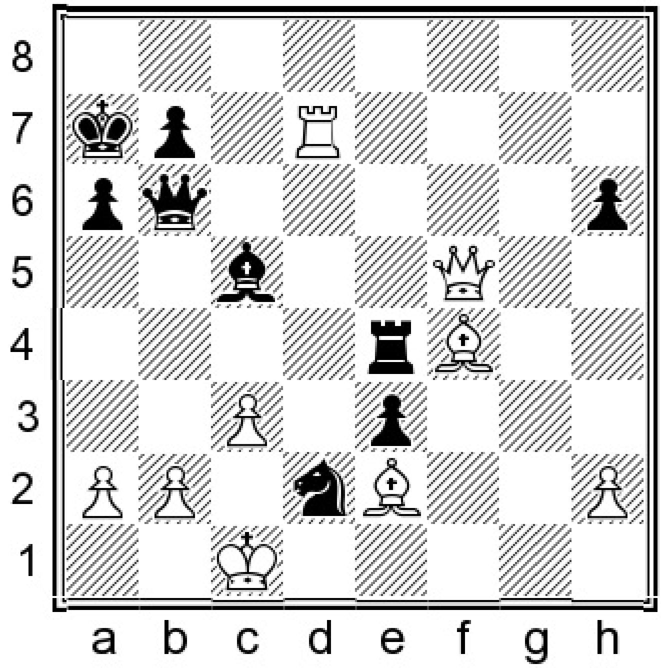
he immediately resigned. The following variations show that this was not premature:

A) 19.exf4 ♕c6 with an unstoppable mate on the long diagonal, because the pawn on f2 is pinned;

B) 19.e4 ♖xf5 20.exf5 ♘h3#;

C) 19.♖fe1 ♘xe2+ 20.♕xe2 (20.♖xe2 ♕xg4+) 20...♖xf5.

Christopher Lutz 2643
Vadim Milov 2602
Leon Ech-tt 2001 (2)



White to play

One should never be afraid to consider the most unexpected sacrifices, if they allow one to drive the king from its protection.

35.♖xb7+!! ♚xb7

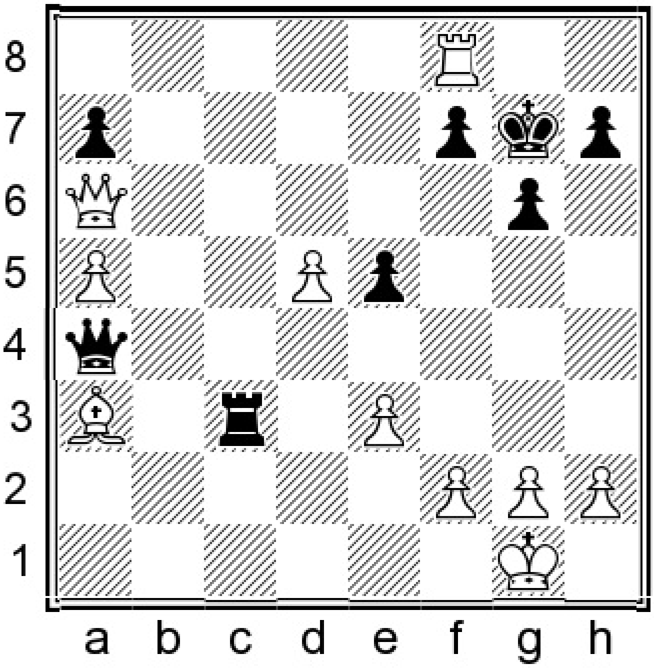
35...♛xb7 would not save him because of 36.♕xc5+ ♛b6 (36...♔a8 37.♗xe3) 37.♕f8 ♖e6 (37...♘c4 38.♕f7+ ♛b7 39.♕xb7+ ♔xb7 40.♗f3) 38.♕f7+ ♔a8 39.♕d7.

36.♕d7+ ♔a8 37.♕c8+ ♔a7 38.♗b8+!

Black resigned, because of 38...♕xb8 39.♕xa6# or 38...♔a8 39.♗d6+ ♔a7 40.♗xc5.

The fate of the following game was decided in similar vein.

Vasily Ivanchuk 2711
Emil Sutovsky 2660
Moscow rapid 2002 (2)



White to play

25.♖xf7+! ♔xf7

On 25...♔g8 things are decided by the calm 26.h3! ♕xa3 27.♕xa7, whilst after 25...♔h6 26.♗f8+ White manages to make *luft*, keeping an extra piece.

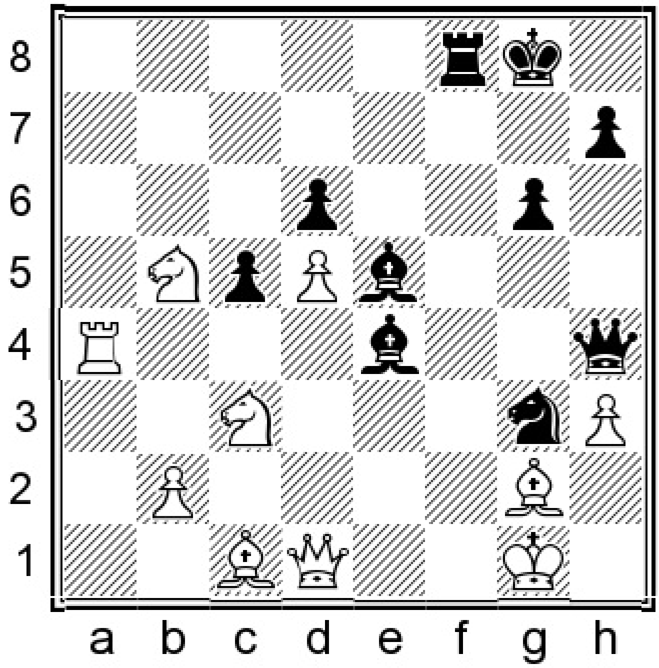
26.♕xa7+ ♔f6

He loses immediately after 26...♔e8 27.♕e7# or 26...♔g8 27.♕b8+ ♔f7 28.♕f8#.

27.♕e7+

Black resigned, seeing 27...♔f5 28.♕e6+ ♔g5 (28...♔e4 29.♕g4+ ♔xd5 30.♕xa4) 29.♕xe5+ ♔g4 (29...♔h6 30.♗f8#) 30.f3+ ♔h4 31.♗e7+ g5 32.♕xg5#.

Loek van Wely 2697
Jan Timman 2605
Wijk aan Zee 2002 (2)



Black to play

This game between two of the leading Dutch players is crowned by sharp combinative fireworks.

25...♘e2+!! 26.♕xe2

Of course, not 26.♘xe2 ♕f2+.

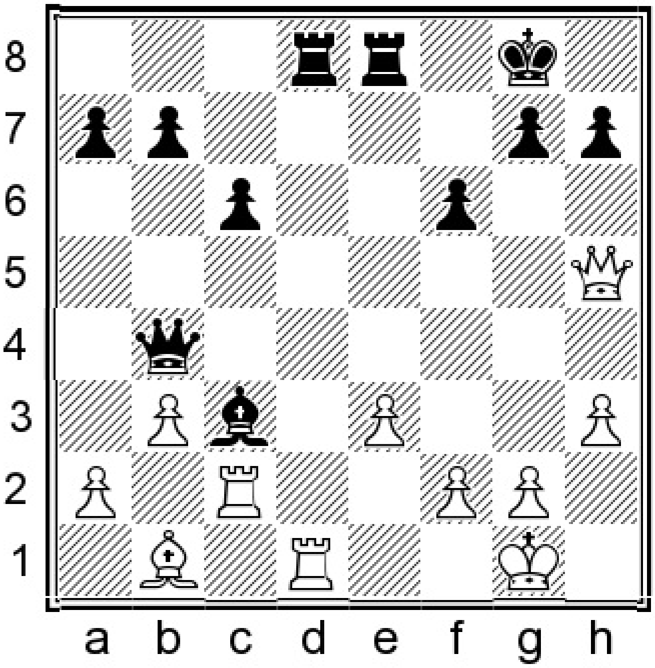
26...♕g3 27.♗f4!

An ingenious defence, but insufficient.

27...♕xf4 28.♗xe4 ♕g3+ 29.♔h1 ♖f1+!

Deflecting the queen from the defence of h2. White resigned.

Alvise Zichichi 2277
Yuri Shabanov 2458
Arco Wch sr 2001 (10)



White to play

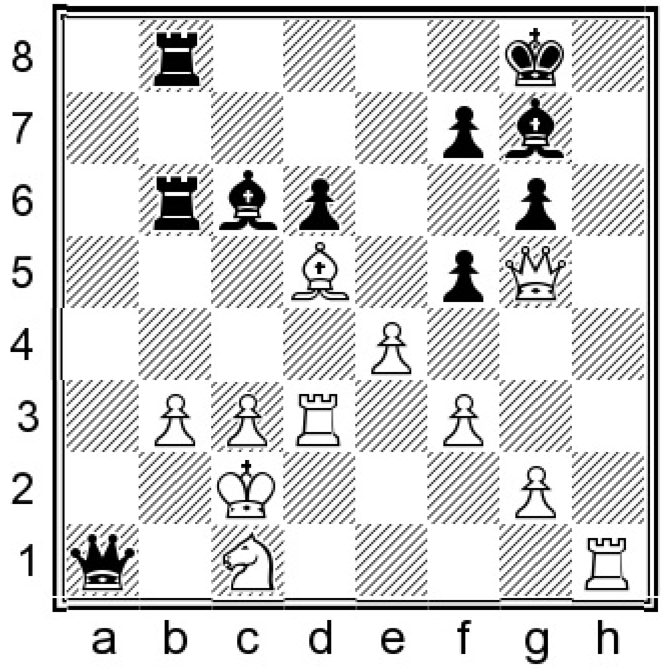
White would like to exploit the weakness of h7, but how?

27.♖d7!

Gaining an important tempo to create the threat of ♕f7+. Black resigned because of 27...♕f8 (27...♖xd7 28.♕xe8+) 28.♖xc3 and the rook is immune because of mate on h7, or 27...♖f8 28.♖xc3 ♖xd7 29.♗xh7+ ♔h8 30.♗g6+ ♔g8 31.♕h7#.

In the next example, a rook is sacrificed just to win a tempo and keep the bishop in the attack.

Martin Petr 2416
Leonid Voloshin 2466
Marianske Lazne 2006 (4)



White to play

29.♖h8+! ♔xh8

If 29...♗xh8, then 30.♕xg6+ ♗g7 31.♕xf7+ ♔h7 32.f4! and the threat of 33.♖h3 and mate is unstoppable.

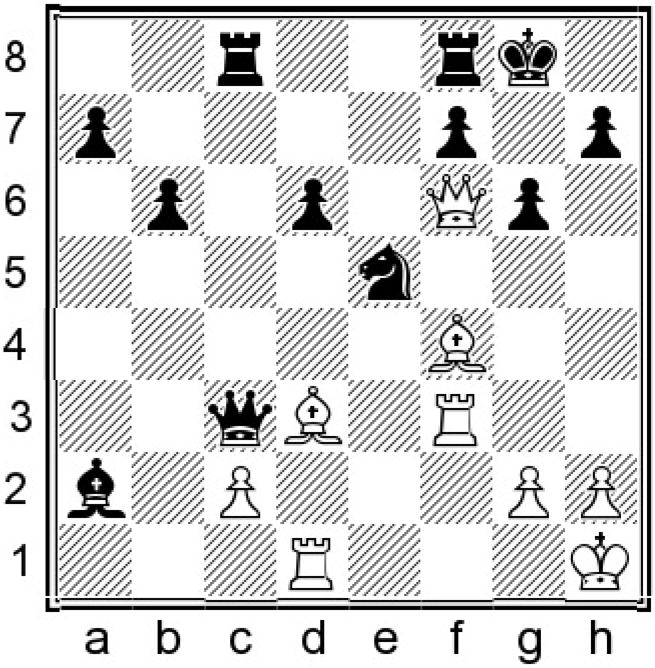
30.♗xf7 ♗f8

Obviously, there is nothing else – the threat is 31.♕h4+, and on 30...♗e5 it is mate after 31.♕h6.

31.♕f6+ ♗g7 32.♕h4+

Black resigned.

Boris Savchenko 2569
Nikita Vitiugov 2573
Cheboksary ch-RUS U20 (2)



White to play

24.♗c4!!

Not by any means an obvious sacrifice. The immediate 24.♗h6? fails to 24...♘xf3.

24.♗c4!! ♘xf3

A) Both 24...♕xc4 25.♗h6; and

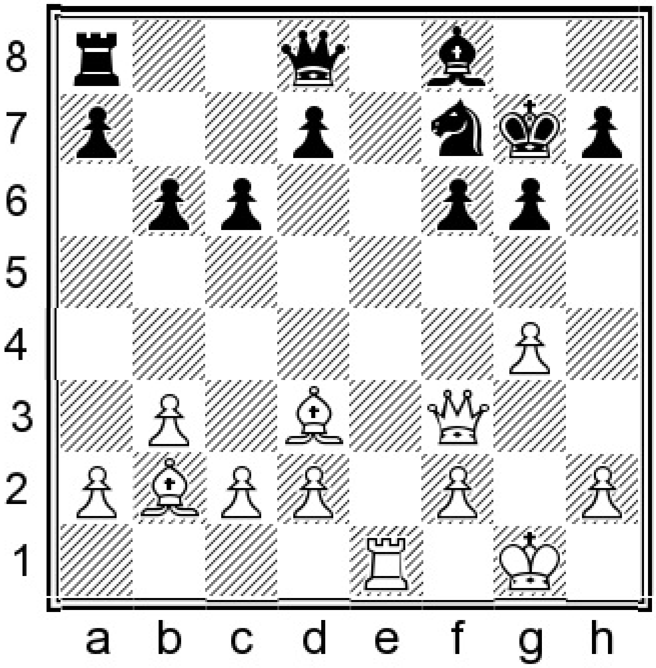
B) 24...♕xc2 25.♗h6! ♕xd1+ 26.♗f1 are hopeless; whilst after

C) 24...♕b2 25.♗h6 ♘xc4 26.c3, shutting off the a1-h8 diagonal, is winning.

25.♕xc3 ♘e5 26.♖xd6!

Black resigned: 26...♘xc4 27.♗h6 f6 28.♖xf6.

Alexey Kislinsky 2454
Tatianan Berlin 2258
Minsk 2006 (7)



White to play

The first move of the combination is tempting, but White has still to perform a good deal of calculation work...

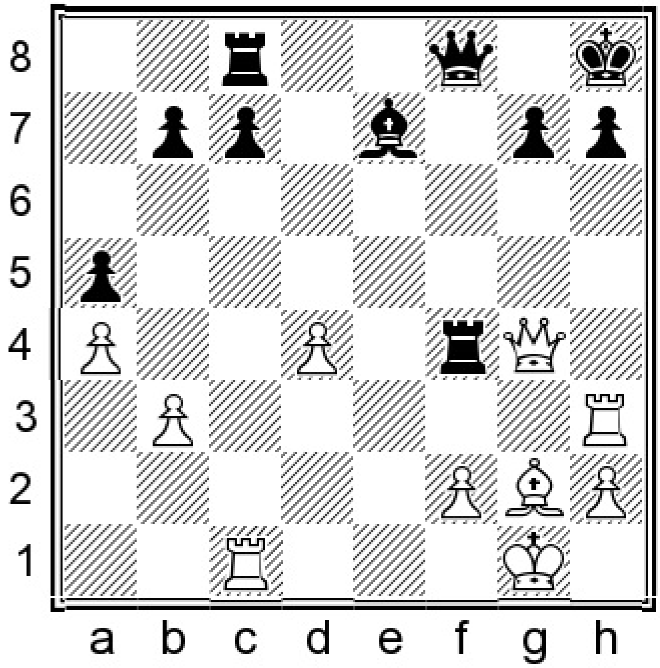
22.♖e8! ♕xe8

There is no help from 22...♘g5 23.♕xf6+ ♕xf6 24.♗xf6+ ♔xf6 25.♖xa8 or from 22...♘e5 23.♗xe5 ♕xe8 24.♕xf6+ ♔g8 (24...♔h6 25.♕h4#) 25.♕h8+ ♔f7 26.♕xh7+ ♔e6 27.♗xg6 ♕e7 (on 27...♕d8 simply 28.d4) 28.♕h5, and the terrible threat of 29.♕f5+ forces immediate capitulation.

23.♕xf6+ ♔g8 24.♗xg6!

The decisive sacrifice. Black resigned, because of 24...hxg6 25.♕xg6+ or 24...♕e1+ 25.♔g2 ♕e6 26.♗xf7+ ♕xf7 27.♕h8#.

Jaroslav Ulko 2460
Andrey Zontakh 2562
Moscow 2007(5)



White to play

This example shows how important a role time plays in the attack.

26.♖xh7+!! ♔xh7

26...♔g8 27.♕h5.

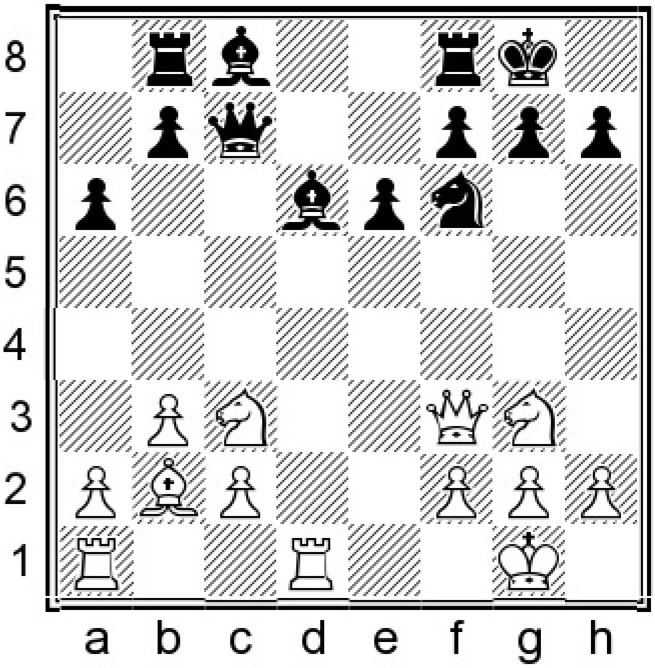
27.♕h5+ ♔g8 28.♗d5+ ♕f7

It transpires that 28...♖f7 29.♖c3 is no help, as Black is defenceless: 29...♕e8 30.♖h3 or 29...g6 30.♖g3 ♕g7 31.♖xg6.

29.♗xf7+ ♖xf7 30.♕g4

And White won.

Jordi Magem Badals 2593
Josep Oms Pallisse 2528
Barcelona 2010 (3)



White to play

Black has self-evident development problems and White has no qualms in sacrificing a rook for one of the better-developed enemy pieces, the ♗d6. The small material deficit will not be felt, as almost all of the remaining white pieces are directed against the black king.

17.♖xd6! ♕xd6 18.♘ce4 ♘xe4 19.♘xe4 ♕c7

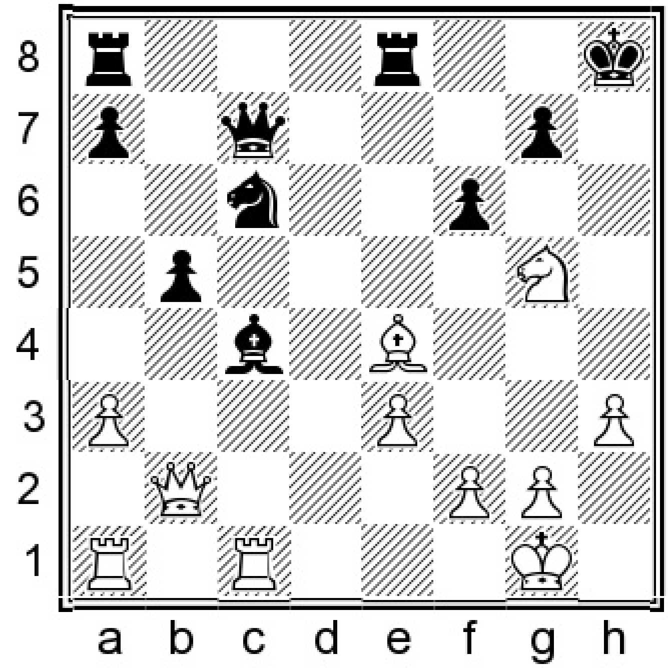
On 19...♕e7 decisive is 20.♘f6+ ♔h8 (20...gxf6 21.♗xf6, and Black must give up the queen to avoid mate) 21.♗e5! ♖a8 (21...♖d8 22.♘h5 f6 23.♗xb8 or 21...♗d7 22.♘xd7 ♕xd7 23.♕g3 f6 24.♗xb8) 22.♕e4! gxf6 23.♕h4, and the queen is again lost.

20.♘f6+! ♔h8 21.♕e4!

Black resigned. The only defence to mate is 21...g6, but then 22.♘e8+ wins the queen.

Now we will again see White happily part with the exchange to speed up the attack.

Igor Kovalenko 2581
Alexander Zubarev 2600
Zaporozhye 2011 (9)

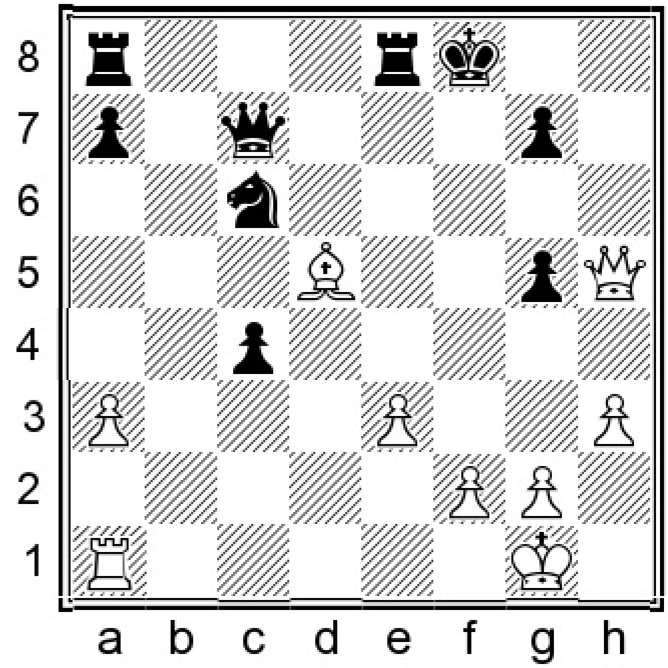


White to play

24.♖xc4! bxc4 25.♕e2 fxg5

If 25...g6 26.♗xg6 fxg5 27.♕h5+ ♔g8 28.♗xe8 or 25...♖xe4 26.♕h5+ ♔g8 27.♕h7+ ♔f8 28.♕h8+ ♔e7 29.♕xg7+ White has a decisive material advantage.

26.♕h5+ ♔g8 27.♗d5+ ♔f8



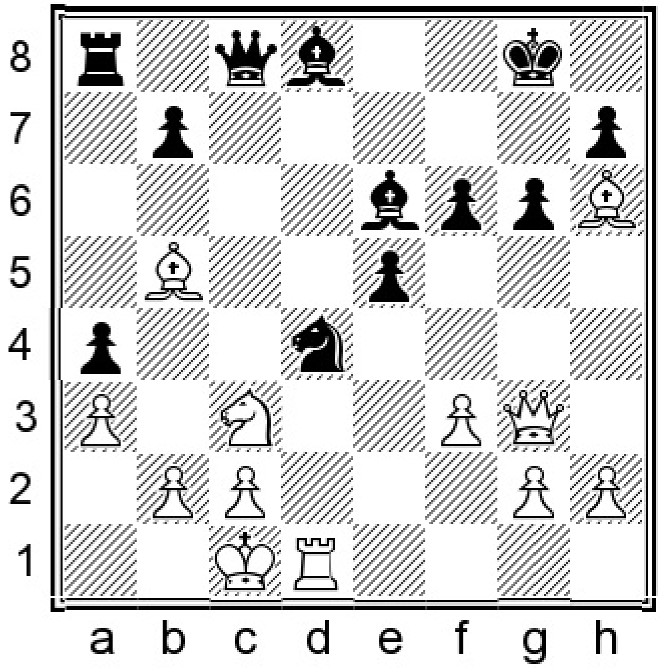
28.♖d1!

White can even allow himself this strengthening move, as Black is quite helpless.

28...♖ac8 29.♕f3+ ♔e7 30.♕f7+ ♔d6 31.♗xc4+

Black resigned, without waiting for mate after 31...♔c5 32.♕d5+ ♔b6 33.♕b5#.

Irina Bulmaga 2399
Marie Sebag 2510
Warsaw Ech-tt W 2013 (4)

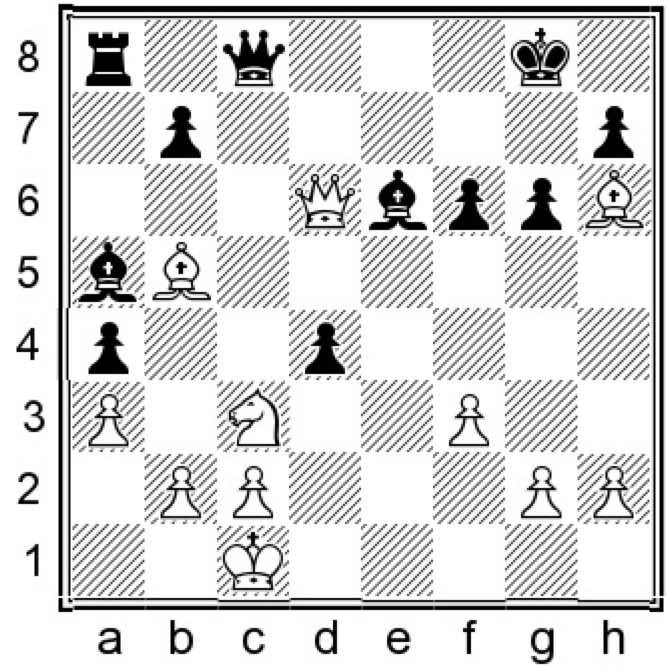


White to play

Here White wants to get her queen into the enemy camp as quickly as possible, hence...

23.♖xd4! exd4 24.♕d6 ♗a5

The black pieces are extremely short of harmony and cannot put up effective resistance. She also loses after 24...♗c7 25.♕e7 ♗f4+ 26.♗xf4 dxc3 27.♗h6 ♗f7 28.♕xf6.



25.♘d5!

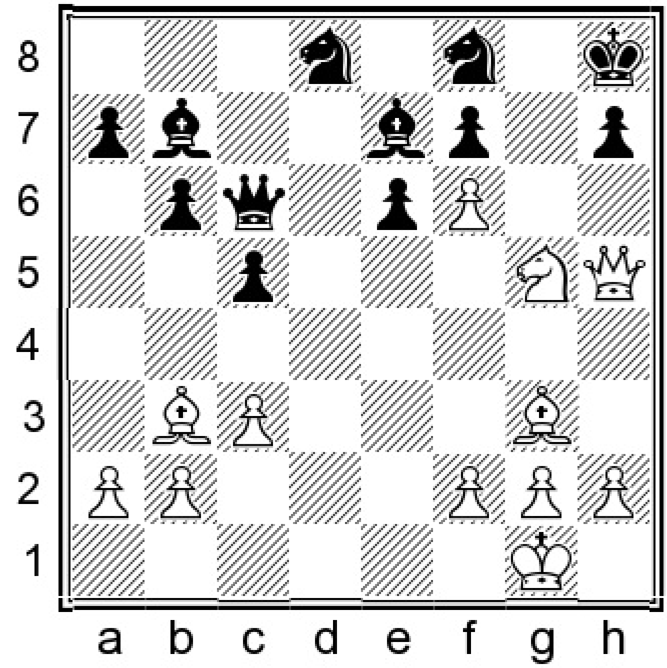
Stronger than 25.♕e7!? ♕c7 26.♕xe6+ ♕f7.

25...d3

Desperation, but she also loses after 25...♗xd5 26.♕xd5+ ♔h8 27.♕f7.

26.♘e7+ ♔f7 27.♘xc8 ♖xc8 28.♗d7 1-0

Baira Kovanova 2380
Natalija Pogonina 2472
Antakya Wch W 2010 (1.2)



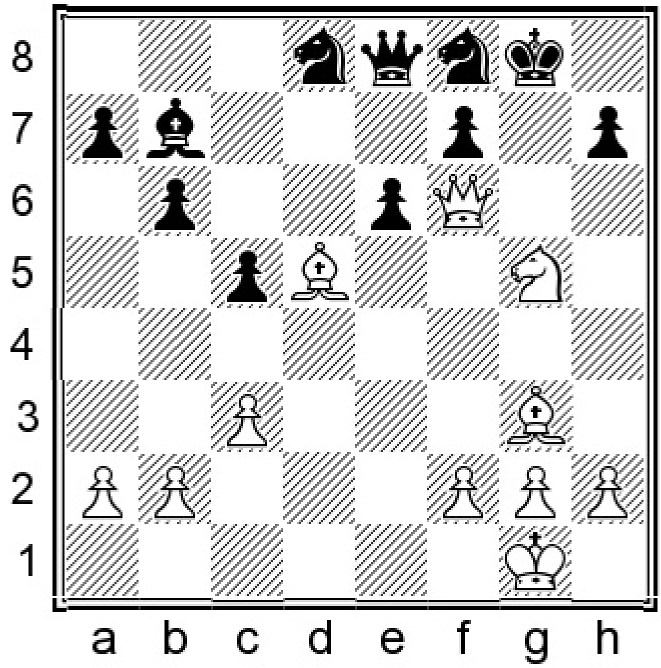
White to play

White has developed a very dangerous attack, but is herself threatened with mate in one. After a standard reaction (f2-f3) Black gets a precious tempo to eliminate the f6-pawn. However, White had calculated a move further...

22.♗d5!! ♕e8

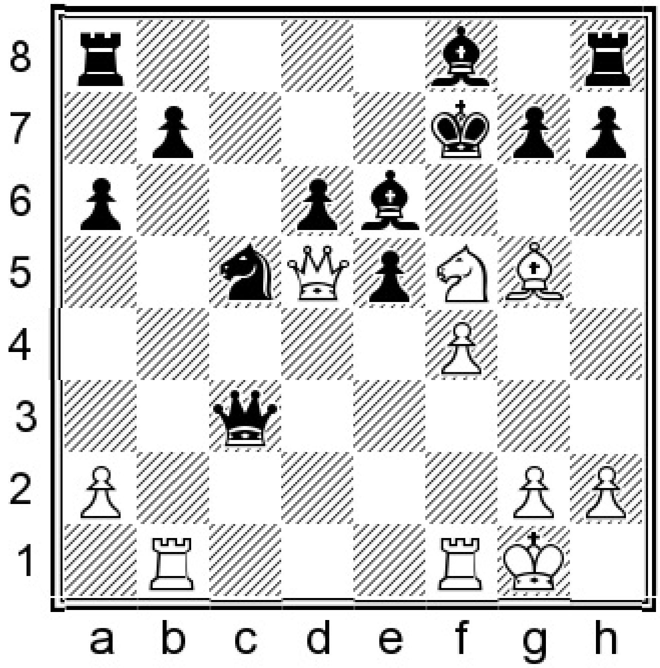
On 22...♕xd5 White wins with 23.♘xf7+ ♘xf7 24.♕xd5 and 25.fxe7, after which White gets a new queen.

23.♕h6 ♗xf6 24.♕xf6+ ♔g8



25.♗e5 1-0

Vasilios Kotronias 2599
Xiu Deshun 2508
Moscow 2011 (6)



White to play

Here White needs combinative vision and the ability to calculate variations accurately:

16.♖xb7+! ♔g8

If 16...♘xb7 the defence of the ♗e6 is removed, which White immediately exploits: 17.♘h6+!! gxh6 18.fxe5+ ♔g7 19.♗xh6+ ♔xh6 20.♕xe6+ with a quick mate, whilst if the king retreats to the other square, 16...♔g6, then 17.♘h4+ ♔h5 18.g4+! ♗xg4 (18...♔xg4 19.♕d1+ ♔h3 20.♖f3+) 19.♕f7+ g6 20.♕xh7+! forces mate.

17.♖xg7+! ♗xg7 18.♘e7+ ♔f7 19.fxe5+ ♗f6

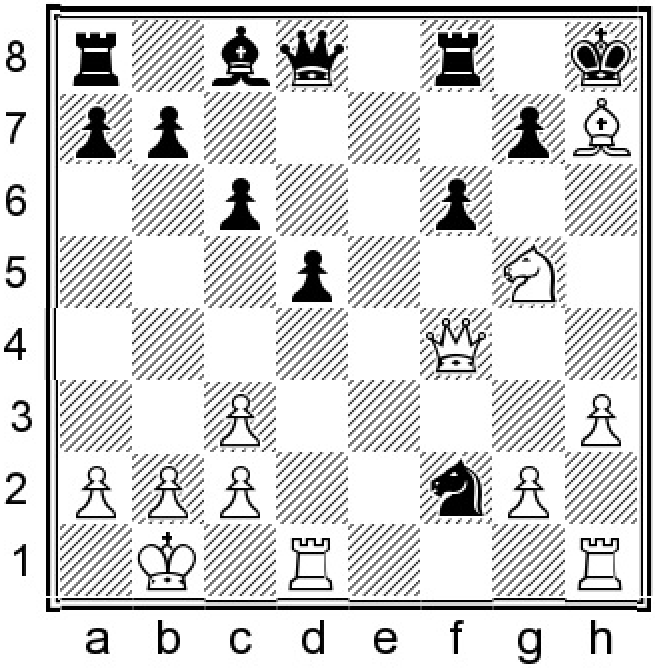
Or 19...♔e8 20.♕xa8+ ♔d7 21.♕c6+ ♔d8 22.♘d5+.

20.♖xf6+ ♔xe7 21.♕xd6+

Black resigned because of 21...♔e8 22.♖f8+ ♖xf8 23.♕e7#.

And now one of the former World Champion’s small masterpieces.

Viswanathan Anand 2817
Rustam Kasimdzhanov 2687
Tashkent rapid m 2011 (3)



White to play

18.♘f7+!!

Only a draw results from 18.♕h4? fxg5 19.♕h5 ♖f6 20.♗g6+ ♔g8 21.♖he1 ♖xg6 22.♕xg6 ♗d7! 23.♖f1 ♘xd1 24.♕f7+ ♔h8 25.♕h5+.

18.♘f7+!! ♖xf7 19.♗g6! ♘xd1 20.♕h4+ ♔g8 21.♖e1!

Cutting off the black king's escape.

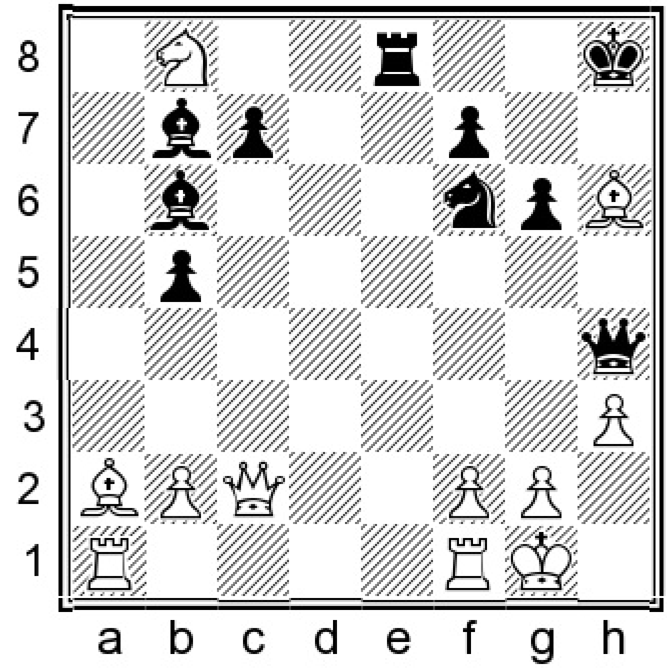
21...♘xc3+

Or 21...♖e7 22.♕h7+ ♔f8 23.♕h8#.

22.bxc3 ♗e6 23.♖xe6 ♕b6+ 24.♔c1 ♕g1+ 25.♖e1

Black resigned.

Gata Kamsky 2741
Peter Svidler 2739
Khanty-Mansiysk 2011 (4)



Black to play

White has an extra rook, but it is Black to play. He could take either of the two attacked white pieces, but in that case, White gets a valuable tempo to beat off the attack, e.g. 26...♖xb8 27.♗e3

or 26...♕xh6 27.♘c6, and the knight cannot be driven away, because the square e6 is attacked by the white bishop.

26...♖e2!!

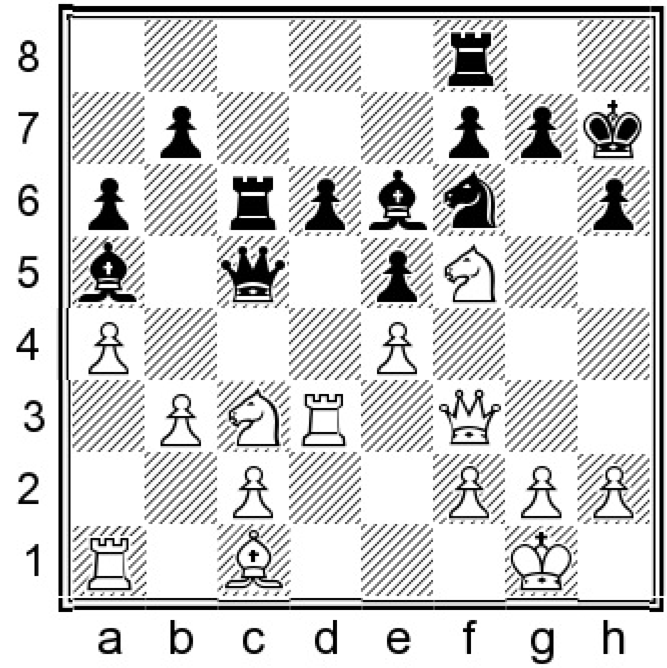
A very beautiful idea by the St Petersburg GM. Now after 27.♕xe2 ♕g3 mate is inevitable.

But why not the immediate 26...♕g3 ? In this case, the knight retreat (27.♘c6) allows the key diagonal to be blocked.

26...♖e2!! 27.♕c3 ♖xf2 28.♘c6 ♖xf1+

White resigned (29.♔xf1 ♕f2#).

Sergey Fedorchuk 2632
Ruslan Ponomariov 2723
Spain tt 2011 (5)



White to play

Here, as in many other examples, an old rule applies: never miss a suitable moment to develop the attack. After 20.♗d2 ♘g8 Black defends all of his weaknesses, so...

20.♘xg7!

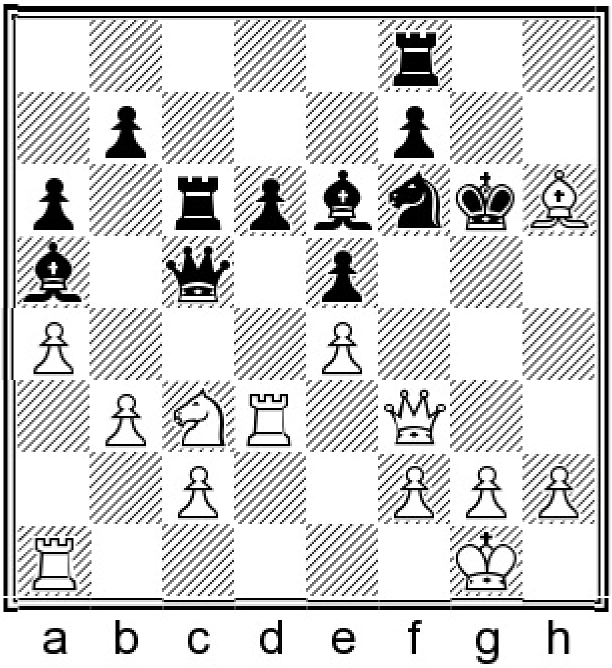
Decisively shattering the black king’s protection.

20...♔xg7

20...♗xc3 21.♕xf6 ♗xa1 22.♕xh6+ ♔g8 23.♘h5, and mate is unavoidable.

21.♗xh6+ ♔g6

Or 21...♔xh6 22.♕xf6+ ♔h7 23.♖g3.



22.♘d5 ♘h7

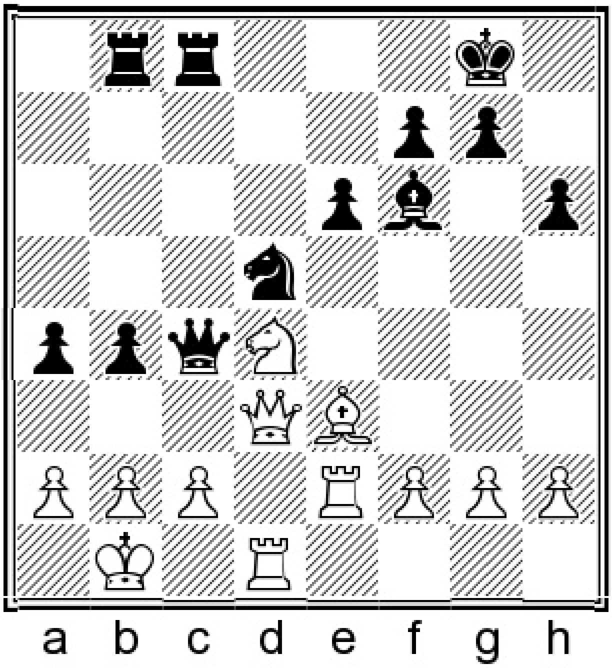
The knight is immune: 22...♘xd5 23.♕g3+ ♔xh6 24.♕h4+ ♔g7 25.♖g3+ or 22...♗xd5 23.♕f5+.

23.♕g3+ ♔h5

If 23...♔xh6, then 24.♕h4+ ♔g7 25.♖g3+ ♔h8 26.♘f6, winning.

24.♘f6+ ♘xf6 25.♕g5#

Zeljko Bogut 2441
Peter Heine Nielsen 2662
Eilat tt 2012 (1)



Black to play

26...♘c3+!

A typical sacrifice in positions with opposite castling.

27.bxc3 bxc3+ 28.♘b3

28.♔a1 ♕b4.

28...axb3 29.cxb3

29.♕xc4 bxa2+, drawing the king onto the deadly a-file.

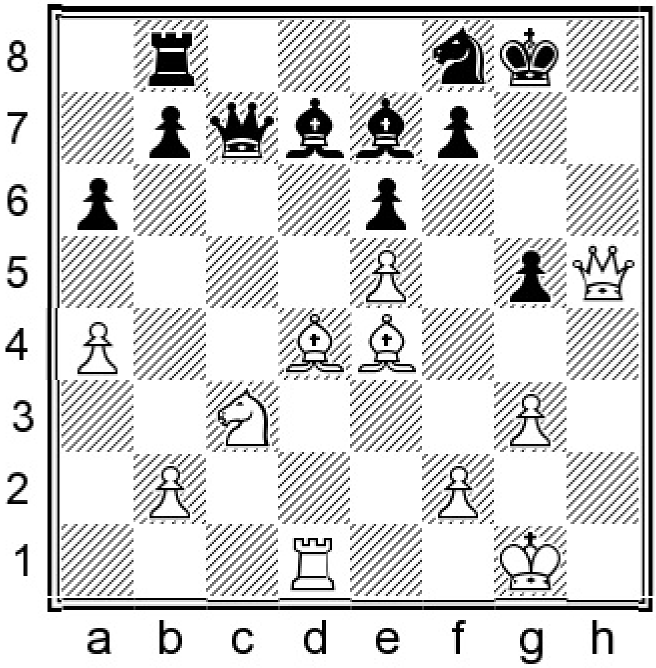
29...♖xb3+! 30.♔c1

On 30.axb3 there is the decisive 30...♕xb3+ 31.♔c1 ♕a3+ 32.♔b1 c2+ 33.♖xc2 ♕a1#.

30...♕a4 31.♕d6 ♖b1+

White resigned, without waiting for 32.♔xb1 c2+ 33.♔c1 cxd1=♕#.

Rafael Leitao 2632
Roberto Molina 2416
Rio de Janeiro 2013 (6)



White to play

27.♘d5!

Also a very typical sacrifice.

27...exd5

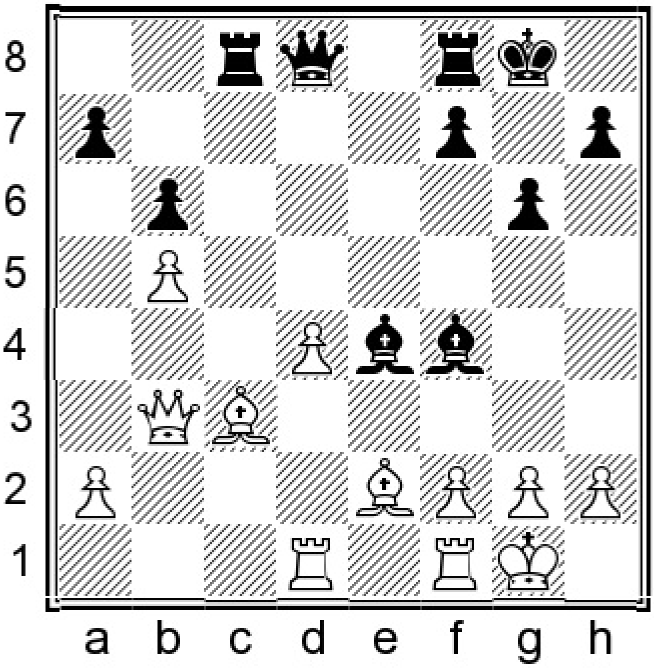
27...♕d8 28.♘f6+ ♗xf6 29.exf6, and mate is not far away.

28.e6! fxe6 29.♗h7+!

The final blow – White forces his opponent to relinquish control of g6. Black resigned, in view of 29...♘xh7 30.♕g6+ ♔f8 31.♗g7+ ♔g8 32.♗h6+ ♔h8 33.♕g7#.

In the following example, Black needs not only good calculation of variations, but also the ability to find a quiet move.

Alexander Rustemov 2538
Dennis Wagner 2481
Germany Bundesliga 2013/14 (6)



Black to play

It may seem that the position is ripe for a classic Lasker two-bishop sacrifice, but since it is hard to bring the rook into the attack via the centre, only one bishop must be sacrificed...

20...♗xg2! 21.♔xg2 ♕g5+ 22.♔f3

22.♔h1 ♕h4.

22...♗d6!

This is the knockout blow. There is no defence, as the following variations show:

A) 23.♖g1 ♖xc3+ 24.♕xc3 ♕d5+ 25.♔e3 ♖e8+ 26.♔d3 ♕e4+ 27.♔c4 (27.♔d2 ♗f4+) 27...♖c8+;

B) 23.♗c4 ♕f4+ 24.♔e2 ♕e4+;

C) 23.♗d2 ♕h5+.

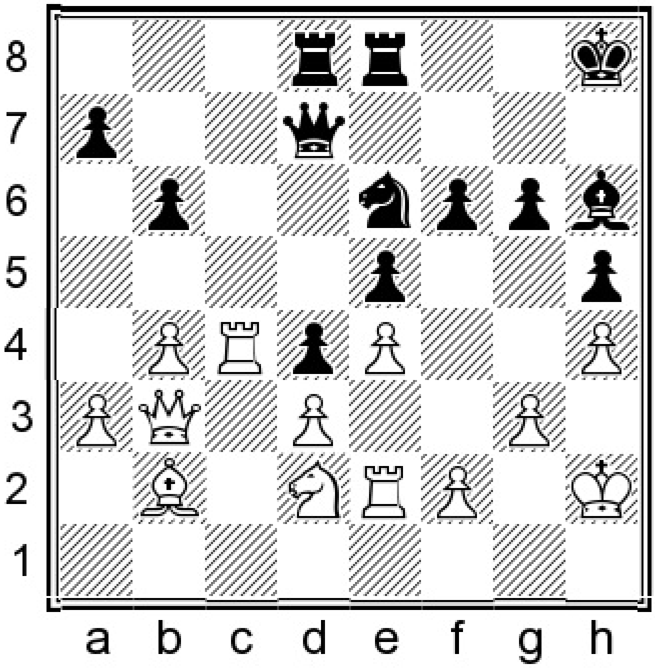
The continuation chosen by White also loses:

23.♖fe1 ♕f4+ 24.♔g2 ♕xh2+ 25.♔f3 ♕h3+ 26.♔e4 ♖fe8+

White resigned.

In the pages of this book, you have already seen many examples where one player has sidelined a major part of his forces in one area of the board, where they cannot come to the aid of his king. Avoid a similar mistake!

Twan Burg 2498
Benjamin Bok 2522
Groningen 2012 (6)

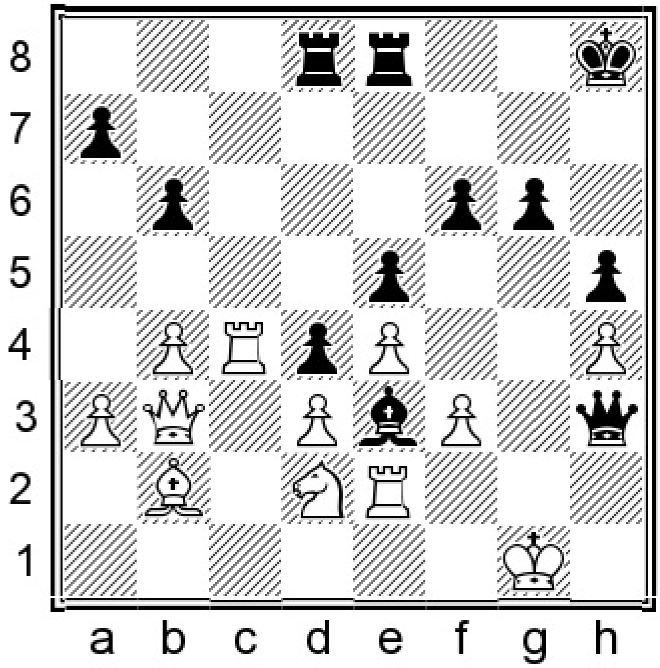


Black to play

27...♘f4! 28.gxf4 ♕g4!

The queen and bishop prove sufficient to create a fatal disharmony in the white ranks.

29.f3 ♗xf4+ 30.♔h1 ♕h3+ 31.♔g1 ♗e3+

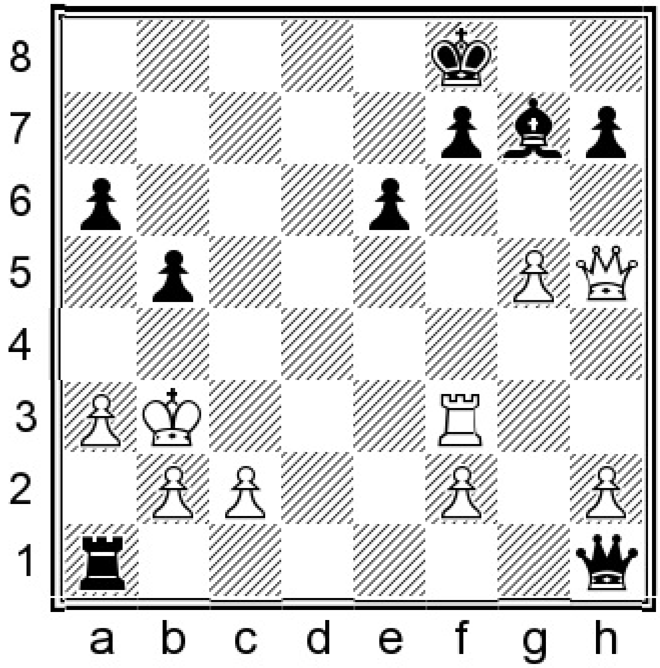


32.♖xe3

If 32.♖f2, then 32...♕g3+ 33.♔h1 ♗xf2 34.♖c1 ♕h3#.

32...♕g3+ 33.♔h1 dxe3 34.♖c7 e2 35.♕f7 e1=♖+ 36.♘f1 ♖xf1#

David Howell 2471
Jonathan Levitt 2441
London 2005 (8)



Black to play

The mate threat is very unpleasant, but it is Black's move and he sacrifices a rook to send the enemy king on a long and perilous journey...

39...♖xa3+! 40.♔xa3

40.bxa3 ♕b1#; 40.♔b4 ♖xf3.

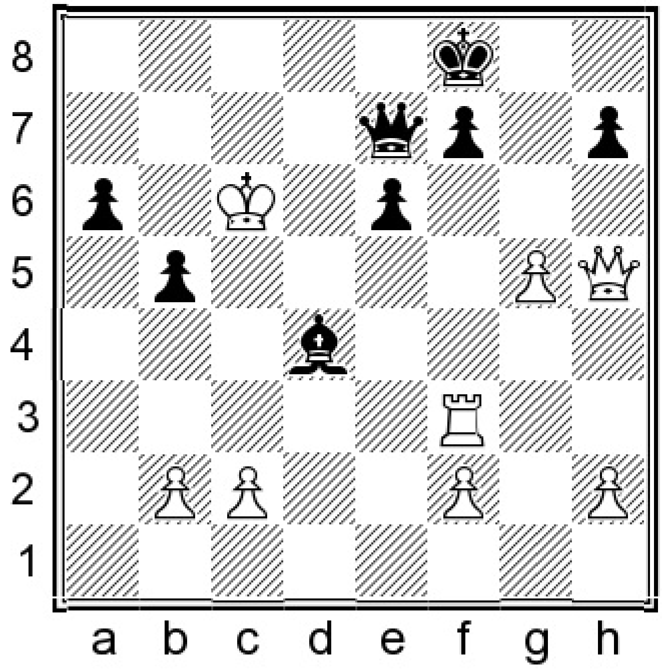
40...♕a1+ 41.♔b4 ♕a4+ 42.♔c5 ♗d4+! 43.♔d6 ♕b4+

The alternative is 43.♔c6 ♕c4+ 44.♔b7 ♕d5+ 45.♔c7 (White is mated by force after 45.♔xa6 ♕c6+ 46.♔a5 ♗b6+ 47.♔b4 ♕c4+) 45...♕c5+ 46.♔b8 ♕a7+ 47.♔c8 ♔e8! (we will see this idea again) 48.♕xh7 (or 48.g6 hxg6 49.♕g5 ♗b6) 48...♕d7+ 49.♔b8 ♗e5+ 50.♔a8 ♕c8+ 51.♔a7 ♗b8+.

44.♔c6 ♕c5+ 45.♔d7 ♕a7+ 46.♔d6

After 46.♔c8 the same manoeuvre as in the game decides – 46...♔e8!, and the white king does not escape.

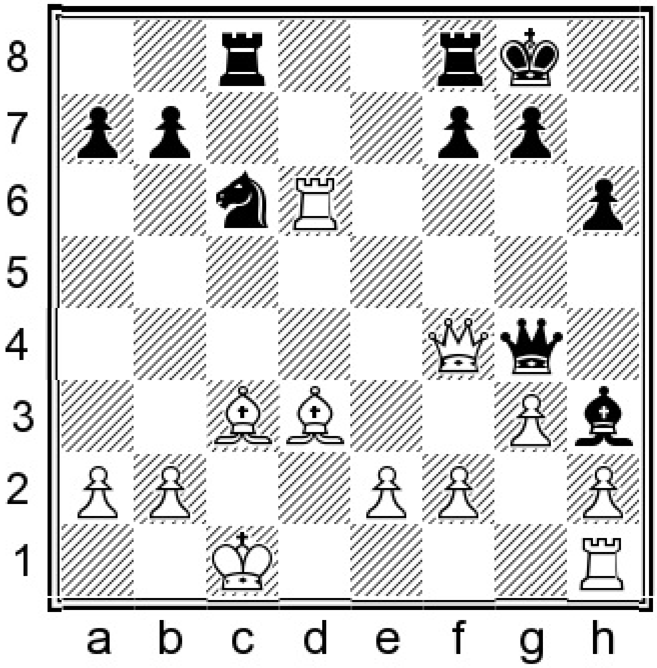
46...♕e7+ 47.♔c6



47...♔e8!

An elegant quite move to crown a long combination. Mate can only be avoided at the cost of a rook, so White resigned.

Alexander Moiseenko 2597
Pablo Zarnicki 2536
Santo Domingo 2003 (7)



White to play

22.♖xh6!

In this way, White wins a second pawn.

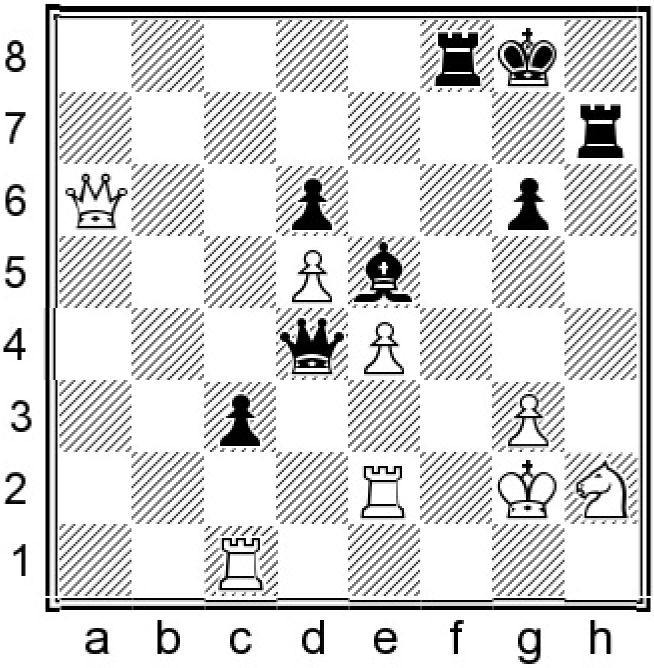
22...♕xf4+

Nothing changes after 22...♖fd8 (22...gxh6 23.♕xh6 f5 24.♗c4+ ♕xc4 25.♕g7#) 23.♖h4, forcing Black to exchange queens.

23.gxf4 1-0

The endgame is completely hopeless, whilst after 23...gxh6 24.♖g1+ ♗g2 25.♖xg2 he is mated.

Hannes Stefansson 2585
Shakhriyar Mamedyarov 2709
Reykjavik 2006 (9)

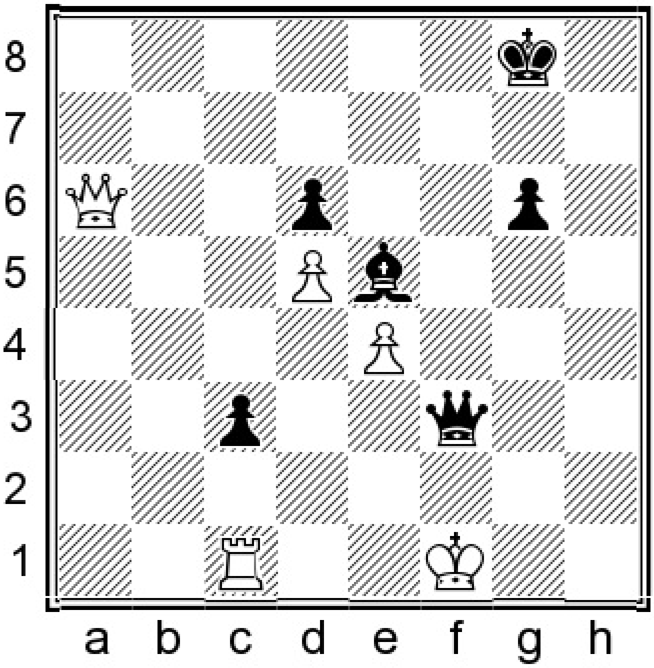

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h

Black to play

Here Black calculated a long variation and confidently sacrificed the exchange:

43...♖f2+!

White resigned, because he loses by force in all variations: 44.♖xf2 ♖xh2+! 45.♔xh2 ♕xf2+ 46.♔h1 ♕f3+ 47.♔g1 ♕xg3+ 48.♔f1 ♕f3+


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h

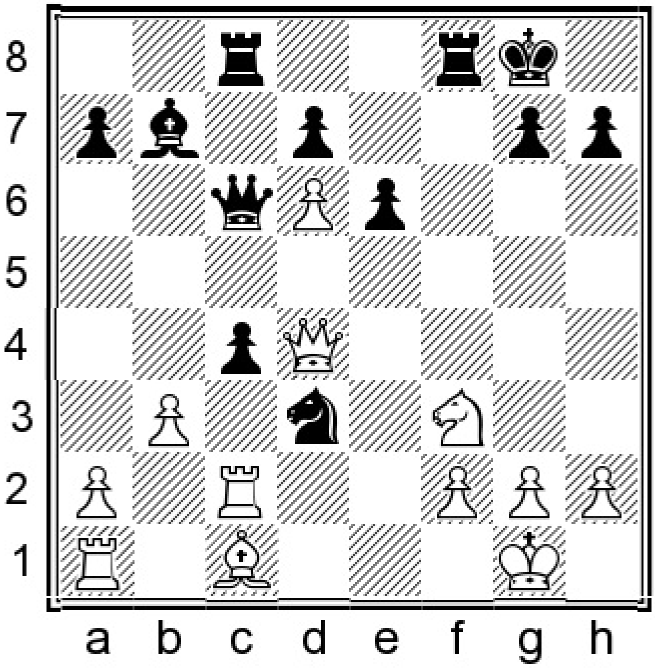
analysis diagram

49.♔g1 (49.♔e1 ♗g3#) 49...♗d4+ 50.♔h2 ♕f2+ 51.♔h1 (51.♔h3 ♗e5) 51...♕h4+ 52.♔g2 ♕g4+

53.♔f1 (or 53.♔h2 ♗e5+ 54.♔h1 ♕h3+ 55.♔g1 ♗d4#) 53...♕g1+ 54.♔e2 ♕e3+ 55.♔f1 ♕f2# or 55.♔d1 ♕d2#.

A device worth remembering!

Julien Carron 2300
Ivan Nemet 2425
Silvaplana ch-SUI 2003 (6)



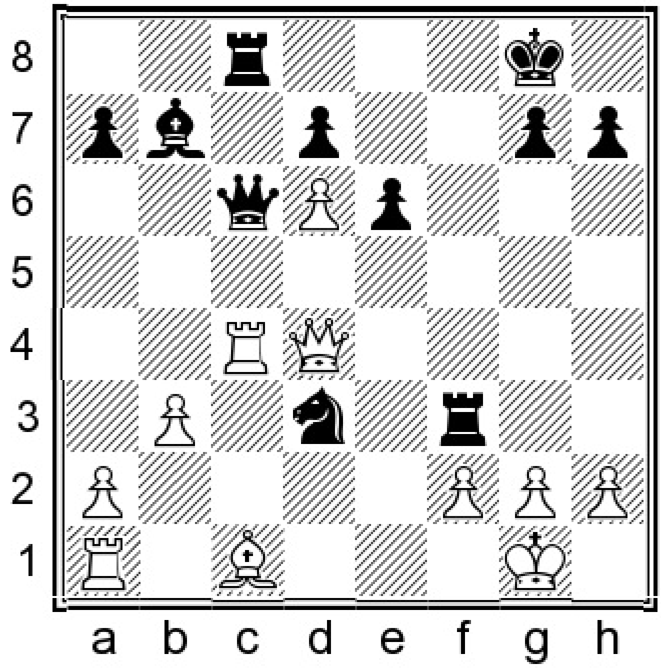
Black to play

No doubt you have found the introduction without any trouble?

21...♖xf3!

It is not hard to see that 22.gxf3 ♕xf3 loses quickly, as mate is inevitable: 23.♔f1 ♕h1+ 24.♔e2 ♕e1#. White had seen this variation and placed his hopes on the counter-blow

22.♖xc4,

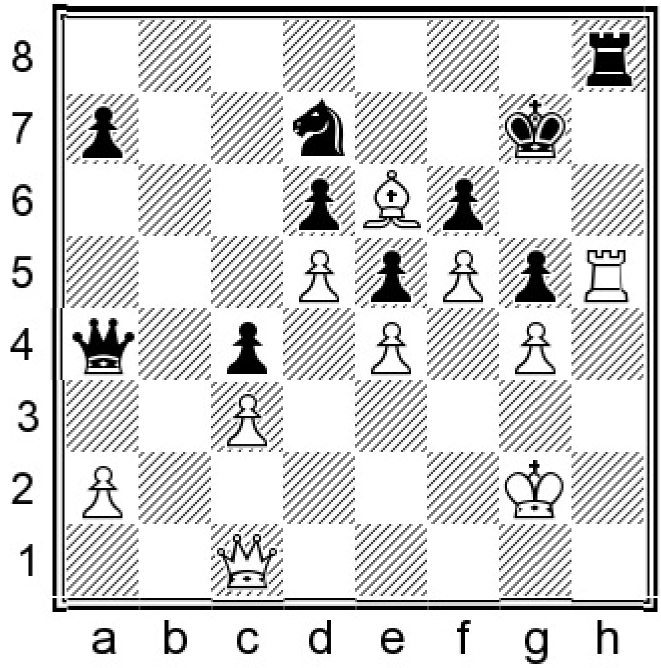


but

22...♖e3!!

forced his immediate capitulation – now mate is threatened not only from g2, but also e1, and there is no defence.

Rafael Leitao 2609
Edson Tsuboi 2380
Campinas 2011 (11)

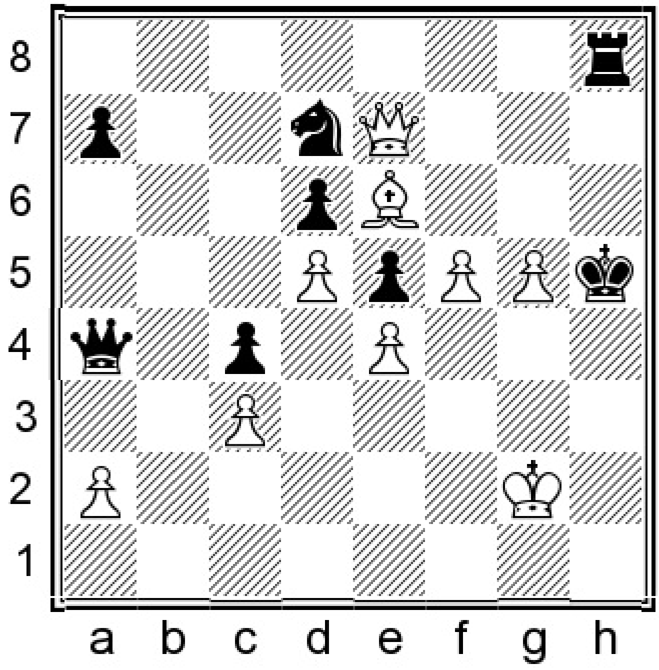


White to play

35.♖xg5+! fxg5?

Allowing White to conclude the attack beautifully. Much more tenacious was 35...♔f8! 36.♖h5 ♕xa2+ 37.♔f3 ♖xh5 38.gxh5 ♕h2, although here too, White has the advantage after 39.♕h6+ ♔e8 40.♗xd7+ ♔xd7 41.♕g7+, and after 39.♗xd7 ♕h3+ 40.♔e2 ♕xh5+ 41.♔d2 ♕h2+ 42.♔d1 ♕h1+ 43.♔c2 ♕xe4+ 44.♔b2, but much fight remains.

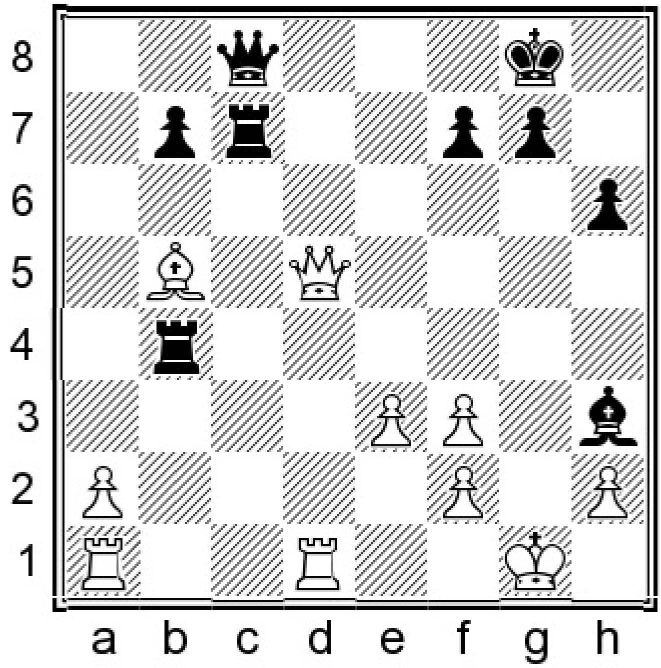
36.♕xg5+ ♔f8 37.♕d8+ ♔g7 38.♕e7+ ♔h6 39.g5+ ♔h5



40.♔g3!

This quiet move, with the threat of 41.♗f7#, had to be seen at the start of the combination. Black resigned.

Maxim Matlakov 2682
Pavel Eljanov 2729
St Petersburg 2013 (7)



Black to play

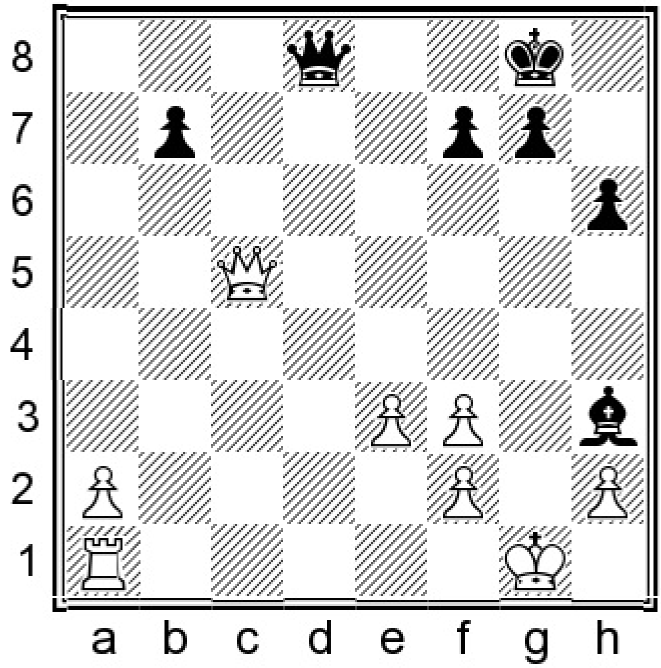
26...♖xb5!

After the immediate 26...♖c5 there is 27.♕d8+, keeping an extra pawn in the endgame. Black's target is not the white bishop, but to remove control of the d8-square.

26...♖xb5! 27.♕xb5 ♖c5 28.♖d8+

After any sensible retreat of the queen Black wins with (28.♕a4) 28...♖g5+ 29.♔h1 ♗g2+ 30.♔g1 ♕h3 but the try in the text also fails.

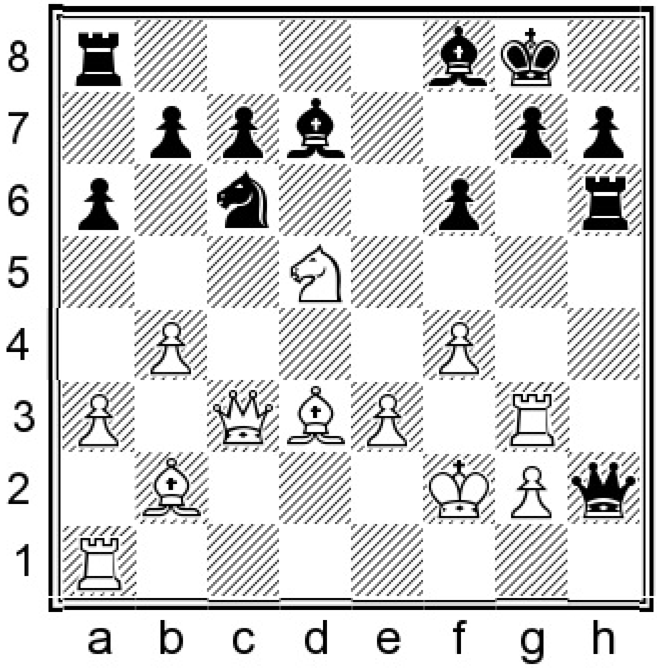
28...♕xd8 29.♕xc5



29...♕f6!

This double attack, after sacrificing the exchange, had to be seen. White resigned: after the rook retreats, 30...♕xf3 wins.

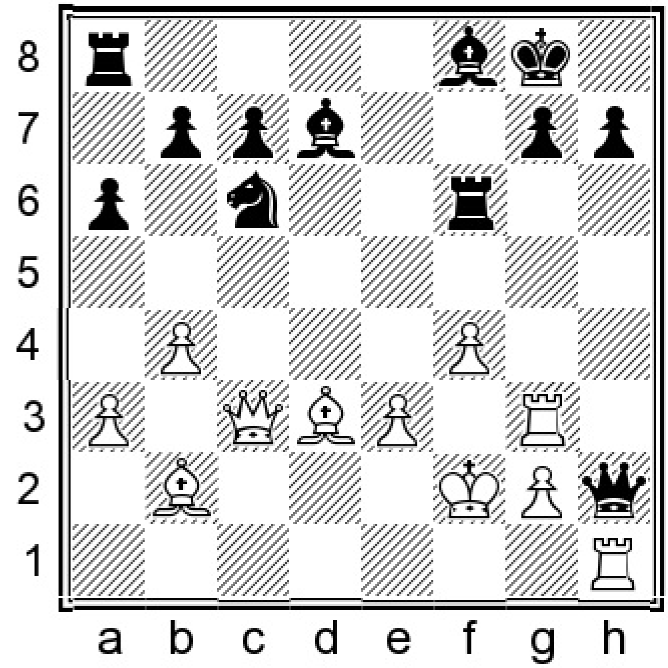
Alexei Shirov 2696
Hou Yifan 2609
Tromsø playoff rapid 2013 (2)



White to play

24.♘xf6+! ♖xf6 25.♖h1!

A wonderful deflection manoeuvre. He loses after 25.♕xf6?? ♕xg3+!.


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h

25...♕xg3+

After 25...♕xh1 26.♕xf6 the threat ♖xg7+ is unstoppable.

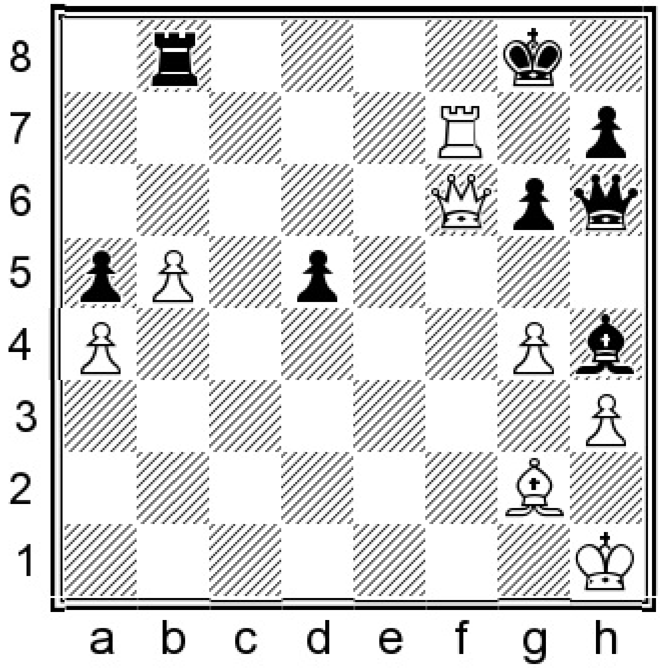
26.♔xg3 h6 27.♕c4+ ♗e6 28.♕c2

Black resigned.

Show in Text Mode

Exercises

464

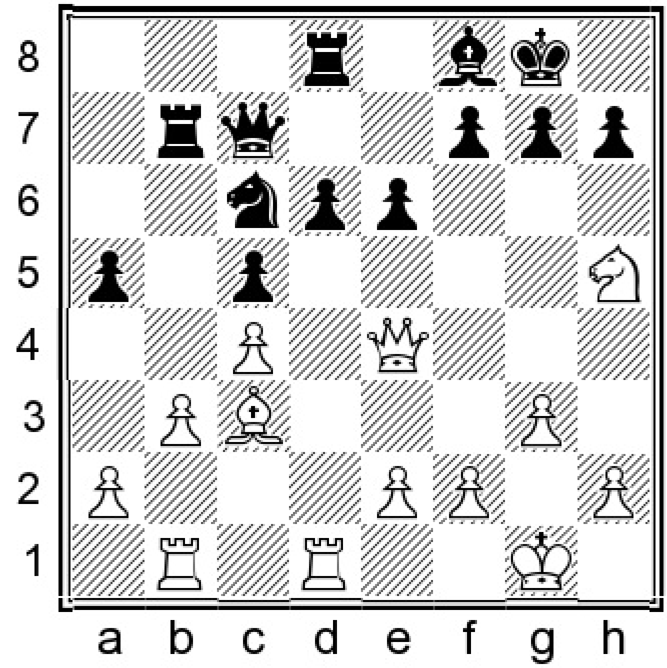


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

464 **46.♖f8+!** 1-0 Krush-McNab, Oakham 2001; after any recapture, 47.♗xd5+ decides.

465

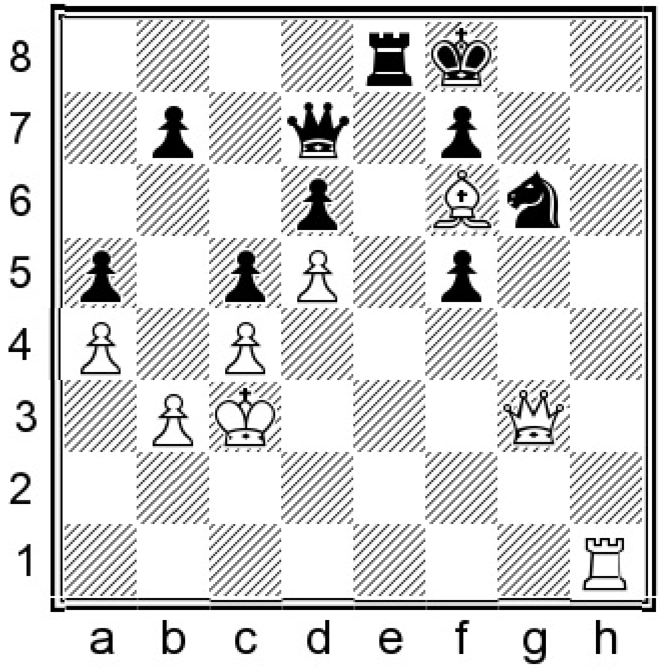


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

465 **21.♘f6+! gxf6 22.♕g4+** 1-0 Brondum-W.Rosen, Bad Zwischenahn Wch sr 2008; after 22...♗g7 23.♗xf6 he loses too much material.

466

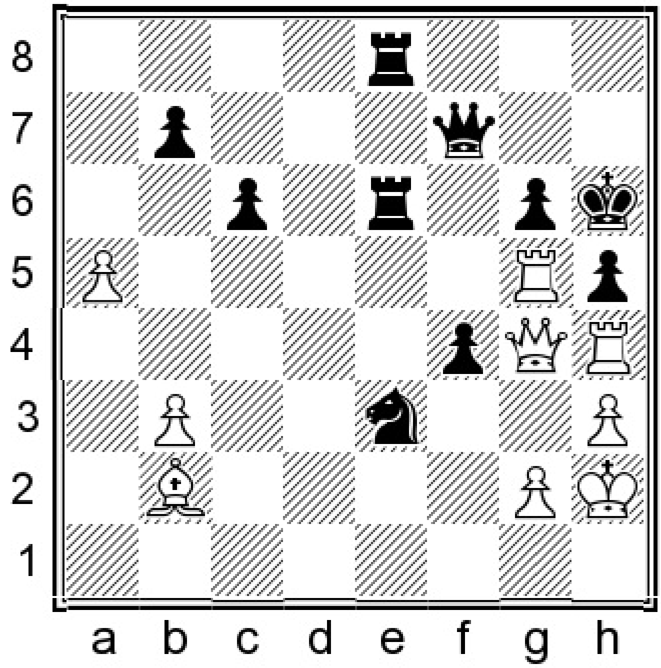


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

466 **38.♖h8+! ♘xh8 39.♕g7#** Bajarani-Solak, Rijeka Ech 2010.

467



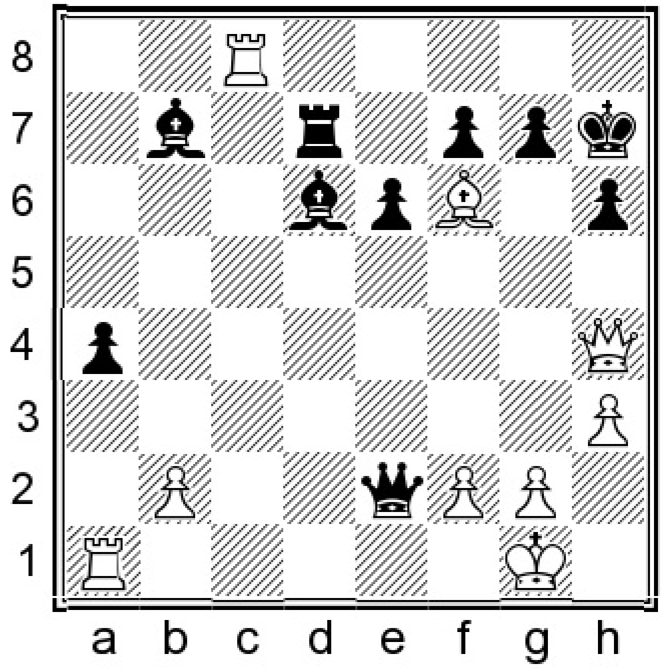
White to play

Show/Hide Solution

467 **50.♖gxh5+!** Or, with the same idea, 50.♖xg6+! ♕xg6 51.♖xh5+.

50.♖gxh5+! gxh5 51.♖xh5+! ♕xh5 52.♕g7# Nijboer-Van Delft, Dieren 2007.

468

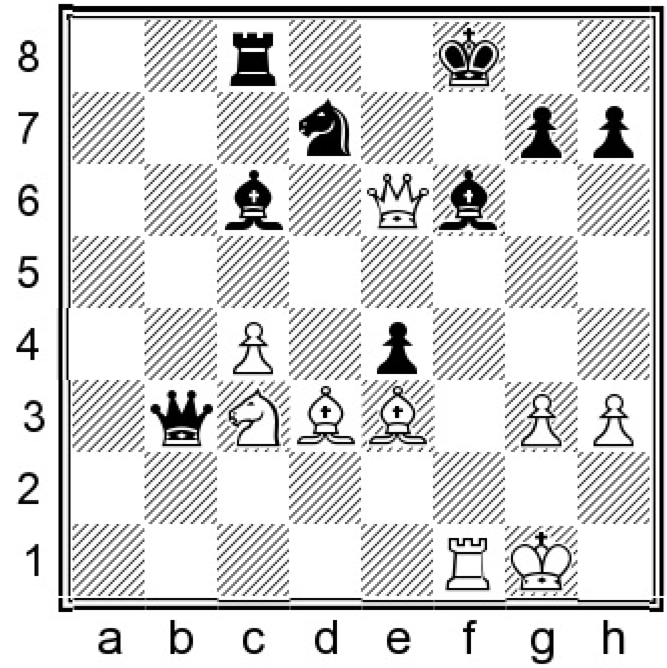


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

468 **27.♖h8+!** Braylovsky-Zimmer, USA tt ICC 2008; Black resigned because of 27...♔xh8 28.♕xh6+ or 27...♔g6 28.♗xg7, and the bishop is immune because of mate in one.

469

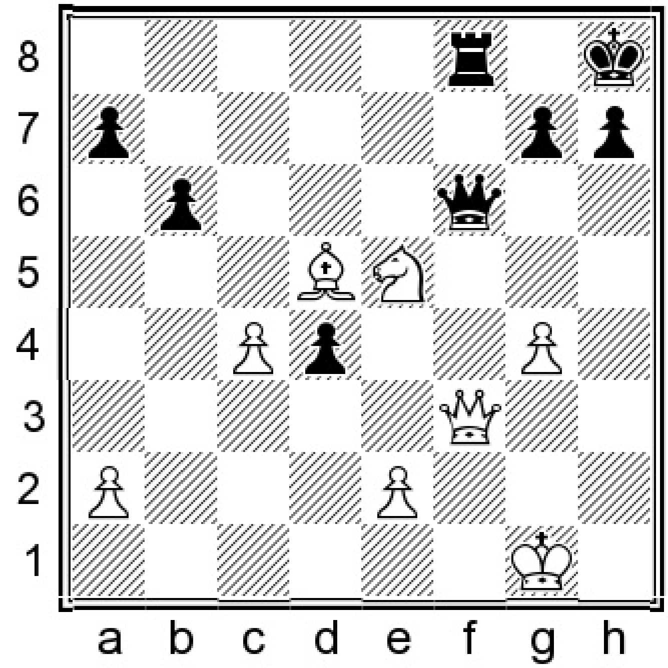


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

469 **33.♖xf6+!** Sabirova-Vajda, Dresden ol W 2008; Black resigned: after any capture, she is mated by the bishop (from h6 or c5).

470

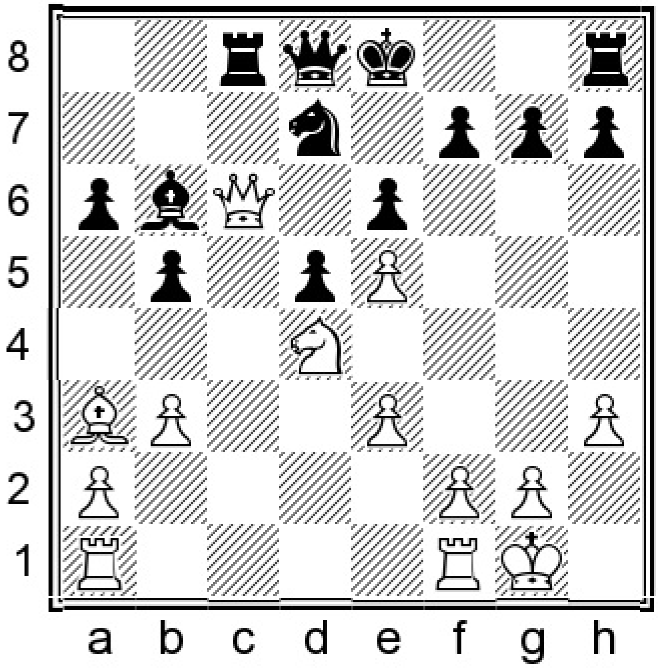


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

470 **30.♘g6+!** 1-0 Bareev-Timman, Leon rapid 2008; 30...hxg6 31.♕h3+.

471

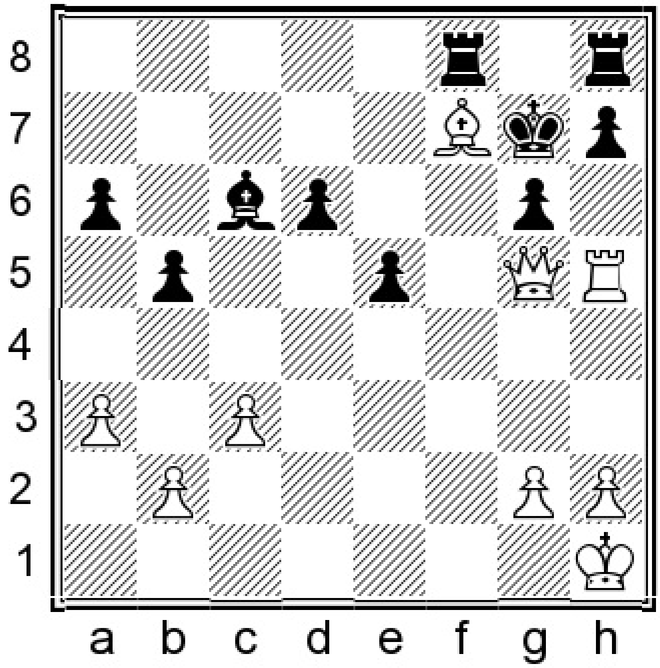


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

471 **19.♘xe6!** Riazantsev-Maevsky, Warsaw Ech rapid 2010; Black resigned: he cannot take either piece (19...♖xc6 20.♘xg7# or 19...fxe6 20.♕xe6+ ♕e7 21.♕xe7#).

472

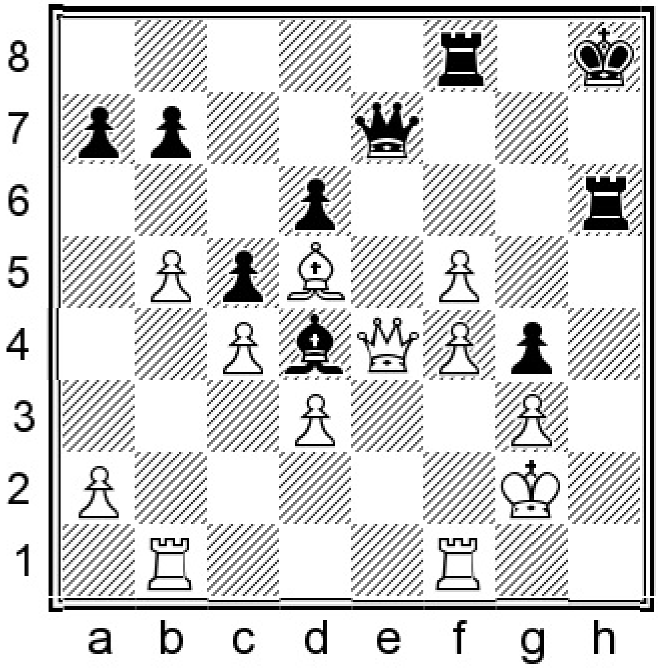


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

472 **31.♖xh7+! ♖xh7** 31...♔xh7 32.♕xg6#. **32.♕xg6+ ♔h8 33.♕f6+ ♖g7 34.♕h6+** Dimovska-Komiagina, Chalkidiki Ech jr W 2000; Black resigned, without waiting for 34...♖h7 35.♕xf8#.

473

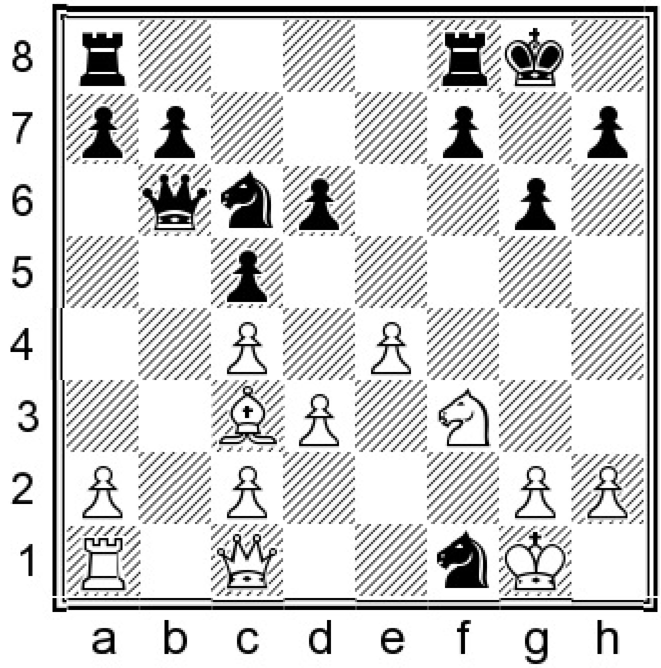

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h

Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

473 **31...♖h2+!** 0-1 Roktim-Stellwagen, Vlissingen 2006; 32.♔xh2 ♕h7+ 33.♔g2 ♕h3#.

474

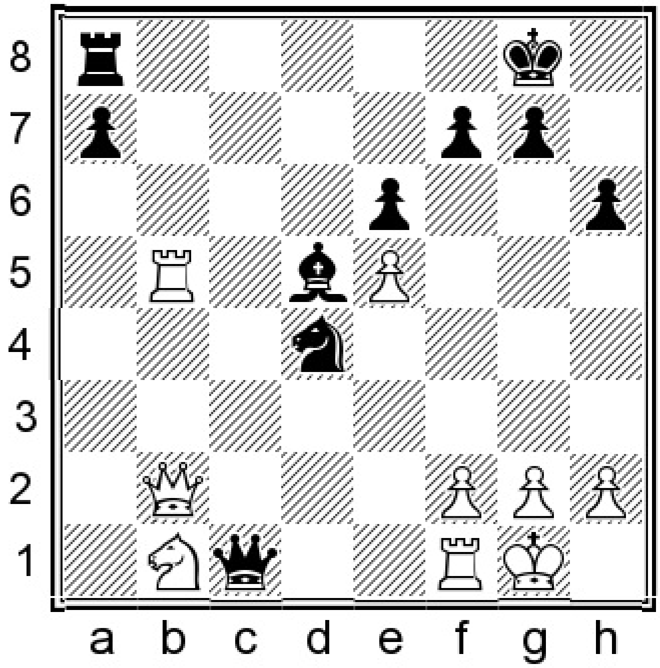


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

474 **16.♗f6!** Bajarani-Chubenko, Baku 2010; Black resigned because of 16...♘d8 17.♕h6 ♘e6 18.♘g5.

475

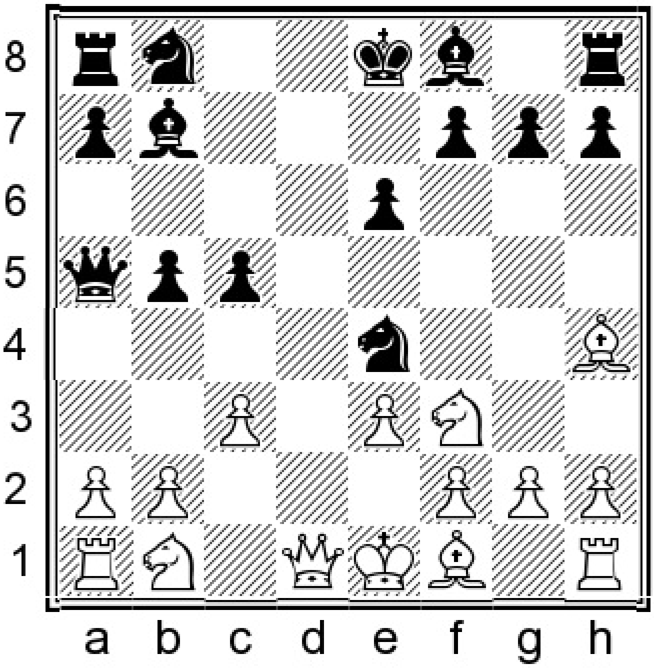


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

475 **24...♘f3+!** Debashis-Sethuraman, Chotowa Wch U20 2010; White resigned, mate being unavoidable: 25.♔h1 ♕xf1# or 25.gxf3 ♕g5+ 26.♔h1 ♗xf3#.

476

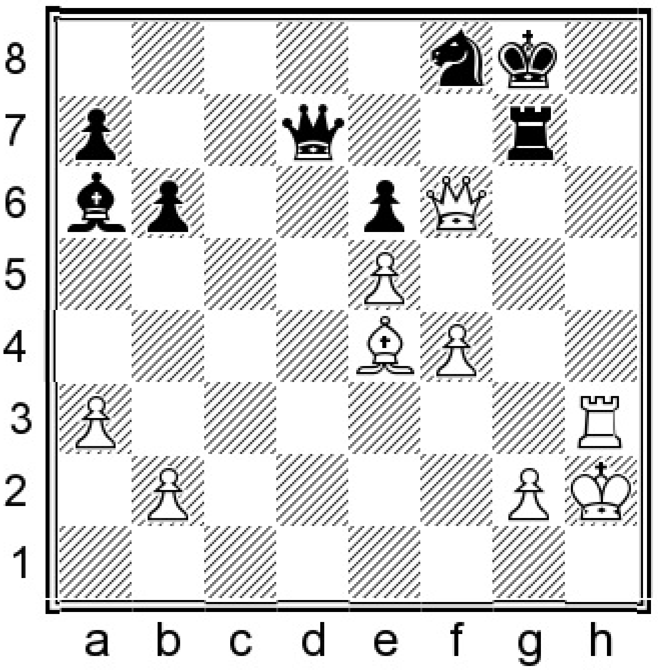


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

476 **9.♗xb5+! ♘c6?** More tenacious is 9...♗c6, although even here, after 10.♘a3 Black is in a bad way. **10.♘e5** 1-0 Sakaev-Delchev, Ohrid Ech 2001; 10...♕c7 11.♕a4 ♖c8 12.♕xe4 loses a piece.

477

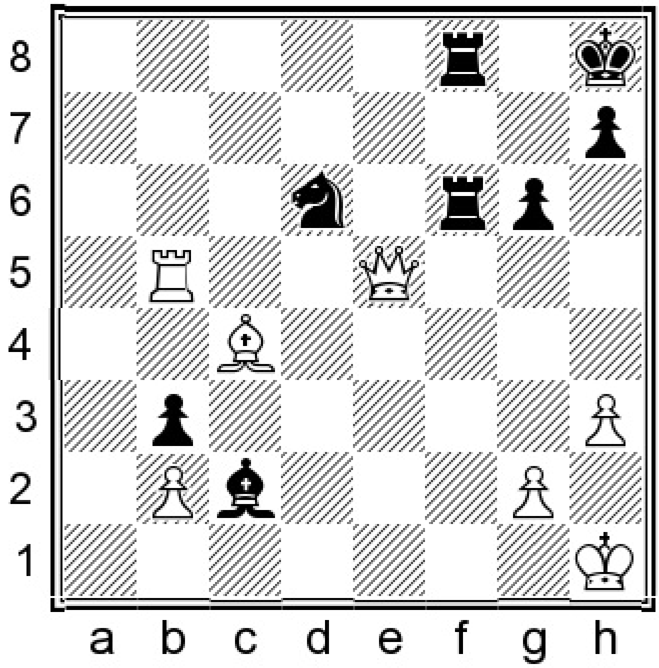

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h

White to play

Show/Hide Solution

477 **43.♖h8+!** Kaufman-Stancil, Washington 2002; Black resigned because of 43...♔xh8 44.♕xf8+ ♖g8 45.♕h6+.

478

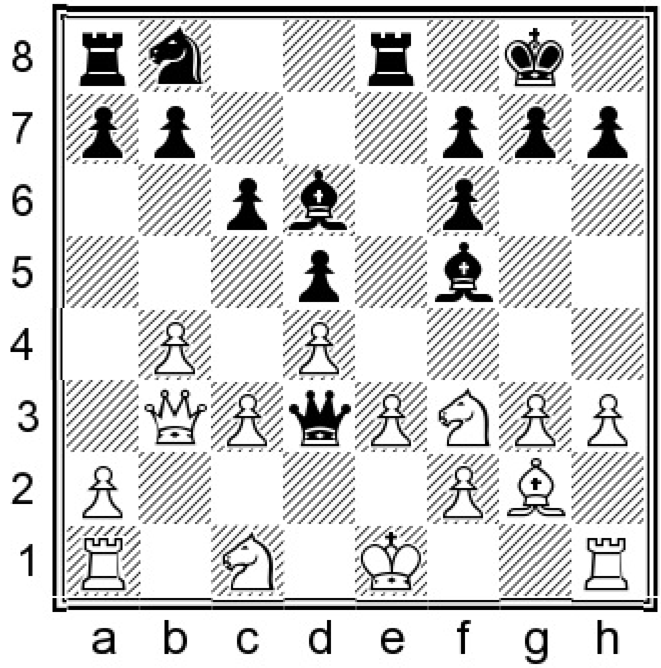


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

478 **36.♖b8!** Sulskis-Sorokin, Kolkata 2002; Black resigned: he cannot avoid large losses (36...♔g7 37.♖xf8).

479

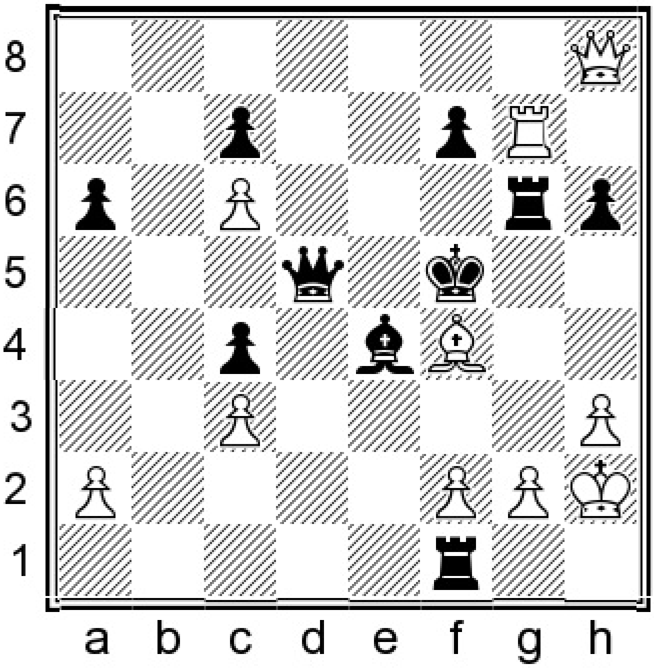


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

479 **15...♖xe3+ 1-0** 16.fxe3 ♗xg3#, Groffen-Santa Torres, Havana 2004.

480

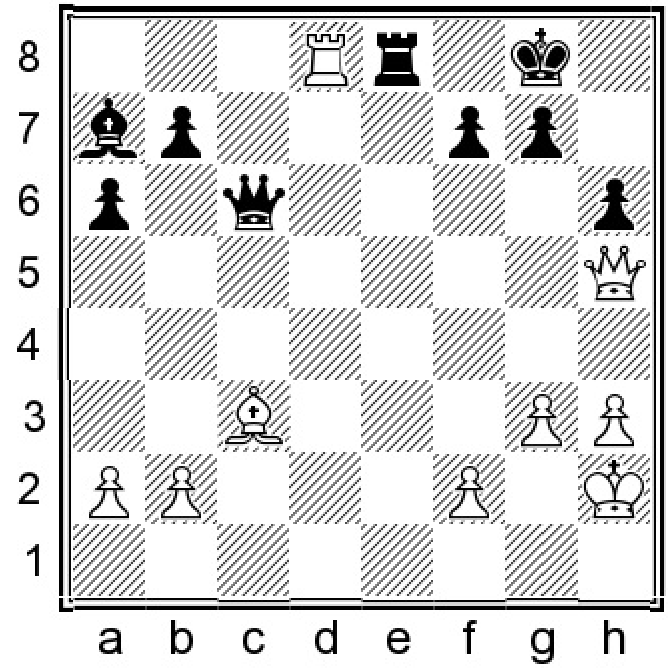


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

480 **38.♖xf7+!** 1-0 Repkova-E.Danielian, Khanty-Mansiysk ol W 2010; 38...♕xf7 39.♕e5# or 38...♔e6 39.♕e8#.

481

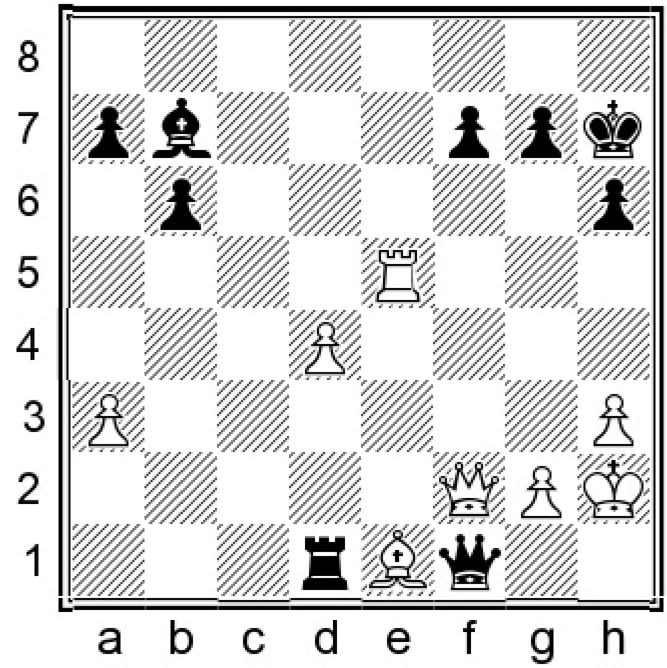


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

481 **33.♕e5!** Kochetkova-Sedina, Kishinev Ech W 2005; Black resigned: she loses after both 33...♔f8 34.♖xe8+ ♕xe8 35.♗b4+, and 33...♖xd8 34.♕xg7#.

482

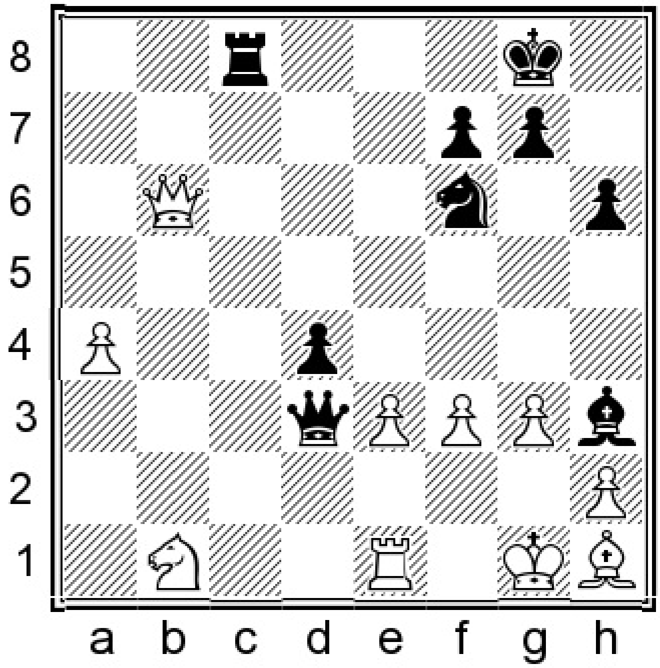


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

482 **36...♖xe1!** 0-1 Yang-Robson, St Louis 2011; 37.♕xe1 ♕xg2#.

483

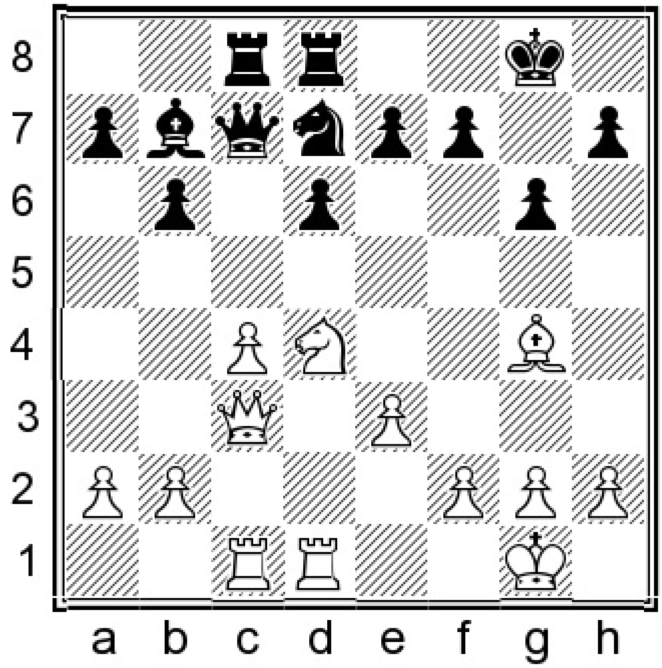


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

483 **31...♖c1!** Kasimdzhanov-Anand, Tashkent m rapid 2011; White resigned: 32.♔f2 dxe3+ 33.♖xe3 ♖f1#.

484

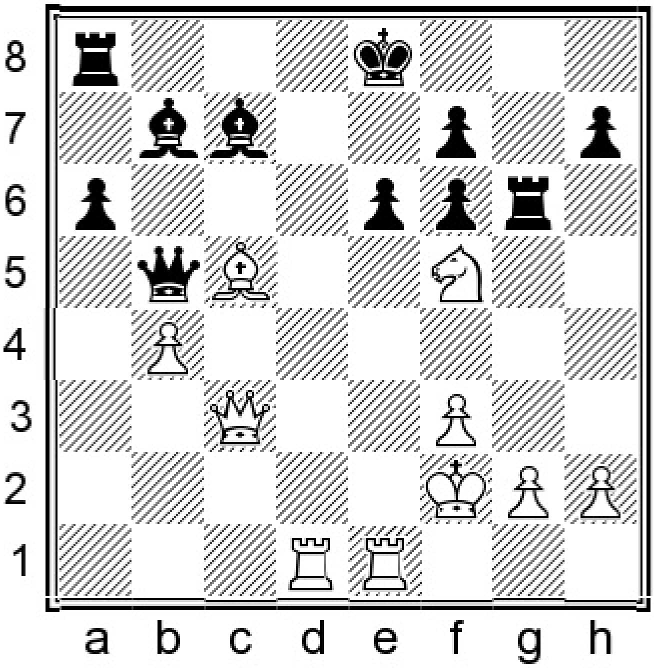

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h

White to play

Show/Hide Solution

484 **18.♘e6!** 1-0 Adianto-Rasch, Biel 2013; If 18...fxe6, then 19.♗xe6+ ♔f8 20.♕h8#.

485

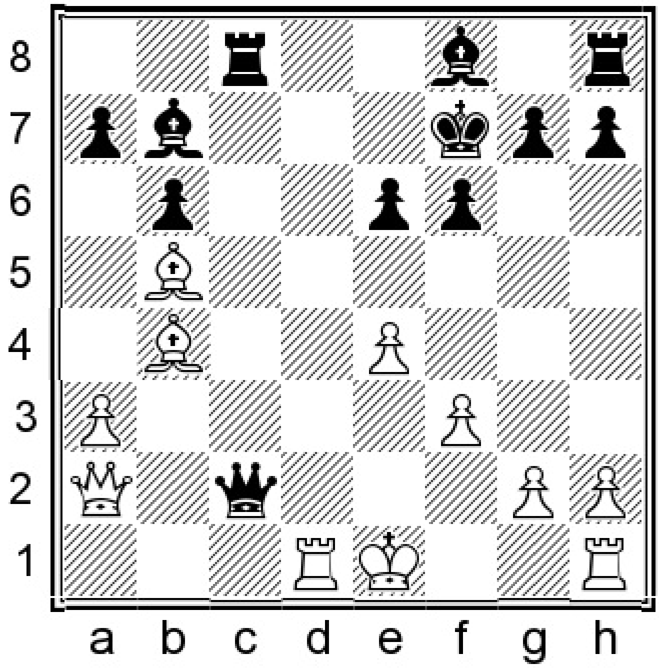


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

485 **28.♘g7+!** Moiseenko-Bogdanovich, Russia tt 2011; Black resigned because of 28...♖xg7 29.♕xf6 ♗d8 30.♖xd8+!.

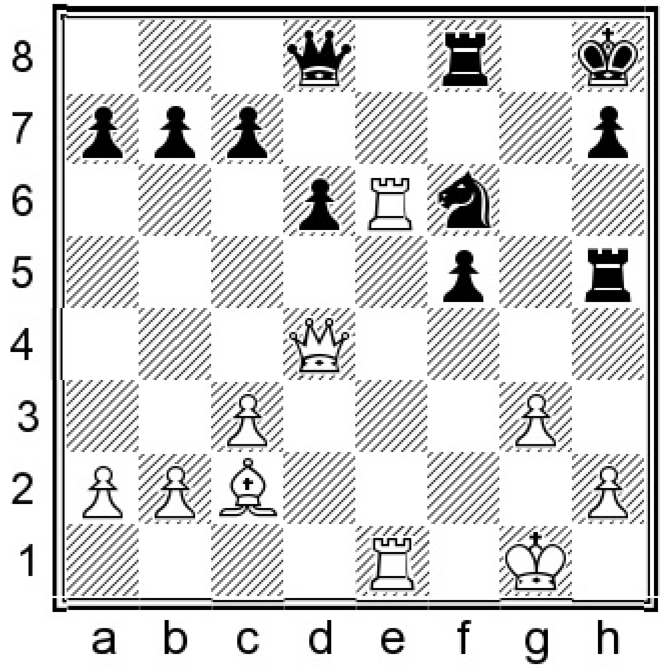
486


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

486 **19.♗e8+!** 1-0 Batsiashvili-Shen Yang, Shenzhen 2011; 19...♖xe8 20.♕xc2 or 19...♔xe8 20.♕xe6+.

487

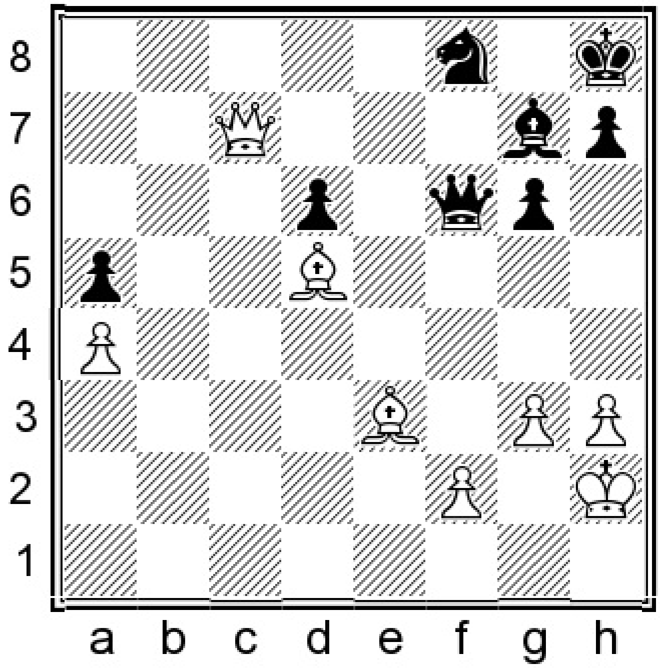


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

487 **28.♖e8!** Chen Pengyu-Teichmann, Canberra 2011; Black resigned: after 28...♖xe8 29.♖xe8+ ♕xe8 30.♕xf6+ ♔g8, 31.♗b3+! decides.

488

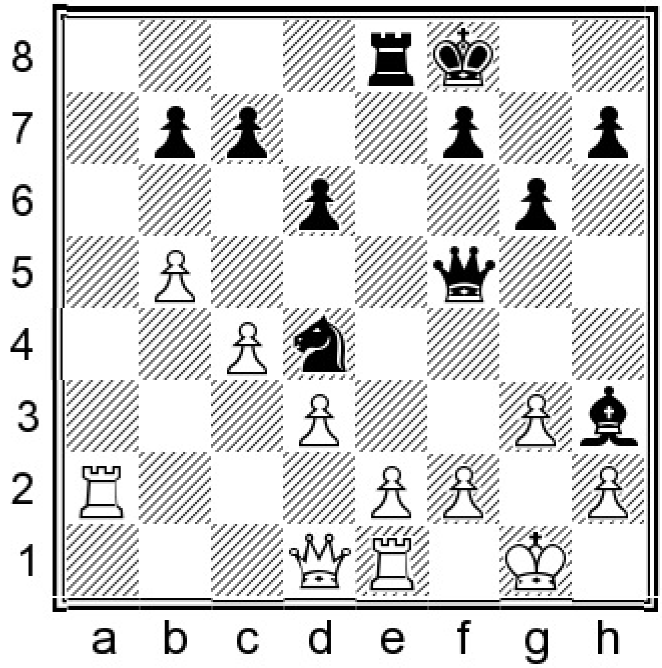


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

488 **36.♗d4! ♕xd4 37.♕f7** 1-0 Tikkanen-Eriksson, Västerås ch-SWE 2011; the f2-pawn is defended and the only way to stop mate is at the cost of the queen.

489

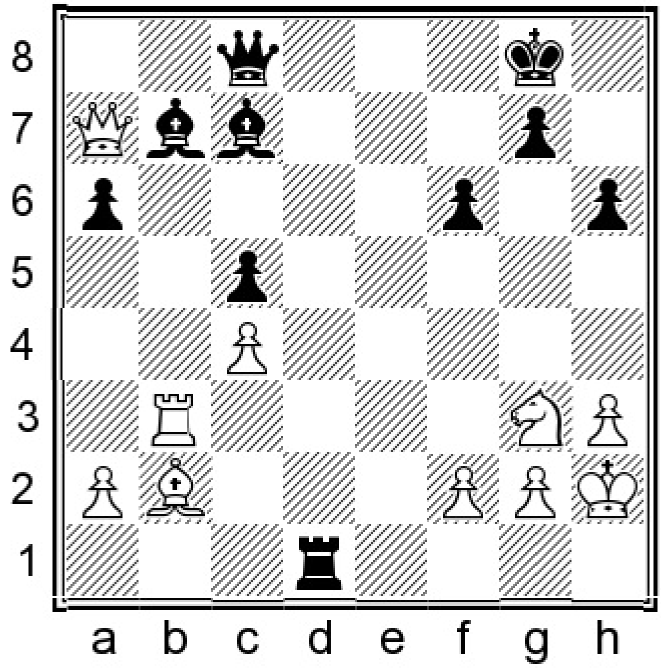


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

489 **23...♘f3+!** Gogolis-Shanava, Vrachati 2011; White resigned, because he either ends up a piece down or is mated: 24.exf3 ♖xe1+ 25.♕xe1 ♕xf3 26.♖a8+ ♔g7 27.♕a1+ f6, and the checks run out.

490

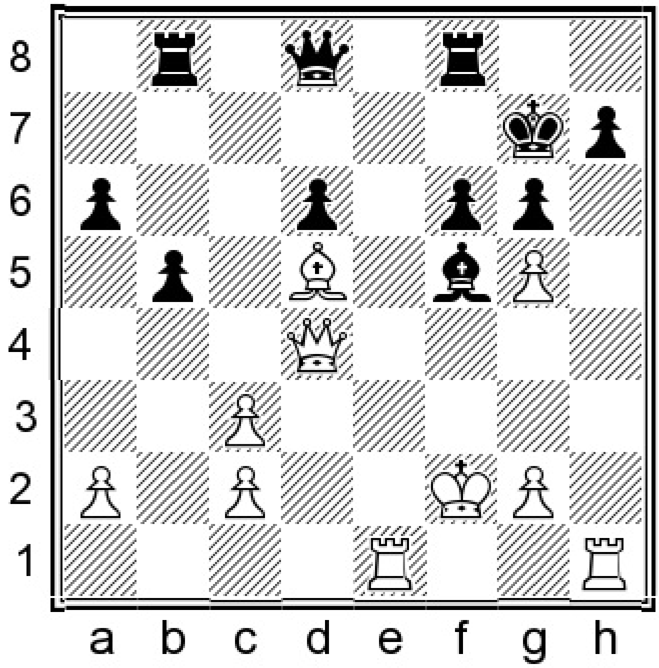

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h

Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

490 **32...♖h1+!** Oleksienko-Hovhannisyan, Rijeka Ech 2010; White resigned, mate is unavoidable (33.♔h1 ♕xh3+).

491

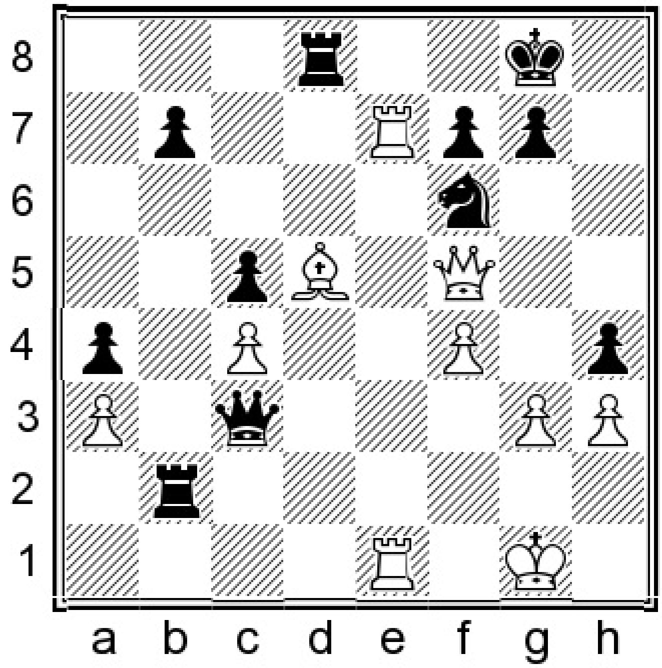


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

491 **23.♖xh7+!** Skovgaard-Skousen, Copenhagen 2013; Black resigned because of 23...♔xh7 24.♕h4+ ♔g7 25.♕h6#.

492

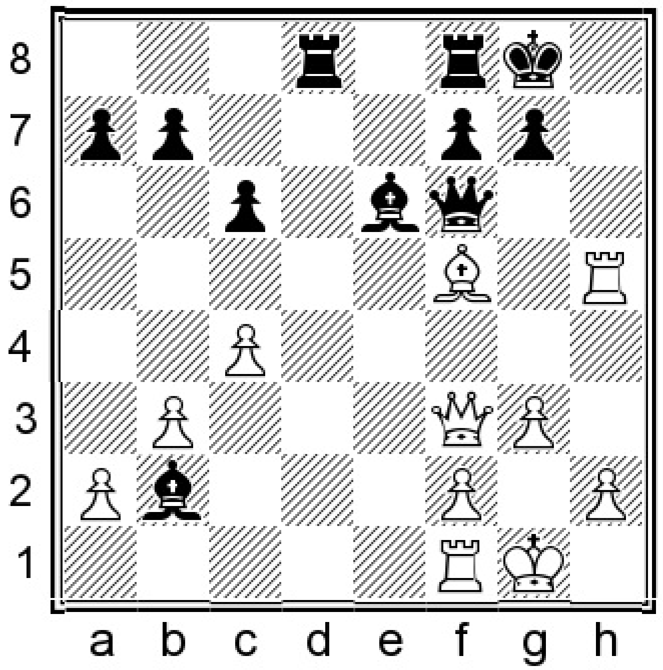


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

492 White has no time to gorge on the f7-pawn, because his king is in danger, but there is a better decision: **34.♖e8+!** 1-0 Gomes-Guo Qi, Zaozhuang Ach-tt W 2012; not waiting for 34...♖xe8 35.♖xe8+ ♘xe8 36.♕xf7+ ♔h7 37.♕h5#.

493

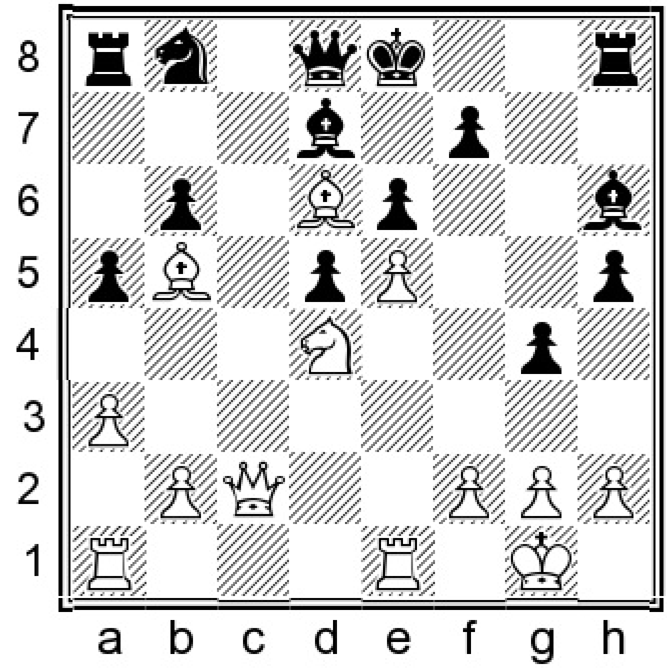


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

493 **27.♗h7+ ♔h8 28.♗g6+!** It is important to close the 6th rank – the following combination does not work in the starting position, because of the defence ...♕f6-h6. **28...♔g8 29.♖h8+** 1-0 Larino Nieto-Solaesa Navalpotro, Madrid 2012; 29...♔xh8 30.♕h5+.

494

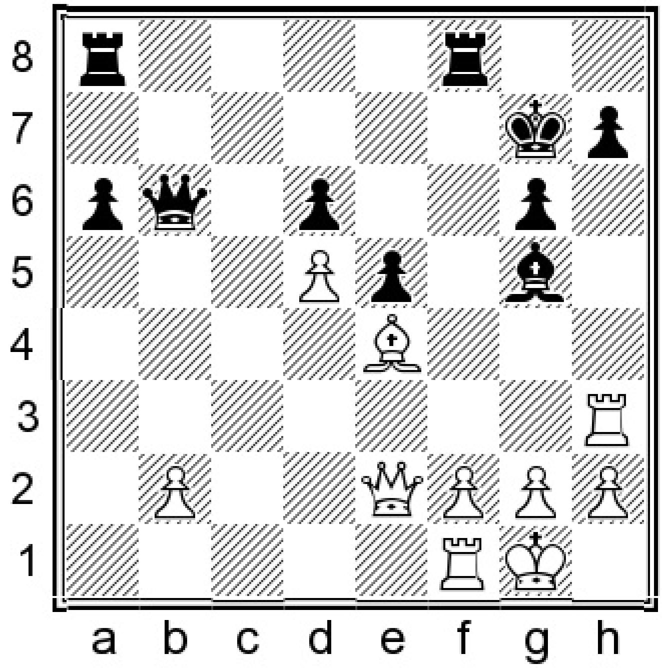


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

494 Again the ‘weakness’ e6... **25.♘xe6!** Caspi-Memeti, Eilat tt 2012; Black resigned: he is either mated by the queen from g6 or suffers serious material losses.

495

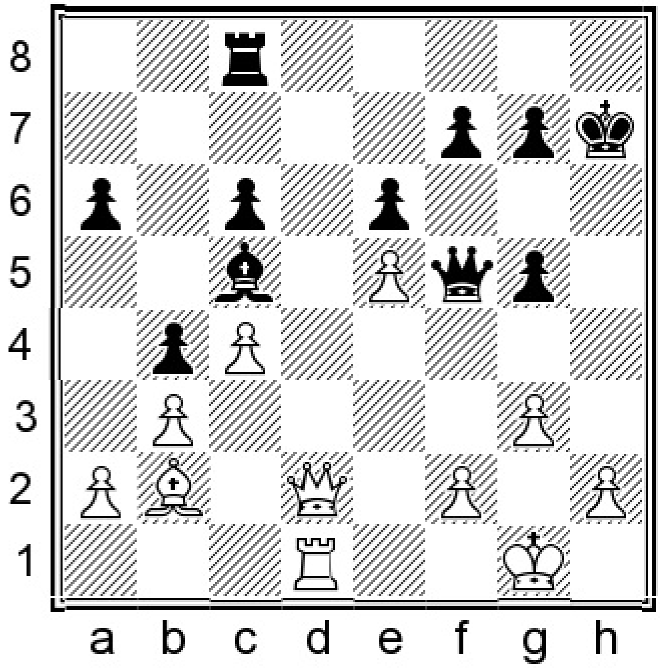


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

495 **27.♖xh7+!** 1-0 Vroombout-L.van Foreest, Hoogeveen 2012; after 27...♔xh7 there is mate by 28.♕h5+, and after any reply, 29.♕xg6+ and 30.♕h7#. And if 27...♔g8, then 28.♕g4 ♕d8 29.♕e6+. Finally, the variation 27...♔f6 28.♕g4 ♖ae8 29.h4 also leaves Black with no chances.

496

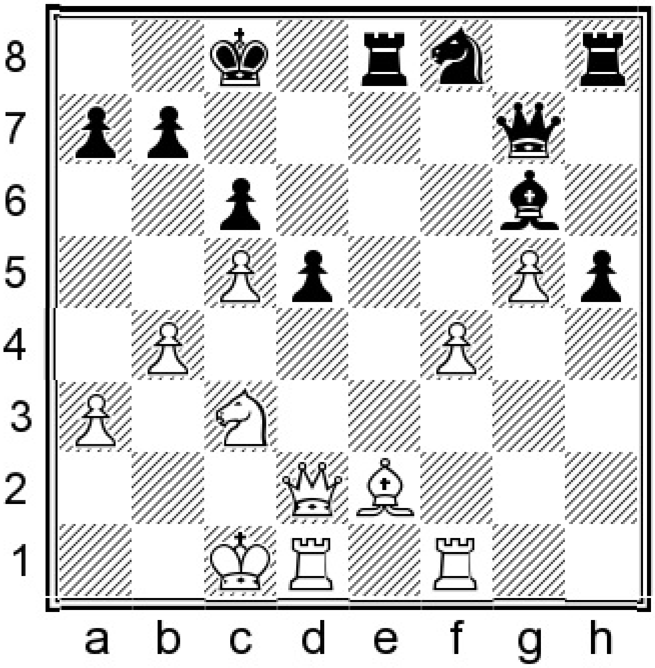


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

496 **28...♖d8!** 0-1 Olarte Parra-Condori, Bogota 2013; 29.♕xd8 ♕xf2+ 30.♔h1 ♕f3#.

497

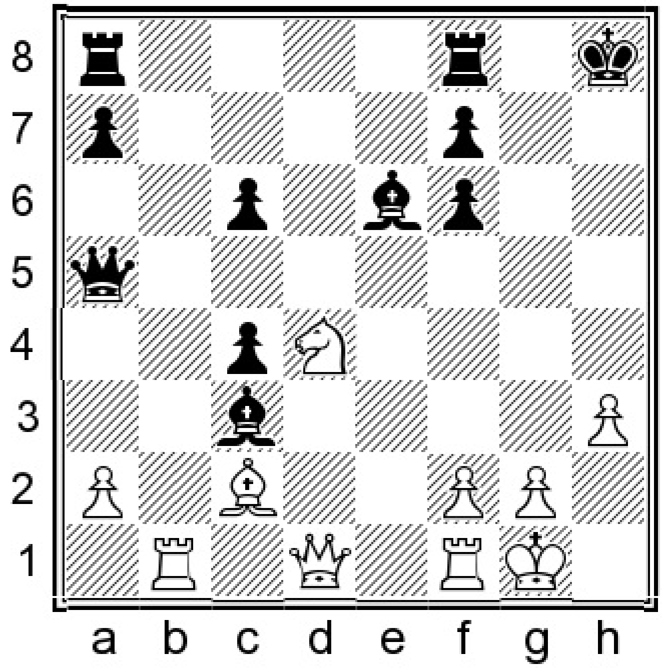

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h

Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

497 **26...♖xe2!** 0-1 Ashwin-Thejkumar, Jalgaon ch-IND 2013; 27.♘xe2 ♕a1#.

498

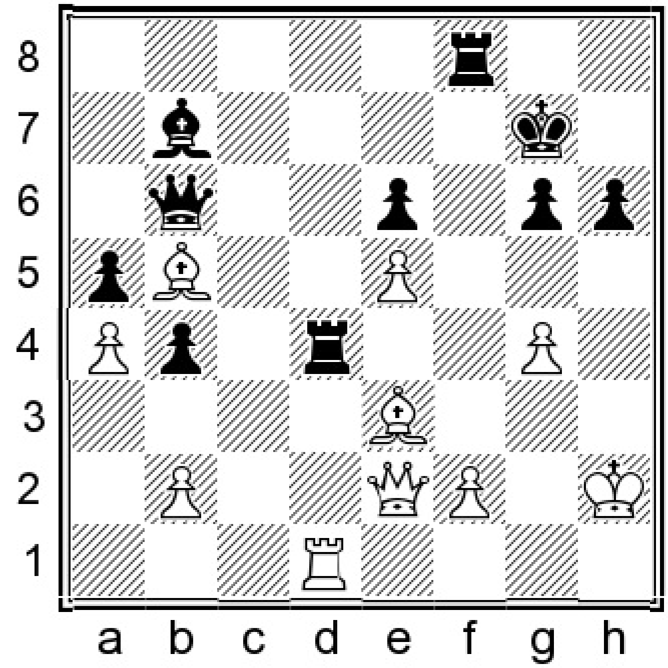

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h

White to play

Show/Hide Solution

498 **21.♖b5!** Rowe-Roggensack, Hastings 2013/14; Black resigned because of 21...cxb5 22.♕h5+.

499

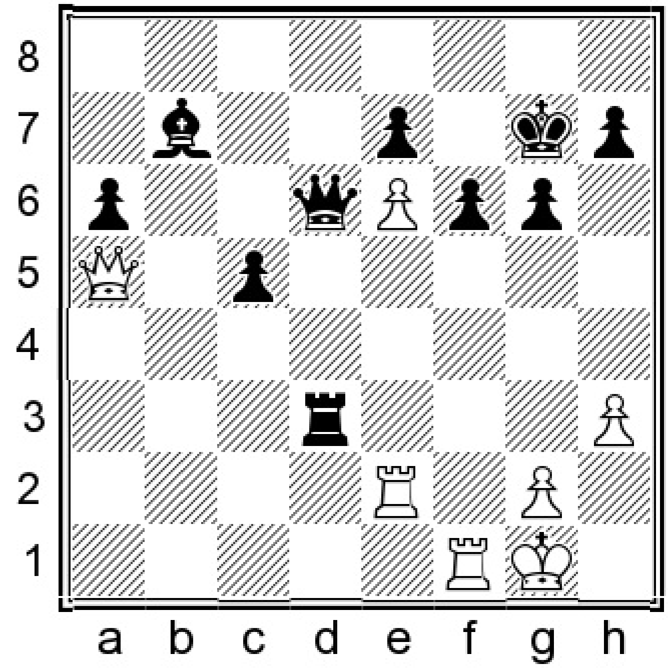


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

499 **29...♕d8!** Elegantly stepping out of the pin, Ezat-Korneev, Linares 2003; White resigned: a defence against the deadly threat ...♕h4+ will cost him too much.

500

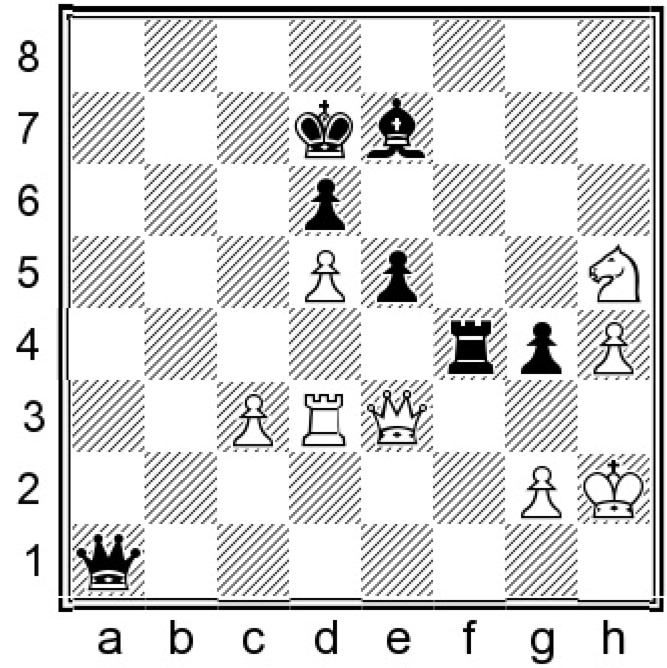


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

500 **34...♖xh3! 35.♕d2** 35.gxh3 ♕g3+, and mate next move. **35...♕h2+ 36.♔f2 ♖f3+!** Severjukhin-Arakelov, Kazan ch-RUS U20 2001; White resigned because of 37.♔e1 ♖xf1+ 38.♔xf1 ♕h1+ 39.♔f2 ♕xg2+ 40.♔e3 ♕f3# or 40.♔e1 ♕g1#.

501



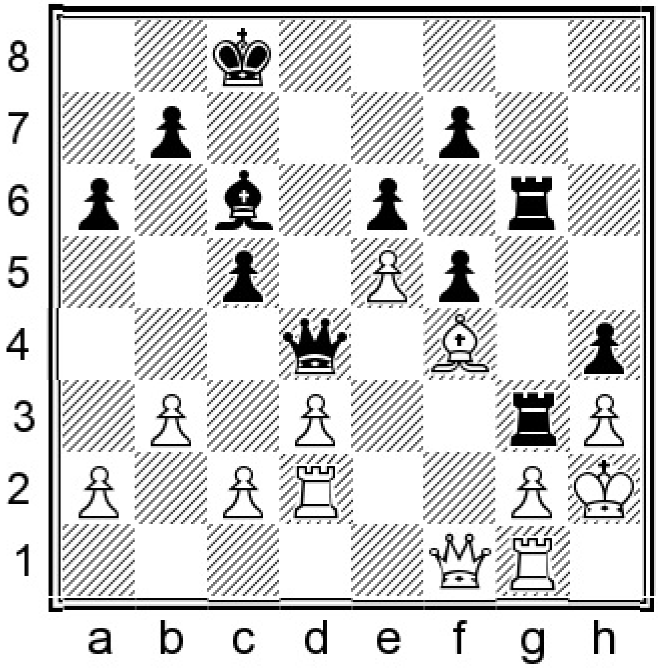
Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

501 **40...g3+! 41.♔xg3** 41.♕xg3 ♖xh4+. **41...♗xh4+ 42.♔h2** 42.♔h3 ♕h1#. **42...♗f2 43.♕xf4** If 43.♕h3+ ♔c7 White has no defence against ...♕g1+. **43...exf4**, and Black soon won in Chandler-Gallagher, Scarborough 2001.

Show in Text Mode

502



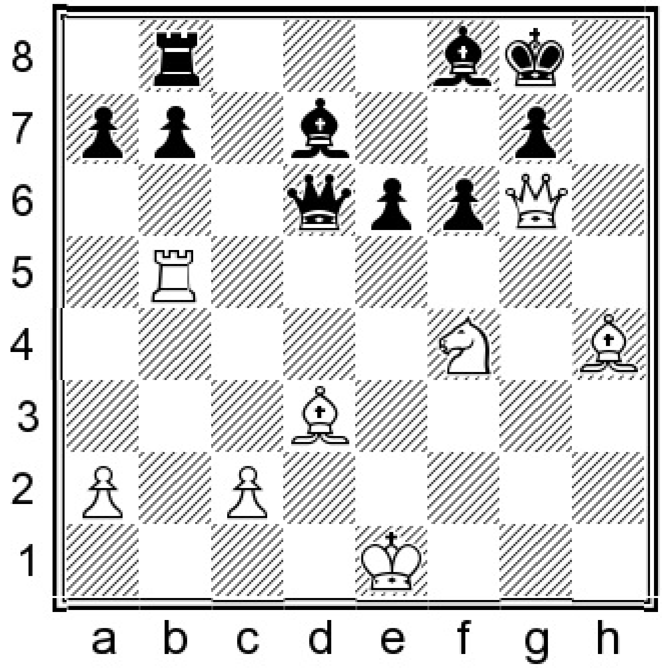
Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

502 **28...♖f3!** M.Goldberg-M.Taylor, Guernsey 2001; White resigned, because he loses after 29.gxf3 ♕xf4+ 30.♔h1 ♗xf3+.

The win would be harder after 28...♗f3 29.♗xg3 hxg3+ 30.♔h1 ♗c6, after which Black prepares a blow on h3.

503

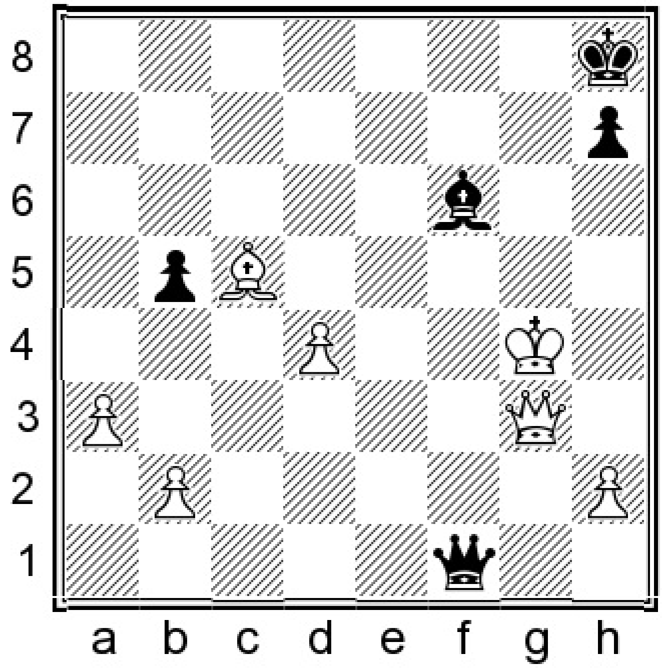


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

503 **30.♕h7+ ♔f7 31.♗g6+ ♔e7 32.♗xf6+!** 1-0 Jobava-Safarli, Dubai 2003; 32...♔xf6 33.♕h4#.

504

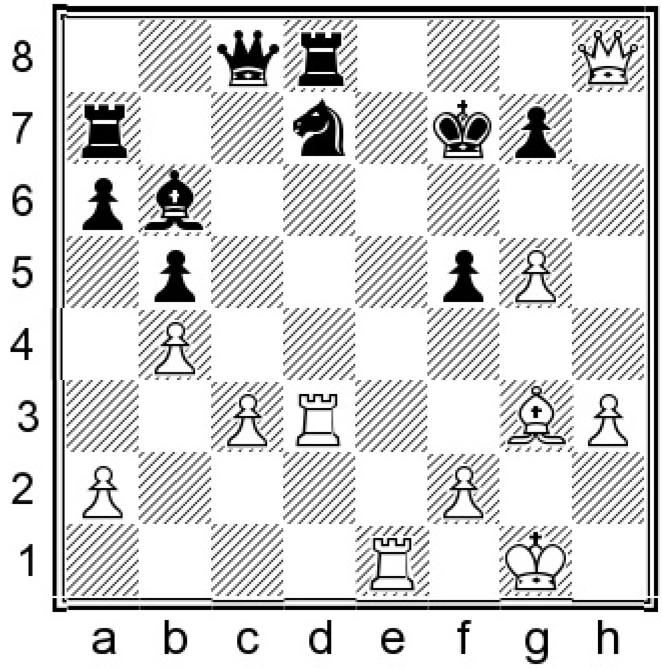


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

504 **57...h5+!** This cunning check radically changes the assessment of the position – White cannot avoid mate. **58.♔xh5 ♕f5+ 59.♔h6 ♕h7#** Shumiakina-Sebag, Rethymno tt W 2003.

505

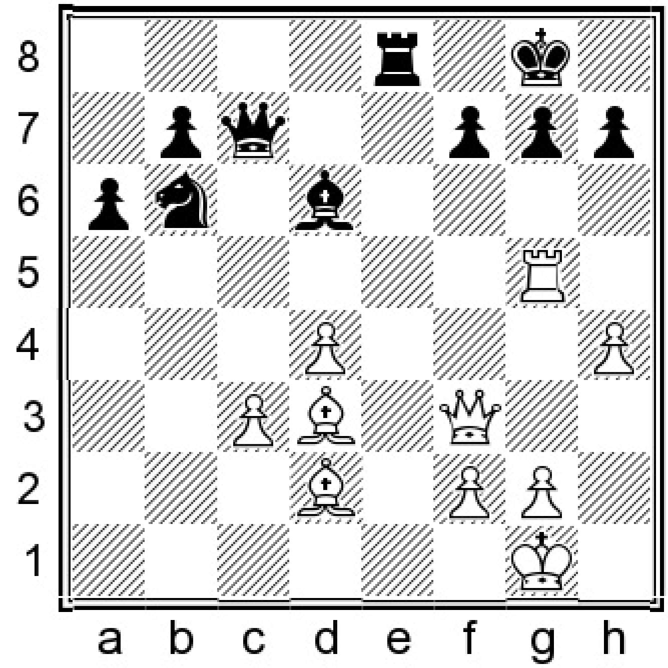


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

505 **31.♖e7+! ♔xe7 32.♕xg7+** Barsky-Haliavsky, Moscow 2004; Black resigned because of 32...♔e6 33.♖d6# or 32...♔e8 33.♕g6+ ♔e7 34.♗d6#.

506

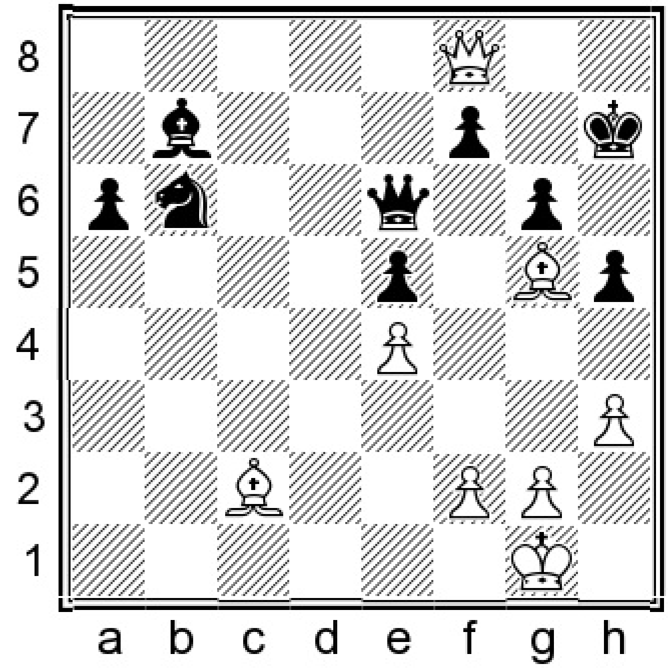

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h

White to play

Show/Hide Solution

506 **26.♖xg7+!** 1-0 Timofeev-Raetsky, Abu Dhabi 2004; on 26...♔xg7 he is finished off by one further sacrifice: 27.♗h6+! ♔xh6 (27...♔g8 28.♕g4+) 28.♕f6+ ♔h5 29.♕g5#.

507

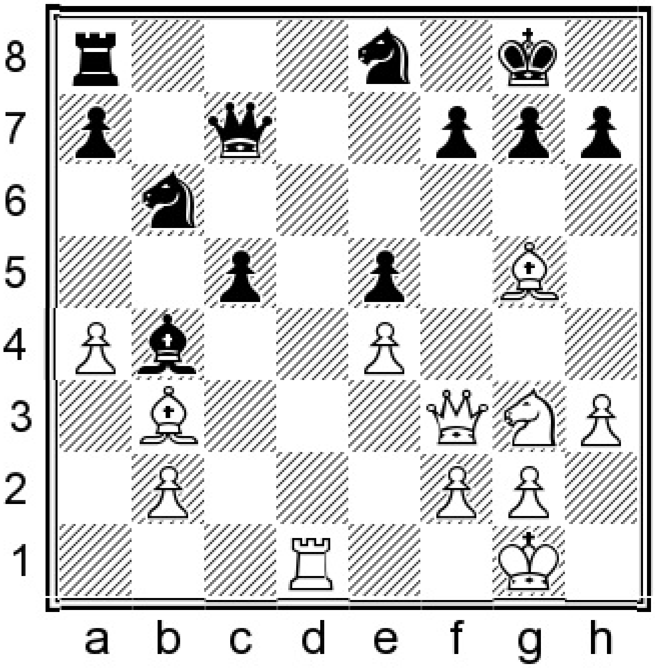

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

White to play

Show/Hide Solution

507 **45.♗b3! ♘c4** Or 45...♕xb3 46.♗f6+–. **46.♗xc4 ♕xc4 47.♕h6+!** But not 47.♗f6?? ♕c1+ 48.♔h2 ♕f4+. **47...♔g8 48.♗f6** 1-0 Grischuk-P.Smirnov, Kemer Ech 2004.

508

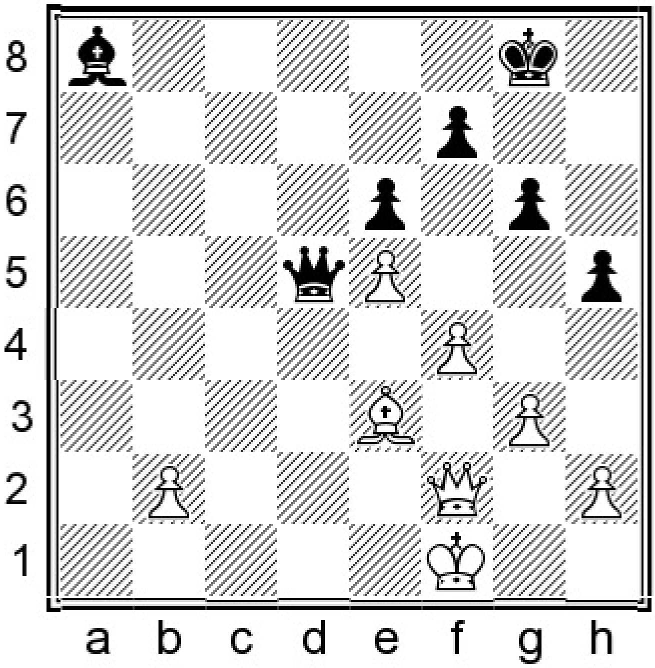


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

508 **21.♗d8!** Lerner-Deutsch, Givatayim 2005; Black resigned because of 21...♕b7 22.♗xb6 axb6 23.♗d5 or 21...♖xd8 22.♖xd8 ♕xd8 23.♕xf7+ ♔h8 24.♕g8#.

509

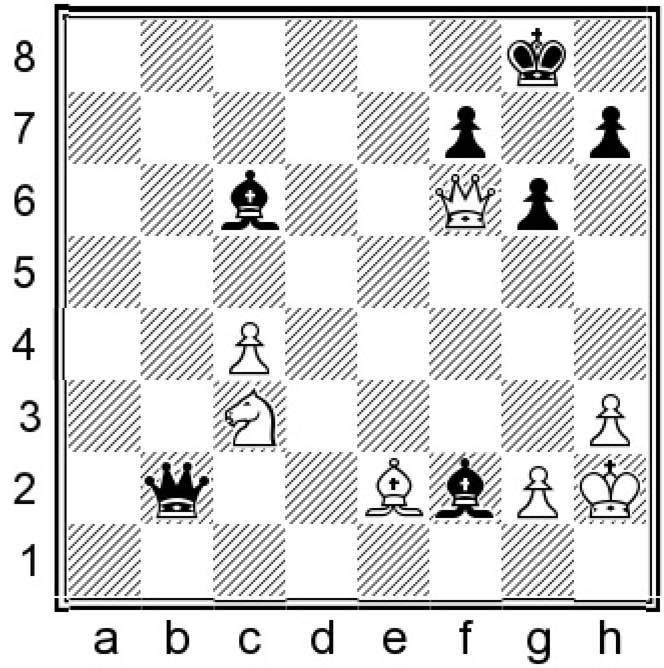


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

509 This example clearly shows how opposite-coloured bishops can strengthen the attacking power of the stronger side: **36...♕d1+ 37.♕e1 ♗g2+ 38.♔f2 ♕f3+ 39.♔g1 ♗h3** 0-1 Movsesian-Kuzubov, Moscow 2006; 40.♕f2 ♕d1+; 40.♕d2 ♕f1#.

510

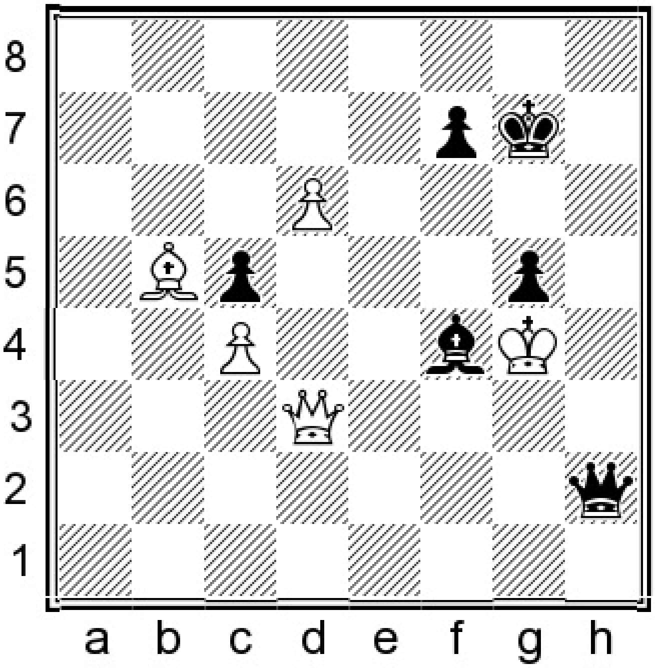


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

510 How well do you feel the geometry of the chessboard? **45...♕b8+! 46.♔h1 ♗xg2+!** I.Sokolov-Bologan, Poikovsky 2006; White resigned: 47.♔xg2 ♕g3+ and mate next move.

511

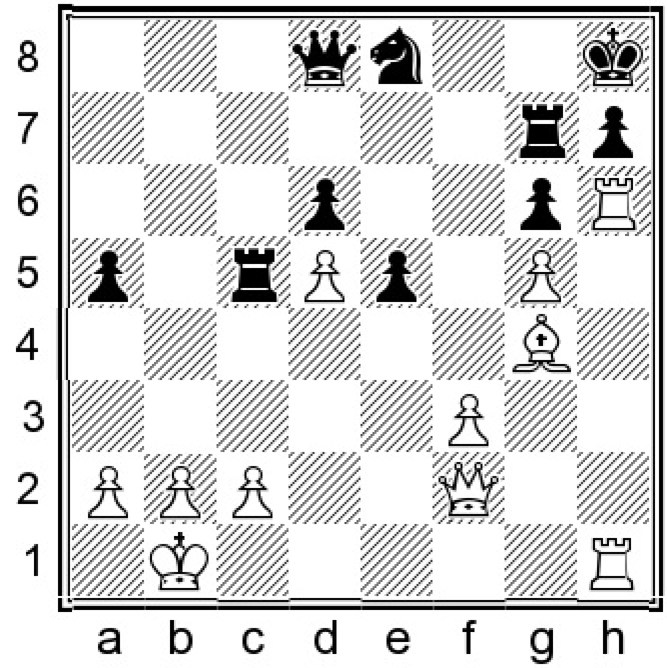


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

511 **56...f5+!** 0-1 Fridman-Rustemov, Germany Bundesliga 2005/06; deflecting the king to a bad square. Now 57.♔xf5 ♕h7+ is not good, but nor is he saved after either 57.♔f3 g4# or 57.♕xf5 ♕g3+ 58.♔h5 ♕h4#.

512

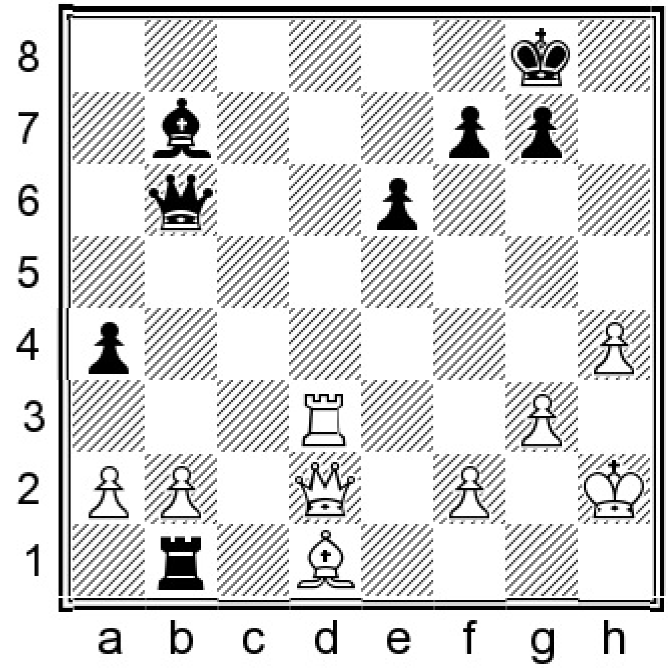


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

512 **31.♖xh7+!** 1-0 Tseshkovsky-Kuligin, Russia tt 2006; again, queen and bishop demonstrate their fearsome attacking strength. Mate cannot be avoided: 31...♖xh7 32.♖xh7+ ♔xh7 33.♕h4+ ♔g8 (33...♔g7 34.♕h6+) 34.♗e6+ ♔f8 35.♕h8+ ♔e7 36.♕h7+.

513

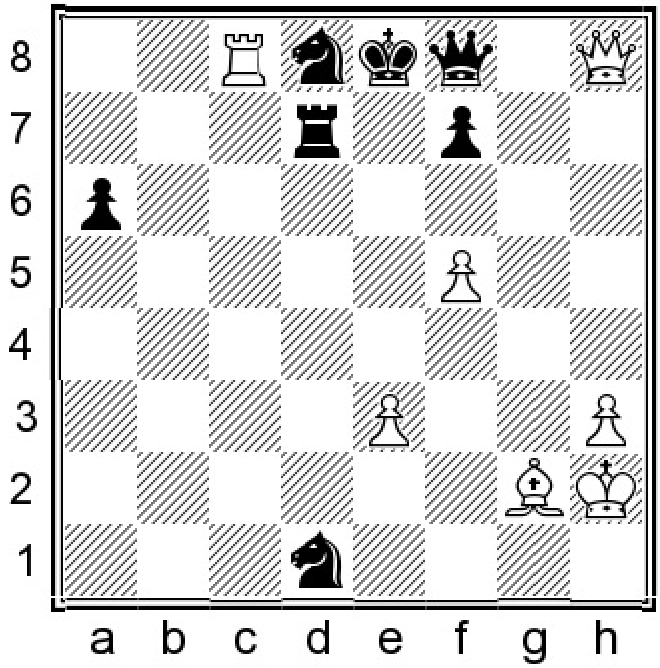


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

513 **35...♖xd1! 36.♕xd1 ♕xf2+ 37.♔h3 ♗g2+** Bruzon Batista-Ivanchuk, Havana 2007; White resigned because of 38.♔g4 ♕f5# or 38.♔h2 ♗f3+.

514

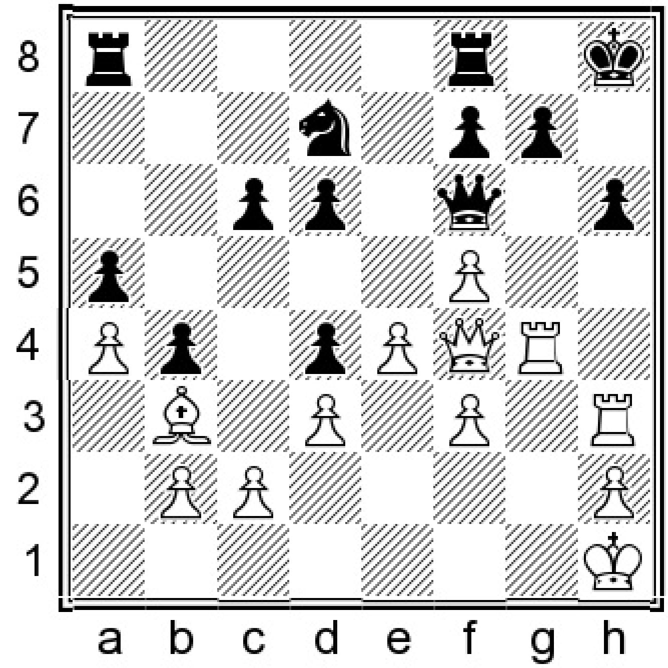


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

514 **49.♖xd8+! ♖xd8 50.♗c6+ ♖d7** 50...♔e7 51.♕e5#. **51.♗xd7+ ♔e7 52.f6+** 1-0 Stopa-Maiorov, Pardubice 2007.

515

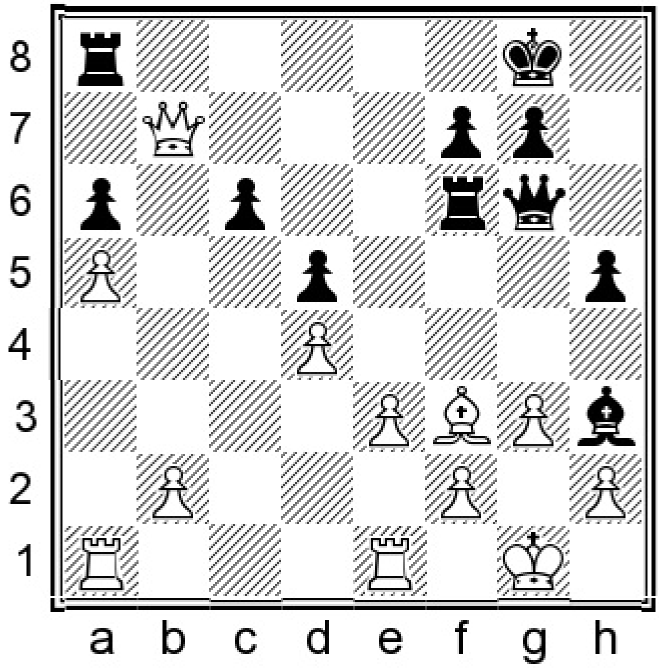


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

515 **24.♖g6!** Rodriguez Vila-Soto Vega, Callao 2007; Black resigned because of 24...fxg6 (the same reply follows 24...♕e5) 25.♖xh6+ gxh6 26.♕xh6#.

516

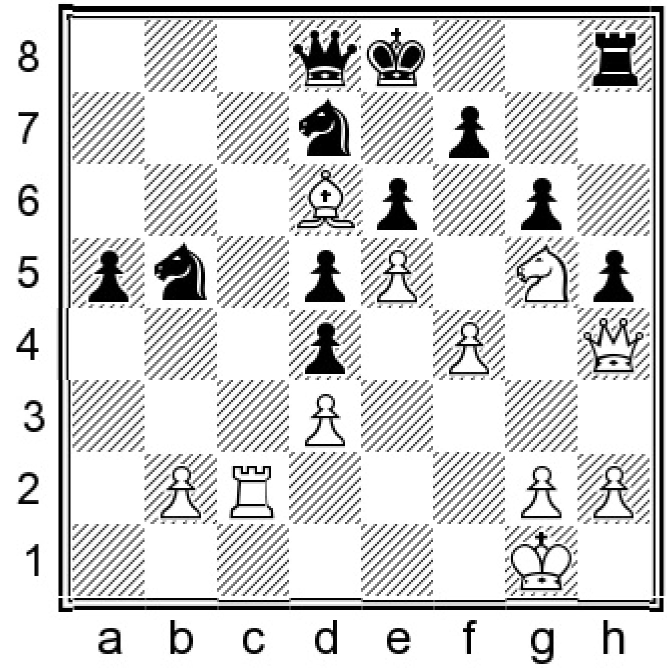


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

516 Here the strength of the pressure on the f-file decides: **25...♕f5!** 0-1 Hernandez Carmenates-Eljanov, Spain tt 2008; of course, the rook can be taken with check, but this turns out to be White's last triumph, because the bishop cannot move.

517

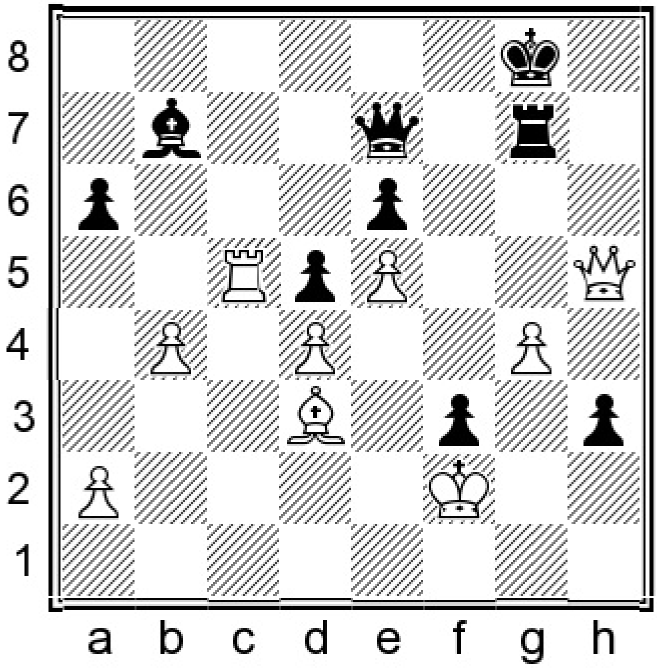

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h

White to play

Show/Hide Solution

517 **24.♘xe6!!** Belov-Bareev, Serpukhov 2008; a classic sacrifice! Black resigned because of 24...♕xh4 25.♖c8+ or 24...fxe6 25.♖c8! ♕xc8 26.♕e7#.

518

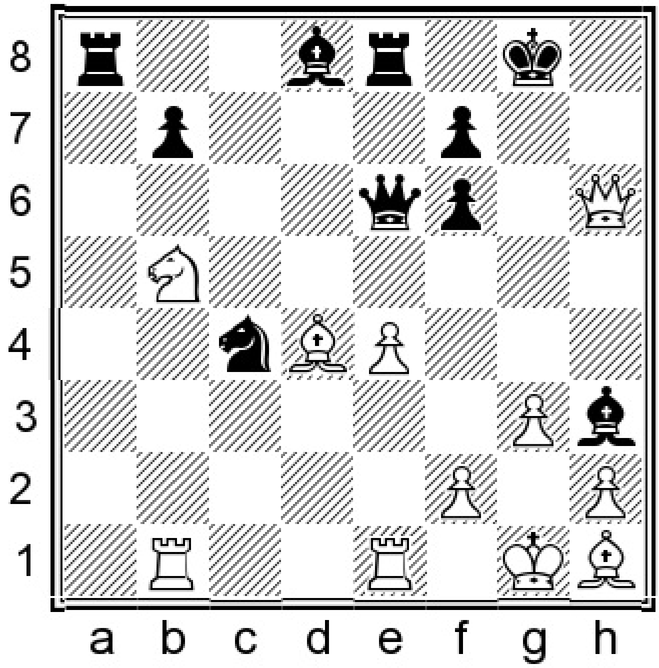

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h

White to play

Show/Hide Solution

518 **37.♖c7!** 1-0 Friedel-Shabalov, Boca Raton Ach 2008; Black resigned, in view of the variations 37...♕xc7 38.♕e8# and 37...♕f8 38.♗h7+ ♔h8 39.♗f5+ ♔g8 40.♗xe6+.

519

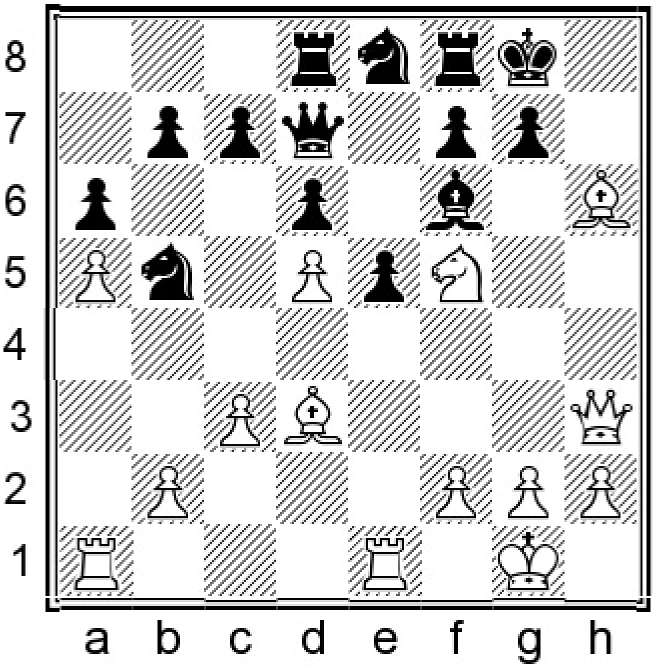


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

519 **30.♘c7! ♗xc7 31.♗xf6 ♕xf6 32.♕xf6** and White won in Bischoff-Saw, Queenstown 2009.

520

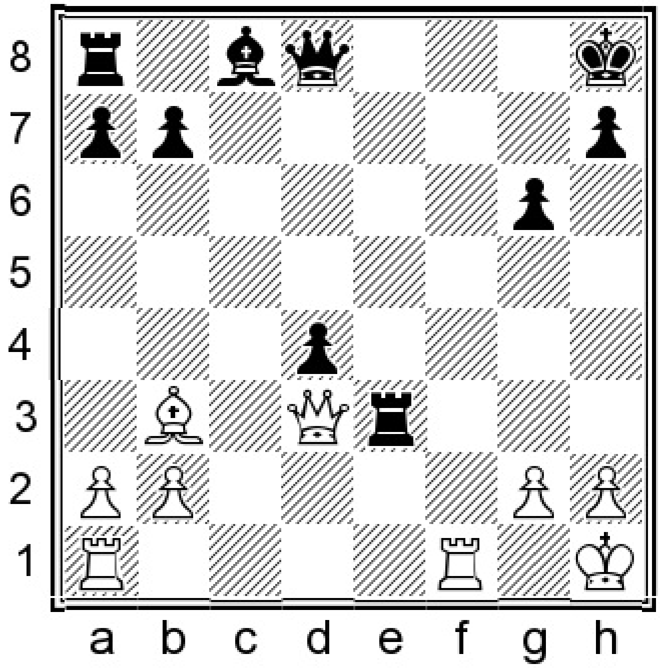


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

520 **22.♗xg7!** 1-0 Bauer-Marcelin, France tt 2009; however he takes the bishop, White mates by 23.♘e7+ and 24.♕h7#.

521

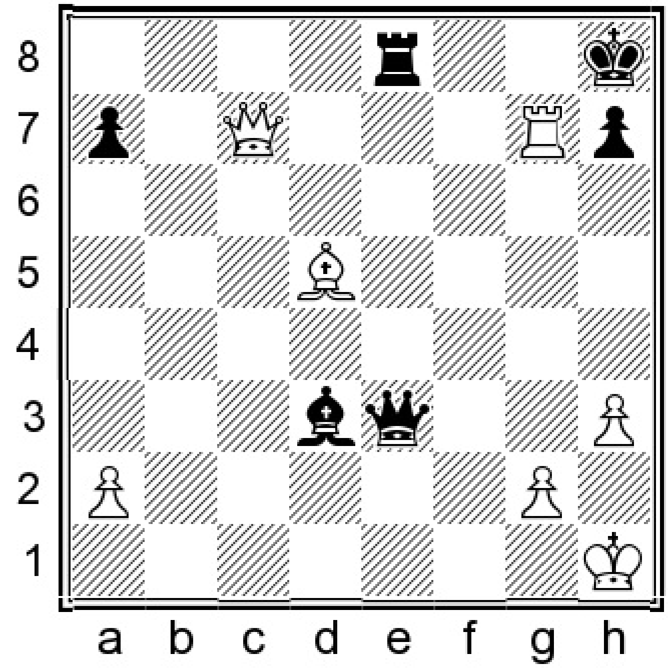


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

521 **23.♖f8+! ♔g7** 23...♕xf8 24.♕xd4+ ♕g7 25.♕d8+. **24.♖g8+!** Motylev-Shirov, Poikovsky 2009; the point. Black resigned, because of 24...♔h6 (24...♕xg8 25.♕xd4+) 25.♕xe3+ dxe3 26.♖xd8.

522

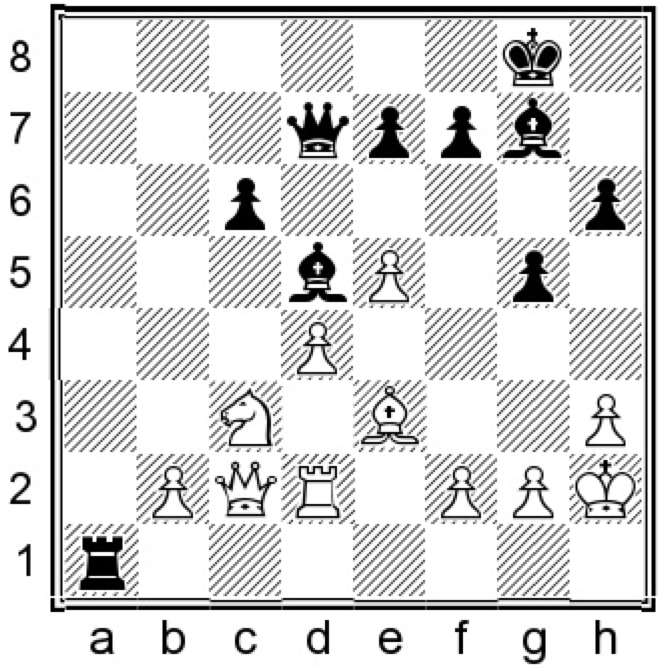


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

522 **27.♖g8+!** Thesing-Sarbok, Germany Bundesliga 2009/10; the variation 27...♖xg8 28.♕c3+ ♖g7 29.♕c8+ leads to mate, so Black resigned.

523

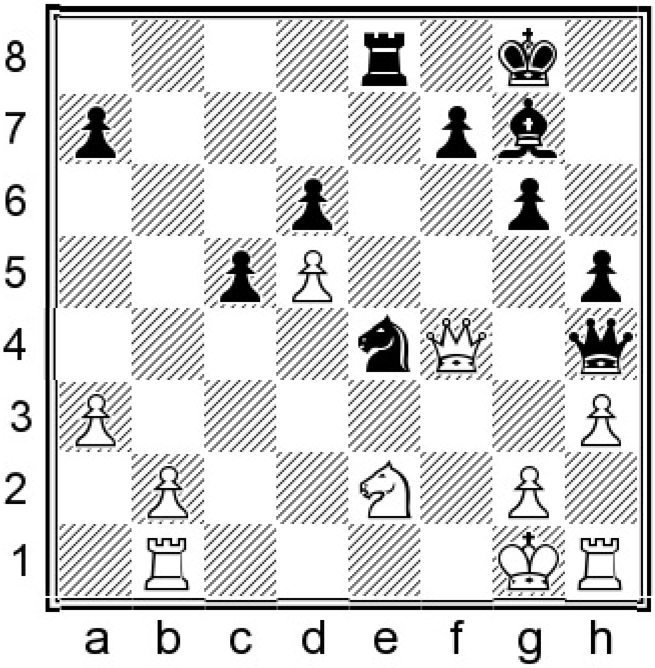


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

523 **34...♖h1+! 35.♔g3 ♗xg2!** 0-1 Zhao Xue-Cmilyte, Russia tt W 2010.

524

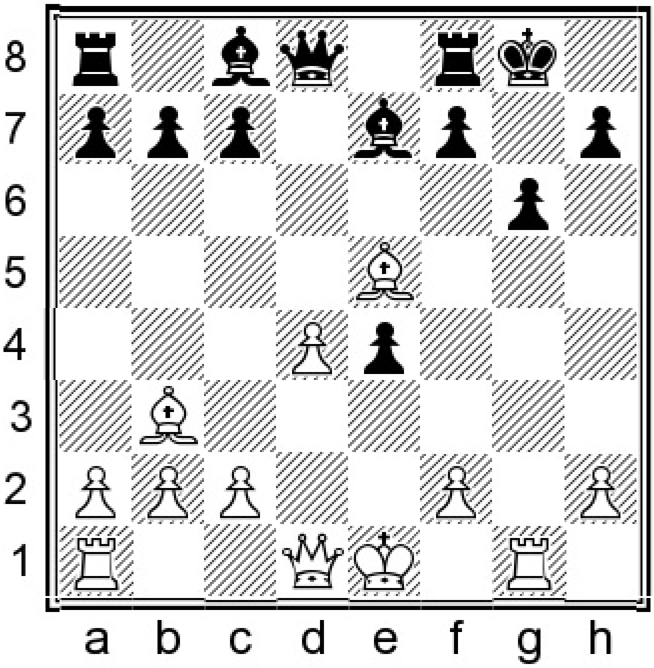


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

524 **31...♗d4+!** Nikolov-Chatalbashev, Blagoevgrad ch-BUL 2010; White resigned, in view of 32.♔f1 (32.♘xd4 ♕xf4) 32...♘d2+ 33.♕xd2 ♕f2#.

525

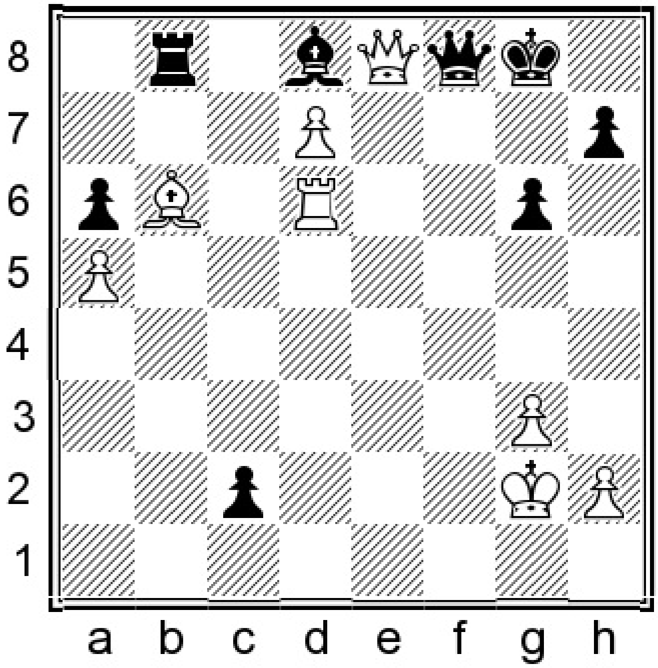


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

525 **14.♕h5!** Perunovic-Govedarica, Kragujevac ch-SRB 2010; Black resigned, calculating 14...♗d6 (f6) 15.♖xg6+! hxg6 16.♕xg6+.

526

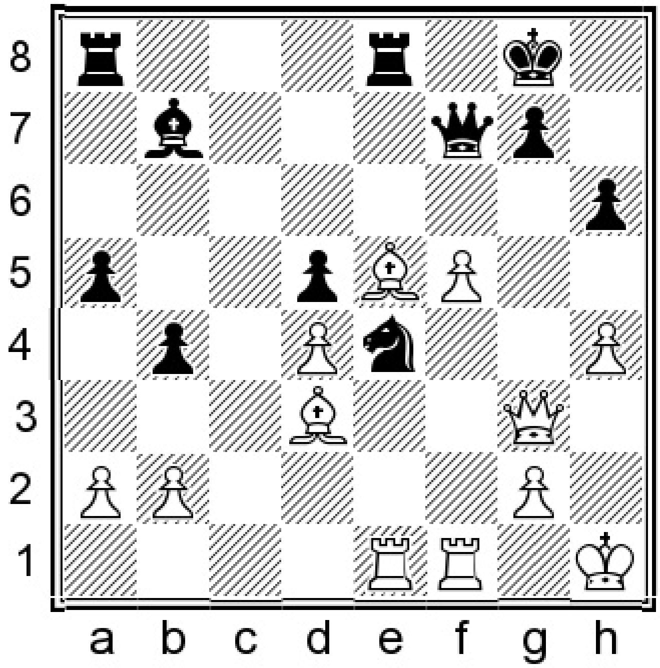

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h

White to play

Show/Hide Solution

526 **44.♗d4!** 1-0 Harikrishna-Shabalov, Philadelphia 2010; 44...c1=♕ 45.♖xg6+.

527

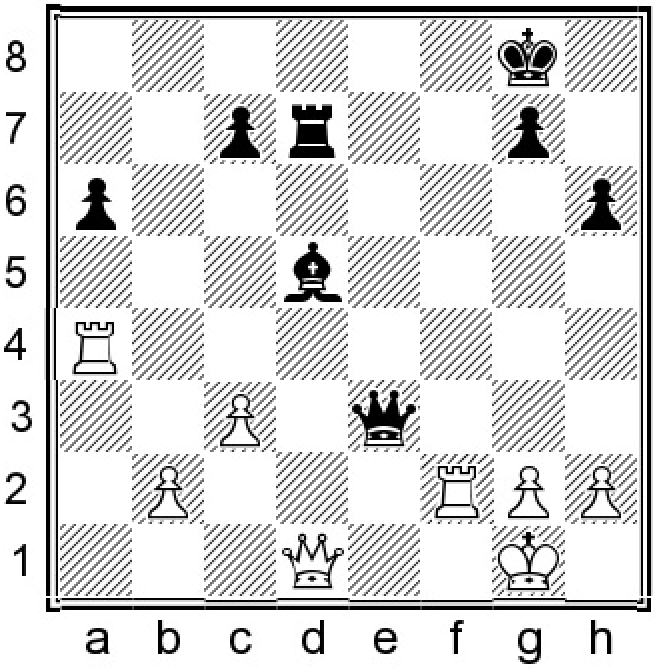


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

527 **27.♖xe4!** 1-0 T.Taylor-Liou Yian, Los Angeles 2010; 27...dxe4 28.♗c4!.

528

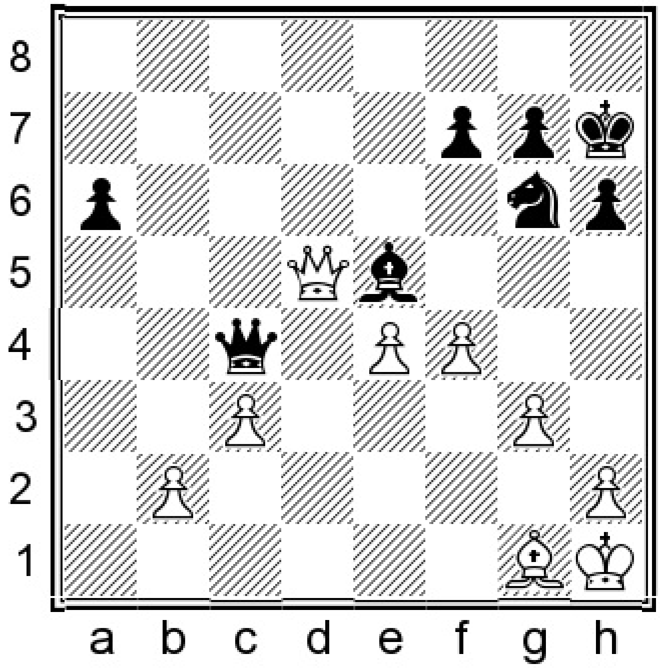


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

528 **28...♗c4! 29.♕f3** The rook cannot be taken: 29.♕xd7 ♕e1+, whilst after 29.♕b1 (a1) there is the decisive 29...♖f7. **29...♕c1+! 30.♖f1 ♗xf1 31.♕a8+** Or 31.♕xf1 ♖d1. **31...♔h7 32.♕e4+ g6** 0-1 Balogh-Kapnisis, Greece tt 2010.

529

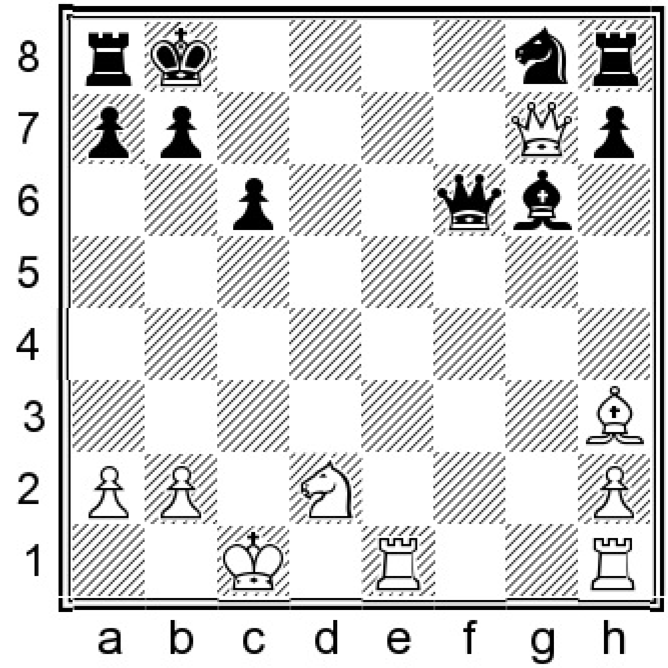


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

529 **29...♕e2! 30.h3 ♕f3+ 31.♔h2 ♘xf4!** 0-1 Kovchan-L.Meier, Copenhagen 2010; whichever piece Black takes, it is mate next move.

530



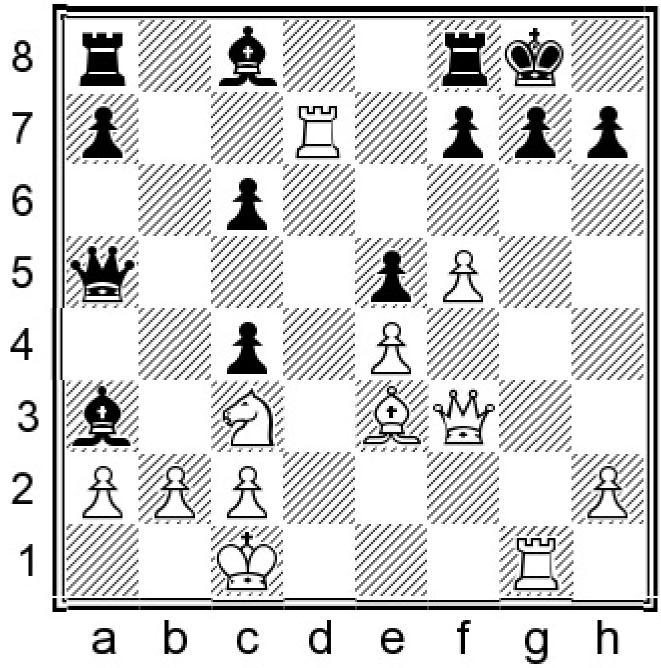
White to play

Show/Hide Solution

530 The winning line is **20.♖e8+! ♗xe8 21.♕g3+**,

but at the board there followed 20.♕d7?!, and only after 20...♕f8? did White find the idea: 21.♖e8+!, and Black resigned in Fressinet-Malaniuk, Bastia 2010.

531

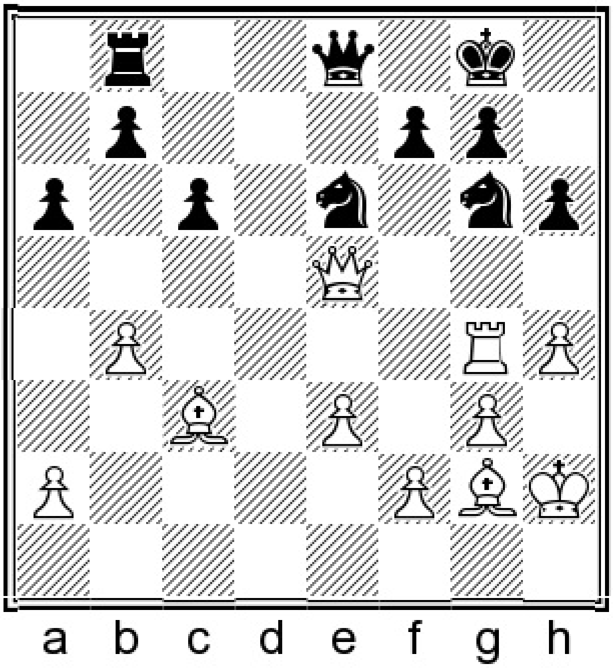


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

531 **19.♖xg7+! ♔xg7 20.♕g3+ ♔h8 21.♗g5!** Vaibhav-Venkatesh, New Delhi 2010; Black resigned: there is no defence against the threat of ♗f6+ (21...f6 22.♗xf6+; 21...♗xb2+ 22.♔d1).

532

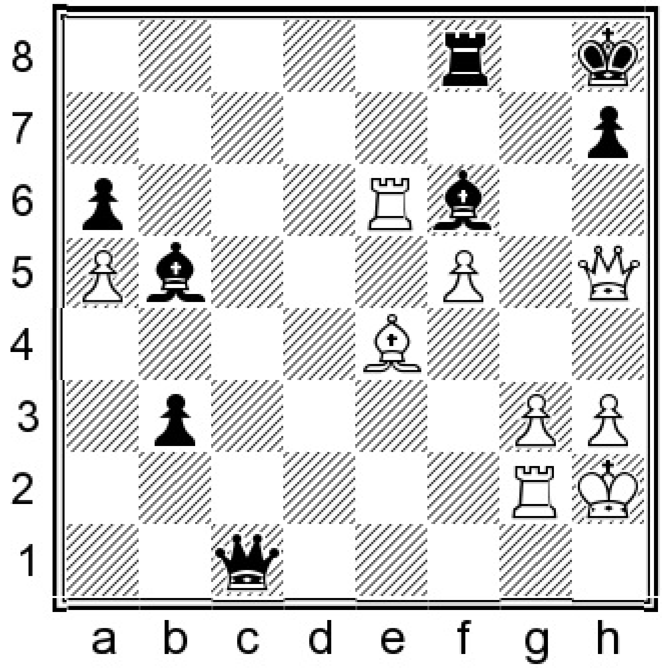


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

532 **38.♖xg6! fxg6 39.♗h3 ♕f8** 39...♔f7 40.♗xe6+ ♕xe6 41.♕xb8. **40.♕xe6+ ♔h7 41.♔g2**, and White won in Ernst-Lobzhanidze, Groningen 2010.

533

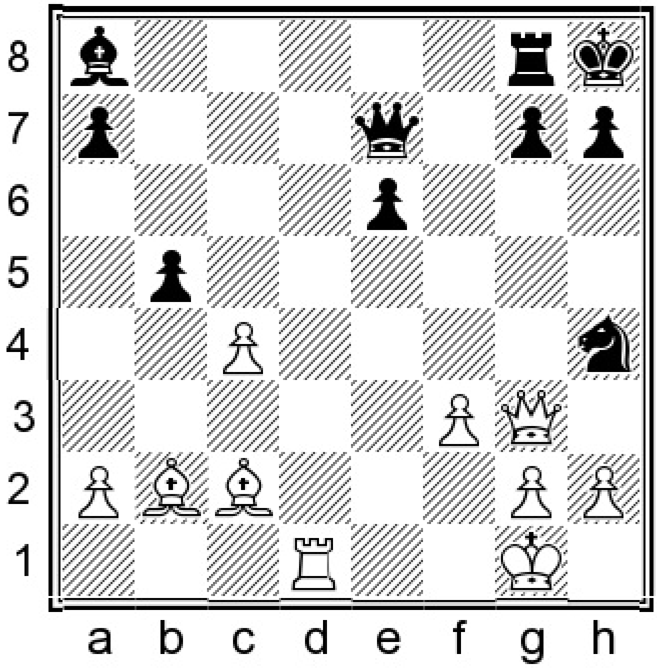

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h

White to play

Show/Hide Solution

533 **42.♖e7! ♗xe7 43.f6** 1-0 Morales Araujo-Barrantes Munoz, Seville 2011.

534

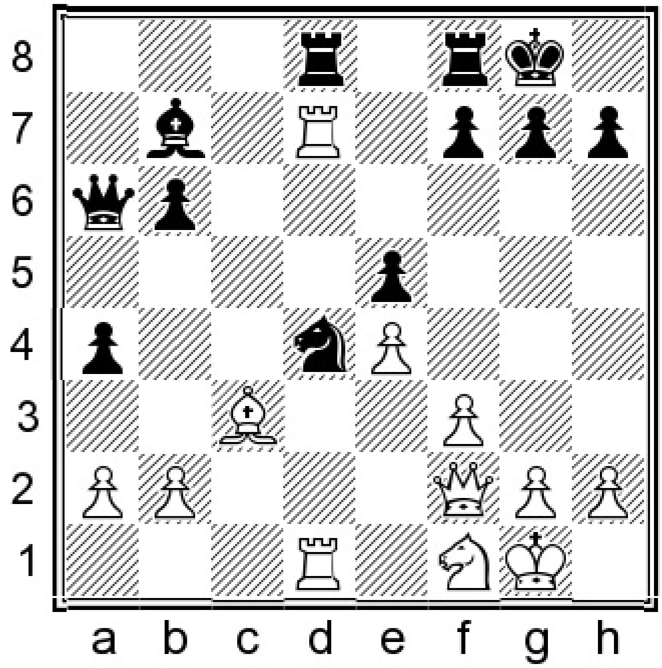


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

534 **31.♖d7!** Mecking-Mareco, Campinas 2011; Black resigned: after 31...♕xd7 32.♕xh4 the mating threats cannot be met.

535

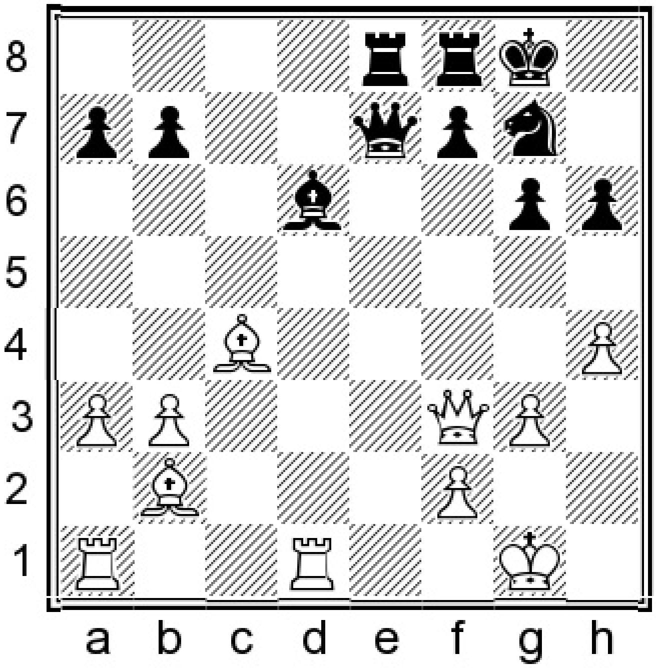


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

535 **23.♖1xd4!** 1-0 Erdös-Csiszar, Zalakaros 2011; 23...exd4 24.♕xd4, and defending against mate on g7 will cost Black a rook.

536

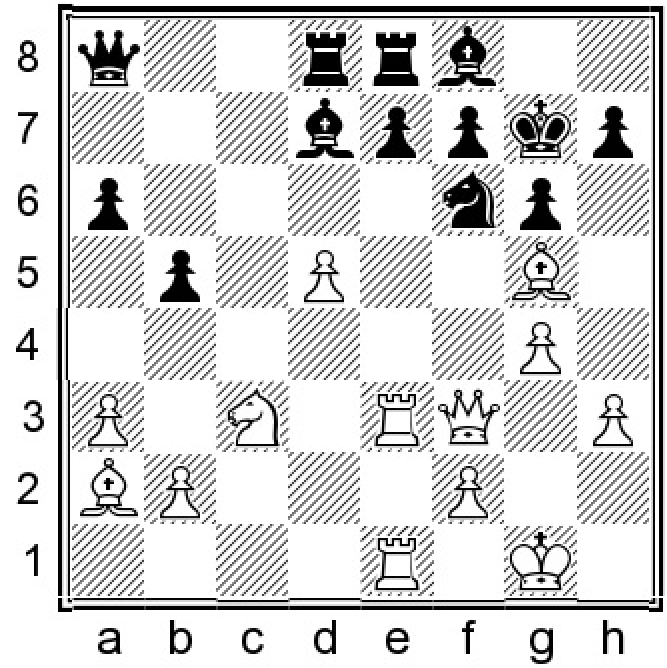


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

536 **24.♖xd6!** Damljanovic-Doric, Paracin 2011; Black resigned because of 24...♕xd6 25.♕c3, and mate can only be defended at the cost of great material loss.

537

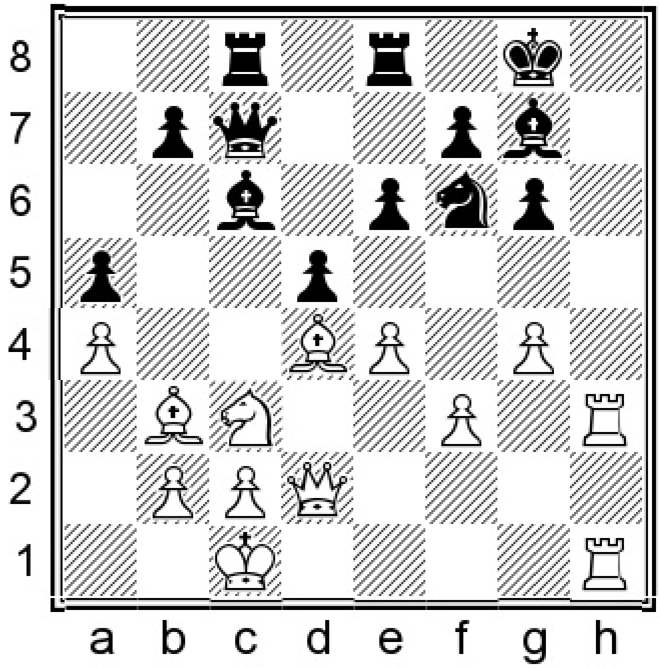


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

537 **24.♖xe7!** Nelson-Hegarty, Sheffield ch-GBR 2011; Black resigned because of 24...♗xe7 25.♖xe7 ♖xe7 26.♕xf6+ ♔g8 27.♗h6.

538

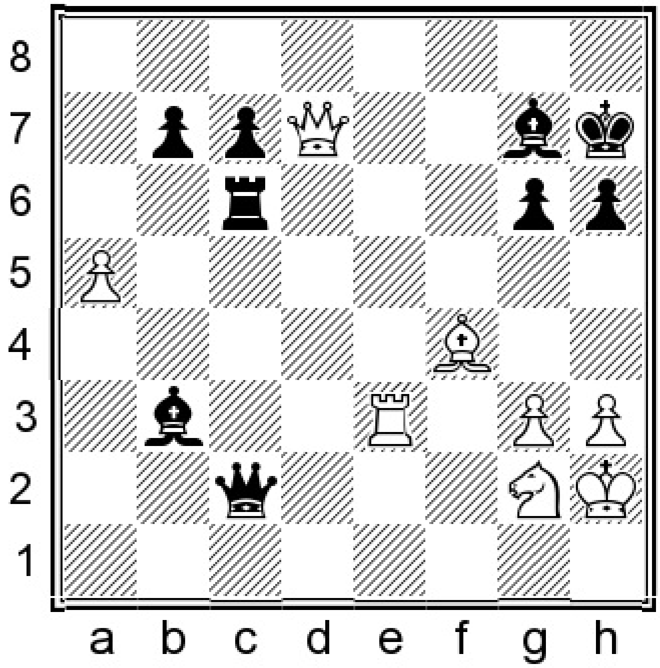


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

538 To entice the king into a mating net, sometimes one will be prepared to part with two rooks: **20.♖h8+! ♗xh8 21.♖xh8+ ♔xh8 22.♕h6+** 1-0 Lioe-Aray, Jakarta 2011.

539



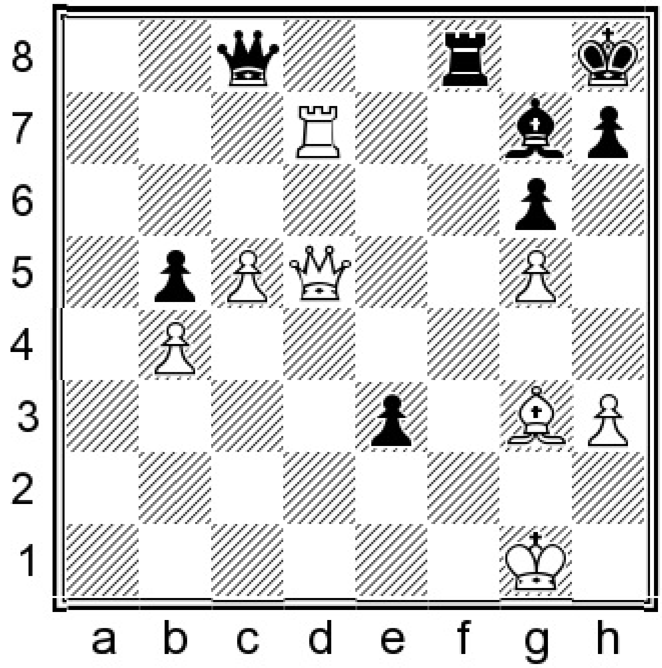
Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

539 **46...♖d6!!** Mamedov-Adhiban, Moscow 2012; not an obvious decision. White resigned because of 47.♗xd6 ♗d5.

Show in Text Mode

540

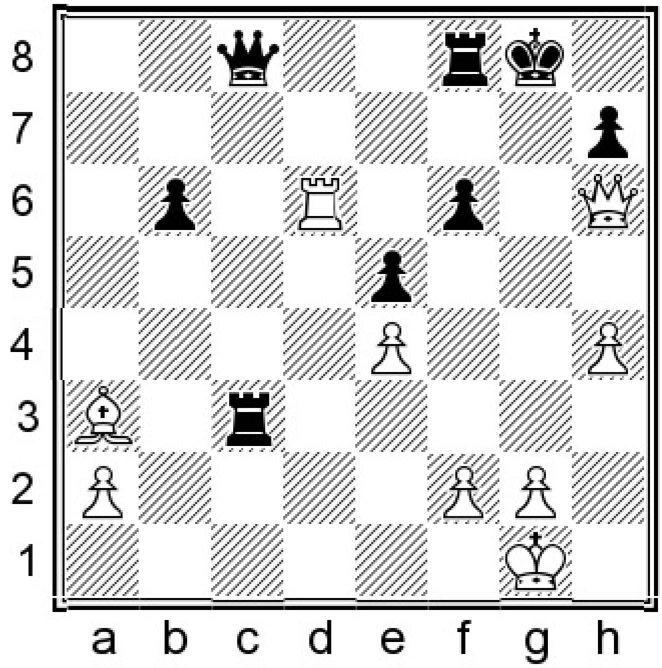


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

540 **36.♖xg7! ♕xh3 37.♖g8+!** 1-0 Ashley-Hobber, Reykjavik 2012; 37...♖xg8 38.♗e5+.

541

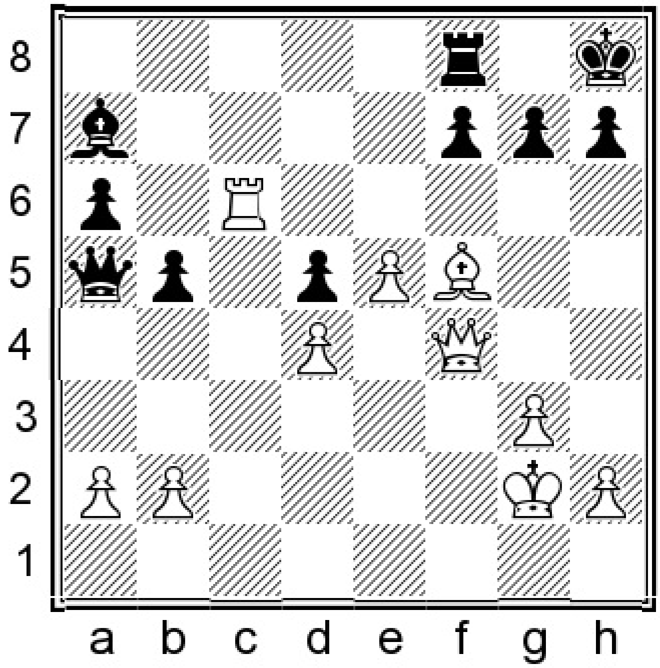

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h

White to play

Show/Hide Solution

541 **33.♖d7!** 1-0 Cordova-Papin, Havana 2012; 33...♕xd7 34.♕xf8# or 33...♖f7 34.♖xf7 ♔xf7 35.♕xh7+ ♔e6 36.♕e7#.

542

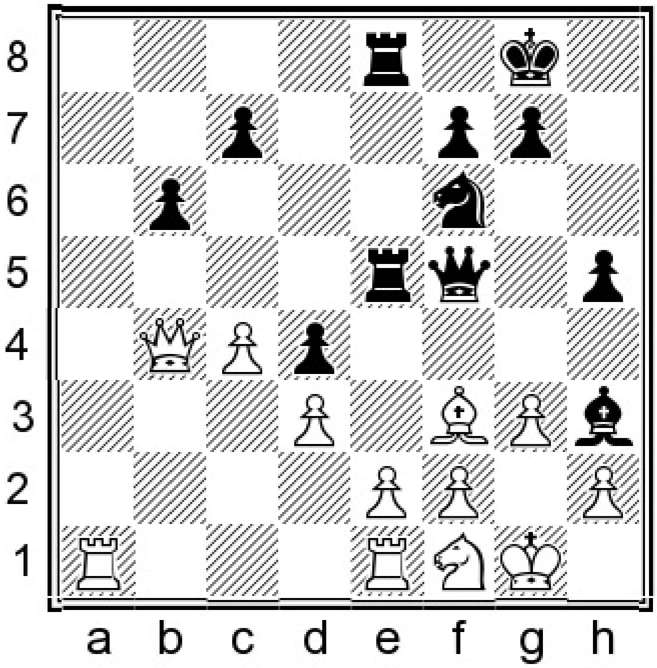


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

542 **28.♖h6! ♖d8** 28...gxh6 29.♕xh6, and there is no defence to mate – the white queen controls the d2-square. **29.♖xh7+ ♔g8 30.♕g5 g6 31.♗xg6 f6 32.♕xf6** 1-0 O’Connell-Brady, Dublin ch-IRL 2012.

543

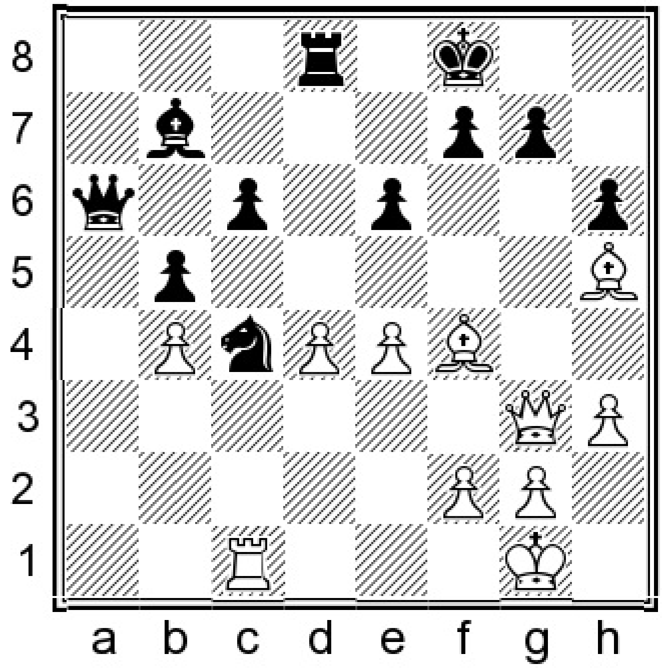

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h

Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

543 **24...♖xe2! 25.♗xe2** 25.♖xe2 ♕xf3 26.♖xe8+ ♘xe8 27.♘e3 dxe3. **25...♖xe2 26.♖xe2 ♕f3 27.♘e3 dxe3 28.fxe3 ♕xe2** 0-1 Sodholt-Efimov, Eilat tt 2012.

544

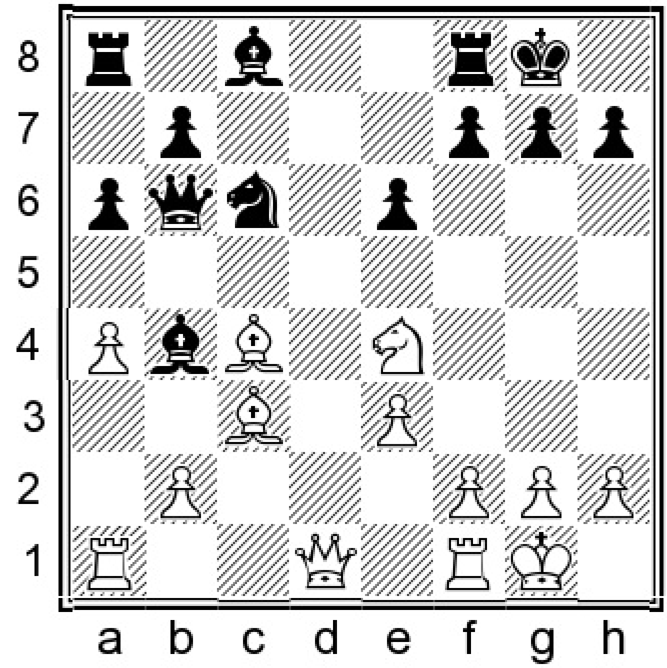


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

544 **35.♗xh6!** Killing two birds with one stone: the queen's path to c7 is cleared and at the same time, Black is deprived of the possibility of ...g7-g6. **35...gxh6 36.♕c7** B.Socko-Sa.Golubov, St Petersburg rapid 2012; Black resigned: he can only avoid mate at the cost of a whole rook.

545

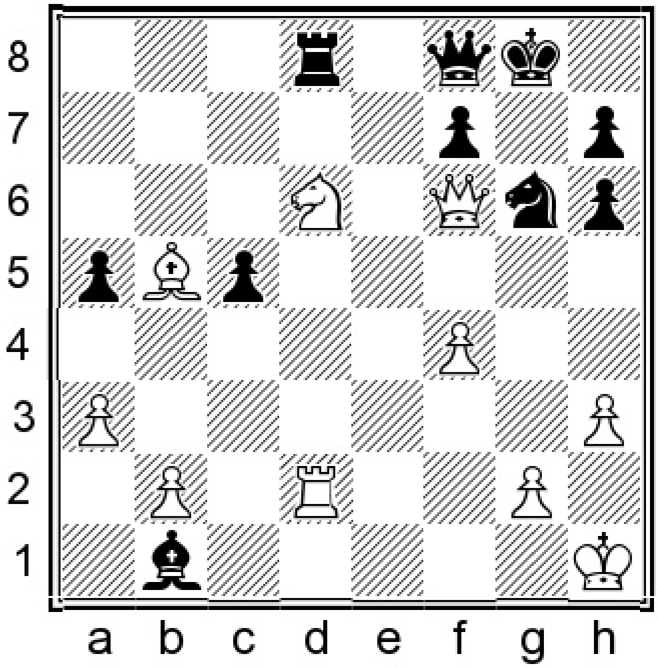


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

545 **16.♘f6+! ♔h8** 16...gxf6 17.♕g4+. **17.♕h5 h6 18.♘d7!** 1-0 Bellahcene-Repka, Maribor Wch jr 2012; 18...♗xd7 19.♕xh6+.

546

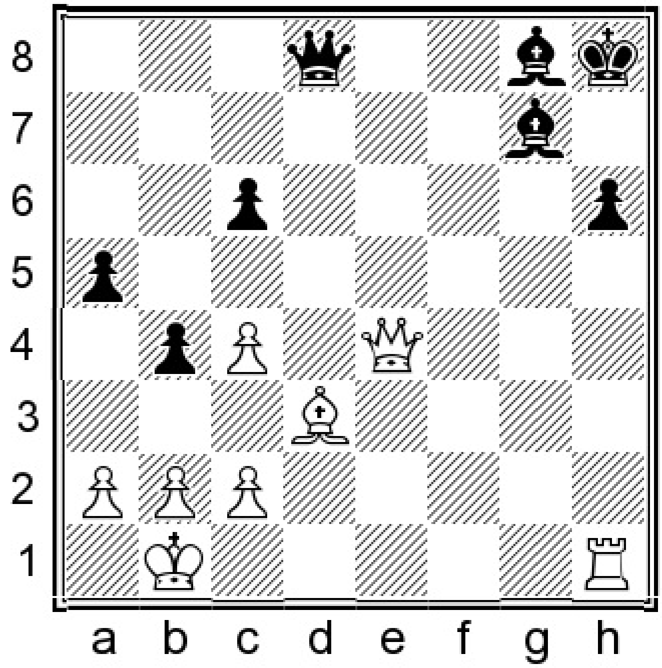

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h

White to play

Show/Hide Solution

546 **32.♘xf7!! ♖xd2 33.♘xh6+!** Stefanova-Ushenina, Khanty-Mansiysk Wch W 2012; Black resigned because of 33...♕xh6 34.♗c4+.

547

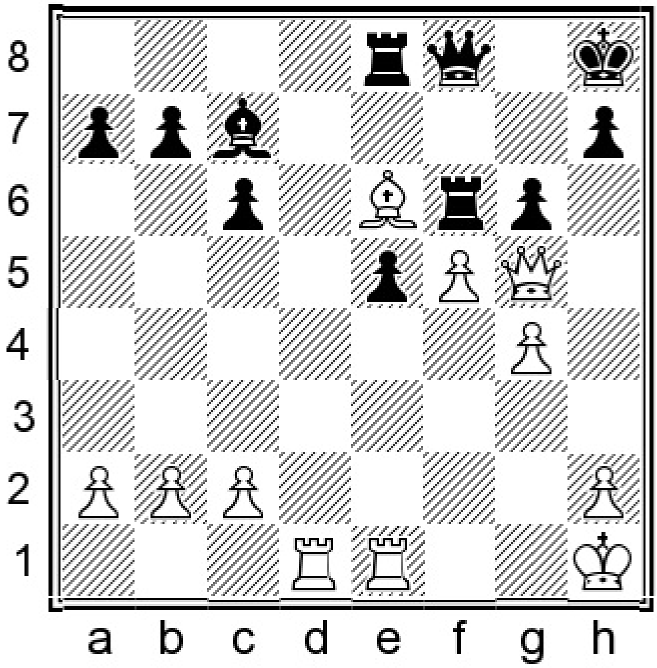


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

547 **34.♖xh6+! ♗xh6 35.♕e5+** 1-0 Karjakin-Frolyanov, Moscow rapid 2013; 35...♗g7 36.♕h5+.

548

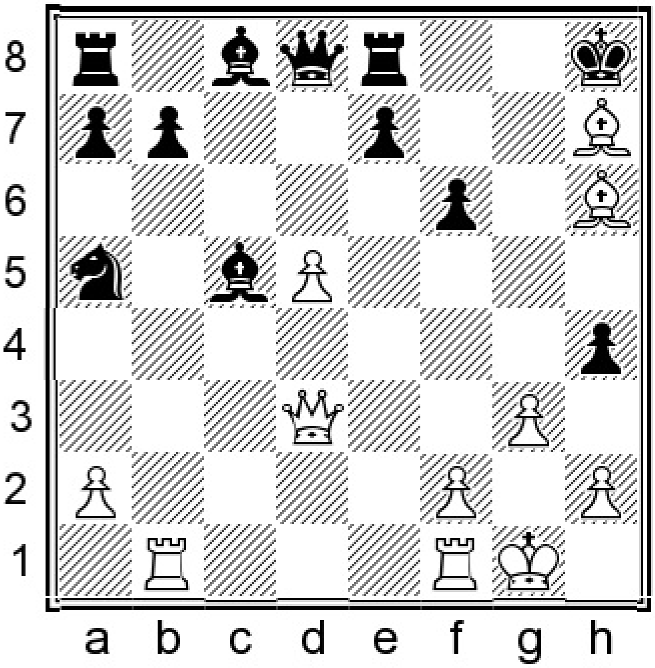

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h

Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

548 **24...♖fxe6! 25.♖d7** 25.fxe6 ♕f3+ 26.♔g1 ♗b6+. **25...♖6e7** 0-1 M.Tan-Rasulov, Rhodes tt 2013.

549

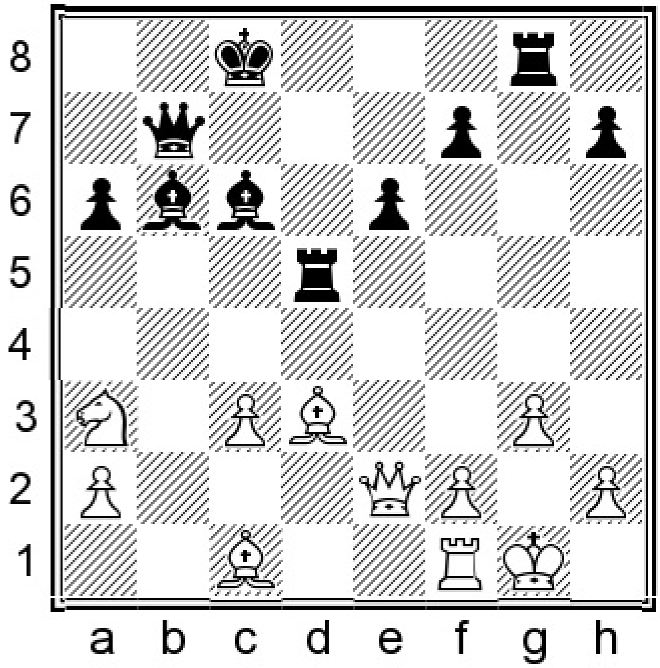


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

549 **21.♗g7+! ♔xg7 22.♕g6+ ♔h8 23.♕h6** Ma Zhonghan-Zhou Jianchao, China tt 2013; Black resigned: there is no defence against 24.♗g6+ with a quick mate.

550

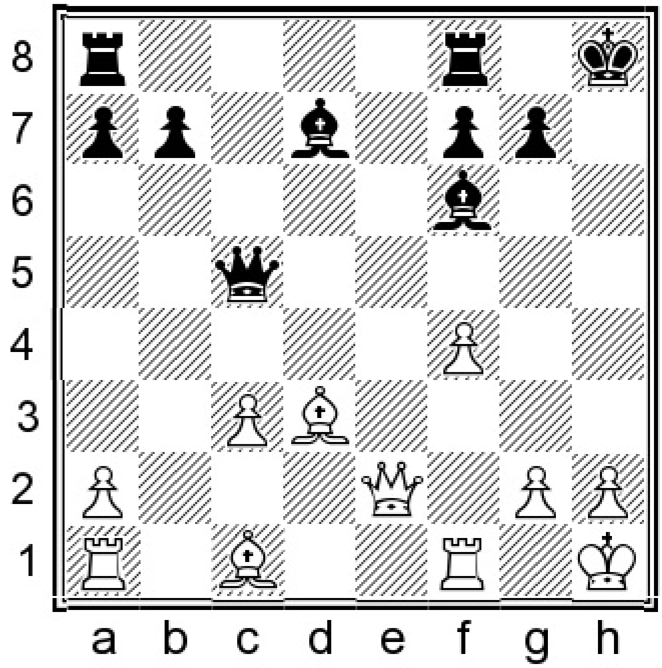


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

550 **24...♖xd3! 25.♕xd3 ♗h1!** This device is worth remembering. **26.♕c4+ ♔b8 27.♗f4+ ♔a8** 0-1 Chigaev-Artemiev, Loo ch-RUS U20 2013.

551

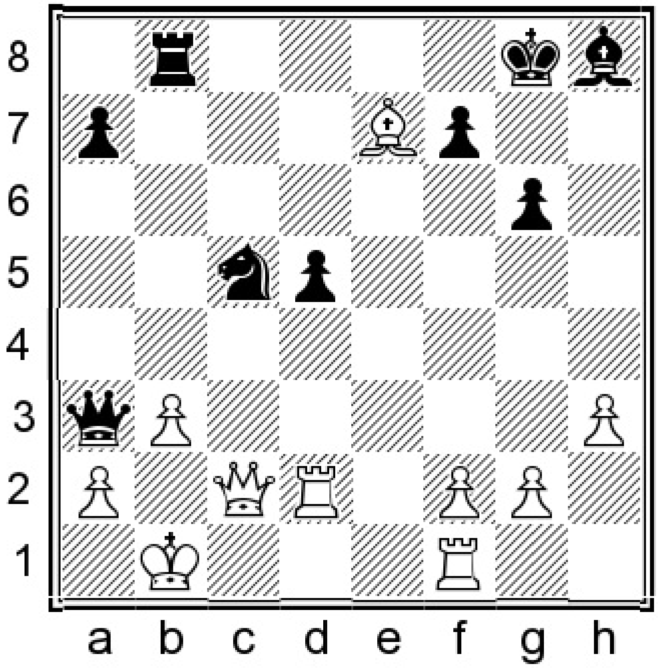


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

551 If White succeeds in displacing the enemy queen from the 5th rank, then ♕h5+ will win at once. Can he do this? **21.♗a3! ♕d5 22.c4 ♕a5 23.♗b4!** 1-0 Matikozian-Remlinger, Los Angeles 2013.

552

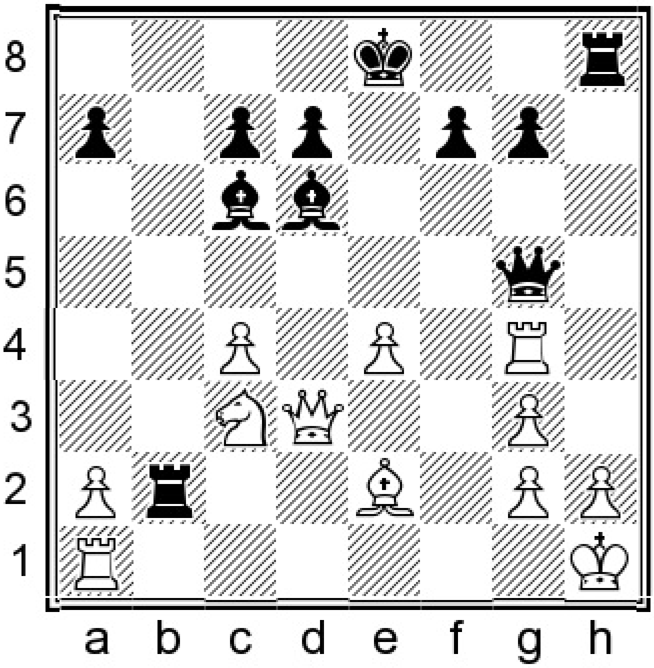


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

552 **27...♖xb3+! 28.♕xb3** He loses at once after 28.axb3 ♕a1#, but now the black knight has a unique chance: to eliminate three enemy pieces in succession! **28...♘xb3 29.♗xa3 ♘xd2+ 30.♔c2 ♘xf1**, and Black won in Kortchnoi-Navara, Prague m 2003.

553



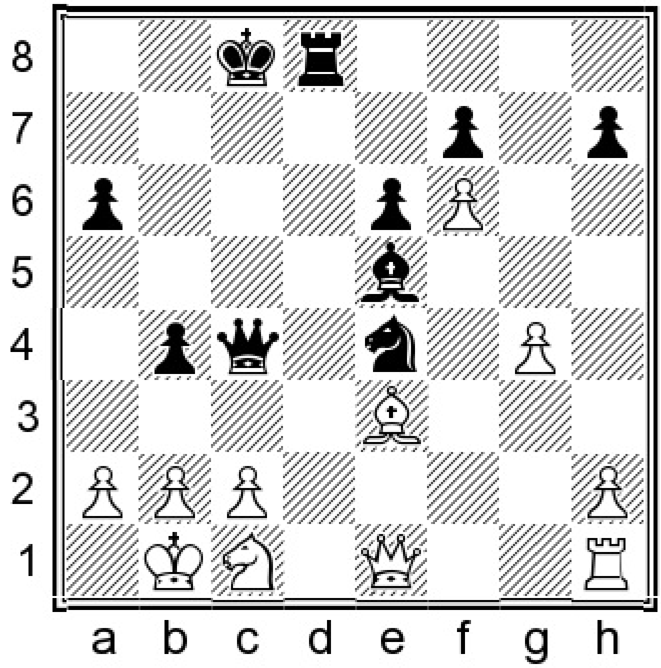
Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

553 Looking at the white position, it immediately strikes one that he misses a dark-squared bishop. Black finds a way to underline this: **20...♖xh2+! 21.♔g1** Or 21.♔xh2 ♕h5+ 22.♔g1 (22.♖h4 ♕xh4+) 22...♗c5+ 23.♔f1 ♕h1#.

21...♕c5+! Insisting on having his way: 0-1 Efimenko-Arizmendi Martinez, Gibraltar 2006.

554

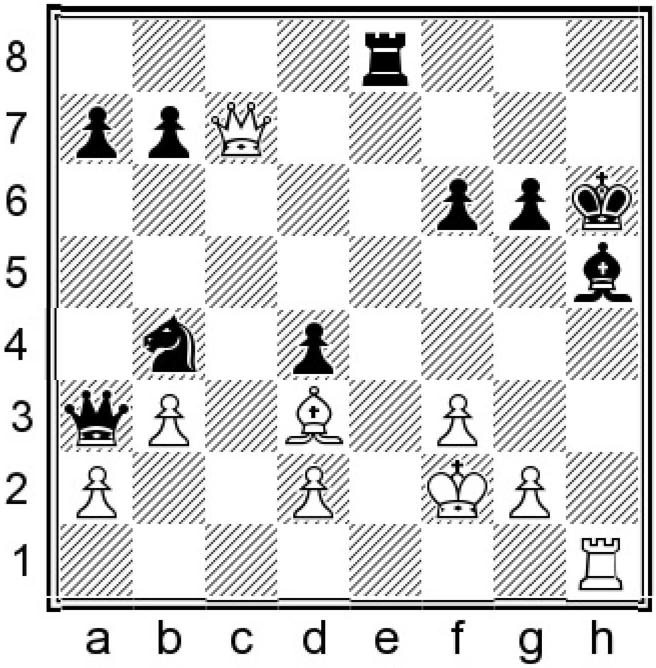


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

554 **29...♖d1! 30.♕xd1 ♘c3+! 31.bxc3 ♕xc3 32.♗d4 ♗xd4 33.♕xd4 ♕xd4**, and Black won in Gagunashvili-Margvelashvili, Tbilisi ch-GEO 2009.

555

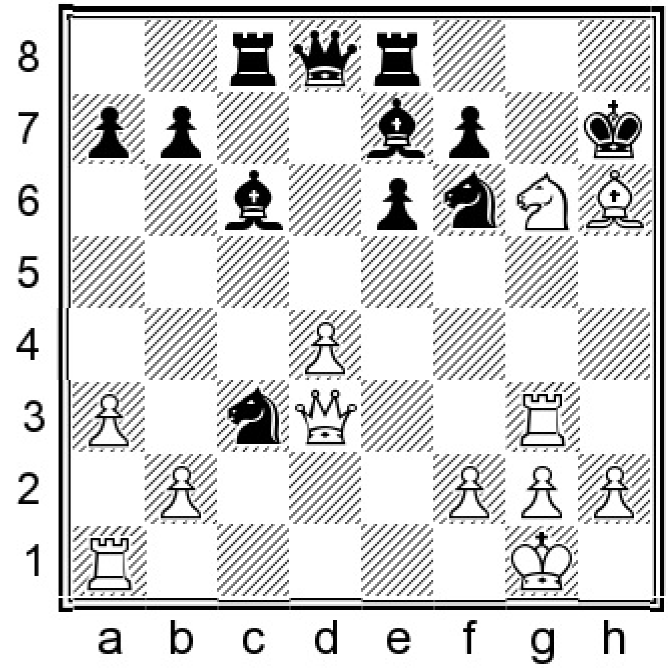


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

555 **31.♖xh5+!** 1-0 Fernandez Romero-Codenotti, Seville 2010; mate is unavoidable: 31...gxh5 32.♕h7+ ♔g5 33.♕g6+ ♔h4 34.♕xf6# or 31...♔xh5 32.♕h7+ ♔g5 33.♕xg6+ ♔f4 34.♕xf6#.

556

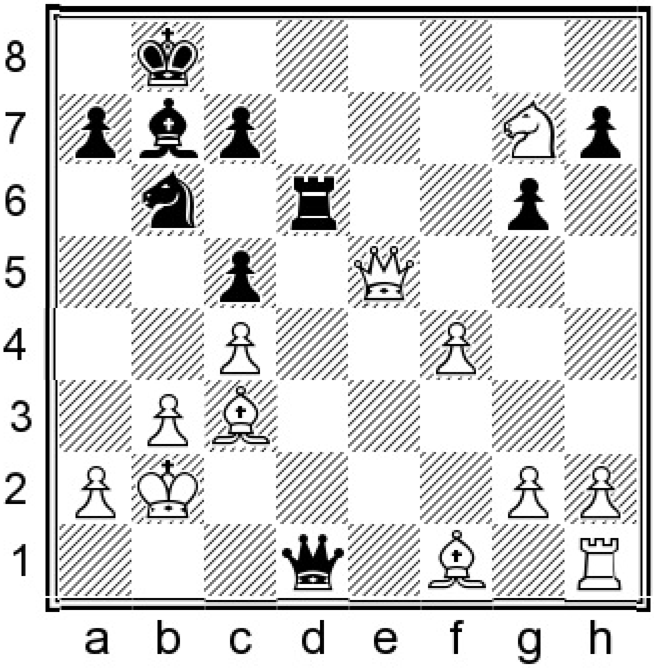


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

556 **22.♘f8+! ♔h8** If 22...♔xh6, then 23.♕e3+ ♔h5 24.♕g5#. **23.♗g7+ ♔g8 24.♗xf6+ ♔xf8 25.♖g8+!** 1-0 Yemelin-Navara, Czechia tt 2010/11; 25...♔xg8 26.♕g3+ and 27.♕g7#.

557

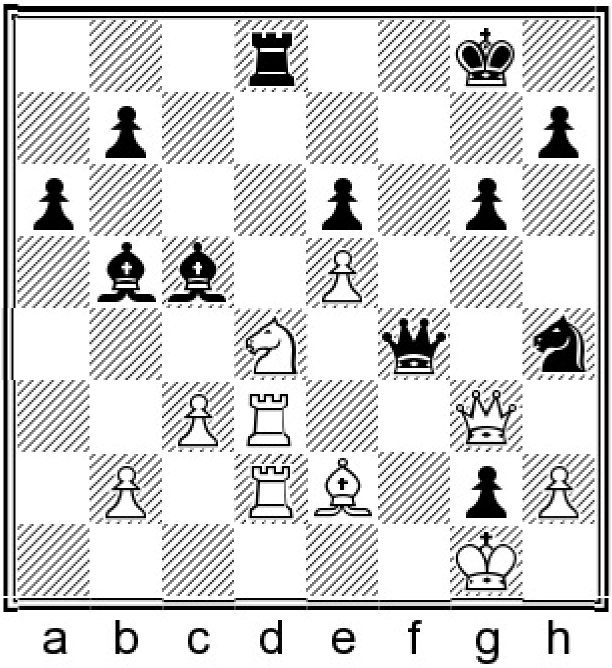


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

557 **23...♘a4+! 24.♔a3** On 24.bxa4 there is the decisive 24...♖b6+ 25.♔a3 ♗c6 with the threat of mate on a4. **24...♕c1+ 25.♗b2 ♘xb2** 0-1 Kotsur-Volokitin, Moscow 2011; 26.♕xb2 ♖a6+.

558

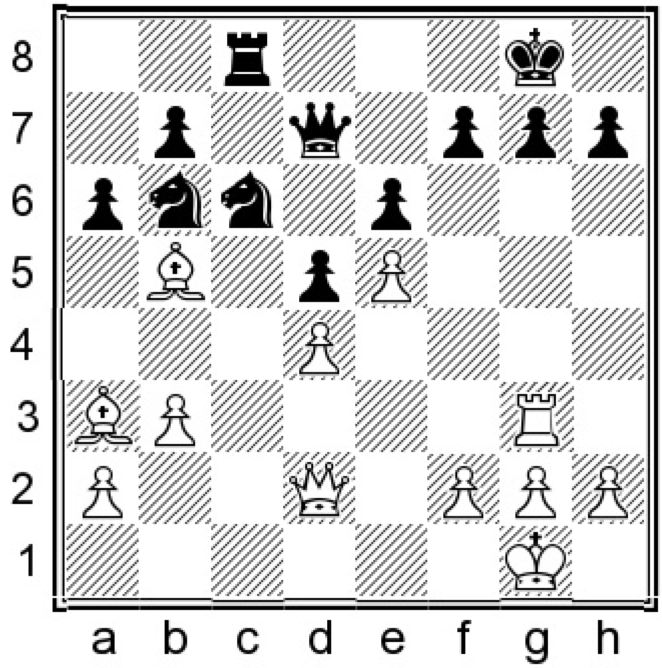


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

558 **34...♖xd4! 35.cxd4** Or 35.♖xd4 ♕f1+ 36.♗xf1 gxf1=♕#. **35...♗xd4+!** The rook must quit the diagonal after all: 0-1 Lastin-Bukavshin, Taganrog 2011.

559

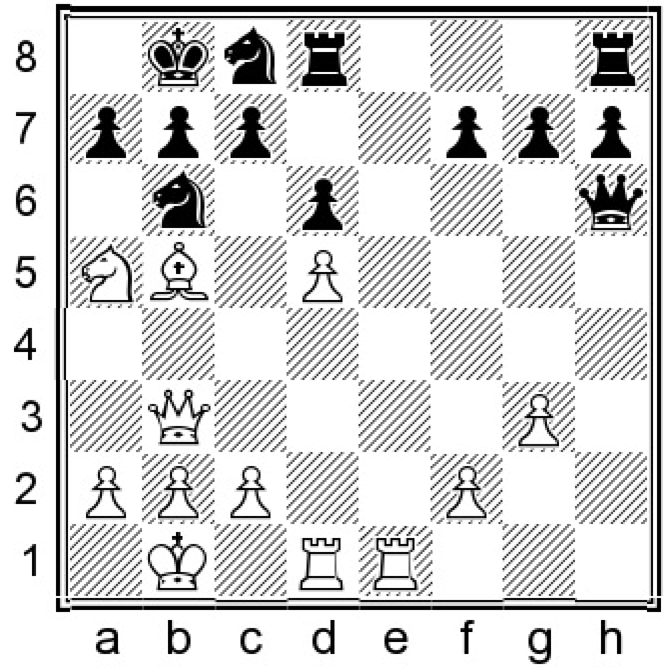


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

559 **25.♗xc6! bxc6** Other captures also lose: 25...♖xc6 26.♕h6 f5 (26...g6 27.♕f8#) 27.exf6+– or 25...♕xc6 26.♕h6 g6 27.♖h3. **26.♖xg7+! ♔xg7 27.♕g5+ ♔h8 28.♗e7!** 1-0 J.Polgar-Prohaszka, Greece tt 2011.

560

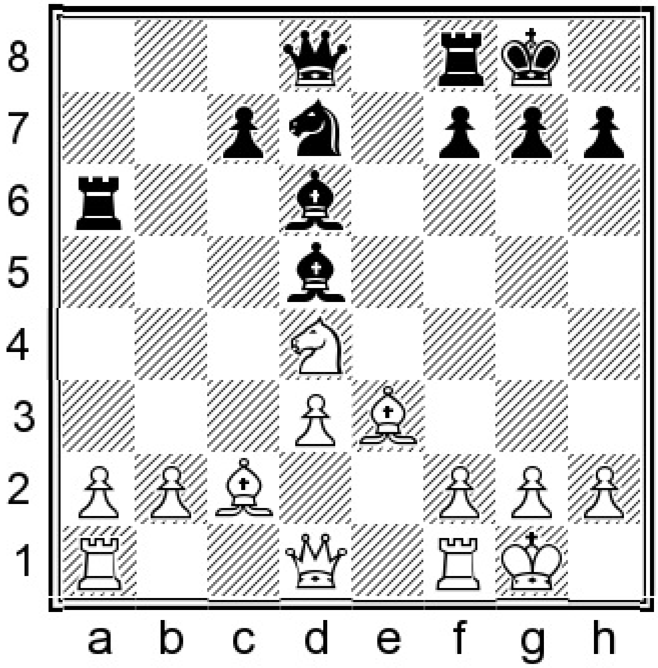


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

560 **20.♘xb7! ♔xb7 21.♗c6+ ♔b8 22.♕b5** Black’s pieces are so badly placed that the queen can take her time approaching the enemy king. **22...♘e7 23.♕a6**, and White won, Klein-Duijker, Hoogeveen 2011.

561

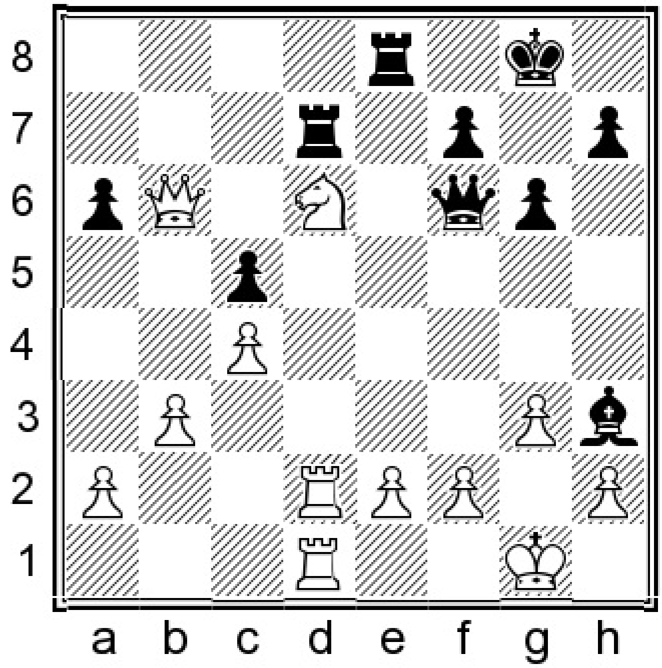


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

561 **15...♗xh2+! 16.♔xh2 ♕h4+ 17.♔g1 ♗xg2!** A classical two bishops sacrifice. **18.f4 ♖g6 19.f5 ♗f3+ 20.fxg6 ♕g3#** Solarte Quintero-Vaccca, Cali 2012.

562

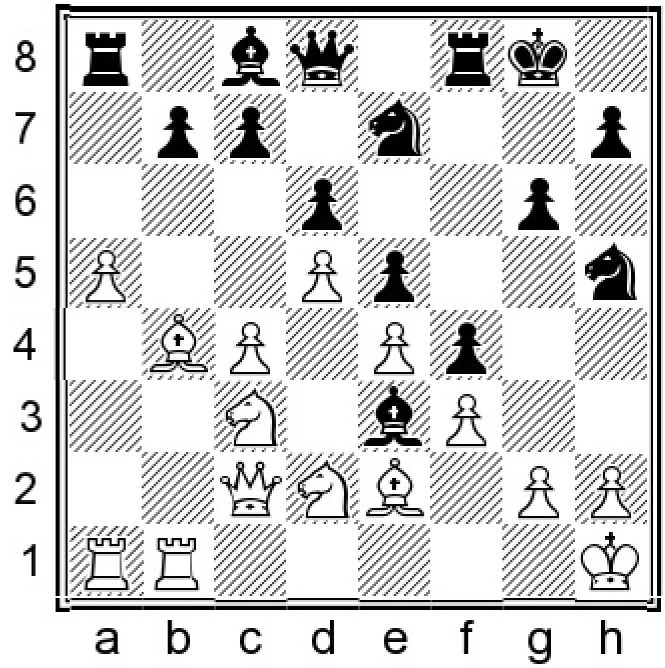


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

562 **27...♖xe2! 28.♕b8+ ♔g7 29.♖xe2 ♕f3 30.♘f5+ gxf5 31.♕e5+ ♔g6 32.♖d6+ ♔h5! 33.♖h6+ ♔xh6 34.♕e3+ ♕xe3 35.fxe3 ♖d1+** 0-1 A.Smith-Wang Jue, Reykjavik 2013.

563

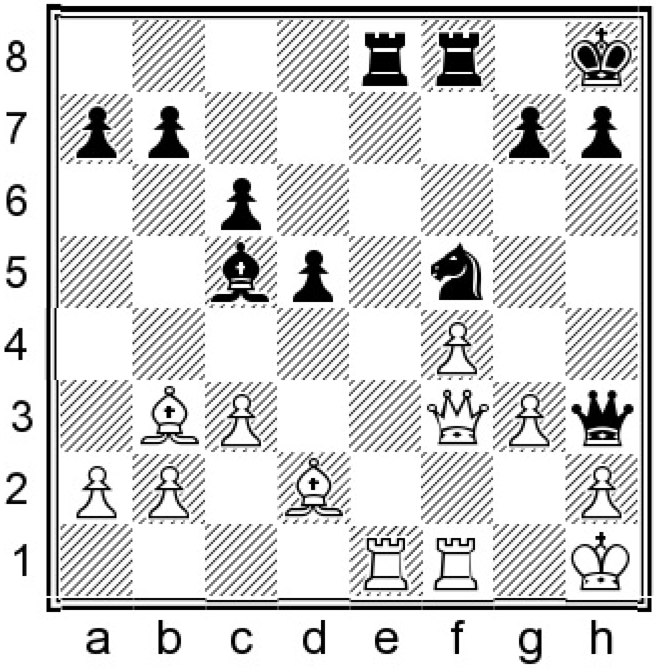


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

563 **19...♘g3+! 20.hxg3 ♘f5! 21.exf5** He also loses after 21.♘f1 ♘xg3+ 22.♘xg3 ♕h4#. **21...♕g5 22.♘f1 ♕h6+ 23.♘h2 fxg3** 0-1 Fedotov-Ozolin, Kazan 2013.

564

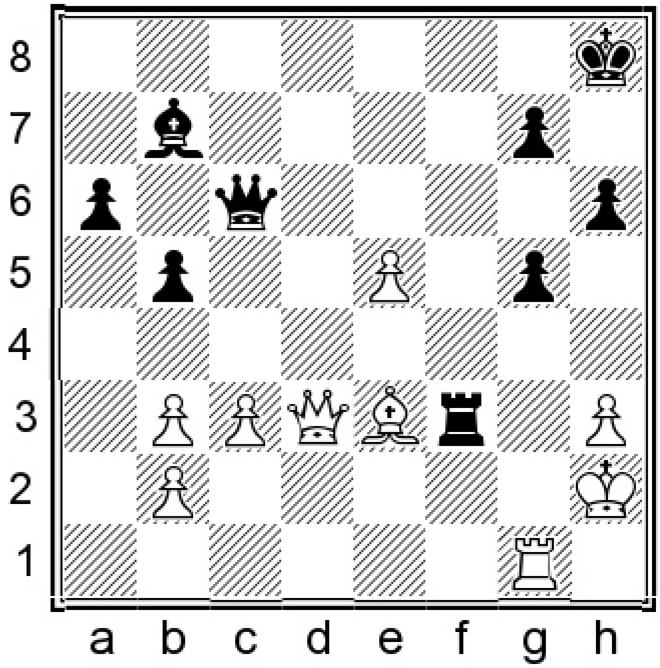


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

564 **22...♖e2!!** 0-1 Draskovic-Romanishin, Porto San Giorgio 2013; 23.♕xe2 ♘xg3# or 23.♖xe2 ♘xg3+ 24.♕xg3 ♕xf1+.

565

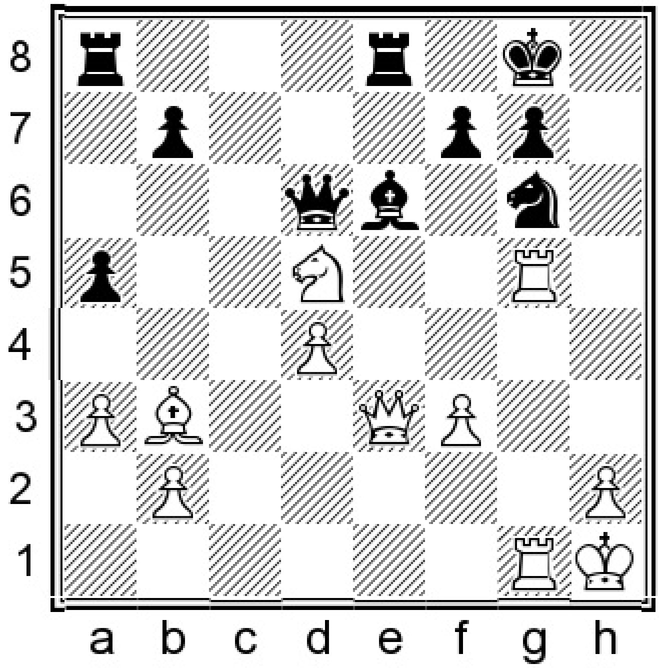


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

565 **37...♖xh3+! 38.♔xh3 ♕f3+** Felecan-Matikozian, USA tt ICC 2010; White resigned because of 39.♖g3 ♕h5# or 39.♔h2 ♕h5+ 40.♔g3 ♕h4#.

566

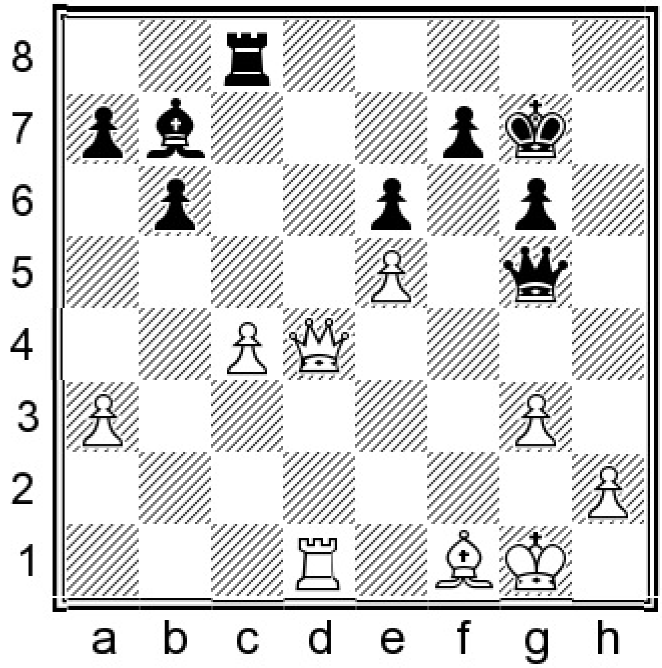


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

566 **27.♘f6+! gxf6 28.♖xg6+ fxg6** If 28...♔f8 White can take the piece: 29.♖g8+ ♔e7 30.♖xe8+ and d4-d5. **29.♕h6! ♔f7 30.♕h7+ ♔f8 31.♖xg6 ♕d7 32.♖xf6+** 1-0 Miezis-Li Zuhao, Melbourne 2013.

567

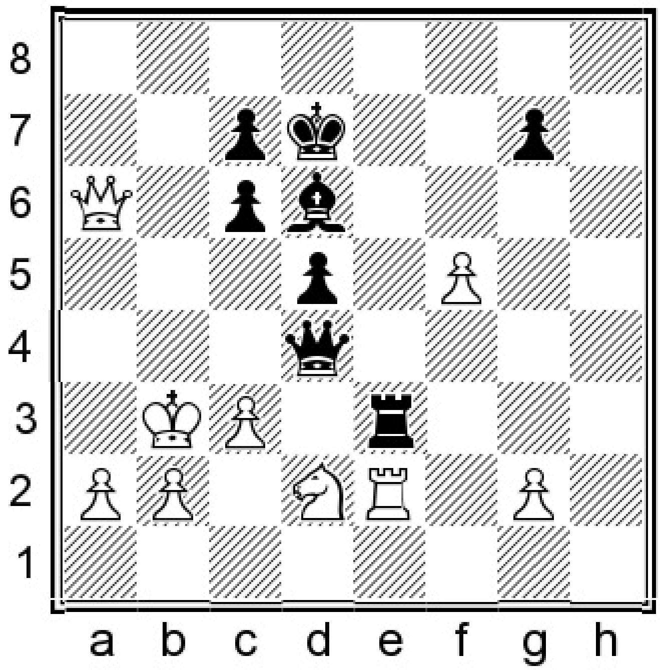

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h

Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

567 **34...♖d8! 35.♕xd8 ♕e3#** Hochstrasser-Volke, Switzerland tt 2005.

568

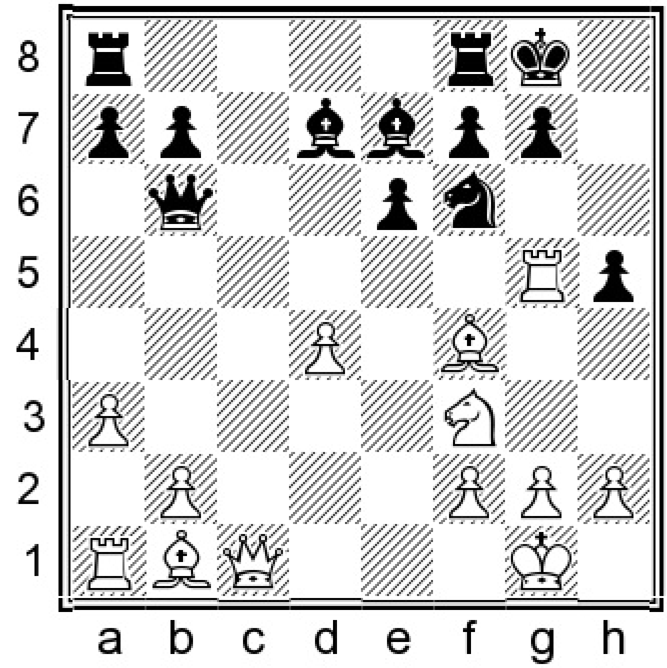


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

568 **31...♕g4!!** Z.Almasi-Winants, Calvia ol 2004; such a move is not easy to find: it transpires that the king gets mated after 32.♖xe3 ♕d1#. White resigned, because the alternative 32.♘f3 ♕c4+! is also hopeless for him, as he loses a rook.

569

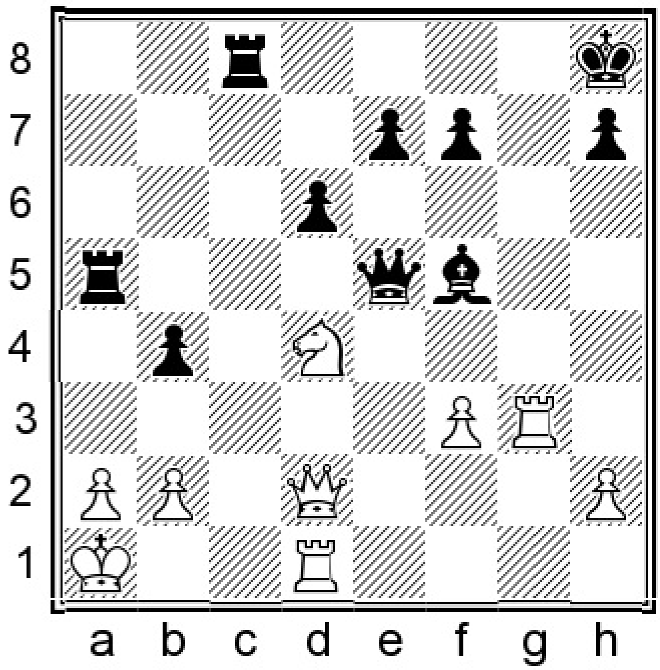


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

569 **21.♗c7!** Freeing the queen's path to g5. **21...♕c6 22.♖xg7+!** 1-0 Safarli-Lalith, New Delhi 2010; After 22...♔xg7 23.♕g5+ ♔h8 24.♗e5 Black is completely helpless, despite his material advantage. For example: 24...♖fc8 25.♗xf6+ ♗xf6 26.♕h6+! ♔g8 27.♗h7+ ♔h8 28.♗g6+ ♔g8 29.♕h7+.

570

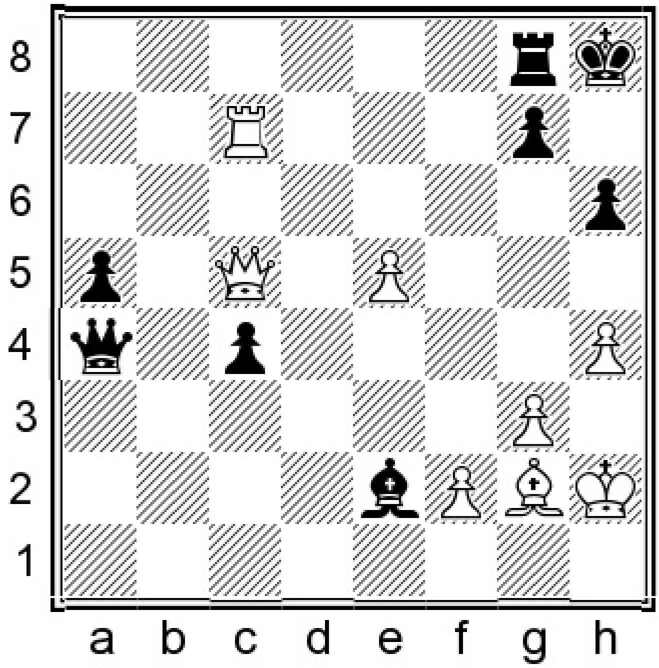


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

570 **27...♖xa2+ 28.♔xa2 ♕d5+!** Annaberdiev-Bu Xiangzhi, Khanty-Mansiysk ol 2010; forcing the blockade of b3, via which the king might escape. White resigned because of 29.♘b3 ♖a8# or 29.b3 ♕a5+ 30.♔b2 ♕a3#.

571

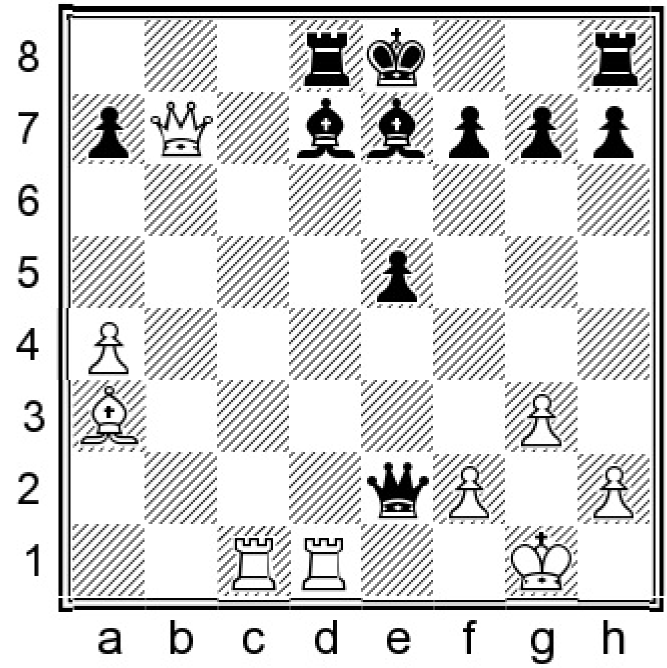


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

571 **40.♖xg7! ♔xg7** Nothing is changed by 40...♖xg7 41.♕f8+ ♔h7 42.♗e4+ ♖g6 43.♕f7+. **41.♕e7+** Cheparinov-Radulski, Panagyurishte ch-BUL 2012; Black resigned because of immediate mate (41...♔h8 42.♗e4 ♖g7 43.♕f8+ or 41...♔g6 42.♗e4+ ♔h5 43.♕f7+).

572

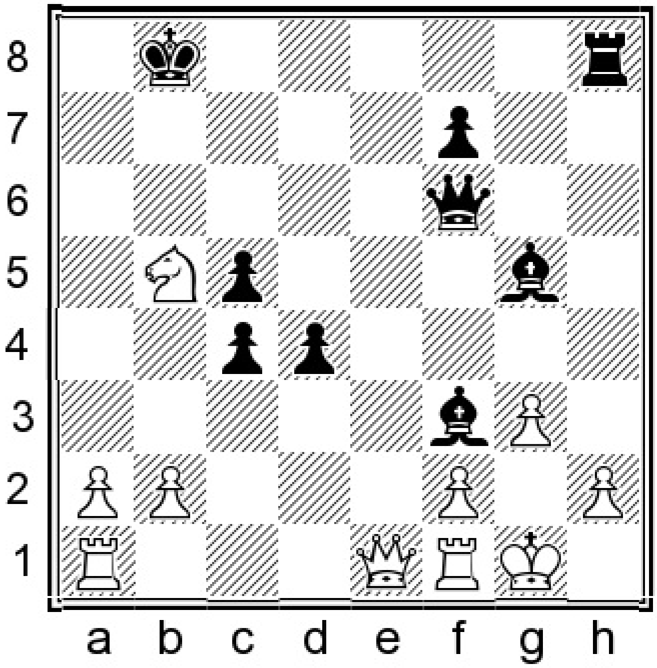


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

572 **20.♖xd7!! 0-0** Tantamount to resignation, but after 20...♖xd7 White forces mate: 21.♖c8+ ♗d8 22.♖xd8+! ♔xd8 23.♕b8#. A lovely finish! **21.♗xe7** 1-0 Wojtaszek-Esen, Chalkidiki 2000.

573



Black to play

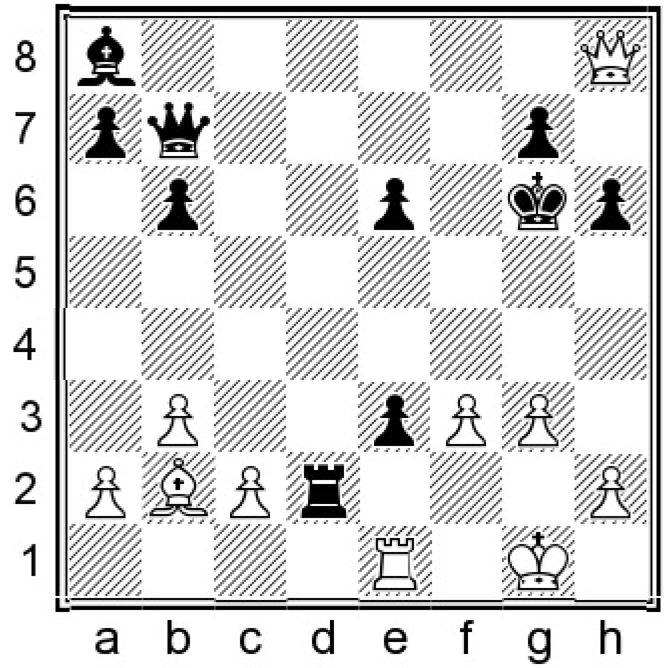
Show/Hide Solution

573 **23...♗d2!!** Zakharevich-V.Popov, Samara ch-RUS 2000; the queen must be deflected from the e-file, because 23...♖xh2? 24.♕e8+ ♔b7 25.♕d7+ ♔b6 26.♔xh2 ♕h6+ 27.♕h3 is bad.

23...♗d2!!

Now, however, White resigned, because after 24.♕xd2 ♖xh2 25.♔xh2 ♕h8+ he is mated.

574

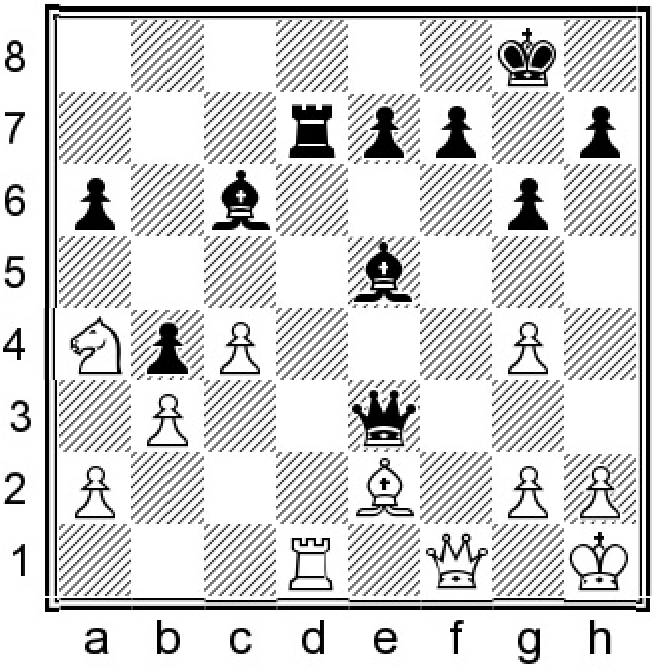


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

574 The start of the combination reminds one of the classic game Steinitz-Von Bardeleben, where a rook offered itself for capture repeatedly on the penultimate rank. Here, though, the queen delivers the final blow: **31...♖g2+! 32.♔h1** 32.♔xg2 ♕xf3+ 33.♔h3 ♕h5#. **32...♖e2! 33.♖f1 ♕xf3+!** Sutovsky-Svidler, Novi Sad Ech-tt 2009; White resigned because of 34.♖xf3 ♗xf3+ 35.♔g1 ♖e1#.

575

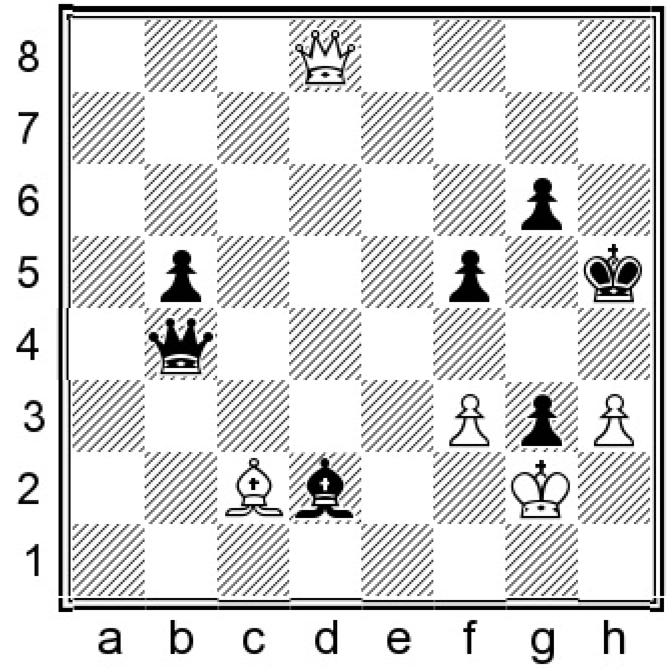


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

575 **30...♕h3! 31.♕g1 ♗xh2! 32.♕xh2** If 32.♖d5 ♗xd5 33.cxd5, then 33...♕h4 34.♕xh2 ♕e1+. **32...♗xg2+ 33.♔g1 ♕e3+** Aseev-Nevostrujev, Krasnodar ch-RUS 2002; White resigned: after 34.♔xg2 ♕xe2+ Black's material advantage is too great.

576

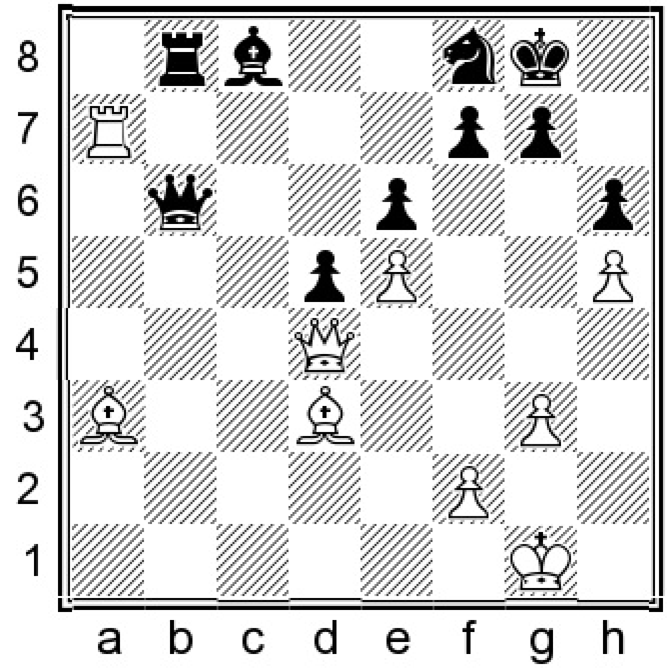


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

576 **61.f4!** Bu Xiangzhi-Gupta, Khanty-Mansiysk 2011; Black resigned because of 61...♕xf4 62.♗d1+ ♔h6 63.♕h8+ ♔g5 64.h4+! ♕xh4 65.♕d8+, winning the queen.

577

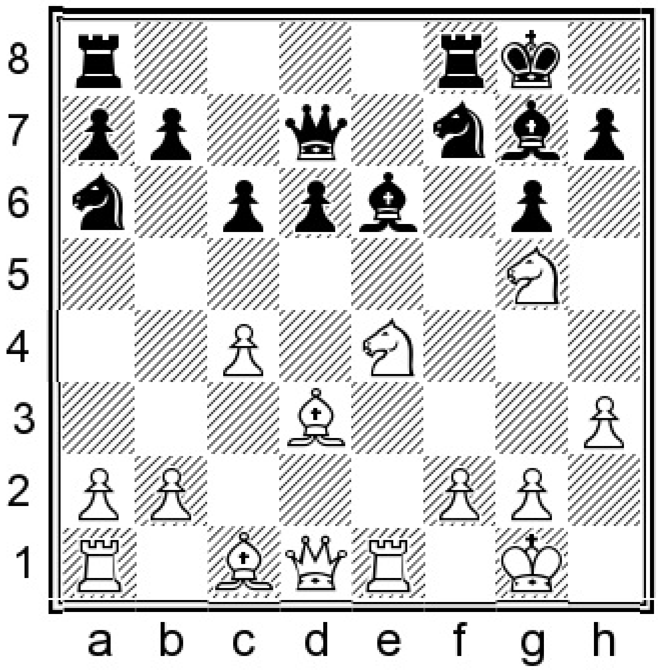


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

577 **34.♖xf7!! ♔xf7** If 34...♕xd4, then 35.♖xf8#. **35.♕f4+ ♔e8 36.♕xf8+ ♔d7 37.♗b5+!** 1-0 Naiditsch-Khenkin, Dortmund 2013; 37...♕xb5 38.♕d6+ ♔e8 39.♕e7#.

578



White to play

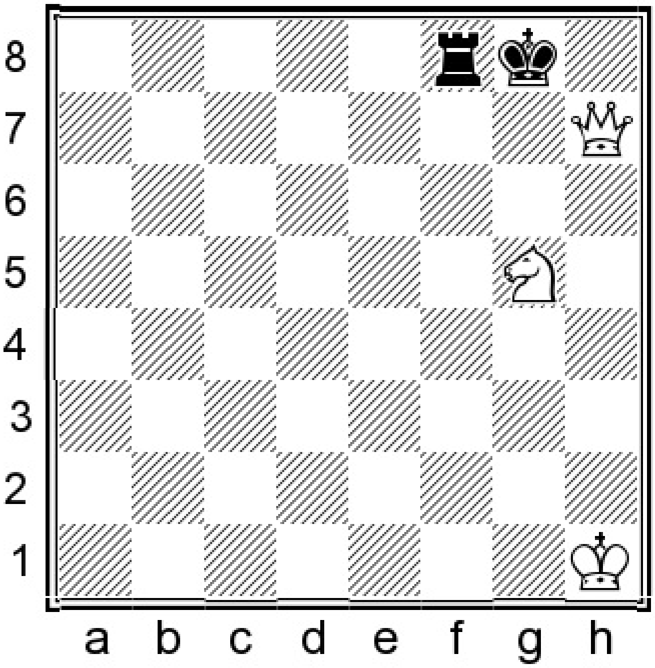
Show/Hide Solution

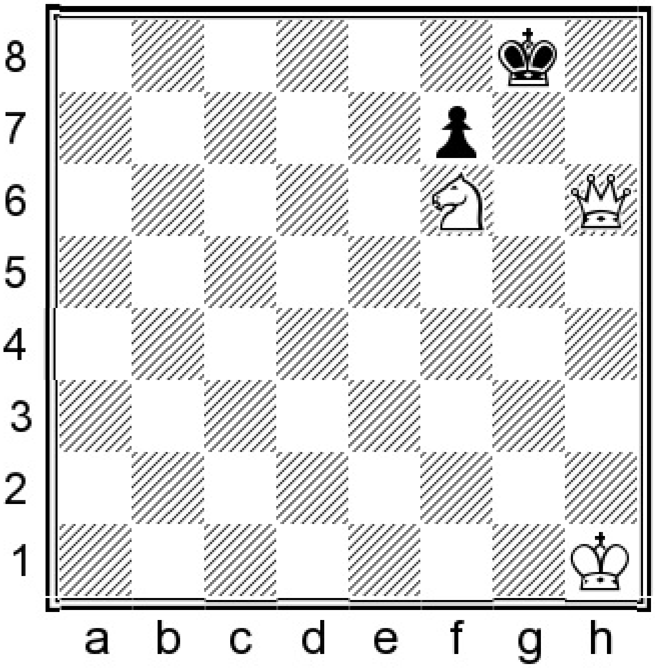
578 **14.♘xh7! ♔xh7 15.♘f6+! ♗xf6 16.♕h5+** Schnider-Pönisch, Lienz 2013; Black resigned, seeing the variation 16...♘h6 17.♕xg6+ ♔h8 18.♖xe6!, and the rook is invulnerable because of mate on h7.

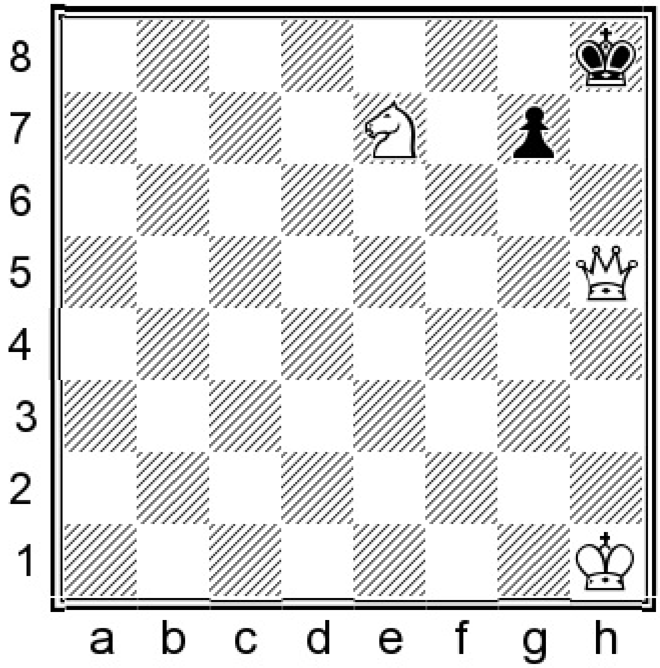
Chapter 8

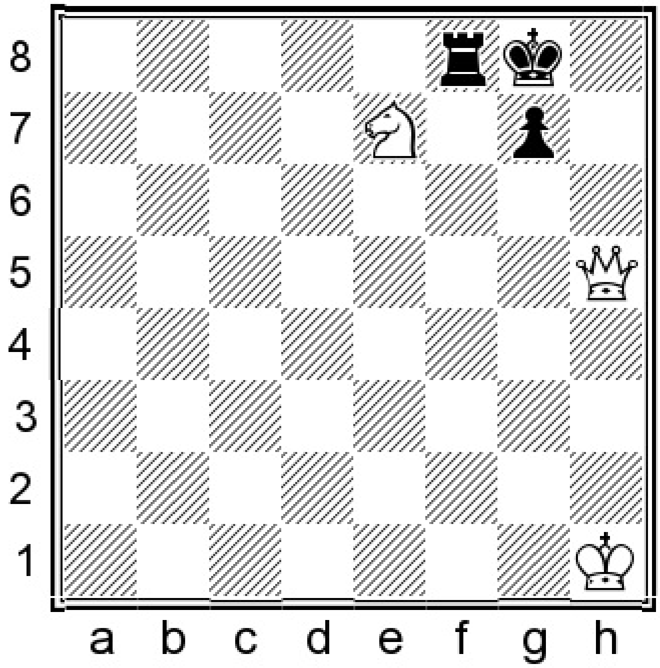
Queen and knight

The characteristics of a queen and a knight complement each other excellently and therefore they are regarded as a powerful attacking duo. Because the knight is not a long-range piece, it needs to operate close to the enemy king, which is usually going to be on the edge of the board. The queen more often plays the role of mating piece, but there are plenty of cases where it is the knight which gives the fatal blow, while the queen deprives the king of flight squares. Sometimes the king is obstructed by its own units.

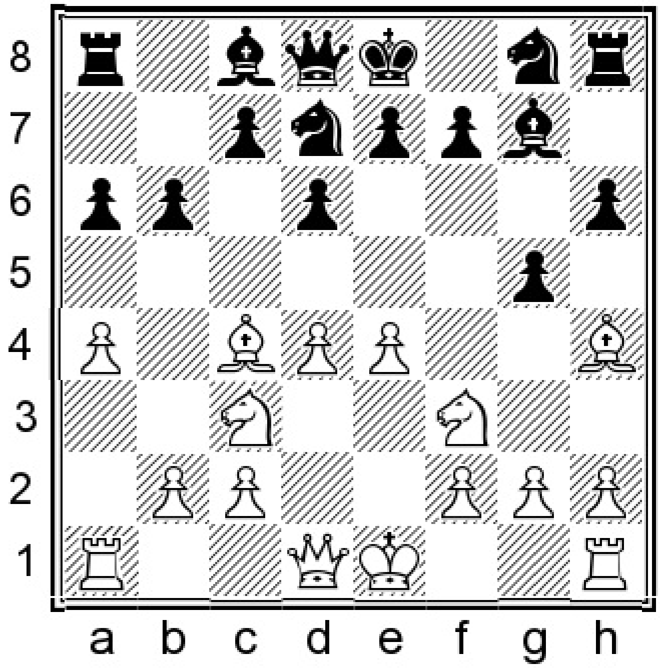








Sergei Rublevsky 2670
Carlo d’Amore 2462
Istanbul ol 2000 (2)



White to play

In a number of opening variations, it is dangerous to put the knight on d7 before castling. Here we see one of many demonstrations of this rule:

9.♗xg5! hxg5 10.♗xf7+! ♔xf7

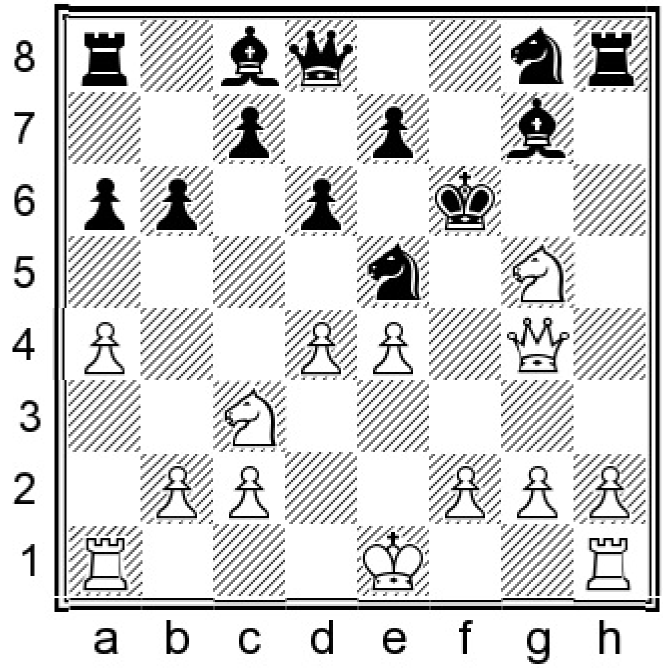
Equally unpromising is 10...♔f8 11.♘xg5 ♘df6 12.♗b3 ♘h6 13.0-0, and for the piece White has three pawns and a large positional advantage, whilst the black pieces lack harmony.

11.♘xg5+ ♔f6

If the king retreats to the eighth rank, the queen is lost after 12.♘e6, and nor is Black saved after 11...♔g6 12.♘e6 ♕e8 13.♕g4+ ♔f7 14.♕xg7+ ♔xe6 15.d5#.

12.♕g4 ♘e5

He loses even more quickly after 12...♘f8 13.♘d5+ ♔g6 14.♘e6+ or 12...♘h6 13.♕e6+ ♔xg5 14.h4+ ♔h5 15.♘e2! with irresistible mating threats.

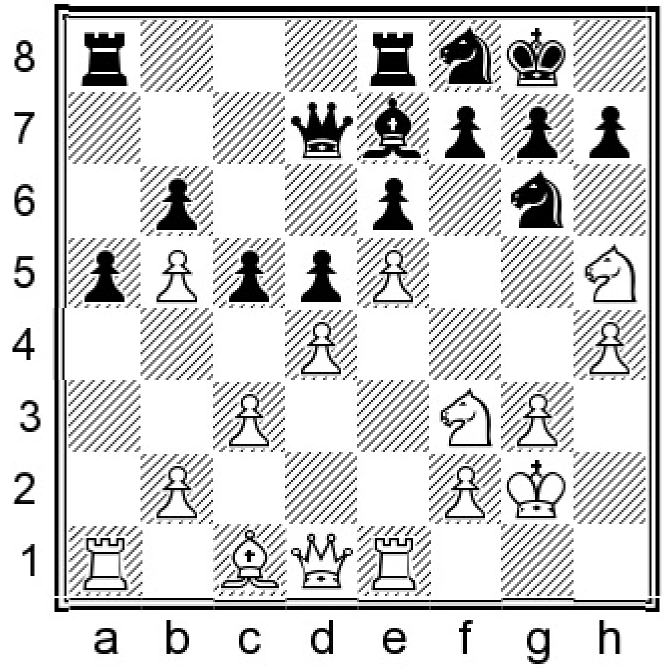


13.♘d5+ ♔g6 14.♘f4+ ♔f6 15.dxe5+ dxe5

Or 15...♔xe5 16.♘f7+ ♔d4 17.♕d1++–.

16.♘h7+ ♔f7 17.♕g6#

Garry Kasparov 2827
Nigel Short 2676
Zurich rapid 2001 (2)



White to play

The catastrophe occurs on g7, the black pieces being awkwardly bunched such that they cannot defend that square.

18.♗h6! gxh6 19.♕d2

Black is so helpless that White can even permit himself this quiet move.

19...f5

Otherwise mate is inevitable after 20.♕xh6.

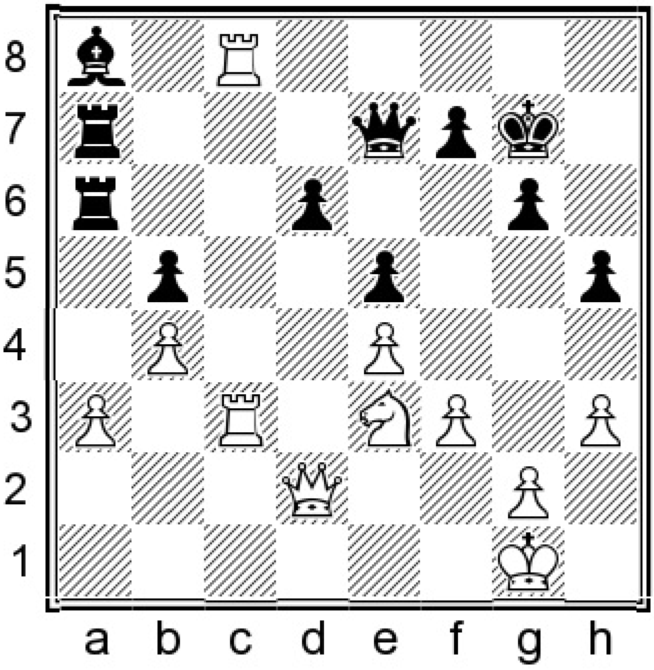
20.exf6 ♗d8 21.♕xh6 ♖a7 22.♘g5

Now the target switches to f7.

22...♕xb5 23.f7+ ♖xf7 24.♘xf7

Black resigned, without waiting for mate after 24...♔xf7 25.♕g7.

Oleg Korneev 2561
Devaki Prasad 2407
Port Erin 2003 (7)



White to play

The first (and decisive) move of the combination is not obvious:

44.♖h8!! ♕g5

If the sacrifice is accepted with 44...♔xh8 then White creates decisive threats with 45.♘f5! gxf5 46.♕h6+ ♔g8 47.♖c8+ or 45...♕f8 46.♖c8! ♕xc8 47.♕h6+ ♔g8 48.♕g7#.

45.♖cc8 1-0

A) On 45...♔f6 the decisive line is 46.♖xa8 ♖xa8 47.♘d5+, winning the queen;

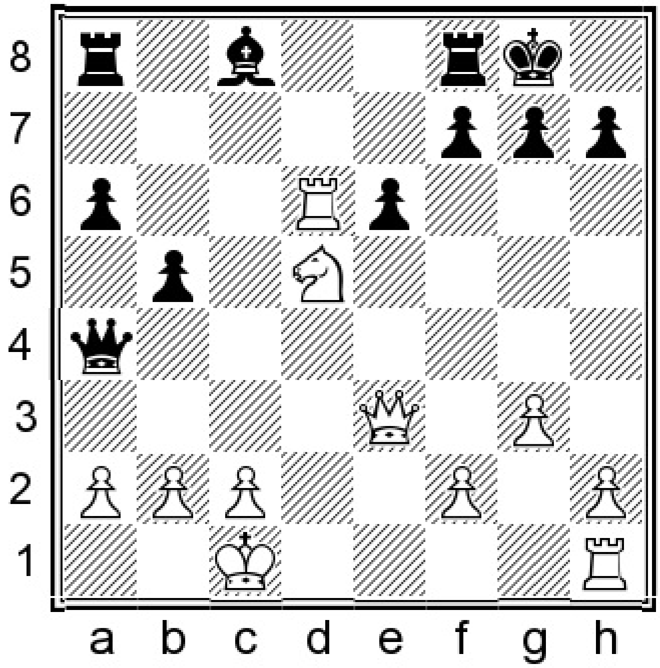
B) The same result follows from 45...♕f4 46.♖cg8+! ♔f6 47.♖xa8 ♖xa8 48.♘d5+;

C) After 45...♕f6 there is 46.♖cg8#;

D) Whilst after other queen retreats White wins by (45...♕h4) 46.♘f5+ gxf5 47.♕h6#.

We have already pointed out many times that a disparity in piece activity is a good precondition for a combination.

Alexander Motylev 2660
Sergei Iskusnyh 2510
Russia tt 2006 (7)



White to play

Here White wins two tempi to transfer his rook to the kingside:

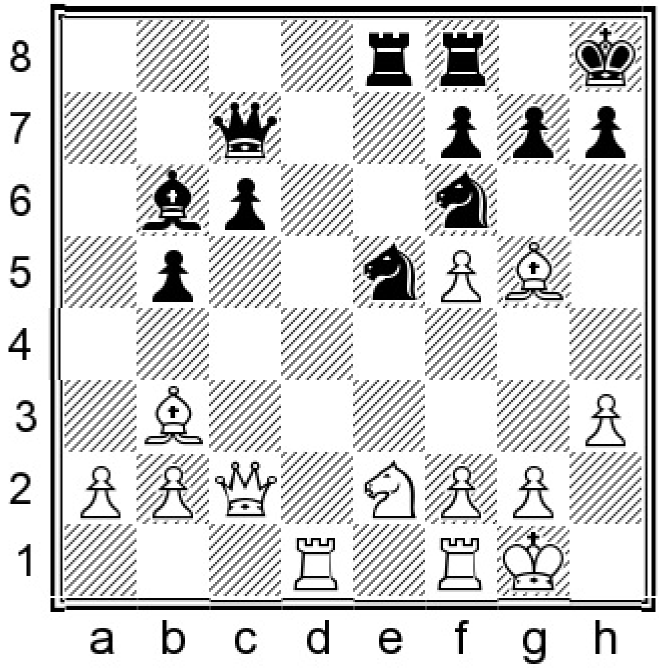
21.♘f6+! ♔h8

After 21...gxf6 there would follow the same move as in the game, 22.♖d4, and then after 22...♕xa2 23.♖g4+ ♔h8 24.♕h6 ♕a1+ 25.♔d2 ♕a5+ 26.♔e2 the checks run out, whilst after 22...♕xd4 23.♕xd4 e5 24.♕e4 ♗e6 25.f4 White has a decisive advantage.

22.♖d4 ♕xa2 23.♖h4 ♕a1+ 24.♔d2 ♕a5+ 25.♔e2

Mate is unavoidable (25...h6 26.♖xh6+), and Black resigned.

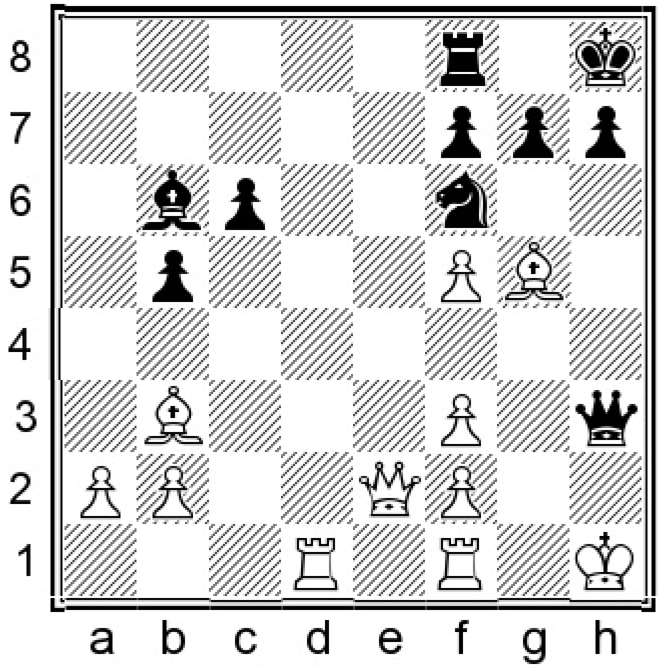
Piotr Stanizewski 2416
Avetik Grigoryan 2537
Warsaw 2008 (7)



Black to play

Looking at the position, it is hard to believe that White will perish due to the weakness of the h2-b8 diagonal, but even so...

23...♘f3+! 24.gxf3 ♖xe2! 25.♕xe2 ♕g3+ 26.♔h1 ♕xh3+

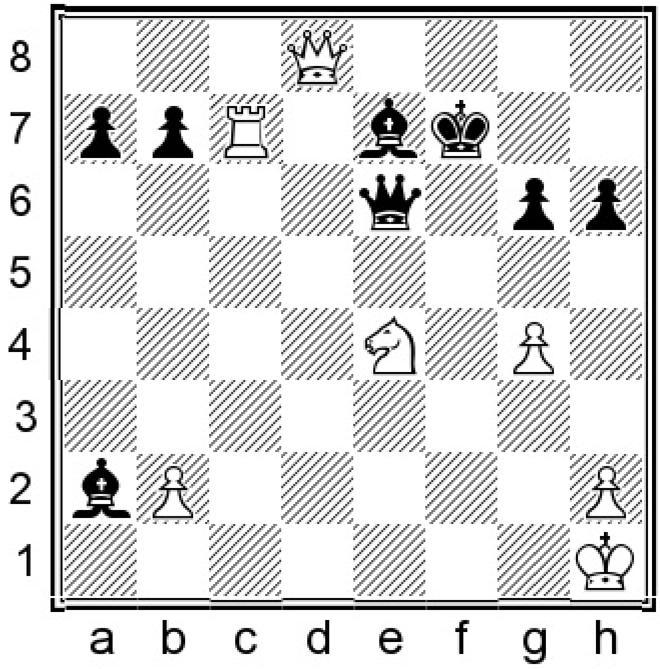


In calculating the combination, Black had to see this nuance – he removes the defender of the g4-square.

27.♔g1 ♗c7 28.f4 ♘g4

White resigned. If **29.f3**, then the bishop returns with decisive effect: 29...♗b6+ 30.♖f2 ♕h2+ and mate next move.

Ni Hua 2705
Andres Rodriguez Vila 2531
Spain tt 2008 (4)



White to play

31.♘d6+ ♔f6 32.g5+!

A problem-like idea – blockading the square via which the king could escape pursuit. We will see this idea a lot in this book.

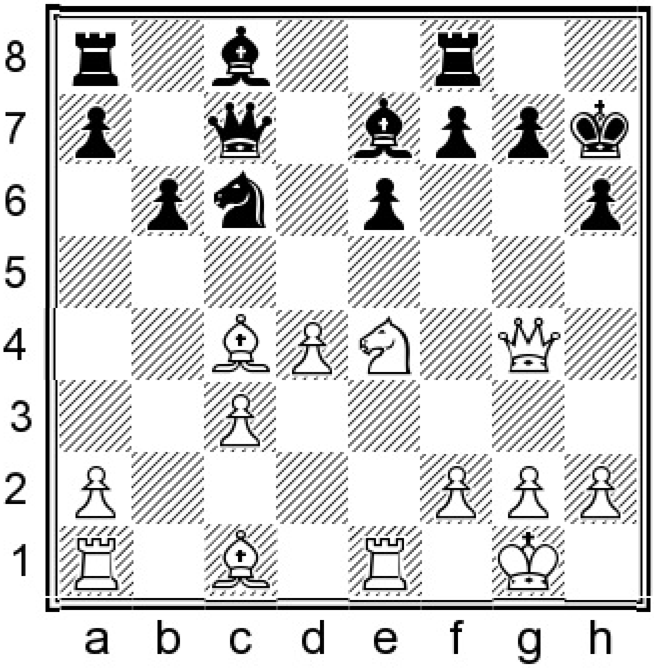
Nothing was given by 32.♕h8+? ♔g5.

32...♔xg5

32...hxg5 33.♕h8# – an elegant mating set-up, don’t you agree?

33.♕xe7+ 1-0

David Howell 2622
Ali Bitalzadeh 2400
Wijk aan Zee 2009 (12)



White to play

One sacrifice is often not enough to complete an attack.

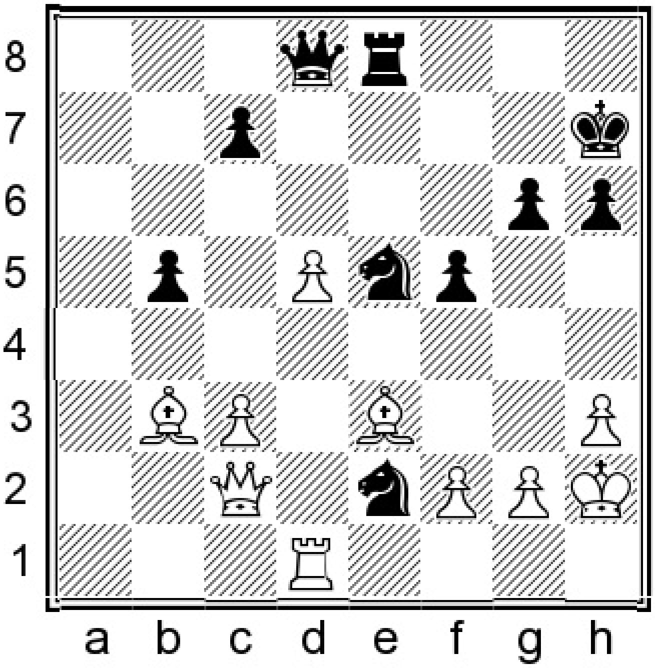
16.♗xh6! ♔xh6

Now the black king is lured out of its cover, and the battle is soon over. White wins in lovely style after 16...gxh6 17.♘f6+! ♗xf6 18.♗d3+ ♔h8 19.♕e4 and the pawn on f7 is blockaded, so mate is inevitable.

17.♕h3+ ♔g6 18.g4!

Black resigned. His badly-placed pieces on the queenside can only look on at events unfolding on the other flank, unable to defend their king.

Michal Meszaros 2393
Daniele Vocaturo 2493
Chur tt 2010 (6)



Black to play

Queen and knight are a powerful attacking force, as we know. And as for a queen with two knights...

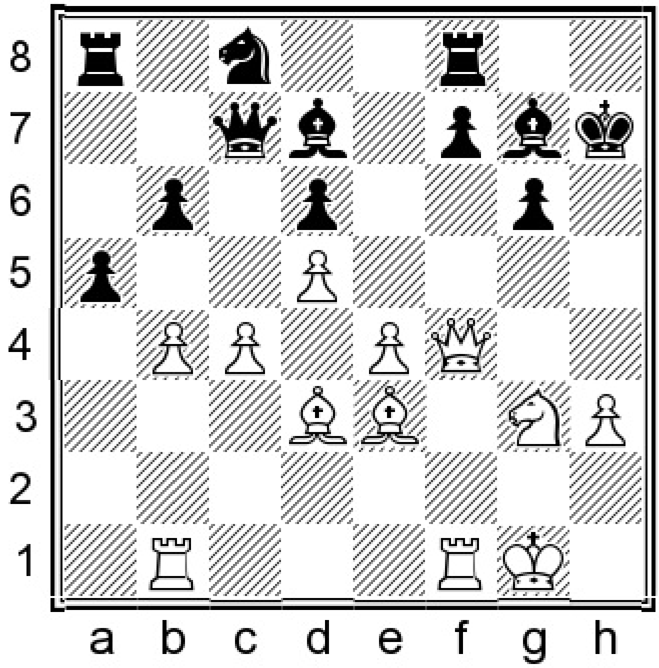
31...♘g4+! 32.♔h1

32.hxg4 ♕h4#.

32...♖xe3!

Removing the defence of f2. White resigned, without waiting for 33.fxe3 ♘f2+ 34.♔h2 ♕d6+.

Guillermo Soppe 2429
Ruben Zacarias 2213
Asuncion 2010 (2)



White to play

The amateur playing Black has placed his pieces very fancifully, the majority of them cut off from the kingside. The ♘c8 looks especially strange. Punishment is inevitable.

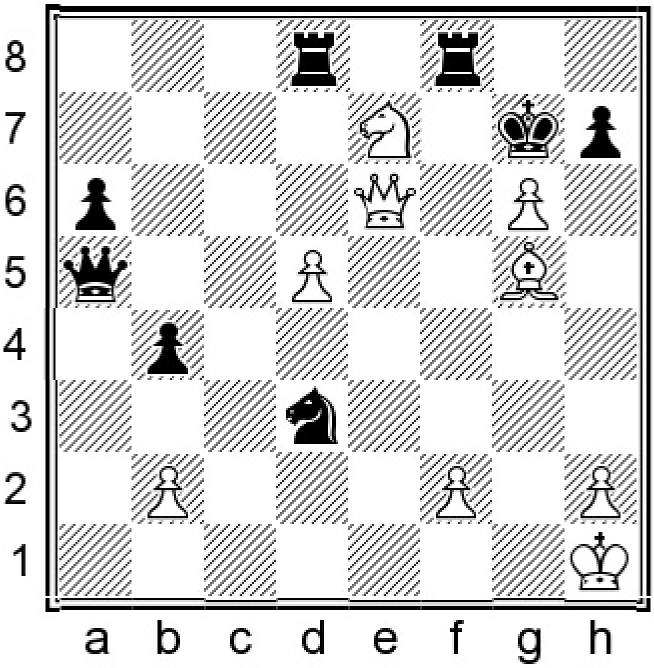
32.♘h5! ♗e5

Somewhat more tenacious was 32...gxh5 33.e5+ ♔g8 34.♕e4, and the white attack is irresistible.

33.♕h6+ ♔g8 34.♖f6!

Black resigned.

Richard Rapport 2543
Davor Rogic 2595
Austria Bundesliga 2010/11 (1)



White to play

Black has a colossal material advantage, whilst White will sacrifice another bishop. The picture of encirclement round the black king is quite striking.

27.♗h6+! ♔xh6 28.gxh7+ ♔g5

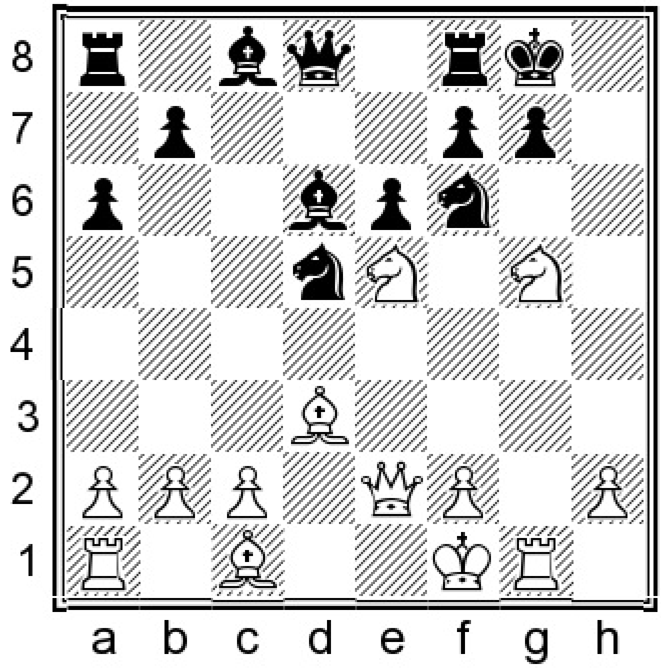
On 28...♔g7 there is the decisive 29.h8=♕+ ♖xh8 30.♘f5+ ♔f8 31.♕e7+ ♔g8 32.♕g7#, whilst after 28...♔xh7 there is 29.♕g6+ and 30.♕h6#.

29.♕g6+

Black resigned because of 29...♔f4 30.♕g3+ ♔e4 31.♕e3# or 29...♔h4 30.h8=♕+ ♖xh8 31.♘f5+ ♔h3 32.♕g3#.

In the following tense position, White needs to calculate accurately all the consequences of his enterprising attack.

Dmitry Andreikin 2715
Sanan Sjugirov 2635
Moscow ch-RUS 2012 (6)

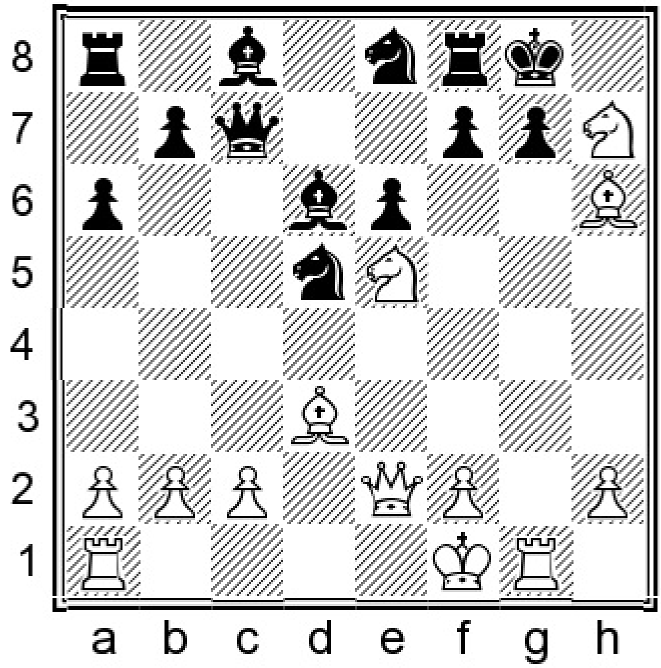


White to play

18.♘h7! ♕c7

If 18...♘xh7 19.♗xh7+ ♔xh7 20.♕h5+ ♔g8, a new sacrifice decides: 21.♖xg7+! ♔xg7 22.♗h6+ ♔g8 23.♕g4+ with mate. Black instead is prepared to part with the exchange, but White is more interested in breaking through to the king. A series of forcing moves follows.

19.♗h6! ♘e8

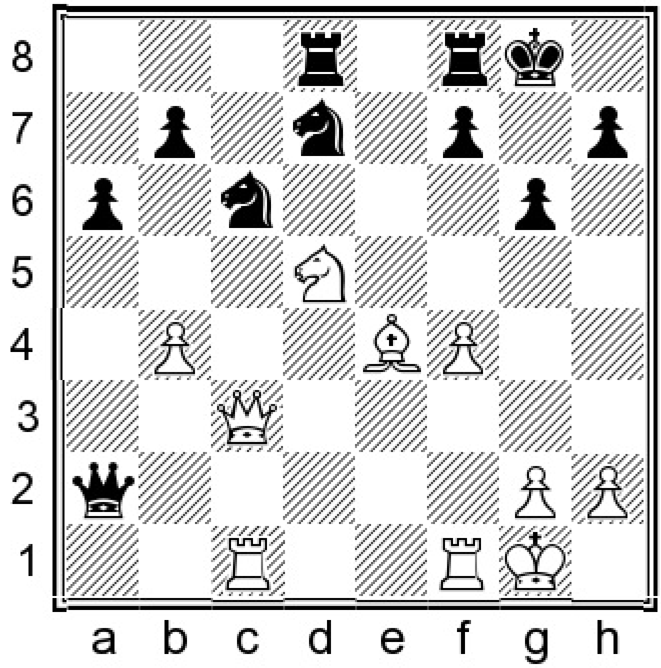


20.♗xg7! ♘xg7 21.♖xg7+ ♔xg7 22.♕g4+ ♔h8 23.♘f6!

Black resigned, having calculated the variation 23...♘xf6 24.♕h4+ ♔g8 25.♕g5+! ♔h8 26.♕xf6+ ♔g8

27.♕g5+ ♔h8 28.♕h6+ ♔g8 29.♕h7#.

Hrant Melkumyan 2622
Csaba Balogh 2644
Legnica Ech 2013 (11)



White to play

Black has recklessly feasted on the a2-pawn, when he ought to have been thinking about the weakness of the long diagonal...

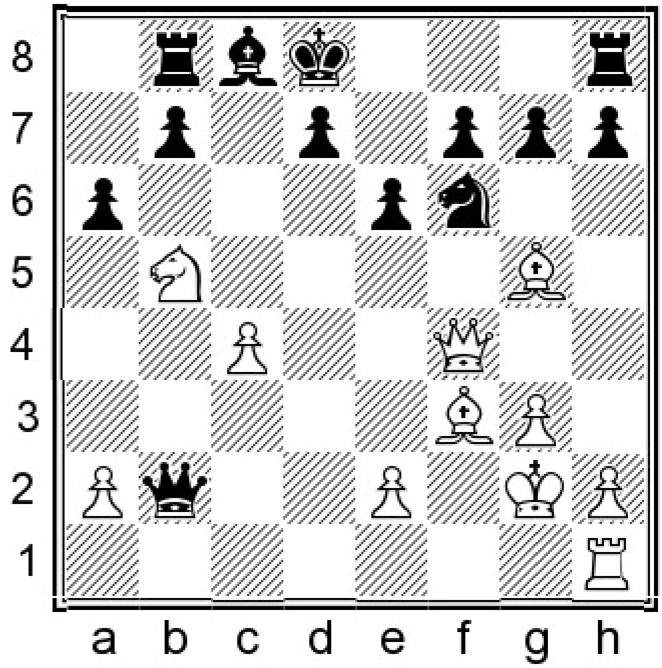
25.♖f2 ♕a4 26.♖a1 ♕b5 27.♖a5!

The surrounding of the queen is completed and Black's position immediately becomes hopeless. The knight cannot take the rook because of mate in one (27...♘xa5 28.♘e7#), so Black suffers large material losses.

27...♘c5 28.bxc5 ♖xd5 29.♖xb5 ♖d1+ 30.♖f1 1-0

And in the next example, it is the queen herself who must be deflected from the same long diagonal.

Jens Kipper 2378
Francis Rayner 2192
Hastings 2013/14 (1)



White to play

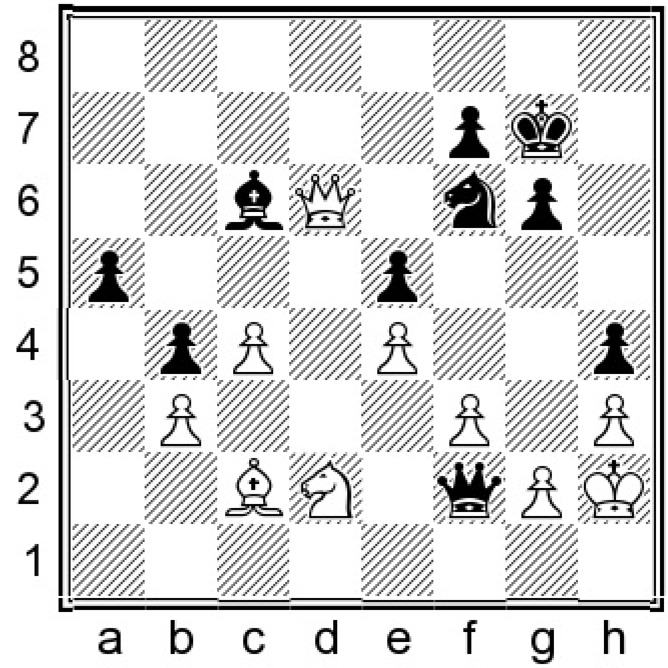
20.♖b1! ♕xb1 21.♗xf6+ gxf6

Not recapturing does not save him either: 21...♔e8 22.♘d6+ ♔f8 23.♗xg7+! ♔xg7 (23...♔e7 24.♗f6+ ♔f8 25.♕h6+) 24.♕xf7+ ♔h6 25.♕f6+ ♕g6 26.♘f7#.

22.♕xf6+ ♔e8 23.♘d6+

And mate next move.

Ding Yixin 2376
Tan Zhongyi 2428
Xinghua ch-CHN W 2011 (9)



Black to play

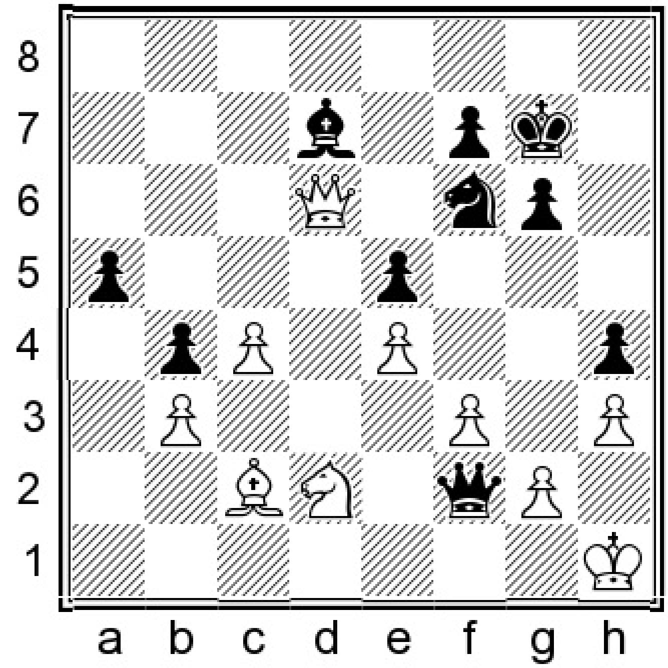
In this apparently fairly quiet position, Black played

38...♗d7!

and suddenly it became apparent that the weakness of the h3-square decides the game. White's minor pieces are exceptionally badly placed.

39.♔h1

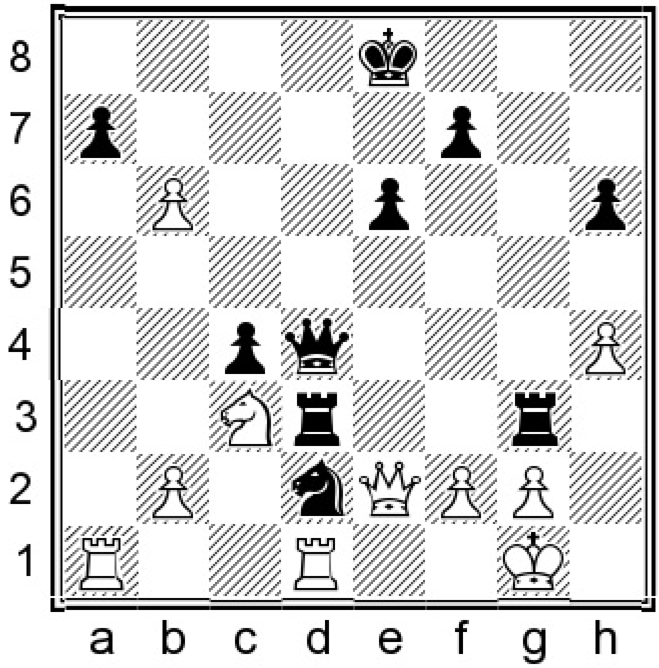
39.♕xe5 ♕xd2.



39...♗xh3! 40.gxh3 ♘h5 41.♕xe5+ ♔h7

White resigned: it is impossible to meet the threat of 42...♘g3+.

Alexander Khalifman 2690
Peter Acs 2591
Hoogeveen 2002 (4)



Black to play

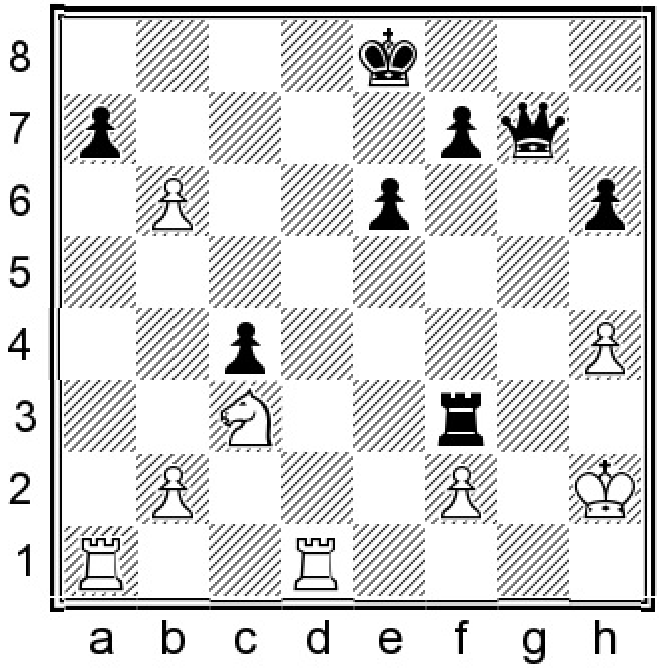
30...♖xg2+! 31.♔xg2 ♕g7+ 32.♔h2

32.♔h1 ♖h3#.

32...♘f3+ 33.♕xf3

Or 33.♔h1 ♕g4, and the threat of mate on h3 decides the game.

33...♖xf3



34.♖g1

White cannot take on a7: 34.bxa7 ♖xf2+ 35.♔h3 ♕g2#.

34...♖xf2+ 35.♔h1

No better was 35.♔h3 ♖f3+ 36.♔h2 ♕e5+ 37.♔h1 ♖h3+ 38.♔g2 ♕e3.

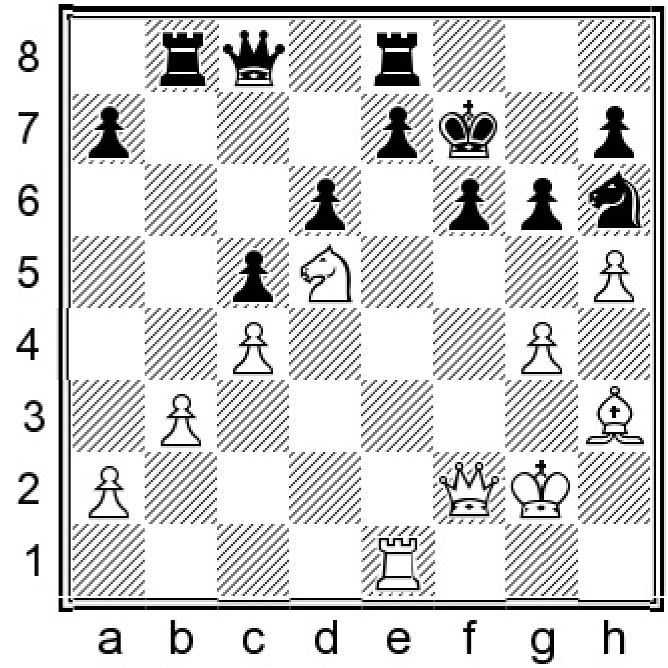
35...♕d4

White resigned.

Show in Text Mode

Exercises

579

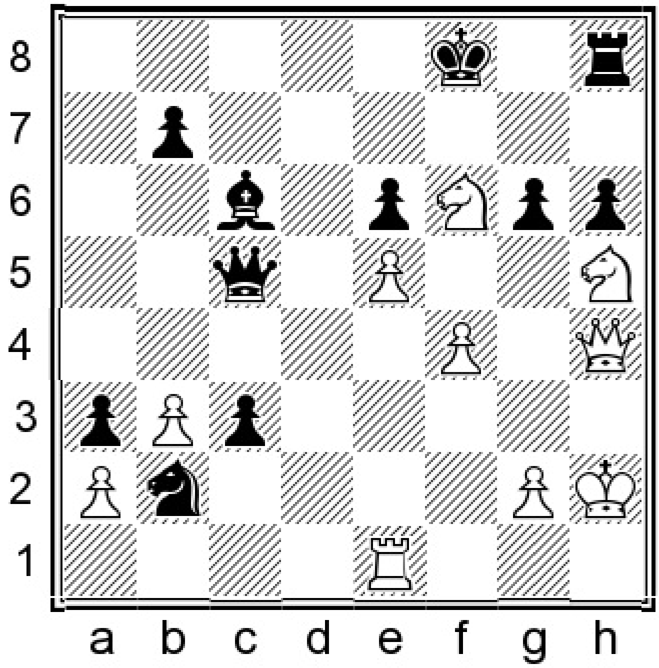


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

579 **37.♖xe7+! ♖xe7 38.♕xf6+ ♔g8 39.♘xe7#** S.Guliev-Molina Morena, Abu Dhabi 2001.

580

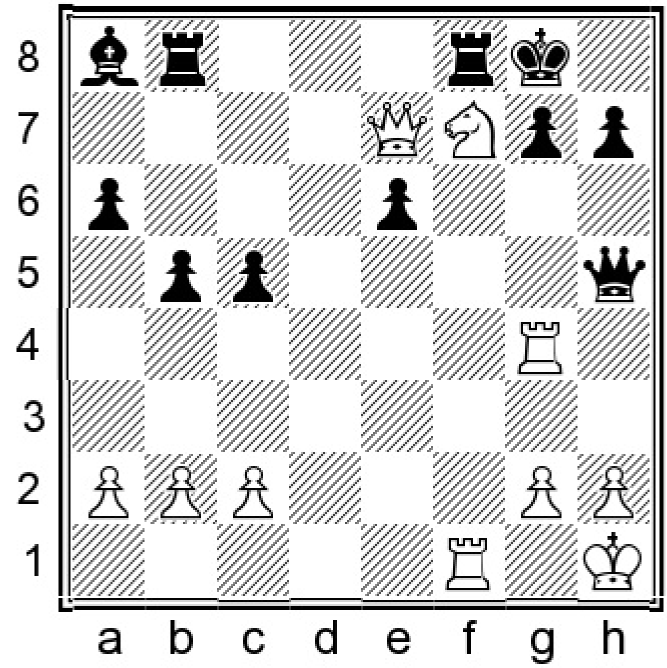


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

580 **40.♘d7+! ♗xd7 41.♕f6+** Kasparov-Bareev, Cannes rapid 2001; Black resigned because of 41...♔e8 42.♘g7# or 41...♔g8 42.♕g7#.

581

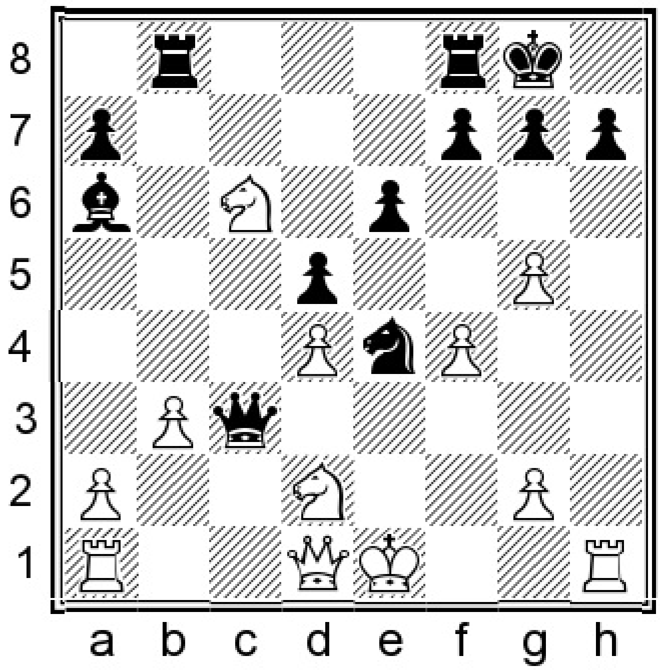


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

581 **23.♖xg7+!** **♔xg7** And here **24.♕f6+** **♔g8** **25.♕h8#** ends the battle at once. In A.van den Berg-Tregubov, Vlissingen 2002, White won in more complicated fashion.

582

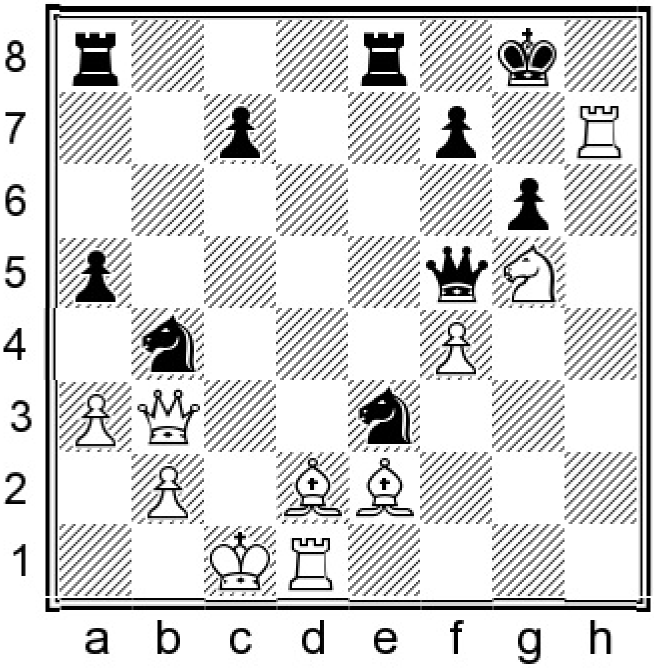


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

582 **19.♘e7+ ♔h8 20.♖xh7+!** 1-0 Nogueiras-Todorovic, Dos Hermanas 2005; 20...♔xh7 21.♕h5#.

583

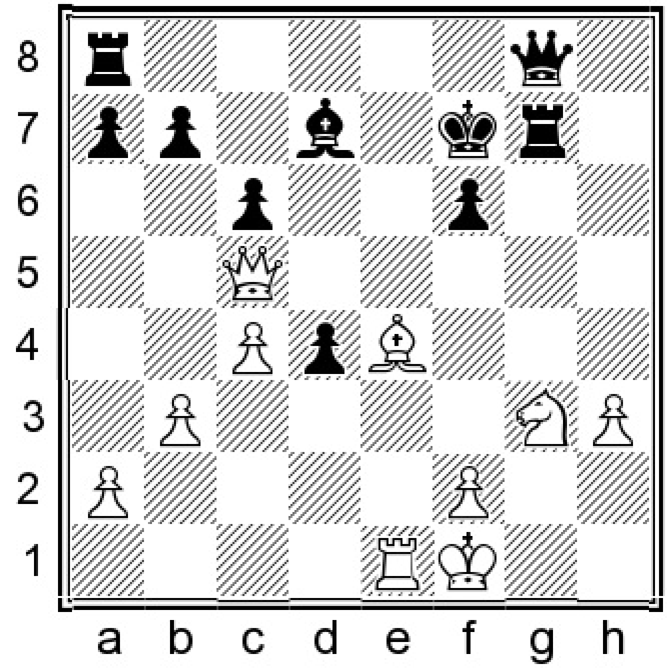


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

583 **26...♘a2+!** 0-1 Van Wely-E.l’Ami, Leeuwarden ch-NED 2004; 27.♕xa2 ♕c2#.

584

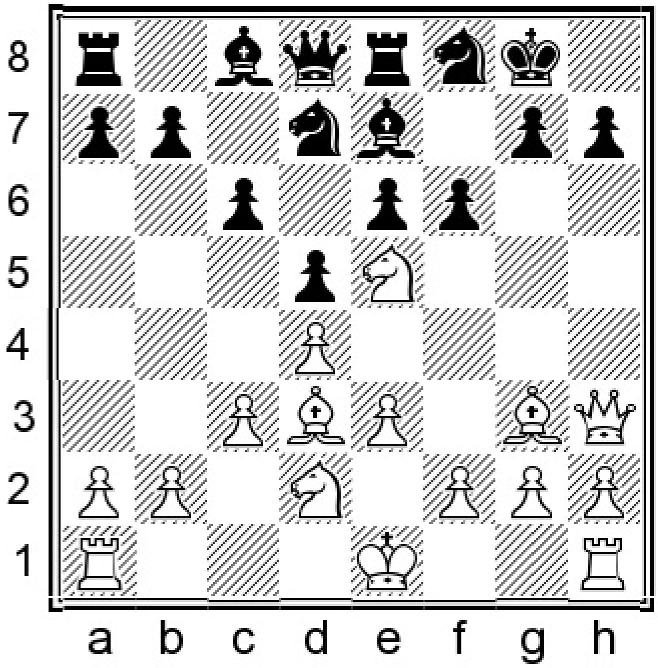


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

584 **32.♗g6+!** Carlsen-He.Gretarsson, Rethymno tt 2003; Black resigned because of 32...♔xg6 33.♕h5# or 32...♖xg6 33.♕e7#.

585

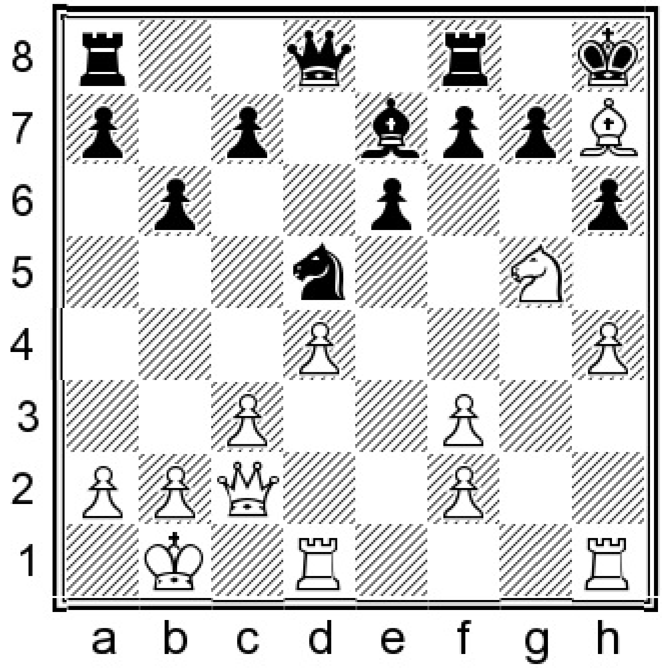


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

585 **12.♗xh7+!** 1-0 Litrico-Calavalle, Cento 2011; 12...♘xh7 13.♕xe6+, and mate next move.

586

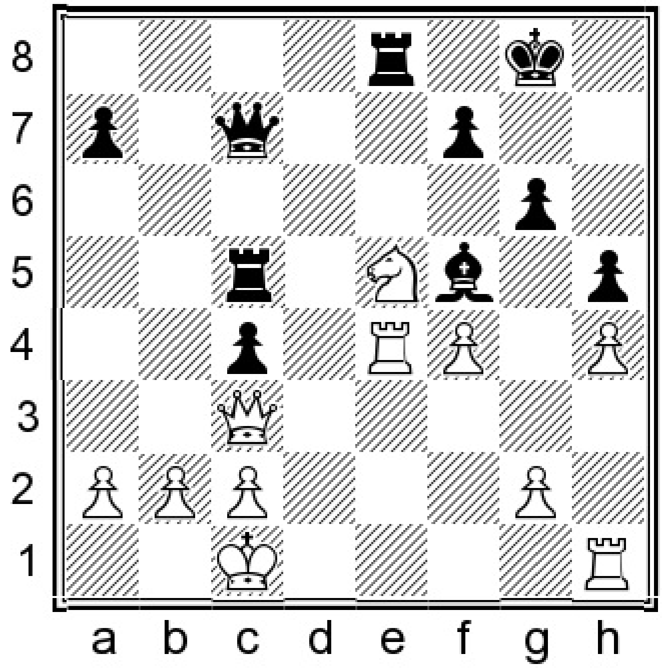


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

586 **17.♗g8! ♔xg8** No better is 17...g6 18.♘xf7+. **18.♕h7#** Maliszewski-Khmarsky, Kiev 2003.

587

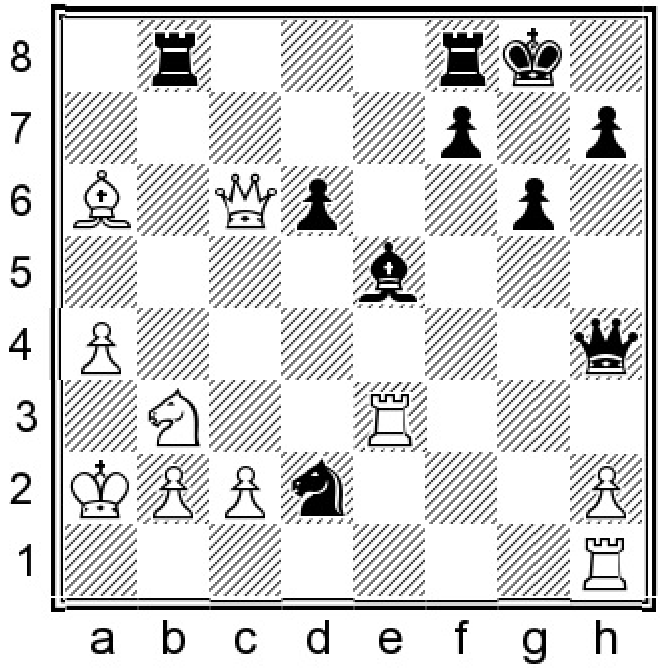


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

587 **26.♘xg6!** 1-0 Macieja-Setkauskas, Wroclaw 2010.

588

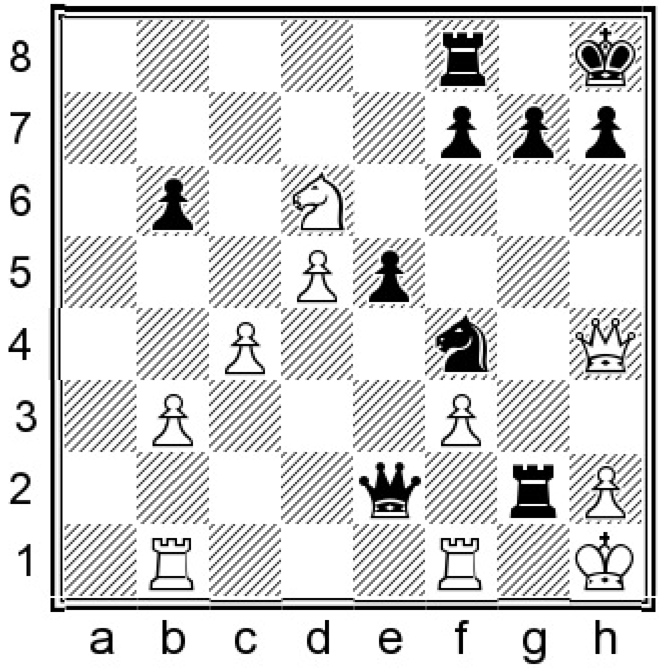


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

588 **27...♖b6!** 0-1 Kvon-Miroshnichenko, Tashkent 2011; 28.♕xb6 ♕xa4# or 28.♕d7 ♘xb3, winning a piece.

589

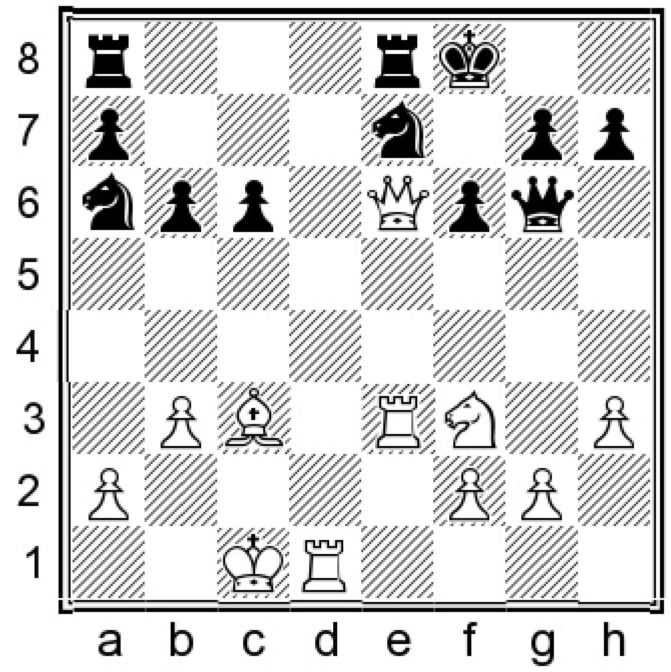

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h

Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

589 **31...♖g1+!** 0-1 Asgarova-A.Stojanovic, Tbilisi Ech W 2011.

590

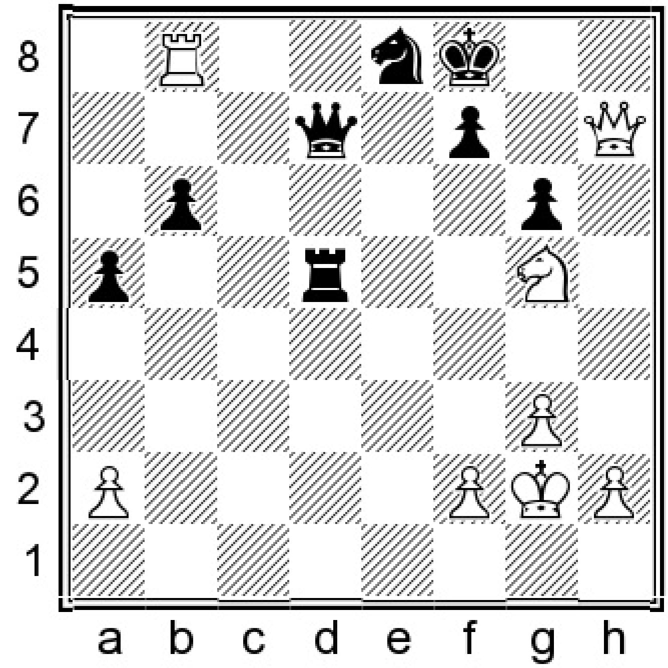


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

590 **20.♘e5!** 1-0 Harika-Zhu Chen, Hangzhou W 2011; 20...fxe5 21.♖f3+.

591

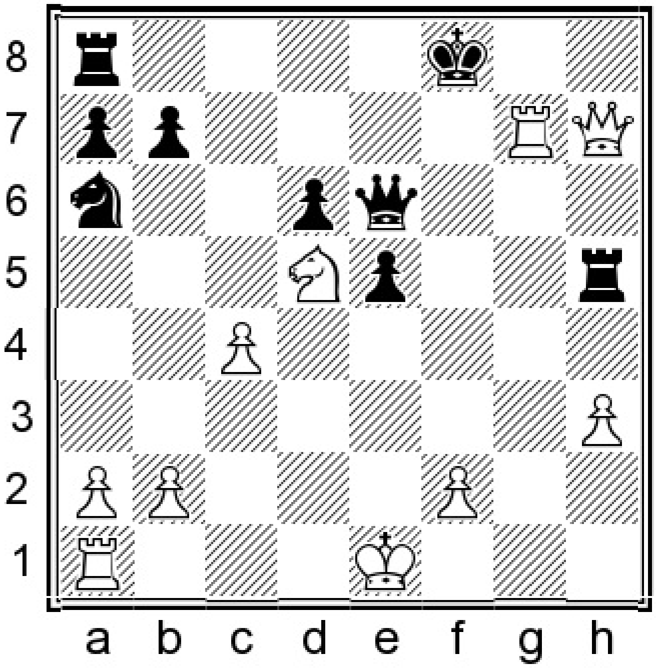


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

591 **37.♖d8! ♕xd8 38.♕xf7#** Pashikian-Swinkels, Rogaska Slatina tt 2011.

592

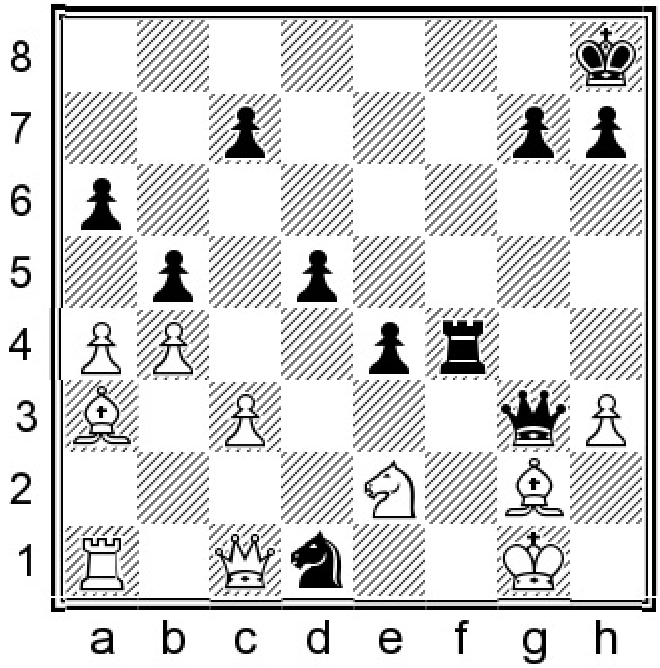


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

592 **27.♖g8+!** 1-0 Zhukova-Zawadzka, Ningbo Wch-tt W 2009.

593

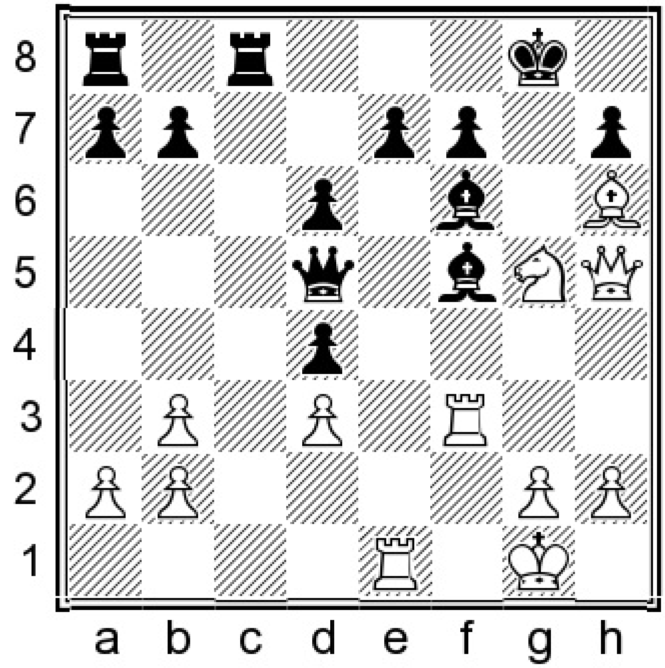

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h

Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

593 **36...♖f1+!** 0-1 So-Giri, Wijk aan Zee 2010.

594

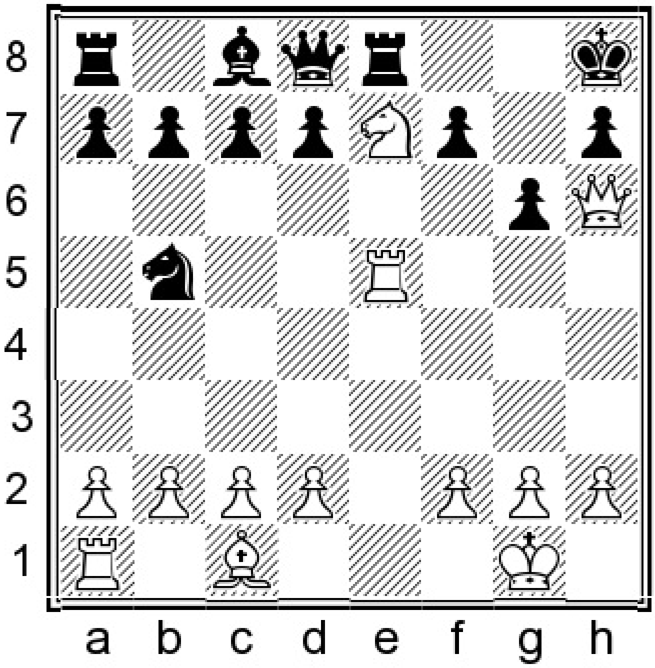


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

594 **25.♖xf5! ♕xf5 26.♕xf7+ ♔h8 27.♗g7+!** 1-0 T.Kosintseva-Shumiakina, Kazan ch-RUS W 2004.

595

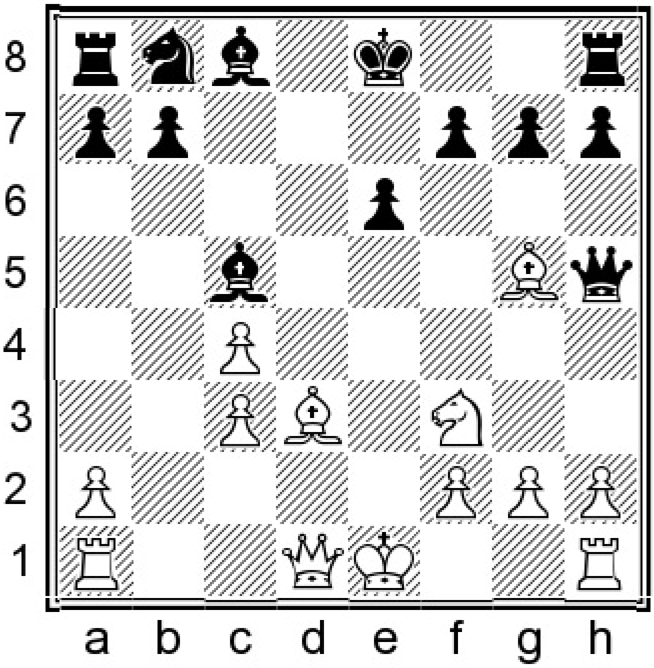


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

595 **13.♖h5!** 1-0 Collins-Spanton, Hastings 2009/10.

596

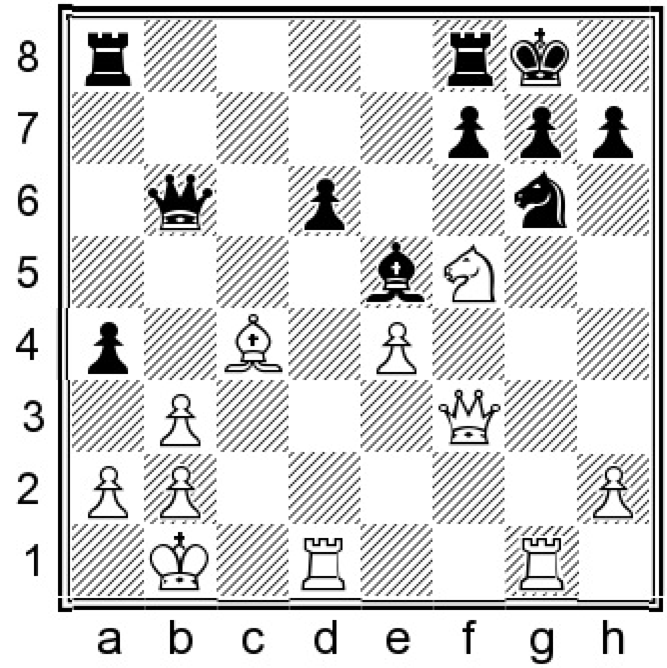


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

596 **12.♗g6! fxg6 13.♕d8+ ♔f7 14.♘e5#** Barcenilla-Zhang Ziyang, blitz (place and year unknown).

597

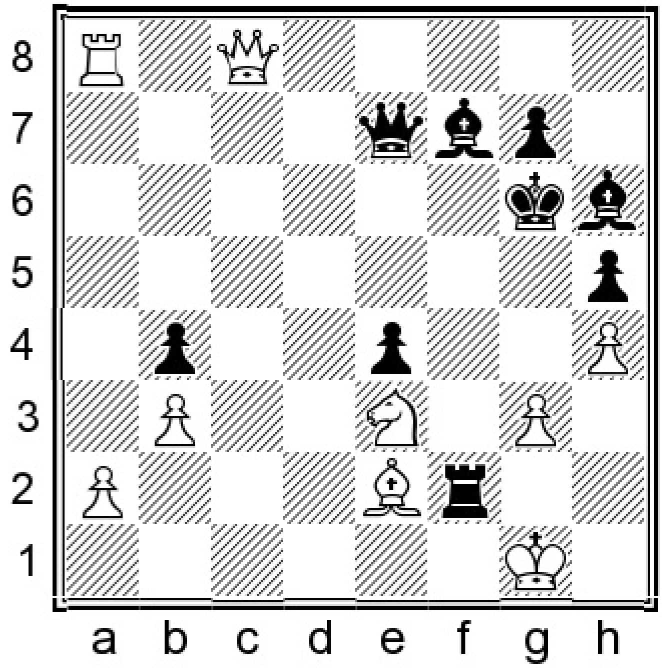

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h

White to play

Show/Hide Solution

597 **28.♖xg6!** 1-0 Baramidze-Lupulescu, Hengelo jr 2005; 28...hxg6 29.♘e7+ ♔h7 30.♕h3#.

598

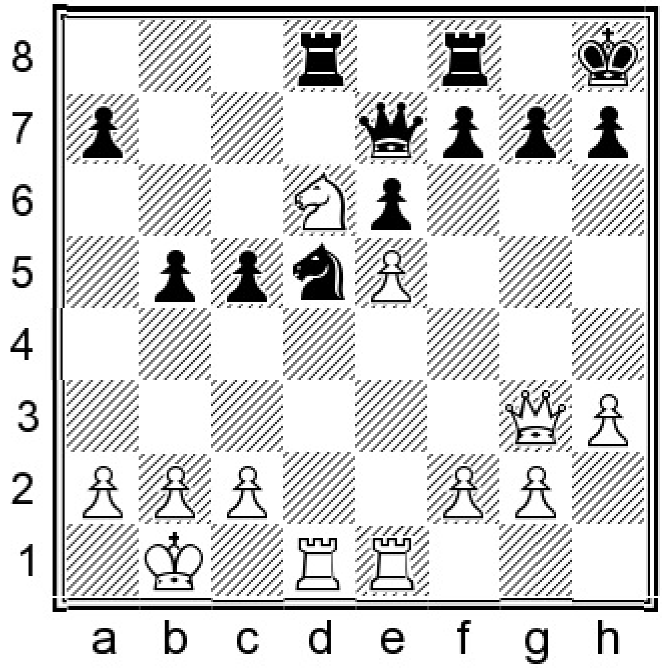


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

598 Did you find the mate in two? **38.♗xh5+! ♔f6** 38...♔xh5 39.♕g4#, 38...♔h7 39.♕h8#. **39.♘g4#** Shabalov-Fishbein, San Diego 2006.

599

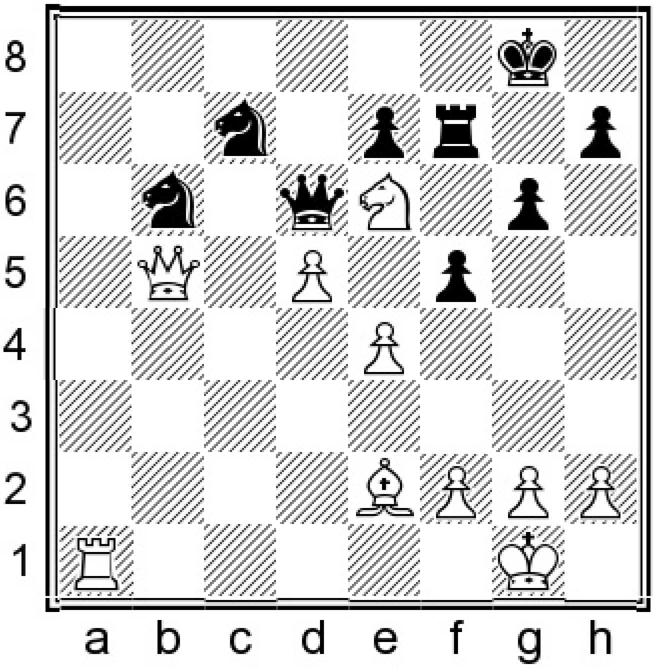


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

599 **23.♖xd5!** 1-0 Miroshnichenko-Baum, Dubai 2006; after 23...exd5 24.♘f5 the g7-square cannot be defended without loss of the queen.

600

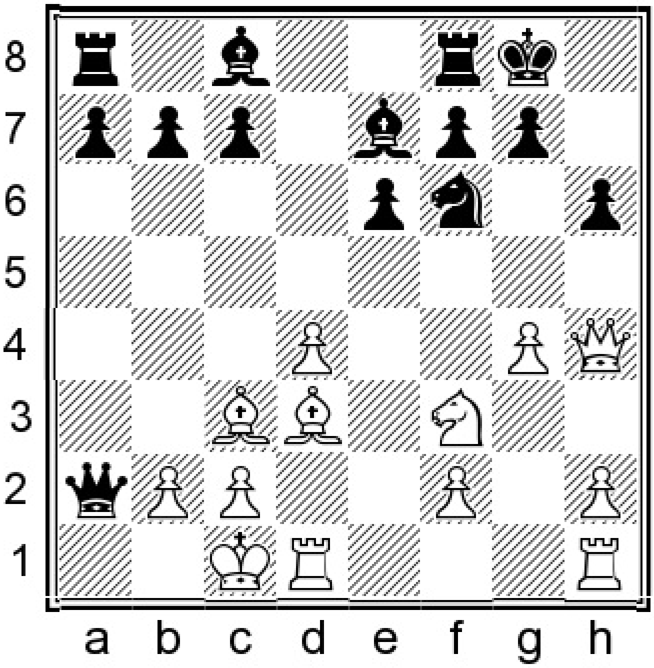


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

600 **28.♖a8+!** 1-0 Benkovic-Egozi, Biel 2008; whichever knight Black takes the rook with, he allows the enemy queen onto the back rank with lethal effect.

601

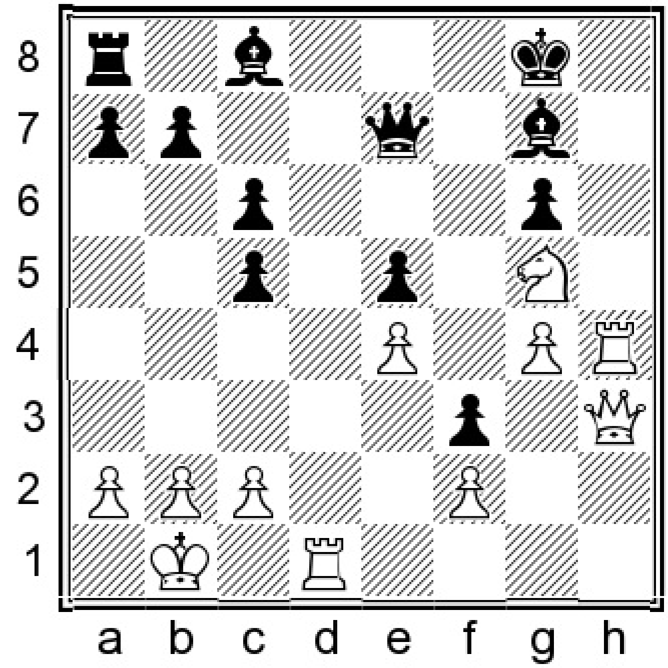


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

601 **13...♘e4! 14.♗xe4** 14.♕xe7 ♕a1#. **14...♗xh4** 1-0 Chudinovskih-V.Grigorian, Voronezh 2007; a device worth remembering!

602

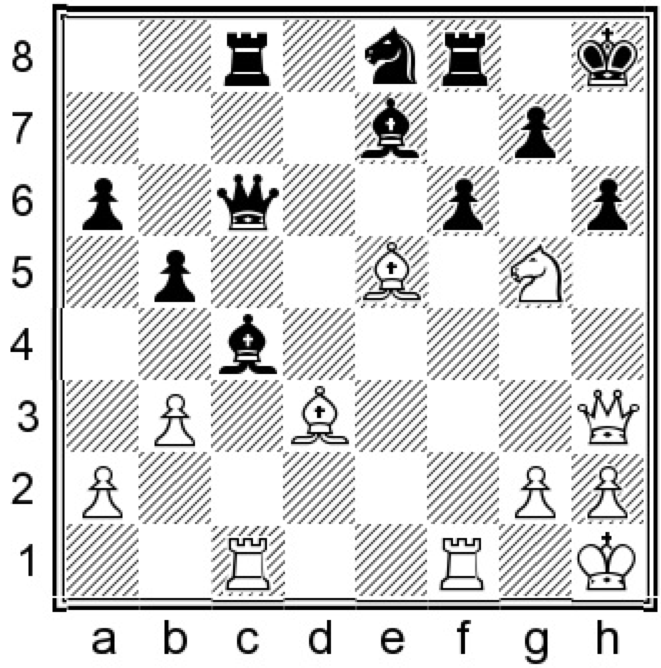


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

602 White forces mate in a simple, but beautiful manner, sacrificing two rooks one after another: **24.♖h8+! ♗xh8 25.♖d8+!** 1-0 Alb.David-Nedev, Kemer tt 2007.

603

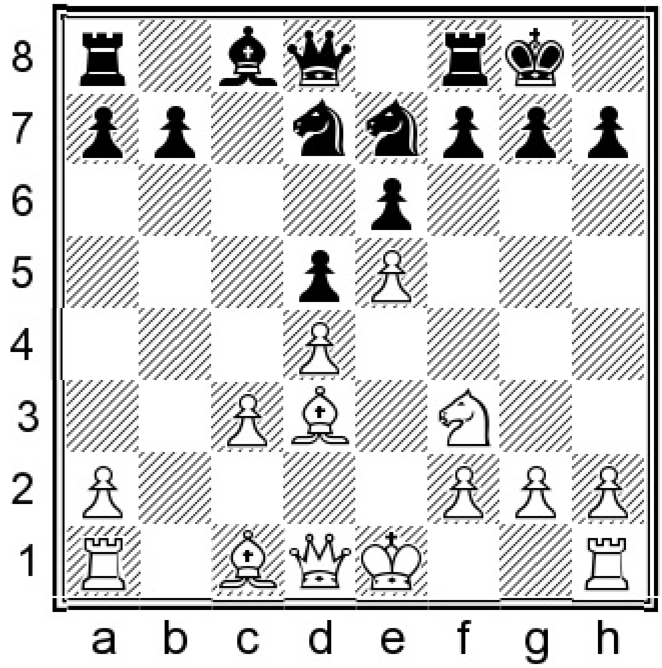


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

603 **28.♖xc4! bxc4 29.♕f5** 1-0 Kleijn-Jaracz, Deizisau 2008.

604

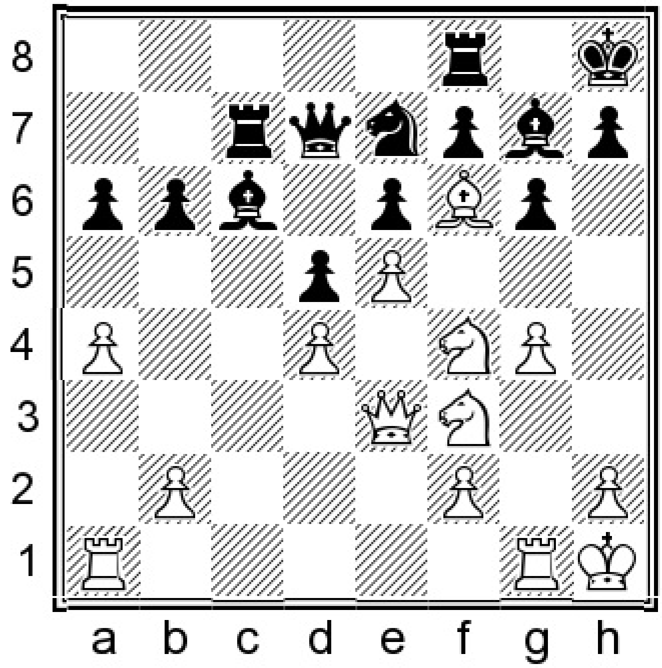


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

604 An old, but eternally young theme – the bishop sacrifice on h7: **10.♗xh7+! ♔xh7 11.♘g5+ ♔g8?!** More tenacious was 11...♔g6, but after 12.h4 White still has an overwhelming advantage. **12.♕h5 f6 13.♕h7#** Hajenius-V.Stefansson, Reykjavik 2011.

605

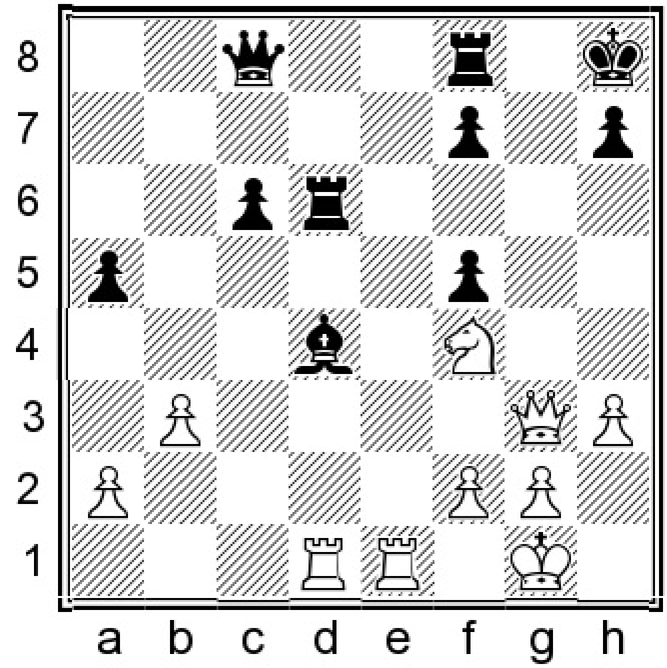


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

605 **26.♘h5!** Friedel-Sareen, Reykjavik 2011; Black resigned because of 26...gxh5 27.♕h6 ♖g8 (27...♗xf6 28.♕xf6+ ♔g8 29.gxh5+ ♘g6 30.h6) 28.♘g5.

606

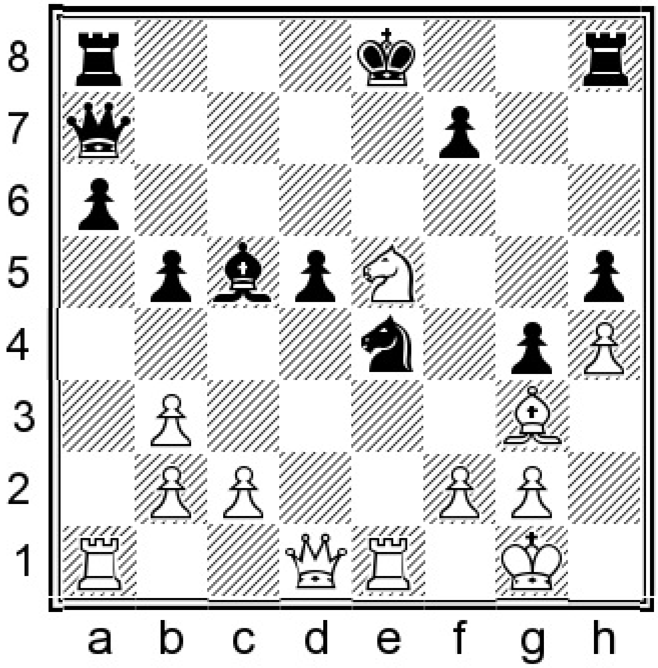


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

606 And again, as in the preceding example, the knight lands on h5 with decisive effect. Evidently, knights are not always badly placed on the edge of the board... **30.♖xd4! ♖xd4 31.♘h5** 1-0 Vachier-Lagrave-Dominguez Perez, Beijing blindfold 2011; 31...♖g8 32.♕e5+.

607

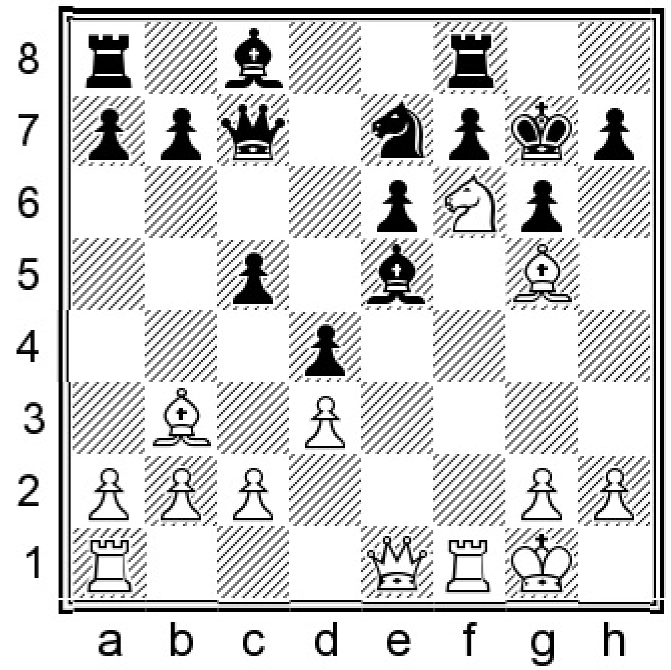

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h

White to play

Show/Hide Solution

607 **22.♖xe4! dxe4 23.♖xa6!** 1-0 Aveskulov-Shabala, Alushta ch-UKR 2011; 23...♕xa6 24.♕d7+.

608

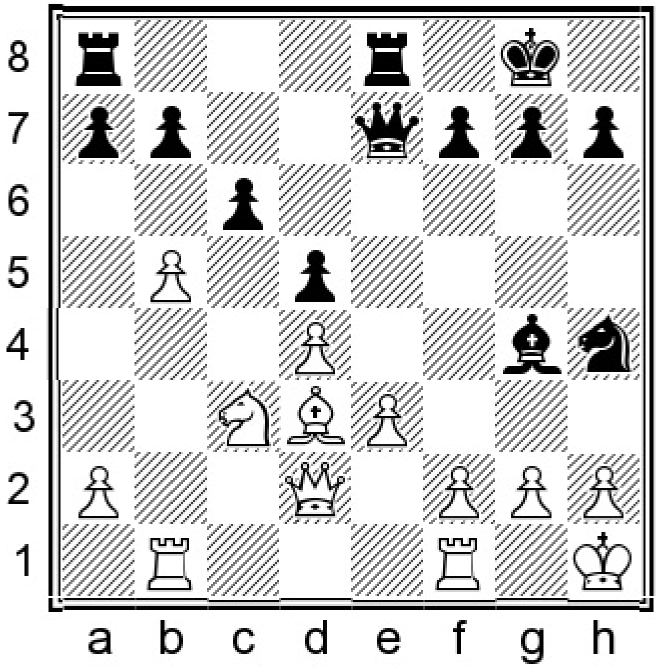

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h

White to play

Show/Hide Solution

608 **17.♗h6+! ♔h8 18.♕h4** Of course, 18.♗xf8 also wins easily. **18...♖g8 19.♗f8 h5 20.♕g5** 1-0. Mitkov-Mikhailiuk, Las Vegas 2007.

609

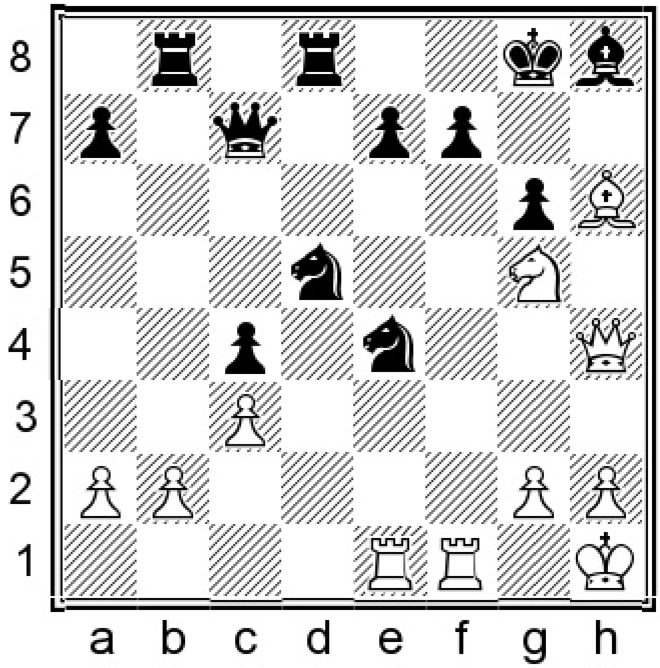


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

609 **17...♘f3! 18.♕d1** Both 18.gxf3 ♗xf3+ 19.♔g1 ♕g5# and 18.♕c2 ♕h4 19.h3 ♗xh3 also lose. **18...♘xh2 19.♗e2 ♕h4 20.♔g1** 20.g3 ♕h3. **20...♗xe2** Abdulghafour-Klovans, Istanbul ol 2000; White resigned because of 21.♕xe2 ♘g4.

610

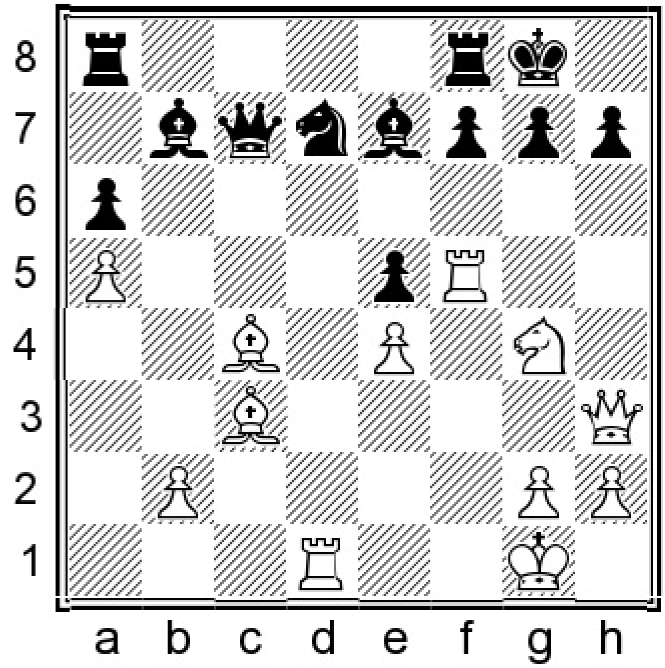


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

610 **23.♗g7! ♗xg7 24.♕h7+ ♔f8 25.♘e6+ ♔e8 26.♘xc7+ ♘xc7 27.♖xe4**, and soon Black resigned in Utkin-Sivokho, St Petersburg 2001.

611

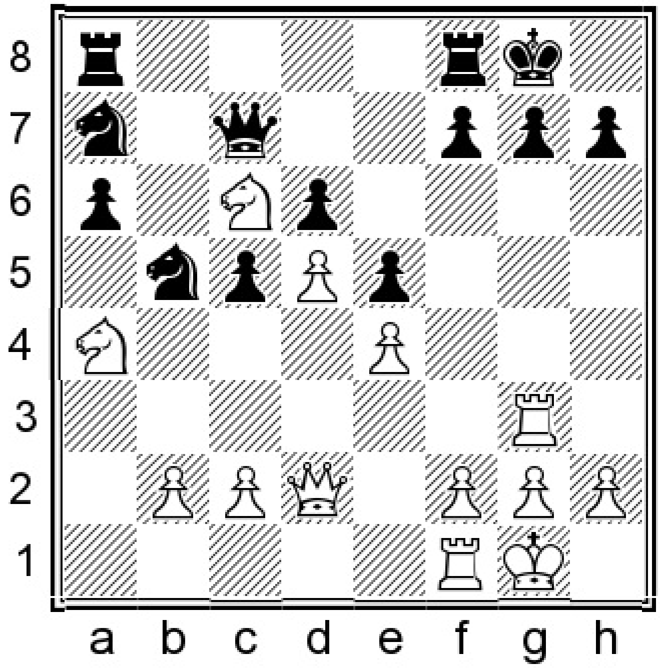


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

611 **26.♗xf7+! ♖xf7** If 26...♔h8, then 27.♕xh7+ ♔xh7 28.♖h5#. **27.♖xf7 ♔xf7 28.♖xd7! ♕c5+** 28...♕xd7 29.♘xe5+. **29.♔h1**, and White won in A.Sokolov-Markowski, Germany Bundesliga 2001/02.

612

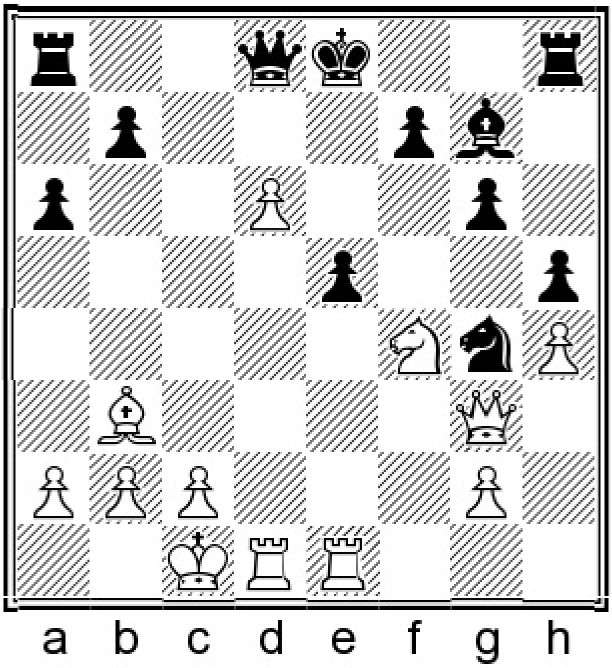


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

612 **25.♖xg7+!** Volzhin-Mantovani, St Vincent 2002; Black resigned because of 25...♔xg7 26.♕g5+ ♔h8 27.♕f6+ ♔g8 28.♘e7+.

613

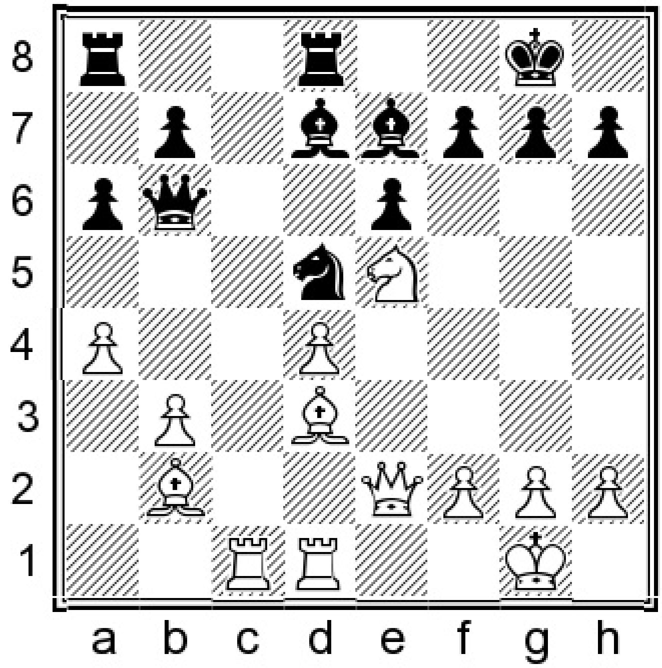


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

613 **24.♗xf7+!** Sutovsky- Azmaiparashvili, Moscow rapid 2002; Black resigned because of 24...♔xf7 25.♕b3+ ♔e8 (25...♔f8 26.♘e6+; 25...♔f6 26.♕e6#) 26.♕e6+ ♔f8 27.♘xg6#.

614

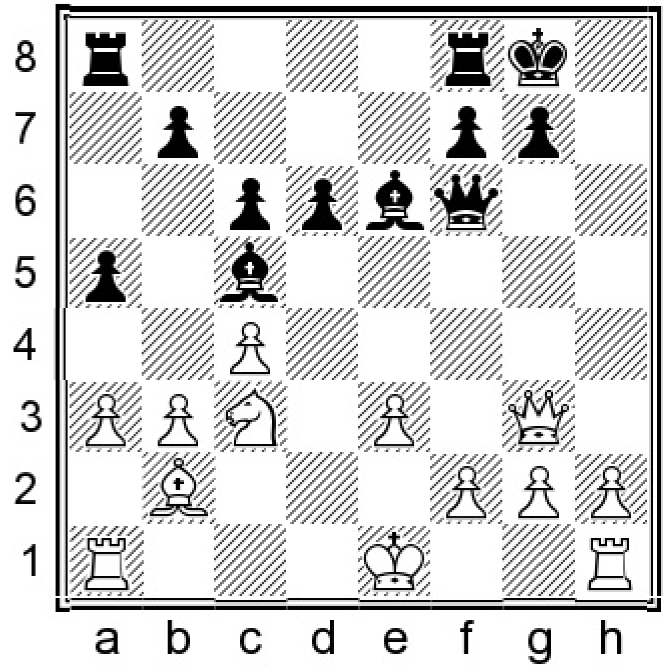


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

614 **18.♗xh7+! ♔f8** If 18...♔xh7 19.♕h5+ ♔g8 20.♕xf7+ ♔h7 21.♖d3 and Black has no defence to mate. **19.♕h5 ♗e8 20.♗g6! ♗d6** 20...fxg6 21.♕h8#. **21.♕h8+ ♔e7 22.♕xg7 ♗xe5 23.dxe5 ♕xb3 24.♗d4 ♕xa4 25.♗c5+ ♔d7 26.♖xd5+! exd5 27.♗d6 ♖dc8 28.♗f5+ ♔d8 29.♕f6#** Babushkin-Shimanov, Russia tt 2002.

615

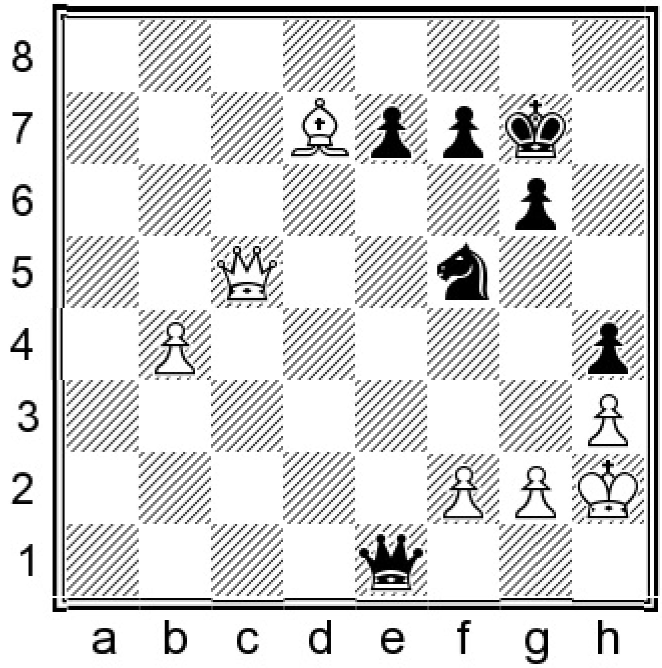


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

615 **16.♘d5! ♕h6** 16...♕g6 17.♘e7+ or 16...♕xb2 17.♘e7+ ♔h7 18.♕h4#. **17.♗xg7!** Mukhlisov-De Luna Butz, St Petersburg 2005; Black resigned because of 17...♕xg7 18.♘f6+ ♔h8 19.♕h4+.

616

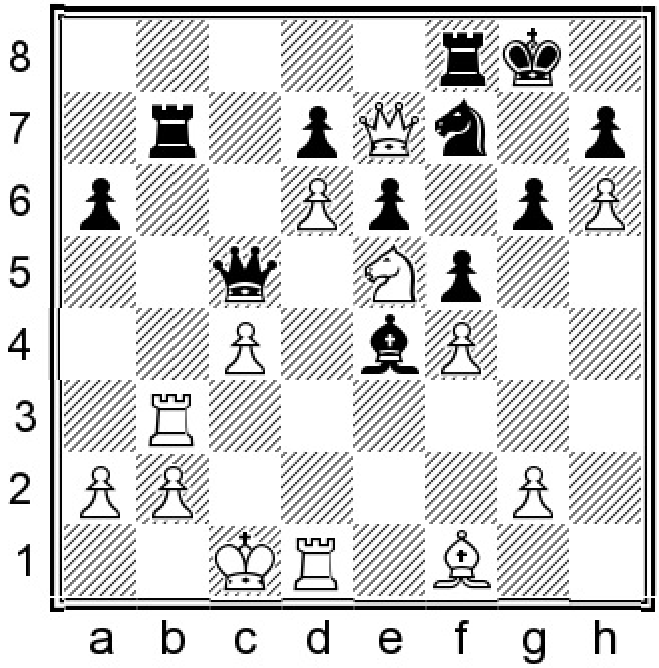


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

616 **42...♘g3! 43.♕d4+ e5 44.♕xh4 ♘e2** 0-1 Lanzani-Drazic, Bratto 2008.

617

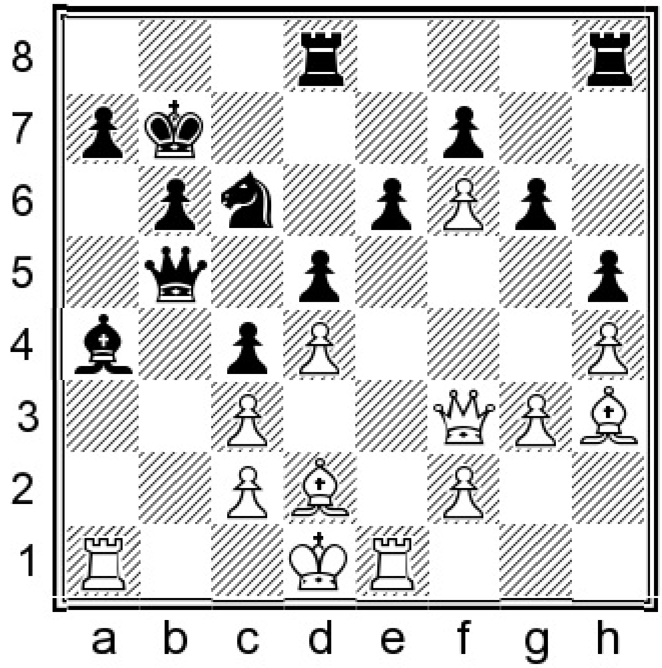


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

617 **30.♘xg6! ♖bb8** Or 30...hxg6 31.♕f6 ♘xh6 32.♕xg6+ ♔h8 33.♕xh6+ ♔g8 34.♕g6+ ♔h8 35.♖h3#. **31.♕f6** Jakovenko-Karr, France tt 2009; Black resigned – the mate threat is unstoppable: 31...♘xh6 32.♘e7#.

618



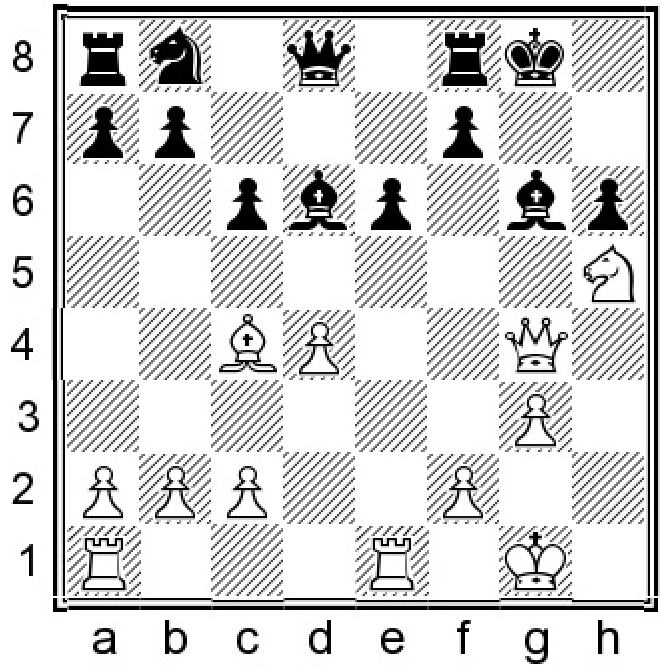
Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

618 **21...♗xc2+! 22.♔xc2 ♕b3+ 23.♔c1 ♘b4** 0-1 Cheparinov-Lopez Martinez, Rijeka Ech 2010; Black can defend against mate only at the cost of the queen.

Show in Text Mode

619

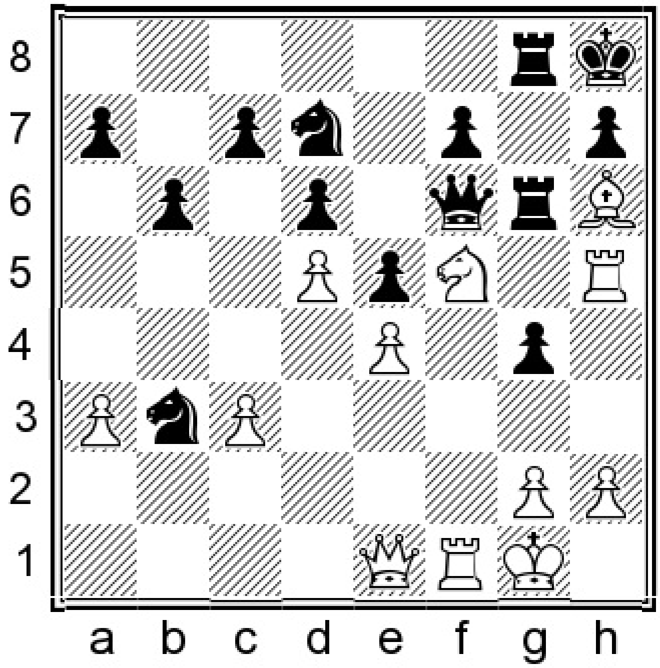


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

619 **17.♖xe6! ♔h8 18.♖f6 ♕e7 19.♗xf7 ♖xf7 20.♕xg6 ♖xf6 21.♘xf6** Baramidze-Natsidis, Bad Liebenzell ch-GER 2010; Black resigned because of 21...♕g7 22.♕xg7+ ♔xg7 23.♘e8+ ♔g6 24.♘xd6.

620

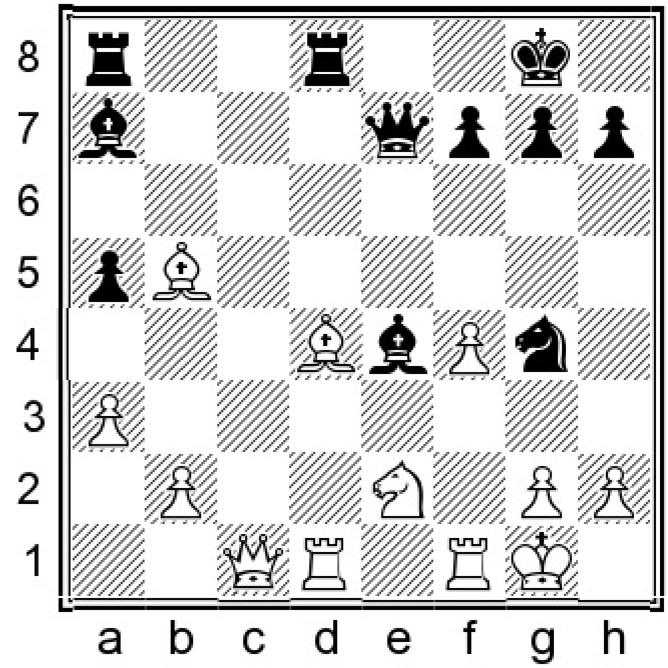

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h

White to play

Show/Hide Solution

620 **28.♗g5!** 1-0 Eljanov-Delchev, France tt 2010; Black loses after both 28...♕xg5 29.♖xg5 ♖xg5 30.♘h6, and 28...♖xg5 29.♖xh7+! ♔xh7 30.♕h4+ ♔g6 31.♕h6#.

621

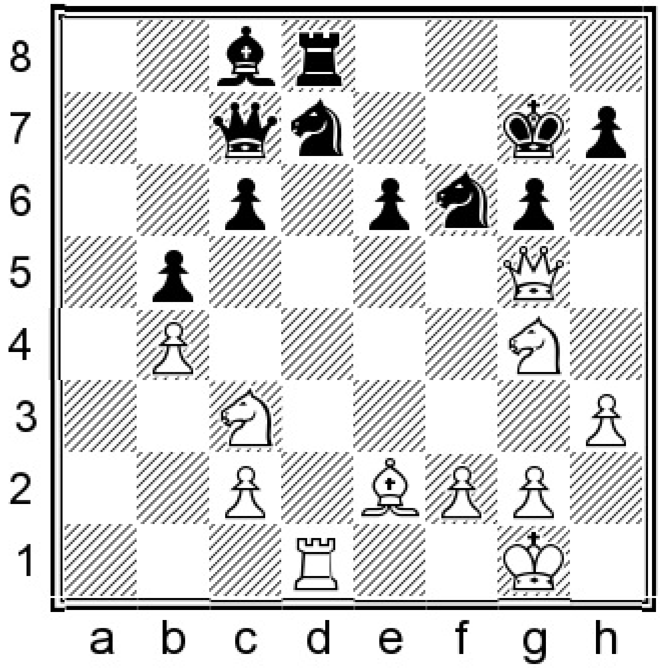


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

621 **23...♕h4! 24.h3 ♖xd4! 25.♖xd4 ♗xd4+ 26.♘xd4 ♕g3** 0-1 Düssel-Erdös, Vlissingen 2010.

622

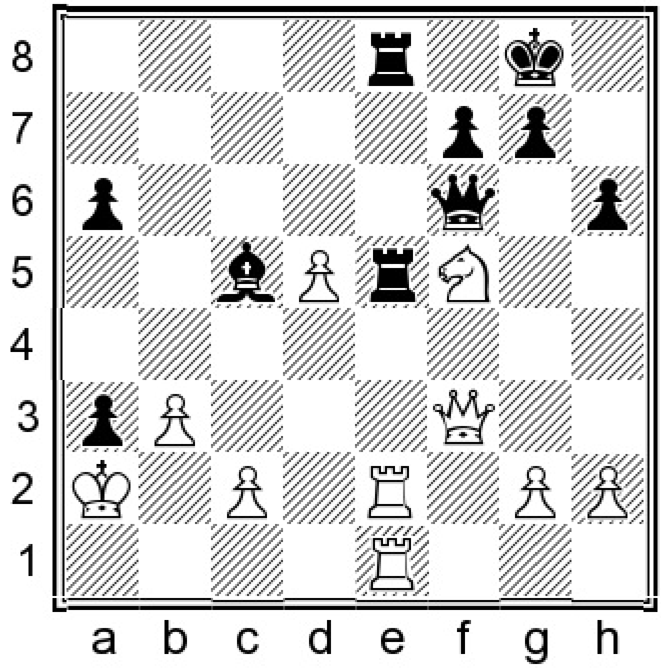


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

622 **29.♖xd7+!** 1-0 Miton-Danielsen, Skanderborg 2010; the variation 29...♘xd7 30.♕e7+ ♔h8 31.♘f6 offers Black no saving chances.

623

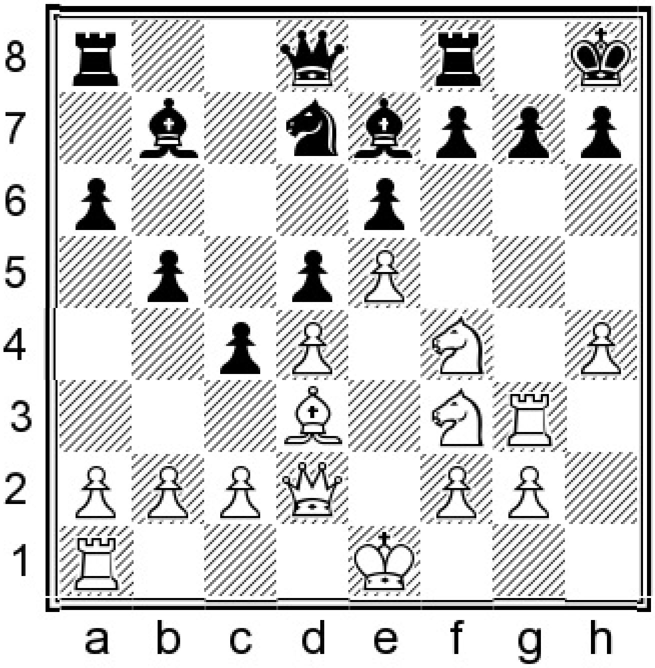


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

623 **29.♘xh6+! ♔f8** Nothing is changed by 29...♔h7 30.♖xe5 ♖xe5 31.♕xf6 gxf6 32.♖xe5 fxe5 33.♘xf7, and on 33...e4 there is the decisive 34.♘g5+. **30.♖xe5 ♖xe5 31.♖xe5** Borgo-Muir, Cento 2011; Black resigned, in view of 31...♕xe5 32.♕xf7#.

624

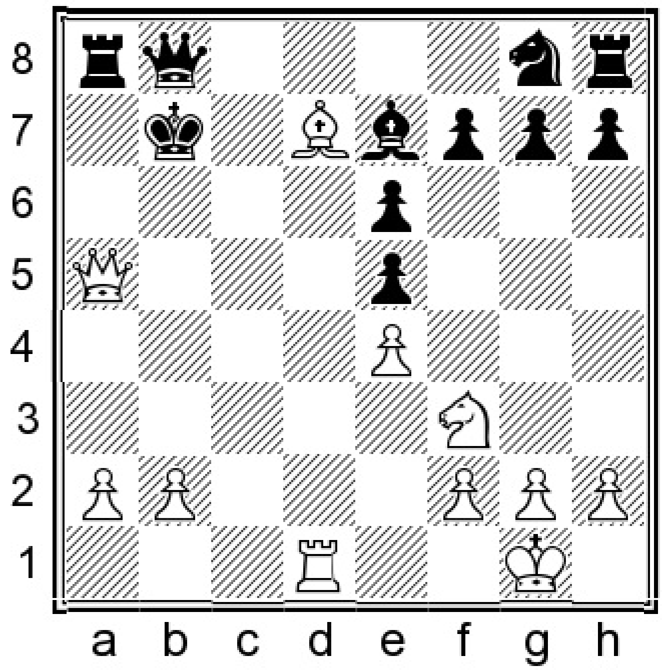


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

624 **15.♖xg7! cxd3** The rook cannot be taken: 15...♔xg7 16.♘h5+ ♔h8 17.♕h6 cxd3 18.♕g7#. **16.♘xe6! ♗g5 17.♕xd3 ♕a5+ 18.b4! ♕xb4+ 19.c3** 1-0 OstovicRogulj, Zagreb 2012.

625

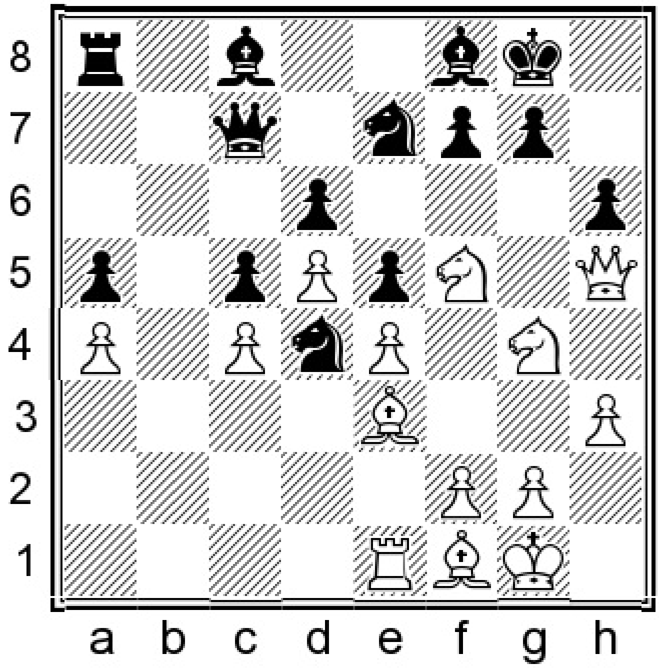


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

625 **22.♗c6+! ♔c8** White mates after 22...♔xc6 23.♘xe5+ ♔b7 (after 23...♕xe5 24.♕xe5 the black king is too badly placed and she cannot hold) 24.♕b5+ ♔a7 25.♘c6#, 24...♔c7 25.♕c6# or 24...♔c8 25.♕d7#. **23.♗xa8 ♕c7 24.♕a6+ ♔b8 25.♘xe5** 1-0 M.Muzychuk- Gaprindashvili, Batumi Wch rapid W 2012.

626

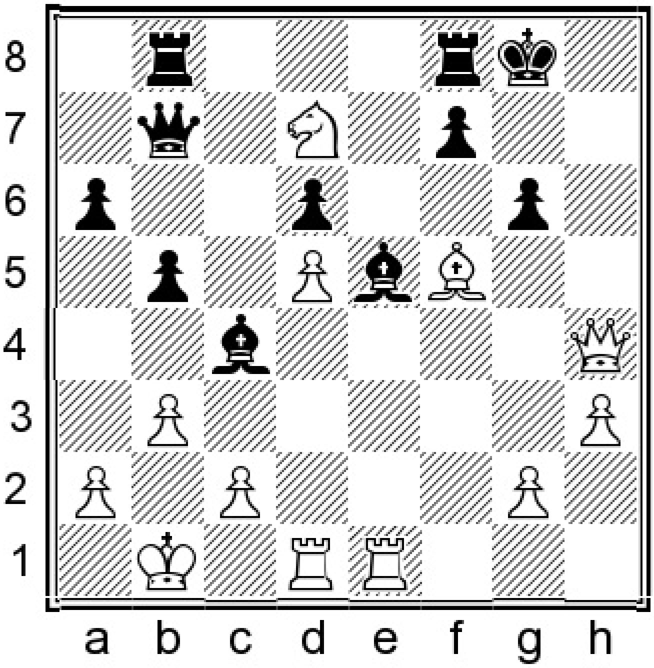


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

626 **30.♘fxh6+!** Gabrielian-Grigoriants, Voronezh 2012; Black resigned, because of 30...gxh6 31.♘f6+ ♔h8 32.♗xh6 and 30...♔h7 31.♘f6+ gxf6 32.♘g4+ ♔g8 33.♘xf6+ ♔g7 34.♕h6#.

627

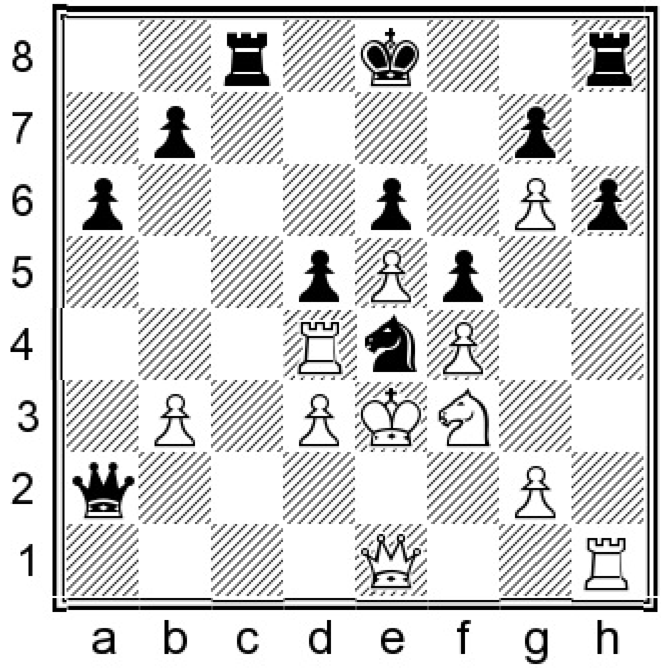


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

627 **27.♖xe5! dxe5 28.♕h6** 1-0 Agopov-Edouard, Istanbul ol 2012.

628

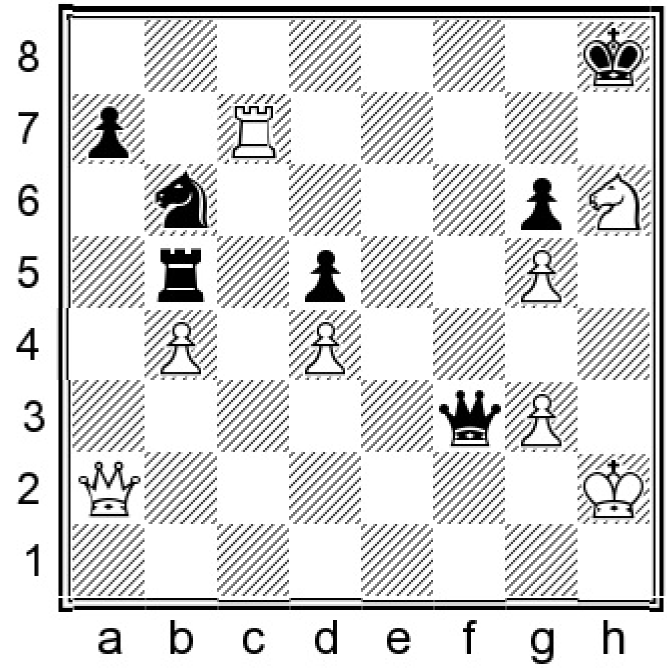

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h

Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

628 **24...♖c1!** 0-1 Vuelban-Naumkin, Florence 2012.

629

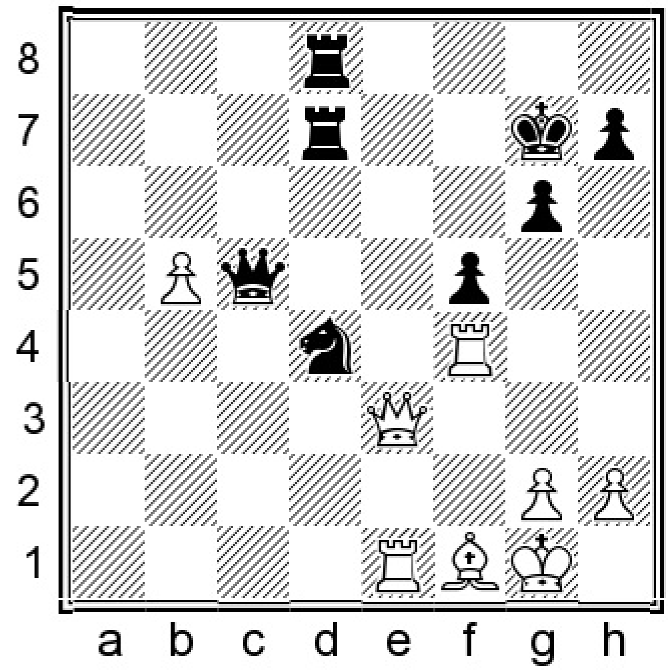


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

629 **49.♖h7+!** Khismatullin-Golovin, St Petersburg 2012; Black resigned because of 49...♔xh7 50.♕xa7+ ♔h8 51.♕b8+ ♔g7 52.♕g8#.

630

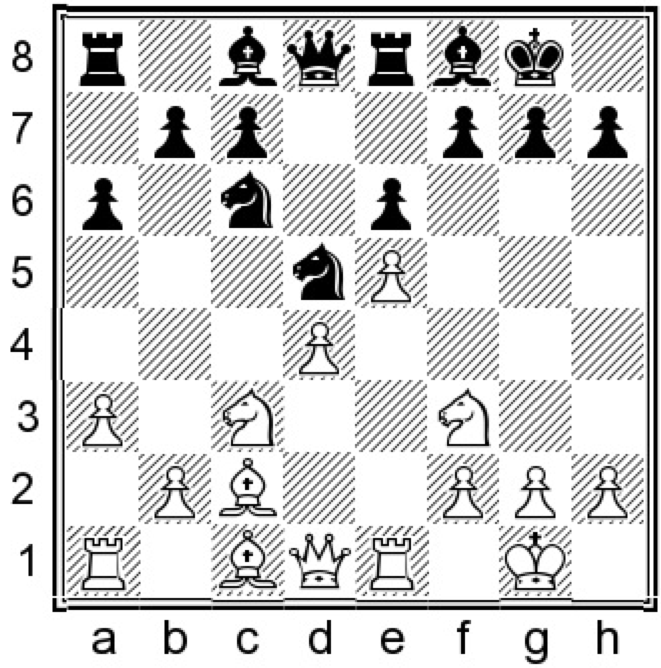


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

630 **41...♖e8!** 0-1 Perez Candelario-Ibarra Jerez, Spain tt 2012; 42.♕xe8 ♘f3+.

631

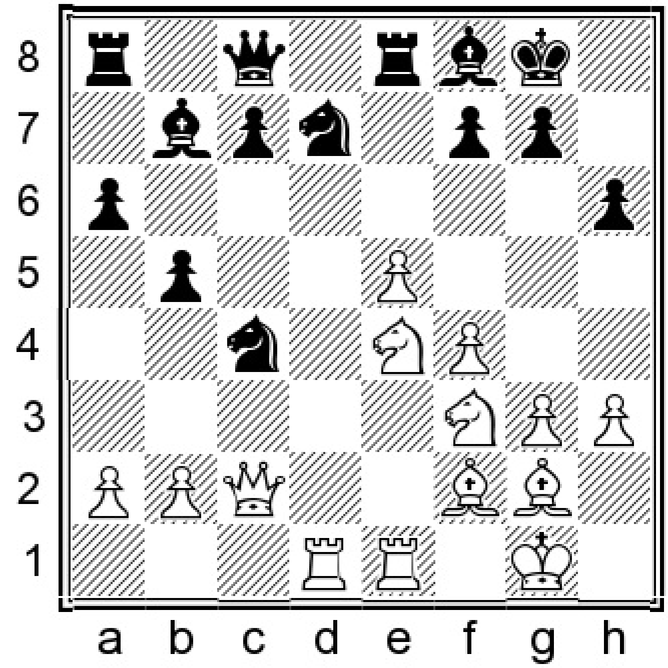

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h

White to play

Show/Hide Solution

631 **13.♗xh7+! ♔xh7 14.♘g5+ ♔g6 15.♕d3+ f5 16.exf6+ ♔xf6 17.♕f3+ ♔e7 18.♕f7+ ♔d6 19.♘ce4#** Potkin-Suslin, Moscow rapid 2012.

632

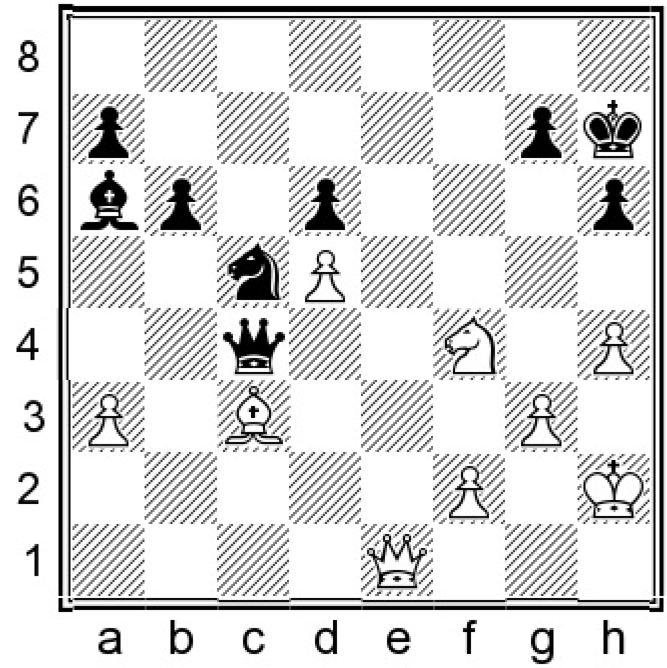

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h

White to play

Show/Hide Solution

632 **25.♘eg5! hxg5 26.♘xg5 g6 27.e6 ♔g7** Or 27...fxe6 28.♕xg6+ ♗g7 29.♕h7+ ♔f8 30.♖xe6, winning. **28.♗xb7 ♕xb7 29.♖xd7** 1-0 Ju Wenjun-Maisuradze, Astana Wch-tt W 2013.

633

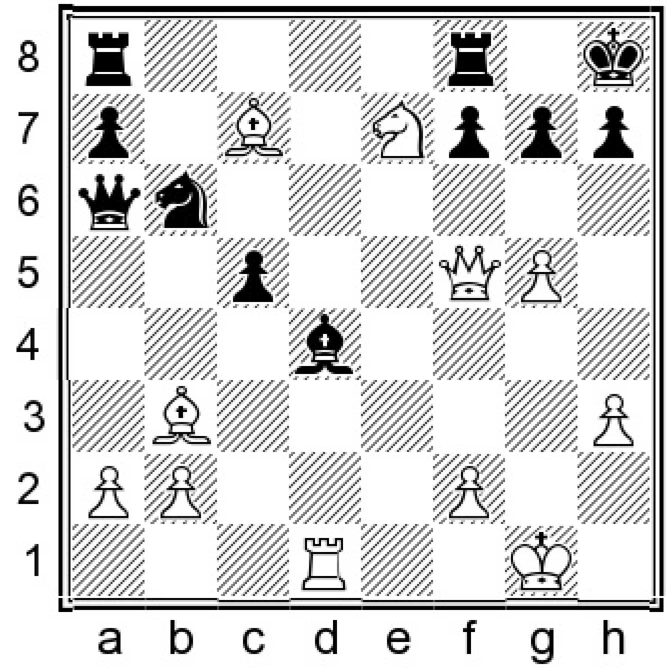


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

633 **36.♗xg7! ♘e4** Or 36...♔xg7 37.♕e7+ ♔g8 38.♕e8+ ♔g7 39.♘h5+ ♔h7 40.♕f7+ ♔h8 41.♕g7#. **37.♗a1 ♗b7 38.♕b1** 1-0 Gupta-Rahman, Dubai 2013.

634

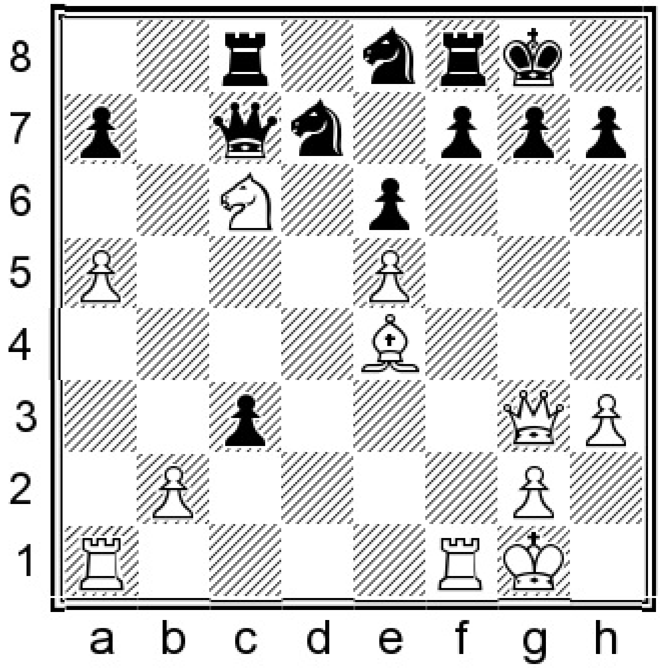


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

634 **28.♖xd4!** 1-0 Jobava-Lan Zilun, China tt 2013; bad is 28...cxd4 29.♗c2 g6 30.♕f6#.

635

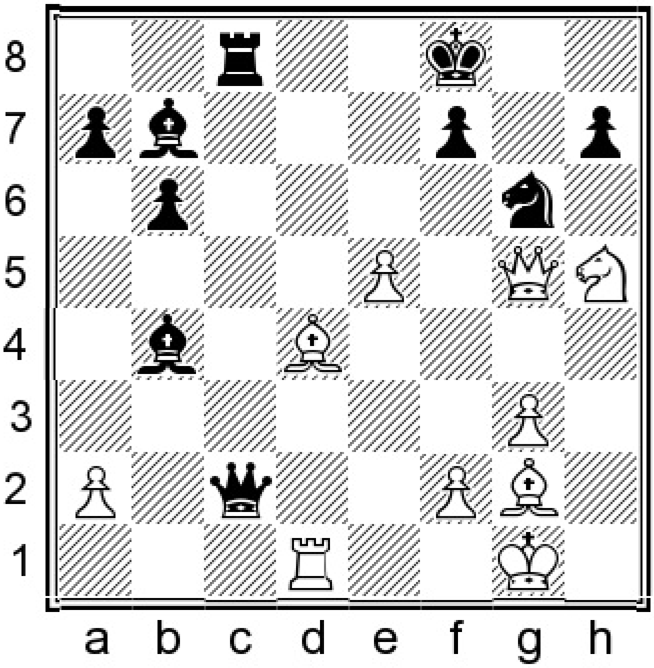

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h

White to play

Show/Hide Solution

635 **24.♗xh7+! ♔h8** 24...♔xh7 25.♕h4+ ♔g6 26.♘e7#. **25.♕h4** 1-0 Kosteniuk-Edouard, Geneva rapid 2013.

636

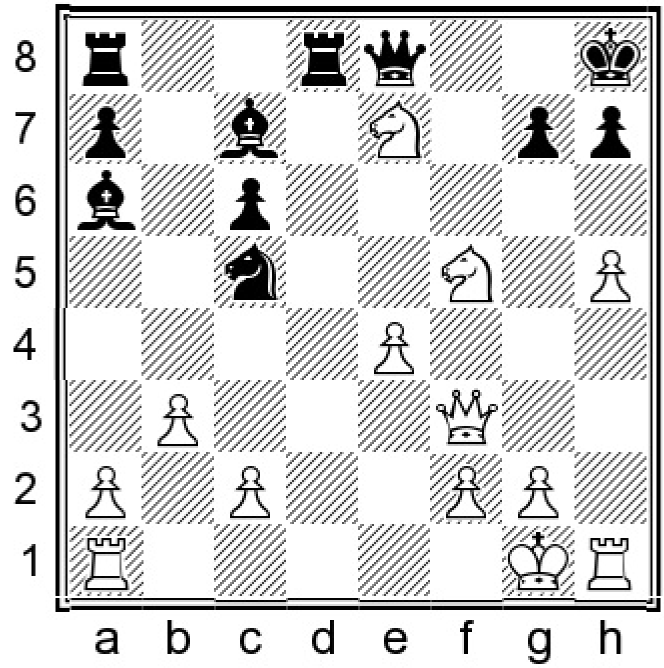


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

636 **33.♗c5+!** Korniushin-Kruchev, Yekaterinburg 2013; Black resigned because of 33...♗xc5 34.♖d8+ ♖xd8 35.♕xd8#.

637

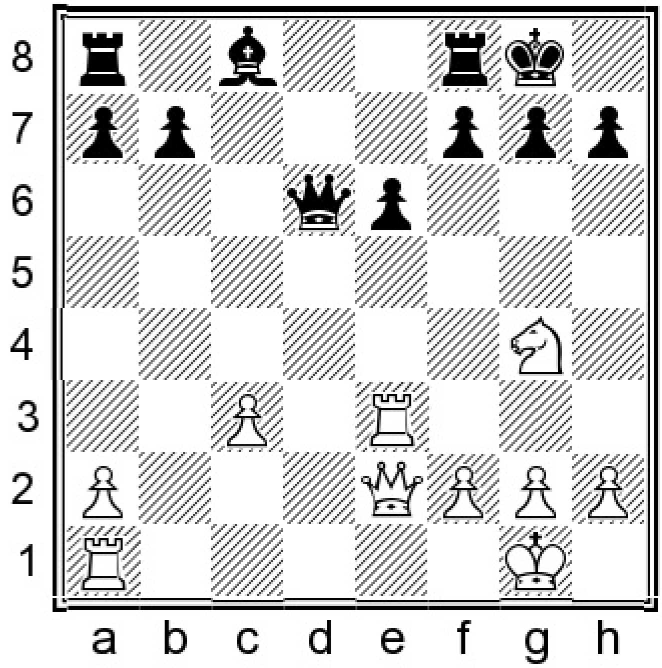


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

637 **29.♘g6+! hxg6 30.hxg6+ ♔g8 31.♖h8+!** 1-0 Kosteniuk-Carron, Grächen 2013.

638

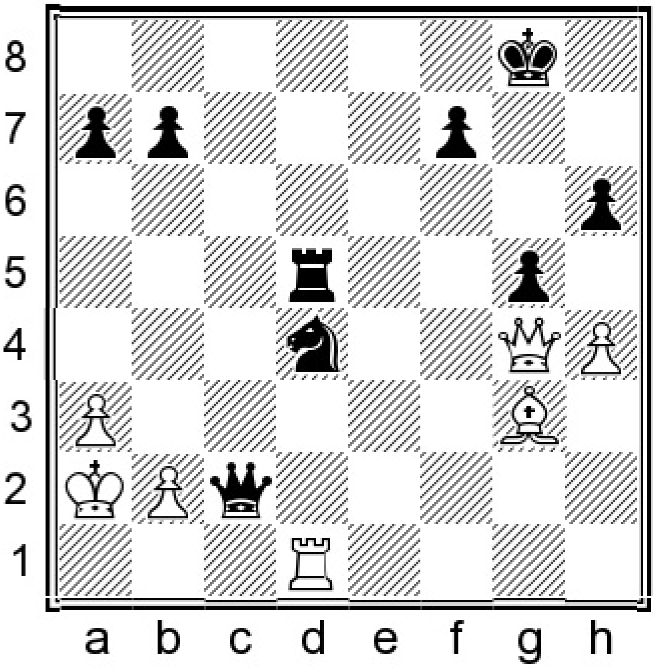

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h

White to play

Show/Hide Solution

638 **24.♘f6+! ♔h8 25.♖h3 h6 26.♕e3!** Williams-Weaving, Torquay ch-GBR 2013; Black resigned: there is no defence against 27.♖xh6+.

639

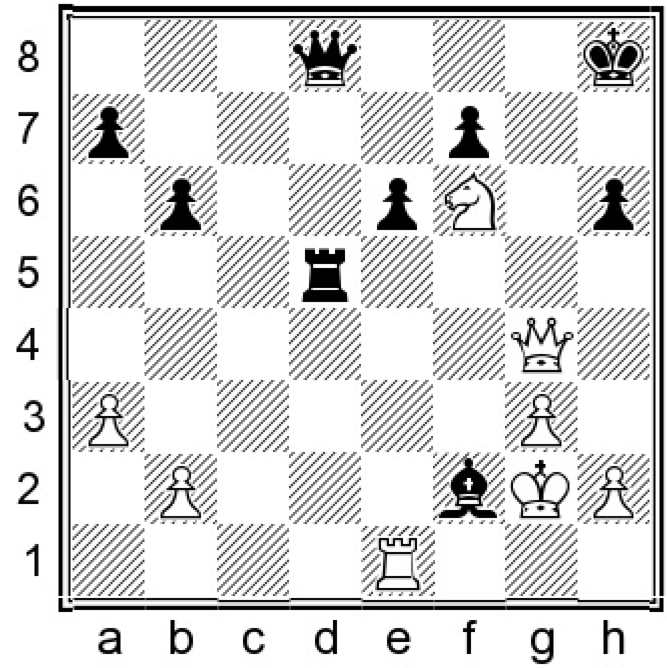


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

639 **30...♘e2!** 0-1 M.Rakic-Zhukova, Belgrade Ech W 2013; there is no defence: 31.♖e1 ♖b5 or 31.♖xd5 ♘c3+ 32.♔a1 ♕b1#.

640

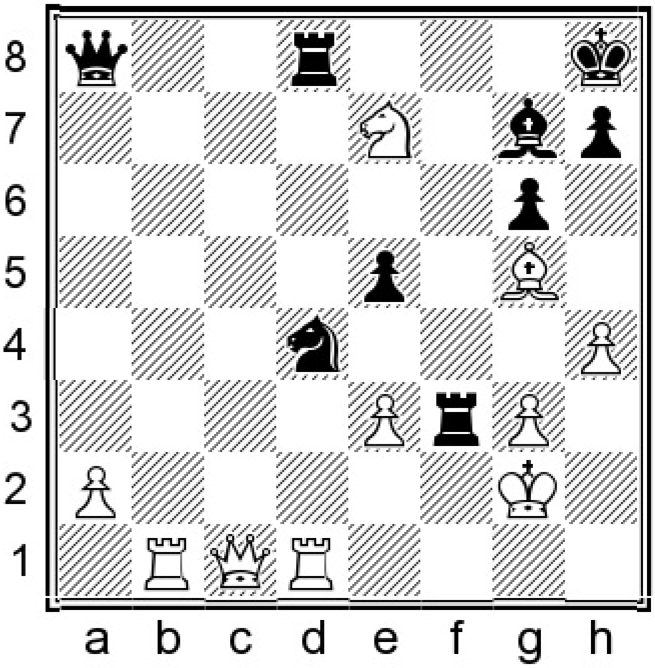


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

640 **38.♖xe6! ♖g5** 38...fxe6 39.♕g6. **39.♕e4** 1-0 Bu Xiangzhi-Tologontegin, Khanty-Mansiysk ol 2010.

641

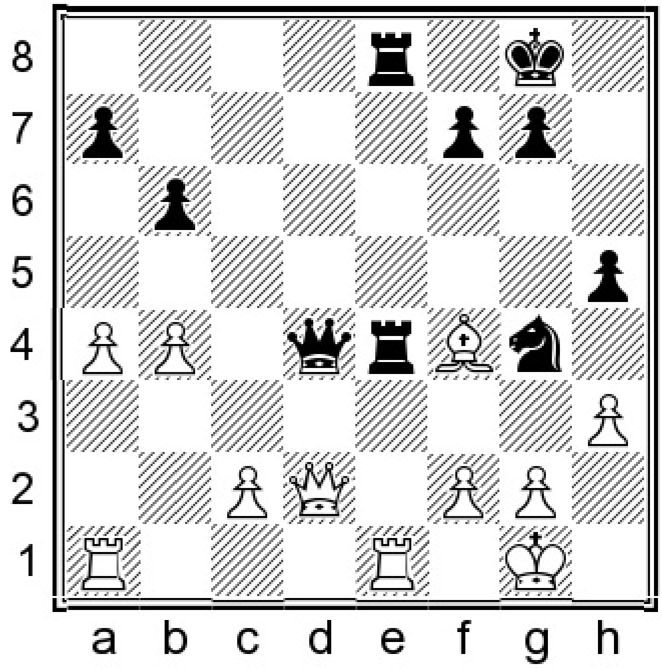

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h

Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

641 **31...♖f2+!** T.Olafsson-Ziska, Reykjavik 2013; White resigned because of 32.♔xf2 ♕f3+ 33.♔g1 ♘e2+ 34.♔h2 ♕xg3+ 35.♔h1 ♕h3#.

642

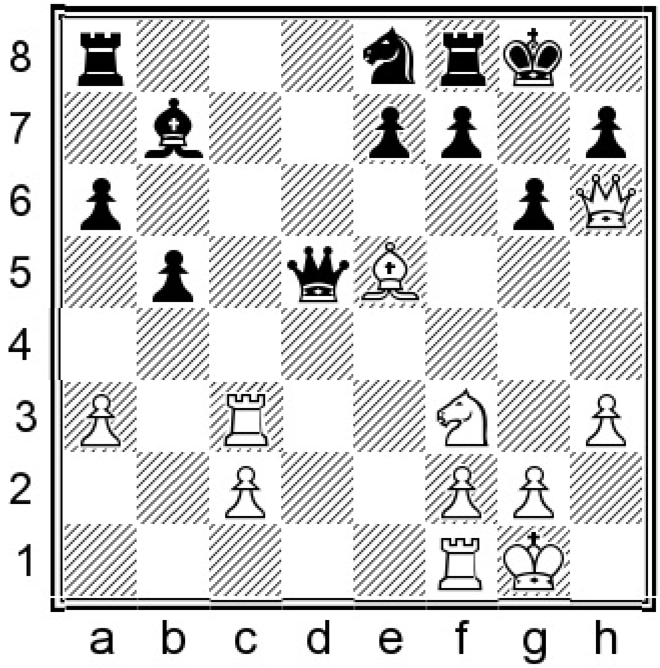


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

642 **25...♖e2!** 0-1 Janev-Kesidis, Blagoevgrad 2013.

643

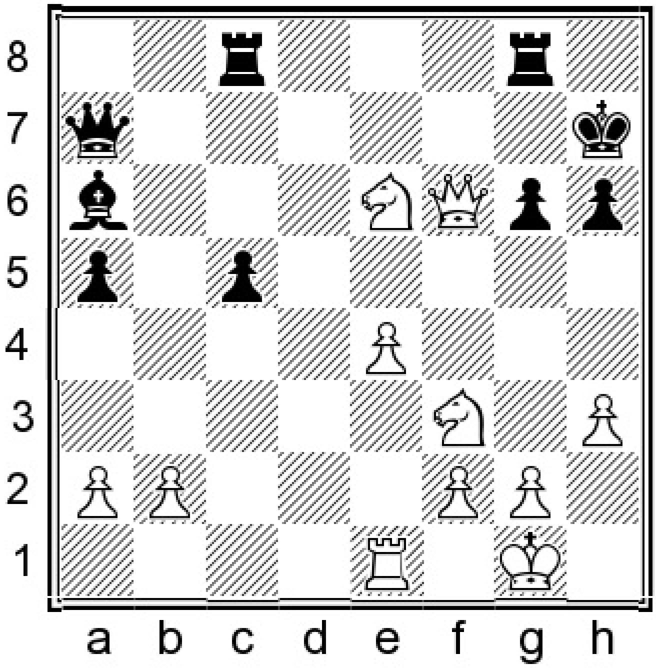


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

643 **22.♖c5! ♕xc5** The queen must be deflected from the long diagonal to free the knight. If 22...♕e4, then 23.♖e1 ♕f5 24.♘g5. **23.♘g5** 1-0 Bosiocic-Mons, Austria Bundesliga 2013/14.

644

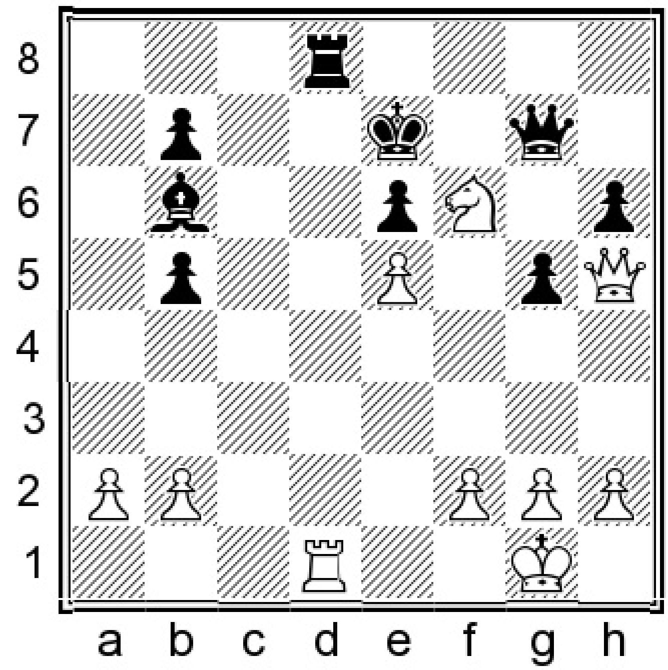


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

644 **29.♘fg5+! hxg5 30.♘xg5+ ♔h6 31.♘e6 ♗e2 32.♖xe2** 1-0 Kljako-Videnova, Zadar 2013.

645

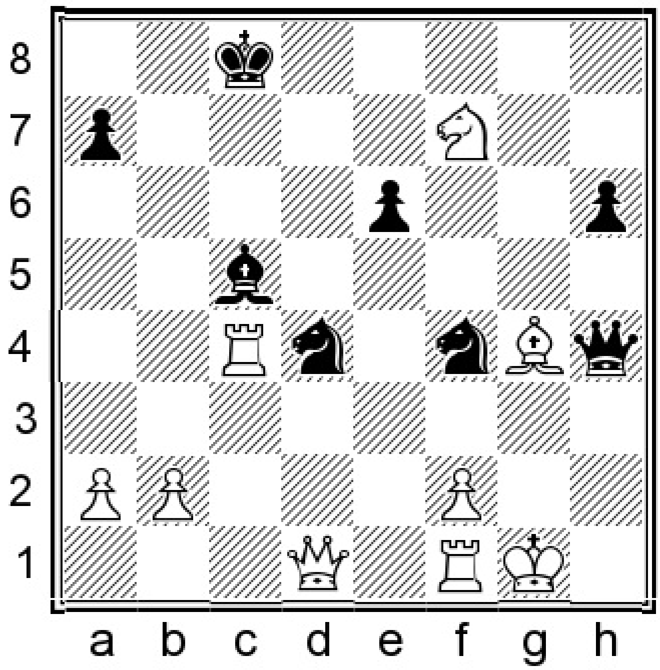


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

645 **29.♖d7+! ♔f8 30.♖xd8+** 1-0 Krantz-Jogstad, Stockholm 2013/14.

646

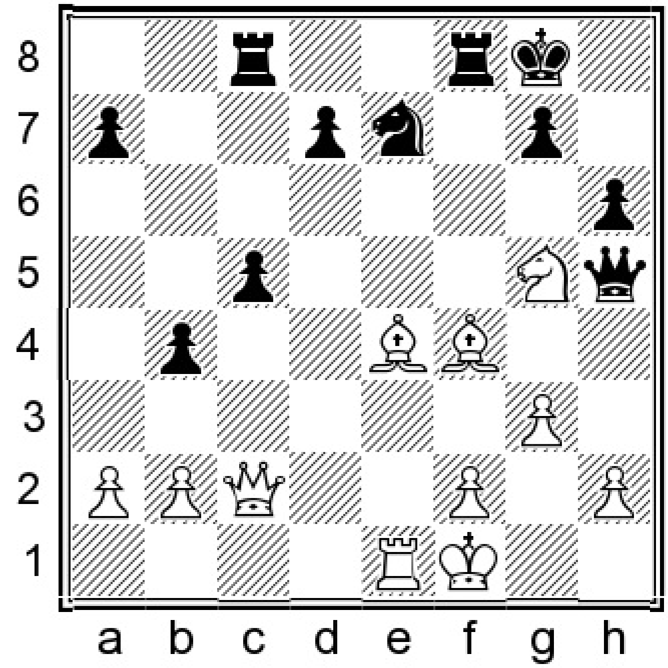

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h

Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

646 In this position, White resigned, without waiting for **26...♘de2+! 27.♗xe2 ♕g3+ 28.♔h1 ♕g2#** S.Bekker Jensen-Williams, Reykjavik 2013.

647

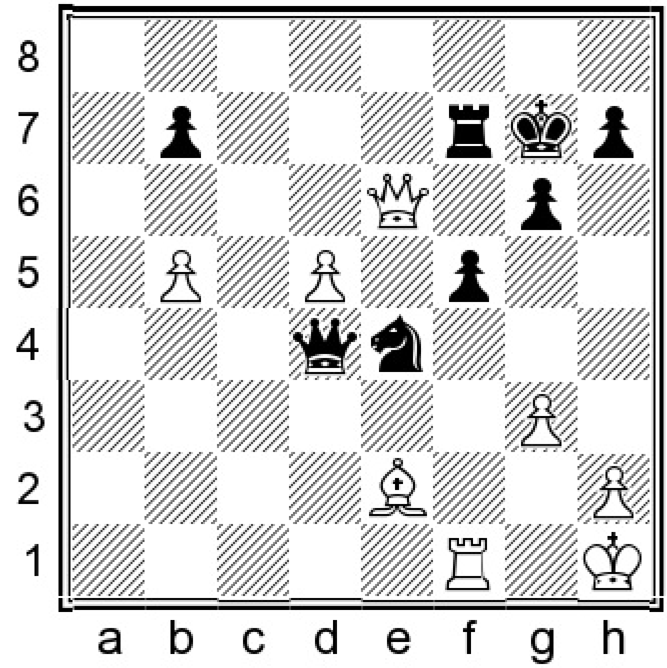

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h

White to play

Show/Hide Solution

647 **21.♗d5+!** 1-0 Beliavsky-Kvon, Al-Ain tt 2012; Black is mated on h7.

648

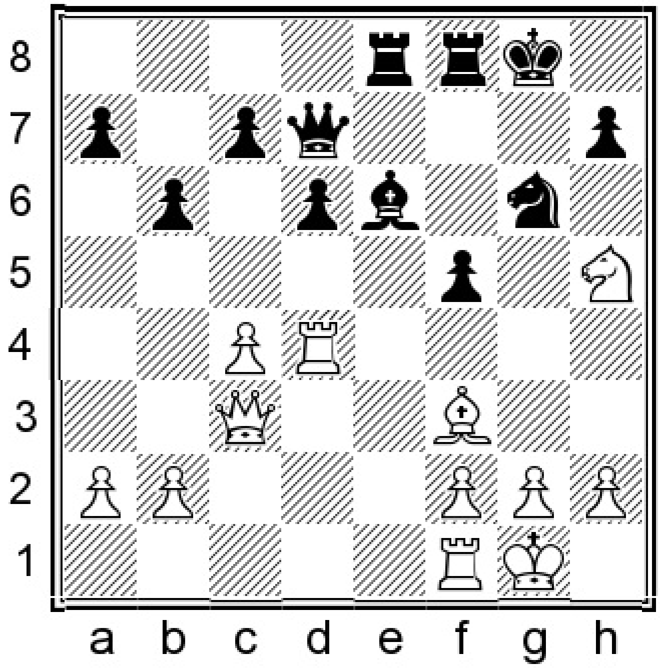


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

648 **32...♘g5!** 0-1 A.Rombaldoni-Krasenkow, Stockholm 2012/13; if 33.♕d6 ♕e4+ or 33.♕e8 ♕xd5+ 34.♔g1 ♘h3#.

649

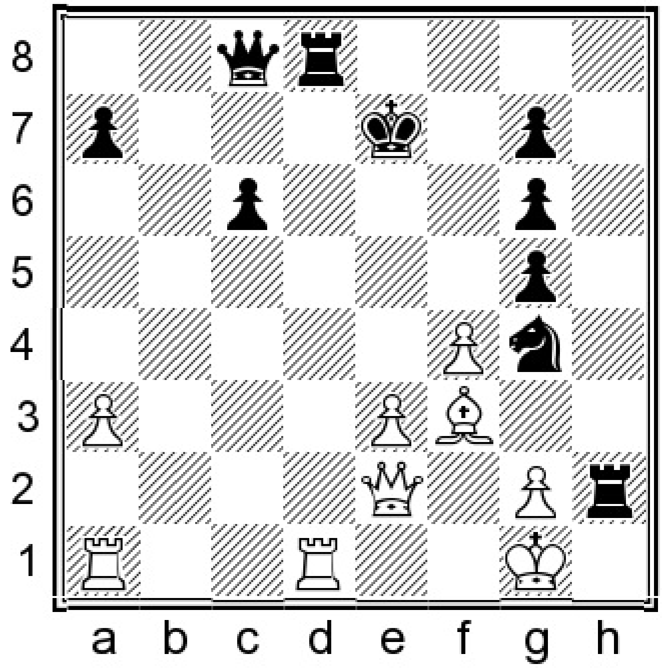


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

649 **25.♗c6!!** 1-0 Malakhov-Salgado Lopez, Plovdiv Ech 2012; 25...♕xc6 26.♖xd6!.

650

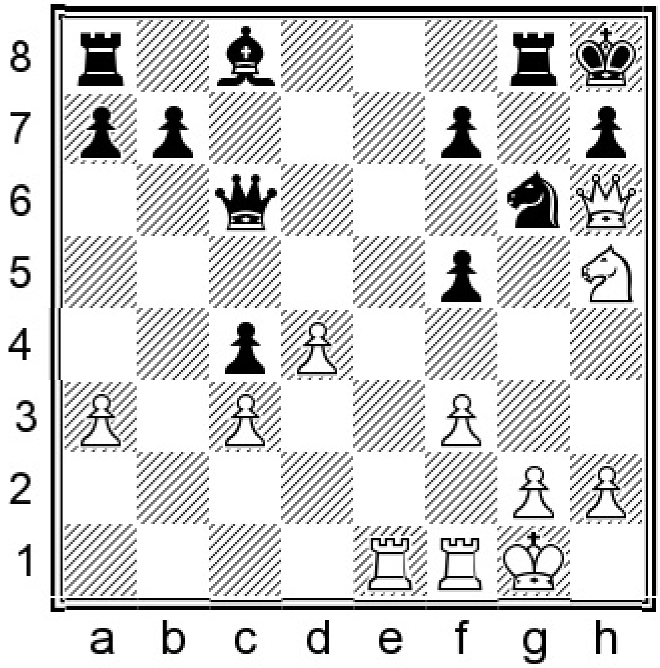


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

650 **28...♖h1+!** T.Brown-Fiebig, Ohrid tt 2009; White resigned because of 29.♔xh1 ♖h8+ (more accurate than 29...♖xd1+ 30.♕xd1 ♕h8+ 31.♔g1 ♕h2+ 32.♔f1 ♘xe3+ 33.♔e2) 30.♔g1 ♖h1+ 31.♔xh1 ♕h8+ 32.♔g1 ♕h2+ 33.♔f1 ♕h1#.

651

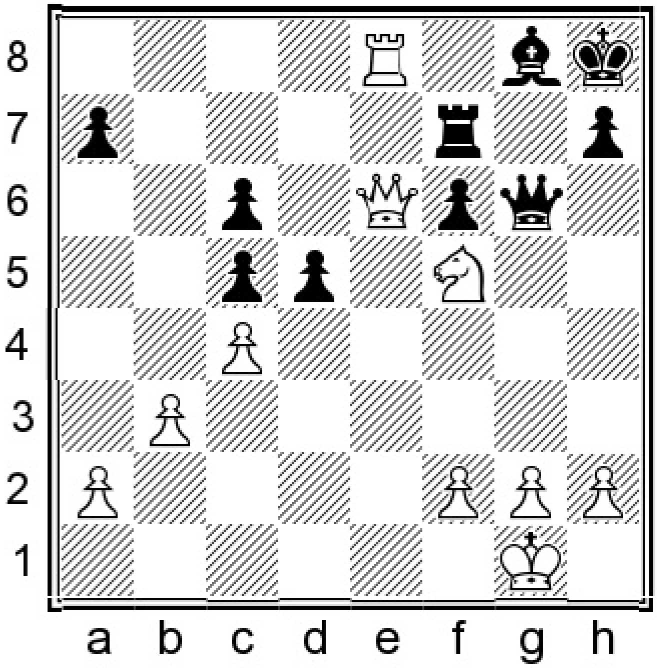


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

651 **27.♖e8! ♕xe8** The threat was 28.♕g7#; 27...♘f8 also loses, to 28.♘f6! and then 29.♖xf8 with mate on h7. **28.♘f6 ♕e3+ 29.♕xe3**, and White won in Prusikin-Kortchnoi, Switzerland tt 2005.

652

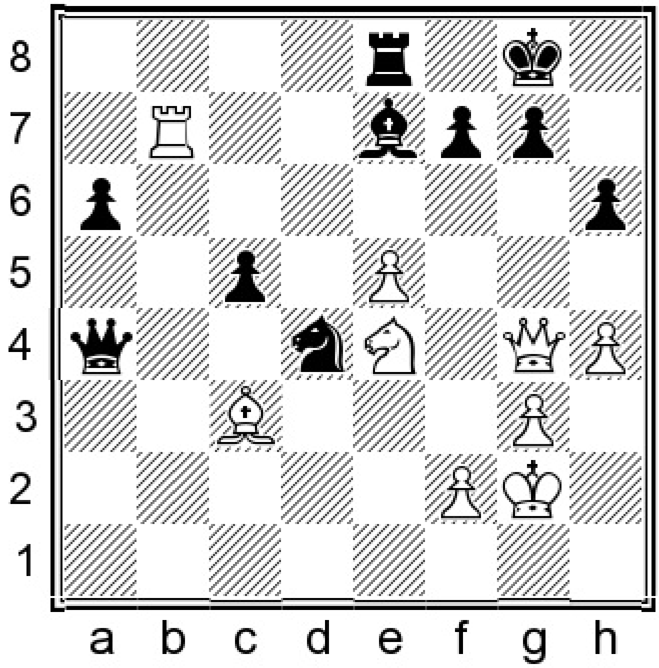


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

652 **31.♖xg8+! ♕xg8** 31...♔xg8 32.♘e7+. **32.♘h6 ♕g6 33.♕c8+!** Lagno-Nemcova, Plovdiv Ech W 2008; Black resigned, in view of 33...♔g7 34.♘f5+!. Not 33.♘xf7+? ♔g7 or 33.♕xf7?? ♕b1#.

653

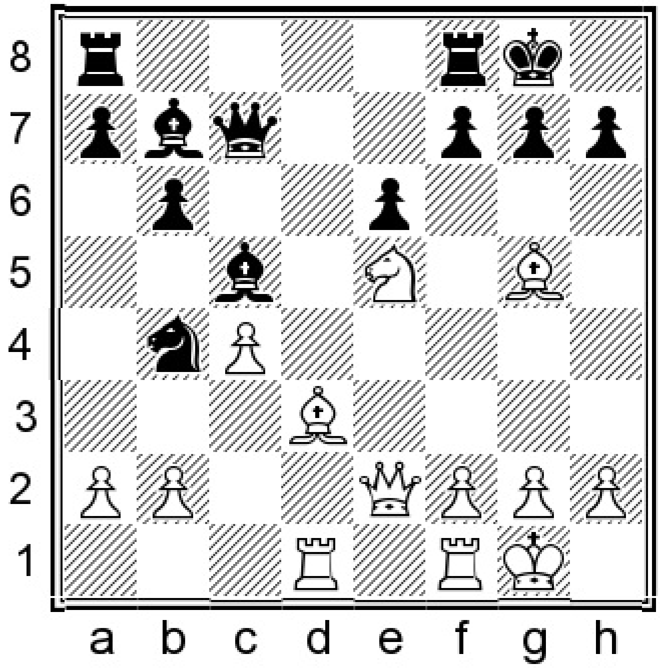


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

653 **32.♖xe7! ♖xe7 33.♘f6+** Navara-Bruzon Batista, Havana 2011; taking control of e8. Black resigned, without waiting for 33...♔f8 34.♕c8+ ♖e8 35.♕xc5+ ♖e7 36.♕c8+ ♖e8 37.♗b4+.

654

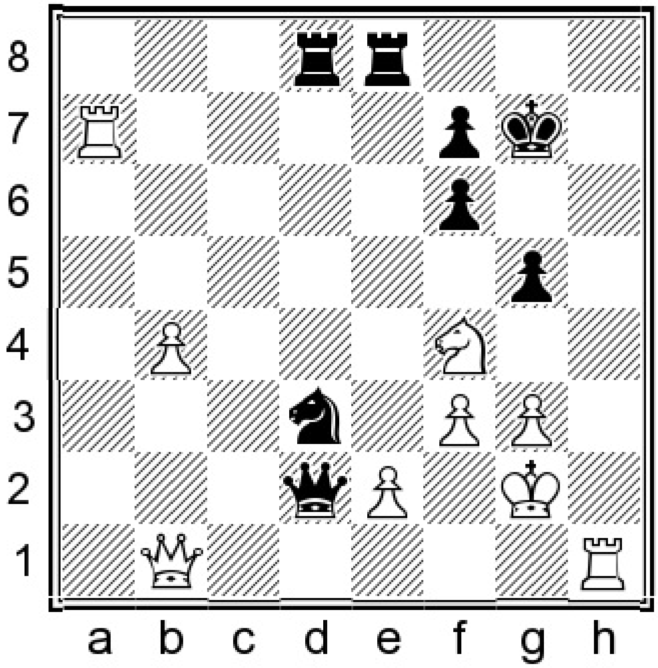

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h

White to play

Show/Hide Solution

654 **16.♗xh7+! ♔xh7 17.♖d7 ♕c8 18.♕h5+ ♔g8 19.♗f6!** Black resigned in view of 19...♘d5 20.♘g6 or 19...gxf6 20.♖xf7, Ayupov-Trifonov, Kazan 2012.

655

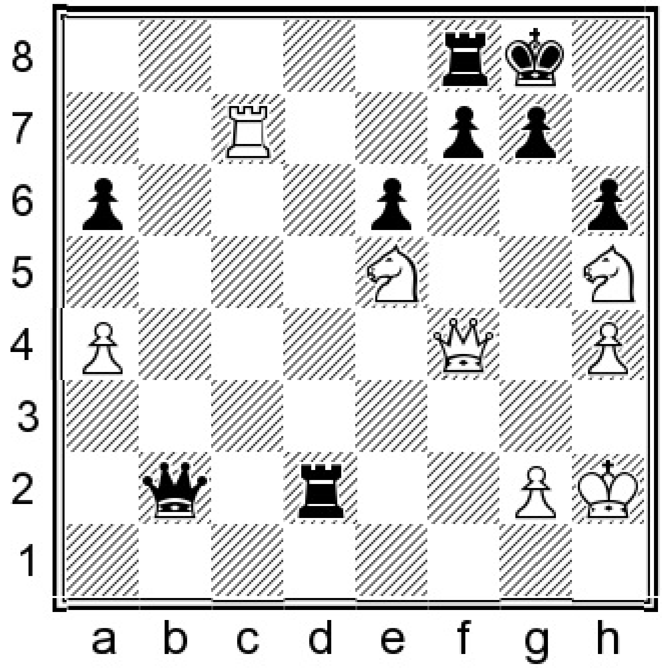


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

655 Here the combination is harder to see than to calculate: **43.♖xf7+! ♔g8** No better was 43...♔xf7 44.♕b3+ ♔g7 (44...♔e7 45.♖h7+ ♔d6 46.♕d5#) 45.♖h7+! ♔xh7 46.♕f7+ with mate next move. **44.♖h8+! ♔xf7** 44...♔xh8 45.♕h1+. **45.♕b3+ ♔g7 46.♖h7+** 1-0 Abramovic-Markovic, Vrnjacka Banja ch-SRB 2012.

656

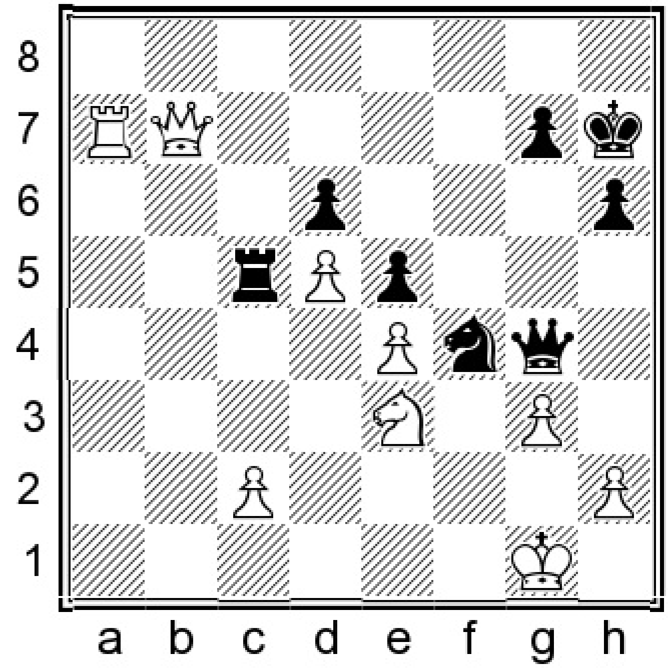


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

656 **35.♘f6+! gxf6** If 35...♔h8, then 36.♘g6+ fxg6 37.♕xh6+! gxh6 38.♖h7#. **36.♕g3+ ♔h7** 36...♔h8 37.♘xf7+ ♖xf7 38.♖c8+. **37.♖xf7+** 1-0 Ivanchuk-Wojtaszek, Istanbul ol 2012.

657



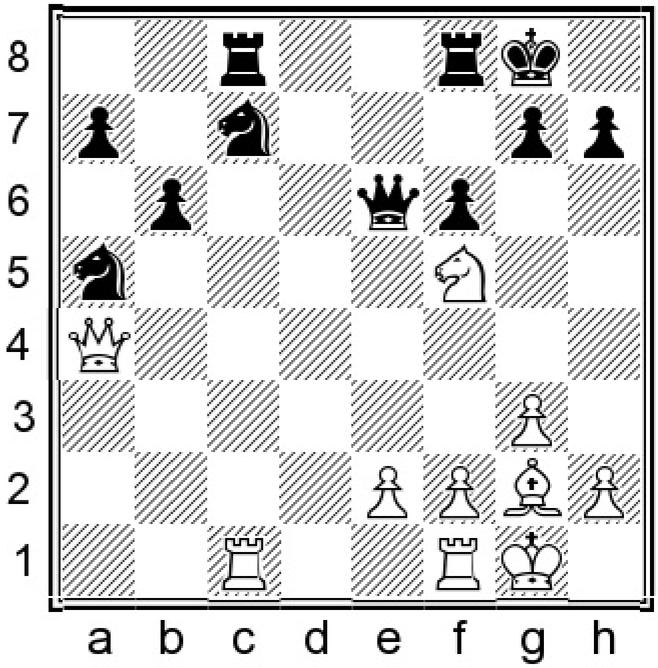
Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

657 **41...♘h3+! 42.♔g2 ♖xc2+!** Firat-Brunello, Legnica Ech 2013; an elegant deflection. White resigned because of 43.♘xc2 ♘f4+ 44.♔g1 ♕d1+ 45.♔f2 ♕e2+ 46.♔g1 ♕g2#.

You may ask: what prevents the immediate 41...♖xc2 ? Then there is the zwischenzug 42.♕xg7+, exchanging all the major pieces.

658


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h

White to play

Show/Hide Solution

658 **23.♕g4 g6** 23...♖f7 24.♖xc7 and 25.♘h6+. **24.♗d5!** 1-0 Panjwani-Bykhovsky, St Louis 2013.

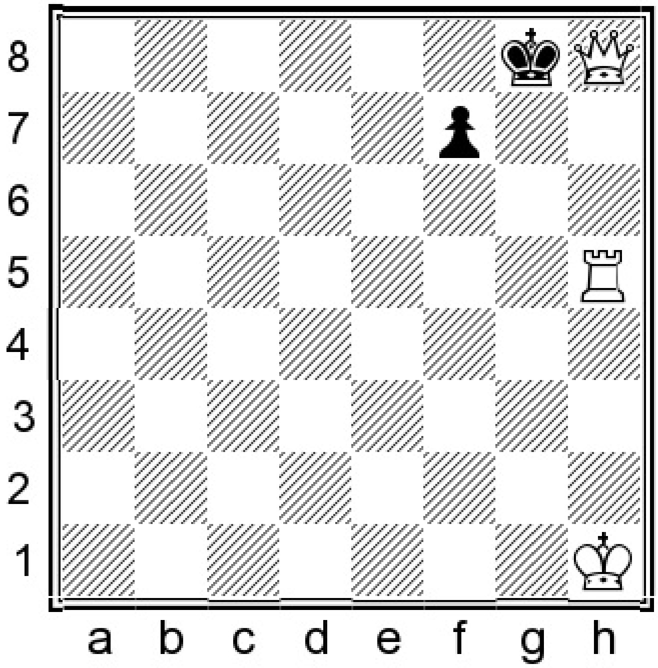
Chapter 9

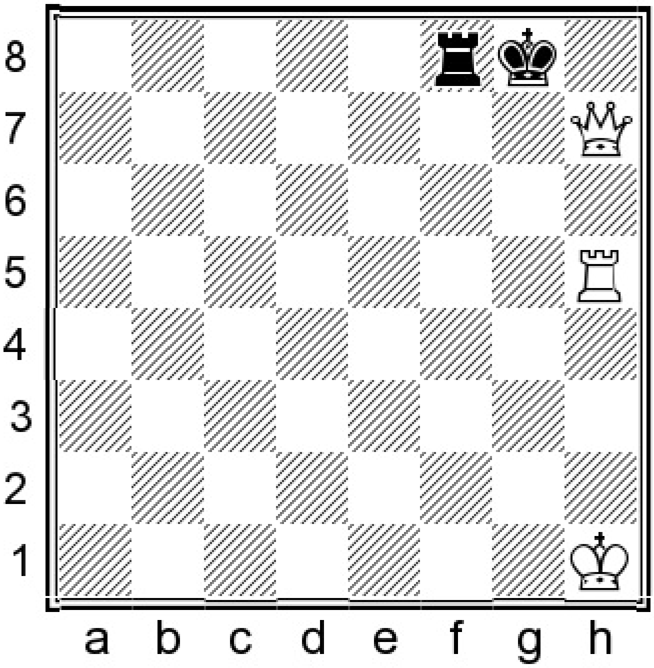
Queen and rook

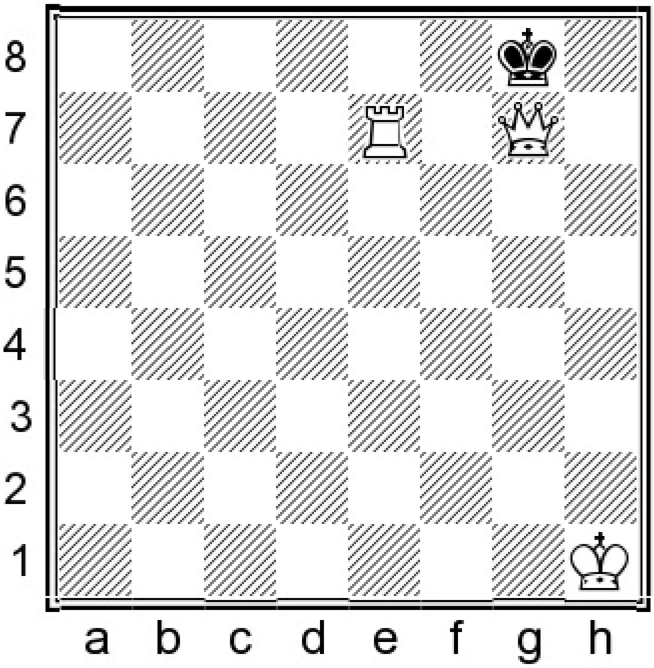
Queen and rook are a powerful pairing, especially when there are open lines. One of the most common attacking ideas in practical play is doubling the major pieces on the rook's file, against the enemy king's position. If the defender hesitates in securing his bastions, then he can be mated in the corner or on the adjacent file.

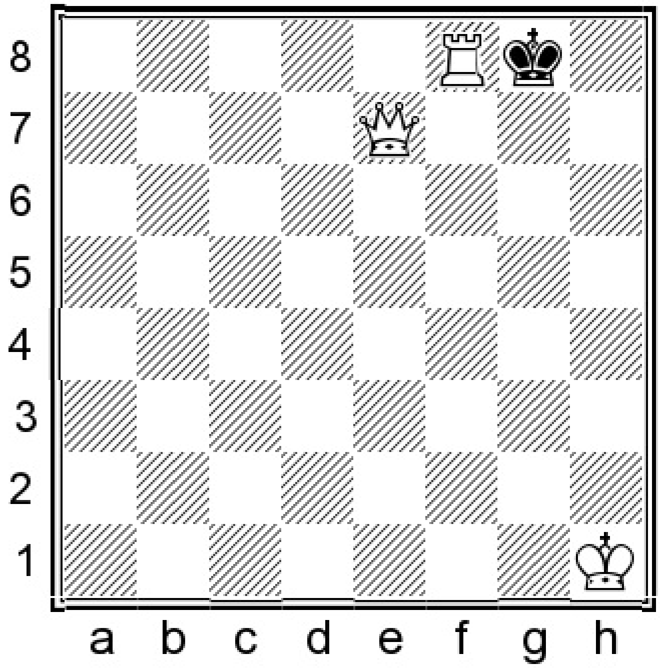
Another common story is doubling queen and rook along the seventh (second) rank. The strength of two rooks on the seventh is well-known, but queen and rook are even stronger!

Each of these pieces can mate on the back rank if the king does not have a bolthole. And together they can give a linear mate – the defender's pawns prevent the king's escape.

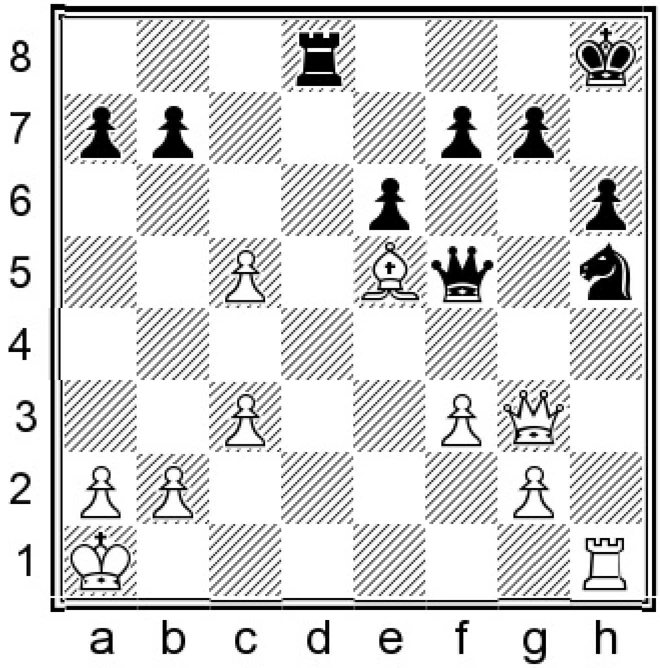



8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h



Viswanathan Anand 2770
Alexey Dreev 2676
Moscow Wch k.o. 2001 (4)



White to play

The tactical blow landed by the future World Champion is so hidden that even as strong a player as Dreev missed it, when he incautiously took the pawn on h5 on the previous move.

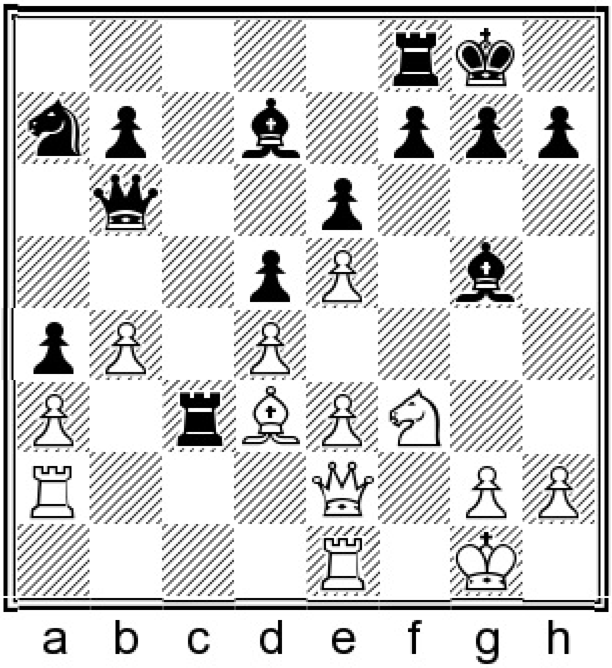
27.♗xg7+! ♔h7

After 27...♘xg7 28.♕h4 the rook cannot move because of mate on h8, whilst after 28...f6 29.♕xh6+ ♔g8 30.♕h8+ White gets a decisive material advantage.

28.♕h4 ♖d2 29.♗xh6! ♔xh6 30.g4 ♕g5 31.♕xh5+ ♕xh5 32.♖xh5+ ♔g7 33.a4

And White won the endgame.

Vasily Yemelin 2490
Esad Goric 2296
Rijeka 2002 (2)



White to play

Here we see another illustration of the old idea of sacrificing a bishop on h7, to draw the enemy king out towards the centre.

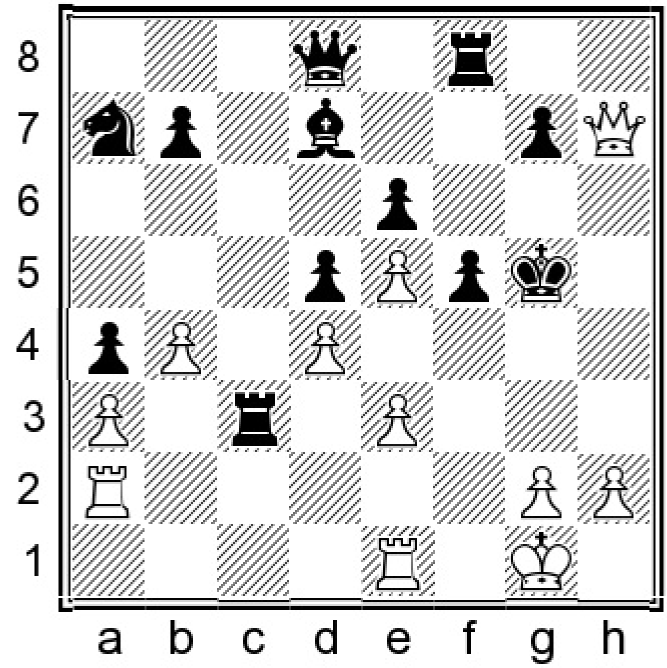
21.♗xh7+! ♔xh7 22.♘xg5+ ♔g6

Or 22...♔g8 23.♕h5 ♖fc8 24.♕xf7+ ♔h8 25.♕h5+ ♔g8 26.♖f1, and the queen mates on h7.

23.♕g4 f5

Or 23...f6 24.♘xe6+ ♔f7 25.♕xg7+ ♔xe6 26.♕xf8, winning.

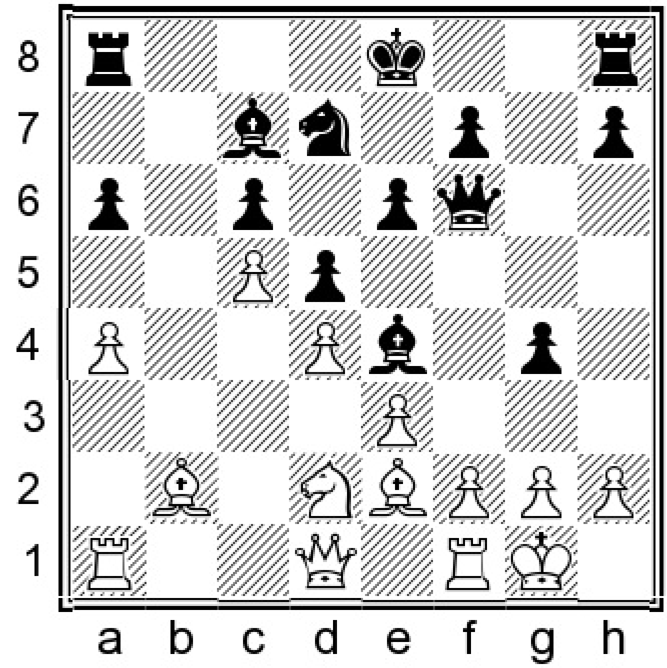
24.♕h4 ♕d8 25.♕h7+ ♔xg5



26.h4+

And Black resigned because of 26...♔g4 27.♕g6+ ♔xh4 28.g3+ ♔h3 29.♖h2# (here we see the value of having the rook on the second rank!).

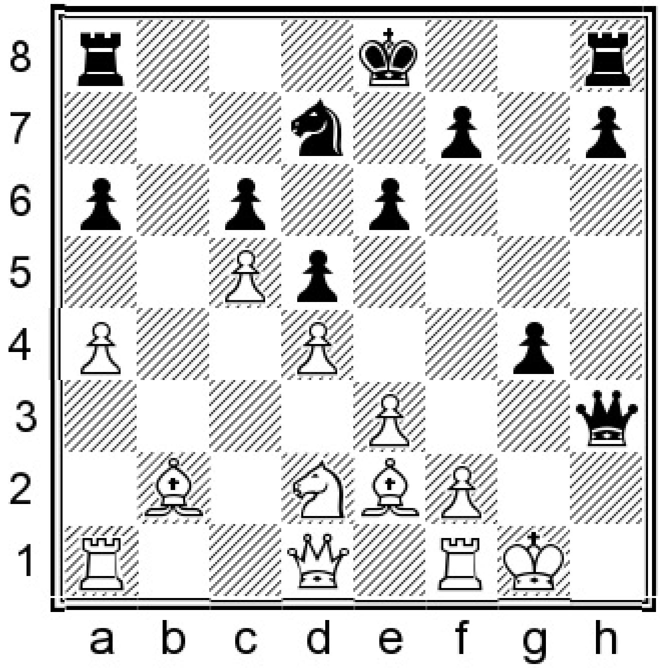
Patrick Lebel 2149
Michael Arwanitakis 2265
Fügen tt 2006 (2)



Black to play

Here we see on the agenda a variation on the classic double bishop sacrifice, to destroy the enemy king’s castled position:

16...♗xh2+! 17.♔xh2 ♕h4+ 18.♔g1 ♗xg2! 19.♔xg2 ♕h3+ 20.♔g1



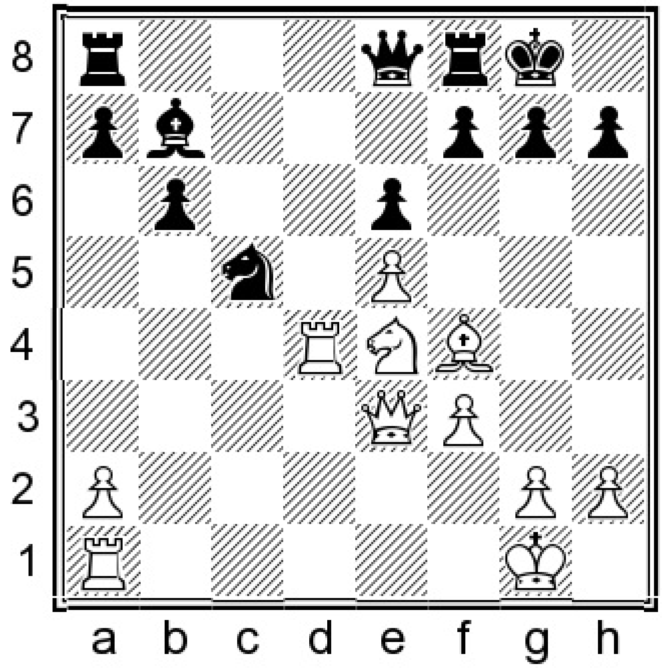
20...♖g8!

This move underlines the helplessness of the white army, which cannot organize a defence for its king. For example: 21.♗d3 g3 22.♘f3 g2 or 21.♖e1 g3 22.♘f3 gxf2+ and mate next move.

21.♕e1 ♖g6

Of course, he could also win with 21...g3, but the text is quicker. White resigned.

Farid Abbasov 2565
Rasul Ibrahimov 2568
Baku ch-AZE 2009 (4)



White to play

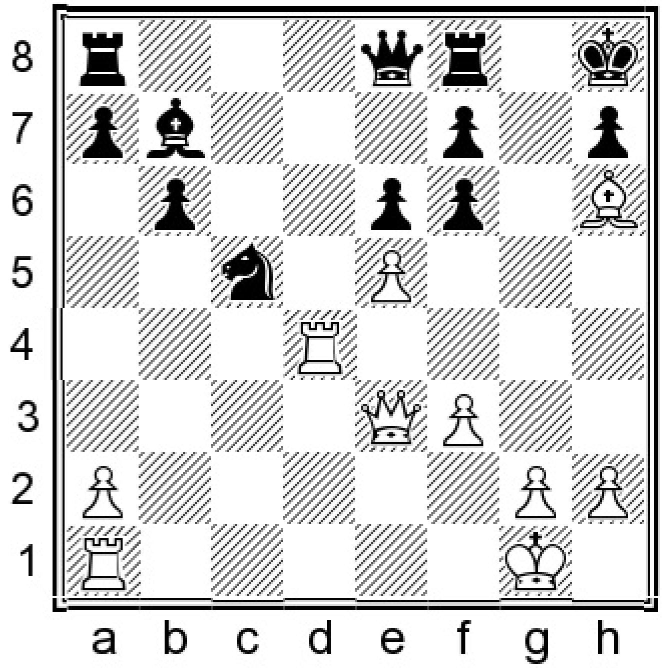
23.♘f6+!

Also a fairly typical sacrifice to open the g-file, along which White plans on getting at the enemy king.

23...gxf6 24.♗h6

With the threat of 25.♖g4+.

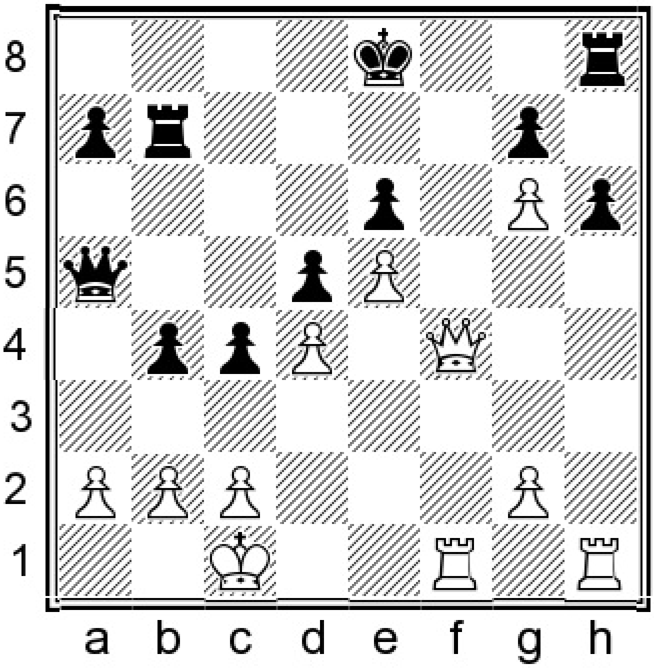
24...♔h8



25.♗g7+!

Black resigned because of 25...♔xg7 26.♖g4+ ♔h8 27.♕h6 ♖g8 28.♕xf6+.

Vadim Zviagintsev 2643
Sergey Grigoriants 2562
Rijeka Ech 2010 (9)



White to play

In the diagram position, only major pieces remain, but this does not stop White landing an unexpected tactical blow:

24.♖xh6!

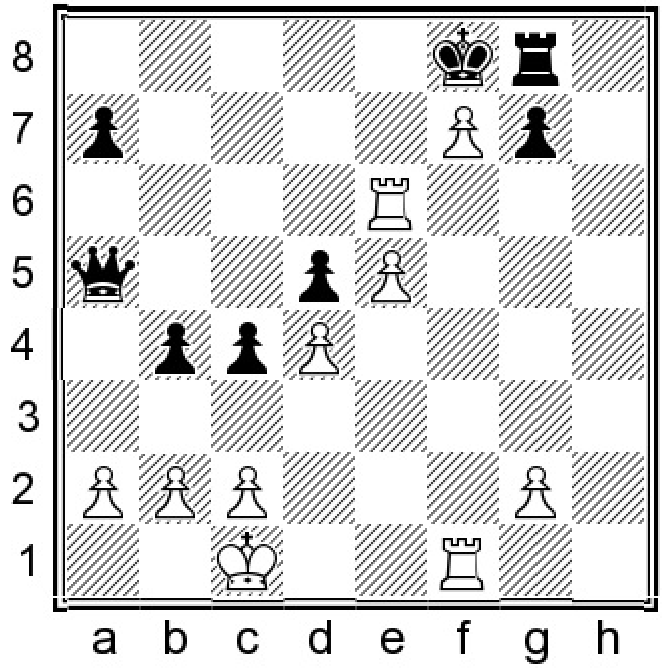
Black replied

24...♖xh6?

and then immediately resigned, on seeing the mate 25.♕f8+ ♔d7 26.♕d6+ followed by 27.♖f8+.

A) The other capture of the rook also loses: 24...gxh6 25.♕f6 ♖g8 26.♕xe6+;

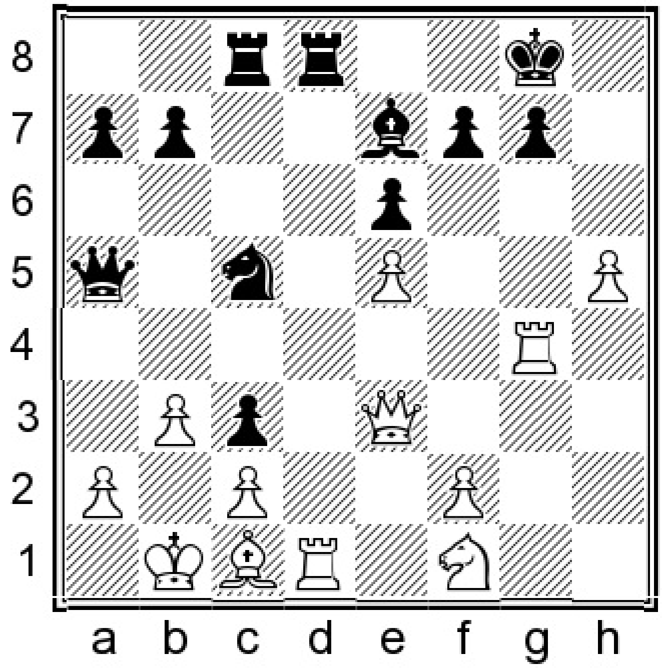
B) More tenacious is 24...♖g8, and after 25.♕f7+! ♖xf7 26.gxf7+ ♔f8 27.♖xe6



analysis diagram

White has a serious advantage in the endgame, after both 27...♕b5 28.♖d6!, and 27...♕d8 28.fxg8=♕+ ♔xg8 29.♖d6.

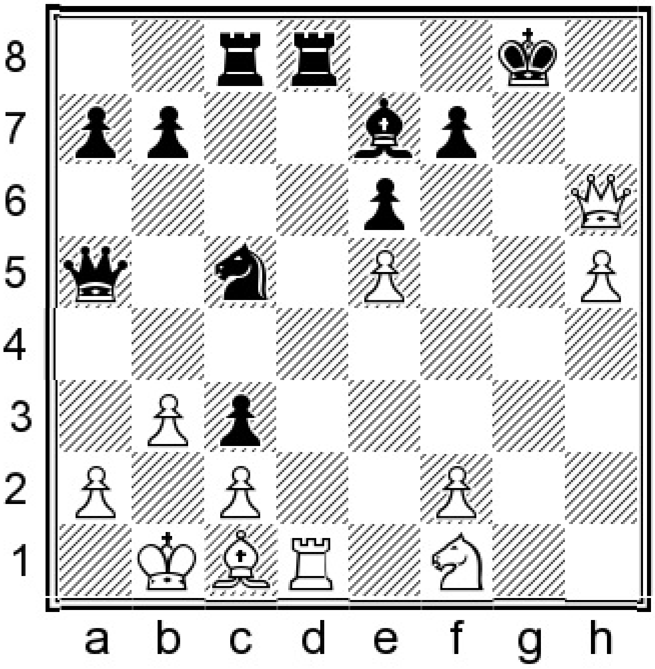
Piotr Dobrowolski 2397
Daniel Fridman 2654
Wroclaw 2010 (2)



White to play

The eternal question in positions with opposite-side castling: whose attack is stronger?

26.♖xg7+! ♔xg7 27.♕h6+ ♔g8



28.♘d2!!

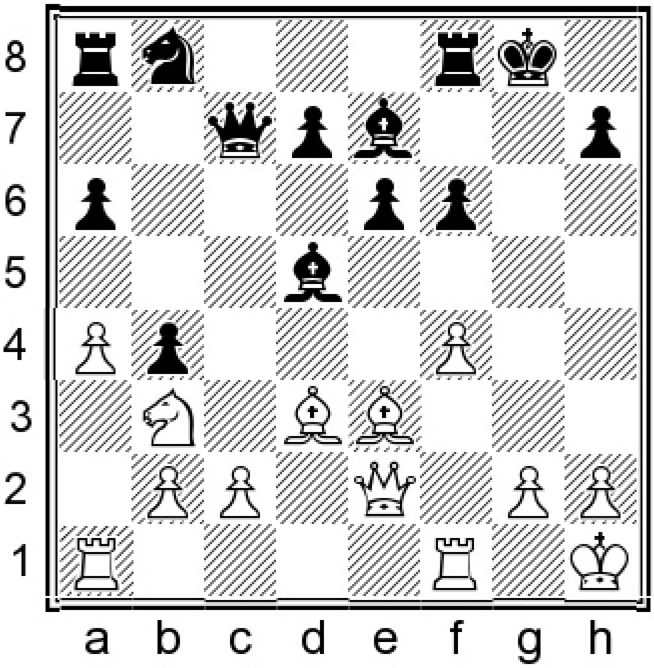
White’s combination only works thanks to this striking move, opening the path of the rook to g1. The knight cannot be taken because of a quick mate.

28...♘e4 29.♖g1+ ♘g5 30.♘f3! ♖d1

Black defends very inventively.

31.♘xg5 ♖xc1+ 32.♖xc1 ♗xg5 33.♖g1! 1-0

Konstantine Shanava 2566
Hrair Simonian 2473
Jermuk 2010 (7)

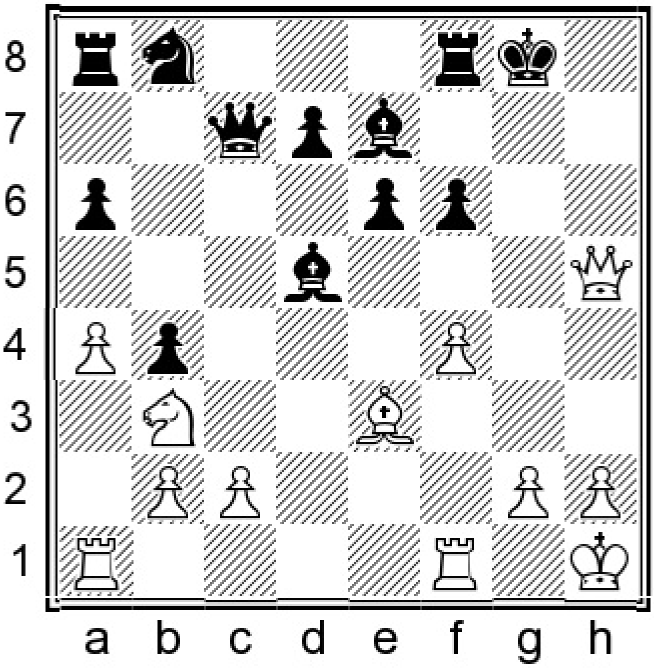


White to play

Although White does not have a knight ready to jump to g5, the standard bishop sacrifice on h7 still works. It turns out that at the crucial moment, the attack can be continued with a rook sacrifice!

17.♗xh7+! ♔xh7 18.♕h5+ ♔g8

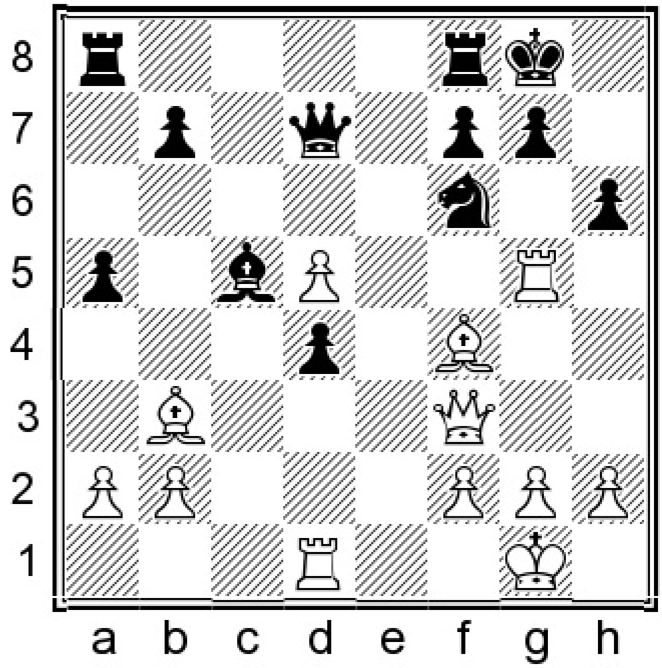
On 18...♔g7 White carries out the same manoeuvre as in the game: 19.♖f3! ♗xf3 (19...♖g8 20.♖g3+ ♔f8 21.♕h6+ ♔f7 22.♕h7+) 20.gxf3 ♖g8 (20...f5 21.♖g1+ ♔f6 22.♕g6#) 21.♖g1+ ♔f8 22.♕h6+ ♔f7 23.♕h7+ ♔e8 24.♖xg8+ ♗f8 25.♕g7 ♕d6 26.♗c5 ♕d1+ 27.♔g2 ♕e2+ 28.♗f2, and it is time to resign.



19.♕g6+ ♔h8 20.♖f3! ♗xf3 21.gxf3 ♗c5 22.♕h5+

Black resigned.

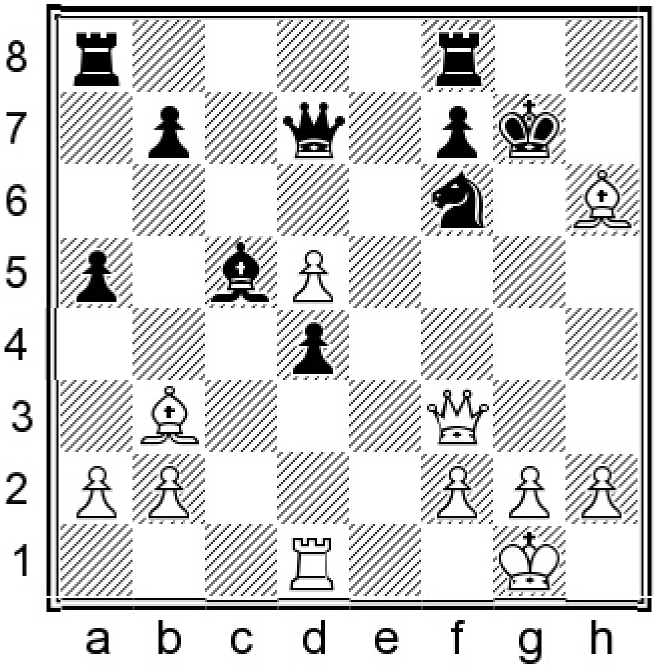
Pavel Tregubov 2598
Irina Sudakova 2350
Warsaw Ech rapid 2010 (8)



White to play

With her last move, Black carelessly attacked the rook with 22...h6? (stronger was 22...♖fe8 or 22...♖a6, preparing to beat off the attack, although White’s advantage remains considerable). White immediately punishes his opponent:

23.♖xg7+! ♔xg7 24.♗xh6+!



Black resigned. The variations are not hard to calculate:

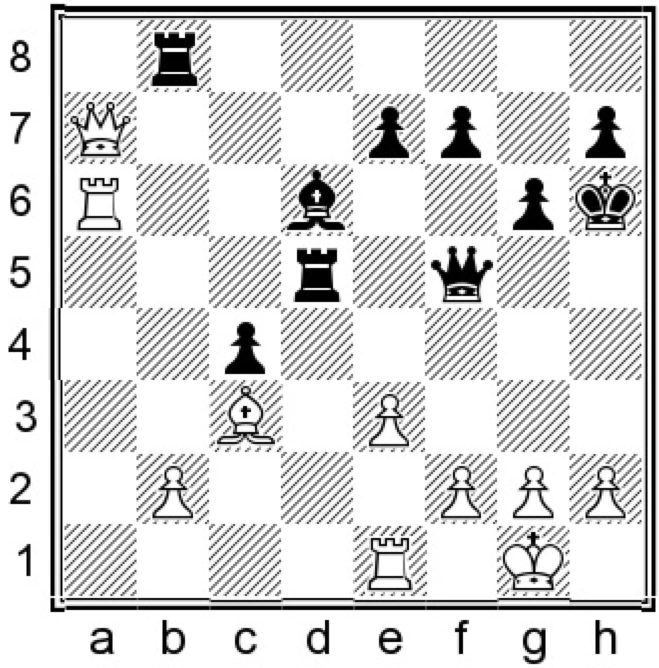
A) 24...♔xh6 25.♕xf6+ ♔h7 (or 25...♔h5 26.♖xd4! ♗xd4 27.♗d1+ ♕g4 28.♗xg4+ ♔xg4 29.h3+ ♔h5 30.g4#) 26.♗c2+ ♔g8 27.♕g5+ ♔h8 28.♕h6+ ♔g8 29.♕h7#;

B) 24...♔h7 25.♕xf6 ♕g4 26.♗xf8 ♗xf8 27.♖d3 ♗g7 28.♕xf7;

C) 24...♔g6 25.♗c2+ d3 26.♗xd3+ ♘e4 27.♗xf8,

in all cases with a decisive advantage for White.

Stanislav Savchenko 2539
Stanislav Bogdanovich 2479
Donetsk 2010 (1)



Black to play

The white queen and rook, cut off in Black's camp, do not present any threat at all to the latter and the game will be decided on the opposite side of the board:

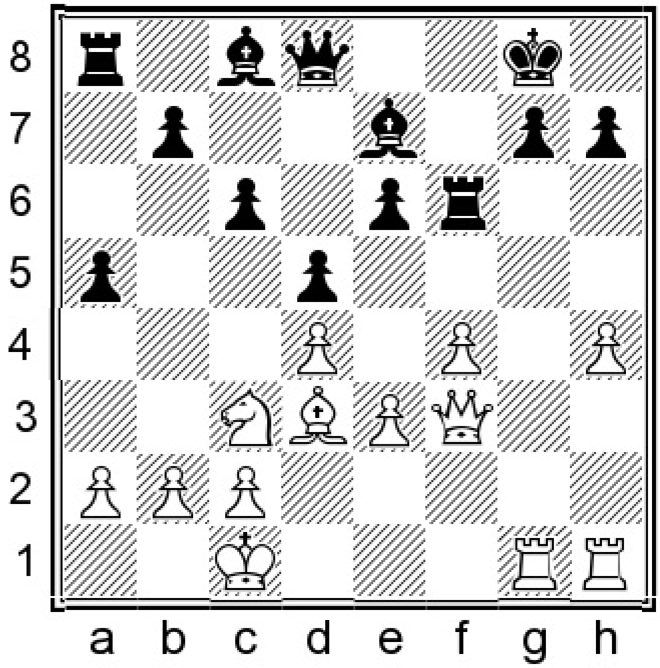
29...♗xh2+! 30.♔f1

On 30.♔xh2 ♕xf2 31.♖a5 the game is decided at once by the fantastic 31...♖xb2!! with the threat of mate on g2 (although the prosaic 31...♖bb5 is also sufficient for victory), and there is no salvation: 32.♗xb2 ♕h4+ 33.♔g1 ♕xe1+ 34.♔h2 ♕h4+ 35.♔g1 ♖d1#.

30...♖d7!

Suddenly the queen is trapped. White resigned.

Igor Spiric 2280
Sergei Iskusnyh 1587
Belgrade 2011 (7)



White to play

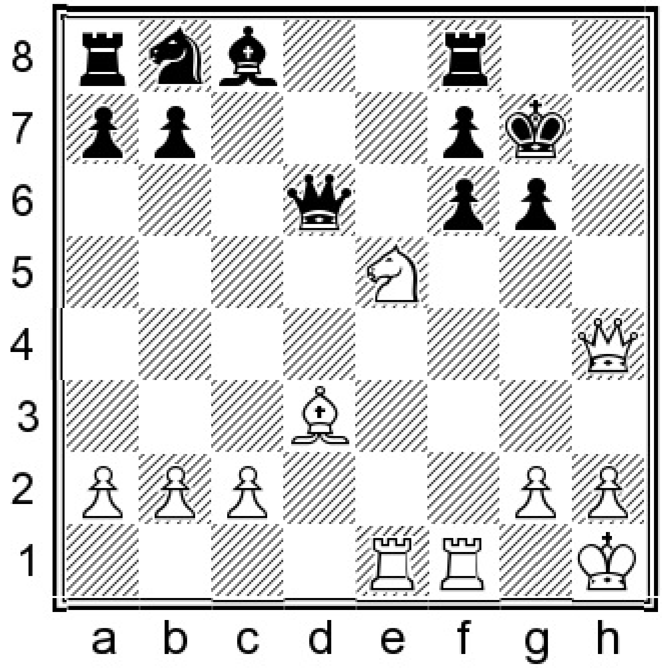
Again we see a bishop and rook, by sacrificing themselves, destroy the approaches to the enemy king, while the queen and a rook finish off the massacre.

17.♗xh7+! ♔xh7 18.♕h5+ ♔g8

Nor is he saved by 18...♖h6 19.♖xg7+! ♔xg7 20.♖g1+ ♔f8 21.♕xh6+ ♔e8 22.♖g8+, with a solid material advantage.

19.♖xg7+! ♔xg7 20.♖g1+ ♔f8 21.♕h8+ ♔f7 22.♖g7#

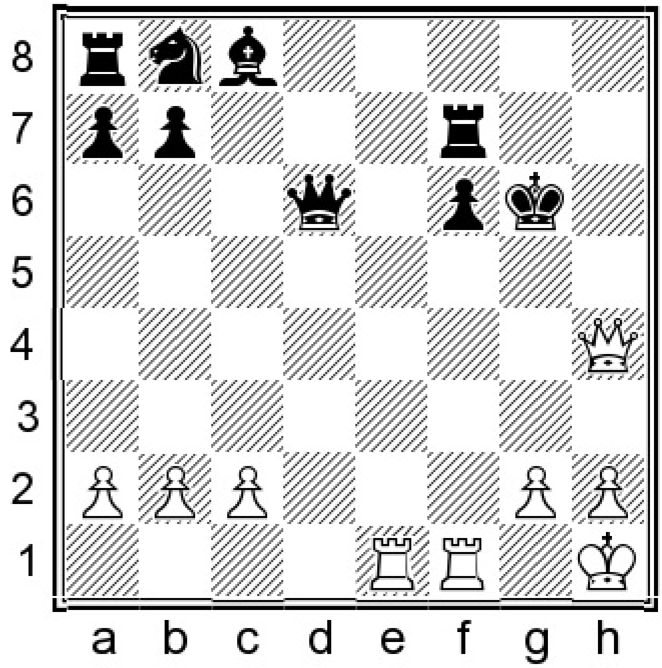
Elina Sedina 2351
Tamari Khmiadashvili 2204
Tbilisi Ech W 2011 (5)



White to play

Here White has a gigantic advantage in forces on the kingside, and this means that we have all the preconditions for a combination.

19.♘xf7! ♖xf7 20.♗xg6! ♔xg6



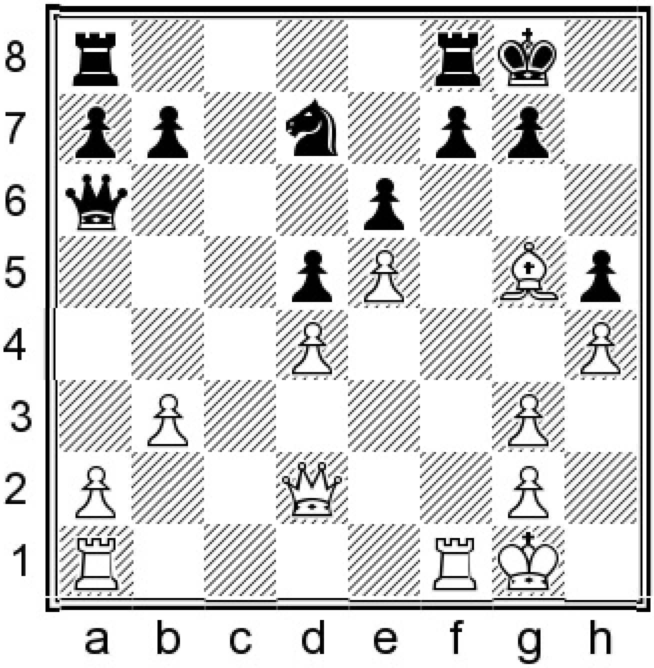
21.♖f3

After winning the queen for the rook (which Black cannot prevent, since her king is too exposed), White will have only a minimal material advantage, but her great positional superiority leaves no doubt as to the outcome of the game.

21...♖e7 22.♖g3+

Black resigned. A sample variation: 22...♕xg3 23.♕xg3+ ♔f7 24.♖xe7+ ♔xe7 25.♕g7+ ♔e6 26.♕g8+ ♔d7 27.♕f7+, winning the f6-pawn.

Kateryna Lagno 2530
Bela Khotenashvili 2470
Tbilisi Ech W 2011 (9)



White to play

As the classics always said, do not undertake pawn activity on the flank where you are weaker. Here, Black has advanced her pawn to the unfortunate h5-square.

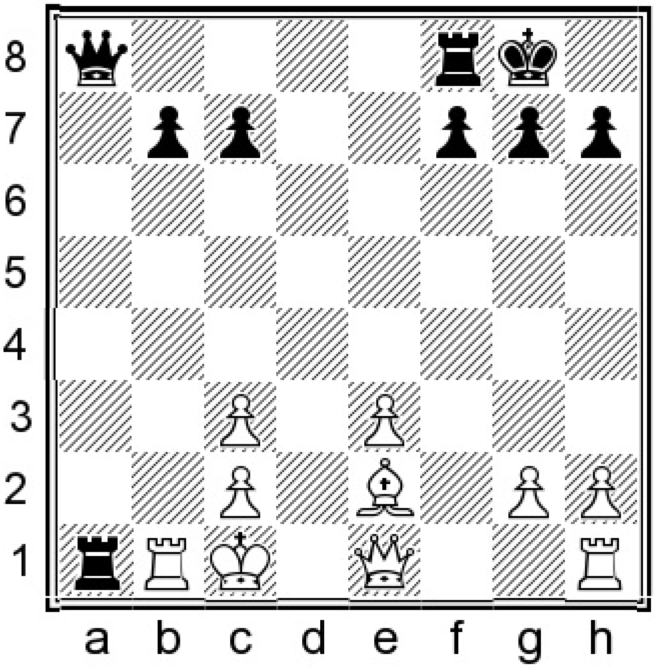
17.♗f6! gxf6

If Black tries to decline the sacrifice with 17...♕b6, then she still comes under a decisive attack: 18.♗xg7! (but not 18.♕g5? ♕xd4+ 19.♔h2 ♕g4) 18...♔xg7 19.♕g5+ ♔h7 20.♕xh5+ (now both lines against the king are open and a quick crush follows) 20...♔g7 21.♕g5+ ♔h8 (21...♔h7 22.♖f6 ♘xf6 23.exf6 ♖g8 24.♕h5#) 22.♖f6! ♕xd4+ 23.♔h2 ♕d3 24.♖h6+ ♕h7 25.♖xh7+ ♔xh7 26.♖f1, winning.

18.exf6 ♖fc8 19.♕h6 ♘xf6 20.♕g5+! ♔f8 21.♕xf6

Black resigned (21...♖c7 22.♕h8+).

Christophe Philippe 2422
Jean-René Koch 2476
France tt 2011 (3)



Black to play

22...♖d8!

After 22...♕a3+ 23.♔d2 ♖d8+ 24.♗d3 Black does not achieve anything.

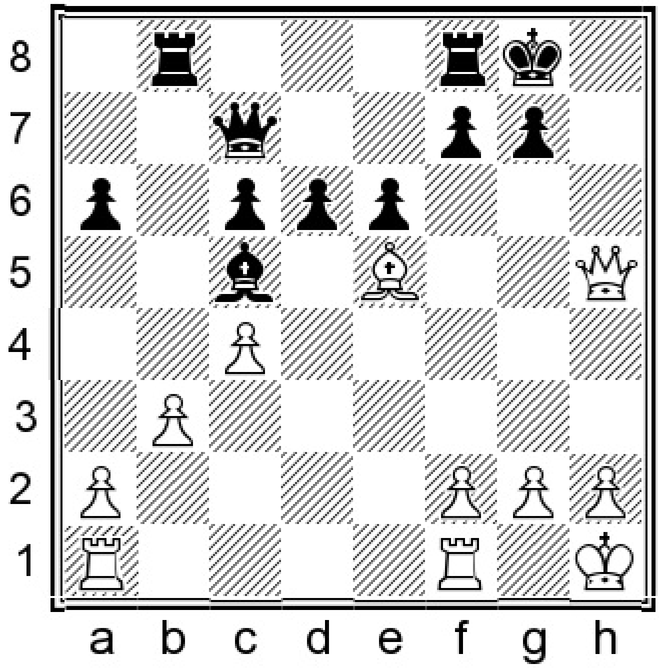
22...♖d8! 23.♗d3

The only defence against the threat of 23...♕a3#, but now this no longer saves White.

23...♖xd3! 24.cxd3 ♕a3+

White resigned, in view of the variation 25.♔c2(d2) 25...♖a2+ 26.♔d1 ♕a4+. White’s own queen prevents his king escaping.

Alexander Areshnchenko 2462
Vladimir Savon 2449
Nikolaev 2001 (10)



White to play

By analogy with previous examples, some will probably think White will continue the attack with 23.♗xg7. But in reality this leads only to a draw after 23...♔xg7 24.♕g5+ ♔h7 25.♕h5+, because 25.f4? loses to 25...♖g8. However, there is a winning line:

23.♗f6! gxf6 24.f4

If Black only had one pawn on the f-file, then he could defend with ...f7-f5. Now, however, he does not manage to evacuate his king, nor bring other pieces over to its defence.

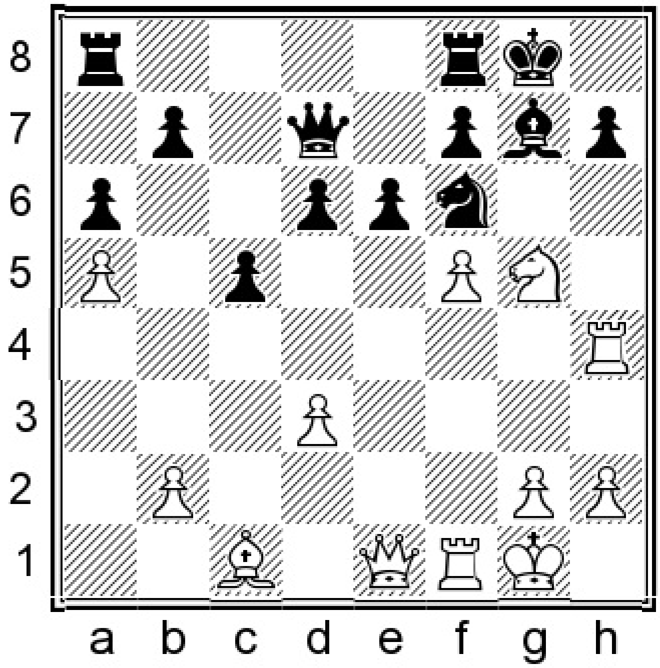
24...♖fe8 25.♕h6!

The king must be kept on the kingside.

25...e5 26.♖f3 exf4 27.♖h3

Black resigned.

Rinat Jumabayev 2522
Pavel Kotsur 2562
Astana ch-KAZ 2011 (10)



White to play

In this example, White is ready to give up a rook to open the h-file and to deflect the black knight from f6, to where the white pawn will advance.

19.♘xh7! ♘xh7 20.♖xh7 ♗d4+

Trying to escape the bind. After 20...♔xh7 21.♕h4+ ♔g8 22.f6 the white attack is unstoppable.

21.♗e3!

Stronger than 21.♔h1 exf5.

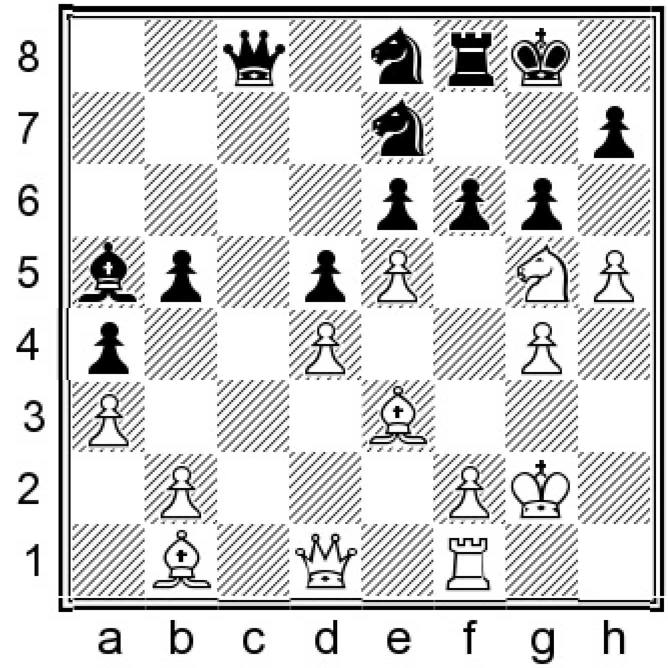
21...exf5

With a heavy heart, Black spares the rook's life, but this does not save him. If 21...♗xe3+ 22.♕xe3 ♔xh7 White decides by 23.♕h3+ ♔g8 24.f6 winning, and no better is 21...♕a4 22.f6! ♗xe3+ (22...♗xf6 23.♖xf6) 23.♕xe3 ♔xh7 24.♕g5.

22.♗xd4 cxd4 23.♕h4 ♕e6 24.♖f3 f4 25.♖h3 f6 26.♖g7+!

Black resigned.

Aleksander Delchev 2619
Sergei Iskusnyh 2418
Albena 2011 (5)



White to play

Black only needs one tempo to somehow plug the gaps in his defence. Therefore, White must hurry.

28.♘xh7!

This device is already known to us: the removal of the black h- and g-pawns allows the white major pieces to break into the enemy camp.

28...♔xh7 29.hxg6+ ♔g8

After, instead, 29...♘xg6 30.♖h1+ ♔g7 31.♗h6+ ♔g8 32.♗xg6 White has an extra pawn and a decisive attack.

Nor is Black saved by 29...♔g7 30.♖h1 f5 31.♖h7+ ♔g8 (31...♔xg6 32.♕h1) 32.♗xf5 ♖xf5 33.♕h1, and mate is unavoidable.

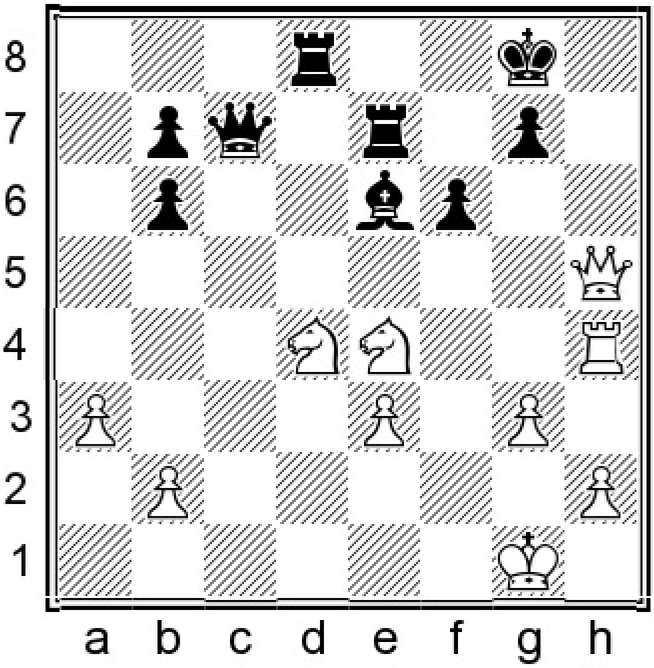
30.♖h1 f5 31.♖h8+! ♔g7 32.♖h7+ ♔xg6

On 32...♔g8 the quickest win of all is 33.gxf5, but it is also possible to take the knight: 33.♖xe7.

33.♕h1

Black resigned.

Ian Nepomniachtchi 2730
Dmitry Bocharov 2609
Apatity rapid 2011 (2)



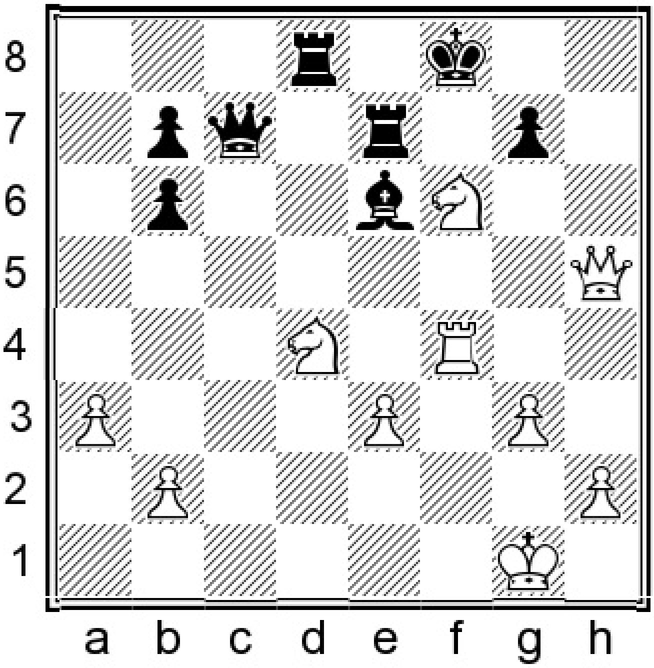
White to play

This time White opens the enemy king up by sacrificing on f6, another variation on a familiar idea.

30.♘xf6+! ♔f8

Or 30...gxf6 31.♕h8+ ♔f7 32.♖h7+ ♔g6 33.♖h6+, and the attack on the f6-pawn ends the game.

31.♖f4!



31...♕c1+

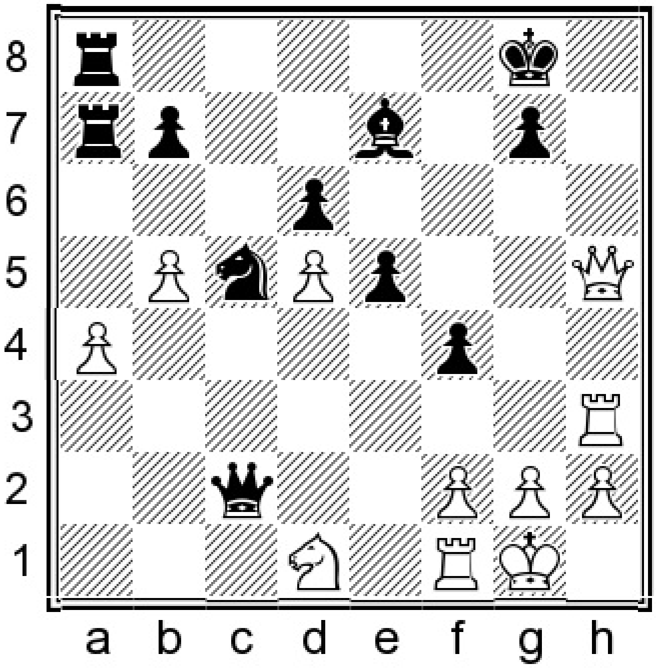
After 31...gxf6 32.♘xe6+ ♖xe6 33.♕h8+ ♔e7 34.♕g7+ ♔d6 35.♖d4+ Black loses the queen.

32.♔g2 gxf6

Completely hopeless was 32...♕d2+ 33.♖f2 ♕xf2+ 34.♔xf2 gxf6 35.♕h8+ ♗g8 36.♘f5.

33.♖xf6+ ♔g8 34.♖g6+ ♔f8 35.♕h8+ ♔f7 36.♖f6#

Daria Charochkina 2371
Mihaela Foisor 2242
Gaziantep Ech W 2012 (4)



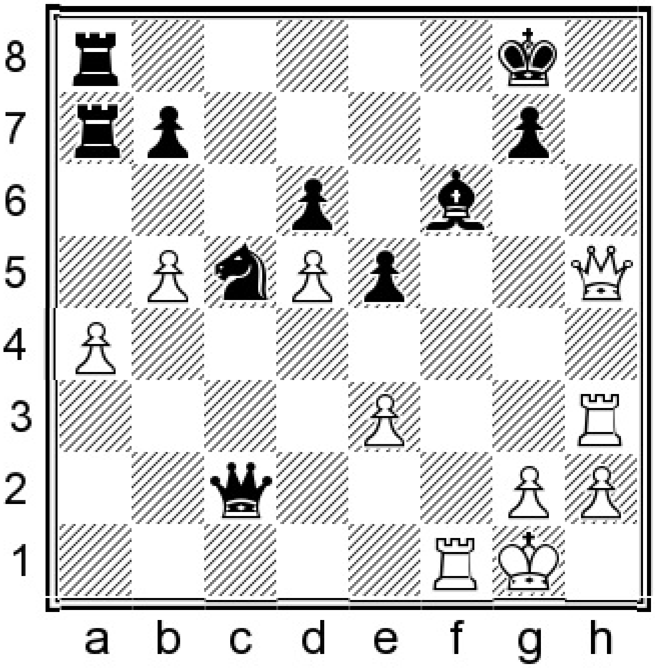
White to play

A comical situation: the black rooks are doubled on the a-file, ‘attacking’ the a4-pawn, whilst at the same time, she faces catastrophe on the other wing.

30.♘e3! fxe3

30...♕e4 is no help, because of 31.♘f5 ♗f8 (31...♗f6 32.♘xd6, and mate is threatened on h8 and f7) 32.♕g6, and she has to give up the queen (32...b6 33.♘h6+ ♔h8 34.♘f7+).

31.fxe3 ♗f6

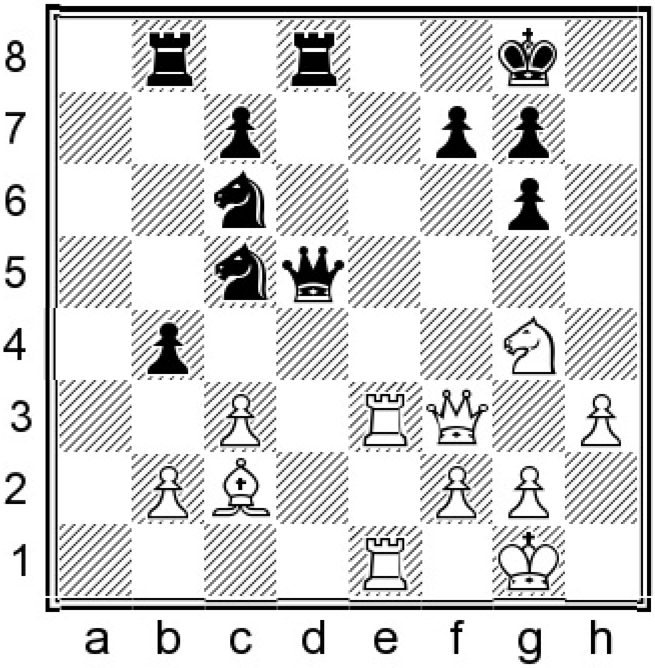


32.♖xf6! ♕b1+

32...gxf6 33.♖g3+ ♔f8 34.♕h8+ ♔f7 35.♖g7#.

33.♖f1 ♕xf1+ 34.♔xf1 ♖f8+ 35.♔g1 e4 36.♖h4 b6 37.♕h8+ ♔f7 38.♖f4+ 1-0

Emil Sutovsky 2700
Sergey Grigoriants 2561
Plovdiv Ech 2012 (4)



White to play

White decides the outcome of the game with a series of brilliant tactical blows:

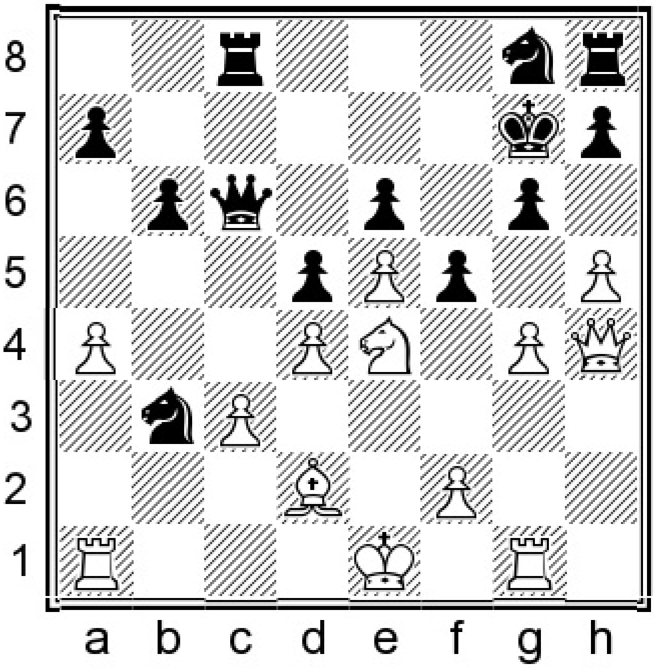
32.♖e8+! ♔h7 33.♖1e5!! ♘xe5

33...♕xf3 34.♖h5#.

34.♘f6+!

Black resigned because of 34...gxf6 35.♕h5+ ♔g7 36.♕h8#.

Farrukh Amonatov 2610
Arthur Ssegwanyi 2178
Istanbul ol 2012 (7)



White to play

Here the tempting 28.♘d6 retains the advantage for White, but with 28...♘xd2! Black can seriously prolong his resistance. Therefore the Tadjik GM, after calculating the variations, finds a better role for the bishop:

28.♗h6+! ♘xh6

After 28...♔xh6 White decides by 29.hxg6+ ♔g7 30.gxf5, and the attack is irresistible, e.g. 30...exf5 31.gxh7+ ♔f8 32.♕g5. And after 28...♔f7 the move 29.♘d6+ is sufficient.

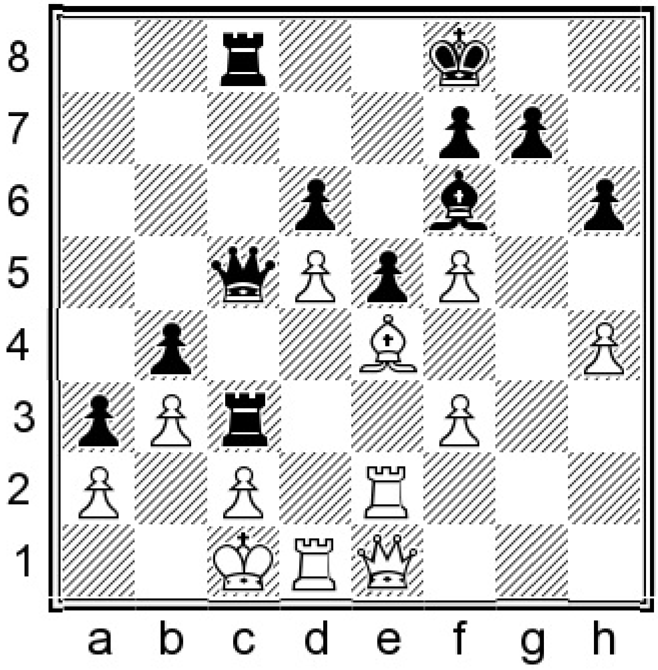
29.♕e7+ ♘f7 30.h6+ ♔xh6

30...♔g8 31.♕f6.

31.♕f6

Black resigned: the threat ♖h1# is irresistible.

Olli Salmensuu 2418
Levon Aronian 2587
Linares 2000 (10)



Black to play

In this example, White perishes due to the weakness of the dark squares:

32...♖xb3!! 33.axb3 ♗xh4! 34.♕xh4

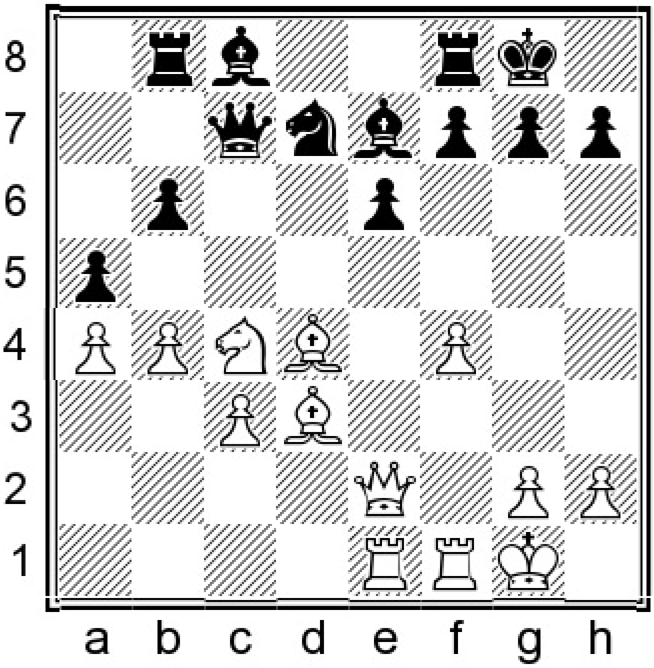
34.♕d2 fails to 34...♗g5, whilst other queen retreats give up control of c3, when the same manoeuvre as in the game decides.

34...a2 35.c3

After 35.♔b2 ♕c3+ 36.♔xa2 ♖a8+ White is mated.

35...a1=♕+ 36.♗b1 ♕cxc3+ 0-1

Arghyadip Das 2466
Momchil Nikolov 2545
Roquetas de Mar 2013 (7)



White to play

Here White is happy to sacrifice not only the traditional two bishops, but also a rook as well:

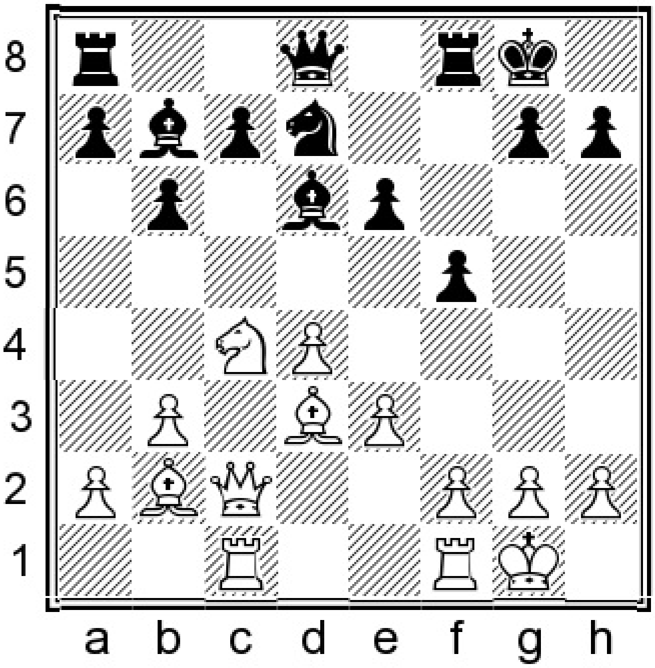
21.♗xh7+! ♔xh7 22.♕h5+ ♔g8 23.♗xg7! ♔xg7 24.♕g4+ ♔h8 25.♖e3!

More accurate than 25.♖f3 ♗c5+!, and some further technique is required of White.

25...♘f6 26.♖h3+ ♘h7 27.♖xh7+! ♔xh7 28.♖f3

And White won quickly.

Aron Amstadt 2271
David Berczes 2528
Hungary tt 2012/13 (9)



Black to play

13...♗xh2+! 14.♔xh2 ♕h4+ 15.♔g1 ♗f3!!

The point of the combination: Black blockades the enemy kingside and at the same time creates the deadly threat of 16...♕g4. We have already seen this device in the game Areshnchenko-Savon. On 15...♗xg2 there would follow 16.f3, and the queen is ready to come to the aid of his king.

16.e4

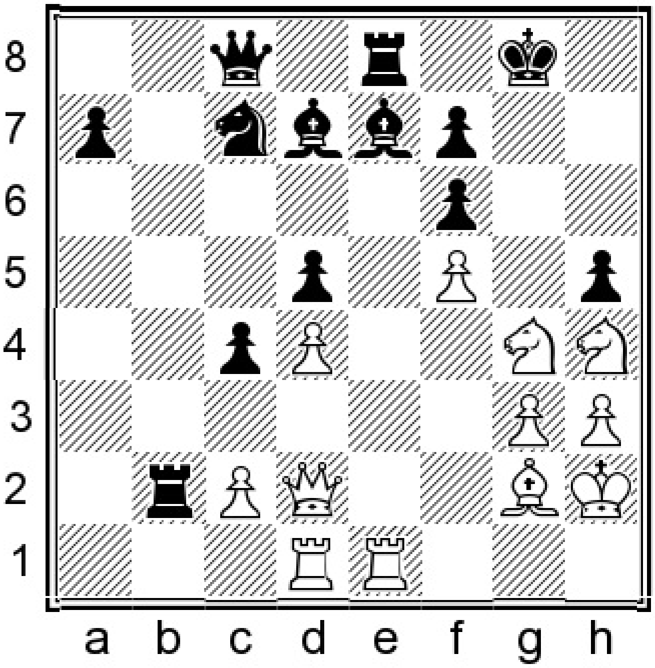
Freeing the e3-square for the knight. White loses after 16.gxf3 ♕g5+ 17.♔h2 ♖f6, whilst on 16.♘d2 Black can now play 16...♗xg2 17.f3 ♗h3!.

16...♖f6! 17.♕d2

Intending after 17...♖h6 to take the rook.

17...♖g6! 18.♘e3 ♖h6 0-1

Xia Jie 2284
Alessandro Guerra 2226
Venice 2013 (4)



White to play

27.♕h6! ♗xf5

On 27...hxg4 the second knight is sacrificed – 28.♘g6! fxg6 29.fxg6, and Black cannot avoid mate.

28.♖xe7

Removing the defence of f6.

28...♗xg4

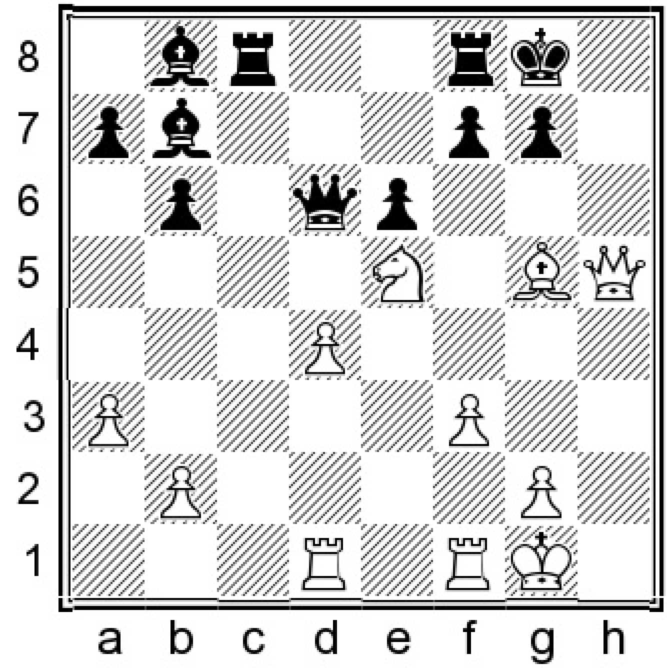
Or 28...hxg4 29.♖xc7 ♕xc7 30.♘xf5.

29.♘g6! 1-0

Show in Text Mode

Exercises

659

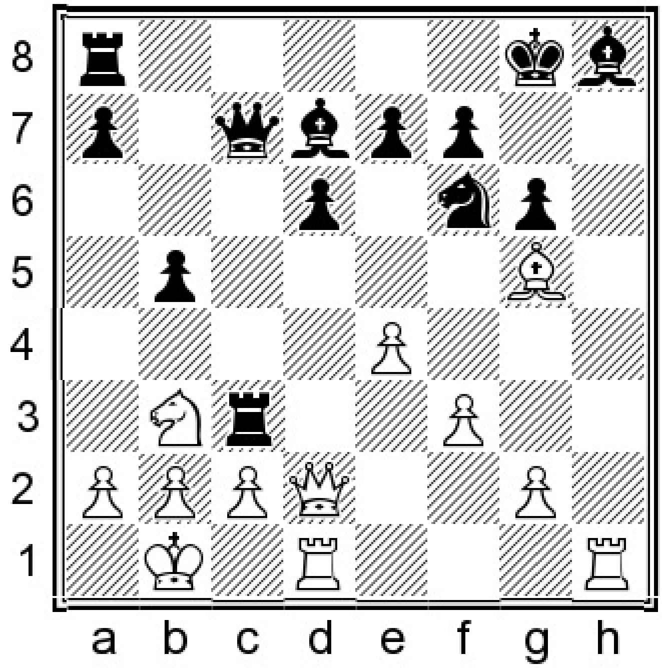


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

659 **33.♗f6!** 1-0 Adams-Papaioannou, Istanbul ol 2000; if 33...gxf6 34.♕g4+ ♔h8 35.♔f2 mate is unavoidable, while declining the capture loses because of the threat 34.♕g5.

660

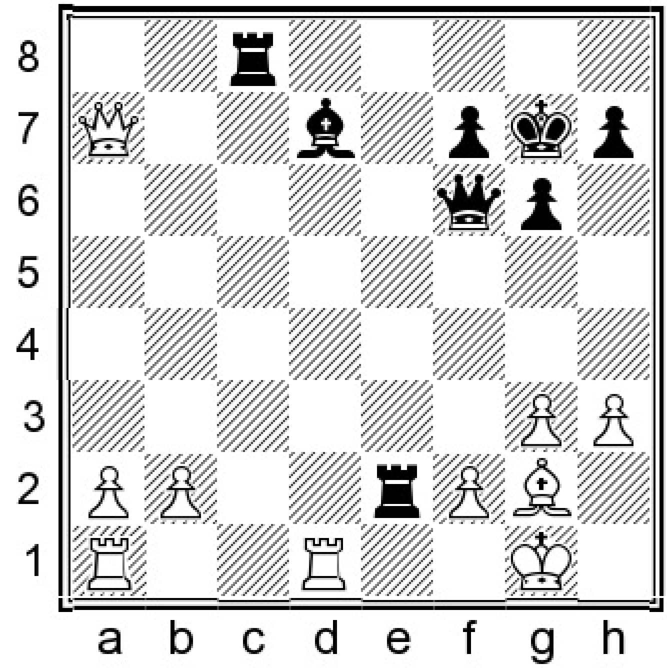

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h

White to play

Show/Hide Solution

660 **20.♖xh8+!** Rowson-Skelborg, Stockholm 2001/02; Black resigned, in view of the variation 20...♔xh8 21.♗xf6+ exf6 22.♕h6+ ♔g8 23.♖h1.

661

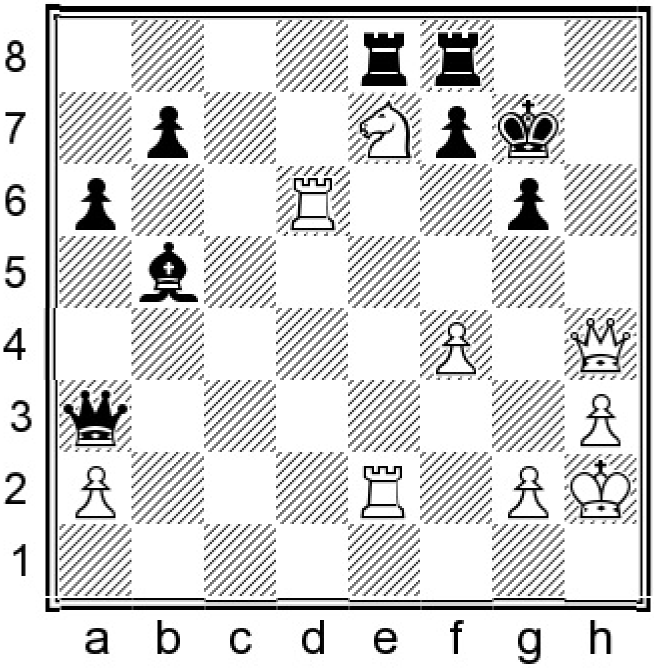


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

661 **22...♖c7! 23.♕d4** Of course, not 23.♕xc7 ♕xf2+ 24.♔h2 ♕xg2#. **23...♖e1+!** Vojinovic-Kozul, Bosnia & Herzegovina tt 2002; White resigned, because after 24.♖xe1 ♕xd4 or 24.♔h2 ♕xd4 25.♖xd4 ♖xa1 Black has a decisive material advantage.

662

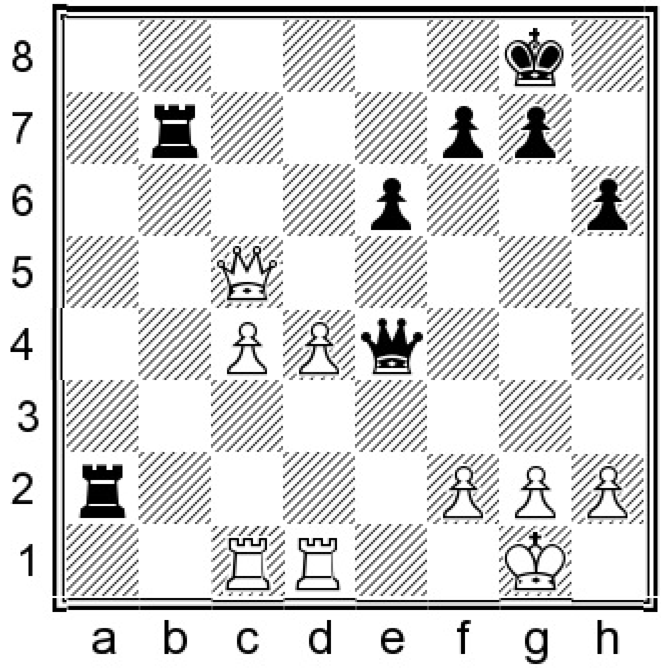


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

662 **34.♘f5+! ♔g8** Or 34...gxf5 35.♕g5+ ♔h7 36.♖h6#. **35.♕f6!** 1-0 Radjabov-Estrada Nieto, Bled ol 2002.

663

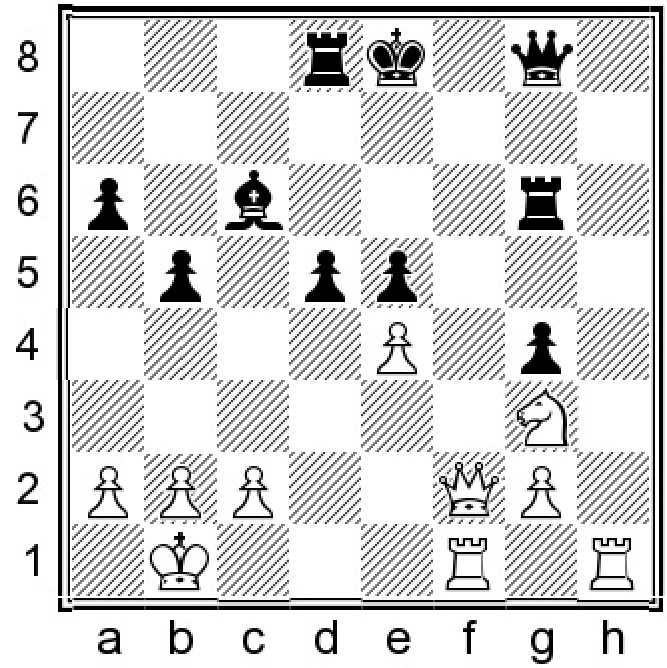


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

663 **28...♖xf2!** 0-1 Kanep-Ehlvest, Tallinn rapid 2003; 29.♔xf2 ♖b2+.

664

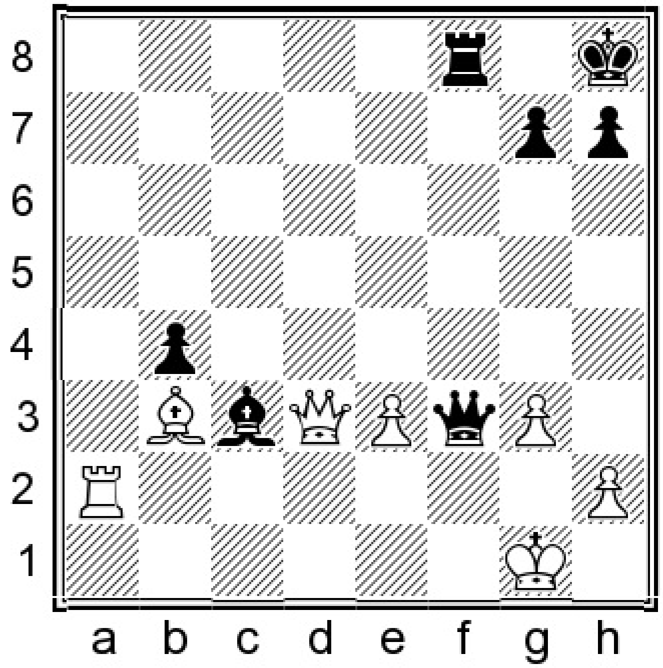


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

664 **28.♖h8!** 1-0 Yandarbiev-Lugovoi, Krasnoyarsk ch-RUS 2003; deflecting the queen from the f7-square.

665

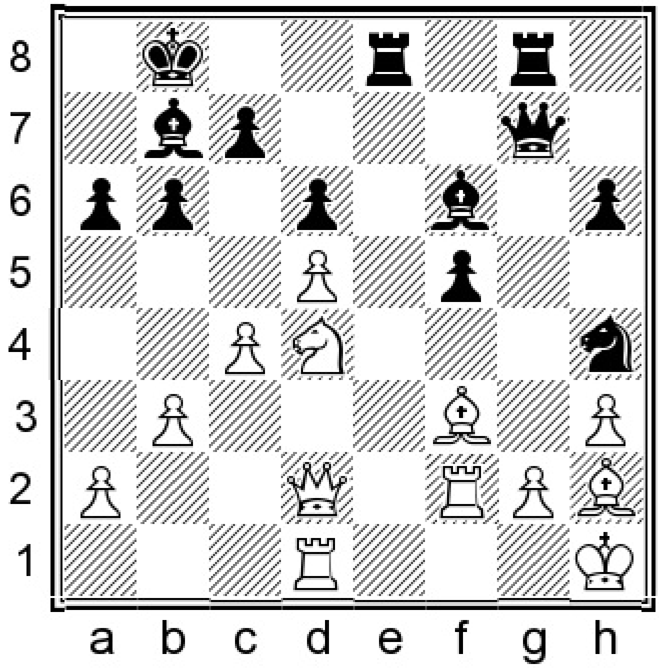


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

665 **33...♗d4!** 0-1 Sharavdorj-Ibragimov, Denver 2003; the only defence to 34...♗xe3+ is 34.♖e2, but then the f1-square is undefended.

666

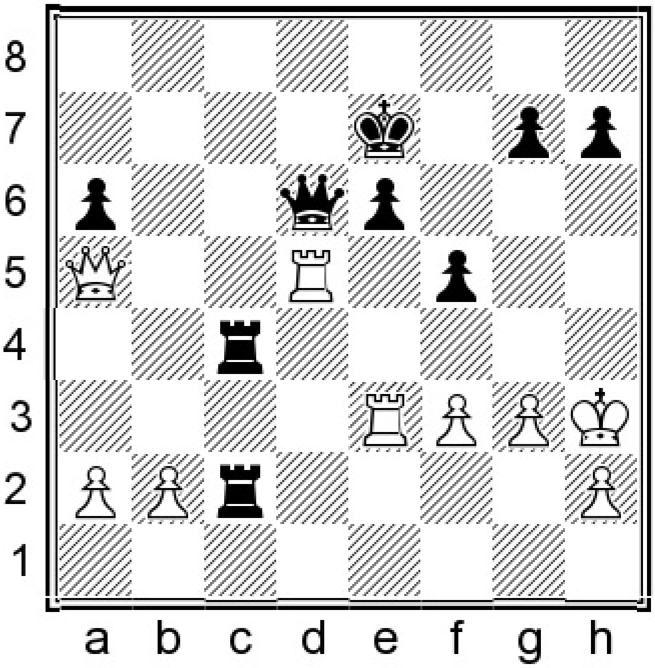


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

666 **26...♗xd4 27.♕xd4 ♖e1+** A well-known device. **28.♗g1 ♖xg1+! 29.♔xg1 ♘xf3+** 0-1 Souleidis-Espig, Germany Bundesliga 2003/04.

667

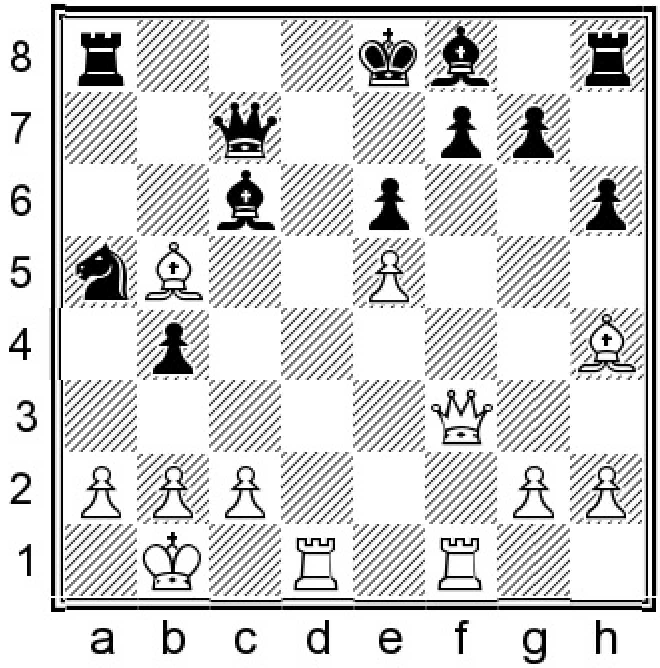

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h

Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

667 **26...♖h4+!** E.Atalik-Shadrina, Kazan ch-RUS W 2004; White resigned because of 27.♔xh4 (27.gxh4 ♕xh2#) 27...♖xh2+ 28.♔g5 ♕xg3#.

668

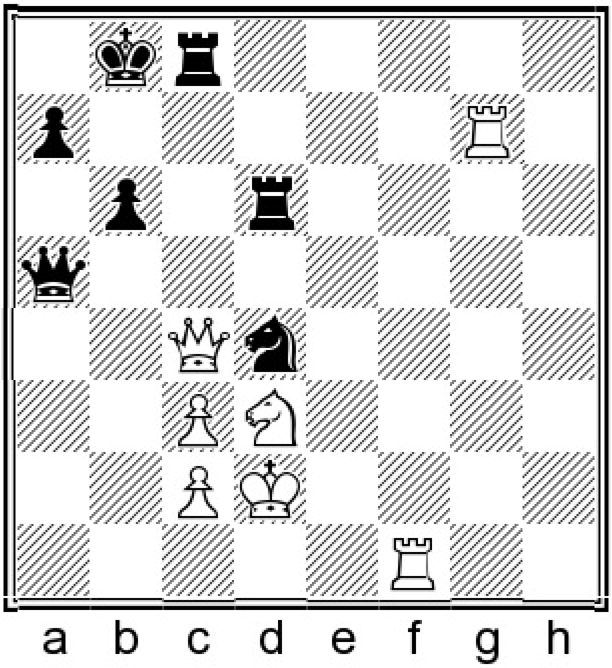

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h

White to play

Show/Hide Solution

668 **22.♗e7!!** 1-0 Lukovnikov-Sapunov, Kazan ch-RUS 2000.

669

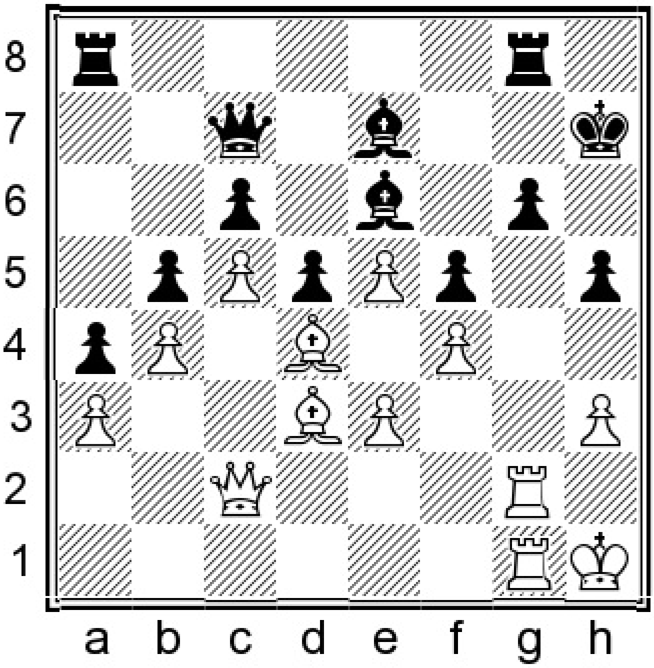


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

669 **44.♖f8! ♘f3+** After the rook capture, 45.♕c7+ wins. **45.♔e2 ♘g1+** The rook cannot take the knight, but this doesn’t save Black. **46.♔e3 ♖xd3+ 47.♔xd3** The checks have ended, Black resigned in Karjakin-Nikolic, Wijk aan Zee 2005.

670

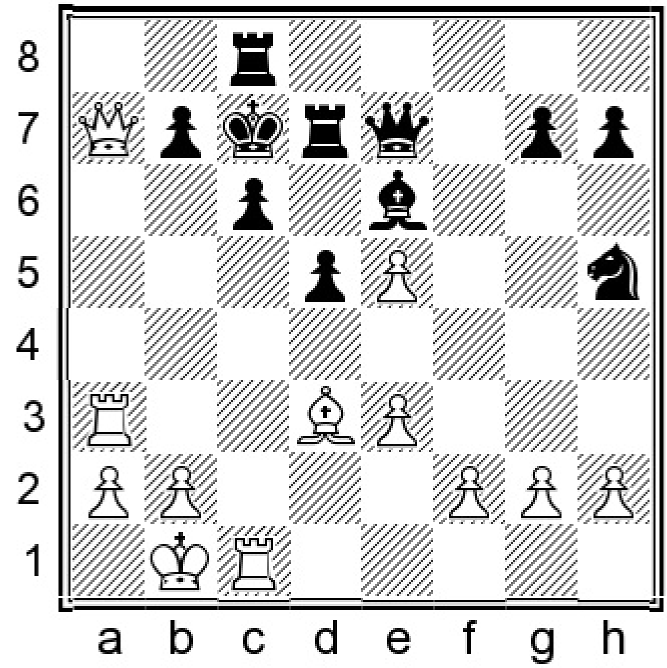


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

670 **31.♖xg6!** 1-0 Tomashevsky-I.Popov, Nojabrsk ch-RUS U20 2005; the following variation is forced: 31...♖xg6 32.♗xf5 ♗xf5 33.♕xf5 ♖ag8 34.♕xh5+ ♖h6 35.♕f7+ ♔h8 36.♕xg8#.

671

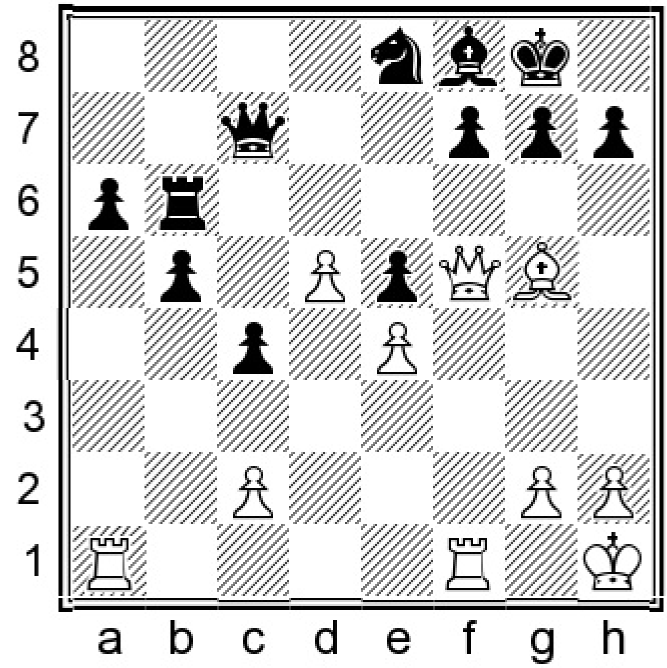


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

671 **24.♖xc6+! ♔d8** Or 24...♔xc6 25.♖c3+ ♕c5 26.♖xc5#. **25.♖xc8+ ♔xc8 26.♖c3+ ♖c7 27.♕a8+** 1-0 Gyimesi-Fox, Cork 2005; 27...♔d7 28.♗b5+.

672

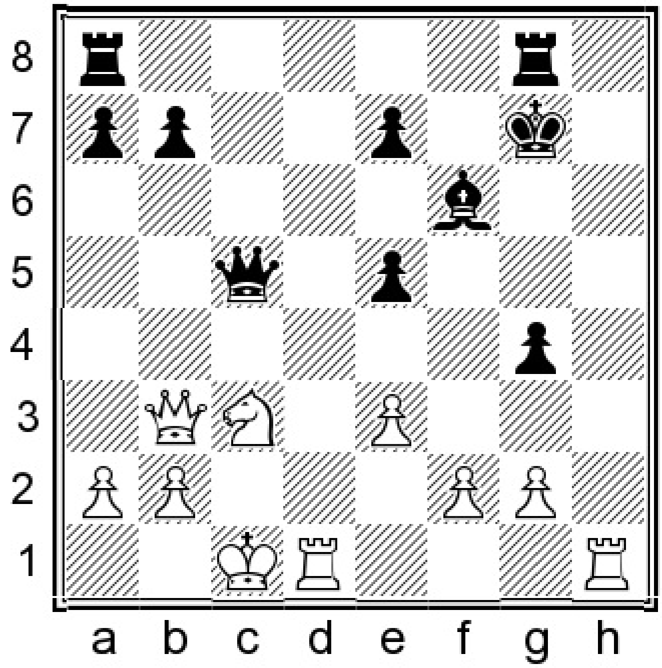


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

672 **31.♗d8!** 1-0 Kursova-Zakurdjaeva, Russia tt W 2007; Black cannot remove the defence from f7, and otherwise she loses a rook.

673

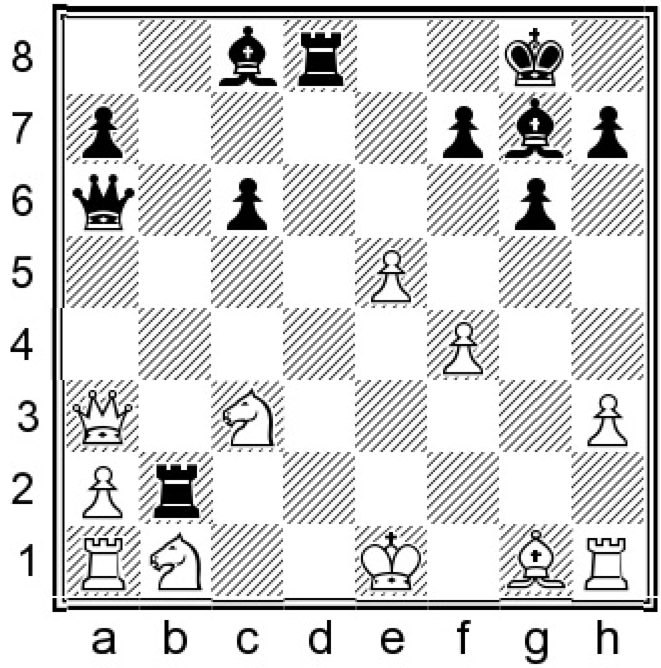


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

673 **22.♖h7+!** 1-0 Rajlich-Lanchava, Heraklio Ech-tt W 2007; mate results from 22...♔xh7 23.♕f7+ ♔h6 (or 23...♖g7 24.♖h1+) 24.♖h1+ ♔g5 25.♖h5#, whilst if 22...♔g6 23.♕f7+ ♔f5 24.♖h5+ ♖g5 25.e4+ ♔f4 26.♖d3 the stranded king does not emerge alive from the enemy camp: 26...♕xf2 27.g3+ ♕xg3 28.♘e2+.

674

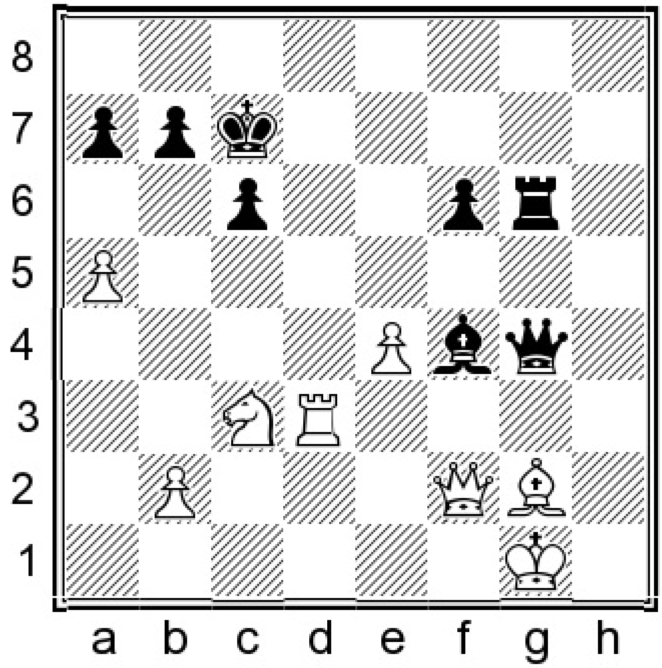


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

674 **21...♖d1+! 22.♔xd1** 22.♘xd1 ♕e2#. **22...♕f1#** Olszewski-S.Savchenko, Cappelle-la-Grande 2008.

675

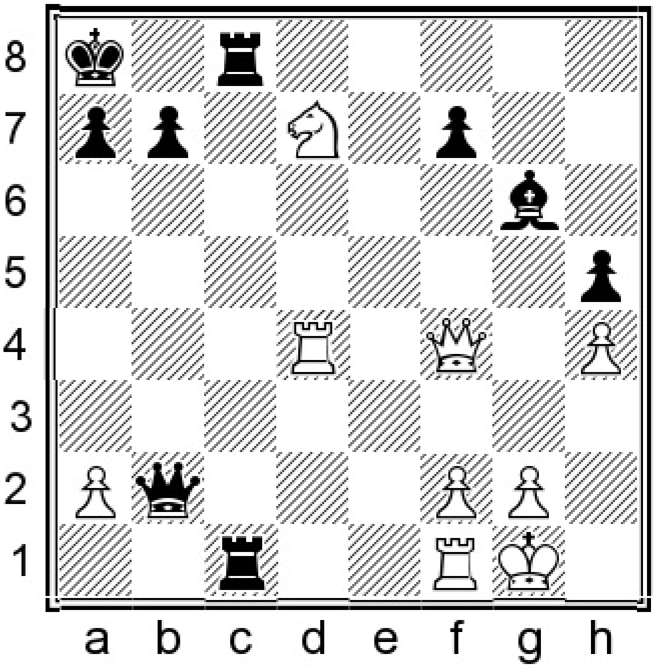

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

White to play

Show/Hide Solution

675 **35.♘b5+! ♔c8** He also loses after 35...♔b8 36.♖d8+ or 35...cxb5 36.♕c5+ ♔b8 37.♖d8+. **36.♘xa7+ ♔b8 37.♖d8+** 1-0 Babula-Ragger, Germany Bundesliga 2007/08; 37...♔c7 38.♕b6#.

676

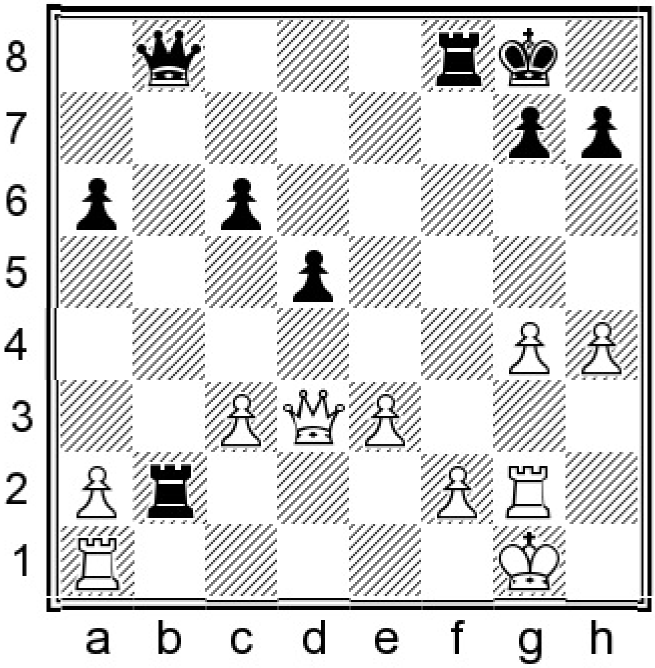


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

676 **27.♘b6+! ♛xb6** 27...axb6 28.♖a4#. **28.♖xc1 ♜xc1+ 29.♕xc1** 1-0 Koneru-Murali, Mumbai 2008.

677

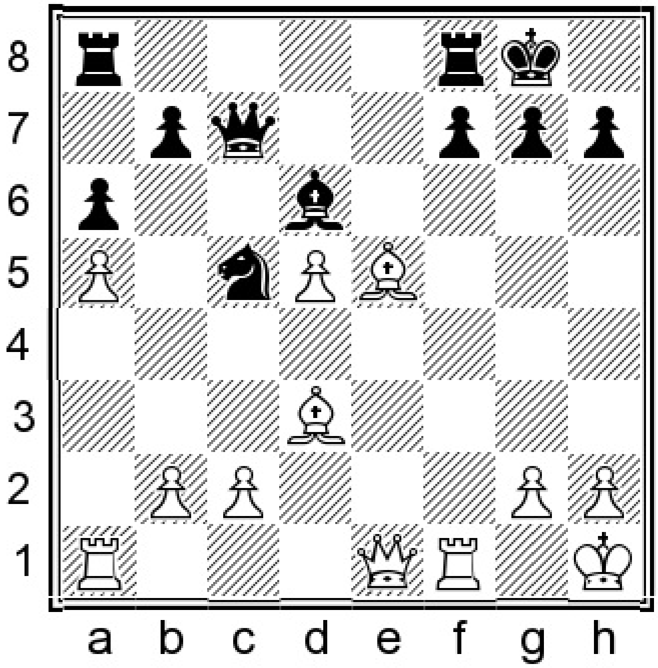


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

677 **28...♖fxf2!** 0-1 Beliavsky-Acs, Paks 2008; 29.♖xf2 ♕g3+, and mate is not far away.

678

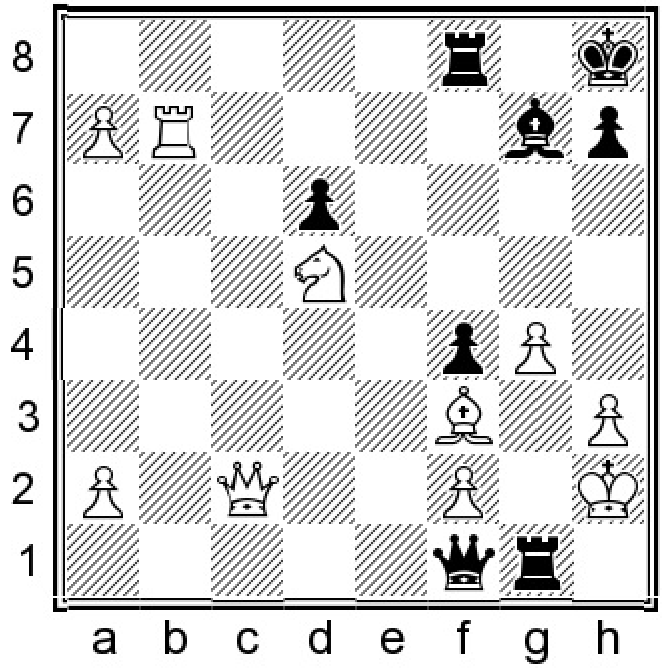


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

678 **22.♗xh7+! ♔xh7 23.♕h4+ ♔g8 24.♗xg7! ♔xg7 25.♕g5+** 1-0 Smikhovsky-Matlakov, Novokuznetsk 2008; after 25...♔h7 26.♖f6 mate cannot even be bought off at the cost of the queen.

679

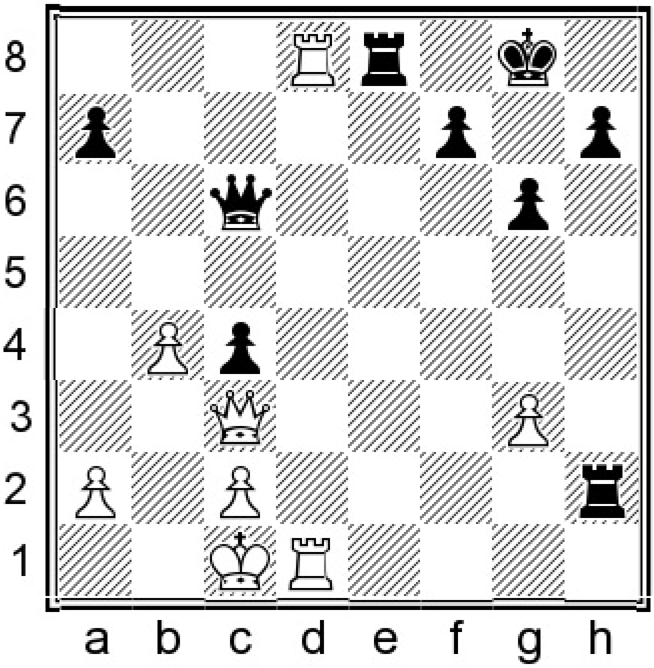

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h

Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

679 **51...♖g3!** Van Wely-Kleijn, Netherlands tt 2008/09; White resigned, in view of mate after 52.fxg3 fxg3+ 53.♔xg3 ♖xf3+ 54.♔h4 ♕xh3+ 55.♔g5 ♕h6.

680

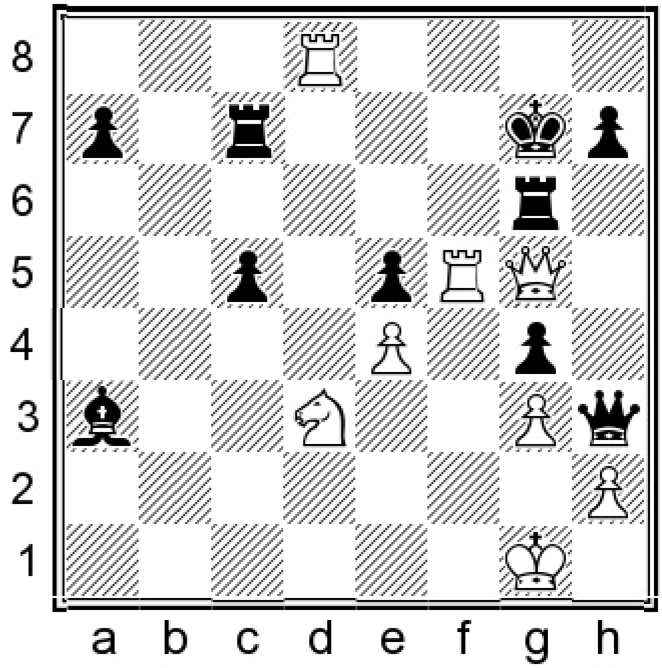


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

680 **26.♕e5!** 1-0 Macieja-Agdestein, Wolvega 2008; 26...♖e2 27.♕xe2; 26...♔f8 27.♖xe8+ ♕xe8 28.♕h8+ ♔e7 29.♖e1+.

681

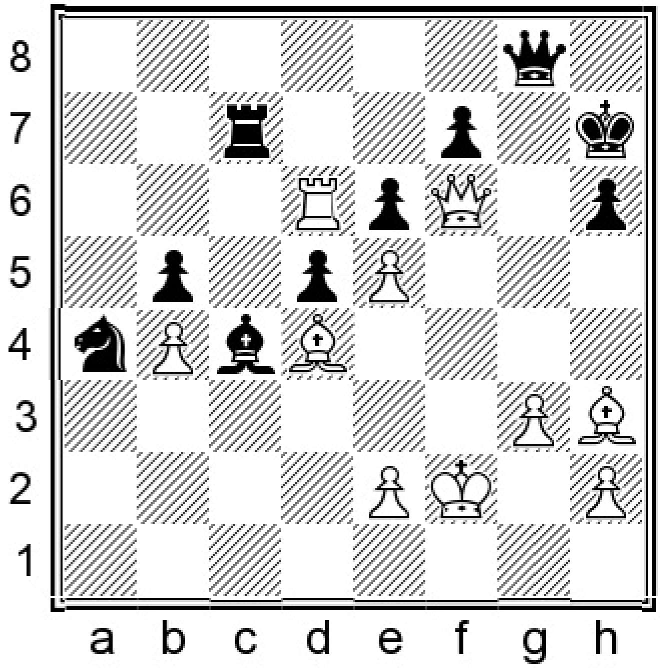


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

681 **39.♖g8+!** 1-0 Rodshtein-Caspi, Haifa ch-ISR 2008; 39...♔xg8 40.♕d8+ ♔g7 41.♕f8#.

682

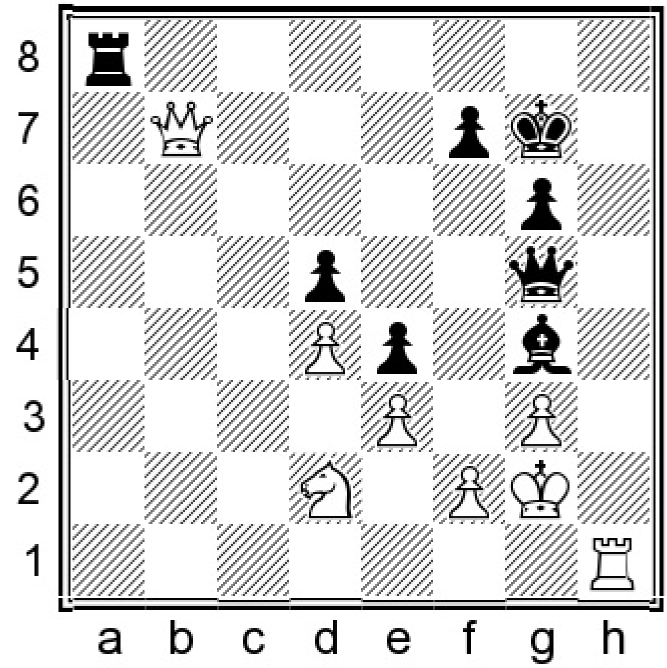


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

682 **40.♗f5+!** 1-0 Wang Hao-Laxman, Al-Ain tt 2008; 40...exf5 41.♕xh6#.

683

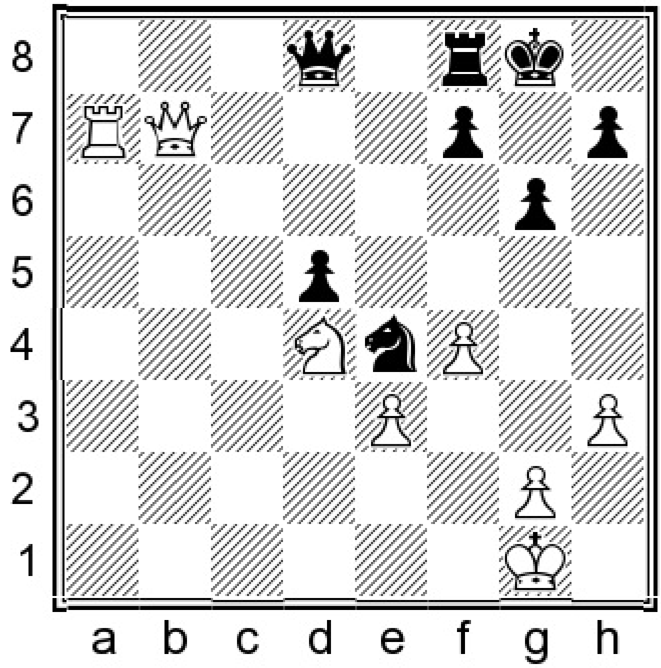


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

683 **34...♗f3+!** 0-1 Bregadze-Mchedlishvili, Tbilisi ch-GEO 2009; White loses by force after 35.♘xf3 exf3+ 36.♔xf3 (36.♔g1 ♖a1+; 36.♔h2 ♕h5+) 36...♕f5+ 37.♔g2 ♕e4+ 38.f3 (38.♔h2 ♖h8+) 38...♖a2+ 39.♔h3 ♕xf3.

684

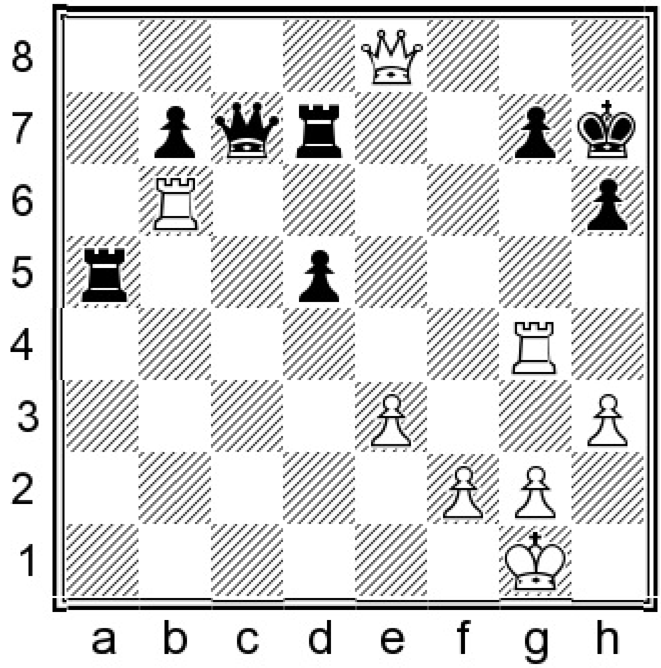


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

684 **40.♘e6! ♕f6 41.♘xf8** 1-0 Moiseenko-Khairullin, Moscow 2009.

685

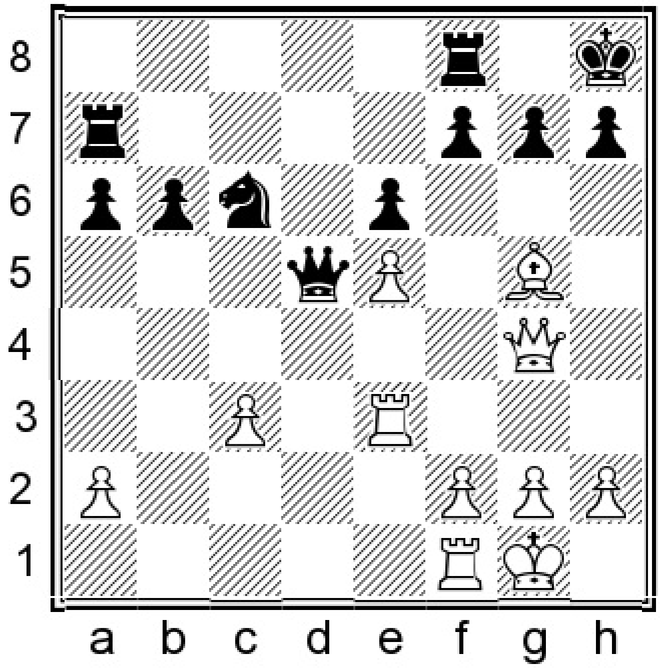


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

685 **38.♖xh6+!** Grachev-Akobian, Moscow 2009; Black resigned because of 38...gxh6 39.♕g8# or 38...♔xh6 39.♕h8#.

686

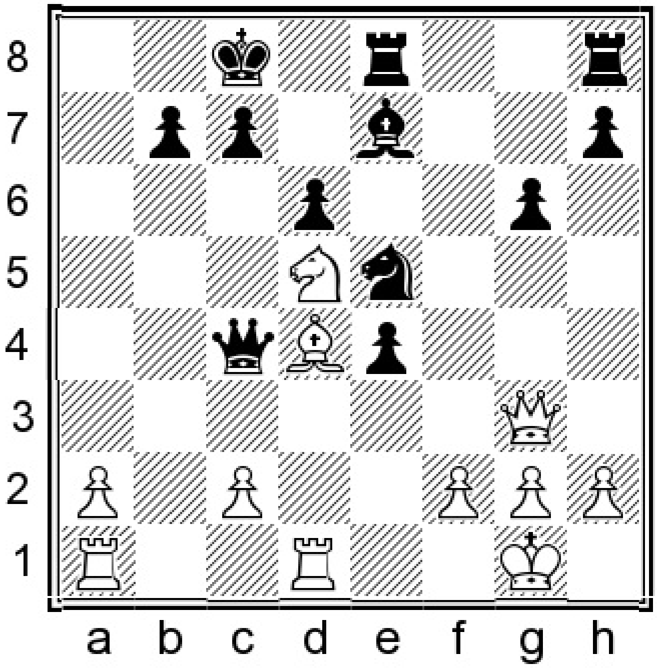


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

686 **20.♗f6! gxf6** 20...♖g8 21.♖g3. **21.♖g3** 1-0 Arsovic-Ogloblin, Budva Ech 2009.

687

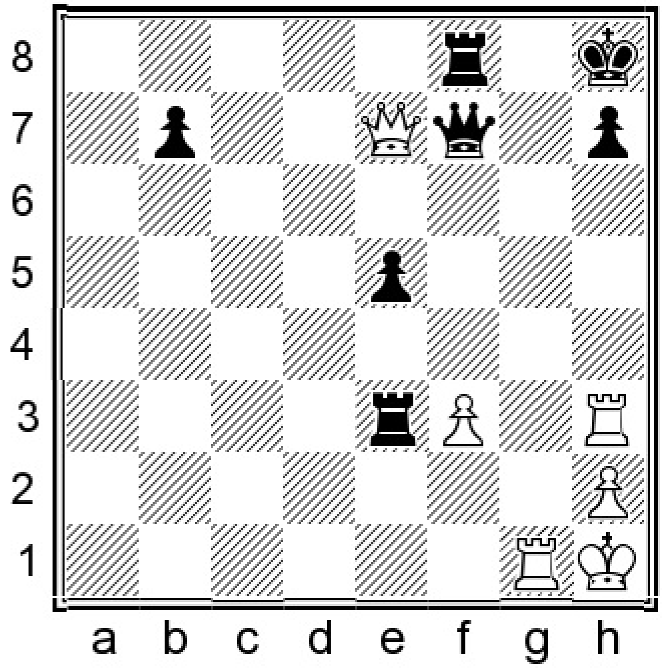


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

687 **19.♗xe5 dxe5 20.♘xe7+** 1-0 Vachier-Lagrave-Landenbergue, France tt 2009; after 20...♖xe7 21.♕a3 Black cannot simultaneously defend mate and save the rook.

688

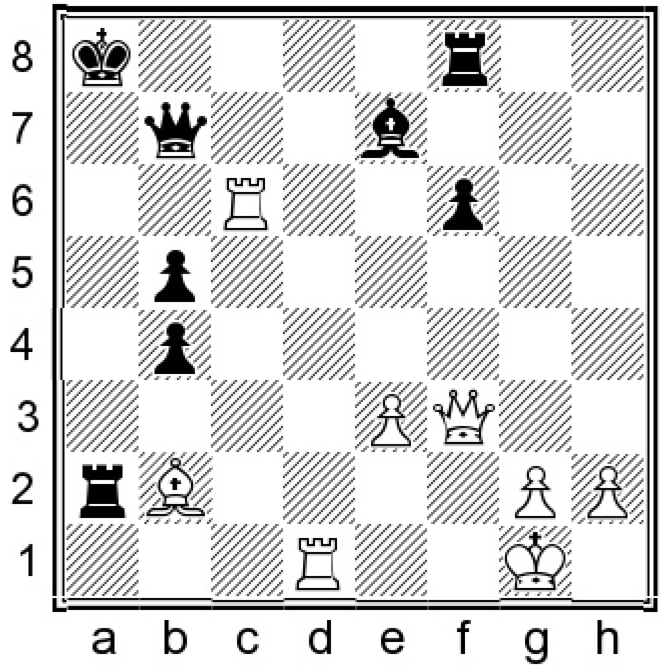

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h

White to play

Show/Hide Solution

688 **40.♖xh7+!** 1-0 Postny-Tratar, Croatia tt 2009; 40...♔xh7 41.♕h4+.

689

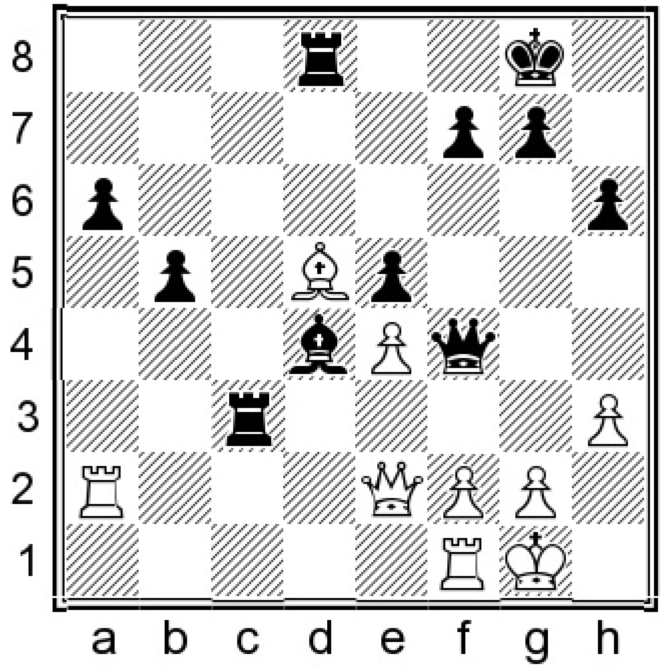


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

689 **32.♖d7! ♕xd7 33.♖c7+** 1-0 Kramnik-Aronian, Moscow Wch blitz 2009.

690

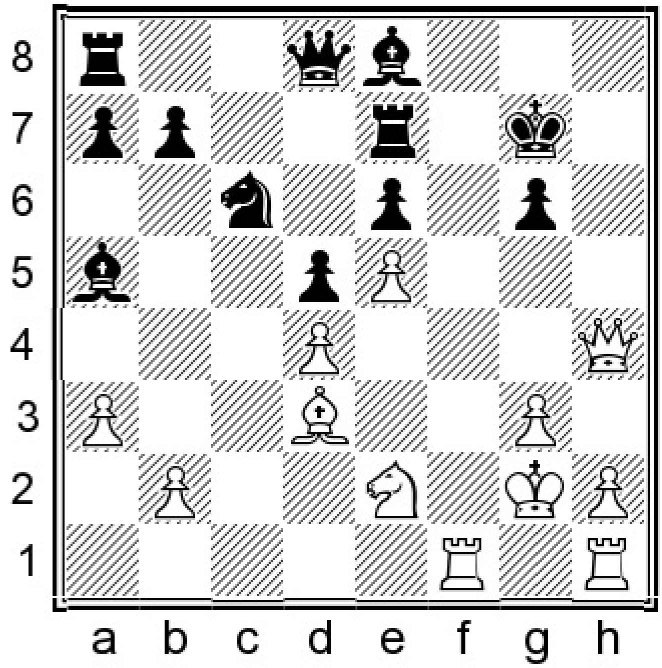


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

690 **31...♖xh3! 32.gxh3 ♕g3+ 33.♔h1 ♕xh3+ 34.♔g1 ♖d6** 0-1 Miladinovic-Gyimesi, Rogaska Slatina tt 2009.

691

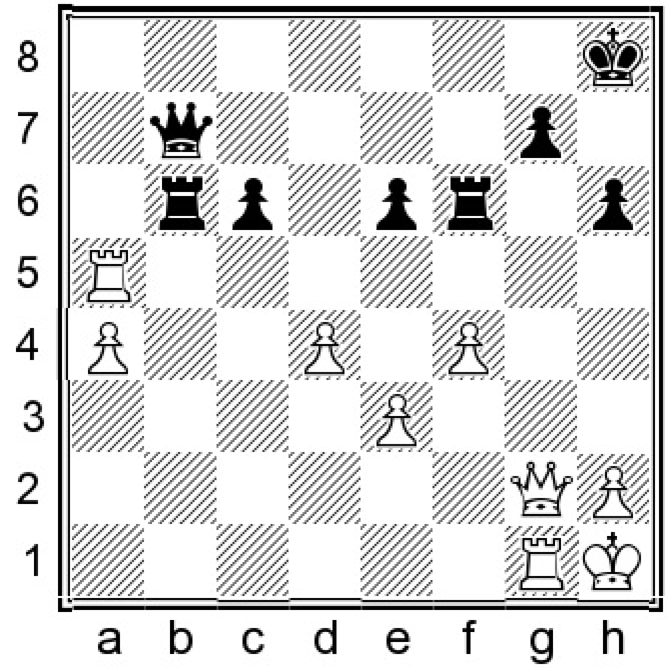


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

691 **25.♖f8!** Negi-C.van Dongen, Cappelle-la-Grande 2010; Black resigned because of 25...♔xf8 26.♕h8+ ♔f7 27.♖f1#.

692

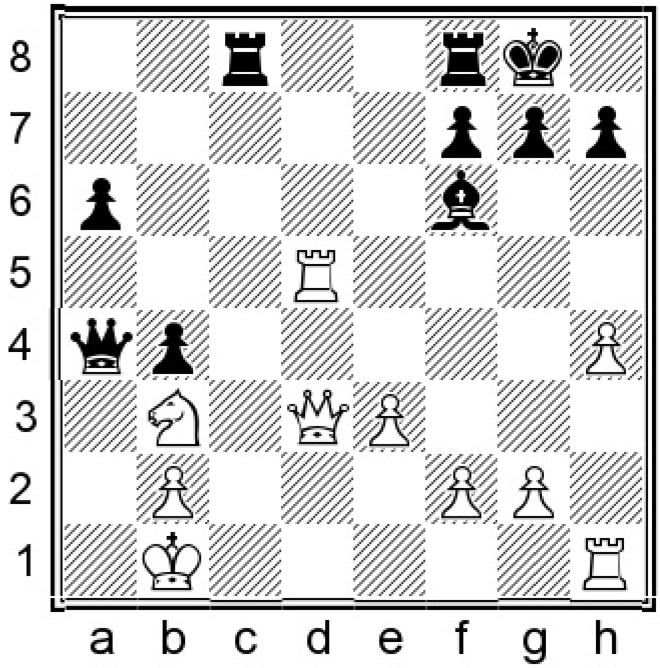


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

692 **35.♖a8+ ♔h7 36.♖b8!** 1-0 Prohaszka-Neubauer, Szentgotthard 2010; because of the threat against g7, he loses a rook.

693

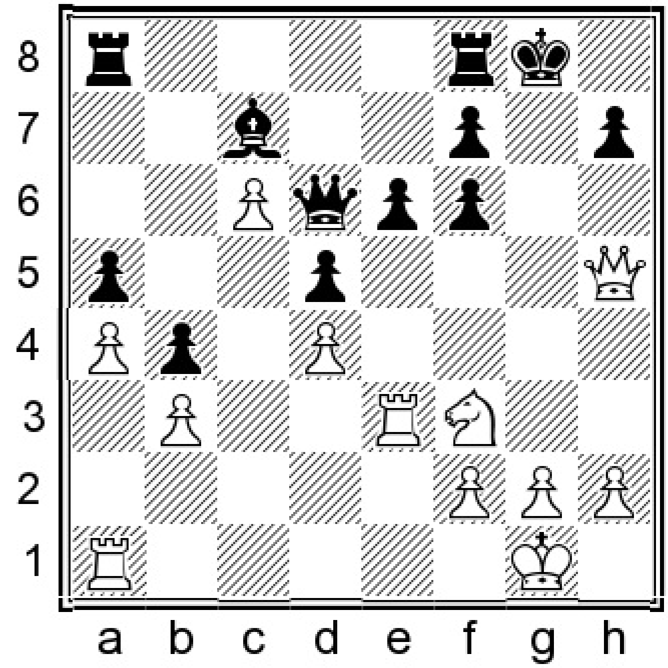


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

693 **27...♖c3! 28.bxc3 ♕xb3+ 29.♔c1 ♖c8 30.c4 ♖xc4+** 0-1 Issing-Schlötzer, Bad Liebenzell ch-GER 2010.

694



White to play

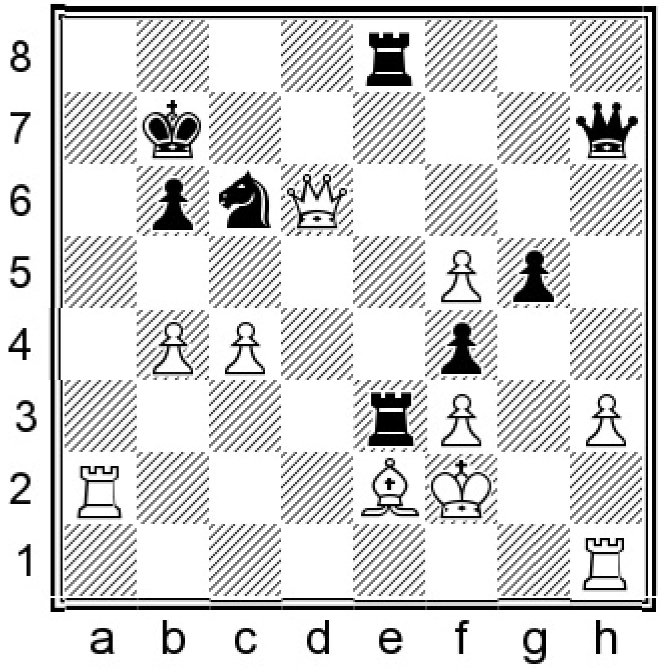
Show/Hide Solution

694 **23.♘e5!** But not 23.♘g5? ♕xh2+, and Black emerges intact.

23.♘e5! fxe5 24.♕g5+ 1-0 Sumets-Kravtsov, Russia tt 2010; 24...♔h8 25.♕f6+.

Show in Text Mode

695

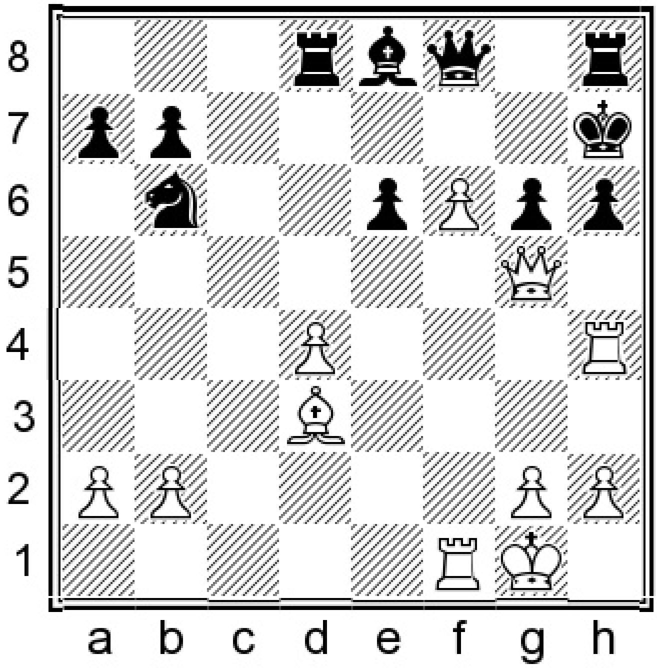


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

695 **39...♕h4+ 40.♔f1 ♖xf3+!** Dao Thien Hai-Nguyen Van Huy, Ho Chi Minh City ch-VIE 2010; White resigned, without waiting for 41.♗xf3 ♖e1+ 42.♔g2 ♕g3#.

696

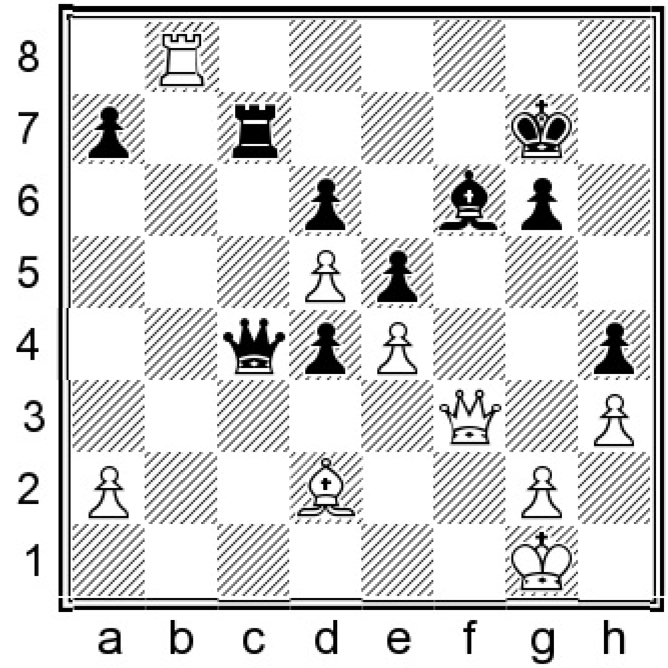


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

696 **24.f7!** Kukov-Badev, Blagoevgrad ch-BUL 2010; Black resigned, having seen 24...♗xf7 25.♖xf7+! ♕xf7 26.♕xh6+.

697

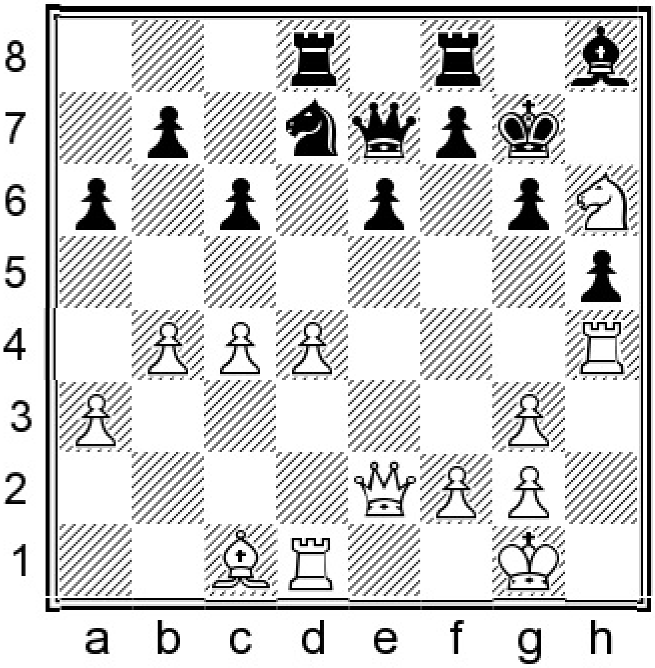

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h

White to play

Show/Hide Solution

697 **32.♗g5!** 1-0 Chiburdanidze-Fierro Baquero, Jermuk W 2010; if 32...♖f7 33.♗xf6+ ♖xf6 34.♖b7+ or 32...♗xg5 33.♕f8+ ♔h7 34.♕h8#.

698

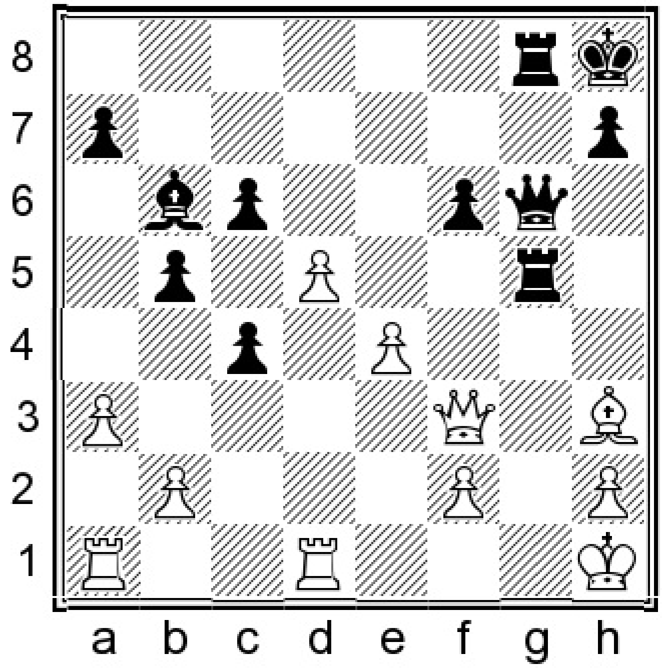


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

698 Delgado Ramirez-Romero Holmes, Bogota 2010; **31.♘f5+! gxf5 32.♕xh5** 1-0. The only defence against ♕h6+ is 32...♕f6, but then it is mate on h7.

699

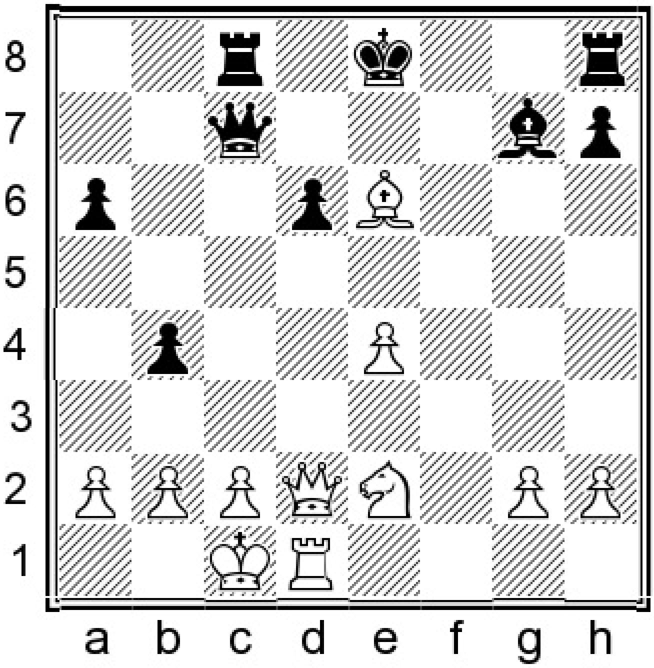


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

699 **35...♗xf2!** 0-1 Wang Hao-Aronian, Shanghai 2010. The squares g1 and e4 cannot be defended simultaneously.

700

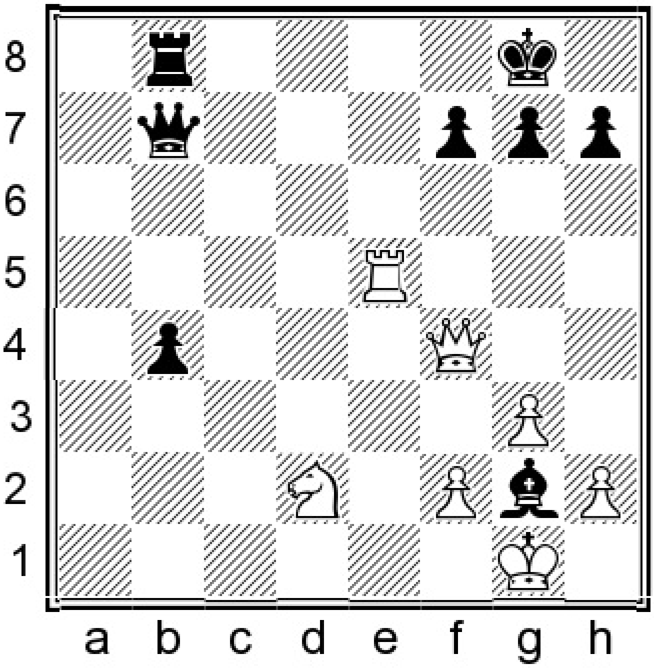


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

700 **20...♗h6!** 0-1 A.Hunt-Cheparinov, Plovdiv Ech 2010.

701

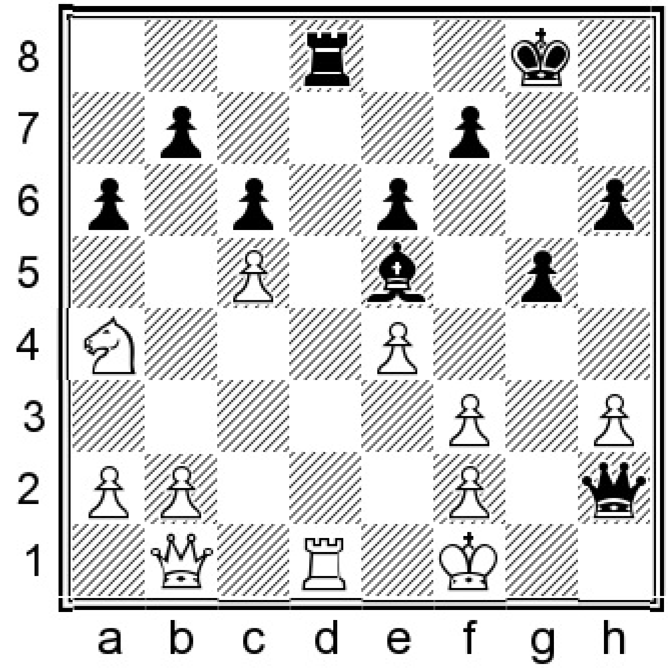


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

701 **28.♖e7!** 1-0 Yevseev-Bocharov, Belgorod 2010; after 28...♕xe7 29.♕xb8+ White has an extra piece, whilst otherwise Black cannot simultaneously defend b8 and f7.

702

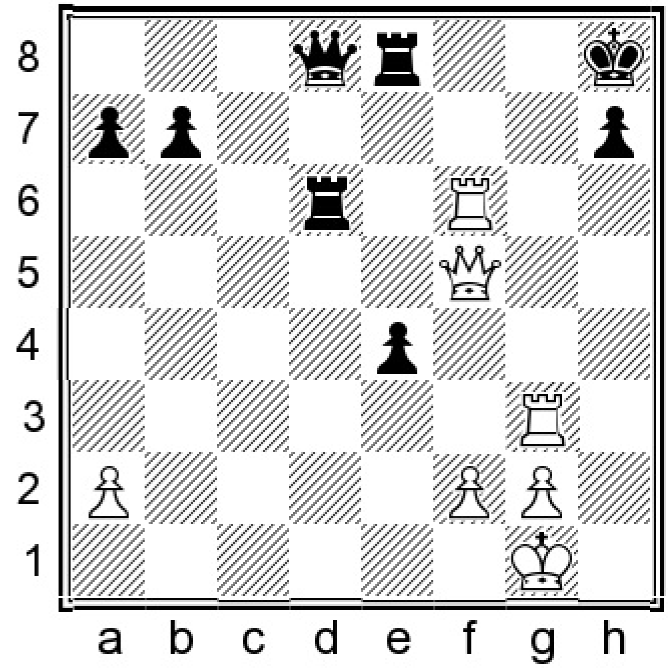


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

702 **29...♖d2!** It is either mate or the queen: 0-1 A.Grant-Wohl, Hastings 2010/11.

703

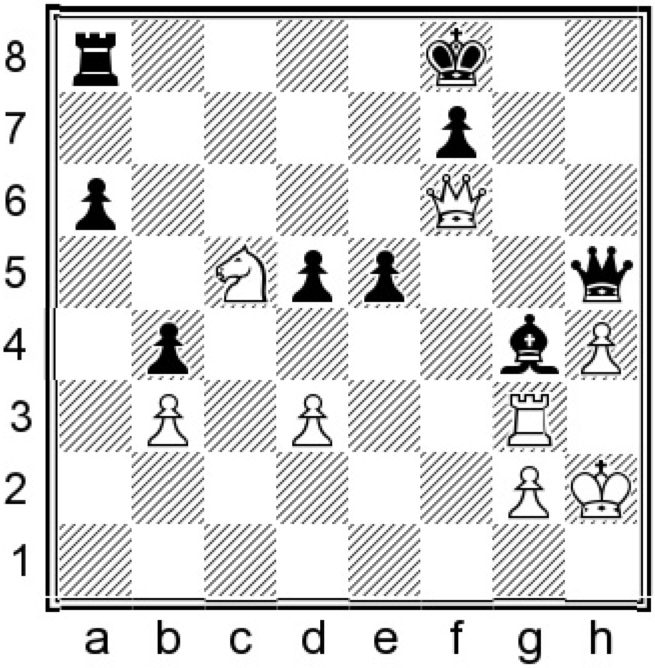


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

703 **36.♖g7!** 1-0 Vachier-Lagrave-Nepomniachtchi, Wijk aan Zee 2011; 36...♔xg7 37.♖f7+.

704

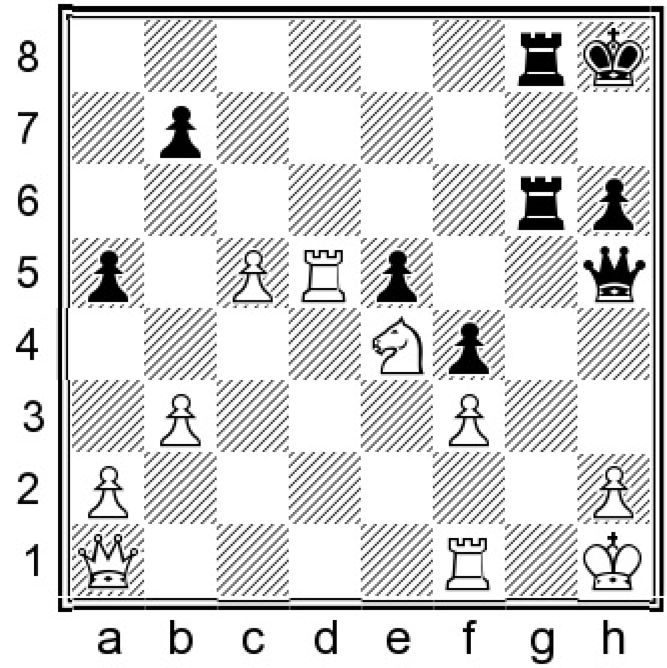


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

704 **52.♘d7+!** 1-0 Safarli-S.Zhigalko, Moscow jr 2011; if 52...♔e8 53.♘xe5 wins the bishop, whilst after 52...♗xd7 53.♕d6+ ♔e8 54.♖g8 it is mate.

705

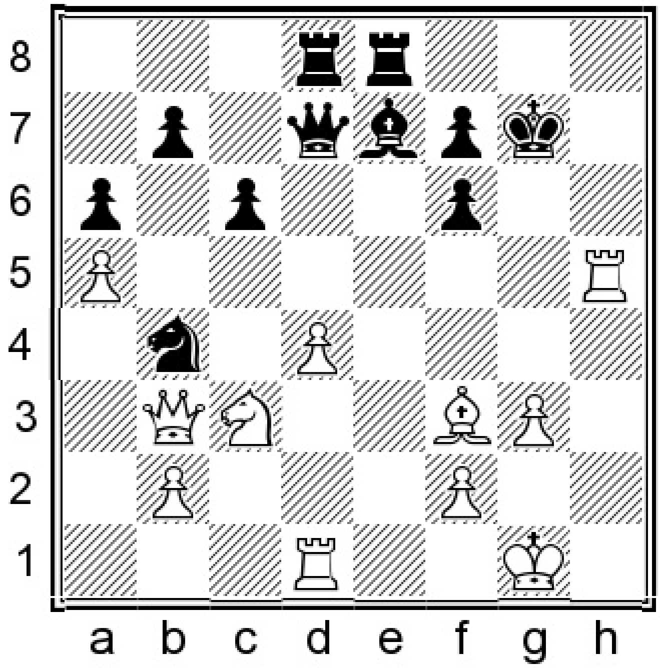

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

705 **39...♖g1+!** 0-1 Jakovljevic-Leon Hoyos, Cento 2011.

706

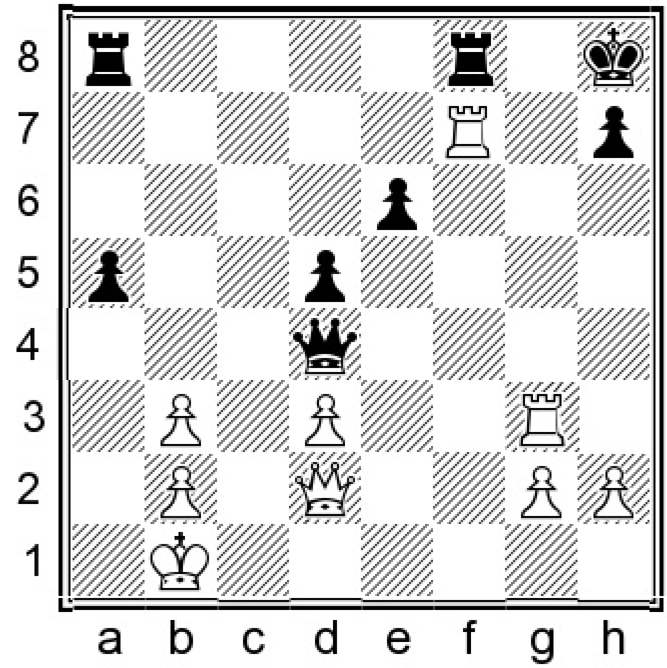


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

706 **26.♖h7+!** Lysyj-Felgaer, Moscow 2011; Black resigned because of 26...♔xh7 27.♕xf7+ ♔h6 28.♔g2, and there is no defence against ♖h1+ (28...♔g5 29.♕h5#).

707

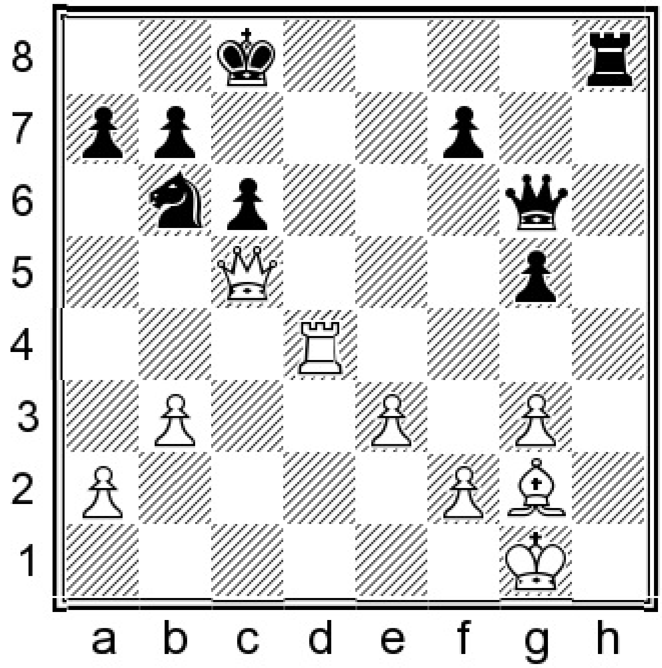


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

707 **28.♖xh7+! ♔xh7 29.♕g5** 1-0 Guseinov-Bagirov, Baku ch-AZE 2011; mate is threatened on h3 and he is not saved after 29...♕g1+ 30.♔a2 ♕xh2 31.♕g7#.

708

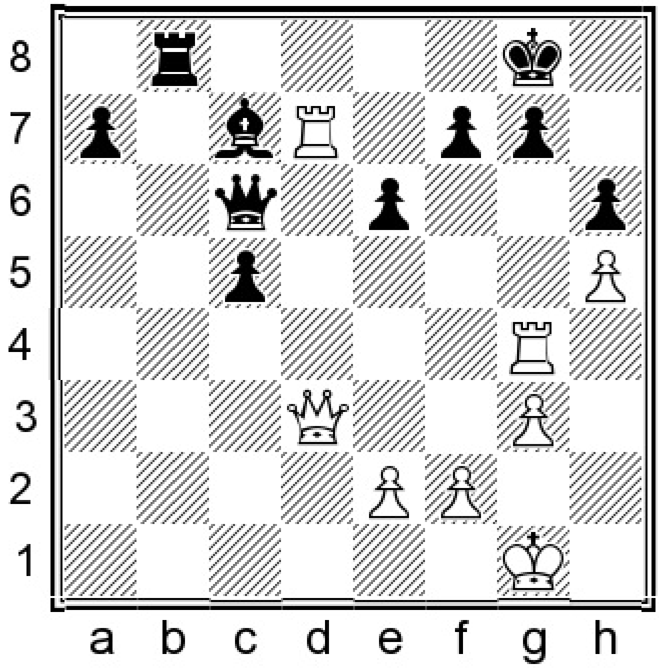


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

708 **24.♗h3+!** 1-0 Khalifman-Bukavshin, Moscow 2011; 24...♖xh3 25.♕f8+ ♔c7 26.♕d8#; 24...♔b8 25.♕e5+.

709

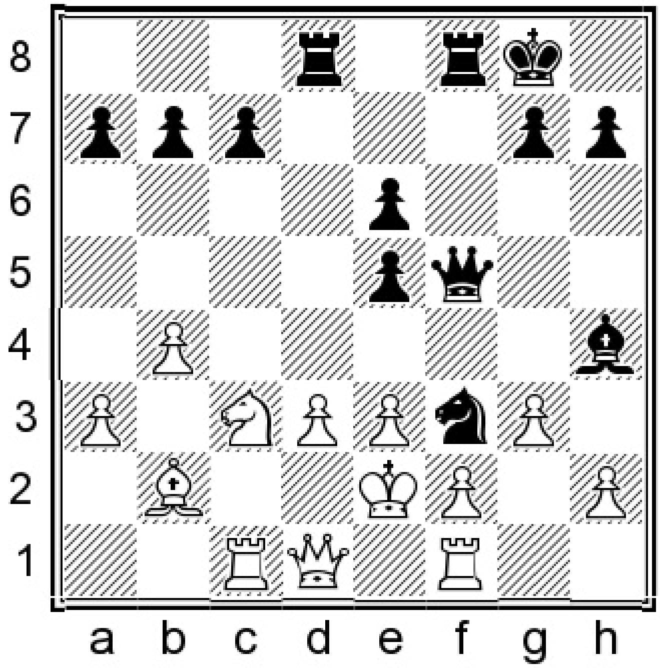

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h

White to play

Show/Hide Solution

709 **39.♖xg7+!** 1-0 Barsov-Kvon, Tashkent 2011; 39...♔xg7 40.♕g6+.

710

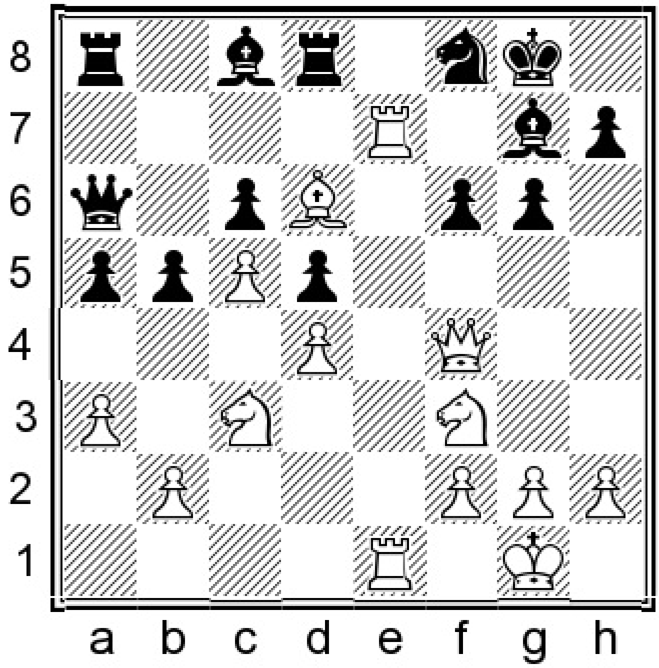

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

710 **19...♘g1+!** 0-1 Conquest-Hawkins, England 4NCL 2010/11; not 20.♖xg1 ♕xf2#, whilst 20.♔e1 fails to 20...♖xd3 21.♕xd3 (21.♕b3 ♘f3+ 22.♔e2 ♖d2#) 21...♕xd3 22.♖xg1 ♗f6.

711

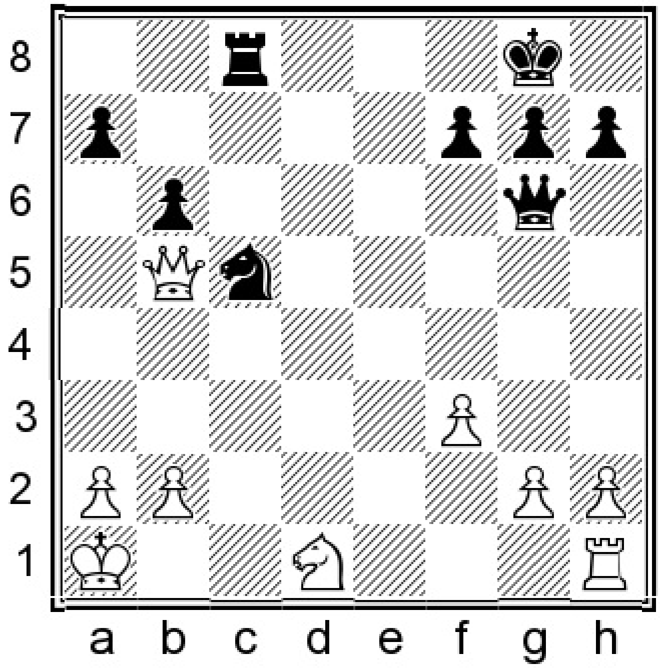

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h

White to play

Show/Hide Solution

711 **23.♖xg7+! ♔xg7 24.♖e7+ ♔g8 25.♕h6** 1-0 Palliser-Shaw, Sheffield ch-GBR 2011.

712

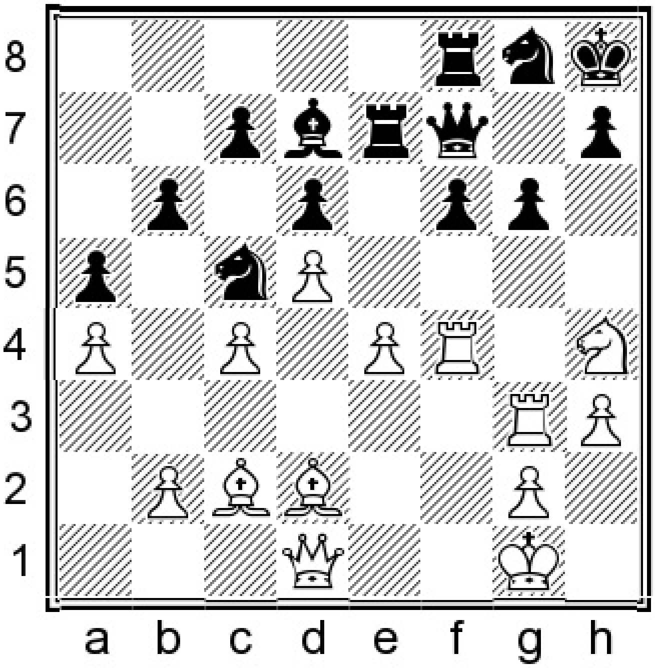

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

712 **23...♘b3+!** Shimanov-Vidit, Chennai Wch U20 2011; White resigned, because of the forced mate: 24.axb3 ♖c1+ 25.♔a2 ♕b1+ 26.♔a3 ♕a1+ 27.♔b4 a5+.

713

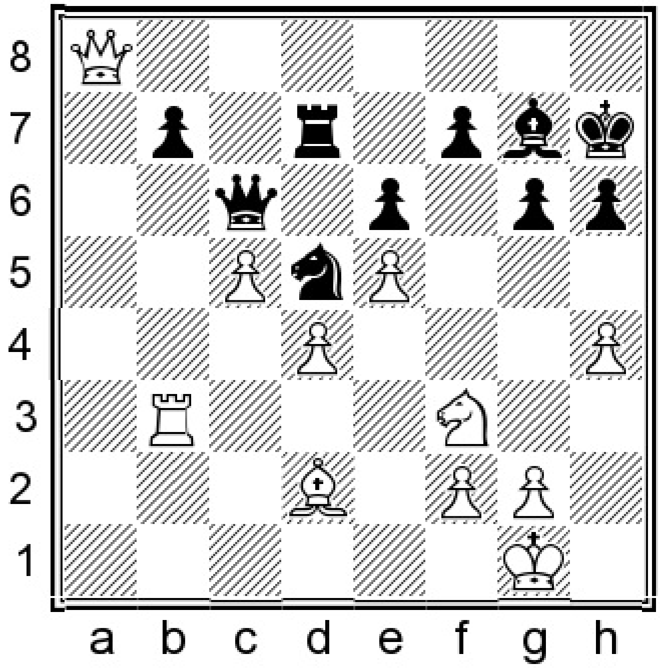


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

713 **26.♘xg6+! hxg6 27.♖h4+ ♔g7 28.♕h5 ♖fe8** It is possible to resist slightly longer by means of 28...♖c8, but after the obvious 29.♗h6+ ♔h8 30.♖xg6 ♕h7 31.e5 f5 32.e6 Black is practically stalemated. **29.♕h8+** 1-0 S.B.Hansen-Carlhammer, Gothenburg 2011; 29...♔f8 30.♗h6+.

714

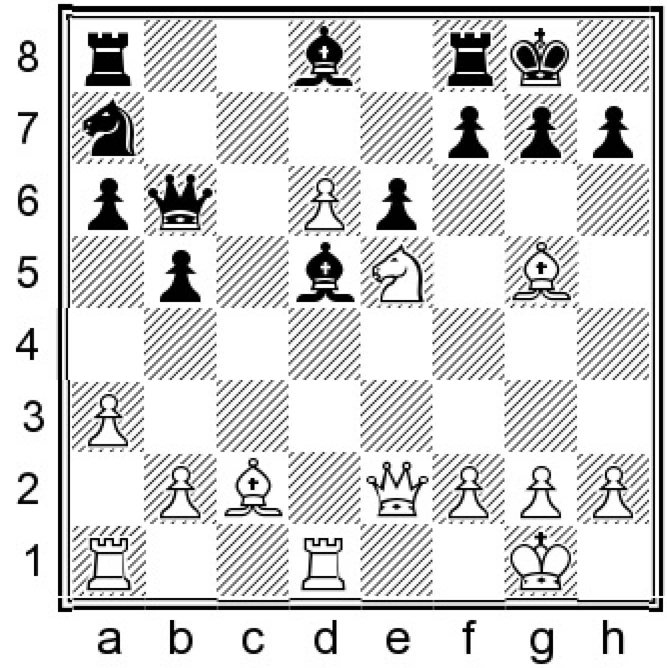


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

714 **25.♘g5+! hxg5 26.hxg5** 1-0 Baklan-T.Willemze, Hoogeveen 2011; the check on h3 decides the outcome of the game.

715

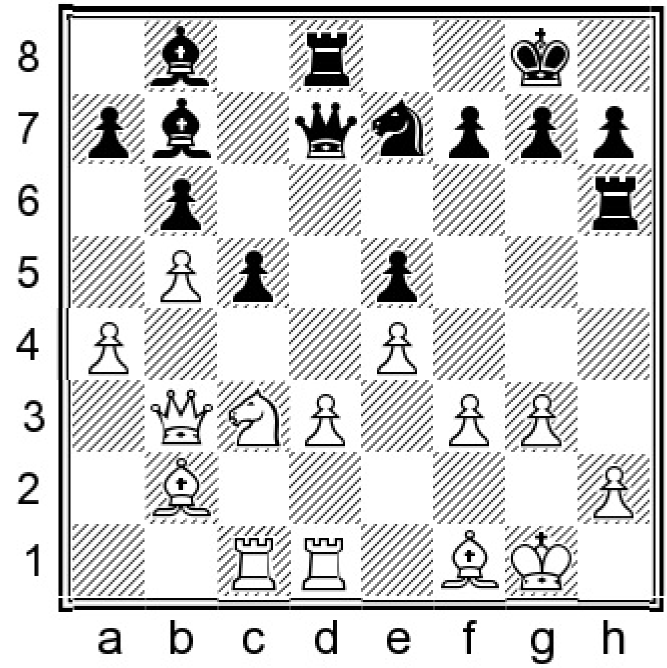


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

715 **19.♗e7! ♗xe7 20.dxe7 ♖fc8 21.♗xh7+!** Barua-Lalith, Nagpur 2008; Black resigned because of 21...♔xh7 22.♕h5+ ♔g8 23.♕xf7+ ♔h7 24.♖d3+–.

716

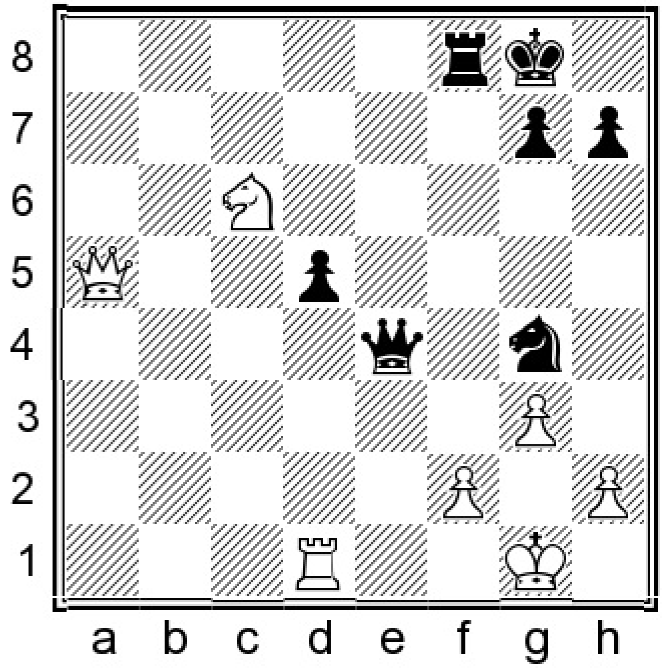


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

716 **28...♕d4+ 29.♔g2 ♖xh2+! 30.♔xh2 ♕f2+ 31.♗g2 ♖d6** 0-1 A.Srebrnic-Galojan, Porto Carras Ech-tt W 2011.

717

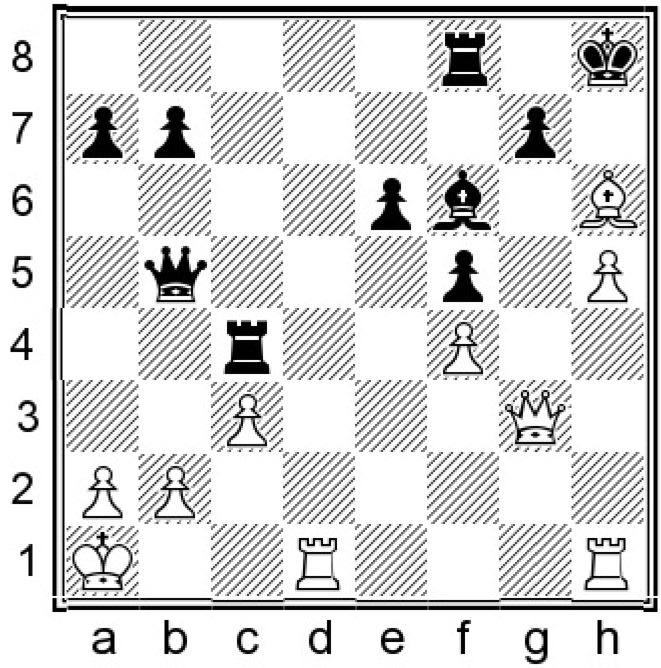

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h

Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

717 **32...♘e3! 33.fxe3 ♕xe3+ 34.♔g2** 34.♔h1 ♕f3+. **34...♖f2+ 35.♔h3 ♕h6+ 36.♔g4 ♕g6+**, and mate next move: 0-1 Vallejo Pons-Ponomariov, Spain tt 2011.

718

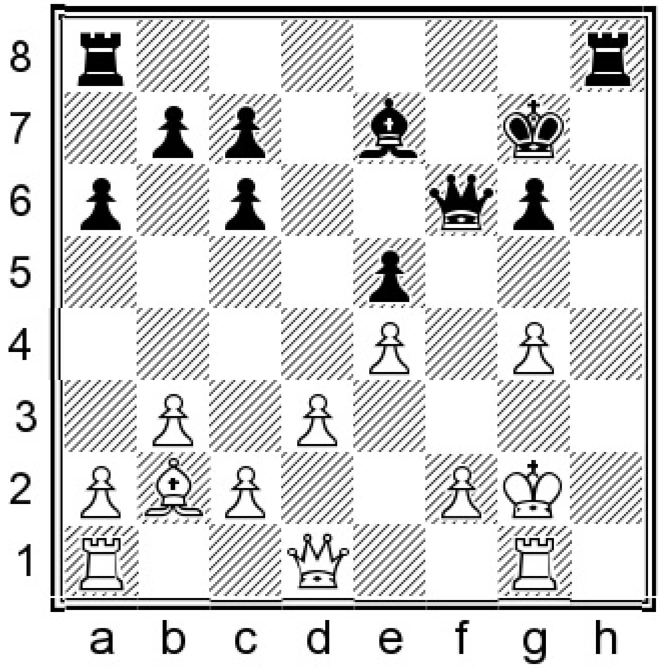


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

718 **26.♗xg7+! ♗xg7 27.h6 ♗f6 28.♖dg1** 1-0 Dvirnyy-Brunello, Perugia ch-ITA 2011. White loses after both 28...♕c5 29.h7 with the threat of 30.♕g8+ and 28...♕d7 29.♕g7+! ♗xg7 30.hxg7+ ♔g8 31.♖h8+ ♔f7 32.gxf8=♕#.

719

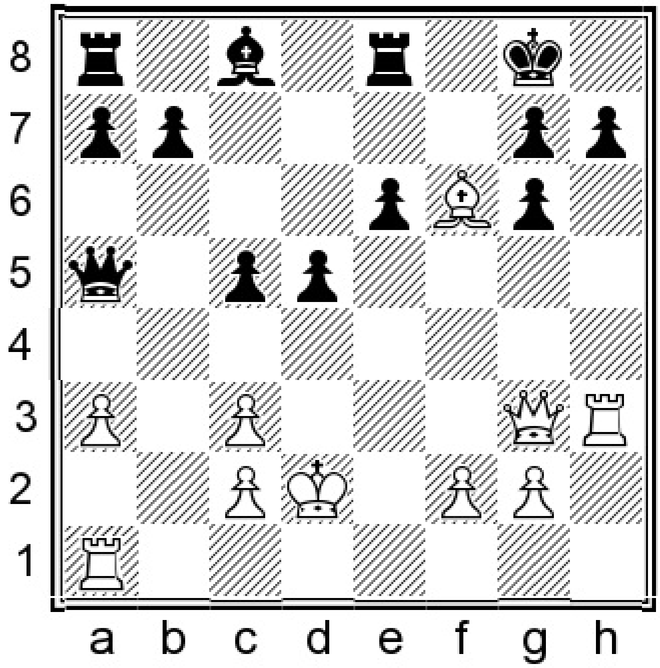


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

719 **24...♖h2+!** 0-1 Gori-Thakur, Milan 2011.

720

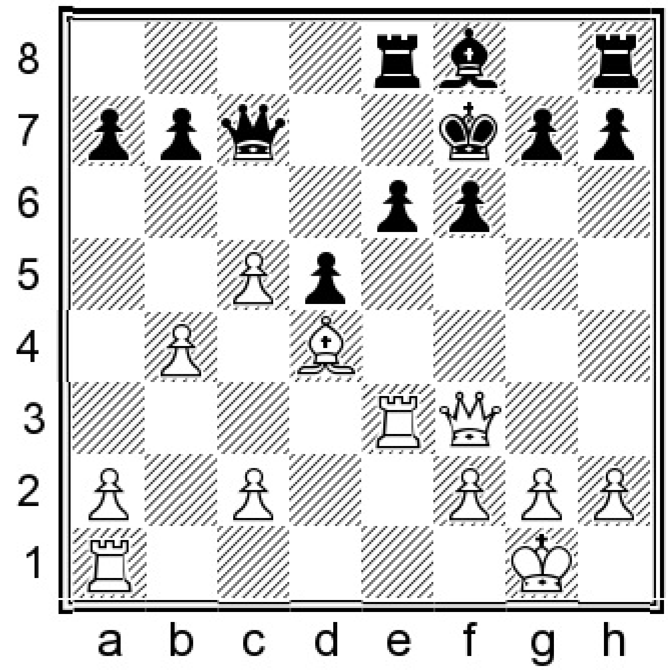

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h

White to play

Show/Hide Solution

720 **19.♖xh7!** Bologan-Vaganian, Fügen tt 2006; Black resigned, without waiting for 19...♔xh7 20.♖h1+ ♔g8 21.♕xg6 ♖e7 22.♗xg7 ♖xg7 23.♕e8#.

721



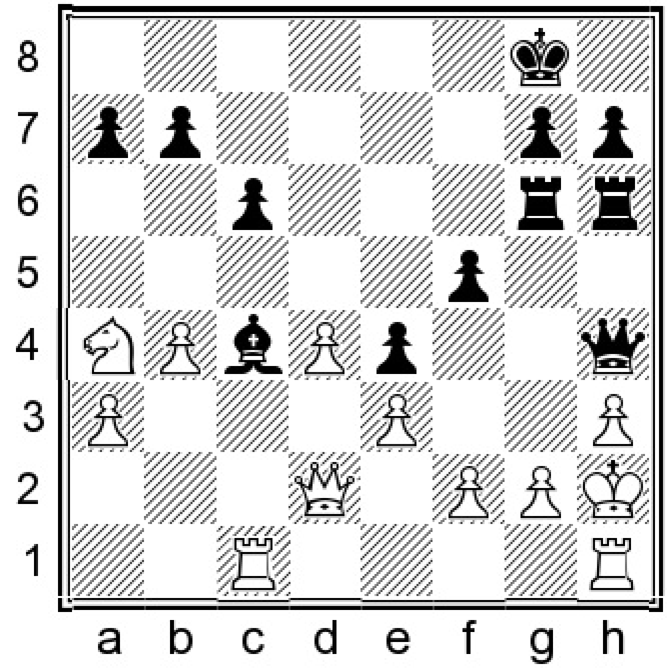
8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h

White to play

Show/Hide Solution

721 **18.♗xf6! gxf6 19.♕h5+ ♔e7 20.♖xe6+! ♔xe6 21.♖e1+** 1-0 De Filomeno-Aperia, Stockholm 2011/12.

722

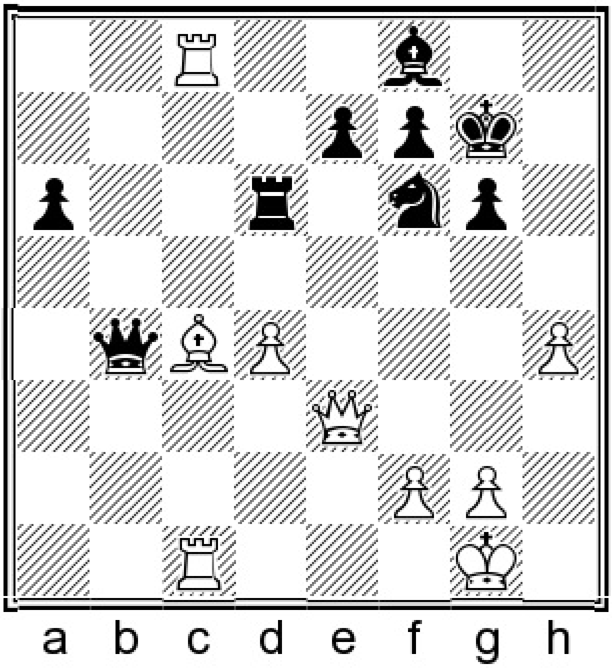


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

722 **26...♖xg2+! 27.♔xg2 ♕g5+ 28.♔h2 ♕g4** 0-1 Sergienko-Kharitonov, Moscow 2004.

723

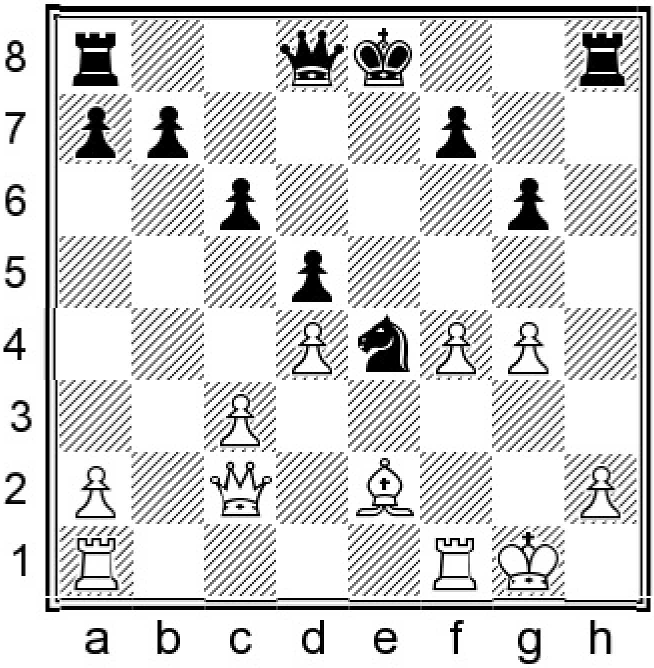


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

723 **31.♖xf8!** Nisipeanu-Aresh-chenko, Plovdiv Ech 2012; Black resigned, in view of the variation 31...♔xf8 32.♕h6+ ♔e8 (32...♔g8 33.♕xg6+ ♔h8 34.♗xf7, and White has too many threats) 33.♗b5+! ♕xb5 34.♕h8+ ♔d7 35.♕c8#.

724

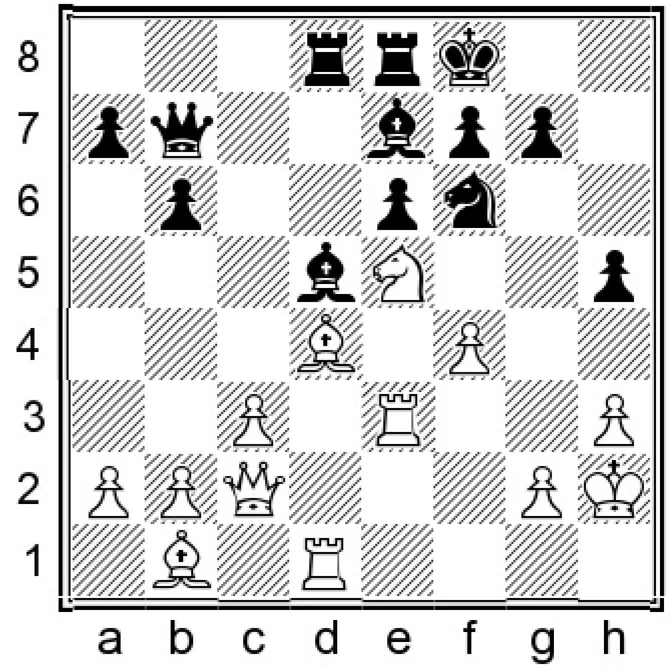

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h

Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

724 **19...♖xh2!** Griffiths-Turner, England 4NCL 2011/12; White resigned because of 20.♔xh2 ♕h4+ 21.♔g2 ♕g3+ 22.♔h1 0-0-0.

725

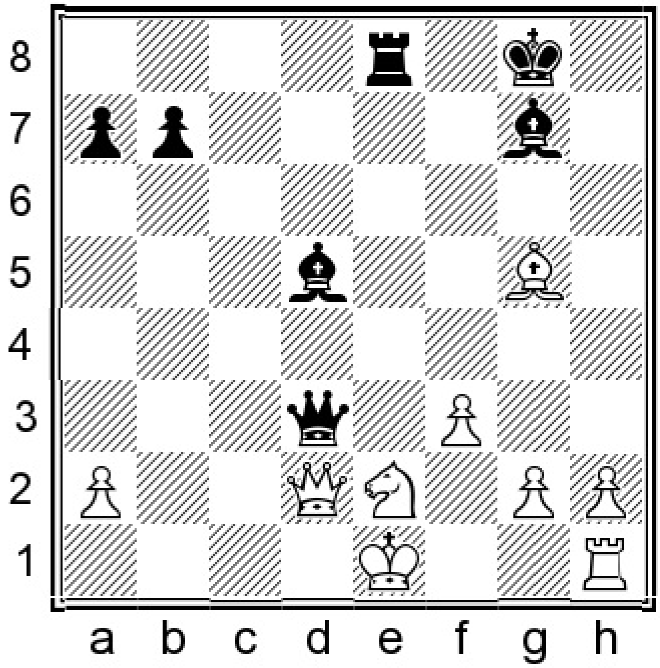


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

725 **27.♘xf7! ♔xf7 28.♕g6+ ♔f8** Or 28...♔g8 29.♖g3. **29.♖g3 ♗d6 30.♗xf6 ♖d7** If 30...gxf6 Black is mated in two. **31.♕h7** 1-0 Baklan-Sachdev, Dubai 2012.

726

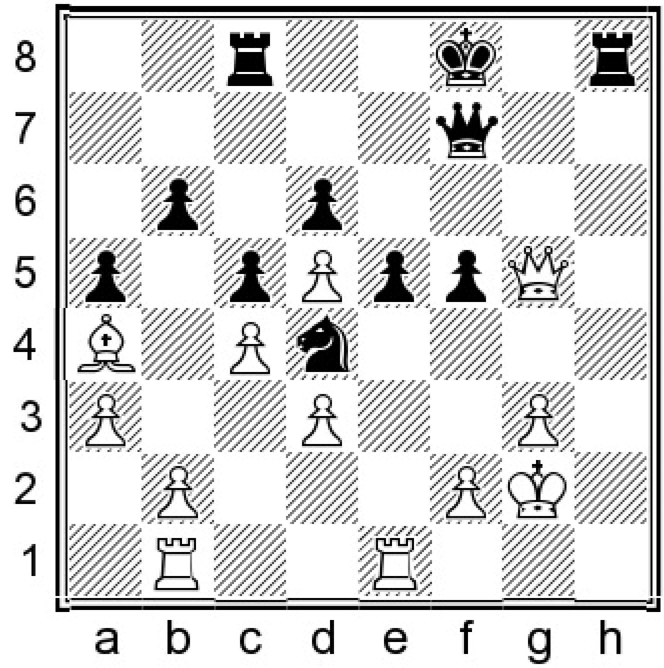

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h

Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

726 **30...♗c3! 31.♕xc3 ♕xe2#** Reinderman-Ernst, Amsterdam ch-NED 2012.

727

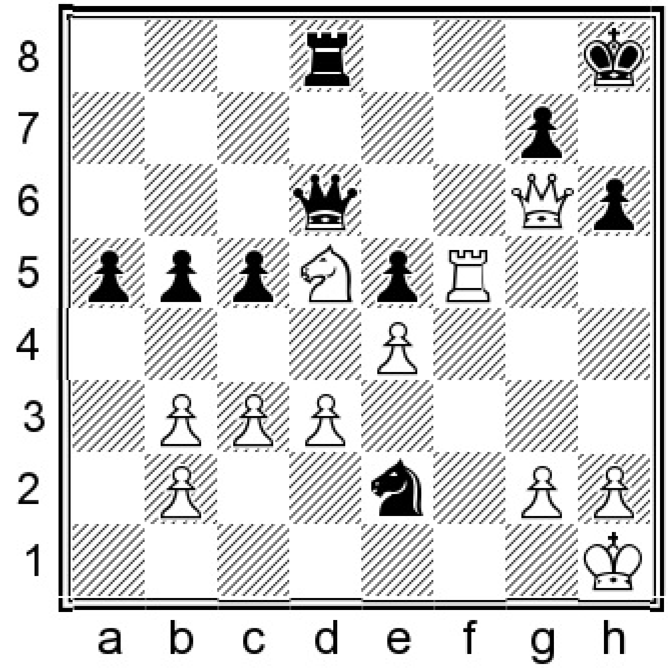


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

727 **25...♖h2+! 26.♔f1** 26.♔xh2 ♘f3+. **26...♖h1+ 27.♔g2 ♖h2+ 28.♔f1 ♕h7** 0-1 Wang Yue-Grischuk, Istanbul ol 2012; after 29.♕f6+ ♔g8 30.♕g5+ ♔f7 the checks run out.

728

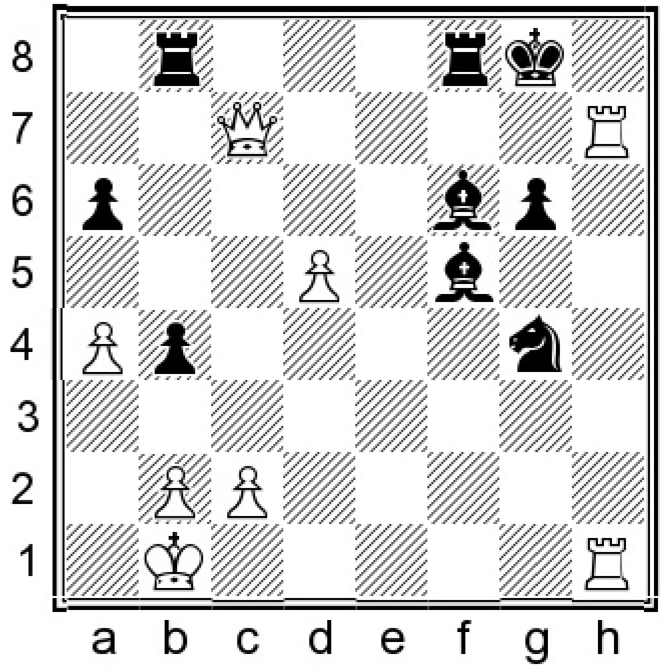


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

728 **33.♘f6! gxf6 34.♕xh6+ ♔g8 35.♕g6+** 1-0 Roy Chowdhury-Arnetta, Livigno 2012.

729



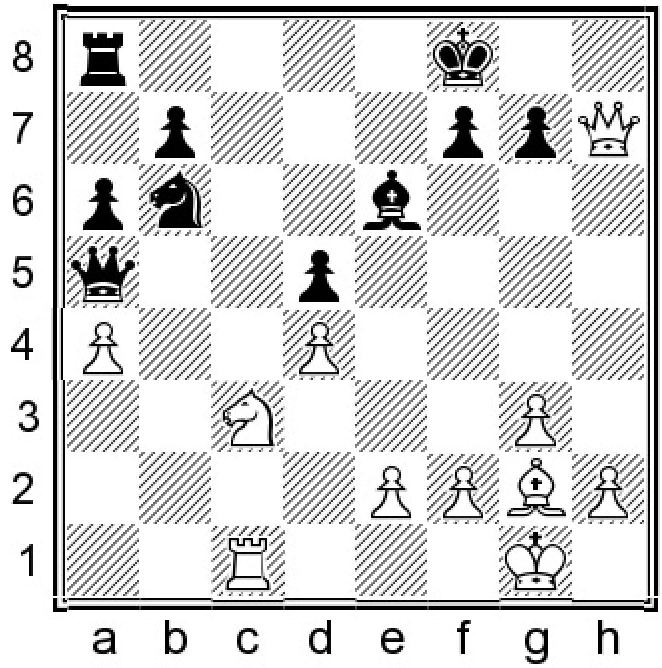
White to play

Show/Hide Solution

729 **34.♖h8+! ♗xh8 35.♕h7#** Kravtsiv-Zhou Yang Fan, Livigno 2012.

Show in Text Mode

730

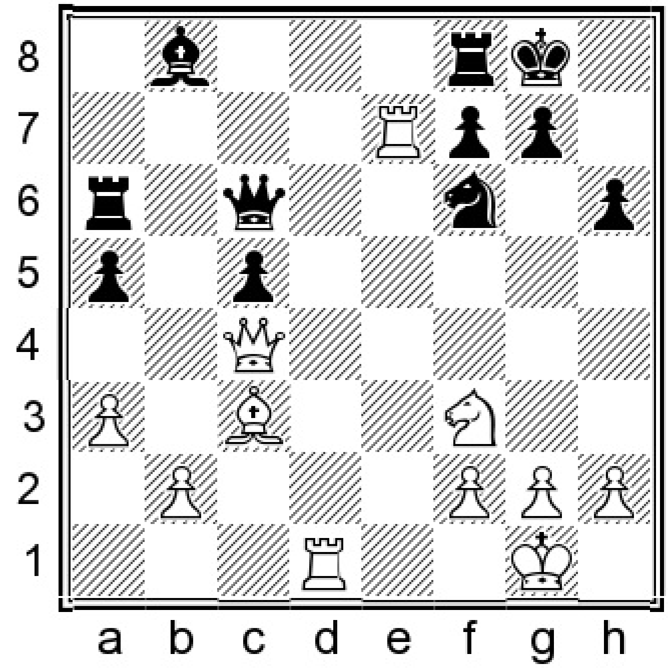


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

730 **22.♘xd5!** **♗xd5** It is also completely hopeless after 22...♘xd5 23.♕h8+ ♔e7 24.♕xa8. **23.♖c7** 1-0 Naiditsch-M.Kopylov, Germany Bundesliga 2012/13.

731

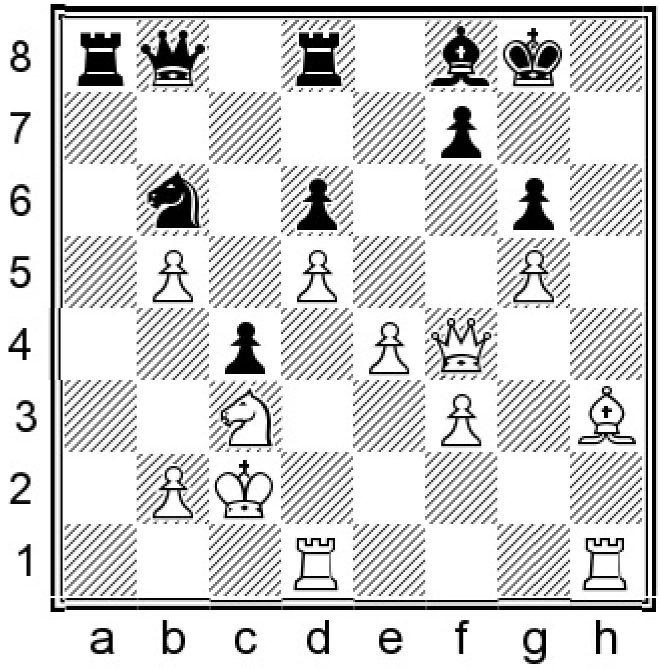


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

731 **24.♖d8!** 1-0 Shchekachev-Stefan, Salzburg 2004; there is no sensible defence to 25.♕xf7+.

732

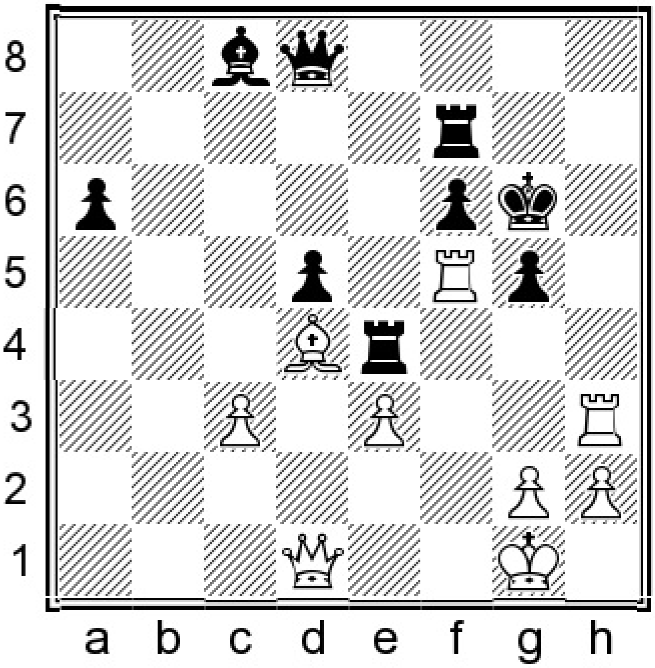

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h

White to play

Show/Hide Solution

732 **29.♗e6! fxe6** Or 29...♖a7 30.♗xf7+! ♖xf7 31.♖h8+. **30.♖h8+!** 1-0 Bartel-Mozharov, St Petersburg 2012; after 30...♔xh8 31.♕f7 the rook lands on h1 triumphantly.

733

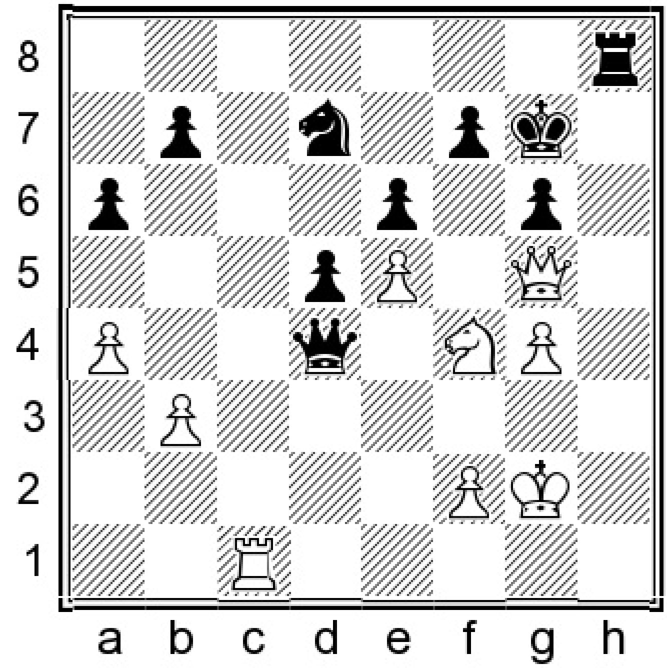


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

733 **35.♖xg5+! fxg5** 35...♔xg5 36.♕h5#. **36.♕h5+** 1-0 Jones-Dorrington, England 4NCL 2012/13.

734

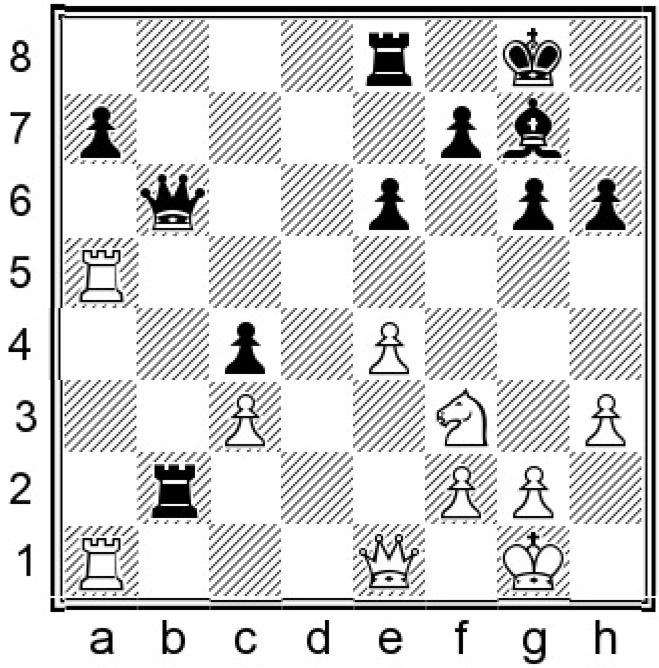


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

734 **33.♘xe6+! fxe6 34.♕e7+ ♔g8** 34...♔h6 35.♖h1#. **35.♖c8+** 1-0 Ju Wenjun-Zatonskih, Khanty-Mansiysk Wch W 2012.

735

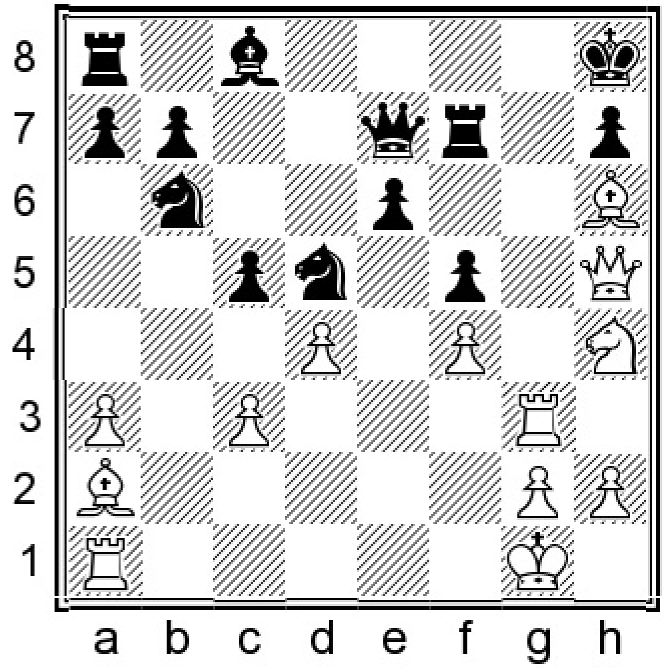


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

735 **27...♗xc3!** Istratescu-Vachier-Lagrave, Nancy rapid 2013; White resigned because of 28.♕xc3 ♕xf2+.

736

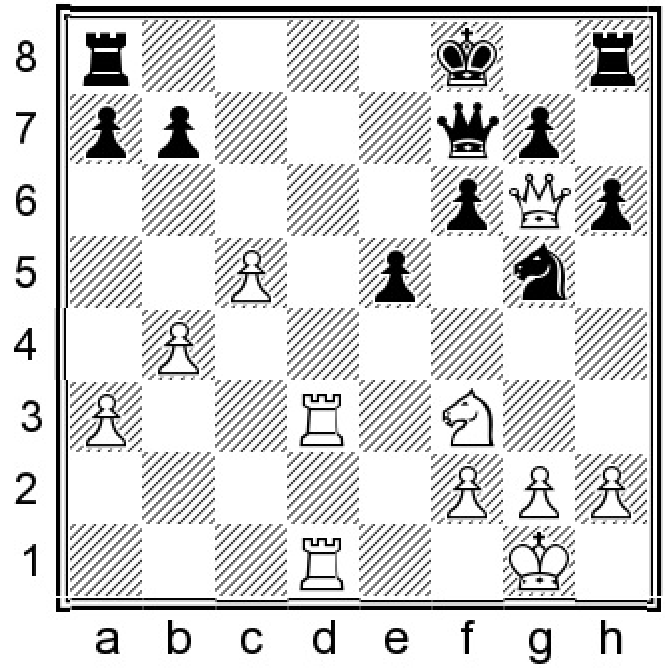


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

736 **21.♘g6+! hxg6 22.♗g7+!** 1-0 Palo-Pedersen, Helsingor ch-DEN 2013.

737

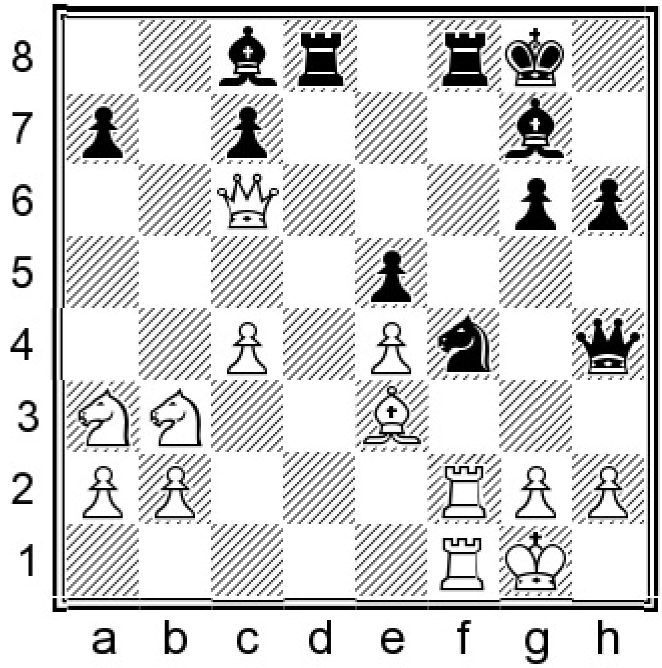


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

737 **23.♘xe5!** Opening the queen's path to d6: 1-0 Golod-Axelrod, Acre ch-ISR 2013; 23...fxe5 24.♖d8+ ♖xd8 25.♖xd8+ ♔e7 26.♕d6#.

738

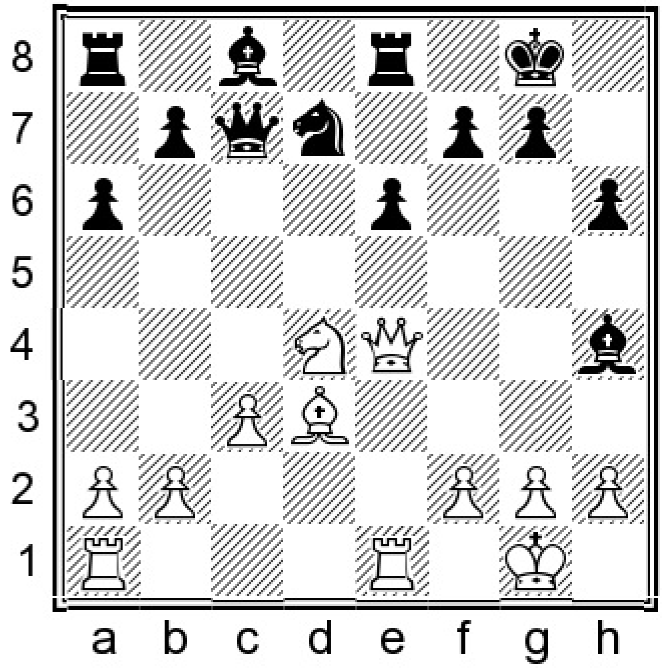


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

738 **22...♘e2+!** 0-1 B.Finegold-Shabalov, St Louis ch-USA 2013; on 23.♔h1, 23...♖xf2! 24.♗xf2 ♕xf2 decides, whilst after 23.♖xe2 there is 23...♖xf1+ 24.♔xf1 ♖d1+.

739

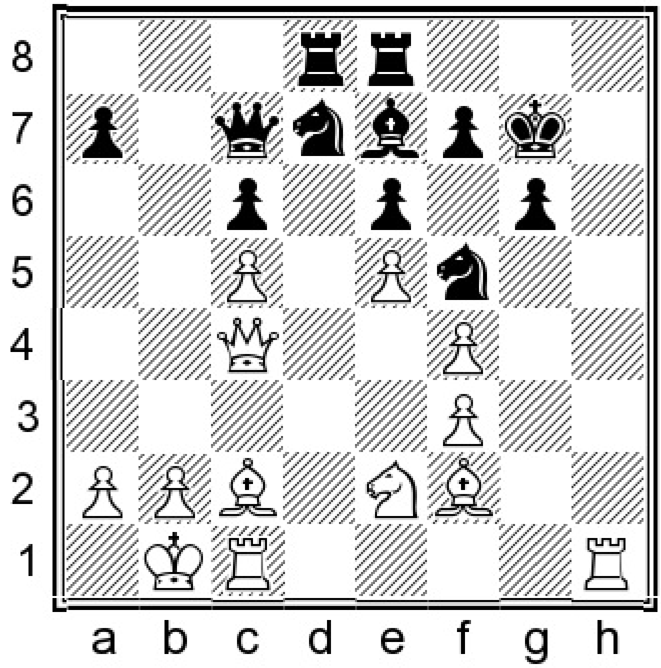

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h

White to play

Show/Hide Solution

739 **16.♕h7+ ♔f8 17.♘f5 ♗xf2+ 18.♔h1** 1-0 Mannhart-Rous, Triesen 2013.

740

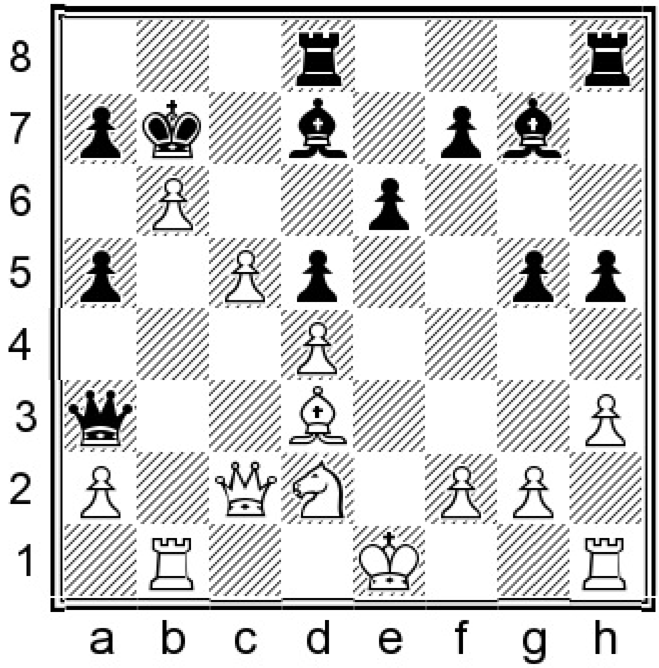


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

740 **29.♗xf5 exf5** 29...gxf5 30.♖cg1+. **30.♖h7+!** 1-0 Willemsma-Sergeev, Triesen 2013.

741

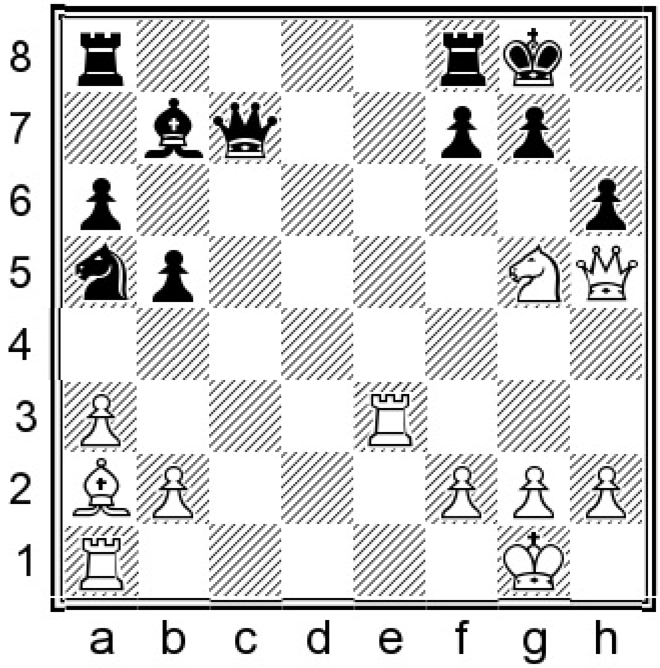


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

741 **24.c6+! ♗xc6 25.♗a6+! ♔xa6 26.♕xc6 ♗xd4 27.bxa7+** 1-0 Al-Sayed-Kir.Georgiev, Khanty-Mansiysk Wch rapid 2013.

742

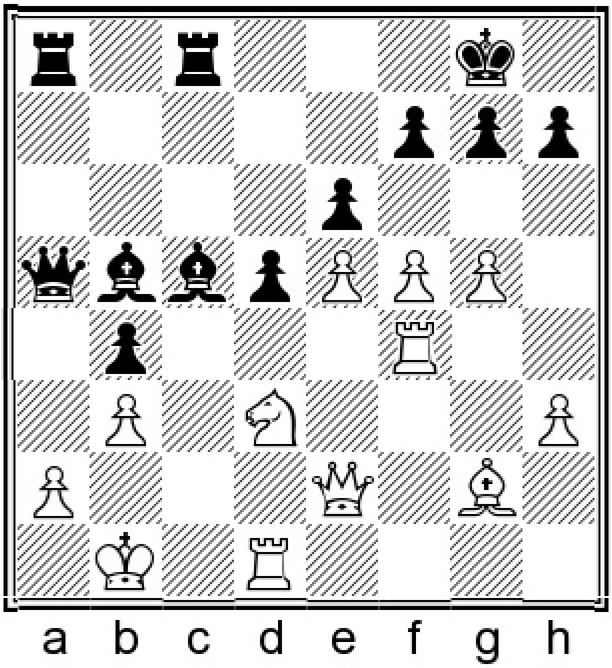


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

742 **20.♕g6! hxg5 21.♖h3 ♖fc8** 21...♖fe8 22.♖h7. **22.♖e1!** Zviagintsev-Vasquez Schroeder, Khanty-Mansiysk Wch rapid 2013; but not 22.♖h7?? ♕c1+. Now, however, there is no defence against the threat of 23.♕h7+ and mate, so Black resigned.

743

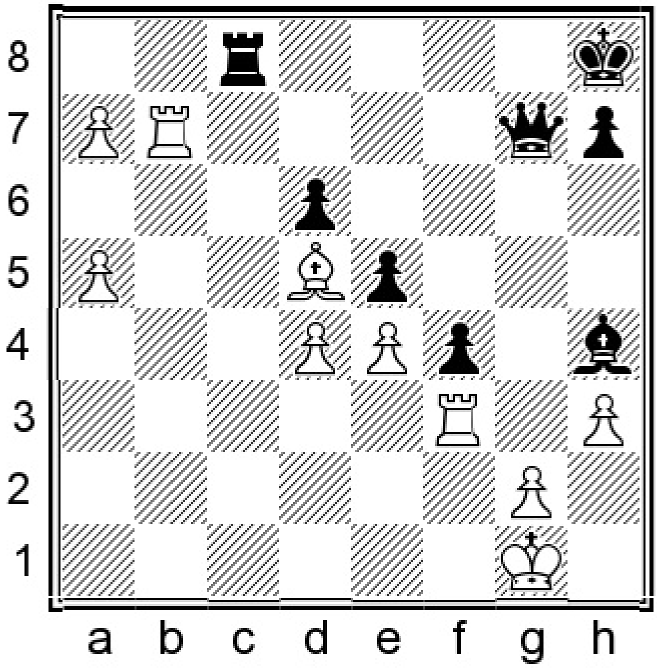


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

743 **25...♗e3! 26.♖f3** He also loses after 26.♖ff1 ♖c1+! 27.♖xc1 ♗xd3+. **26...♗xd3+** 0-1 Caruana-Karjakin, Moscow blitz 2013. He cannot simultaneously defend a2 and c1.

744

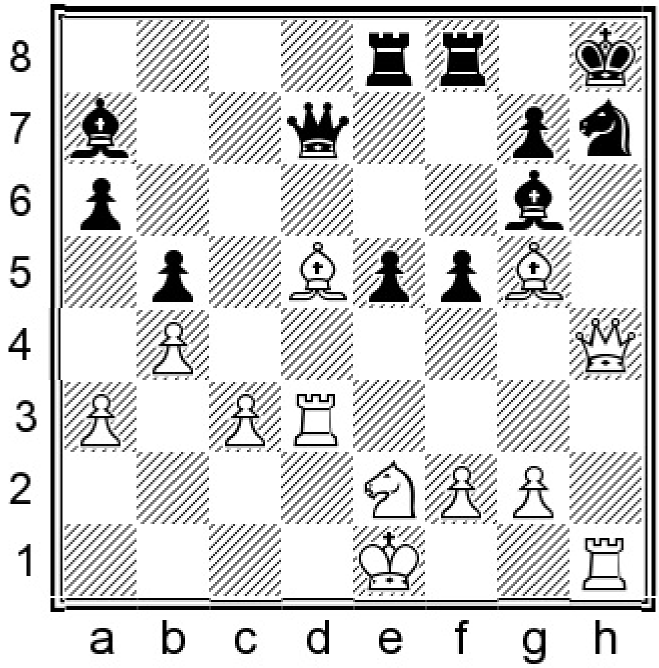

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h

Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

744 **41...♖c1+ 42.♖f1 ♗f2+! 43.♔xf2 ♖c2+** Caruana-Carlsen, Moscow blitz 2013; White resigned in view of 44.♔e1 ♕g3+ 45.♔d1 ♕d3+.

745

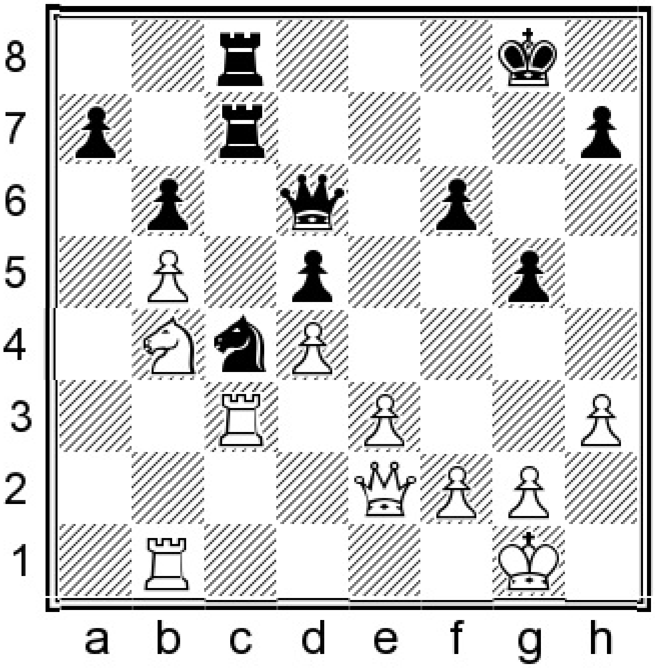


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

745 **29.♗g8! ♕xd3 30.♗xh7 ♕b1+ 31.♗c1** 1-0 Perez Mitjans-Mihailovs, Barcelona 2010.

746

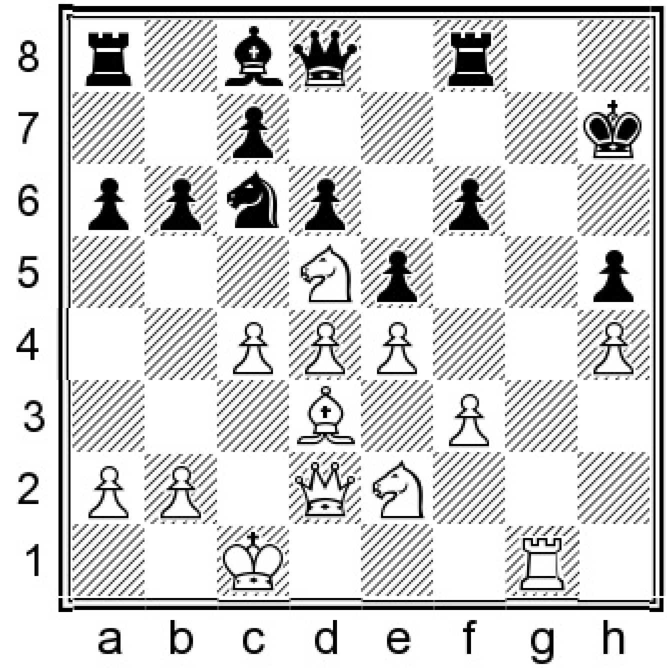


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

746 **31...♘a3! 32.♖xa3** It turns out that after 32.♖xc7 ♖xc7 White loses at least the exchange – he cannot defend simultaneously the knight, the rook and the c1-square, from which he can be mated. **32...♖c1+ 33.♕f1 ♖xf1+**, and soon White resigned in Eljanov-Kryvoruchko, Kiev ch-UKR 2013.

747

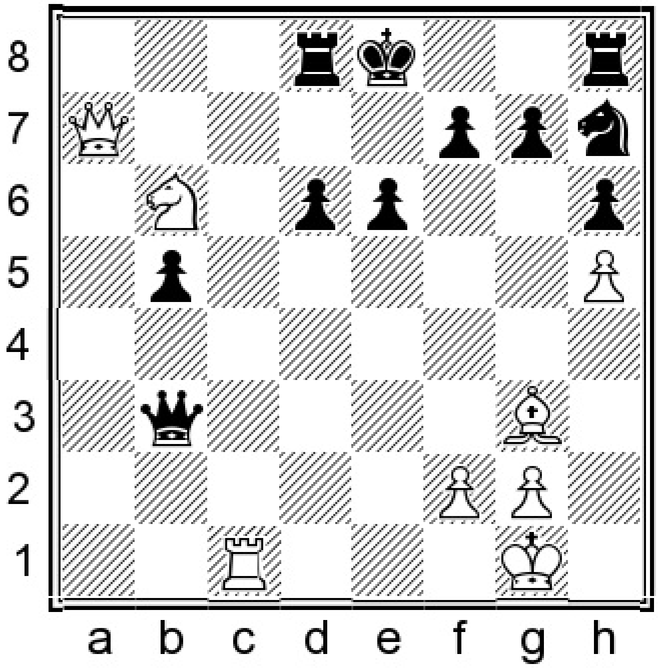


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

747 **21.♘ef4! exf4 22.e5+ f5** 22...♔h8 23.♕xf4 **23.♕g2** 1-0 Czerwonski-Moranda, Wroclaw rapid 2013; on 23...♖g8 there is the decisive 24.♘f6+.

748

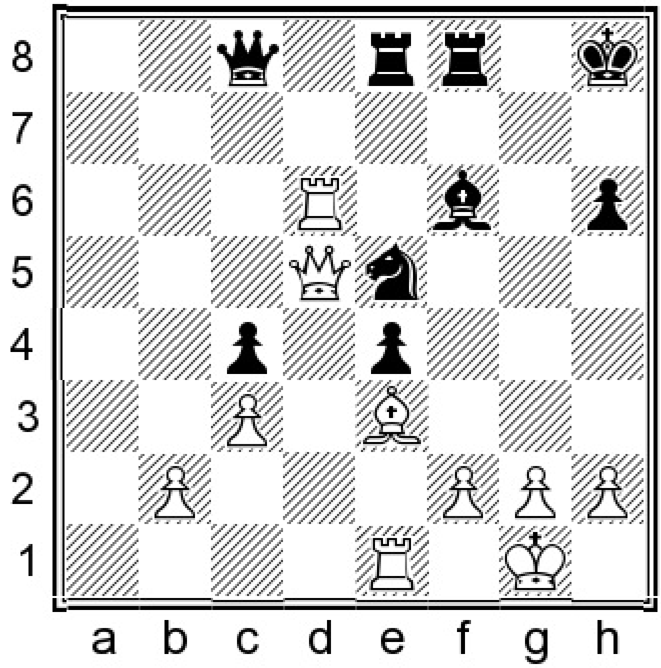

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h

White to play

Show/Hide Solution

748 **31.♗xd6!** 1-0 Bartel-Ganguly, Biel 2013; 31...♖xd6 32.♖c8+ ♖d8 33.♕d7+.

749

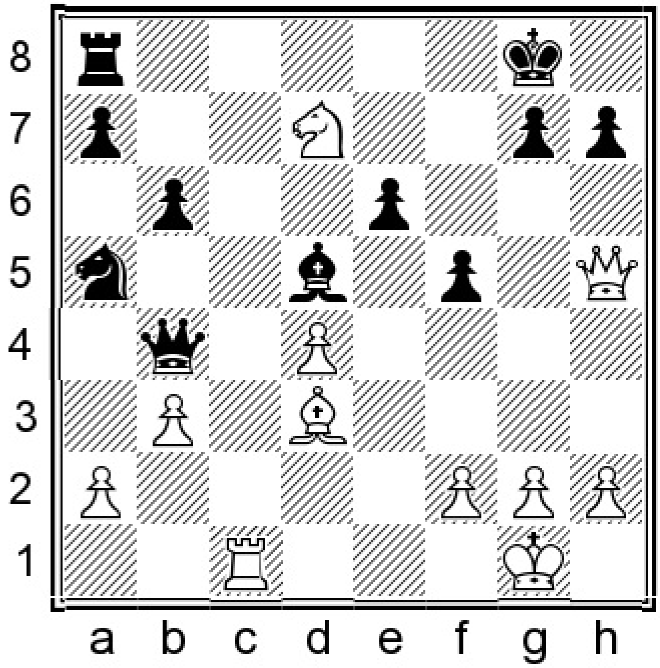


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

749 **30...♘f3+! 31.gxf3 ♕h3 32.♗g5 ♖g8** 0-1 Svetushkin-Prohaszka, Zug jr 2013.

750

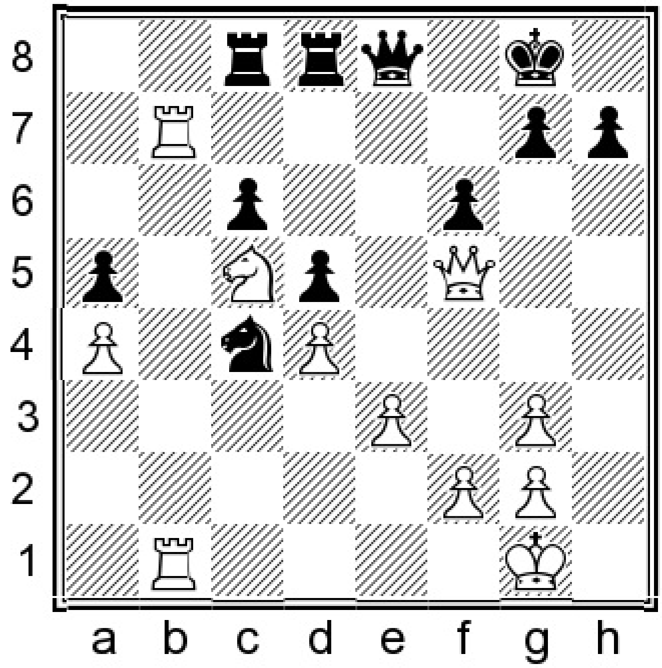


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

750 **22.♘f6+!** Izzat-Shimanov, Baku 2013; Black resigned, in view of the variation 22...gxf6 23.♖c7 ♕e1+ 24.♗f1.

751

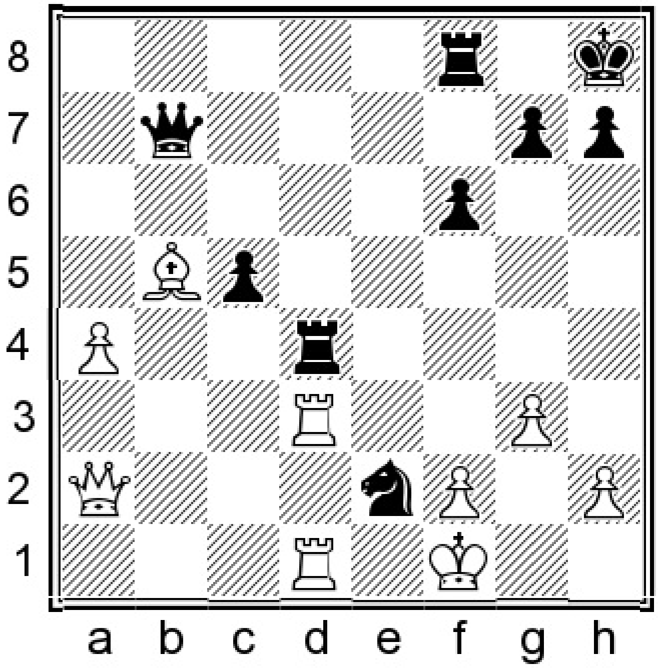


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

751 **34.♖xg7+! ♔xg7 35.♖b7+** 1-0 Miladinovic-Taeib, Monastir tt 2013; On 35...♕f7 the quickest win is the zwischenzug 36.♘e6+.

752

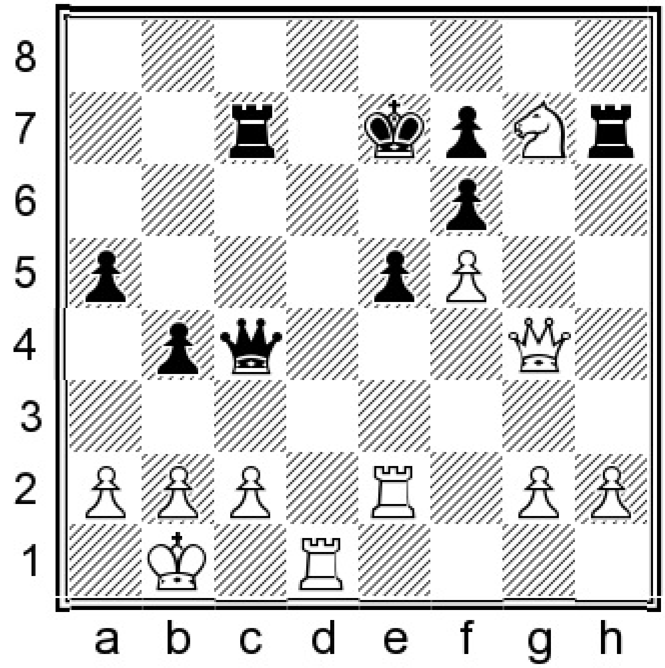


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

752 **38...♘c3! 39.♖xc3 ♕h1+** 0-1 Malakhov-Korneev, St Petersburg 2013; after 40.♔e2 ♕xd1+ 41.♔e3 ♕e1+ he loses too much.

753

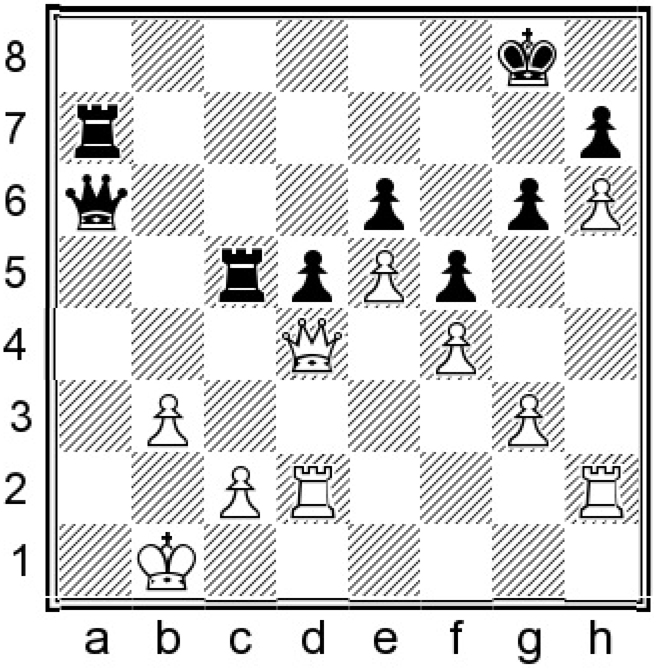


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

753 **29.♖xe5+! fxe5 30.f6+! ♔xf6 31.♕f5+** Navara-Kozul, Turin ol 2006; Black resigned because of 31...♔e7 32.♕xe5+ or 31...♔xg7 32.♕g5+ ♔f8 33.♖d8#.

754

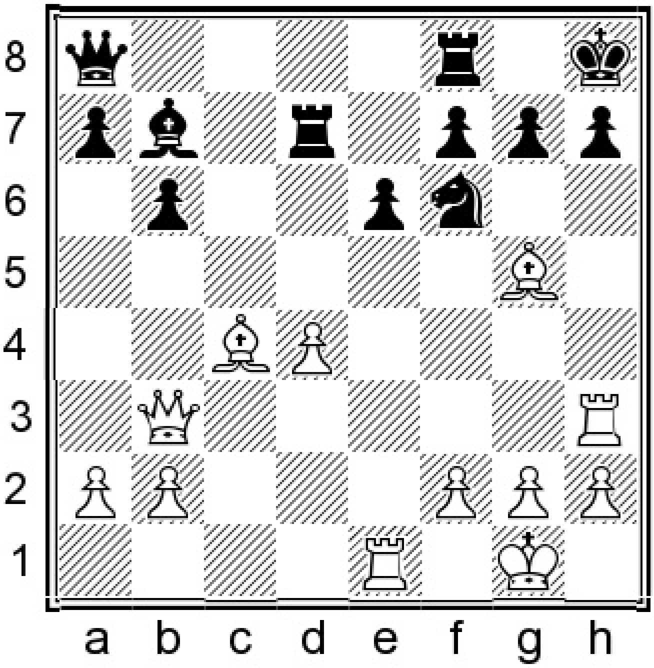


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

754 **43...♖c3!!** A very beautiful interference, Ragger-Stellwagen, Yerevan Wch U20 2007; White resigned because of 44.♕xc3 ♕f1+ 45.♔b2 ♕a1#.

755

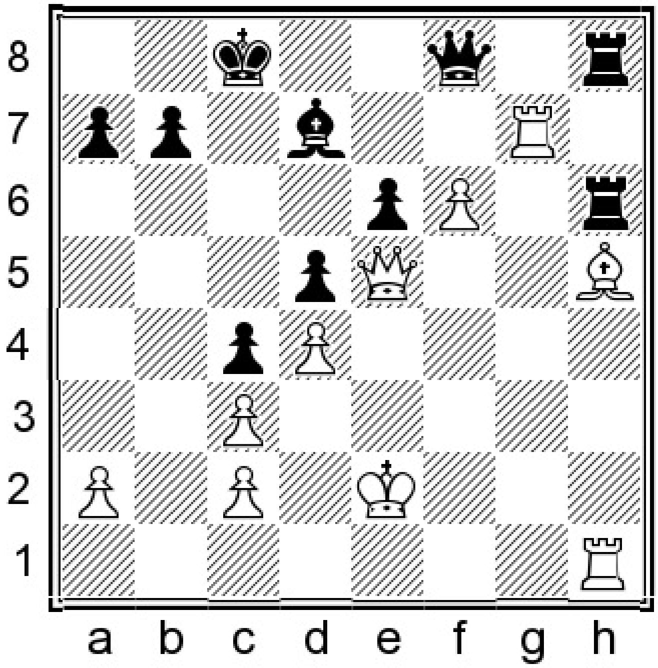


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

755 **18.♗xf6 gxf6 19.♖xh7+!** Timofeev-Svidler, Moscow 2008 ch-RUS; Black resigned because of 19...♔xh7 20.♕h3+ ♔g7 21.♕g4+ ♔h8 (21...♔h6 22.♖e3 ♗xg2 23.♕h4+ ♔g6 24.♖g3+ ♔f5 25.♕g4#) 22.♖e3 ♗e4 23.♖h3+ ♗h7 24.♕h4.

756

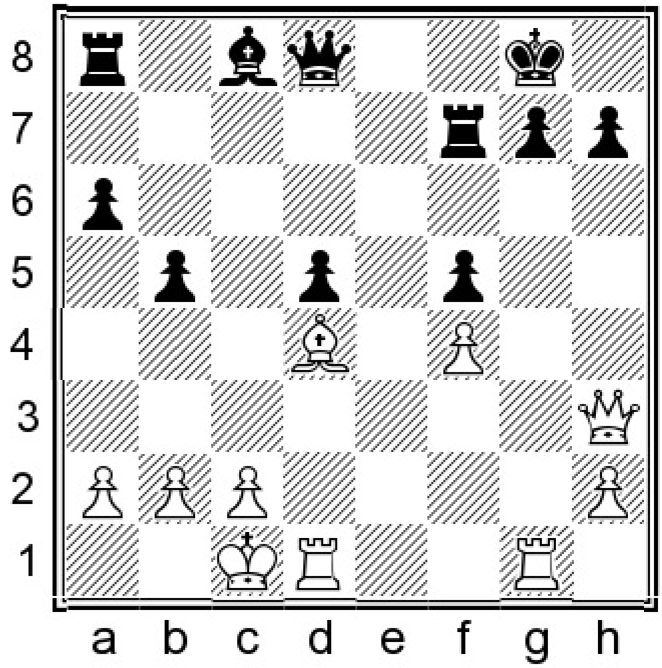

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

White to play

Show/Hide Solution

756 **36.♗e8!** 1-0 Amonatov-Smikovski, Serpukhov 2008; equally hopeless are 36...♖xh1 (36...♗xe8 37.♕c7#) 37.♗xd7+ ♔d8 38.♕b8# and 36...♕xe8 37.♖xh6 ♖xh6 38.f7 ♕f8 39.♖g8.

757

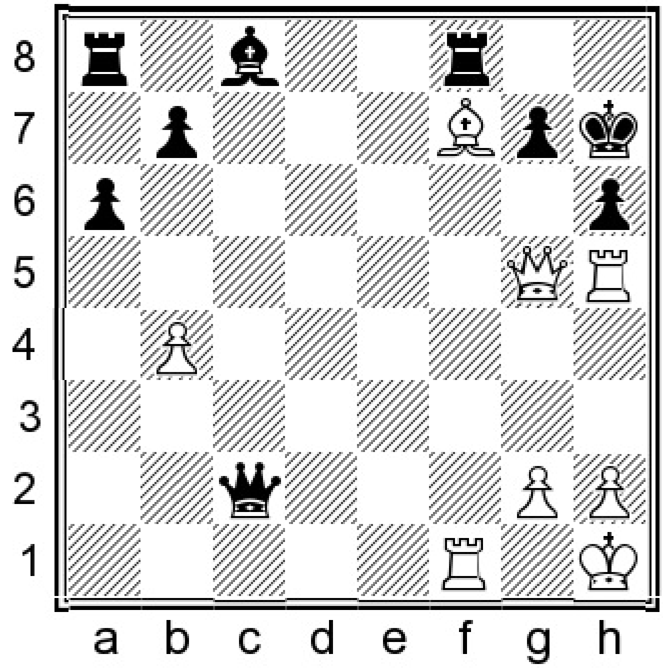


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

757 **22.♗xg7! ♖xg7 23.♖xg7+ ♔xg7 24.♖g1+ ♔h8** Or 24...♔f6 25.♕h4+ or 24...♔f8 25.♕xh7. **25.♕e3!** Volokitin-Iakymov, Kharkov tt 2010; 25.♕h6?? even loses to 25...♖a7. Now Black resigned, since the only way to meet the threat of 26.♕e5+ is to remove the defence of the e8-square.

758

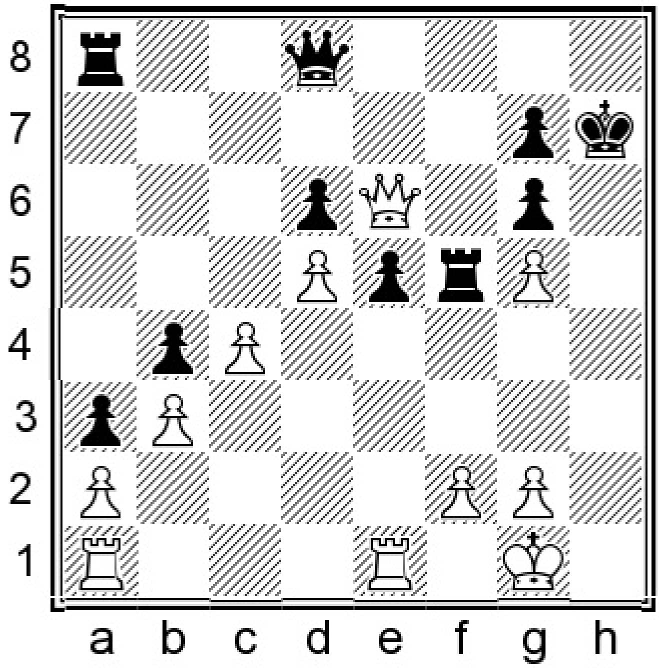


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

758 **33.♖xh6+! gxh6 34.♗g8+!** Very beautiful. Black is mated quickly after 34...♖xg8 35.♖f7+ ♔h8 36.♕xh6+ or 34...♔h8 35.♕xh6+, so he resigned in Ter-Sahakyan-Kotanjian, Yerevan ch-ARM 2011.

759

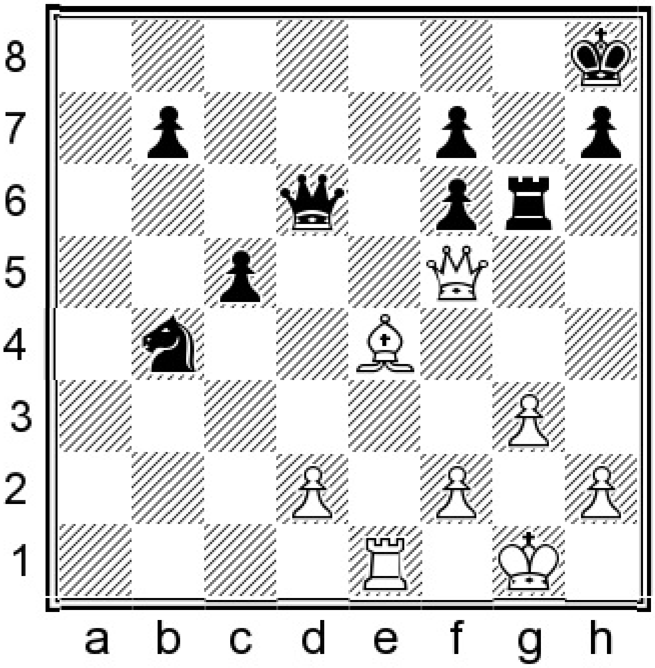


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

759 **30.♖e3! ♖xg5 31.g4!** 1-0 Sadzikowski-Dragun, Warsaw ch-POL 2011.

760

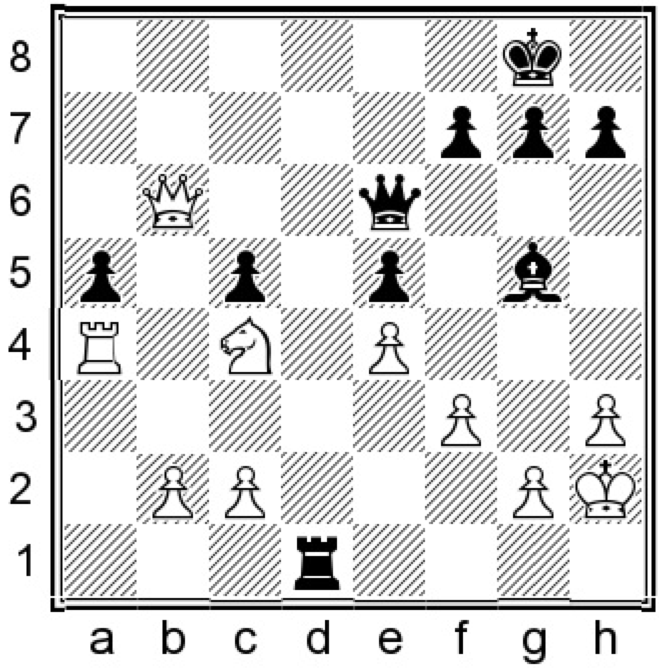


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

760 **25.♕c8+ ♖g8 26.♕h3 ♖g7** More tenacious was 26...f5 27.♕xf5 ♖g7 (or 27...♔g7 28.♕xh7+ ♔f8 29.♖a1! ♘a6 30.♗xb7+–), but after 28.♗xb7 White has an overwhelming positional advantage, since Black cannot take on d2 (28...♕xd2) in view of 29.♖e8+ ♖g8 30.♕f6+. **27.♗xh7! ♖xh7 28.♖e8+ ♔g7 29.♕g4+ ♔h6 30.♖g8** 1-0 Galkin-Alekseev, Taganrog 2011; after 30...♕e5 31.♕h4+ ♕h5 32.♕xf6+ ♕g6 33.♕f4+ he is mated.

761

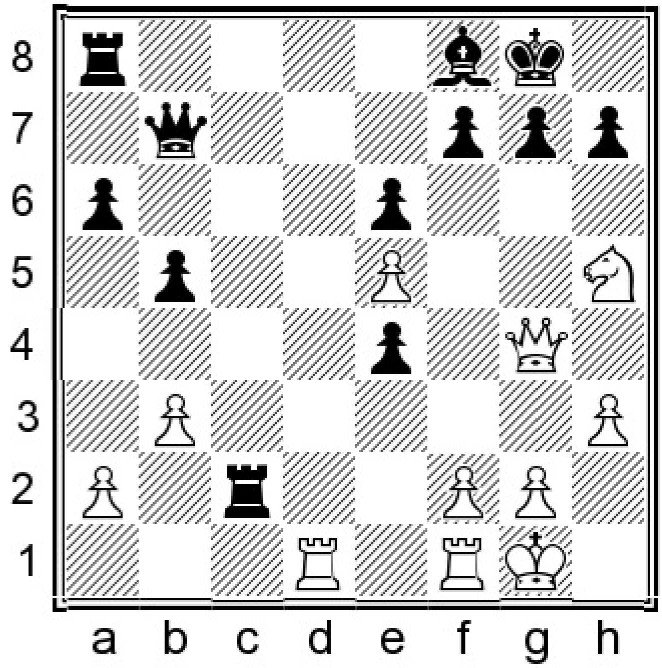


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

761 The white knight is pinned to the defence of the queen and cannot do anything: **28...♗f4+ 29.g3 ♖d2+! 30.♔g1 ♗e3+!** 0-1 Fargère-Moussard, Caen ch-FRA 2011; White has to choose between loss of the queen and a deadly check on h3.

762

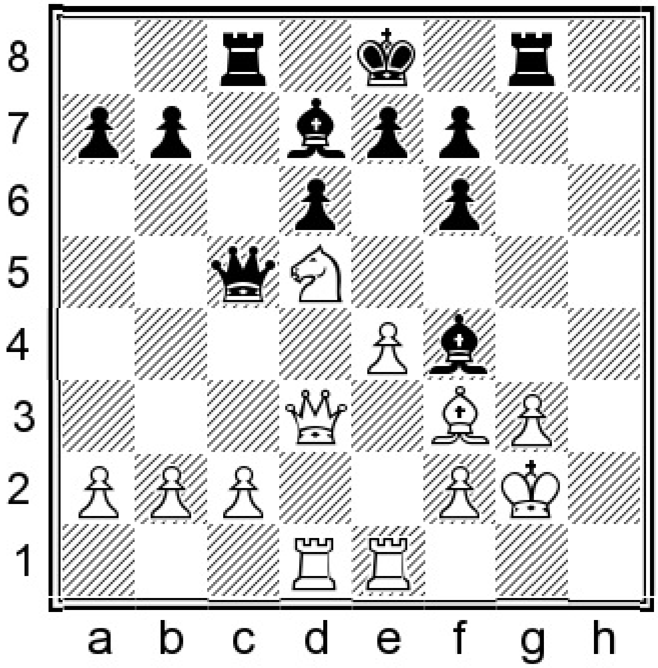


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

762 **24.♖d7! ♕c6** After 24...♖c7 25.♖xc7 ♕xc7 Black perishes to 26.♘f6+ ♔h8 27.♕xe4 gxf6 28.♕xa8. **25.♘f6+ ♔h8 26.♕h4! gxf6** After 26...h6 27.♖xf7 the threat of 28.♕xh6+! cannot be met without large losses. **27.♖xf7 ♗g7 28.exf6** 1-0 Marentek-Tirto, Jakarta 2011.

763

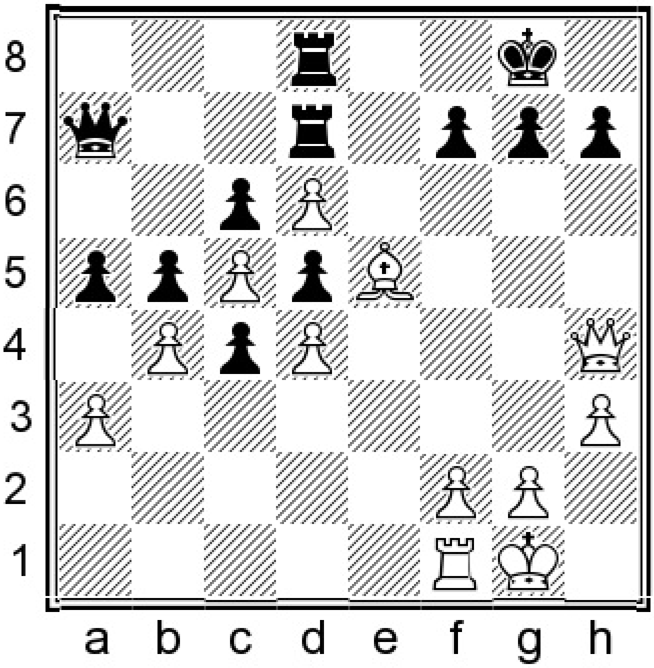


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

763 **18...♗h3+! 19.♔h1** Of course, White is not happy with either 19.♔xh3 ♕xf2, or 19.♔g1 ♖xg3+, but the move in the game loses as well. **19...♕xf2 20.♘xf4 ♖h8** 0-1 Ziatdinov-Guseinov, Tashkent 2012; on 21.♗h5 there is the decisive 21...♖xh5 22.♘xh5 ♕g2#.

764

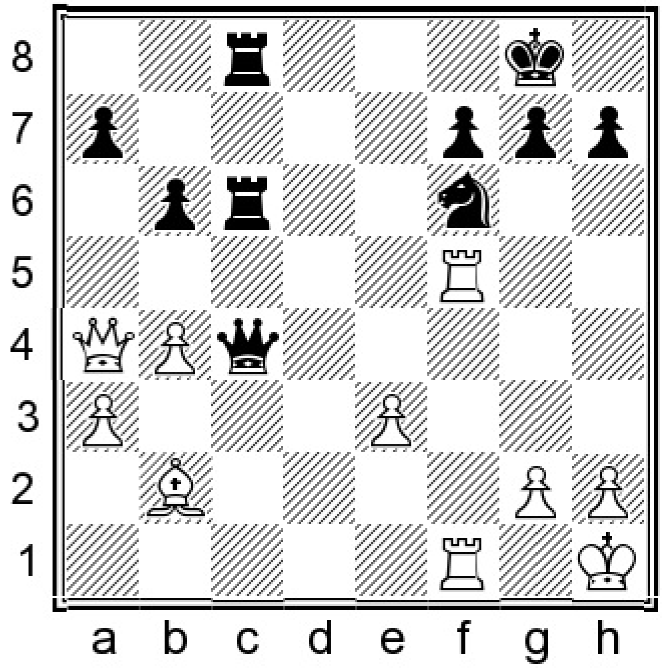


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

764 **37.♗xg7! ♔xg7 38.♕g5+ ♔f8 39.♕f6 ♔g8 40.♕g5+** The repetition was just to reach the time control – Black cannot decline. **40...♔f8 41.♕f6 ♔g8 42.♖e1!**, and White won in Ding Liren-Aronian, Paris/St Petersburg 2013.

765



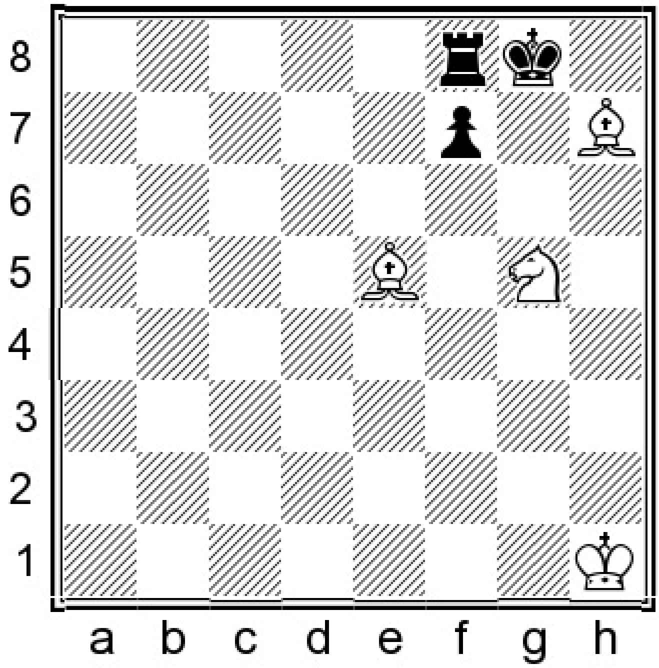
Black to play

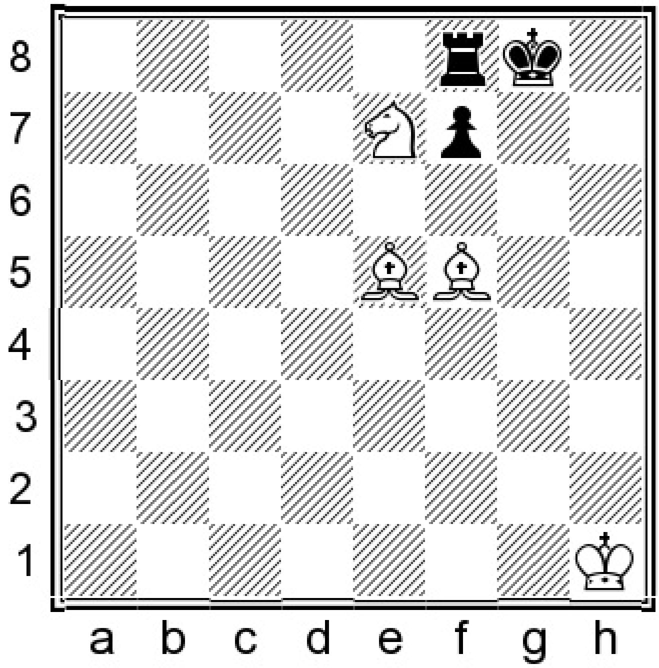
Show/Hide Solution

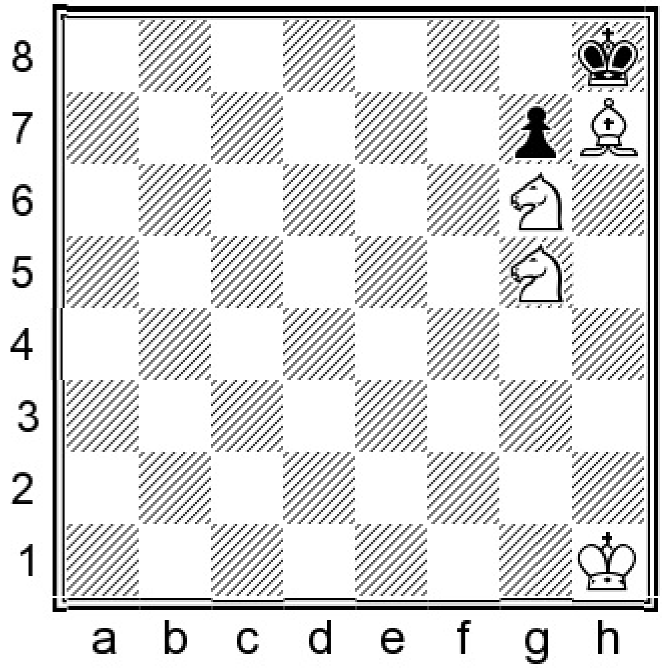
765 **25...♕e2! 26.♗xf6** Equally hopeless is 26.♕b3 ♖c2 27.♖5f2 ♕xf2! 28.♖xf2 ♖c1+. **26...♖c1! 27.♔g1 ♕xe3+ 28.♔h1 ♕d3!** 0-1 Buhmann-Cvitan, Switzerland tt 2013; after the forced 29.♔g1 Black just takes the rook on f5.

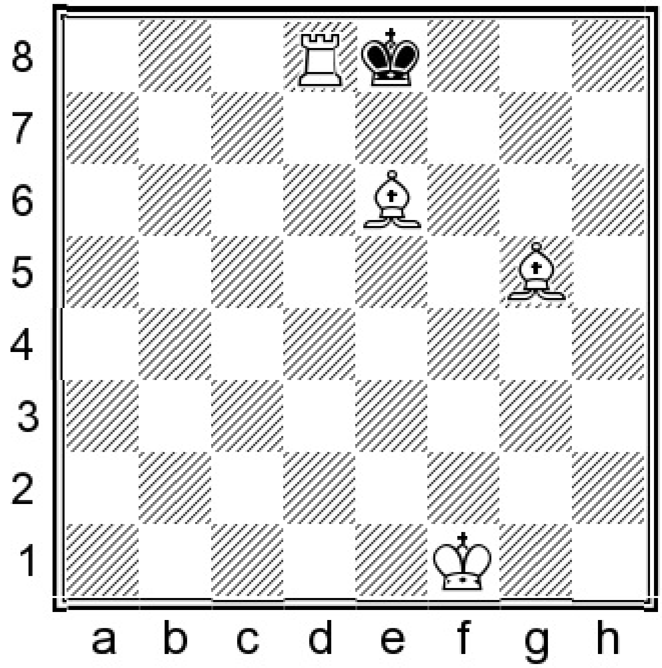
Chapter 10
Three pieces

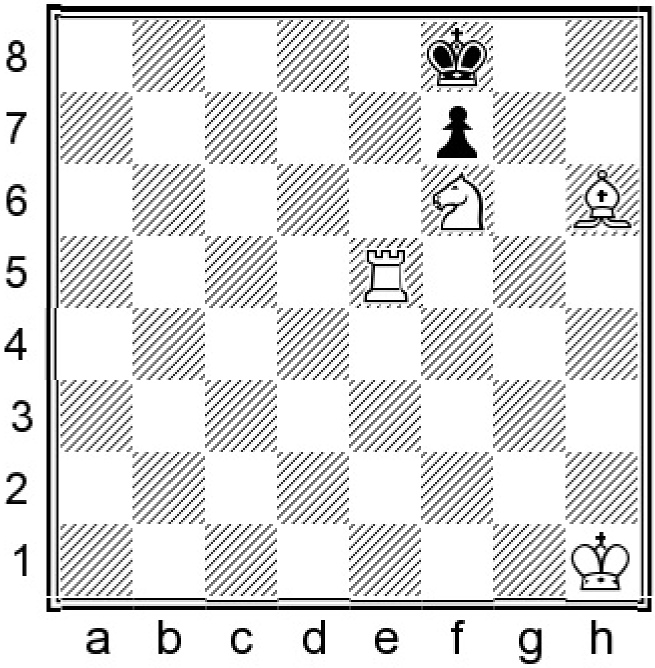
Mating constructions with three pieces contain numerous geometrical motifs. The majority of these have been described in the preceding chapters, devoted to the rook and the minor pieces. Here the situation of the stronger side is easier, because he has one additional fighting unit.

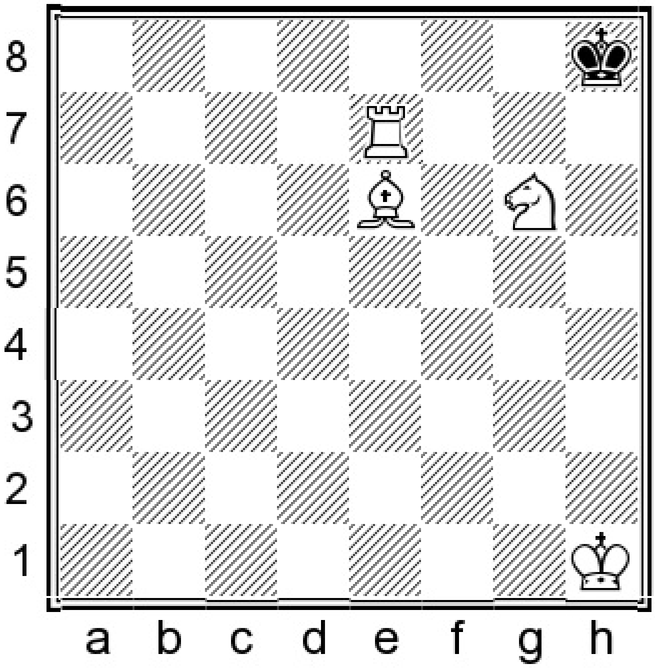

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

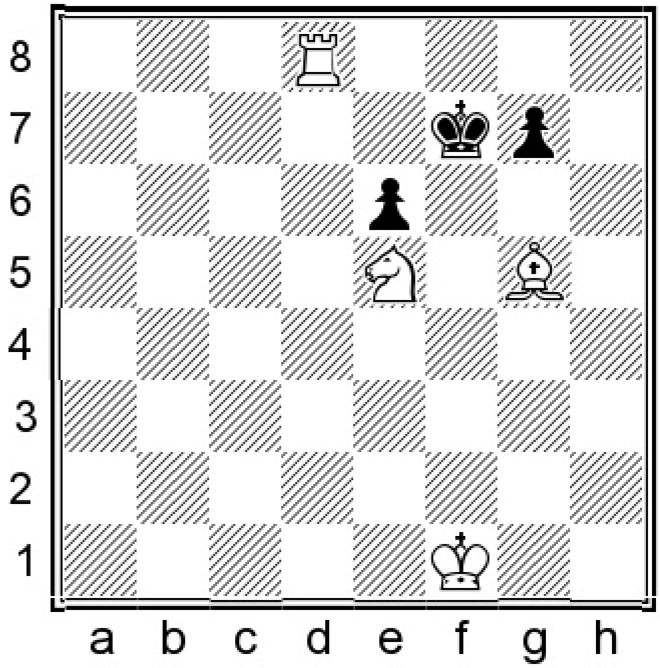

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

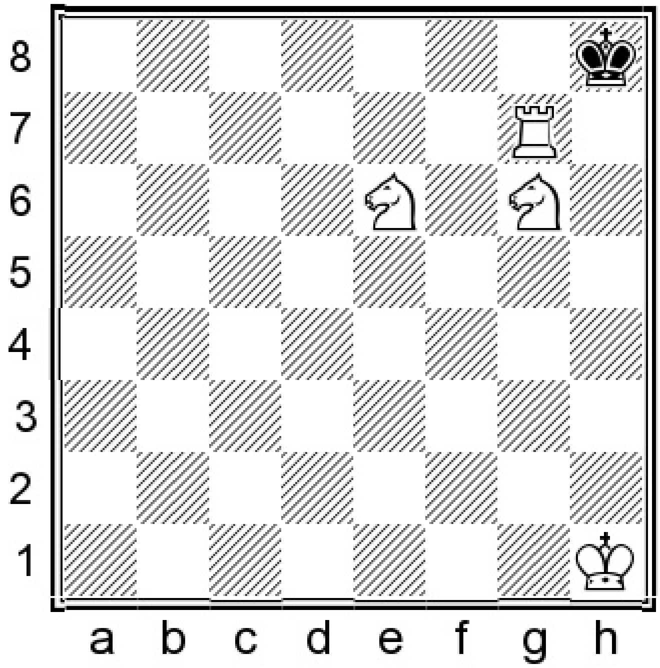

a b c d e f g h

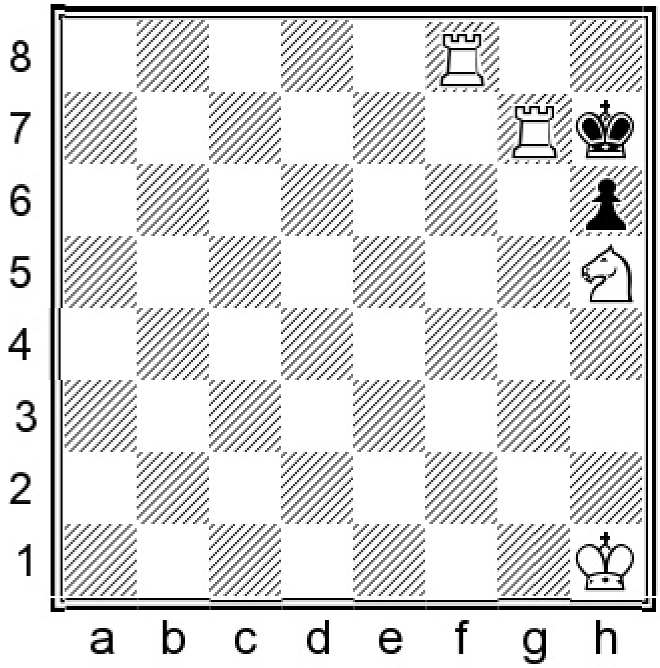

a b c d e f g h

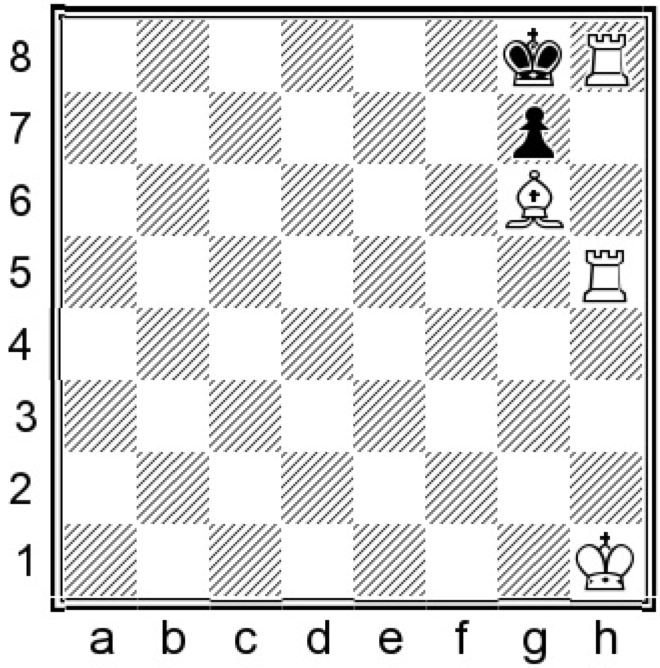




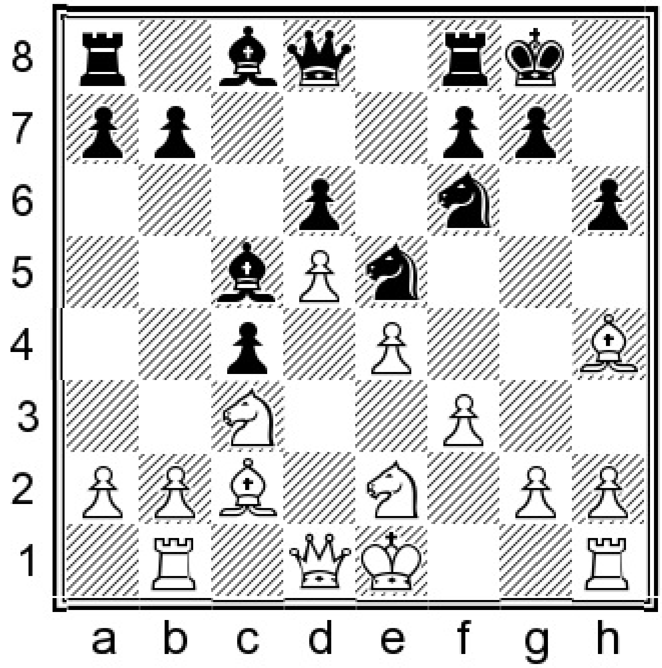

a b c d e f g h


a b c d e f g h





Shahin Mohandesi 2358
Alexei Barsov 2525
Leuven 2002 (5)


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h

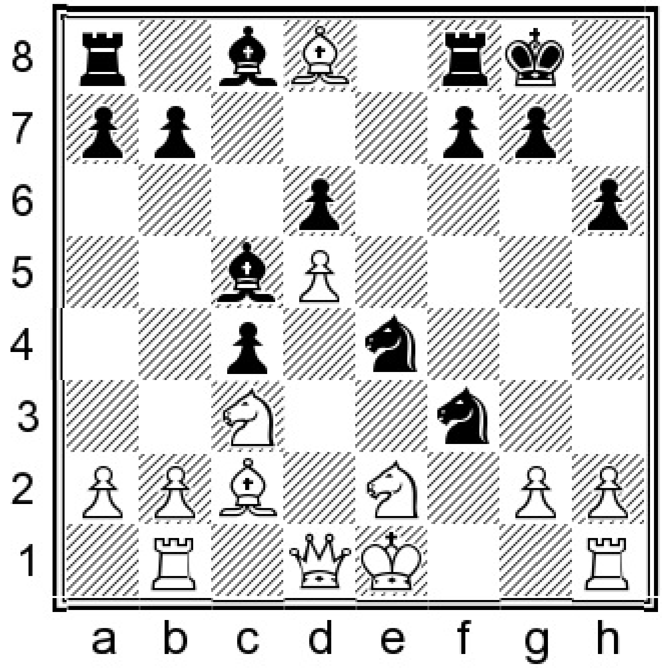
Black to play

White has just incautiously played 13.♖b1?, not suspecting what is coming.

13...♘xe4!! 14.♗xd8

Going to meet his opponent's idea. After 14.♘xe4 ♕xh4+ 15.♘2g3 ♗b6! White could put up serious resistance, and even establish material equality, but the great difference in piece activity and coordination gives Black an overwhelming advantage.

14...♘xf3+!


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h

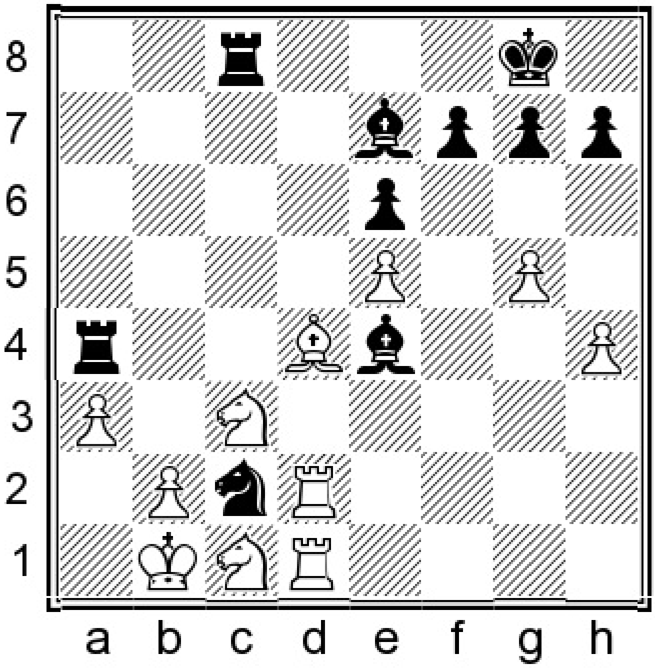
15.♔f1

15.gxf3 ♗f2+ 16.♔f1 ♗h3#.

15...♘ed2+ 16.♕xd2 ♘xd2+ 17.♔e1 ♘xb1

And Black won.

Karel van der Weide 2455
Loek van Wely 2670
Leeuwarden ch-NED 2001 (4)



Black to play

36...♘xa3+! 37.♔a2

Or 37.♔a1 ♘c2+ and 38...♖a1#.

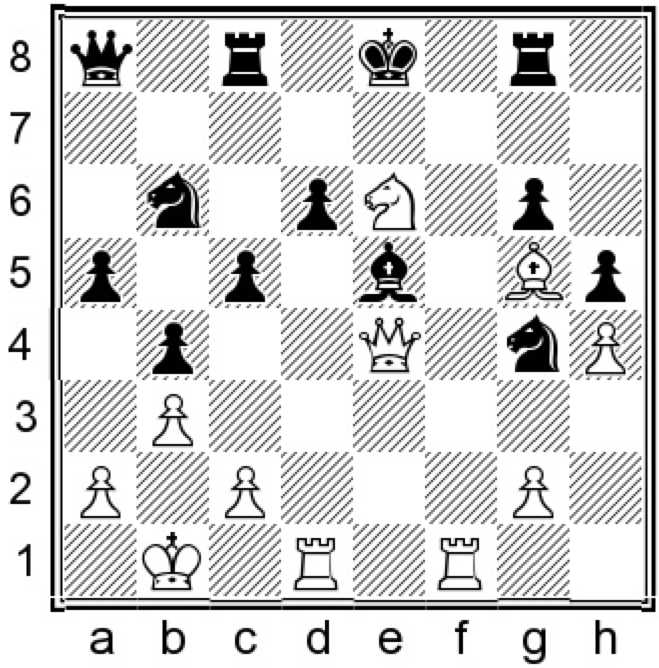
37...♖aa8 38.♘xe4

38.bxa3 ♖xa3+ 39.♔b2 ♖b8+.

38...♘c2+ 39.♔b3 ♘a1#

An elegant mating position with the knight on a1.

Igor Miladinovic 2518
Jörg Hickl 2605
Bled ol 2002 (12)



White to play

Black, with an extra piece, has just played the suicidal move 30...♕a6-a8??. Of course, it was very difficult to see the ensuing combination, with the clock ticking. Black has removed control from the f1-square and this completely reverses the course of the game:

31.♖xd6!!

Black resigned, as all the enemy pieces are untouchable:

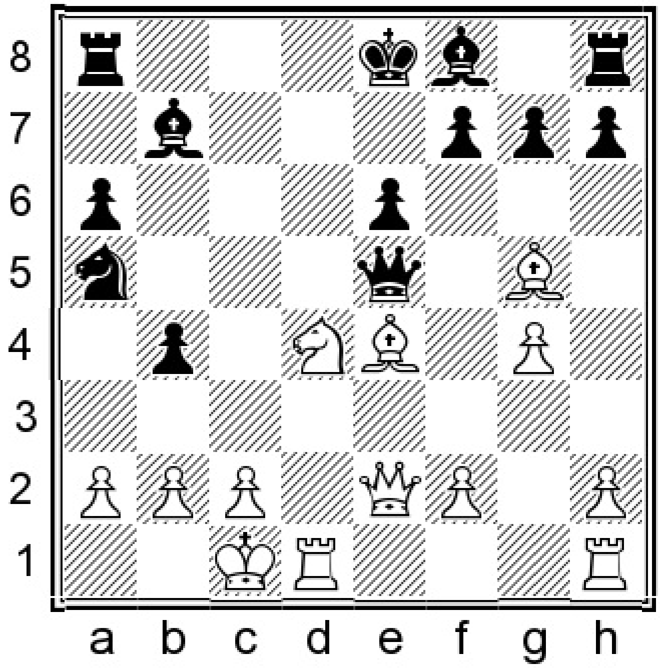
A) 31...♗xd6 32.♘g7+ ♔d7 33.♖f7+; or

B) 31...♕xe4 32.♘c7+! ♖xc7 33.♖d8#;

C) On the standard reply 31...♕b8, disaster strikes from the other direction: 32.♕xg6+! ♖xg6 33.♖f8#.

Instead, a move earlier, Black could have won with 30...a4!, and after, for example, 31.♖f3 (the rook on d1 cannot leave the first rank, as we know) there is the decisive 31...axb3 32.cxb3 ♕a8! – now possible because the white queen 'hangs' with check, whilst after its retreat, Black plays ...♕c6, over-protecting the defensive pawn on d6.

Luca Cerquitella 2125
Vlad Tomescu 2427
Porto San Giorgio 2003 (5)



White to play

The Italian junior brought off an exceptionally beautiful Sicilian attack in this game with an opponent rated 300 points higher. White has two bishops under attack, but responds by sacrificing a knight as well:

17.♘xe6!! ♕xe6

The variations show that Black has no defence:

A) 17...fxe6 18.♗g6+;

B) 17...♗e7 18.♘xg7+ ♔f8 (18...♕xg7 19.♗xe7 ♕e5 20.♗xb4) 19.♗xe7+ ♔xg7 (19...♕xe7 20.♘f5 ♕xe4 21.♕d2! h6 22.♖he1 ♕c6 23.♕d8+) 20.♗xb4 ♕xe4 21.♕xe4 ♗xe4 22.♖he1, and White has a large material advantage in the endgame.

However, the text move also fails to save the game.

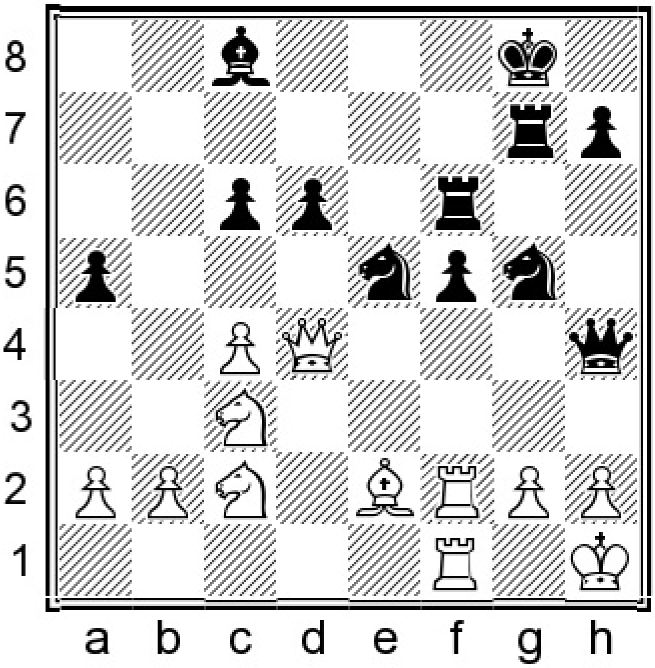
18.♗f5!!

No slacking of the pace! It turns out that taking the queen allows mate in one: 18...♕xe2 19.♗d7#.

18...♗e7 19.♗xe6 ♗xg5+ 20.♔b1 0-0 21.♗d5

And White won.

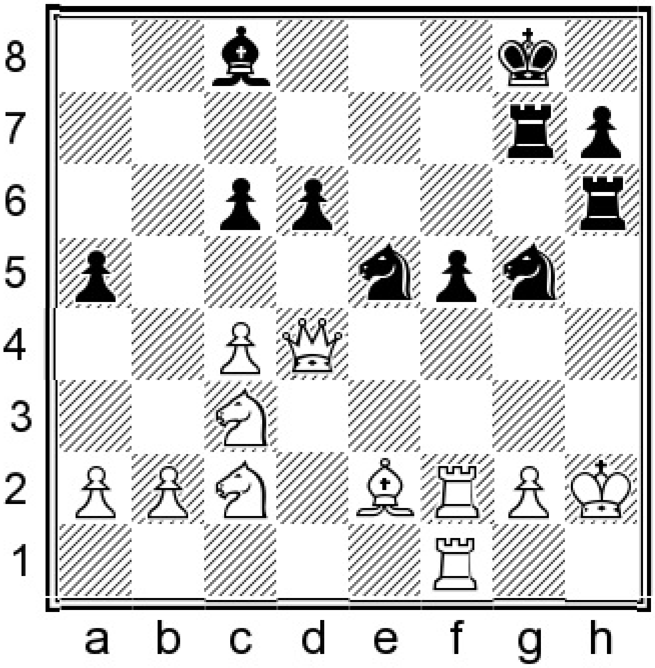
Boris Kantsler 2501
Ilja Smirin 2652
Jerusalem 2005 (1)



Black to play

Combinations involving a sacrifice of the queen for a pawn, of which we have already seen a number of examples, can also occur in GM encounters...

25...♕xh2+! 26.♔xh2 ♖h6+



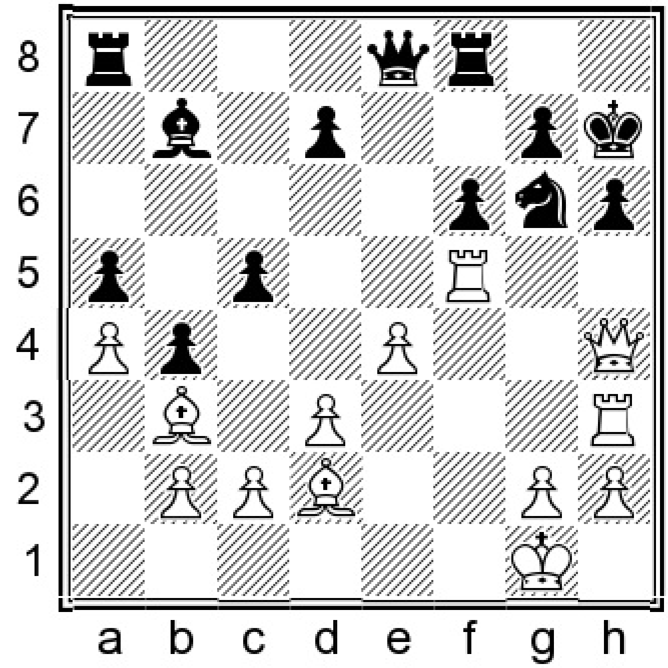
27.♔g3

There is nothing to be done: after 27.♔g1 ♘h3+ 28.♔h2 ♘xf2+ 29.♔g1 ♘h3+ 30.♔h2 ♘f4+ 31.♔g1 White is mated – 31...♖xg2#.

27...♘e6+ 28.♕g4 ♘xg4 29.♗xg4 ♖xg4+ 30.♔f3 ♖xc4

And with two extra pawns, Black won easily.

Darmen Sadvakasov 2619
Meihriban Shukurova 2205
Baku 2006 (4)

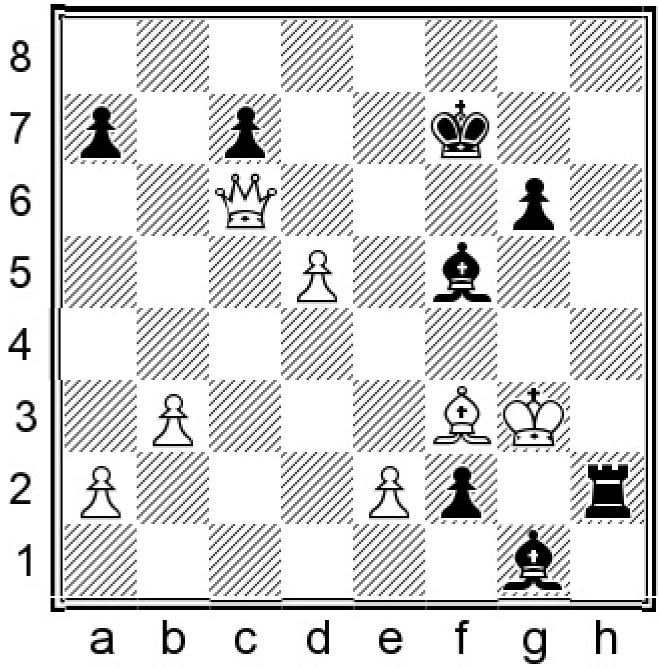


White to play

In this position, White played 26.♕f2. It is only fair to say that the combination he missed would have eluded plenty of other GMs as well:

26.♕xh6+!! gxh6 27.♖xh6+ ♔g7 28.♖h7+! ♔xh7 29.♖h5+ ♔g7 30.♗h6+ ♔h7 31.♗xf8#

Robert Fontaine 2567
Maxime Vachier-Lagrave 2595
Aix-les-Bains ch-FRA 2007 (10)



Black to play

Under-promotion required!

35...f1=♘+!!

The natural 35...f1=♕? leads only to perpetual: 36.♕xc7+ ♔e8 (or 36...♔g8 37.♕d8+ ♔h7 38.♕e7+ ♔h6 39.♕f8+) 37.♕e5+ ♔d7 38.♕g7+ ♔c8 39.♕c3+ etc.

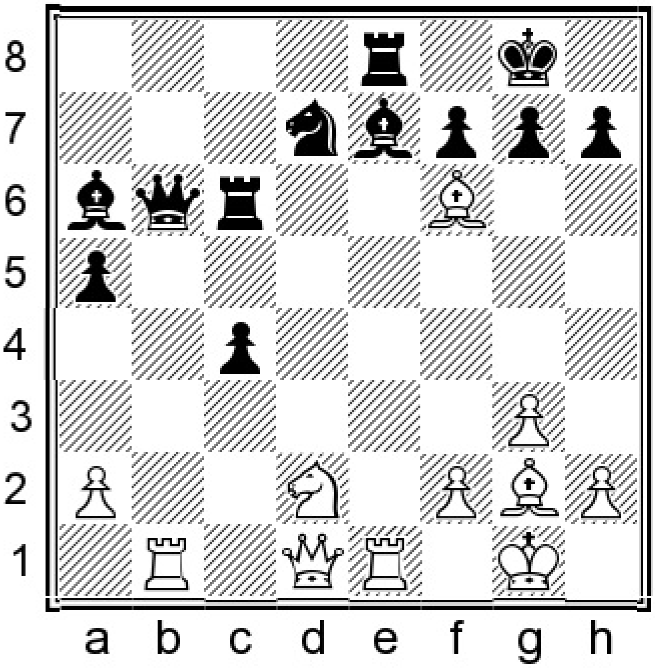
35...f1=♘+!! 36.♔f4 ♖h4+ 37.♔g5 ♗e3+!!

In practical games, one does not often see such beautiful combinations, with the major pieces sacrificed to allow mate by the minor pieces.

38.♔xh4 g5+ 39.♔h5 ♘g3+

White resigned a move short of mate: 40.♔h6 g4#.

Michal Krasenkow 2668
Hikaru Nakamura 2648
Barcelona 2007 (2)



Black to play

Here too, the queen is sacrificed for a pawn, with the aim of drawing the king out into the centre:

21...♕xf2+!! 22.♔xf2 ♗c5+ 23.♔f3

A) On 23.♔f1 there would have followed 23...c3+! (but not 23...♖xf6+?? 24.♗f3 c3+ 25.♔g2) 24.♖e2 c2–+;

B) White is also not saved by 23.♗d4 ♗xd4+ 24.♔f3 ♖f6+ 25.♔g4 ♘e5+ 26.♔g5 (26.♖xe5 ♗c8+ 27.♔h4 ♖xe5) 26...♗c8 27.♗b7 ♖g6+ 28.♔h4 (28.♔f4 ♘d3+) 28...♖h6+ 29.♔g5 f6+ 30.♔f4 ♘d3+ 31.♔f3 ♘xe1+ 32.♔f4 g5#.

23...♖xf6+ 24.♔g4 ♘e5+! 25.♔g5

On 25.♖xe5 follows 25...♗c8+! 26.♖f5 ♗xf5+ 27.♔h4 ♖h6+ 28.♔g5 ♗c8, winning.

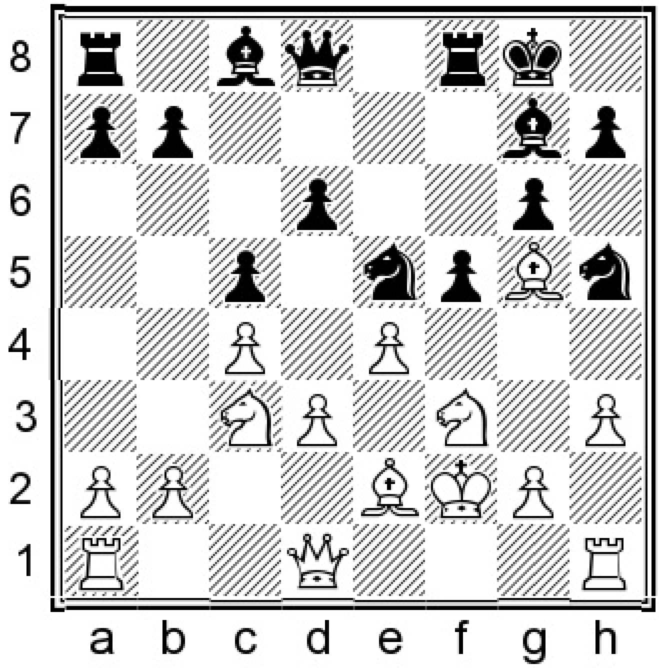
25...♖g6+ 26.♔h5 f6

Also possible was 26...♗c8 27.♘e4 ♗e7–+.

27.♖xe5 ♖xe5+ 28.♔h4 ♗c8!

White resigned, without waiting to be checkmated by 29.g4 ♗f2+ 30.♔h3 ♖h6#.

Sam Grigg 1979
Moulthun Ly 2315
Sydney 2010 (7)



Black to play

When playing 12.♗g5, White was convinced that there were no threats to his king, but Black calculated further:

12...♘xf3! 13.♗xd8 ♗d4+ 14.♔xf3

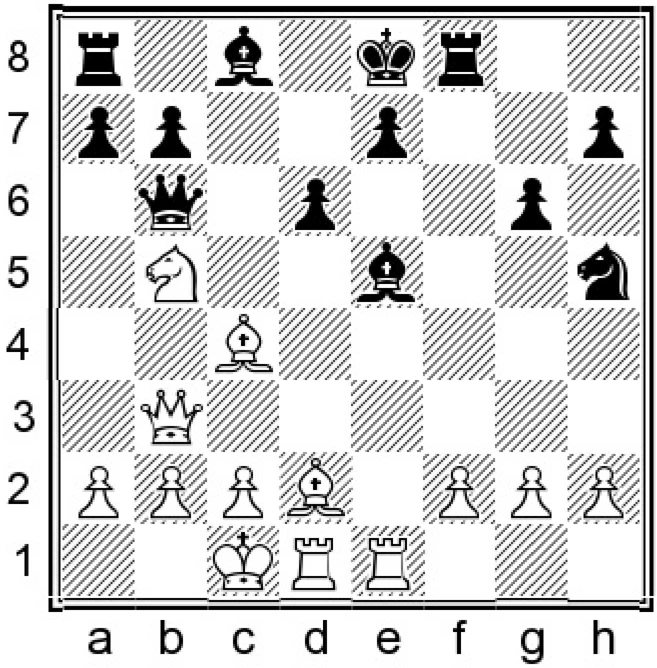
14.♔f1 ♘g3#.

14...fxe4+ 15.♔xe4 ♗f5+ 16.♔f3

16.♔d5 ♘f4+ 17.♔xd6 ♖axd8+ 18.♔e7 ♖d7#.

16...♗e6+ 17.♔e4 ♘g3#

Mark Lyell 2162
Roman Bradac 2034
Zdar nad Sazavou 2010 (2)

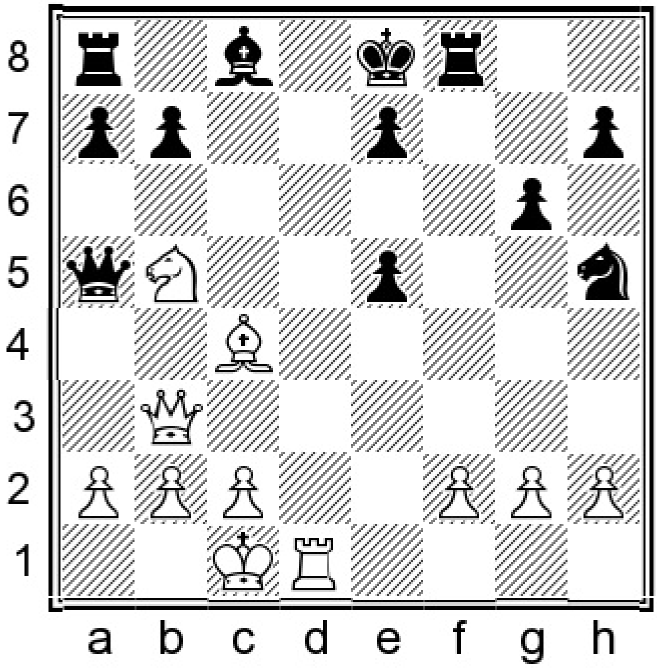


White to play

With three successive sacrifices, White underlines the vulnerability of the enemy king, trapped in the centre:

17.♖xe5! dxe5 18.♗a5! ♕xa5

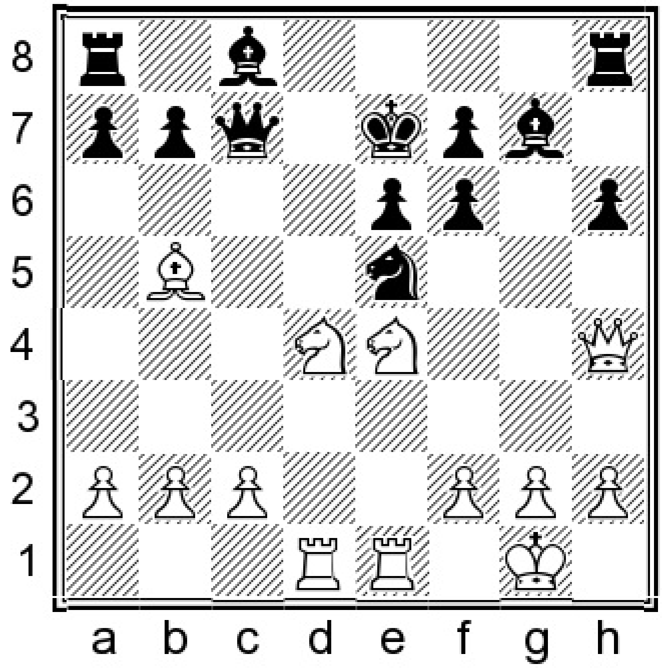
Otherwise he is mated on d8.



19.♕a4!!

The final blow. Black resigned: after any reasonable reply, he is mated by 20.♘c7.

Peter Acs 2601
Alexander Belezky 2454
Germany Bundesliga 2010/11 (8)



White to play

Again the familiar picture: Black has dawdled in the opening and his uncastled king comes under a hail of blows.

16.♘xf6!

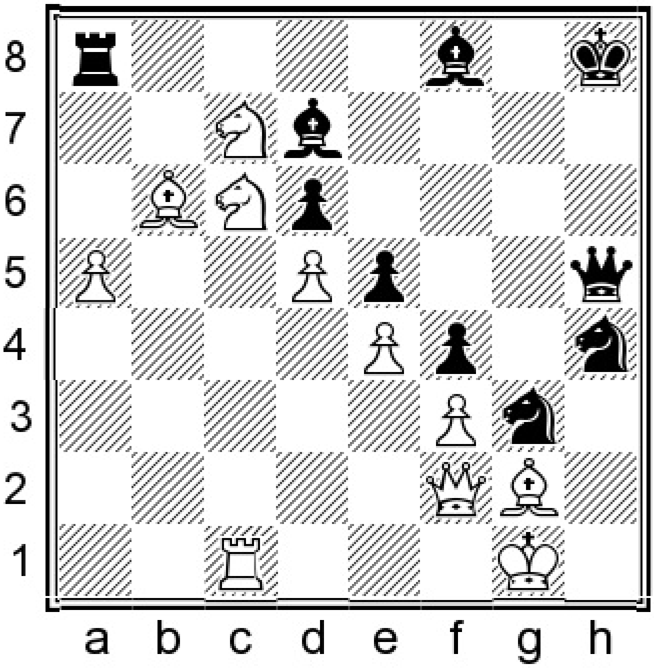
A transposition results from 16.♘f5+! exf5 17.♘xf6.

16.♘xf6! ♗xf6 17.♘f5+! exf5

Or 17...♔f8 18.♕b4+ ♕e7 19.♖d8#.

18.♖xe5+! ♕xe5 19.♕b4+ ♔e6 20.♗c4+ ♕d5 21.♗xd5+ ♔e5 22.f4#

Zhu Chen 2490
Ju Wenjun 2536
Shenzhen 2011 (4)



Black to play

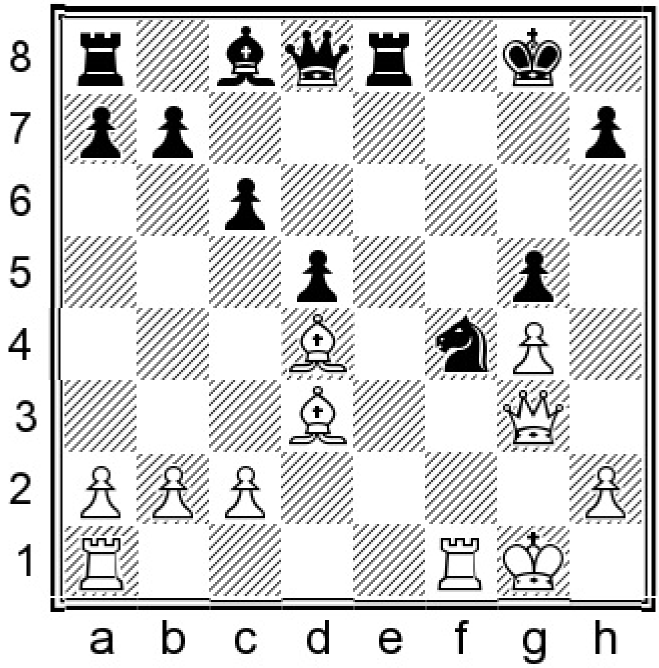
In the King’s Indian, White needs to keep a careful watch on his kingside:

40...♗h3! 41.♘xa8

On 41.♗xh3 decisive is 41...♘xf3+ 42.♔g2 ♘g5! 43.♗f5 ♗h6! 44.♘xa8 f3+ 45.♔xg3 ♘xe4+ 46.♗xe4 ♗f4#.

41...♗xg2 42.♕xg2 ♘xf3+ 43.♔f2 ♘xe4+ 44.♔f1 ♘fd2+ 45.♔g1 ♘g5 46.♖c3 ♕d1+ 47.♔h2 ♘f1+ 48.♔h1 ♘e3+ 0-1

Zoja Severiukhina 2337
Marina Romanko 2420
Tyumen 2012 (6)



White to play

Here one’s very hand itself wants to eliminate the ♘f4. But here this is not only a positional decision – White has a mating attack ‘in reserve’:

26.♖xf4! gxf4 27.♗xh7+ ♔xh7

After 27...♔f7 28.♕xf4+ the black king will not last long.

28.♕h3+ ♔g8 29.♕h8+ ♔f7 30.♕g7+ ♔e6 31.♗c5!

Threatening 32.♖e1#.

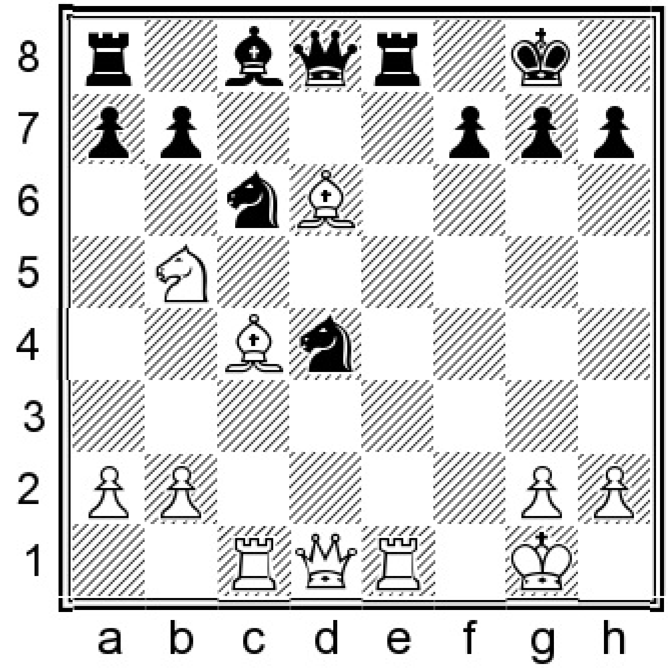
31...♕h4 32.♕g6+ ♔e5

Or else mate on d6.

33.♗d6+

Black resigned (33...♔d4 34.♕d3#).

Vladimir Kramnik 2799
Georg Meier 2644
Dortmund 2012 (9)



White to play

The ex-World Champion managed to draw the black king out into the open at the cost of only a bishop. Given the open nature of the position, one can suggest that Kramnik did not need to calculate all of the variations down to mate: his experience would have suggested that at the necessary moment, he was bound to find a decisive continuation.

24.♗xf7+! ♔xf7 25.♕h5+ g6

On 25...♔g8 or 25...♔f6 White simply takes the rook – 26.♖xe8.

26.♕xh7+ ♔f6 27.♘xd4 ♘xd4

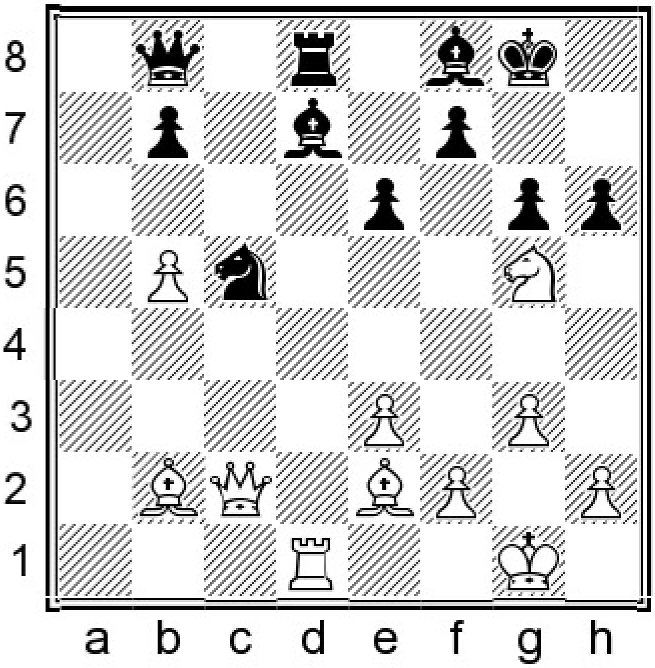
White wins without difficulty after 27...♖xe1+ 28.♖xe1 ♕xd6 29.♖f1+ (of course, 29.♕h8+ ♔f7 30.♘xc6 also wins) 29...♔e5 (29...♗f5 30.♘xf5 ♕c5+ 31.♘e3+) 30.♘f3+ ♔d5 (30...♔e6 31.♘g5+ ♔d5 32.♖d1+) 31.♖d1+ ♔c5 32.♖xd6.

28.♕h4+ ♔f7 29.♖c7+

More concrete than 29.♕xd4, although here too, Black's position is hopeless.

29...♗d7 30.♕h7+ ♔f6 31.♖f1+ ♔e6 32.♕xg6+ ♔d5 33.♖c5#

Stuart Conquest 2501
James Adair 2262
North Shields ch-GBR 2012 (5)



White to play

Exploiting the scattered black pieces, White carries out a beautiful and effective crush:

34.♘xf7!

Nothing results from 34.♕c3 e5.

34.♘xf7! ♔xf7 35.♗h5! ♔e7

35...gxh5 36.♕h7+ ♔e8 37.♕g6+ ♔e7 38.♗f6#.

36.♕xc5+

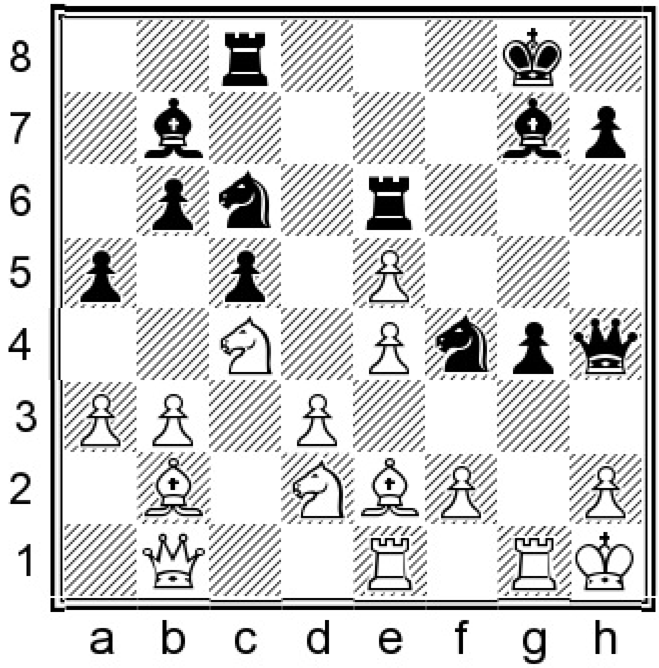
An even lovelier win was 36.♗f6+! ♔xf6 37.♕xg6+ ♔e5 (37...♔e7 38.♕f7#) 38.f4#.

36...♔f7 37.♕c2

Black resigned. The same position as two moves ago, but without the ♘c5.

The following example reminds of the immortal Averbakh-Kotov game from the 1953 Candidates' tournament.

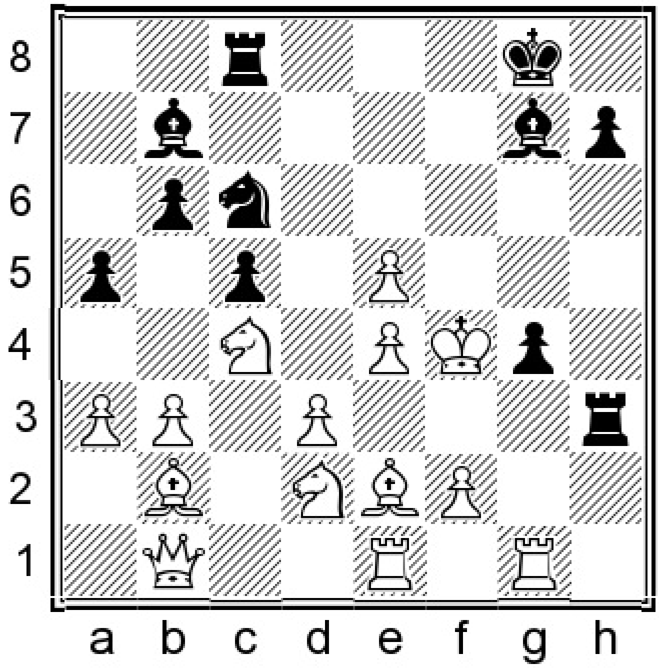
Joaquim Lacasta Palacio 2195
Hipolito Asis Gargatagli 2482
Barbera del Valles 2012 (1)


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h

Black to play

24...♕xh2+! 25.♔xh2 ♖h6+ 26.♔g3 ♖h3+ 27.♔xf4

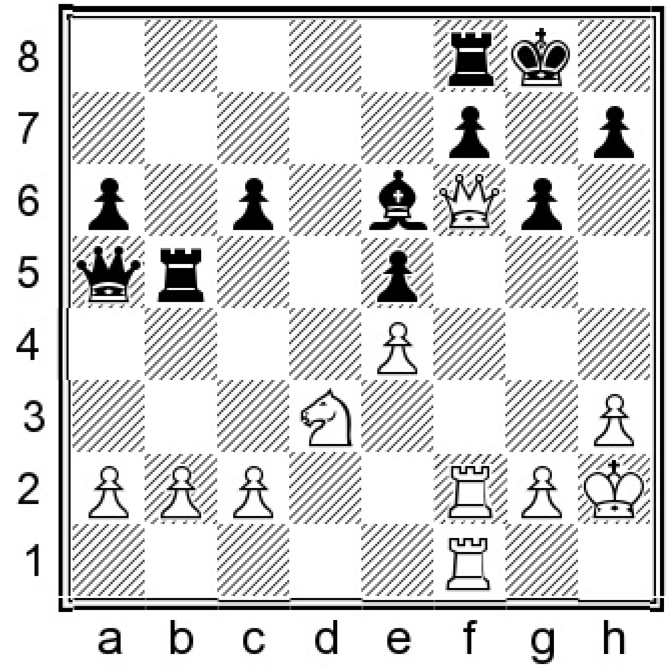
The alternative was 27.♔xg4 h5+ 28.♔g5 (28.♔xf4 ♖f8+ 29.♔g5 ♔h7) 28...♔h7!, and Black wins.


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h

27...♖f8+

White resigned, without waiting for 28.♔xg4 ♗c8+ 29.♔g5 ♗h6#.

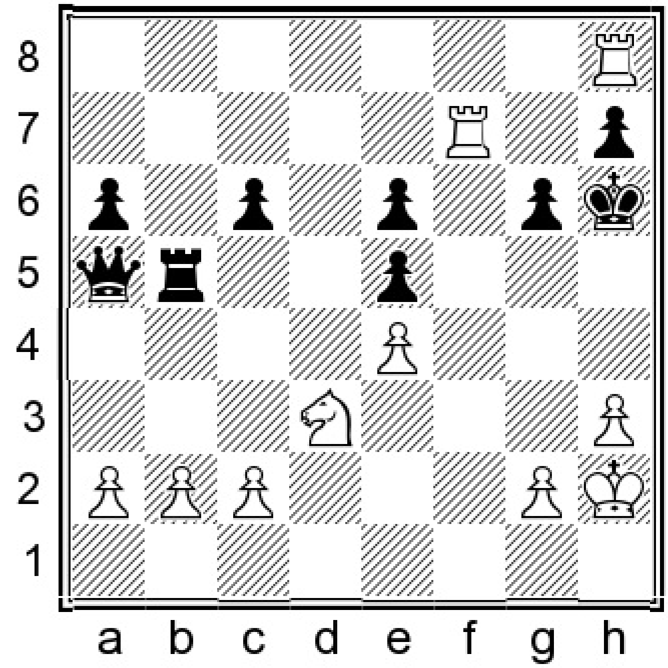
Yang-Fan Zhou 2437
Sjef Rijnaarts 2359
Amsterdam 2013 (3)



White to play

First the rooks draw the king into the centre and deprive it of its mobility, and then the knight comes into the action:

26.♕xe6! fxe6 27.♖xf8+ ♔g7 28.♖1f7+ ♔h6 29.♖h8



29...g5

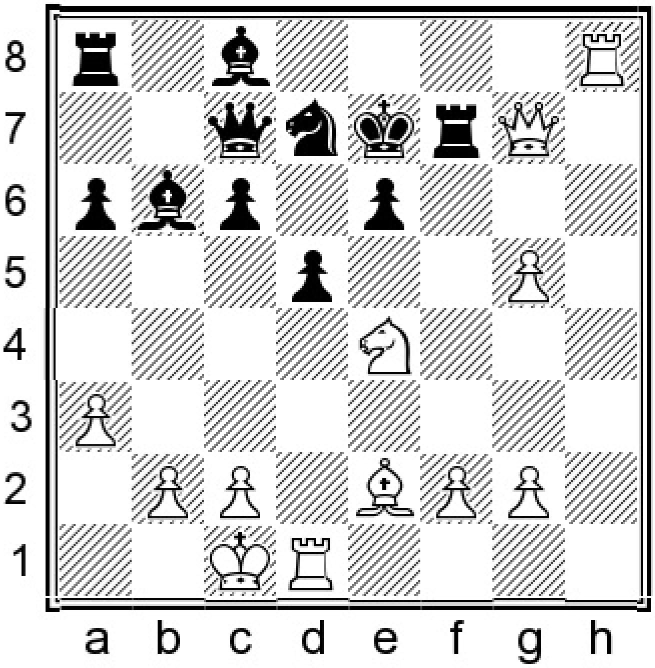
Black also doesn't last long after 29...♕d2 30.♖hxh7+ ♔g5 31.h4+ ♔g4 32.♖f3 with the threat 33.♖g3#. A transposition results from 29...♔g5 30.♖hxh7.

30.♖hxh7+ ♔g6 31.♖hg7+

A slightly quicker finish was 31.♖fg7+ ♔f6 32.♘f2.

31...♔h6 32.♘f2 ♖b8 33.♘g4+ ♔h5 34.♖h7+ ♔g6 35.♖fg7#

Alexandr Predke 2481
Vladimir Belous 2560
Loo ch-RUS U20 2013 (8)



White to play

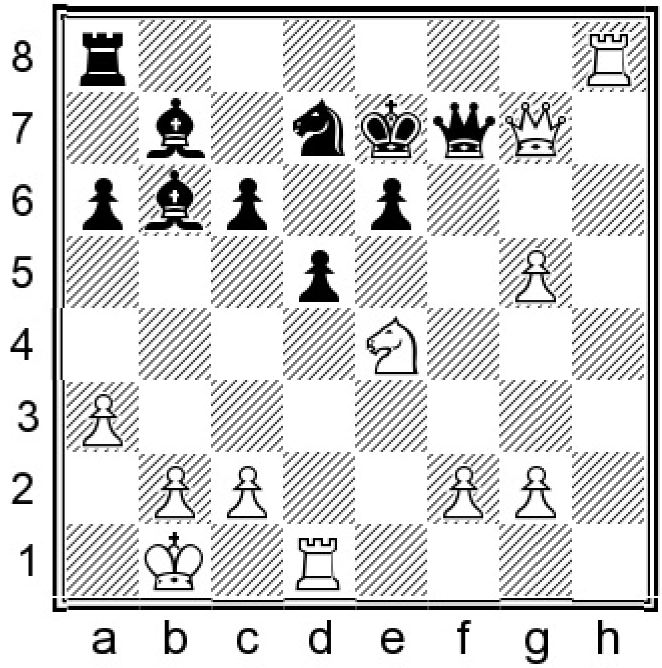
24.♗h5! ♕f4+ 25.♔b1 ♗b7

A) Of course, not 25...♖xg7 26.♖e8#;

B) Also weak was 25...♕xe4 26.♗xf7 ♔d6 27.♖e8 ♘c5 (27...♘e5 28.♗xe6 ♗xe6 29.♕e7#) 28.♗g6;

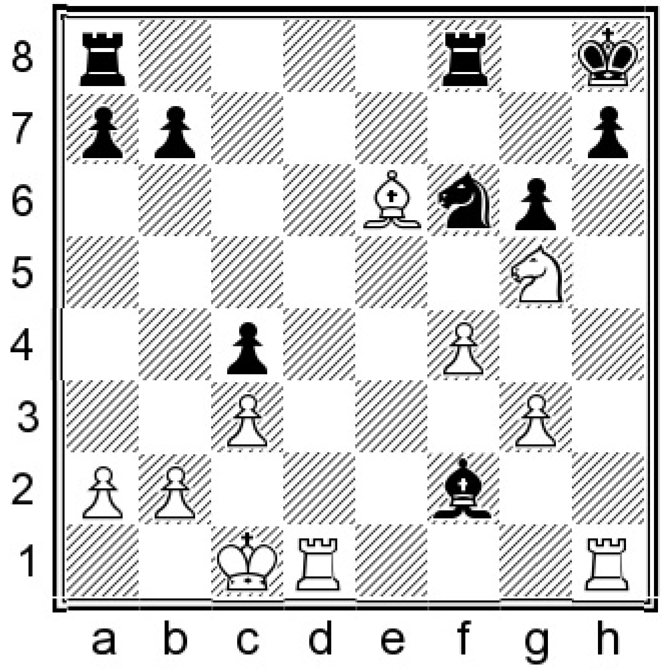
C) but rather more tenacious was 25...dxe4 26.♗xf7 ♕xf7, and White would have had to find 27.♕c3 ♗b7 28.♕b4+ c5 29.♖xd7+! ♔xd7 30.♕xb6 ♖xh8 31.♕xb7+ ♔e8 32.♕c8+ ♔e7 33.♕xc5+! ♔d8 34.♕d4+ with a winning queen ending.

26.♗xf7 ♕xf7



And here the quickest win is 27.♖h7! ♕xg7 28.♖xg7+ ♔d8 29.♘f6 ♗c8 30.♖h1.

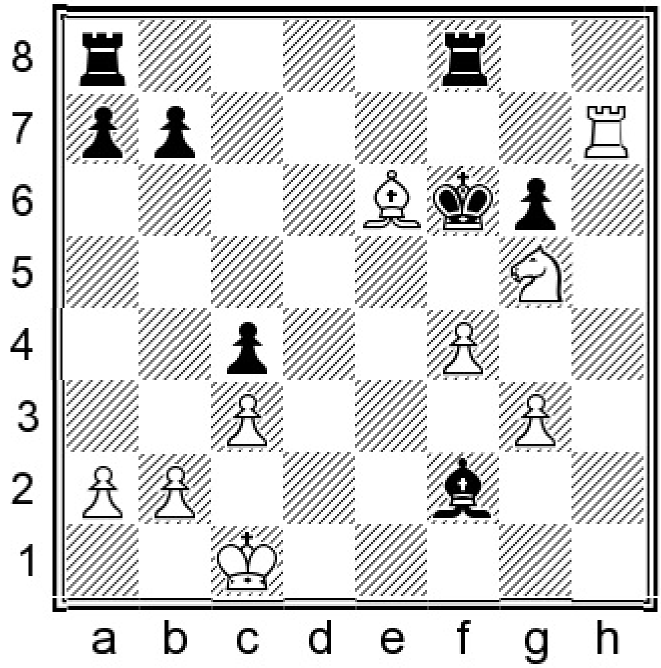
Denis Rombaldoni 2462
Andrea Stella 2454
Rome ch-ITA 2013 (3)



White to play

Despite the limited material, White manages to lure the enemy king into a mating net and Black has to incur large material losses in order to escape:

30.♖xh7+! ♘xh7 31.♖h1 ♔g7 32.♖xh7+ ♔f6



33.♗d7!

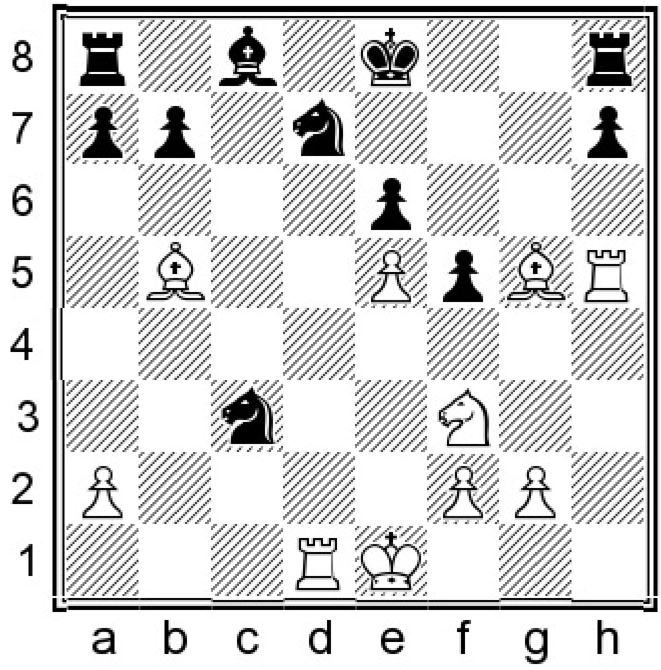
With the threat of 34.♘e4#.

33...♖ae8 34.♗xe8 ♗xg3

It turns out that the bishop is invulnerable – 34...♖xe8 35.♖f7#.

35.♘e4+ ♔f5 36.♘xg3+ ♔xf4 37.♘e2+ ♔e3 38.♖e7+ ♔d3 39.♗xg6+ 1-0

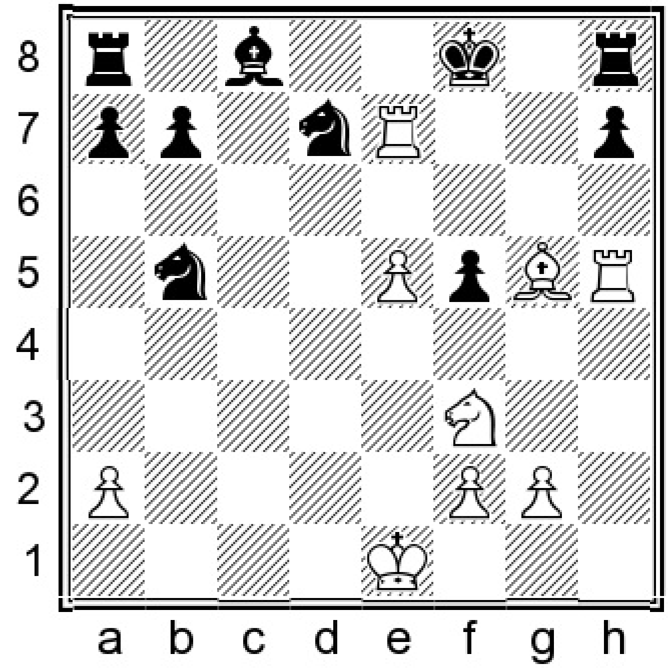
Vishnu Prasanna 2523
Parimarjan Negi 2671
Jalgaon ch-IND 2013 (9)



White to play

Even in the absence of queens, the scattered enemy forces and his uncastled king provide great scope for combinative play.

22.♖d6! ♘xb5 23.♖xe6+ ♔f7 24.♖e7+ ♔f8



25.e6

More accurate was 25.♘h4! ♘xe5 (or 25...♖g8 26.♘xf5 with an overwhelming advantage) 26.♖xe5 ♗d7 27.♗f6 ♖g8 28.♖xh7 ♖e8 29.♖xe8+ ♔xe8 30.♖e7+.

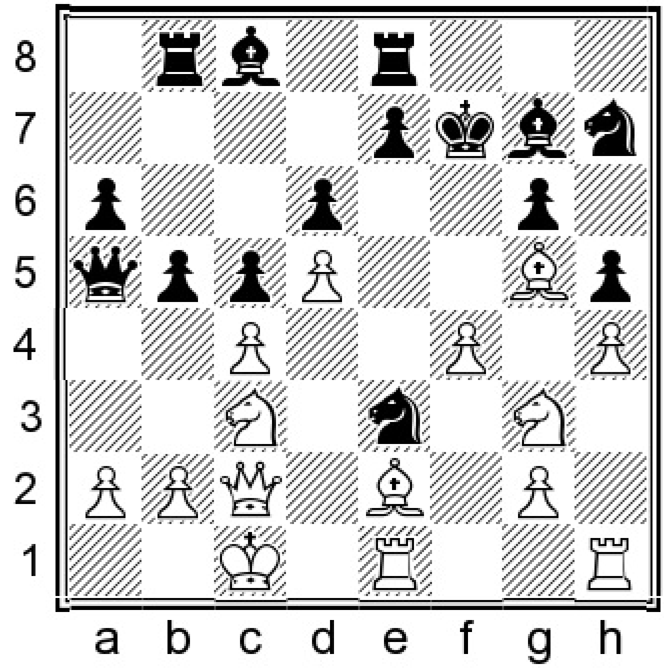
25...♘c5 26.♘e5 ♗xe6 27.♘g6+ hxg6 28.♖xh8+ ♗g8 29.♖eh7

Black resigned.

Show in Text Mode

Exercises

766

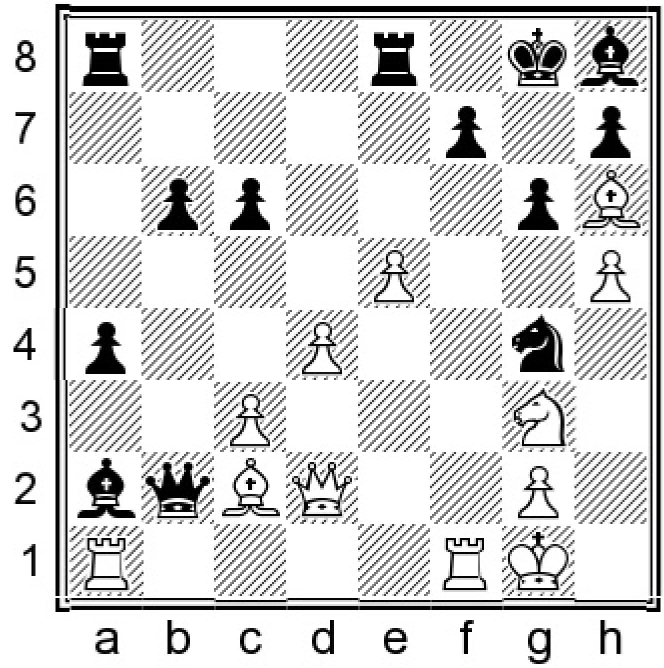

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

White to play

Show/Hide Solution

766 **19.♕xg6+! ♔f8** 19...♔xg6 20.♗xh5#. **20.♗xh5** and Black resigned in Beheshtayeen-S.Guliev, Fajr 2001.

767

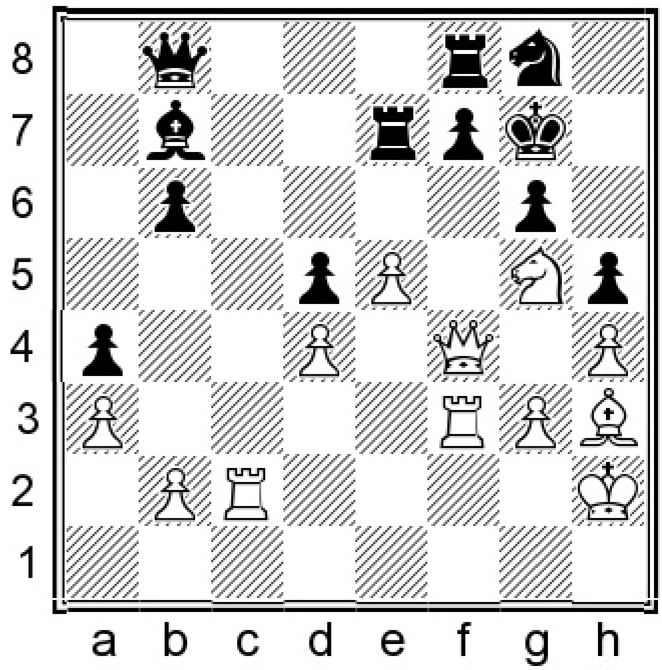


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

767 **28.♖xa2! ♕xa2 29.♗xg6! ♘xh6** 29...♕xd2 30.♗xf7#. **30.♕xa2** 1-0 Jonkman-De Vreugt, Amsterdam 2001.

768

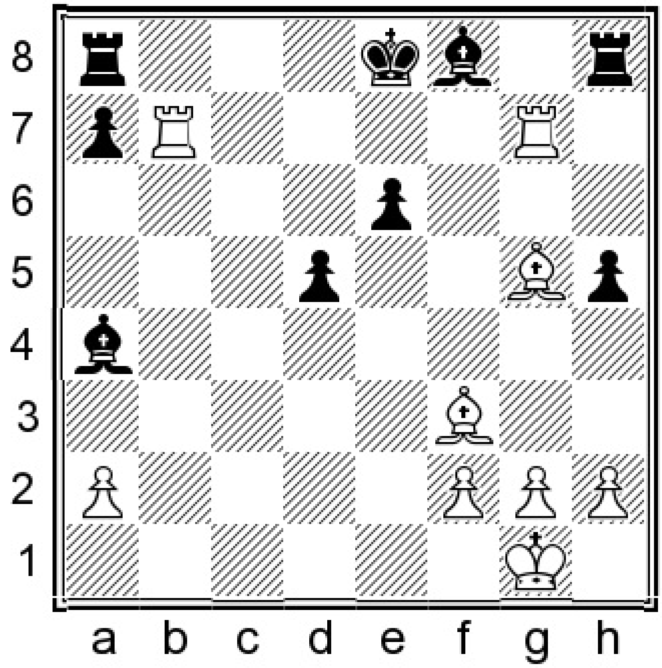


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

768 **48.♕f6+! ♘xf6** 48...♔h6 49.♕h8#. **49.exf6+ ♔h8** After the fall of the f7-pawn, White's position becomes overwhelming; he threatens mate with ♗e6 and ♘g5 and ♖h7. For example: 49...♔h6 50.fxe7 ♖g8 (50...♖h8 51.♘xf7+) 51.♖xf7 ♖g7 52.♖f8 or 49...♔g8 50.fxe7 ♖e8 51.♖xf7 ♕d6 52.♖e2, and there is no defence to 53.♗e6. **50.fxe7 ♖e8 51.♖xf7 ♕d6 52.♗e6 ♕xe6** Both players had seen the variation 52...♖xe7 53.♖f8+ ♔g7 54.♖g8+ ♔h6 (54...♔f6 55.♖f2+) 55.♖h8+ ♔g7 56.♖h7+ ♔f8 57.♖f2+ ♔e8 58.♖h8#. **53.♖f8+** 1-0 Riazantsev-Aseev, St Petersburg 2002.

769

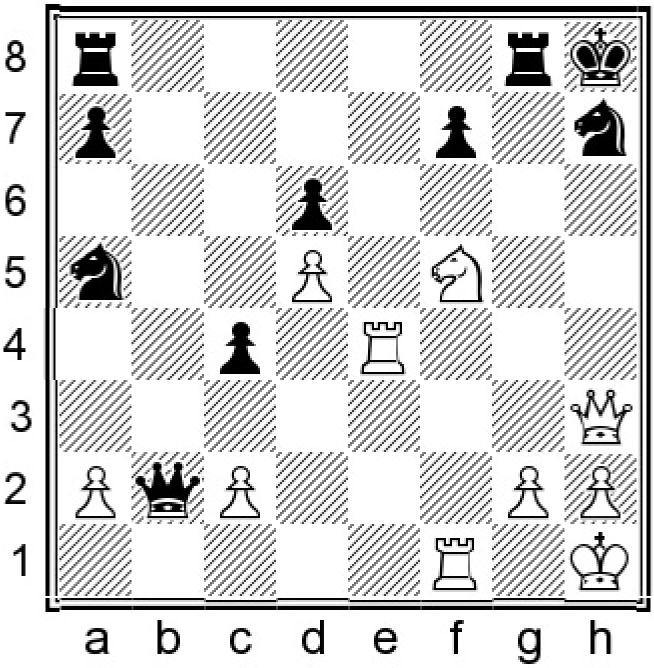


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

769 **23.♖g8! ♗c6** 23...♖xg8 24.♗xh5+ ♖g6 25.♗xg6#. **24.♖e7+** 1-0 Looshnikov-Paramonov, St Petersburg 2002; another way to win is 24.♗xh5+ ♖xh5 25.♖e7+ ♔d8 26.♖xf8+.

770

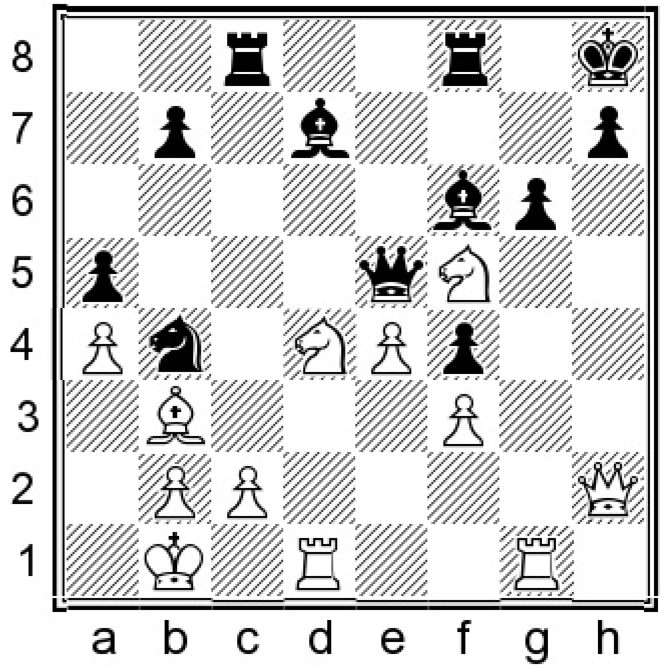


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

770 **24.♕xh7+!** An elegant queen sacrifice: 1-0 Sutovsky-Smirin, Tel Aviv ch-ISR 2002; Black’s king march into the enemy camp will not end happily: 24...♔xh7 25.♖h4+ ♔g6 26.♖h6+ ♔g5 27.h4+ ♔g4 28.♘e3+ ♔g3 29.♖f3#.

771

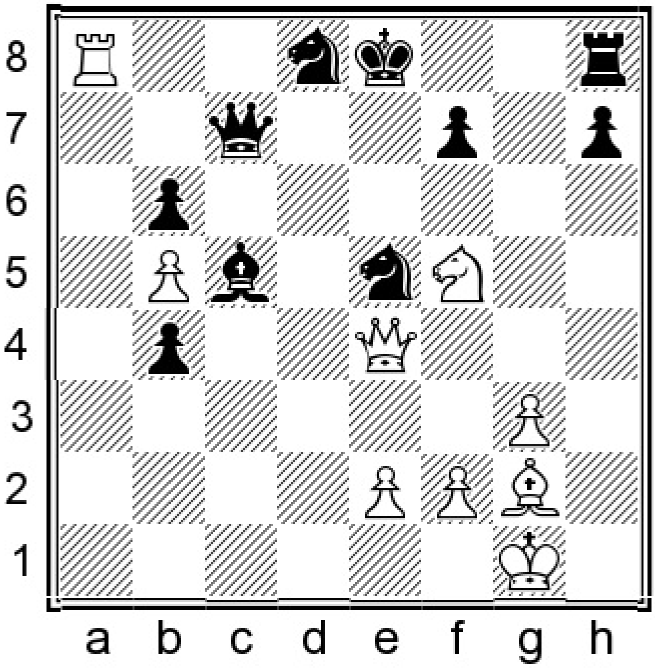


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

771 **30.♕xh7+! ♔xh7 31.♖h1+** 1-0 Anand-Vallejo Pons, Monaco blindfold 2004.

772

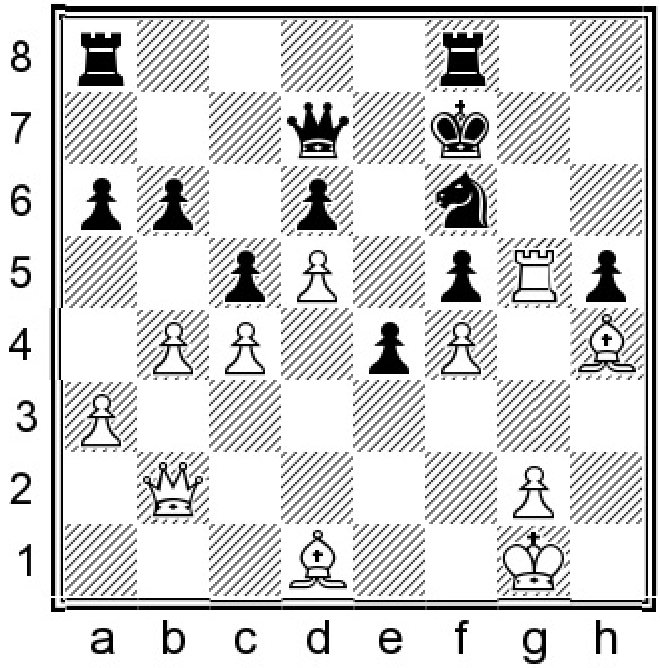


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

772 **25.♕xe5+!** 1-0 Johannessen-Isaev, Calvia ol 2004; 25...♕xe5 26.♗c6+ ♔f8 27.♖xd8+ ♕e8 28.♖xe8#.

773

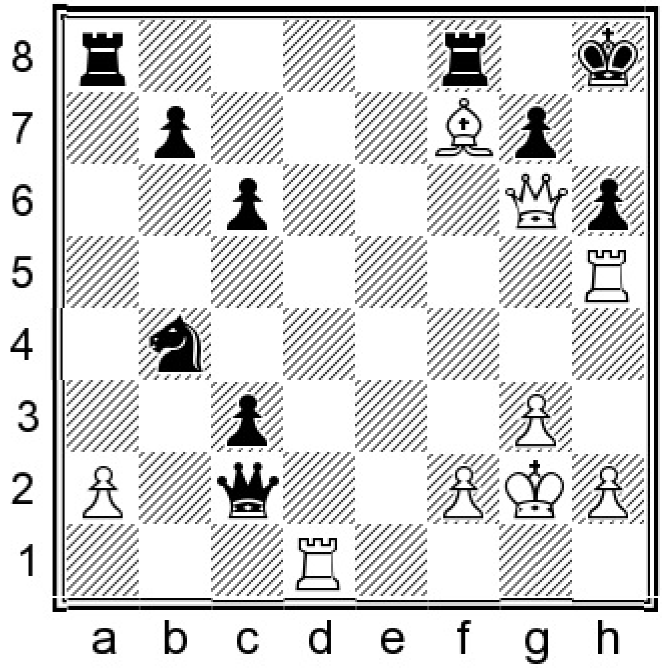


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

773 **37.♕xf6+! ♔xf6 38.♗xh5** There is an immediate mate with 38.♖g3+ ♔f7 39.♗xh5#, but the text does not throw away the win. **38...♔e7** 38...♕g7 39.♖g3+ ♕g5 40.♖xg5, and mate next move. **39.♖g7#** Shengelia-Calistri, Cappelle-la-Grande 2005.

774

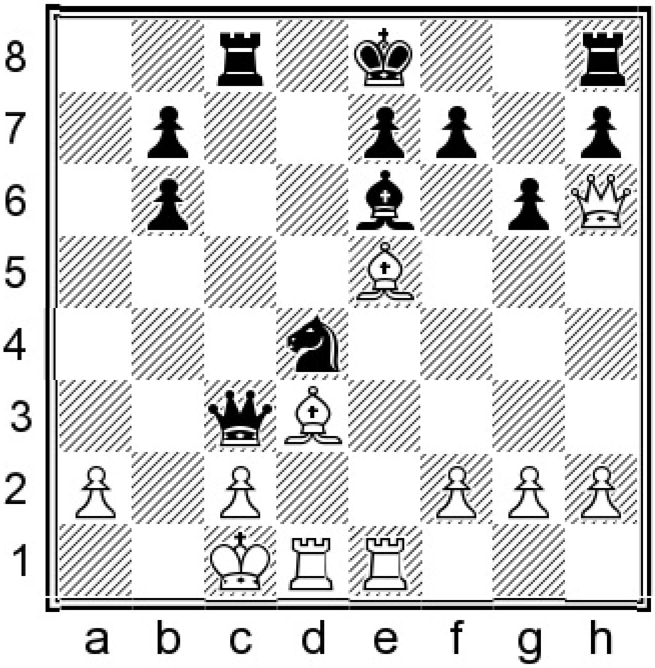

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h

White to play

Show/Hide Solution

774 **31.♖xh6+! gxh6 32.♕f6+ ♔h7 33.♖d7** 1-0 Timofeev-Nisipeanu, Skanderborg 2005; Black’s king will not survive long.

775

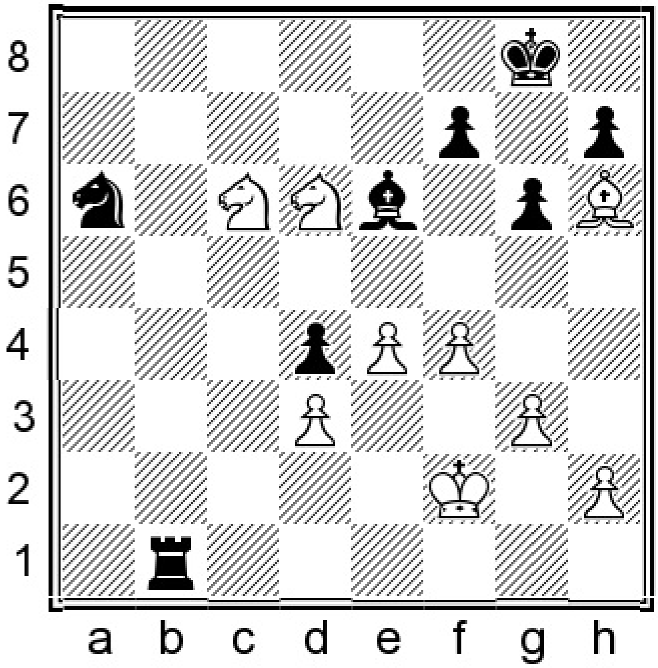

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h

Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

775 **24...♕xc2+!** Wu Wenjin-Bu Xiangzhi, Beijing zt 2005; White resigned, in view of the forced mate: 25.♗xc2 ♖xc2+ 26.♔b1 ♗xa2+ 27.♔a1 ♘b3#.

776

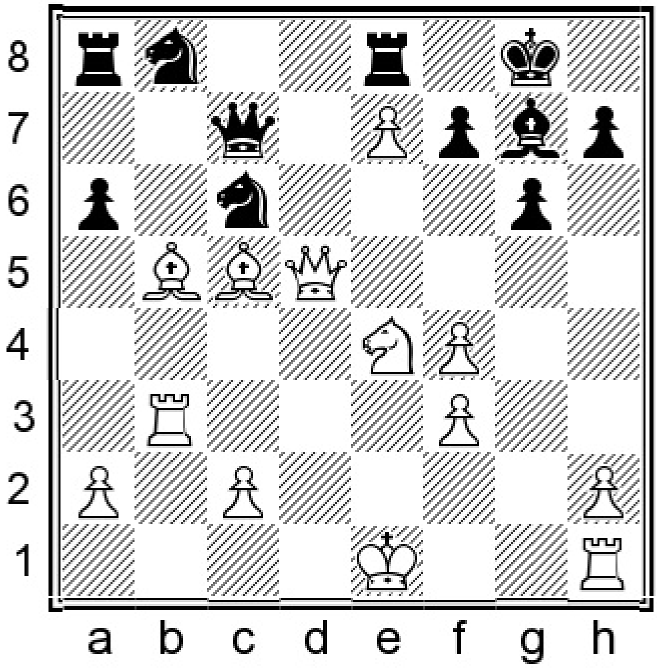


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

776 **33.♘e7+ ♔h8 34.♘e8** 1-0 Arizmendi Martinez-Aaberg, Gibraltar 2006; the threat of 35.♗g7# is unstoppable.

777

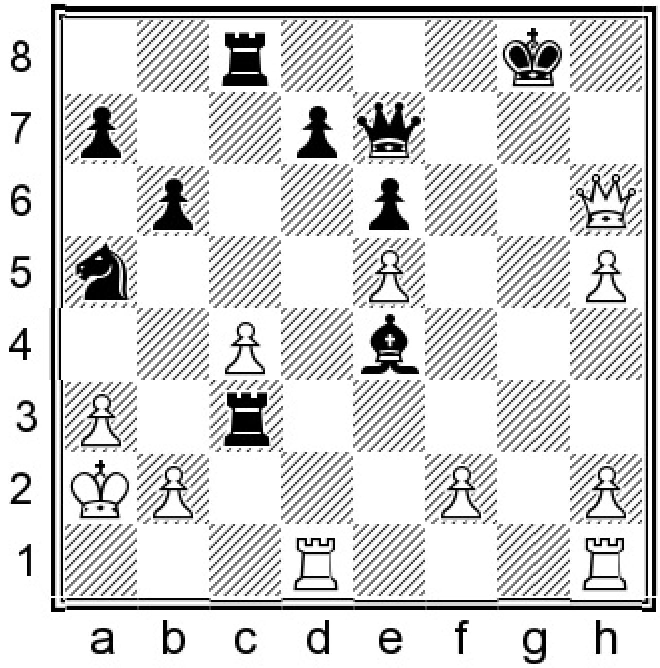


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

777 **20.♕xf7+!** 1-0 Lehner-Stanec, Austria Bundesliga 2005/06; 20...♔xf7 21.♗c4#.

778

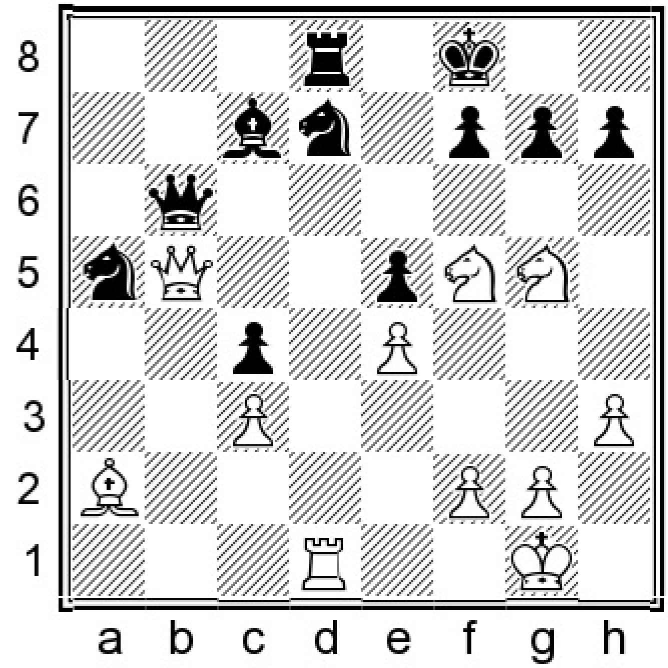


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

778 **24...♕xa3+! 25.bxa3 ♖c2+ 26.♔b1 ♖d2+ 27.♔a1** Nothing changes after 27.♔c1. **27...♘b3#** J.Eriksson-Hellsten, Gothenburg ch-SWE 2006.

779

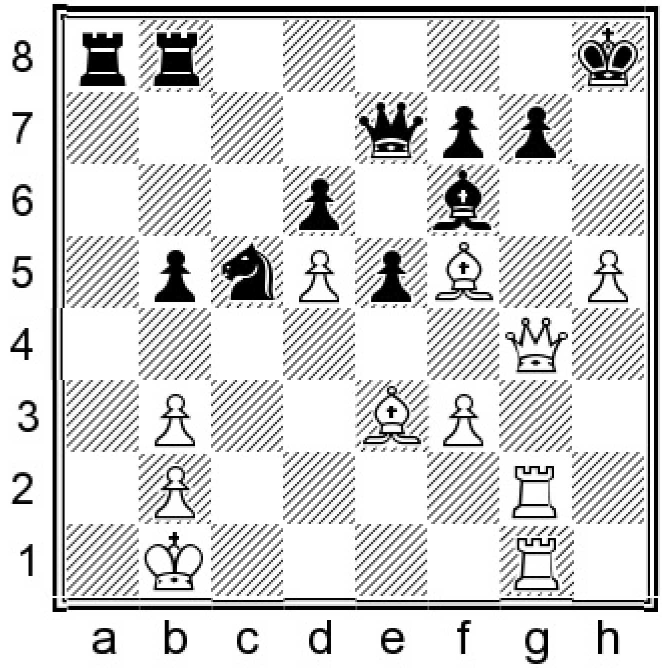


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

779 **35.♖xd7!** 1-0 Inarkiev-Gustafsson, Greece tt 2006; Black’s own rook prevents the king escaping the mating net: 35...♕xb5 36.♖xf7+ ♔g8 37.♖xg7+ ♔f8 38.♘xh7+ ♔e8 39.♖e7#.

780

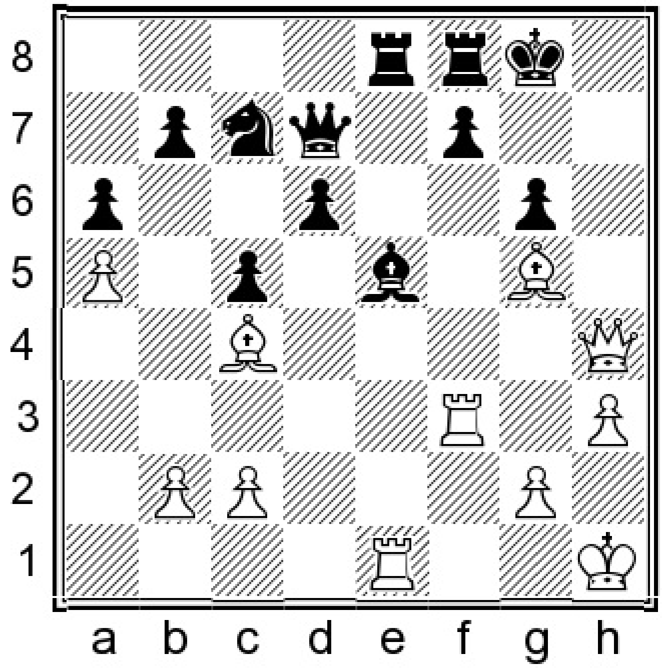


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

780 **35.♕xg7+! ♗xg7 36.♖xg7** 1-0 Zontakh-Shishkin, Kiev 2006; mate on h7 can only be stopped at the cost of a piece: 36...f6 37.♖xe7 ♖b7.

781

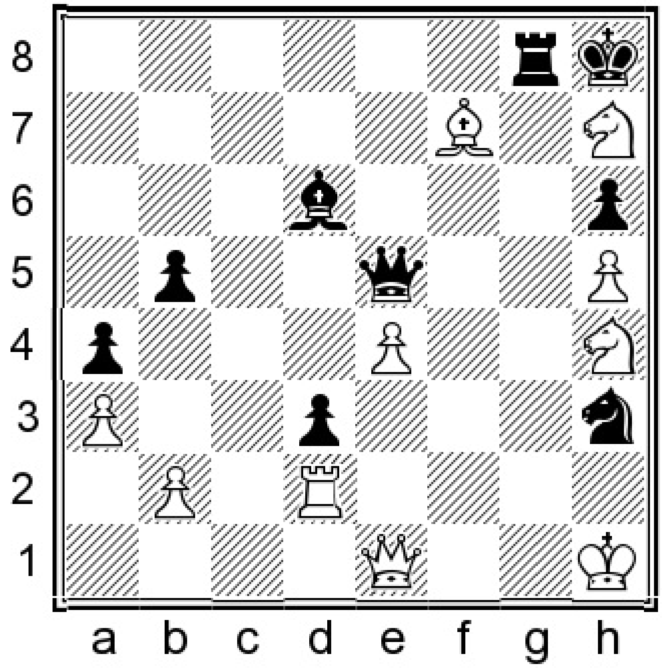

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h

White to play

Show/Hide Solution

781 **25.♖xe5! ♖xe5 26.♗f6 ♖h5 27.♕xh5!** Velikhanli-M.Gurevich, Izmir 2006; Black resigned because of 27...gxh5 28.♖g3+ ♔h7 29.♗d3+ ♔h6 30.♗g7#.

782

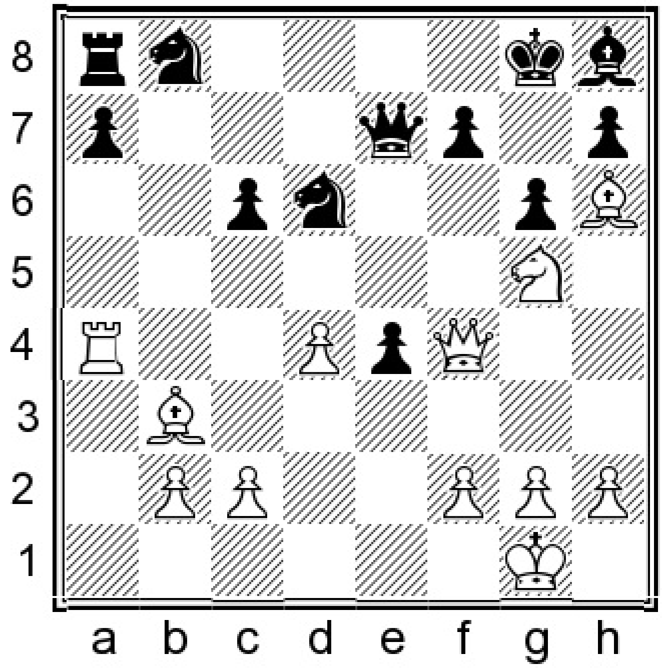

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

782 **44...♕xe4+!** 0-1 Dvoirys-Miroshnischenko, Cappelle-la-Grande 2007; 45.♕xe4 ♖g1#.

783

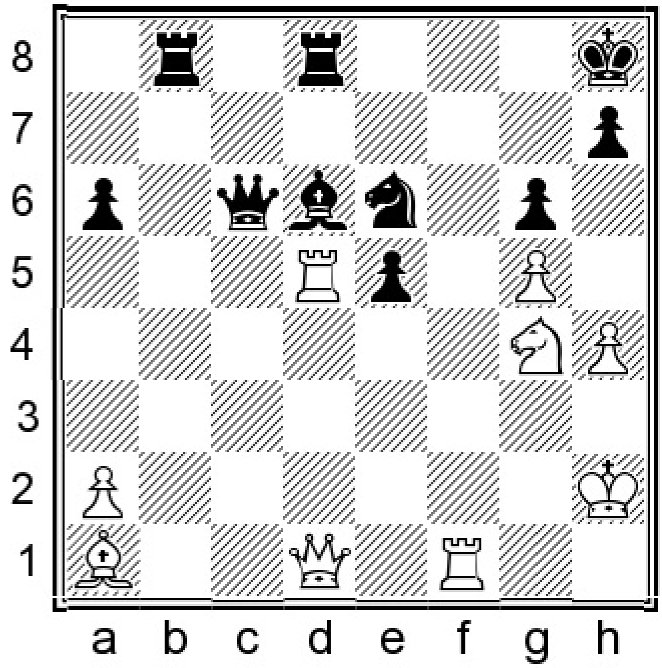


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

783 **24.♕xd6!** 1-0 Fleischman-Hanken, Mashantucket 2007; 24...♕xd6 25.♗xf7#.

784

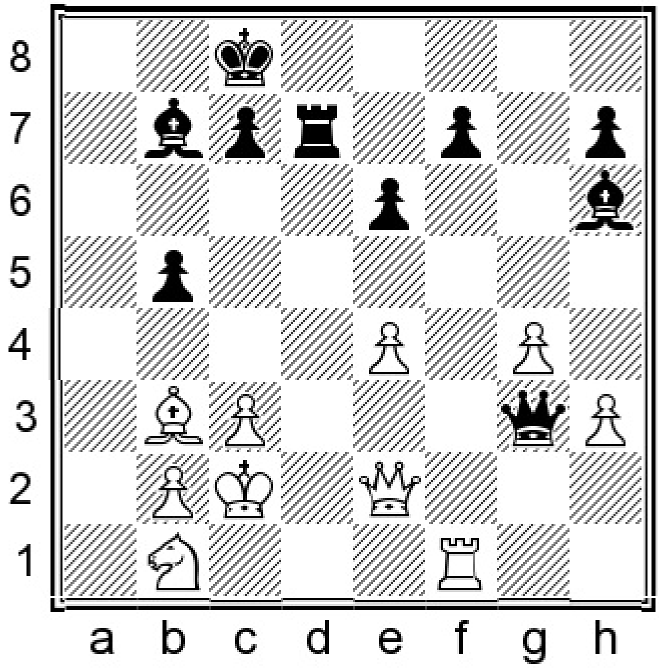


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

784 **43.♖xd6! ♖xd6 44.♗xe5+ ♔g8 45.♘h6#** Radjabov-Carlsen, Porto Vecchio jr 2007.

785

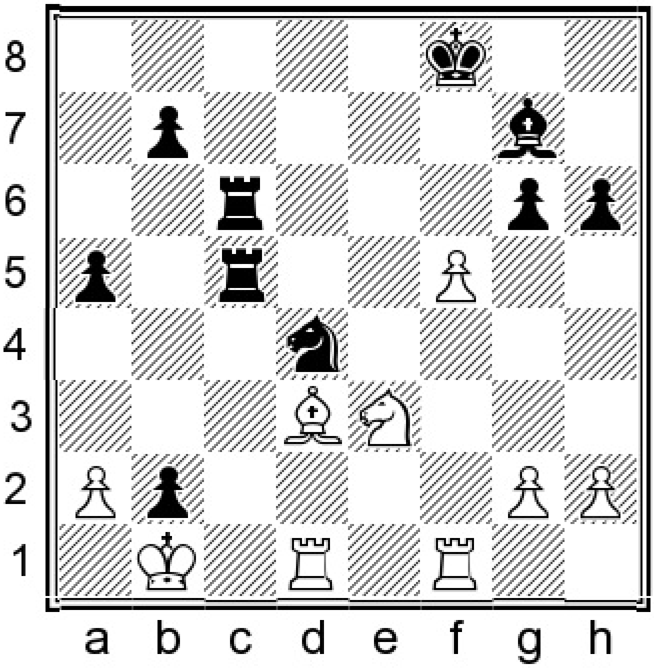

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h

Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

785 **26...♕h2! 27.♕xh2** 27.♖f2 ♕xf2. **27...♗xe4#** Ledger-Constantinou, London tt 2007.

786

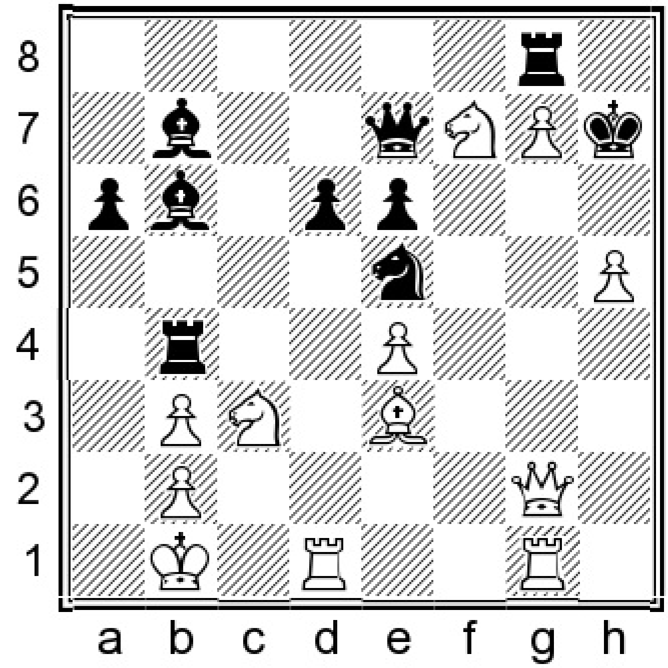


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

786 **29...♖c1+!** Marzolo-Arencibia Rodriguez, Calvia 2007; White resigned, in view of mate after 30.♖xc1 bxc1=♕+ 31.♖xc1 ♖b6+ 32.♔a1 ♘c2. If 30.♔xb2 there is a win with the simple 30...♘xf5+ 31.♔b3 ♖6c3+, and after any king retreat 32...♖xd1 leaves Black with a solid material advantage.

787

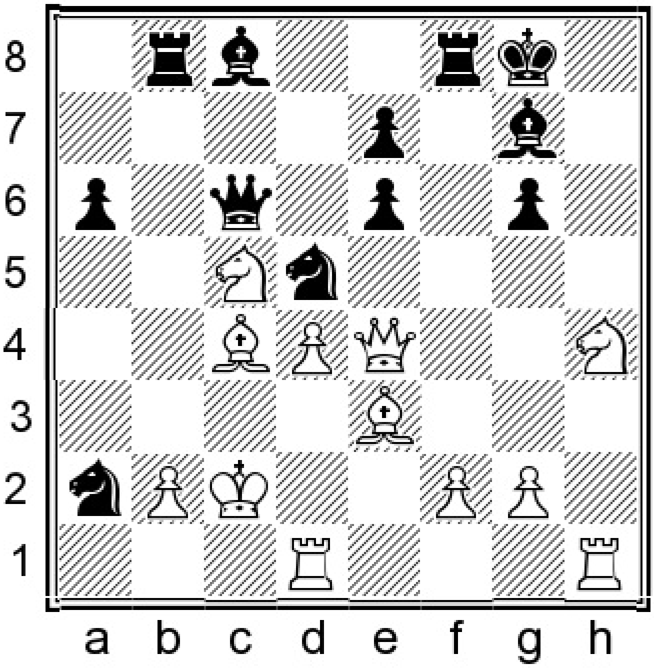

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h

White to play

Show/Hide Solution

787 **29.♕g6+! ♘xg6 30.hxg6+ ♔xg7 31.♗h6+ ♔f6 32.♖df1+** 1-0 Amonatov-Timofeev, Moscow ch-RUS 2007.

788

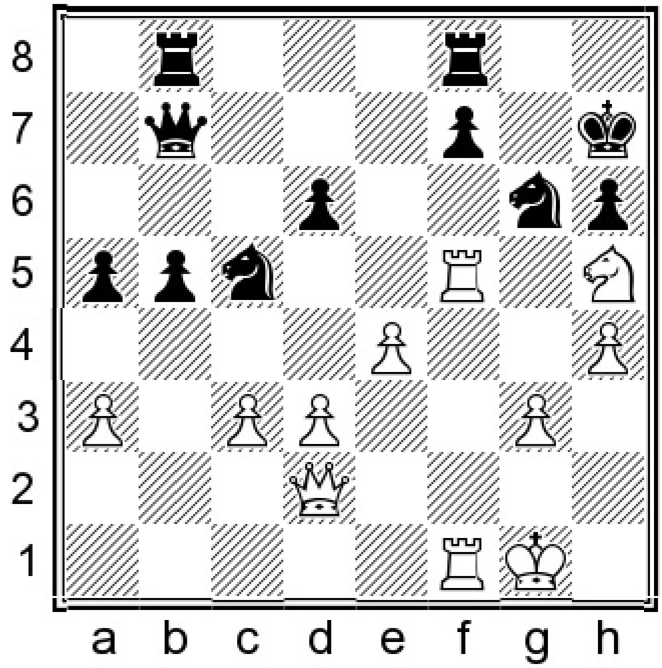

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h

Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

788 **25...♛xc5!** Kragelj-Kokol, Nova Gorica; White resigned because of 26.dxc5 ♖xb2+ 27.♔d3 ♘db4#.

789

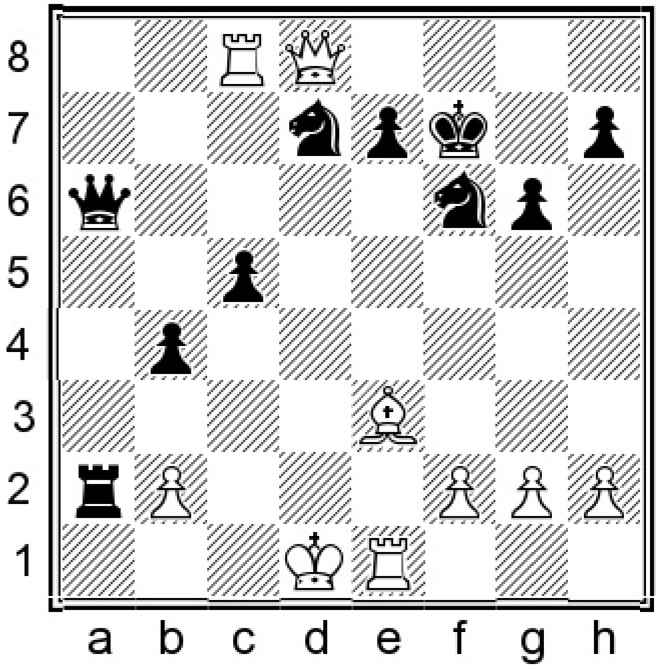


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

789 **29.♘f6+ ♔g7 30.♕xh6+!** 1-0 A.Kosten-D'Costa, England 4NCL 2007/08; 30...♔xh6 31.♖h5+ ♔g7 32.♖h7#.

790

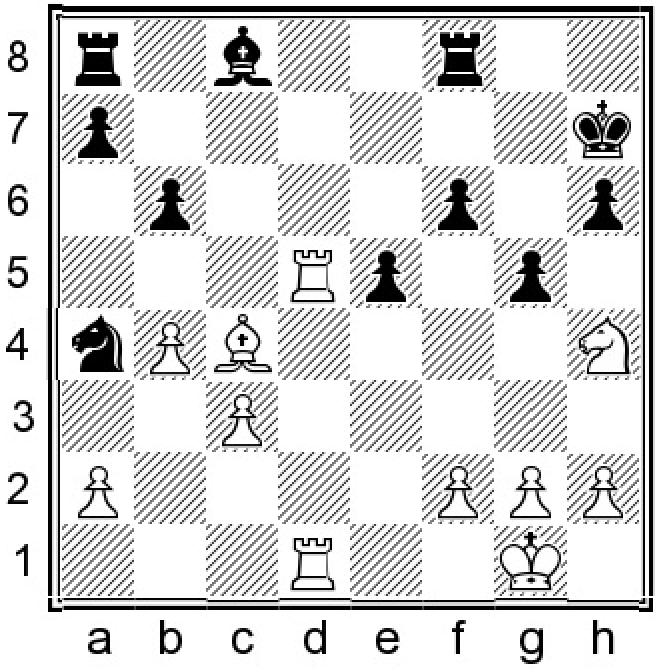


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

790 **28.♕xe7+!** 1-0 Karakekhajov-Thesing, Bucharest 2006; 28...♔xe7 29.♗xc5+ ♔f7 30.♖e7#.

791

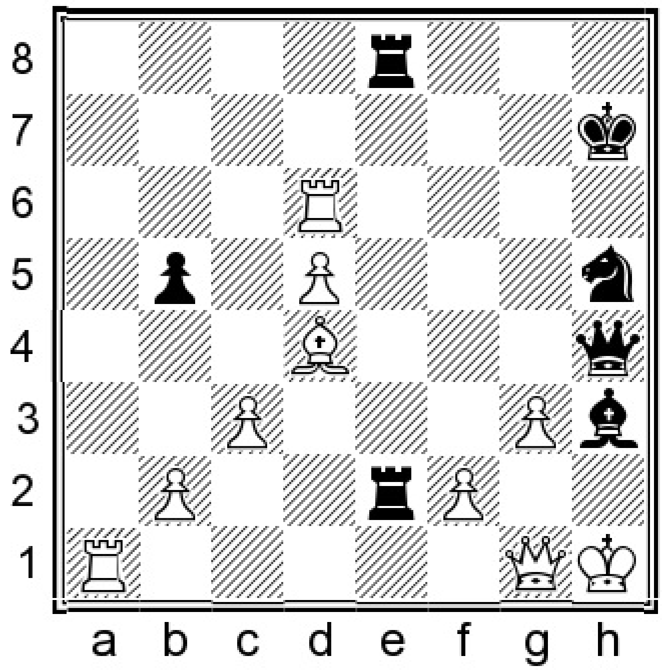


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

791 **26.♖d7+!** 1-0 Maze-Santo Roman, France tt 2008; 26...♗xd7 27.♖xd7+ ♔h8 28.♘g6#.

792

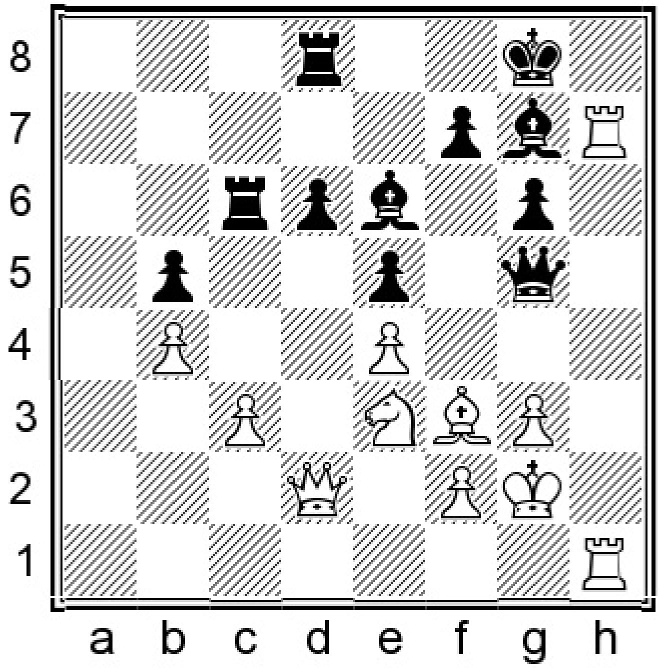

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h

Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

792 **45...♗g2+! 46.♔xg2 ♕xg3+ 47.♔f1 ♕h3+ 48.♕g2 ♘g3+** 0-1 Inarkiev-Kamsky, Baku 2008; 49.♔g1 ♖e1+.

793



White to play

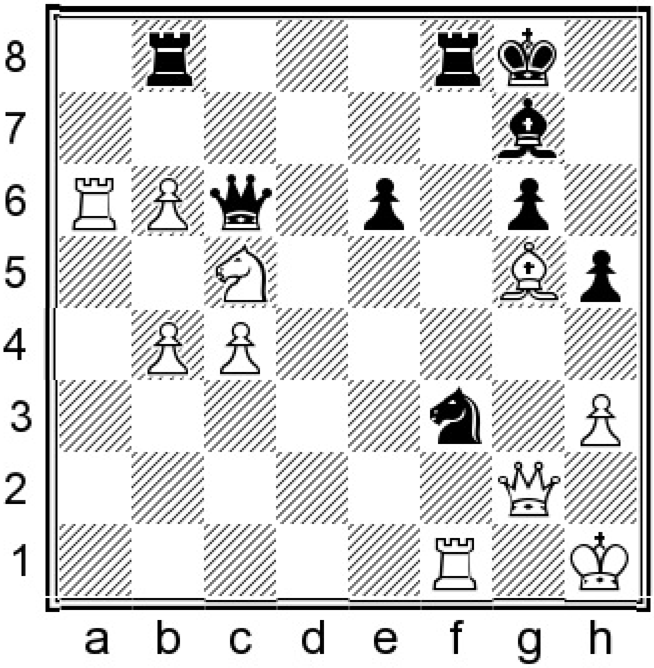
Show/Hide Solution

793 **33.♘f5!** But not 33.♖xg7+?? ♔xg7 34.♘f5+ ♔f6.

33.♘f5!

Kravtsiv-Wang Yue, Beijing rapid 2008; Black resigned – things end in mate after 33...♕xd2 34.♖xg7+ ♔f8 35.♖h8#.

794

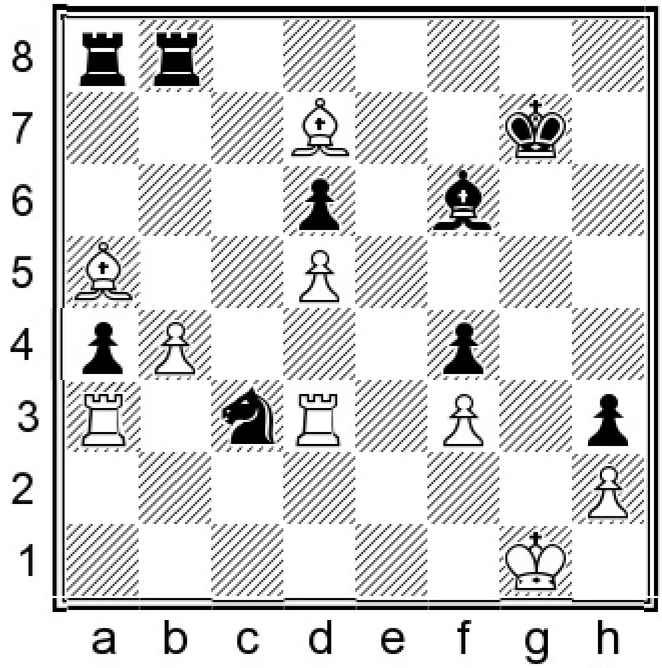

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h

Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

794 **30...♘h4! 31.♖xf8+ ♖xf8 32.♕xc6 ♖f1+** Leyva-Al Hadarani, Dresden ol 2008; White resigned, as he cannot avoid mate: 33.♔h2 ♗e5+.

795

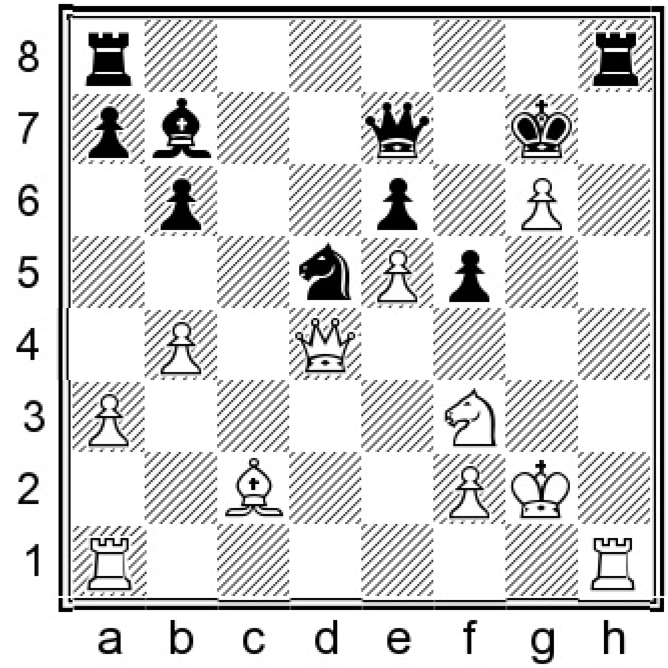


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

795 **41...♖xa5! 42.bxa5** Somewhat more tenacious was 42.♖dxc3 ♖xb4 (42...♖a7 43.♖c8 allows White to resist for longer) 43.♖d3 ♖b1+ 44.♔f2 ♖c5, and the computer confirms that Black has an overwhelming advantage (for example: 45.♗xa4 ♖cc1). Now, however, White is simply mated: **42...♖b1+ 43.♔f2 ♗h4#** Ibrahimov-Mamedov, Baku ch-AZE 2009.

796

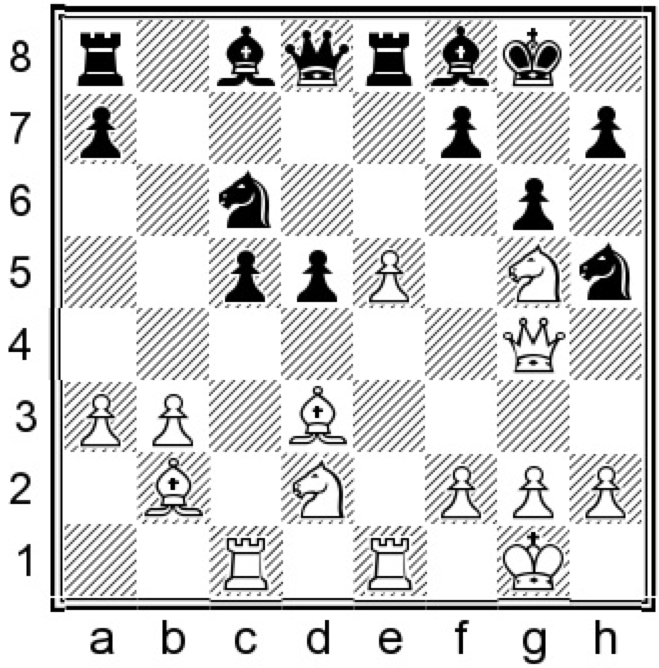

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h

Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

796 **28...♕g5+! 29.♘xg5 ♘f4+** Bojkov-Nikolov, Blagoevgrad 2009; White resigned because of 30.♔g3 ♘e2# or 30.♔f1 ♖xh1#.

797

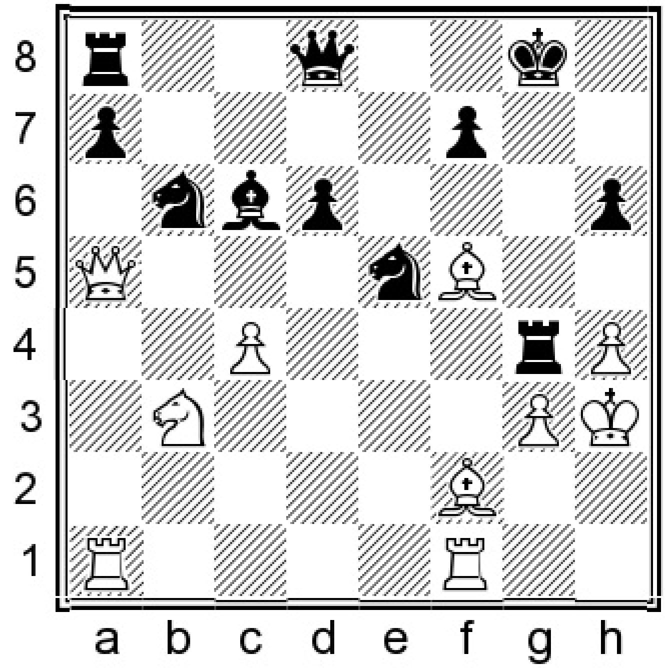


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

797 **19.e6! ♖xe6 20.♕xh5!** 1-0 Nybäck-Von Herman, Germany Bundesliga 2009/10; the queen is untouchable, both immediately and after the exchange of rooks, because of ♗xh7#.

798

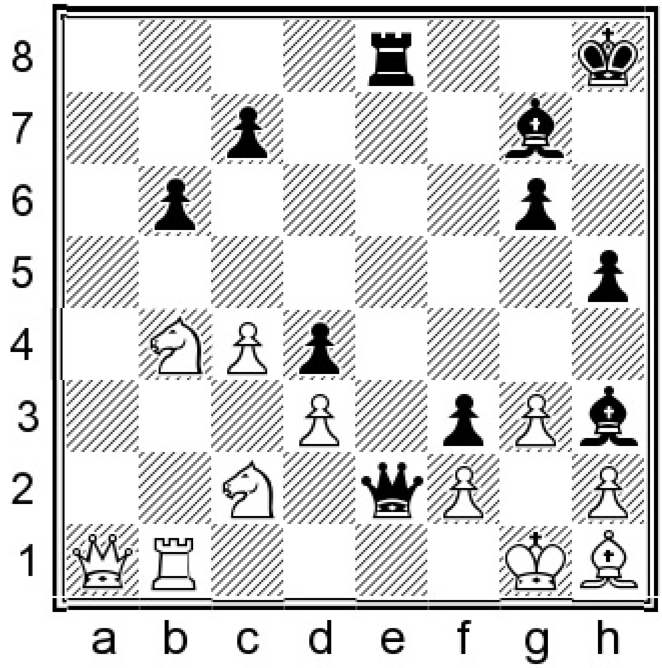

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h

Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

798 **28...♕xh4+! 29.gxh4 ♗g2+** Cruz Lledo-Van der Heide, Leeuwarden 2009; White resigned, without waiting for the knight mate on f3.

799

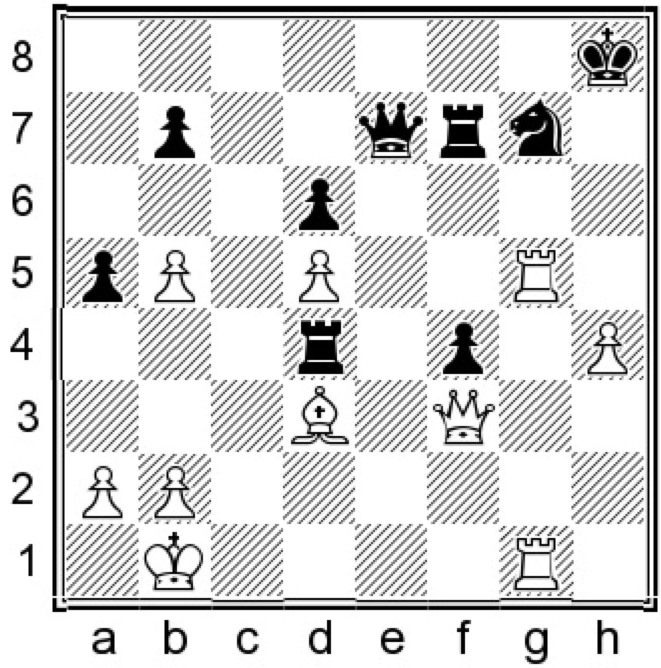

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h

Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

799 **30...♕xf2+!! 31.♔xf2 ♖e2+ 32.♔xf3** 32.♔g1 f2#. **32...♗g4+ 33.♔f4 ♗h6#** Hennigan-Berzinsh, London 2009.

800

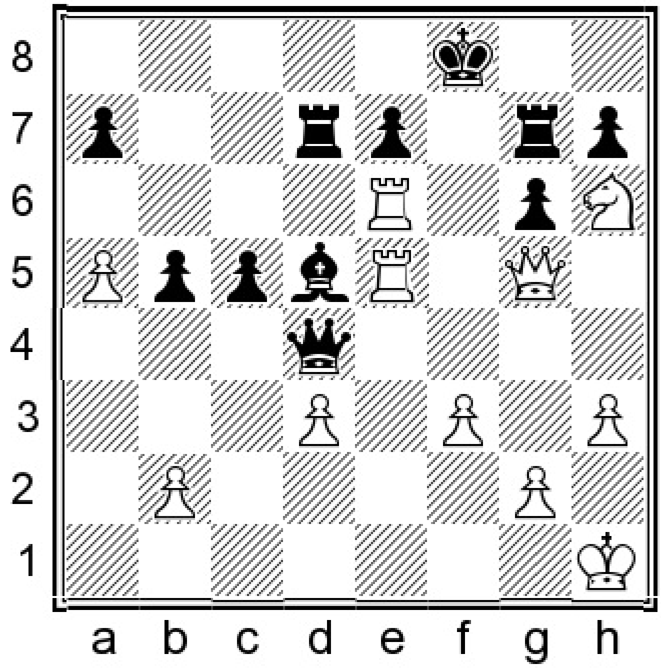


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

800 **35.♕h5+!** 1-0 Krasenkow-Strikovic, Leon rapid 2010; 35...♘xh5 36.♖g8# or 35...♔g8 36.♕h7+.

801

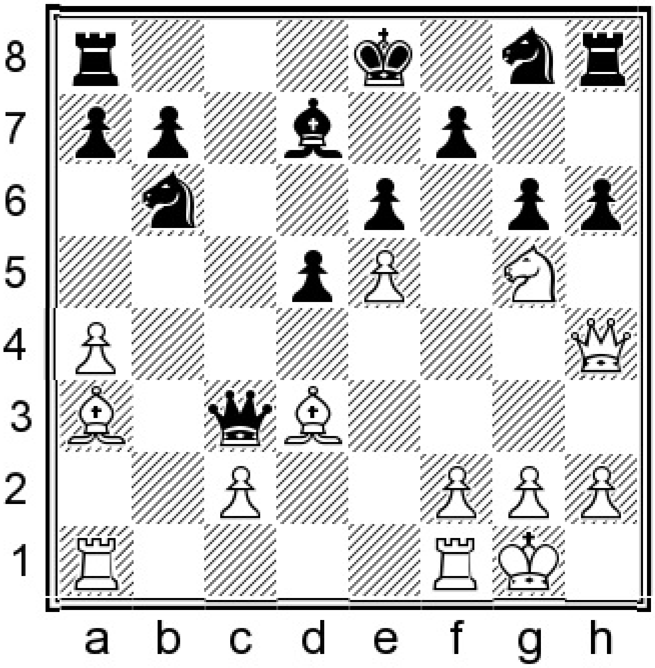


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

801 **33.♕f6+!** S.Zhigalko-Iljushin, Moscow 2010; Black resigned because of 33...♔e8 34.♕xg7 ♗xe6 35.♕h8+.

802

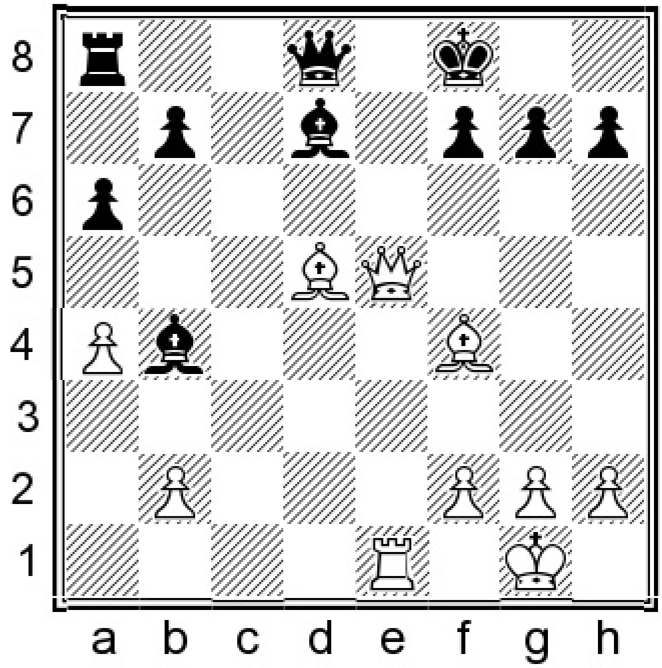


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

802 **19.♘xf7!** Iordachescu-R.Schmidt, Rijeka Ech 2010; Black resigned, not wanting to allow 19...♔xf7 20.♕g3! g5 21.♗g6+.

803

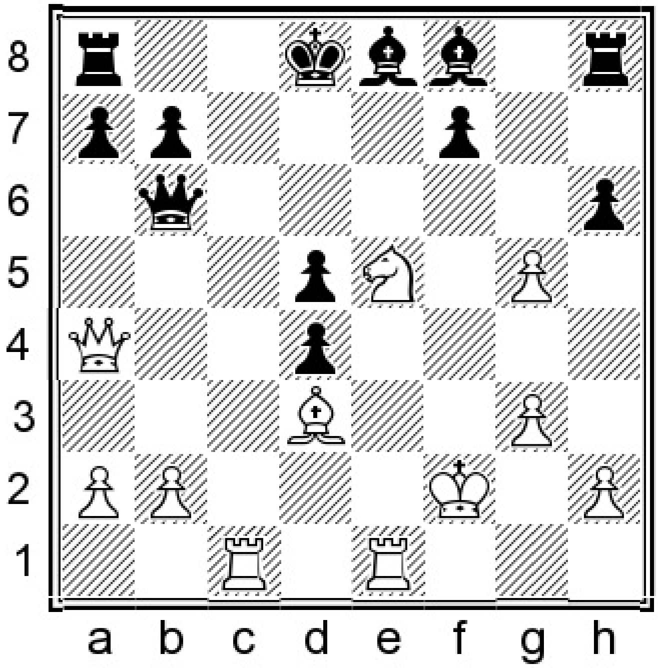


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

803 **22.♗h6! ♗xe1** 22...f6 23.♕g3, and the g7-square cannot be defended. **23.♕xg7+ ♔e7 24.♕e5+ ♗e6 25.♗g5+** 1-0 E.Danielian-Molchanova, Rijeka Ech W 2010.

804

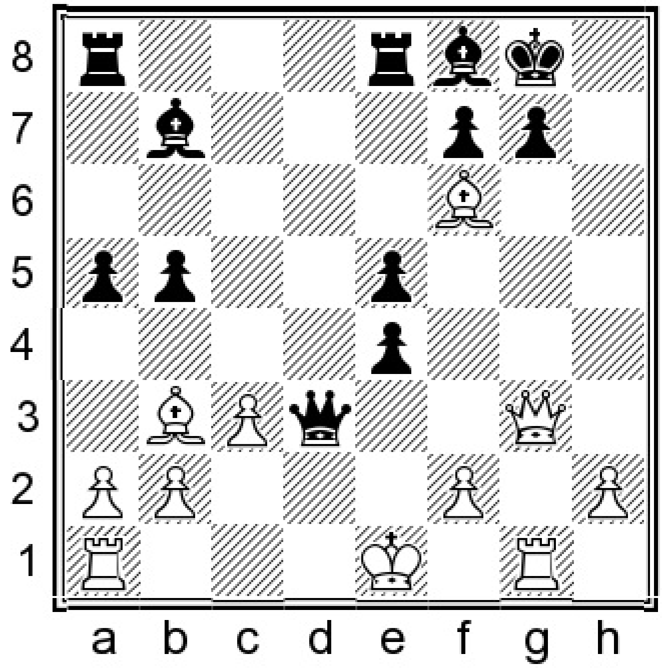

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h

White to play

Show/Hide Solution

804 **24.♕d7+!** 1-0 Solak-Kozamernik, Ljubljana 2003; Black is mated from the f7-square.

805

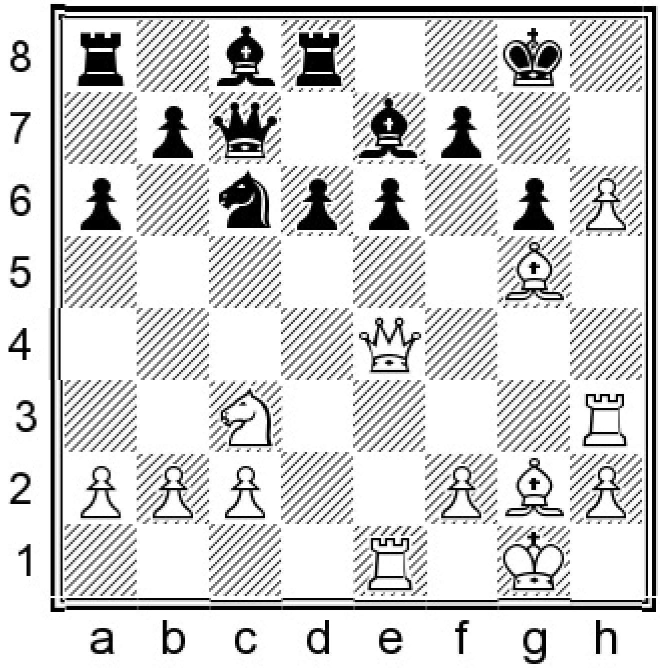


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

805 **25.♕xg7+! ♗xg7 26.♖xg7+ ♔h8 27.♖xf7+ ♔g8 28.♖g7+ ♔h8** 28...♔f8 29.♖g8#. **29.♖xb7#** Vasilevich-Shadrina, Russia tt W 2010.

806



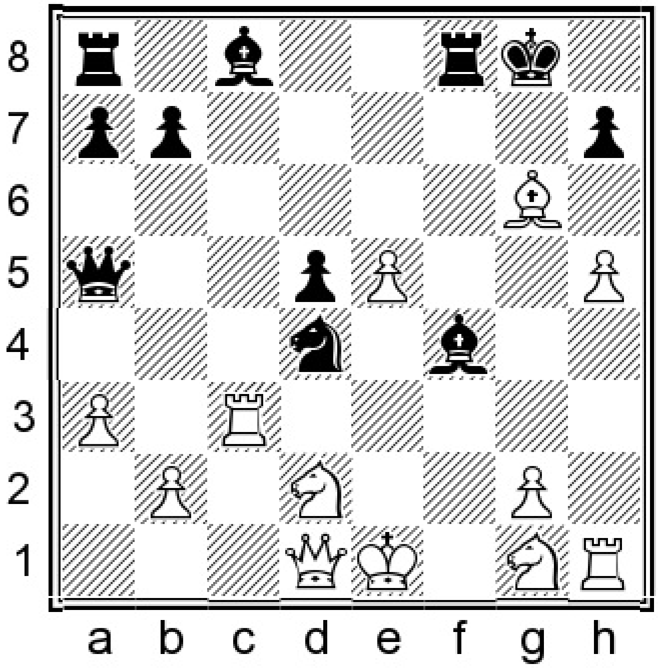
White to play

Show/Hide Solution

806 **22.h7+** He could also have started with 22.♘d5.

22.h7+ ♔h8 22...♔g7 23.♕h4 ♔h8 24.♗f6+. **23.♘d5! exd5 24.♗f6+** 1-0 Badev-Nikolov, Blagoevgrad ch-BUL 2010; 24...♗xf6 25.♕e8+.

807

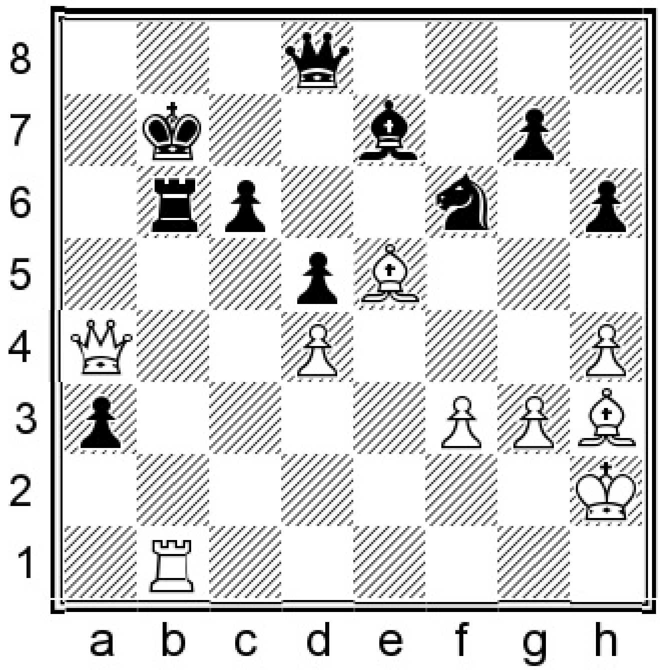

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h

Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

807 **19...♕xc3!** 0-1 Bogdanovich-D.Kovalev, Alushta 2010; 20.bxc3 ♗g3#.

808



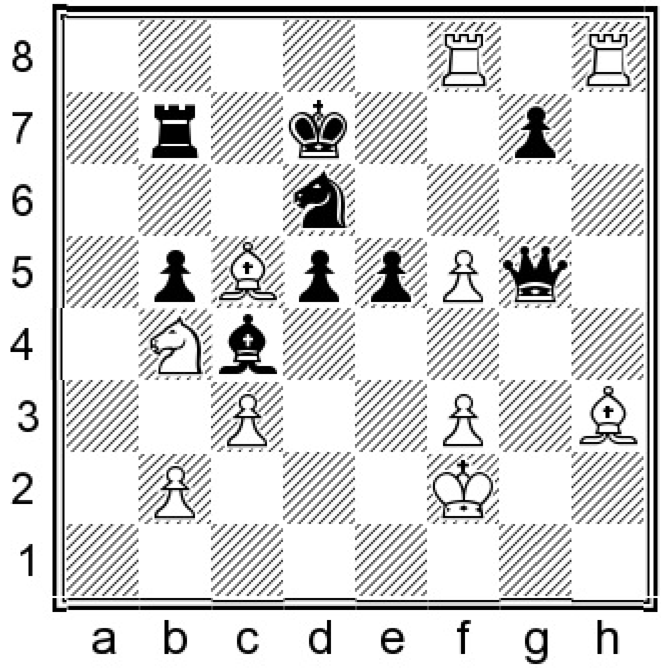
White to play

Show/Hide Solution

808 **36.♗f1!** Panchanathan-Haskel, Philadelphia 2010; Black resigned because of 36...♖xb1 37.♕a6#.

Show in Text Mode

809

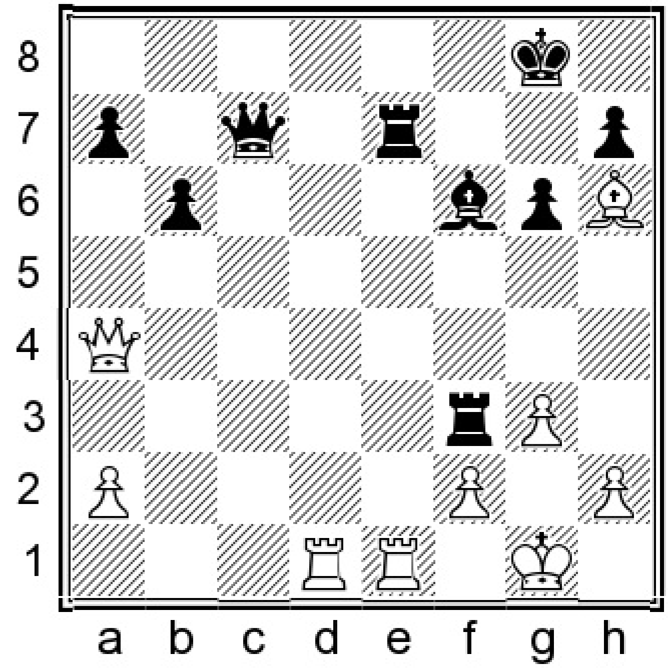


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

809 **39.♖f7+!** Zambrana-Escobar Forero, Bogota 2010; Black resigned, seeing mate after 39...♘xf7 40.f6+ ♔c7 41.♖c8.

810

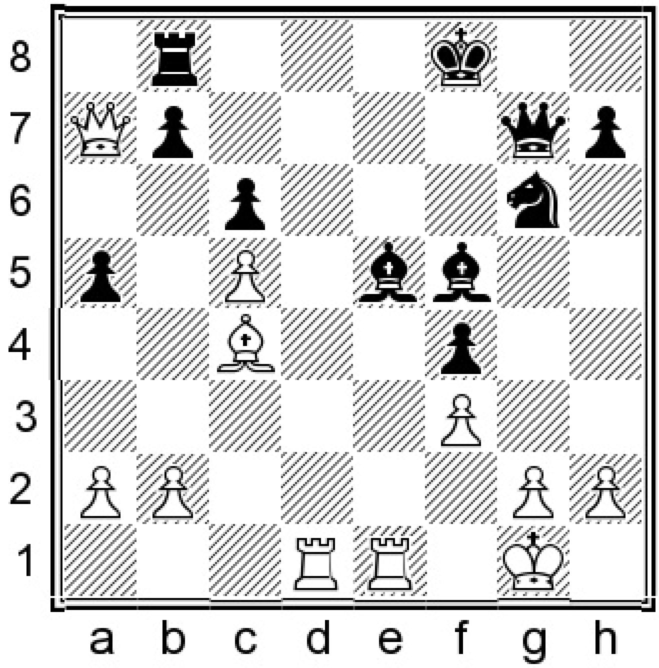

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h

White to play

Show/Hide Solution

810 **27.♕c4+!** Belov-Maslak, Irkutsk 2010; Black resigned, in view of 27...♕xc4 28.♖d8+ ♔f7 29.♖f8#.

811

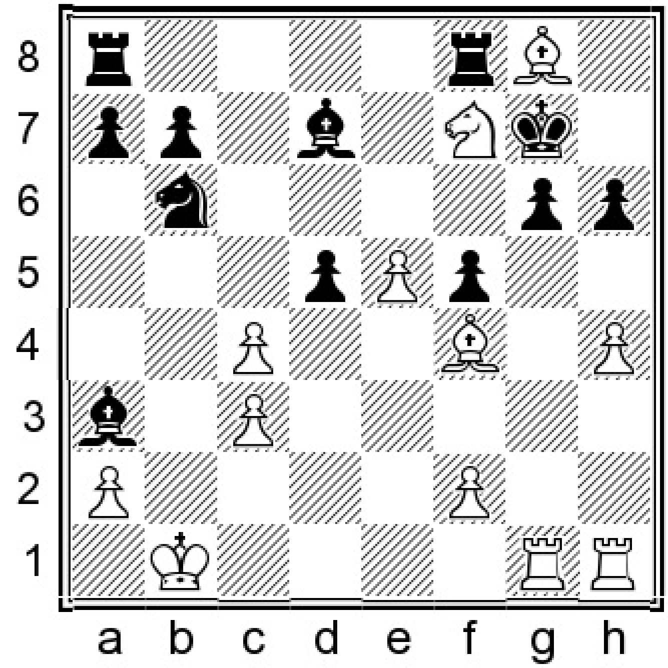


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

811 **31.♕xb8+!** 1-0 Savina-Skripchenko, Plovdiv tt W 2010; 31...♗xb8 32.♖d8#.

812

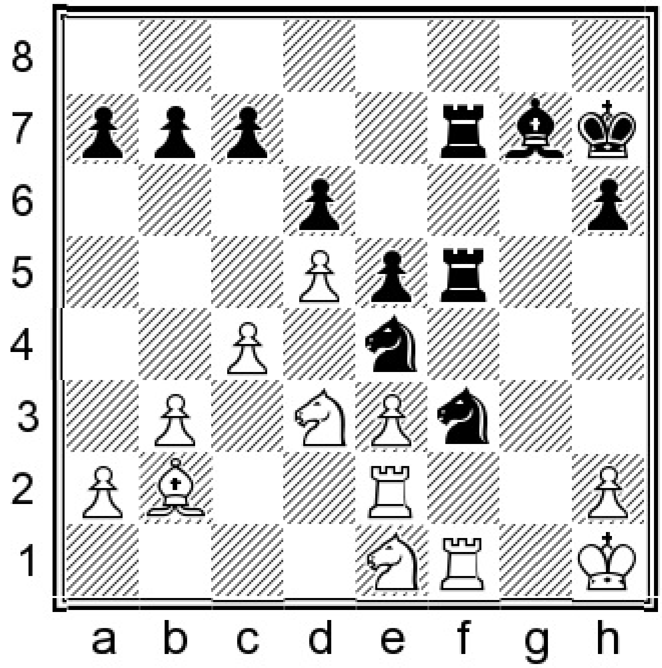


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

812 **27.♖xg6+!! ♔xg6 28.h5+ ♔g7 29.♖g1#** Holt-Milman, Berkeley 2011.

813

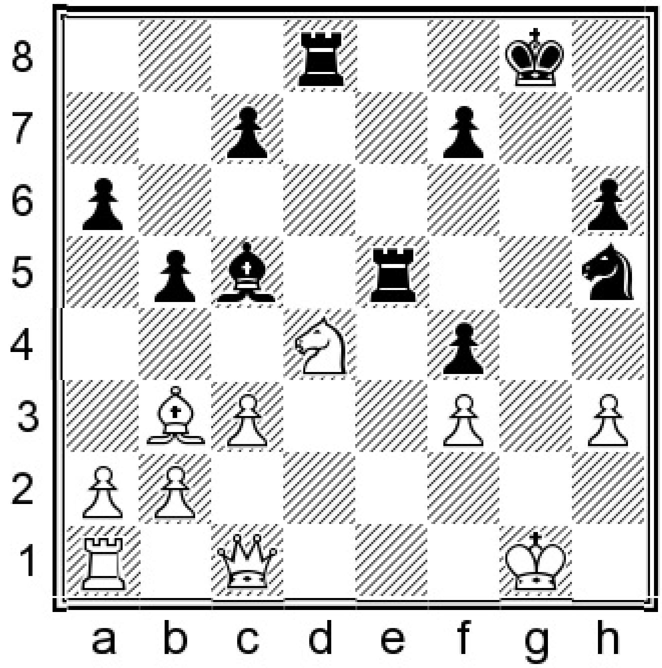


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

813 **33...♘g3+!** 0-1 Name-Rodriguez Vila, Campinas 2011; 34.hxg3 ♖h5+ 35.♔g2 ♖h2#.

814

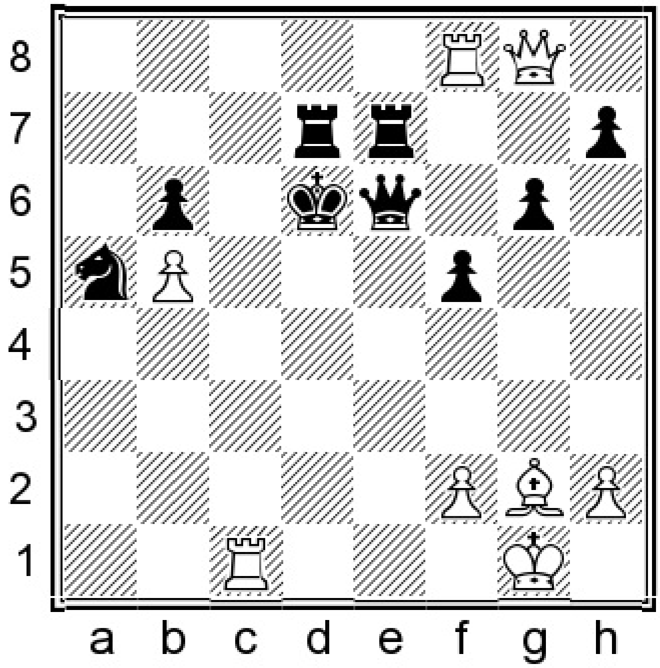


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

814 **24...♖xd4! 25.cxd4 ♗xd4+ 26.♔g2 ♖e2+ 27.♔f1 ♘g3#** Dunne-Shirov, Ottawa simul 2011.

815

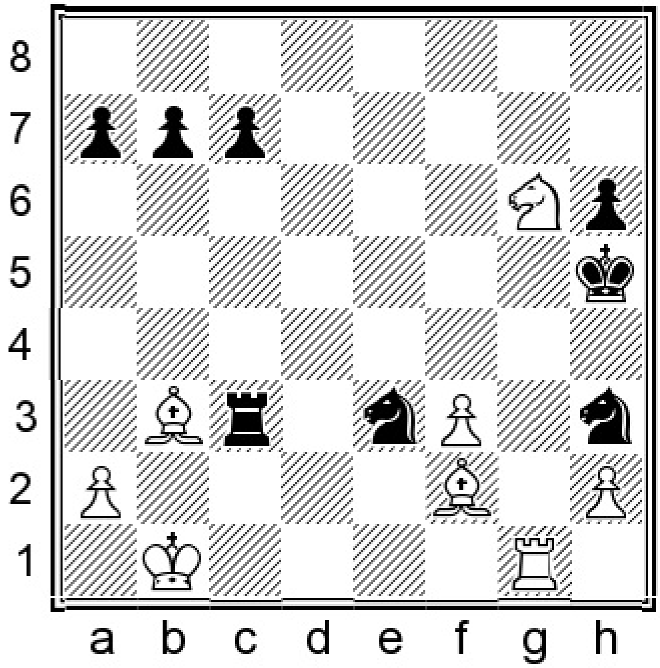

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h

White to play

Show/Hide Solution

815 **36.♖f6!** 1-0 B.Savchenko-Roussel, Moscow 2011; 36...♕xf6 37.♕d5#.

816

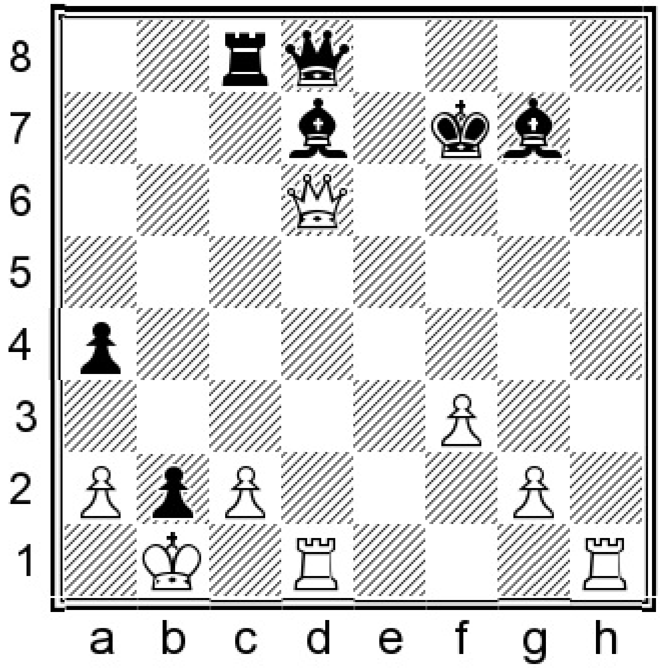


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

816 **39.♘f4+!** 1-0 Aronian-Kramnik, Monaco rapid 2011; after taking the knight, there is a deadly check on f7.

817

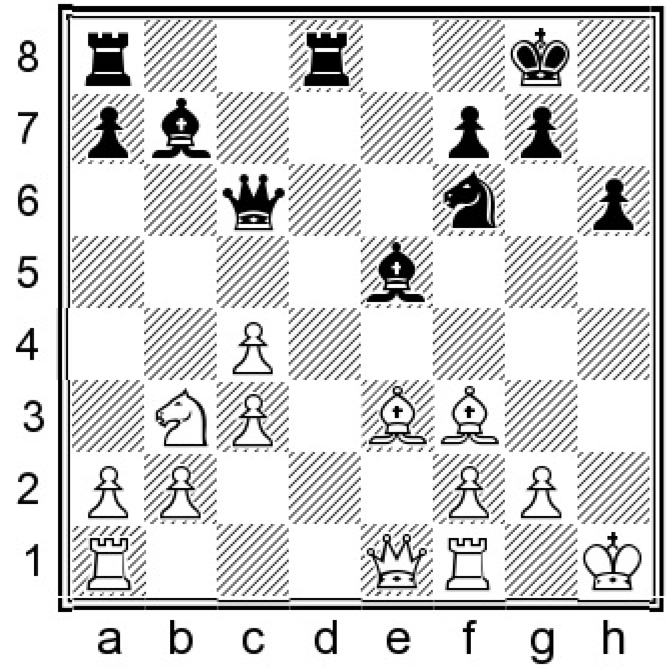


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

817 **23...♗f5! 24.♕f4** 24.♕xd8 ♗xc2#. **24...♕f6 25.♕xa4 ♕c3** The quickest way to win, although 25...♗xc2+ also works. **26.♖d3** On 26.♖d7+ the strongest reply is 26...♔e6!. **26...♕xd3!** If 26...♗xd3, 27.♕d7+ prolongs the resistance. 0-1 Ortiz Suarez-Vocaturo, Havana 2011; 27.♕a7+ ♕d7.

818

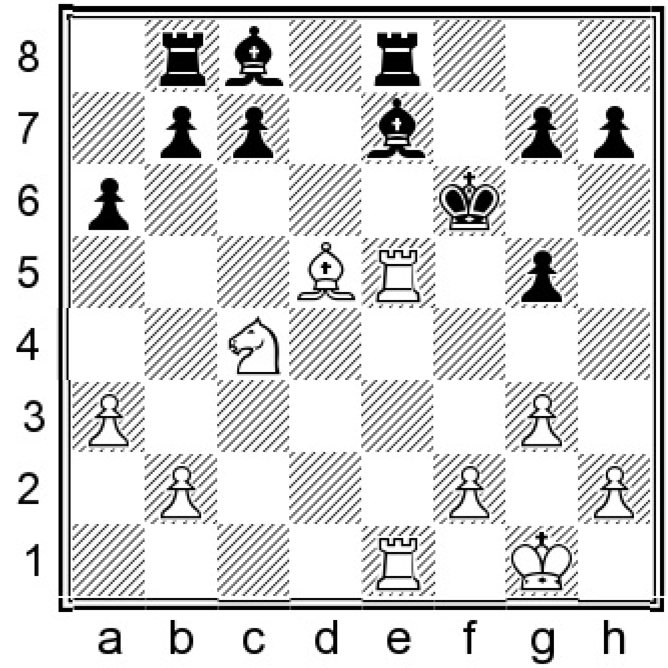


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

818 **23...♕xf3!** Malakhatko-Timoshenko, Kiev rapid 2003; White resigned because of 24.gxf3 ♗xf3+ 25.♔g1 ♘g4, and mate on h2 is unavoidable.

819

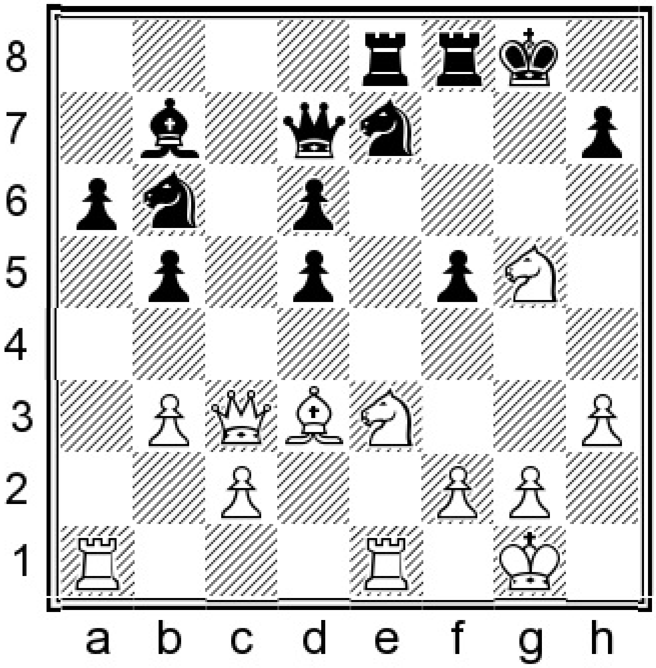

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h

White to play

Show/Hide Solution

819 **20.♖e6+! ♗xe6 21.♖xe6+ ♔f7** Or 21...♔f5 22.♘e3#. **22.♘e5+** Buhmann-Khenkin, Vienna 2011; Black resigned, without waiting for 22...♔f8 23.♘d7+ ♔g8 (23...♔f7 24.♖f6#) 24.♘xb8.

820

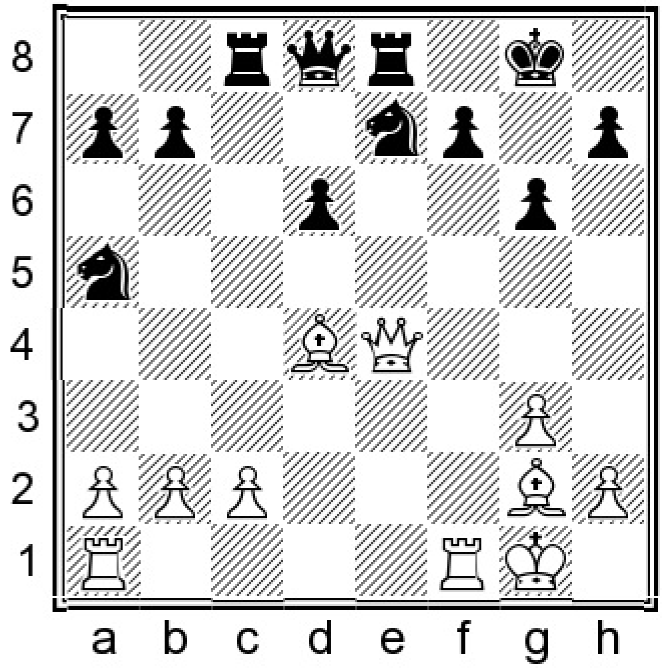


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

820 **23.♘g4!** 1-0 Shabalov-Dimakiling, Jakarta 2011; the knight is immune because of mate on h7, whilst if it is not taken, it gives mate on h6, because the long diagonal cannot be closed.

821

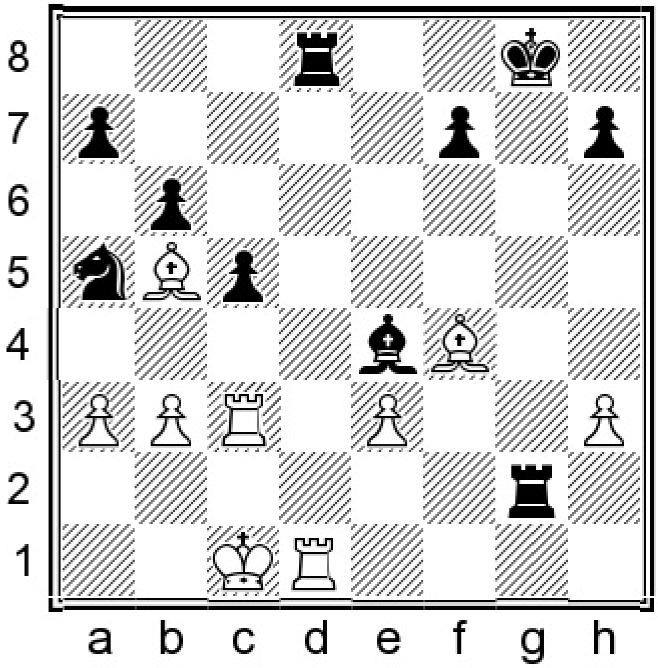


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

821 **18.♖xf7!** Eidelson-Charochkina, Magnitogorsk W 2011; Black resigned because of 18...♔xf7 19.♖f1+ ♘f5 20.♖xf5+! gxf5 21.♕xf5+ ♔e7 (21...♔g8 22.♗d5+) 22.♗f6+, and the king has to return to the f-file.

822

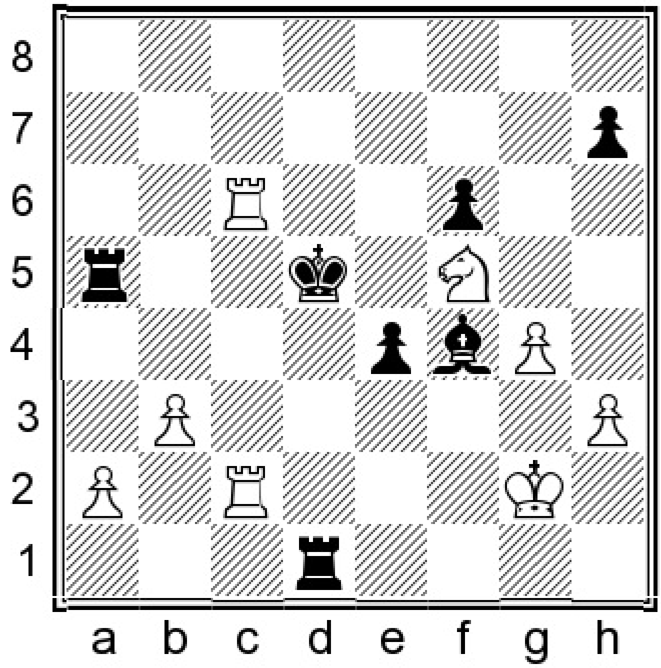

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

822 **26...♘xb3+!** 0-1 Theulings-Poetsch, Groningen 2011; 27.♖xb3 ♖c2+.

823

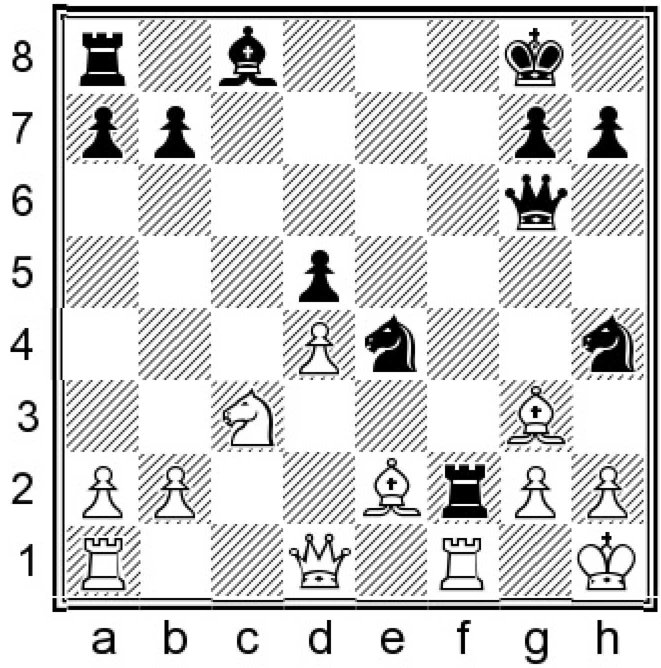


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

823 **45.b4!** Fridman-Jorczik, Osterburg ch-GER 2012; Black resigned because of 45...♖b5 46.a4 ♖xb4 47.♖2c5#.

824

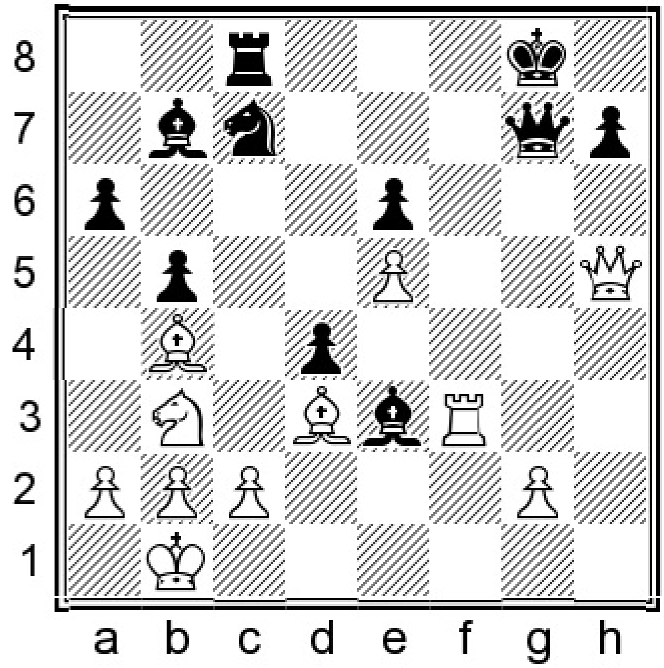


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

824 **18...♕xg3!** 0-1 Kantans-Samolins, Riga ch-LAT 2012; after 19.hxg3 ♘xg3+ White is mated on g2.

825

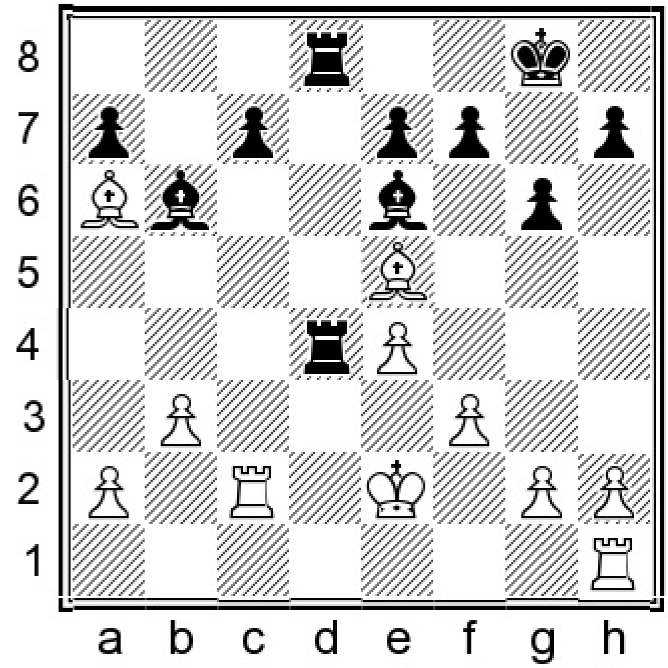


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

825 **31.♖g3!** 1-0 Kosteniuk-Efroimski, Eilat tt W 2012; 31...♕xg3 32.♕xh7#.

826

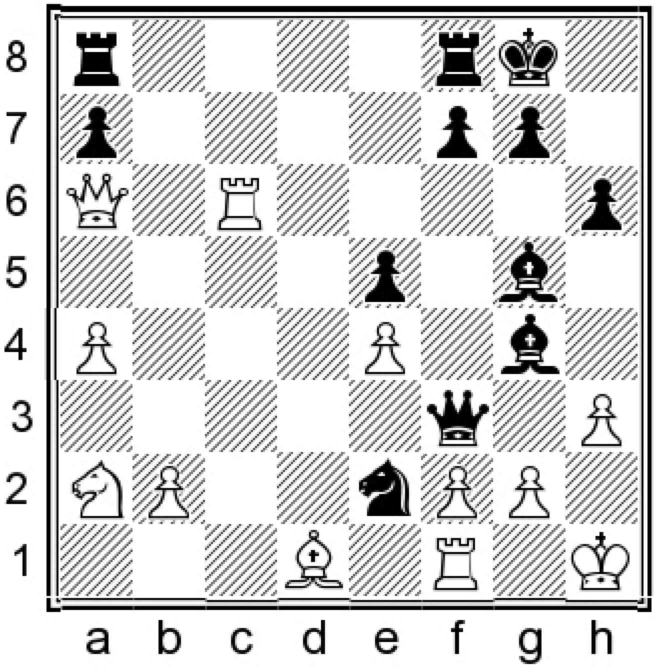


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

826 **20...♖xe4+!** 0-1 Ravi-Patil, Kolkata ch-IND 2012; if 21.fxe4 ♗g4+ 22.♔e1/f1 22...♖d1#.

827

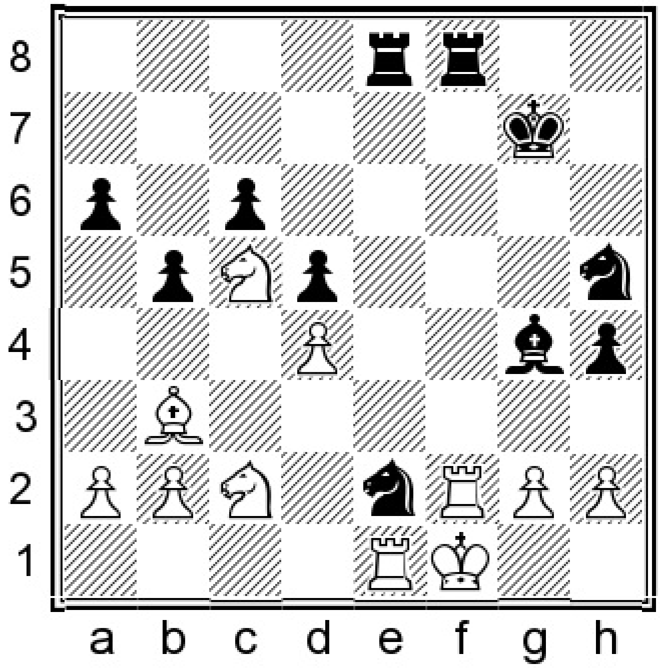


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

827 **23...♕xh3+!** 0-1 Marikova-J.van Foreest, Potsdam tt 2012; 24.gxh3 ♗f3+ 25.♔h2 ♗f4#.

828

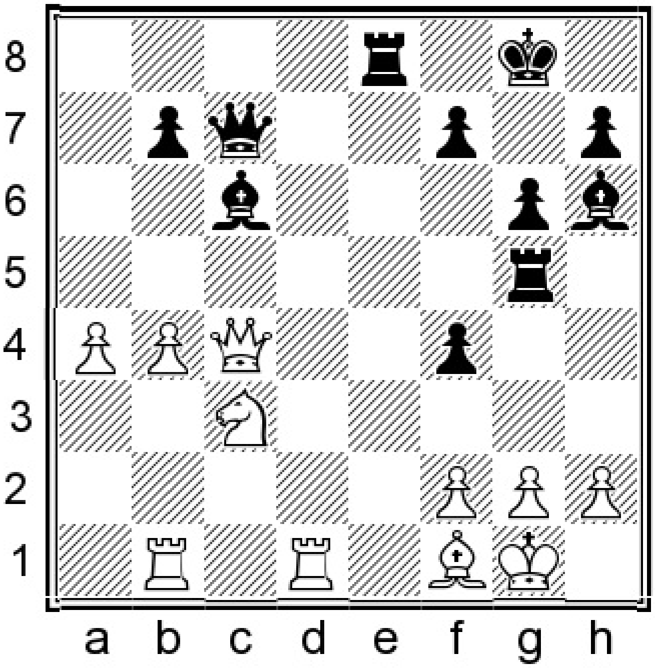


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

828 **34...♘hg3+! 35.hxg3 hxg3** He could mate at once with 35...♖xf2+ 36.♔xf2 hxg3+ 37.♔f1 ♖f8#, but even here, White cannot really continue to resist: 0-1 Yankovsky-Khachiyan, Anaheim 2012.

829

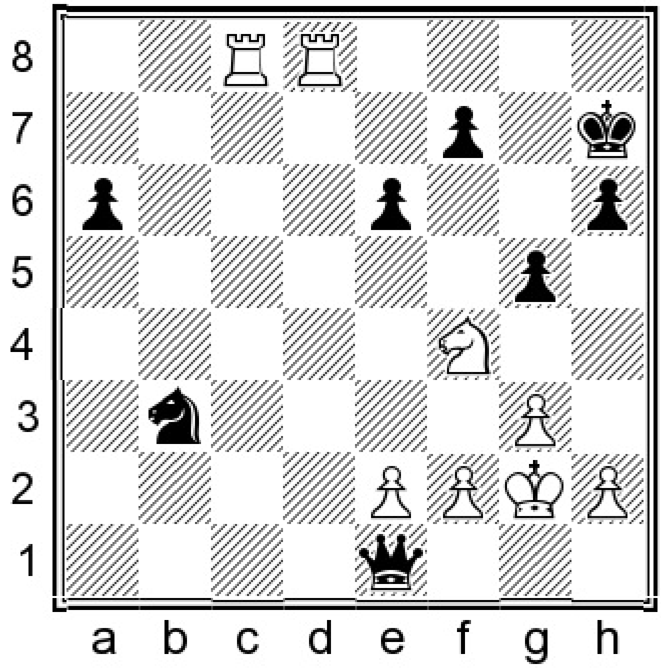


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

829 **27...♗xg2! 28.♕xc7 ♗f3+ 29.♗g2 ♖xg2+ 30.♔f1 ♖xh2 31.♘e2 ♖xe2**, and there is no perpetual: **32.♖d8+ ♗f8 33.♖xf8+ ♔xf8 34.♕c5+ ♖e7 35.♕c8+ ♖e8 36.♕c5+ ♔g8** 0-1 Collins-Jones, Kilkenny 2012.

830

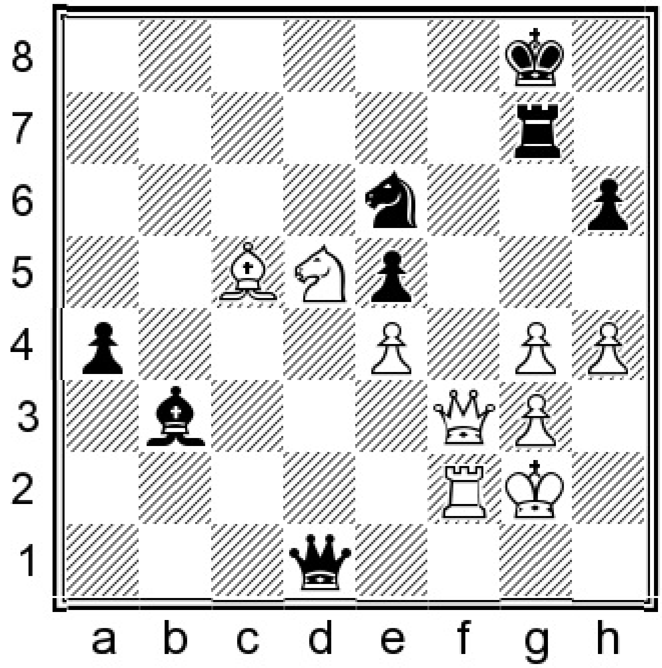


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

830 **35.♖h8+ ♔g7 36.♘h5+ ♔g6 37.g4!** 1-0 Kotsur-Marin, Al-Ain tt 2012; there are no checks, 38.♖cg8# is threatened, and on 37...f5 there is mate by 38.♖cg8+ ♔f7 39.♖g7 – Black’s own pawn on e6 gets in his way.

831

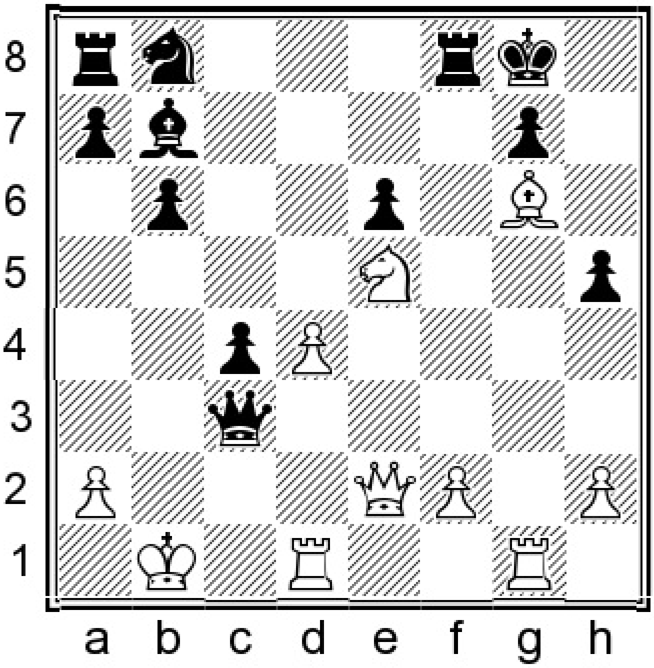

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h

White to play

Show/Hide Solution

831 **54.♕f8+! ♘xf8 55.♖xf8+ ♔h7 56.♘f6+ ♔g6 57.h5+ ♔g5 58.♗e3#** Glek-P.Smirnov, Moscow 2013.

832

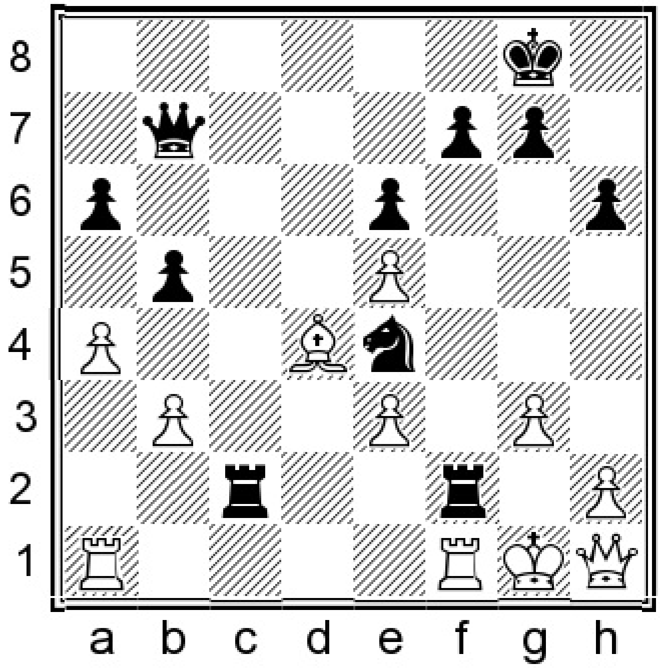


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

832 **21.♗h7+!** Tan Zhongyi-Saduakassova, Astana Wch-tt W 2013; Black resigned because of 21...♔xh7 (21...♔h8 22.♘g6+ ♔xh7 23.♕xh5+ ♔g8 24.♘e7#) 22.♕xh5+ ♔g8 23.♖xg7+! ♔xg7 24.♖g1+ ♔f6 25.♕g5#.

833

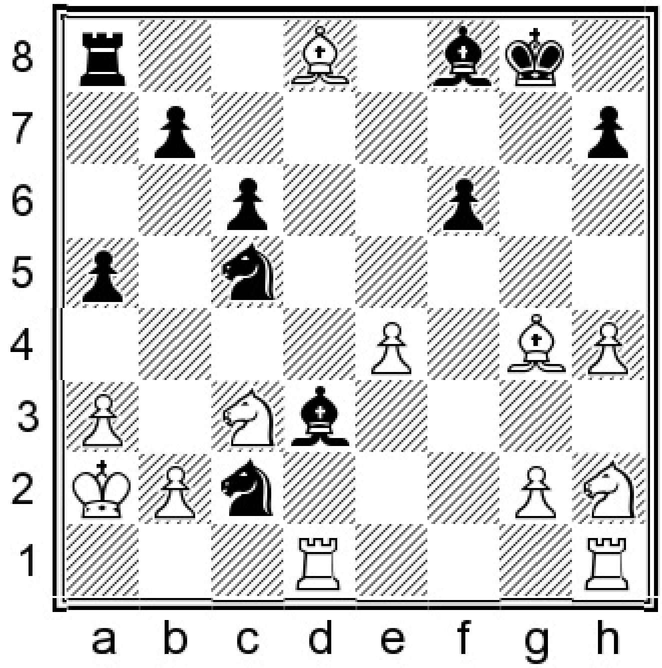


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

833 **31...♘g5!** 0-1 Heinatz-Zatonskih, Germany Frauen-bundesliga 2012/13; 32.♕xb7 ♘h3+ 33.♔h1 ♖xh2# or 32.♖xf2 ♘h3+ 33.♔f1 ♕xh1#.

834

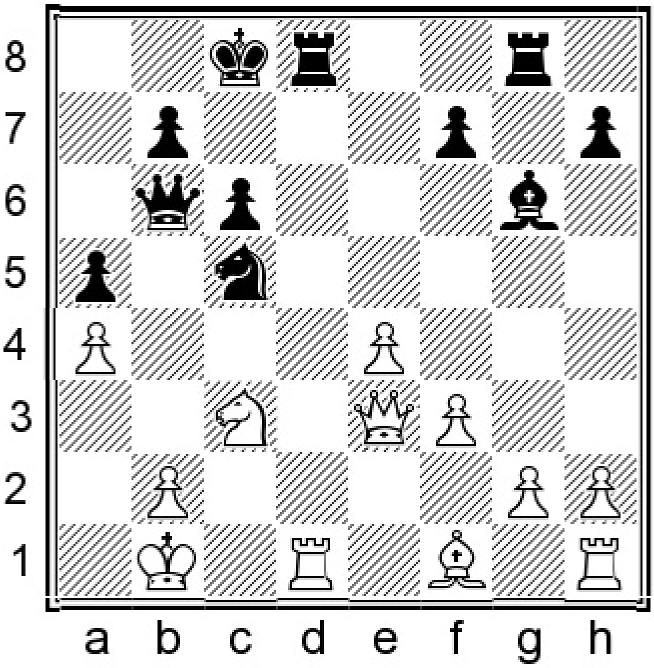

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h

Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

834 **26...♘b4+!** 0-1 Siebrecht-Jones, Germany Bundesliga 2012/13; after 27.axb4 (27.♔a1 ♘b3#) 27...axb4 mate cannot be avoided.

835

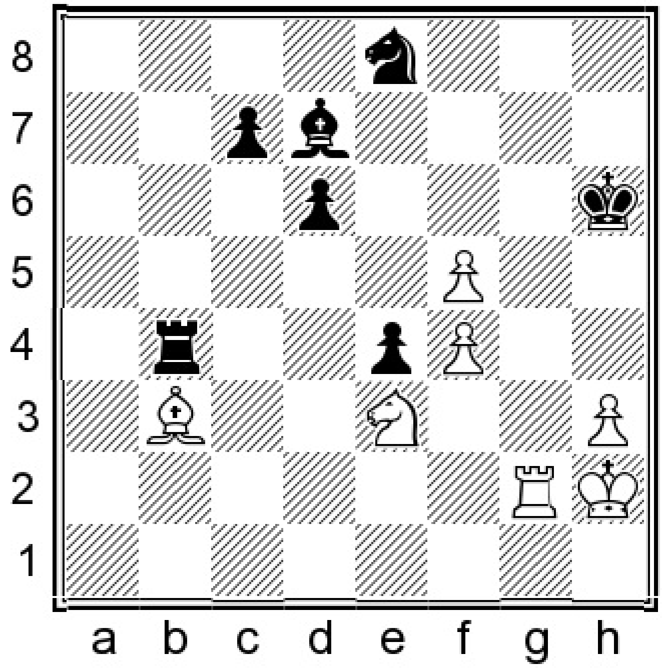


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

835 **21...♘xe4!** Zilka-Kummer, Austria Bundesliga B 2012/13; White resigned, in view of mate after 22.♕xb6 (the exchange on d8 does not change anything) 22...♘xc3+ 23.♔a1/c1 23...♖xd1.

836

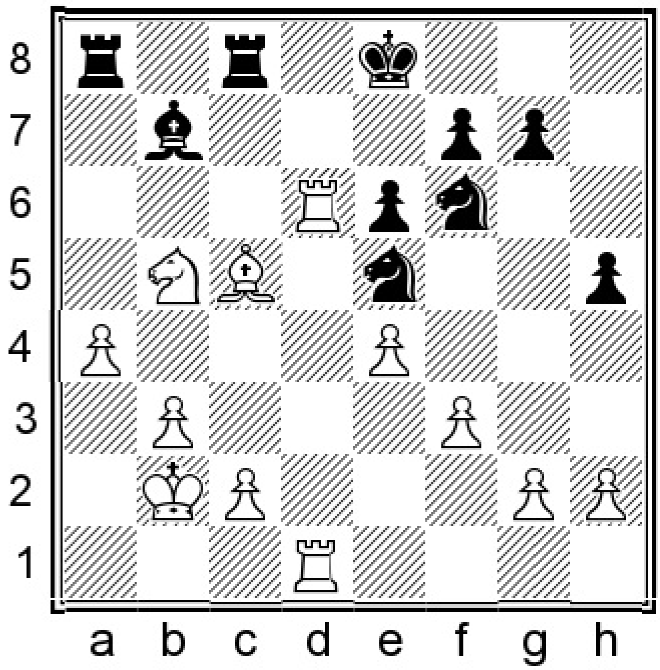


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

836 **43.♗g8! ♖b8 44.♖g6+ ♔h5 45.♖g5+** 1-0 Krush-Zenyuk, St Louis ch-USA W 2013; 45...♔h6 46.♘g4# or 45...♔h4 46.♘g2#.

837

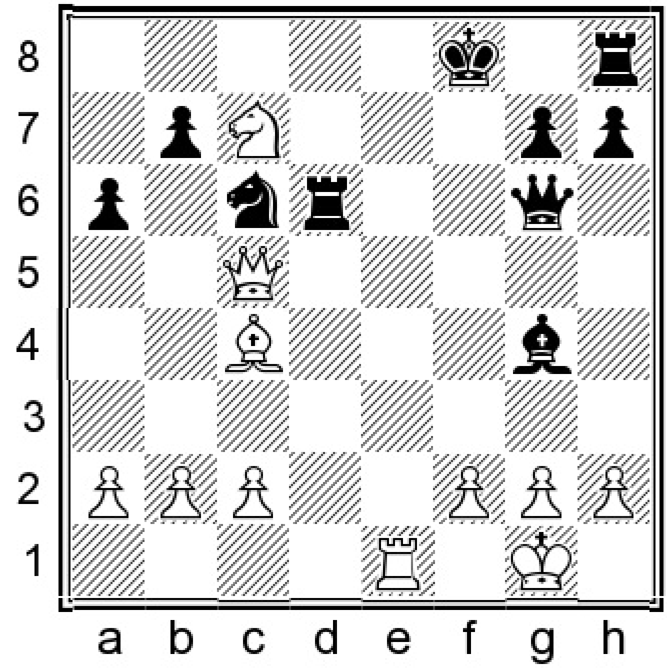

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h

White to play

Show/Hide Solution

837 **23.♖d8+! ♖xd8 24.♘c7#** De la Villa Garcia-Perez de Aranda, Spain tt 2013.

838

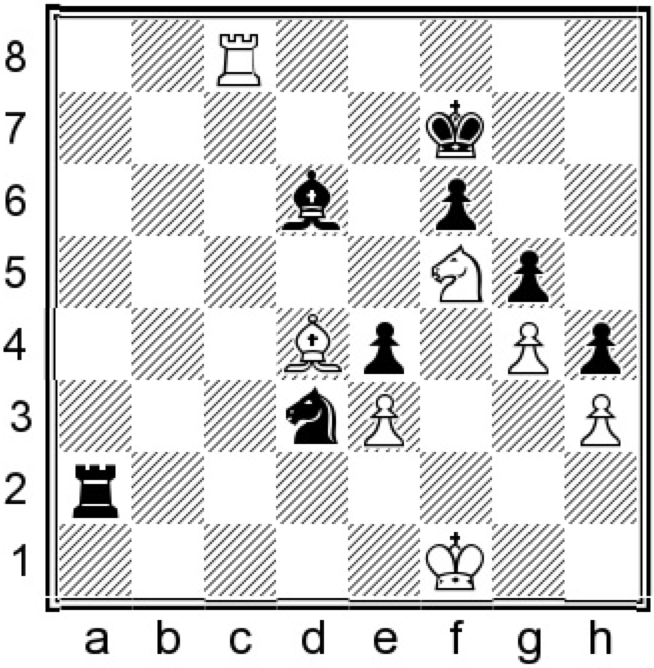

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h

White to play

Show/Hide Solution

838 **24.♕xd6+! ♕xd6 25.♖e8#** Alekseev-Krush, Baku 2013.

839

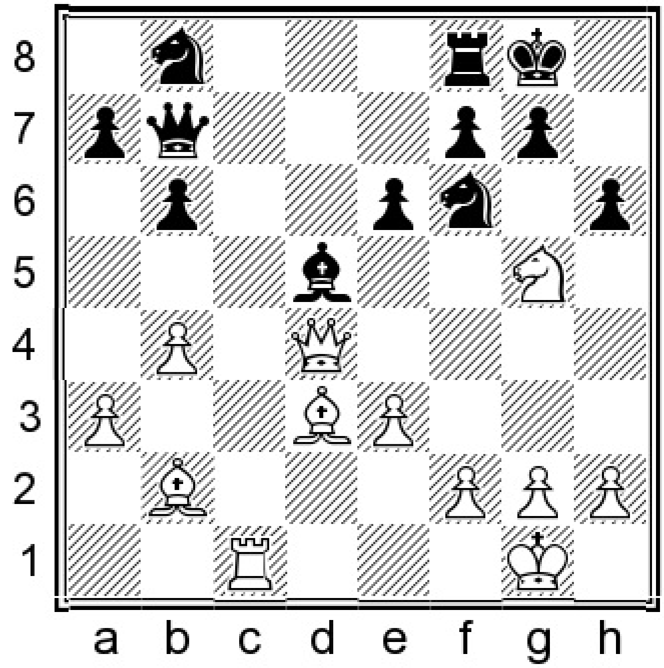

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h

Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

839 **51...♗h2!** 0-1 Xiu Deshun-Bu Xiangzhi, China tt 2013; White cannot meet the deadly threat of 52...♖f2#.

840

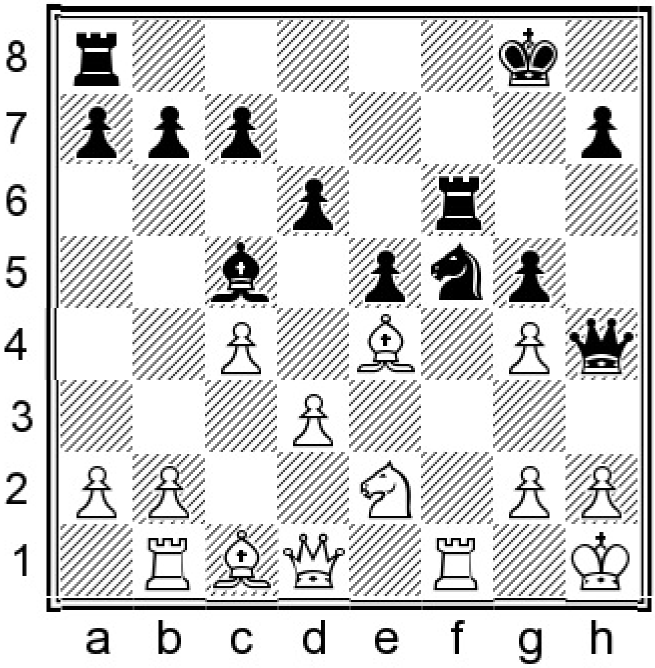

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a
b
c
d
e
f
g
h

White to play

Show/Hide Solution

840 **20.♗h7+! ♔h8 21.♕xf6** 1-0 Cmilyte-Ptacnikova, Warsaw Ech-tt W 2013.

841

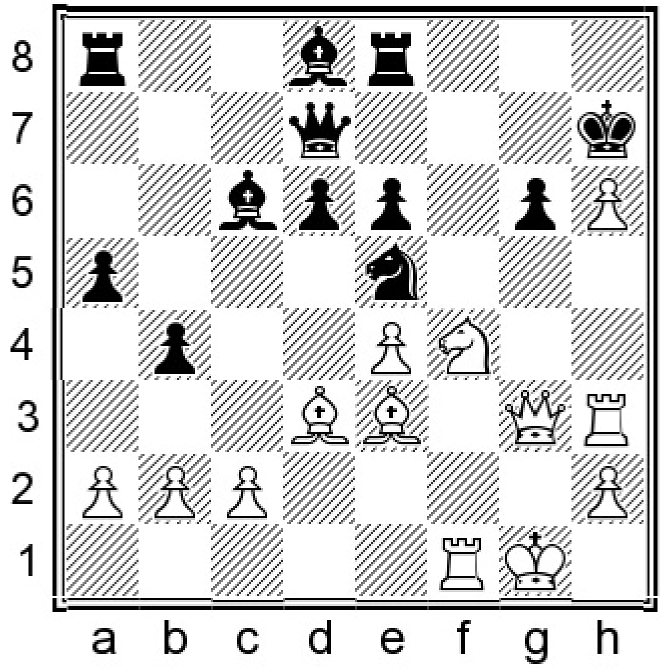


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

841 **17...♕xh2+!** 0-1 Hacik-Pechac, Slovakia tt 2013/14; 18.♔xh2 ♖h6#.

842

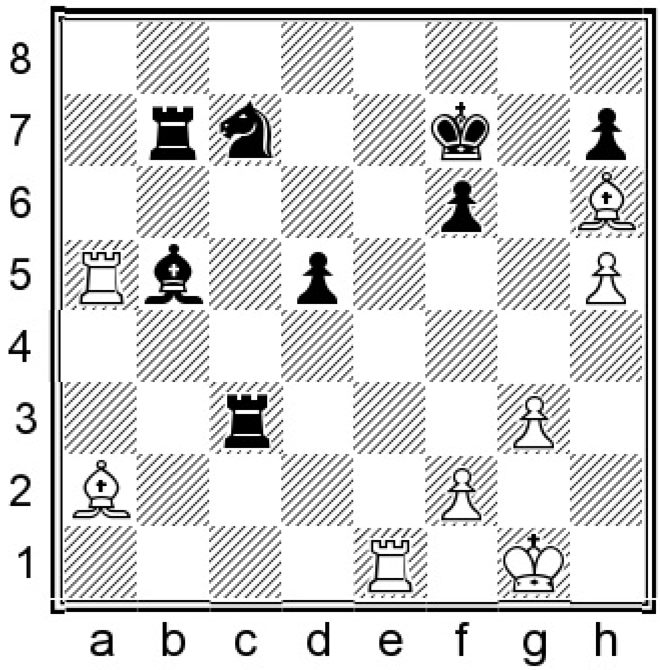


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

842 **28.♘xg6! ♘xg6 29.♕xg6+ ♔h8** 29...♔xg6 30.e5+ ♗e4 31.♗xe4#. **30.♖f7 ♖g8 31.♖g7** 1-0 Kadric-Palac, Zadar 2013.

843

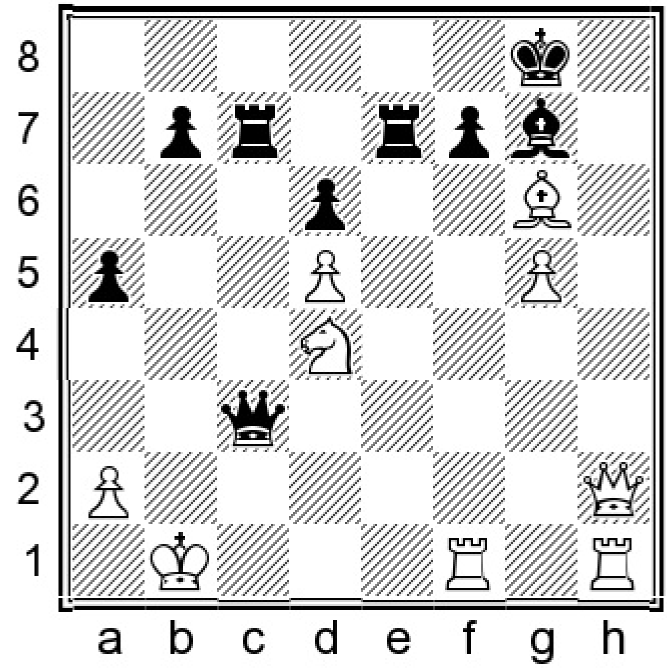


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

843 **38.♖a8 ♘e6** 38...♗e8 39.♖axe8 ♘xe8 40.♗xd5#. **39.♗xd5 ♖e7 40.♖f8#** Spoelman-J.van Foreest, Groningen 2013.

844

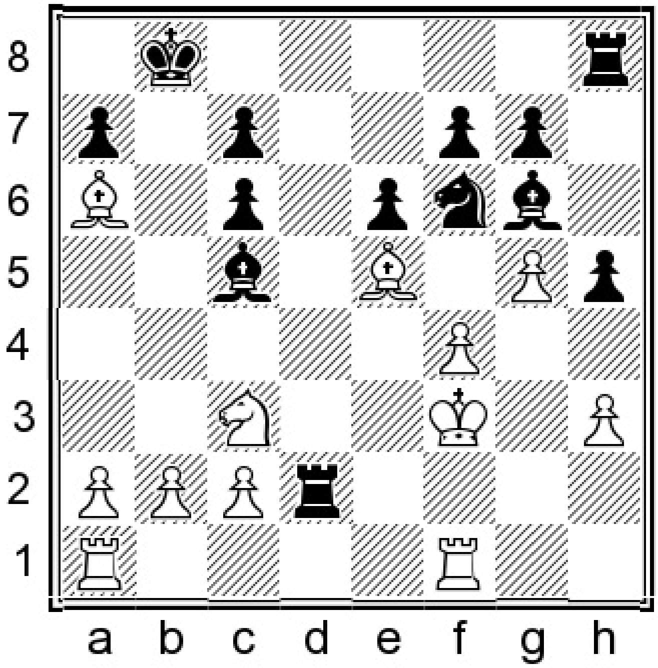


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

844 **32.♗xf7+! ♖xf7 33.♕h7+ ♔f8 34.♘e6+ ♔e8 35.♕g8+ ♗f8 36.♕xf8+!** Lanka-Szelag, Rostock 2002; the point! Black resigned in view of 36...♖xf8 37.♖xf8+ ♔d7 38.♖h7+.

845

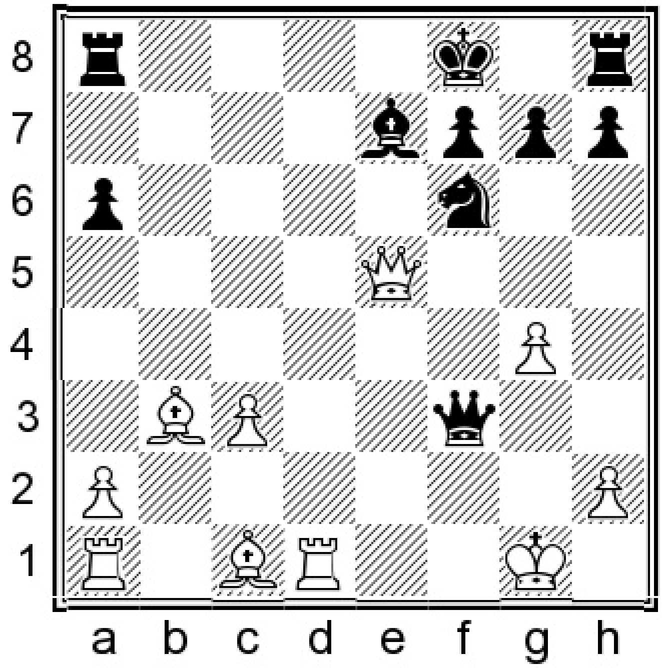


Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

845 **23...♘g4!** 0-1 Terrieux-Prié, Belfort ch-FRA 2010; 24.hxg4 hxg4+ 25.♔xg4 ♗f5+ 26.♔f3 ♖h3 and 24.♗xg7 ♘h2+ 25.♔g3 h4 are mate, whilst after 24.♘e2 or 24.h4 he loses the exchange (24...♘h2+).

846

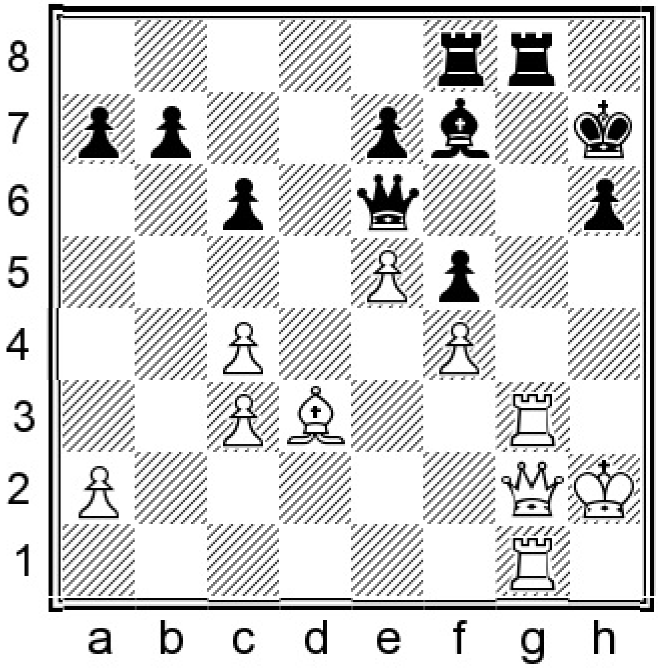


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

846 **22.♕xe7+!!** Gareev-Van Wely, Los Angeles 2011; Black resigned, because in the forcing variation 22...♔xe7 23.♗a3+ ♔e8 24.♗a4+ ♘d7 25.♗xd7+ ♔d8 26.♗c6+ ♕xd1+ 27.♖xd1+ he loses a piece.

847

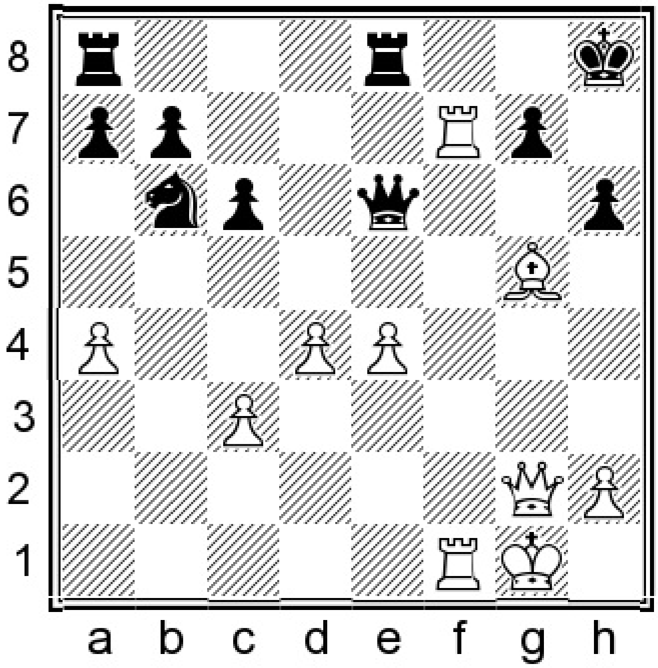


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

847 **33.♖g7+ ♔h8 34.♕g4!** The key to White’s idea. The queen is immune because of mate in one, but how to defend f5? **34...♗h5 35.♗xf5** 1-0 Ernst-Karisik, Obrenovac 2011; Black cannot meet the threat of mate on h7, without removing the defence of g8.

848

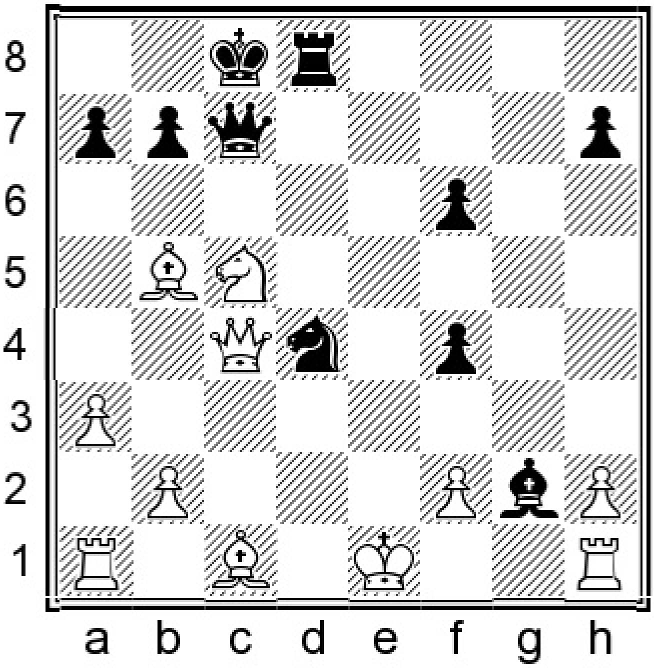


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

848 **25.♖1f6! gxf6** Black cannot last long material down. For those who like studying combinational art it is more interesting to see the variation which the Armenian player had to calculate during the game: 25...♕xe4 26.♖xh6+! ♔g8 27.♖xg7+! (the third sacrifice in a row) 27...♔xg7 28.♗f6+ (the fourth!) 28...♔f7 (28...♔xh6 29.♕g5+) 29.♕g7+ ♔e6 30.♗e5+ ♔d5 31.♕f7+. **26.♗xf6+ ♕xf6 27.♖xf6**, and White won in Dzagnidze-E.Danielian, Mardin Wch-tt W 2011.

849



Black to play

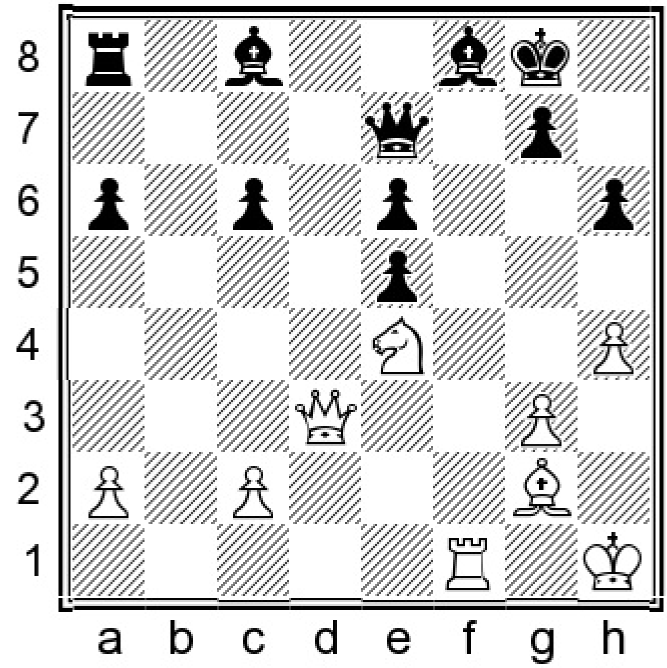
Show/Hide Solution

849 The game ended in a draw by perpetual check after 26...♘f3+ 27.♔e2 ♘d4+ 28.♔e1 ♘f3+ 29.♔e2 ♘d4+ 30.♔e1 Svidler-Vitiugov, Moscow ch-RUS 2012.

And little more is promised by 26...♕e5+? 27.♔d2, and the discovered check is not so dangerous.

But there was a win by **26...♕a5+ 27.b4 ♕xb5! 28.♕xb5 ♘c2+ 29.♔e2 f3#**.

850

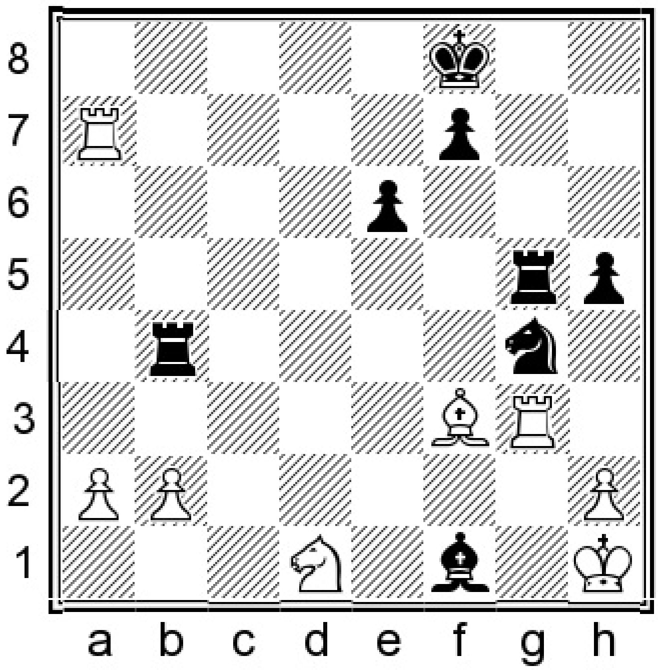


White to play

Show/Hide Solution

850 **23.♘g5! e4 24.♕xe4 hxg5 25.♕g6** 1-0 Naiditsch-Grandelius, Wijk aan Zee 2013; Black’s pieces are exceptionally badly placed and he cannot prevent the deadly manoeuvre ♗g2-e4.

851



Black to play

Show/Hide Solution

851 **32...♘xh2!** Not difficult, but very beautiful. Now 33.♔xh2 runs into 33...♖h4+. **33.♖xg5 ♘xf3 34.♖a8+ ♔e7 35.♖a7+ ♔d6** 0-1 Li Chao-Aronian, Antalya Wch-tt 2013; the black bishop controls a6, whilst after 36.♖xh5 ♖g4 mate threatens on g1.

Table of Contents

Title page 4
Explanation of symbols 5
Foreword 7
The rook 9
Exercises 1-30 26
Exercises 31-60 56
The queen 86
Exercises 61-90 112
Exercises 91-121 142
The minor pieces and pawns 173
Exercises 122-165 205
Exercises 166-209 249
Two rooks 293
Exercises 210-241 306
Exercises 242-273 338
Rook and bishop 370
Exercises 274-305 393
Exercises 306-337 425
Exercises 338-368 457
Rook and knight 488
Exercises 369-400 507
Exercises 401-432 539
Exercises 433-463 571
Queen and bishop 602
Exercises 464-501 641
Exercises 502-539 679
Exercises 540-578 717
Queen and knight 756
Exercises 579-618 774
Exercises 619-658 814
Queen and rook 854
Exercises 659-694 883

Exercises 695-729 919
Exercises 730-765 954
Three pieces 990
Exercises 766-808 1016
Exercises 809-851 1059

A BRILLIANTLY ORGANIZED COURSE THAT HAS PROVEN TO BE EFFECTIVE

Giving mate is the ultimate goal of every chess player. Finding that all-decisive combination is immensely satisfying. But how are you supposed to spot a checkmate when you are sitting at the board with the clock ticking?

In this guide, Vladimir Barsky teaches the method created by his mentor Viktor Khenkin (1923-2010). It's based on an ingenious classification of the most frequently occurring mating schemes. A wide range of chess players will find it an extremely useful tool to recognize mating patterns and calculate the often narrow path to the kill.

All the 1,000 examples (850 of them in exercise format) that Barsky presents are from games played in the 21st century. He has carefully selected the most instructive combinations and lucidly explains the typical techniques to corner your opponent's king. More often than you would expect, positions that look innocent at first sight turn out to contain a mating pattern.

This is not just another book full of chess puzzles. It's a brilliantly organized course that has proven to be effective. Finding mate isn't rocket science, but you need to know what to look for. Vladimir Barsky teaches you exactly that.

VLADIMIR BARSKY (1969) is an International Master, an experienced chess coach and a well-known journalist and author. He lives in Moscow.

Praise for *The Ragozin Complex* by Vladimir Barsky:

"A wonderful guide."
Peter Doggers, ChessVibes

"A delightful freshness keeps the reader in thrall."
Martin Rieger, Rochade Europa Magazine

NEW IN CHES
www.newinchess.com

€ 25.95

ISBN: 978-90-5691-887-3
52495
9 789056 918873